Hepatology

A Clinical Textbook

Mauss, Berg, Rockstroh,
Sarrazin, Wedemeyer

edition **2014**

Flying Publisher

Mauss − Berg − Rockstroh − Sarrazin − Wedemeyer

Hepatology 2014

Fifth Edition

Hepatology 2014 is supported by a financial contribution from

Boehringer Ingelheim

Hepatology 2014

A Clinical Textbook

Editors

Stefan Mauss

Thomas Berg

Jürgen Rockstroh

Christoph Sarrazin

Heiner Wedemeyer

Associate Editor

Bernd Sebastian Kamps

Flying Publisher

English language and style:
Rob Camp
camporama@gmail.com

Disclaimer

Hepatology is an ever-changing field. The editors and authors of *Hepatology – A Clinical Textbook* have made every effort to provide information that is accurate and complete as of the date of publication. However, in view of the rapid changes occurring in medical science, as well as the possibility of human error, this book may contain technical inaccuracies, typographical or other errors. Readers are advised to check the product information currently provided by the manufacturer of each drug to be administered to verify the recommended dose, the method and duration of administration, and contraindications. It is the responsibility of the treating physician who relies on experience and knowledge about the patient to determine dosages and the best treatment for the patient. The information contained herein is provided "as is" and without warranty of any kind. The editors and Flying Publisher & Kamps disclaim responsibility for any errors or omissions or for results obtained from the use of information contained herein.

Design: Attilio Baghino, www.baghino.com
ISBN: 978-3-924774-91-2
Printed in Germany by Druckhaus Süd, www.druckhaus-sued.de

Foreword

5th Edition – 2014

Hepatology - A Clinical Textbook is now in its fifth year and has been substantially updated to reflect the latest medical progress achieved in treating hepatitis C. Because of the timely revisions it remains an up-to-date reference for all relevant aspects of clinical hepatology. This would not have been possible without the continuous contributions of all the authors who have dutifully and elegantly revised and updated their chapters.

Again, the book is available in print, but probably more important as a free download at www.hepatologytextbook.com.

The Editors

Stefan Mauss
Thomas Berg
Jürgen Rockstroh
Christoph Sarrazin
Heiner Wedemeyer

Preface

Hepatology is a rapidly evolving field that will continue to grow and maintain excitement over the next few decades. Viral hepatitis is not unlike HIV 10 or 15 years ago. Today, hepatitis B viral replication can be suppressed by potent antiviral drugs, although there are risks regarding the emergence of resistance. Strategies to enhance the eradication rates of HBV infection still need to be developed. On the other hand, hepatitis C virus infection can be eradicated by treatment with pegylated interferon plus ribavirin, although the sustained virologic response rates are still suboptimal, particularly in those infected with genotype 1. Many new antiviral drugs, especially protease and polymerase inhibitors, are currently in clinical development, and the data from trials reported over the last few years provide optimism that the cure rates for patients with chronic hepatitis C will be enhanced with these new agents, and even that all-oral regimens are around the corner! In other areas of hepatology, e.g., hereditary and metabolic liver diseases, our knowledge is rapidly increasing and new therapeutic options are on the horizon.

In rapidly evolving areas such as hepatology, is the book format the right medium to gather and summarise the current knowledge? Are these books not likely to be outdated the very day they are published? This is indeed a challenge that can be convincingly overcome only by rapid internet-based publishing with regular updates. Another unmatched advantage of a web-based book is the free and unrestricted global access. Viral hepatitis and other liver diseases are a global burden and timely information is important for physicians, scientists, patients and health care officials all around the world.

The editors of this web-based book – Thomas Berg, Stefan Mauss, Jürgen Rockstroh, Christoph Sarrazin and Heiner Wedemeyer – are young, bright, and internationally renowned hepatologists who have created an excellent state-of-the-art textbook on clinical hepatology. The book is well-written and provides in-depth information without being lengthy or redundant. I am convinced that all five experts will remain very active in the field and will continue to update this book regularly as the science progresses. This e-book should rapidly become an international standard.

Stefan Zeuzem – Frankfurt, Germany, January 2009

Preface

Therapeutic options and diagnostic procedures in hepatology have quickly advanced during the last decade. In particular, the management of viral hepatitis has completely changed since the early nineties. Before nucleoside and nucleotide analogs were licensed to treat hepatitis B and before interferon α + ribavirin combination therapy were approved for the treatment of chronic hepatitis C, very few patients infected with HBV or HCV were treated successfully. The only option for most patients with end-stage liver disease or hepatocellular carcinoma was liver transplantation. And even if the patients were lucky enough to be successfully transplanted, reinfection of the transplanted organs remained major challenges. In the late eighties and early nineties discussions were held about rejecting patients

with chronic hepatitis from the waiting list as post-transplant outcome was poor. Today, just 15 years later, hepatitis B represents one of the best indications for liver transplantations, as basically all reinfection can be prevented. In addition, the proportion of patients who need to be transplanted is declining – almost all HBV-infected patients can nowadays be treated successfully with complete suppression of HBV replication and some well-selected patients may even be able to clear HBsAg, the ultimate endpoint of any hepatitis B treatment.

Hepatitis C has also become a curable disease with a sustained response of 50-80% using pegylated interferons in combination with ribavirin. HCV treatment using direct HCV enzyme inhibitors has started to bear fruit (we draw your attention to the HCV Chapters).

Major achievements for the patients do sometimes lead to significant challenges for the treating physician. Is the diagnostic work-up complete? Did I any recent development to evaluate the stage and grade of liver disease? What sensitivity is really necessary for assays to detect hepatitis viruses? When do I need to determine HBV polymerase variants, before and during treatment of hepatitis B? When can I safely stop treatment without risking a relapse? How to treat acute hepatitis B and C? When does a health care worker need a booster vaccination for hepatitis A and B? These are just some of many questions we have to ask ourselves frequently during our daily routine practice. With the increasing number of publications, guidelines and expert opinions it is getting more and more difficult to stay up-to-date and to make the best choices for the patients. That is why *Hepatology – A Clinical Textbook* is a very useful new tool that gives a state-of-the art update on many aspects of HAV, HBV, HCV, HDV and HEV infections. The editors are internationally-known experts in the field of viral hepatitis; all have made significant contributions to understanding the pathogenesis of virus-induced liver disease, diagnosis and treatment of hepatitis virus infections.

Hepatology – A Clinical Textbook gives a comprehensive overview on the epidemiology, virology, and natural history of all hepatitis viruses including hepatitis A, D and E. Subsequent chapters cover all major aspects of the management of hepatitis B and C including coinfections with HIV and liver transplantation. Importantly, complications of chronic liver disease such as hepatocellular carcinoma and recent developments in assessing the stage of liver disease are also covered. Finally, interesting chapters on autoimmune and metabolic non-viral liver diseases complete the book.

We are convinced that this new up-to-date book covering all clinically relevant aspects of viral hepatitis will be of use for every reader. The editors and authors must be congratulated for their efforts.

Michael P. Manns – Hannover, January 2009

Contributing Authors

Fernando Agüero
Infectious Diseases Service
Hospital Clinic - IDIBAPS
University of Barcelona
Villarroel, 170
08036 Barcelona, Spain

Hikmet Akkiz
Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology
Çukurova University
School of Medicine
Adana, Turkey

Akif Altinbas
Diskapi Yildirim Beyazit Education and Research Hospital
Gastroenterology Clinic
Ankara, Turkey

Matthias J. Bahr
Dept. of Medicine I
Sana Kliniken Lübeck
Kronsforder Allee 71-73
23560 Lübeck, Germany

Lars P. Bechmann
Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology,
University Hospital Essen
Hufelandstr. 55
45122 Essen, Germany

Susanne Beckebaum
Department of Transplant Medicine
University Hospital Münster
Domagkstr. 3A
48149 Münster, Germany

Thomas Berg
Sektion Hepatologie
Klinik und Poliklinik für Gastroenterologie & Rheumatologie
Universitätsklinikum Leipzig
Liebigstr. 20
04103 Leipzig, Germany
thomas.berg@medizin.uni-leipzig.de

Leber- und Studienzentrum am Checkpoint
Charlottenstrasse 81
10969 Berlin
berg@leberzentrum-checkpoint.de

Albrecht Böhlig
Sektion Hepatologie
Klinik und Poliklinik für Gastroenterologie & Rheumatologie
Universitätsklinikum Leipzig
Liebigstr. 20
04103 Leipzig, Germany

Florian van Bömmel
Sektion Hepatologie
Klinik und Poliklinik für Gastroenterologie & Rheumatologie
Universitätsklinikum Leipzig
Liebigstr. 20
04103 Leipzig, Germany

Christoph Boesecke
Department of Medicine I
University Hospital Bonn
Sigmund-Freud-Strasse 25
53105 Bonn, Germany

Ali Canbay
Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology,
University Hospital Essen
Hufelandstr. 55
45122 Essen, Germany

Carlos Cervera
Infectious Diseases Service
Hospital Clínic – IDIBAPS
University of Barcelona
Villarroel, 170
08036 Barcelona, Spain

Vito R. Cicinnati
Department of Transplant Medicine
University Hospital Münster
Domagkstr. 3A
48149 Münster, Germany

Markus Cornberg
Dept. of Gastroenterology, Hepatology and Endocrinology
Medical School of Hannover
Carl-Neuberg-Str. 1
30625 Hannover, Germany

Maura Dandri
University Hospital Hamburg-Eppendorf
Zentrum für Innere Medizin
I. Medizinische Klinik
Labor Hepatologie und Virus Hepatitis
Martinistr. 52
20246 Hamburg, Germany

Katja Deterding
Dept. of Gastroenterology, Hepatology and Endocrinology
Medical School of Hannover
Carl-Neuberg-Str. 1
30625 Hannover, Germany

Alejandro Forner
Barcelona Clinic Liver Cancer Group
Liver Unit
Hospital Clínic – IDIBAPS
University of Barcelona
Villarroel, 170
08036 Barcelona, Spain

Juan-Carlos García-Valdecasas
Liver Transplant Unit, Department of Surgery
Hospital Clínic – IDIBAPS
University of Barcelona
Villarroel, 170
08036 Barcelona, Spain

Guido Gerken
Department of Gastroenterology,
University Hospital Essen
Hufelandstr. 55
45122 Essen, Germany

Frank Grünhage
Medical Department II
Saarland University Hospital
Kirrbergerstr. 1
66421 Homburg, Germany

Svenja Hardtke
Dept. of Gastroenterology, Hepatology and Endocrinology
Medical School of Hannover
Carl-Neuberg-Str. 1
30625 Hannover, Germany

Christoph Höner zu Siederdissen
Dept. of Gastroenterology, Hepatology and Endocrinology
Medical School of Hannover
Carl-Neuberg-Str. 1
30625 Hannover, Germany

Bernd Kupfer
Department of Medicine I
University Hospital Bonn
Sigmund-Freud-Strasse 25
53105 Bonn, Germany

Montserrat Laguno
Infectious Diseases Service
Hospital Clínic – IDIBAPS
University of Barcelona
Villarroel, 170
08036 Barcelona, Spain

Frank Lammert
Medical Department II
Saarland University Hospital
Kirrbergerstr. 1
66421 Homburg, Germany

Christian Lange
J. W. Goethe-University Hospital
Medizinische Klinik 1
Theodor-Stern-Kai 7
60590 Frankfurt am Main, Germany

Anna Lligoña
Psychiatry Department
Hospital Clínic – IDIBAPS
University of Barcelona
Villarroel, 170
08036 Barcelona, Spain

Benjamin Maasoumy
Dept. of Gastroenterology,
Hepatology and Endocrinology
Medical School of Hannover
Carl-Neuberg-Str. 1
30625 Hannover, Germany

Michael P. Manns
Dept. of Gastroenterology, Hepatology
and Endocrinology
Medical School of Hannover
Carl-Neuberg-Str. 1
30625 Hannover, Germany

Christian Manzardo
Infectious Diseases Service
Hospital Clínic – IDIBAPS
University of Barcelona
Villarroel, 170
08036 Barcelona, Spain

Stefan Mauss
Center for HIV and
Hepatogastroenterology
Grafenberger Allee 128a
40237 Duesseldorf, Germany
stefan.mauss@center-duesseldorf.de

José M. Miró
Infectious Diseases Service
Hospital Clínic – IDIBAPS
University of Barcelona
Villarroel, 170
08036 Barcelona, Spain

Raphael Mohr
Department of Medicine I
University Hospital Bonn
Sigmund-Freud-Strasse 25
53105 Bonn, Germany

Asuncion Moreno
Infectious Diseases Service
Hospital Clínic – IDIBAPS
University of Barcelona
Villarroel, 170
08036 Barcelona, Spain

Claus Niederau
Katholische Kliniken Oberhausen
gGmbH, St. Josef Hospital
Department of Internal Medicine
Academic Teaching Hospital of the
University
Duisburg-Essen
Mülheimer Str. 83
46045 Oberhausen, Germany

Jörg Petersen
Liver Unit IFI Institute for
Interdisciplinary Medicine
Asklepios Klinik St George Hamburg
Lohmühlenstr. 5
20099 Hamburg, Germany

Sven Pischke
Dept. of Gastroenterology, Hepatology
and Endocrinology
Medical School of Hannover
Carl-Neuberg-Str. 1
30625 Hannover, Germany

Kerstin Port
Dept. of Gastroenterology, Hepatology
and Endocrinology
Medical School of Hannover
Carl-Neuberg-Str. 1
30625 Hannover, Germany

Karl-Philipp Puchner
Charité, Campus Virchow-Klinikum,
Universitätsmedizin
Medizinische Klinik m. S. Hepatologie
und Gastroenterologie
Augustenburger Platz 1
13353 Berlin, Germany

Arnold Radtke
Dpt of General and Visceral Surgery
University Hospital Muenster
Waldeyer Str. 1
48149 Münster, Germany

Antonio Rimola
Liver Transplant Unit - CIBEREHD
Hospital Clínic – IDIBAPS
University of Barcelona
Villarroel, 170
08036 Barcelona, Spain

J. K. Rockstroh
Department of Medicine I
University Hospital Bonn
Sigmund-Freud-Strasse 25
53105 Bonn, Germany
rockstroh@uni-bonn.de

Christoph Sarrazin
J. W. Goethe-University Hospital
Medizinische Klinik 1
Theodor-Stern-Kai 7
60590 Frankfurt am Main, Germany
sarrazin@em.uni-frankfurt.de

Martin Schäfer
Department of Psychiatry
and Psychotherapy
Kliniken Essen-Mitte
Ev. Huyssenstift
Henricistraße 92
45136 Essen, Germany

Carolynne Schwarze-Zander
Department of Medicine I
University Hospital Bonn
Sigmund-Freud-Strasse 25
53105 Bonn, Germany

Ulrich Spengler
Department of Internal Medicine 1
University Hospitals of Bonn
University
Sigmund-Freud-Strasse 25
53105 Bonn, Germany

Christian P. Strassburg
Department of Medicine I
University Hospital Bonn
Sigmund-Freud-Strasse 25
53105 Bonn, Germany

Montserrat Tuset
Pharmacy Department
Hospital Clínic – IDIBAPS
University of Barcelona
Villarroel, 170
08036 Barcelona, Spain

Jan-Christian Wasmuth
Department of Medicine I
University Hospital Bonn
Sigmund-Freud-Strasse 25
53105 Bonn, Germany

Heiner Wedemeyer
Dept. of Gastroenterology, Hepatology
and Endocrinology
Medical School of Hannover
Carl-Neuberg-Str. 1
30625 Hannover, Germany
wedemeyer.heiner@mh-hannover.de

Johannes Wiegand
Sektion Hepatologie
Klinik und Poliklinik für
Gastroenterologie & Rheumatologie
Universitätsklinikum Leipzig
Liebigstr. 20
04103 Leipzig, Germany

Stefan Zeuzem
J. W. Goethe-University Hospital
Medizinische Klinik 1
Theodor-Stern-Kai 7
60590 Frankfurt am Main, Germany

Table of Contents

Abbreviations

ADV: adefovir dipivoxil
AHA: autoimmune-hemolytic anemia
Alb-IFN: albumin interferon
ALT: alanine aminotransferase
ASH: alcoholic steatohepatitis
AST: aspartate aminotransferase
BID: twice-a-day
BOC: boceprevir
cccDNA: covalently closed circular DNA
cEVR: complete early virological response
CIFN: consensus interferon
CNI: calcineurin inhibitors
CP: Child-Pugh
CPT: Child-Pugh-Turcotte
DAAs: directly acting antivirals
EASL: European Association for the Study of the Liver
EBV: Epstein-Barr virus
EHM: extrahepatic manifestation
EMA: European Medecines Agency
ERC: endoscopic retrograde cholangiography
ER: endoplasmic reticulum
eRVR: extended rapid virological response
ETV: entecavir
EVL: everolimus
EVR: early virologic response
GFR: glomerular filtration rate
GH: growth hormone
GM-CSF: granulocyte macrophage colony stimulating factor
GN: glomerulonephritis
HBcAg: hepatitis B core antigen
HBeAg: hepatitis B early antigen
HBsAg: hepatitis B surface antigen
HBV: hepatitis B virus
HCV: hepatitis C virus
HCV RNA: riboneucleic acid of hepatitis C virus
HCC: hepatocellular carcinoma
HIV: Human immunodeficiency virus
HRS: hepatorenal syndrome
IFN a**:** interferon a
IGF-1: insulin growth factor-1
IgM: immunoglobulin M
INR: international normalised ratio
IPF: idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis
ITP: immune thrombocytopenic purpura
IU: international units
LAM: lamivudine
LDL: low density lipoproteins
LDLT: living donor liver transplantation
LdT: telbivudine
LTx: liver transplantation
LPS: lipopolysaccharide
MELD: Model for End-Stage Liver Disease
MPGN: membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis
NASBA: nucleic acid sequence based amplification
NASH: non-alcoholic steatohepatitis
NHL: non-Hodgkin lymphoma
NTR: non-translated regions
PCR: polymerase chain reaction
PCT: porphyria cutanea tarda
PDGF: platelet-derived growth factor
PEG-IFN: pegylated interferon
PT: prothrombin time
QD: once-a-day
QW: once-a-week
RBV: ribavirin
RF: rheumatoid factor
RVR: rapid virologic response
SOF: sofosbuvir
SRL: sirolimus
SSRI: serotonin reuptake inhibitor
SVR: sustained virologic response
TDF: tenofovir disoproxil fumarate
TGF-β: transforming growth factor β
TID: three times a day
TLV: telaprevir
VLDL: very low-density lipoproteins

1. Hepatitis A

Sven Pischke and Heiner Wedemeyer

The virus

Hepatitis A is an inflammatory liver disease caused by infection with the hepatitis A virus (HAV). HAV is a single-stranded 27 nm non-enveloped, icosahedral RNA virus, which was first identified by immune electron microscopy in 1973 (Feinstone 1973). The virus belongs to the hepadnavirus genus of the *Picornaviridae*. It was recently shown that HAV uses host cell exosome membranes as an envelope which leads to protection from antibody mediated neutralization (Feng 2013). Of note, only blood but not bile HAV shows host-derived membranes.

Seven different HAV genotypes have been described, of which four are able to infect humans (Lemon 1992).

The positive-sense single-stranded HAV RNA has a length of 7.5 kb and consists of a 5' non-coding region of 740 nucleotides, a coding region of 2225 nucleotides and a 3' non-coding region of approximately 60 nucleotides.

Acute hepatitis A is associated with a limited type I interferon response (Lanford 2011), which may be explained by cleavage of essential adaptor proteins by an HAV protease-polymerase precursor (Qu 2011). A dominant role of CD4+ T cells to terminate HAV infection has been established in HAV infected chimpanzees (Zhou 2012). However, in humans strong HAV-specific CD8 T cells have also been described, potentially contributing to resolution of infection (Schulte 2011). A failure to maintain these HAV-specific T cell responses could increase the risk for relapsing hepatitis A.

Epidemiology

HAV infections occur worldwide, either sporadically or in epidemic outbreaks. An estimated 1.4 million cases of HAV infections occur each year. HAV is usually transmitted and spread via the fecal-oral route (Lemon 1985). Thus, infection with HAV occurs predominantly in areas of lower socio-economic status and reduced hygienic standards, especially in developing, tropical countries. Not surprisingly, a study investigating French children confirmed that travel to countries endemic for HAV is indeed a risk factor for anti-HAV seropositivty (Faillon 2012). In industrialised countries like the US or Germany the number of reported cases has

decreased markedly in the past decades, according to official data published by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC, Atlanta, USA) and the Robert Koch Institute (RKI, Berlin, Germany) (Figure 1). This decrease is mainly based on improved sanitary conditions and anti-HAV vaccination. Vaccination programs have also resulted in fewer HAV infections in various endemic countries including Argentina, Brazil, Italy, China, Russia, Ukraine, Spain, Belarus, Israel and Turkey (Hendrickx 2008).

Transmission

HAV is usually transmitted fecal-orally either by person-to-person contact or ingestion of contaminated food or water. Five days before clinical symptoms appear, the virus can be isolated from the feces of patients (Dienstag 1975). The hepatits A virus stays detectable in the feces up to two weeks after the onset of jaundice. Fecal excretion of HAV up to five months after infection can occur in children and immunocompromised persons.

Risk groups for acquiring an HAV infection in Western countries are health care providers, military personnel, psychiatric patients and men who have sex with men. Parenteral transmission by blood transfusion has been described but is a rare event. Mother-to-fetus transmission has not been reported (Tong 1981). Distinct genetic polymorphisms including variants in ABCB1, TGFB1, XRCC1 may be associated with a susceptibility to HAV (Zhang 2012).

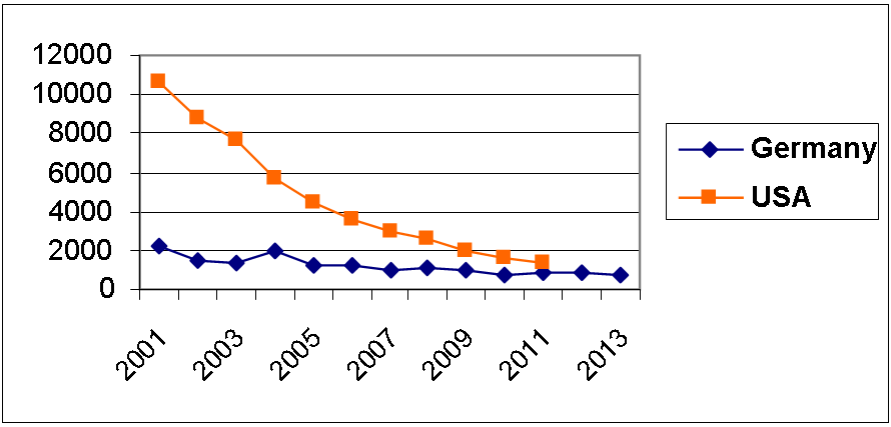


Figure 1. Number of reported cases of HAV infections in the US and Germany over the last decade (Sources: CDC through 2011 and Robert Koch Institut through 2013, last updated January 12, 2014)

Clinical course

The clinical course of HAV infection varies greatly, ranging from asymptomatic, subclinical infections to cholestatic hepatitis or fulminant liver failure. Most infections in children are either asymptomatic or unrecognized, while 70% of adults develop clinical symptoms of hepatitis with jaundice and hepatomegaly.

The incubation time ranges between 15 and 49 days with a mean of approximately 30 days (Koff 1992). Initial symptoms are usually non-specific and include weakness, nausea, vomiting, anorexia, fever, abdominal discomfort, and right upper quadrant pain (Lednar 1985). As the disease progresses, some patients develop jaundice, darkened urine, uncoloured stool and pruritus. The prodromal symptoms usually diminish when jaundice appears.

Approximately 10% of infections take a biphasic or relapsing course. In these cases the initial episode lasts about 3-5 weeks, followed by a period of biochemical remission with normal liver enzymes for 4-5 weeks. Relapse may mimic the initial episode of the acute hepatitis and complete normalization of ALT and AST values may take several months. (Tong 1995). A recent investigation in two HAV-infected chimpanzees demonstrated that the CD4 count decreased after clinical signs of hepatitis A disappeared (Zhou 2012). Eventually an intrahepatic reservoir of HAV genomes that decays slowly in combination with this CD4 response may explain the second phase of disease, but further observations on human patients are required to verify this.

Cases of severe fulminant HAV infection leading to hepatic failure occur more often in patients with underlying liver disease. Conflicting data on the course of acute hepatitis A have been reported for patients with chronic hepatitis C. While some studies showed a higher incidence of fulminant hepatitis (Vento 1998), other studies do not confirm these findings and even suggest that HAV superinfection may lead to clearance of HCV infection (Deterding 2006). Other risk factors for more severe courses of acute hepatitis A are age, malnutrition and immunosuppression. Severity of liver disease during acute hepatitis A has recently been shown to be associated with a distinct polymorphism in TIM1, the gene encoding for the HAV receptor (Kim 2011). An insertion of 6 amino acids at position 157 of TIM1 leads to more efficient HAV binding and greater NKT lytic activity against HAV infected liver cells.

In contrast to hepatitis E, there are no precise data on the outcome of HAV infection during pregnancy. Some data suggest an increased risk of gestational complications and premature birth (Elinav 2006).

HAV infection has a lethal course in 0.1% of children, in 0.4% of persons aged 15-39 years, and in 1.1% in persons older than 40 years (Lemon 1985). In contrast to the other fecal-orally transmitted hepatitis, hepatitis E, no chronic courses of HAV infection have been reported so far.

Extrahepatic manifestations

Extrahepatic manifestations are uncommon in HAV (Pischke 2007). If they occur, they usually show an acute onset and disappear upon resolution of HAV infection in most cases. Possible extrahepatic manifestations of acute HAV infection are arthralgia, diarrhea, renal failure, red cell aplasia, generalised lymphadenopathy, and pancreatitis. Arthralgia can be found in 11% of patients with hepatitis A.

Very uncommon are severe extrahepatic manifestations like pericarditis and/or renal failure. An association of hepatitis A with cryoglobulinemia has been reported but is a rare event (Schiff 1992). Furthermore, cutaneous vasculitis can occur. In some cases, skin biopsies reveal anti-HAV-specific IgM antibodies and

complements in the vessel walls (Schiff 1992). In contrast to hepatitis B or C, renal involvement is rare, and there are very few case reports showing acute renal failure associated with HAV infection (Pischke 2007). Recently it has been shown that approximately 8% of hepatitis A cases are associated with acute kidney injury (Choi 2011).

Diagnosis

Diagnosis of acute HAV infection is based on the detection of anti-HAV IgM antibodies or HAV RNA. The presence of HAV IgG antibodies can indicate acute or previous HAV infection. HAV IgM and IgG antibodies also become positive early after vaccination, with IgG antibodies persisting for at least two to three decades after vaccination. Available serological tests show a very high sensitivity and specificity. Recently, a study from Taiwan revealed that HIV-infected patients develop protective antibody titres after HAV vaccination less frequently than healthy controls (Tseng 2012). In addition a study examining the immune response to HAV vaccination in 282 HIV-infected patients (Mena 2013) demonstrated that male sex or HCV coinfection were associated with lower response rates. The clinical relevance of these findings needs to be investigated in further studies.

Delayed seroconversion may occur in immunocompromised individuals, and testing for HAV RNA should be considered in immunosuppressed individuals with unclear hepatitis. HAV RNA testing of blood and stool can determine if the patient is still infectious. However, it has to be kept in mind that various in-house HAV RNA assays may not be specific for all HAV genotypes and thus false-negative results can occur.

Elevated results for serum aminotransferases and serum bilirubin can be found in symptomatic patients (Tong 1995). ALT levels are usually higher than serum aspartate aminotransferase (AST) in non-fulminant cases. Increased serum levels of alkaline phosphatase and gamma-glutamyl transferase indicate a cholestatic form of HAV infection. The increase and the peak of serum aminotransferases usually precede the increase of serum bilirubin. Laboratory markers of inflammation, like an elevated erythrocyte sedimentation rate and increased immunoglobulin levels, can also frequently be detected.

Treatment and prognosis

There is no specific antiviral therapy for treatment of hepatitis A. However, recently a study from the Netherlands investigated the use of post-exposure HAV vaccination or prophylaxis with immunglobulins in patients with household contact with HAV. In this study none of the patients who received immunoglobulins, while some who received the vaccine, developed acute hepatitis A. The study revealed that HAV vaccination post-exposure might be a sufficient option in younger patients (<40 years) while older patients (>40 years) might benefit from immunglobulins (Whelan 2013). The disease usually takes a mild to moderate course, which requires no hospitalisation, and only in fulminant cases is initiation of symptomatic therapy necessary. Prolonged or biphasic courses should be monitored closely. HAV may persist for some time in the liver even when HAV RNA becomes negative in blood

and stool (Lanford 2011), which needs to be kept in mind for immunocompromised individuals. Acute hepatitis may rarely proceed to acute liver failure; liver transplantation is required in few cases. In the US, 4% of all liver transplantations performed for acute liver failure were due to hepatitis A (Ostapowicz 2002). In a cohort of acute liver failures at one transplant center in Germany approximately 1% of patients suffered from HAV infection (Hadem 2008). The outcome of patients after liver transplantation for fulminant hepatitis A is excellent. Timely referral to liver transplant centers is therefore recommended for patients with severe or fulminant hepatitis A.

References

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Viral Hepatitis Surveillance – United States 2010. Hepatitis A virus, http://www.cdc.gov/hepatitis/Statistics/index.htm, accessed 26 January 2013.

Choi HK, Song YG, Han SH, et al. Clinical features and outcomes of acute kidney injury among patients with acute hepatitis A. J Clin Virol 2011;52:192-7. (Abstract)

Deterding K, Tegtmeyer B, Cornberg M, et al. Hepatitis A virus infection suppresses hepatitis C virus replication and may lead to clearance of HCV. J Hepatol 2006;45:770-8. (Abstract)

Dienstag JL, Feinstone SM, Kapikian AZ, Purcell RH. Faecal shedding of hepatitis-A antigen. Lancet 1975;1:765-7.

Elinav E, Ben-Dov IZ, Shapira Y, et al. Acute hepatitis A infection in pregnancy is associated with high rates of gestational complications and preterm labor. Gastroenterology 2006;130:1129-34. (Abstract)

Faillon S, Martinot A, Hau I, et al. Impact of travel on the seroprevalence of hepatitis A in children. J Clin Virol. 2013 Jan;56(1):46-51. doi: 10.1016/j.jcv.2012.10.004.

Feinstone SM, Kapikian AZ, Purceli RH. Hepatitis A: detection by immune electron microscopy of a viruslike antigen associated with acute illness. Science 1973;182:1026-8. (Abstract)

Feng Z, Hensley L, McKnight KL, Hu F, Madden V, Ping L, et al. A pathogenic picornavirus acquires an envelope by hijacking cellular membranes. Nature. 2013;496(7445):367-71.

Hadem J, Stiefel P, Bahr MJ, et al. Prognostic implications of lactate, bilirubin, and etiology in German patients with acute liver failure. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2008;6:339-45. (Abstract)

Hendrickx G, Van Herck K, Vorsters A, et al. Has the time come to control hepatitis A globally? Matching prevention to the changing epidemiology. J Viral Hepat 2008;15 Suppl 2:1-15. (Abstract)

Kim HY, Eyheramonho MB, Pichavant M, et al. A polymorphism in TIM1 is associated with susceptibility to severe hepatitis A virus infection in humans. J Clin Invest. 2011 121:1111-8.

Koff RS. Clinical manifestations and diagnosis of hepatitis A virus infection. Vaccine 1992;10 Suppl 1:S15-7. (Abstract)

Lanford RE, Feng Z, Chavez D, et al. Acute hepatitis A virus infection is associated with a limited type I interferon response and persistence of intrahepatic viral RNA. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2011;108:11223-8. (Abstract)

Lednar WM, Lemon SM, Kirkpatrick JW, Redfield RR, Fields ML, Kelley PW. Frequency of illness associated with epidemic hepatitis A virus infections in adults. Am J Epidemiol 1985;122:226-33. (Abstract)

Lemon SM, Jansen RW, Brown EA. Genetic, antigenic and biological differences between strains of hepatitis A virus. Vaccine 1992;10 Suppl 1:S40-4. (Abstract)

Lemon SM. Type A viral hepatitis. New developments in an old disease. N Engl J Med 1985;313:1059-67. (Abstract)

Mena G, García-Basteiro AL, Llupià A, Factors associated with the immune response to hepatitis A vaccination in HIV-infected patients in the era of highly active antiretroviral therapy. Vaccine. 2013 12;31(36):3668-74.
Ostapowicz G, Fontana RJ, Schiodt FV, et al. Results of a prospective study of acute liver failure at 17 tertiary care centers in the United States. Ann Intern Med 2002;137:947-54. (Abstract)
Pischke S, Vogel A, Jaeckel E, Manns MP. Immunopathogenesis of Extrahepatic Manifestations in HAV, HBV, and HCV Infections. In: Liver Immunology. Totowa, New Jersey: Humana Press, 2007:209-17.
Qu L, Feng Z, Yamane, et al. Disruption of TLR3 signaling due to cleavage of TRIF by the hepatitis A virus protease-polymerase processing intermediate, 3CD. PLoS Pathog. 2011 Sep;7(9):e1002169.
Schiff ER. Atypical clinical manifestations of hepatitis A. Vaccine 1992;10 Suppl 1:S18-20. (Abstract)
Schulte I, Hitziger T, Giugliano S, et al. Characterization of CD8+ T-cell response in acute and resolved hepatitis A virus infection. J Hepatol. 2011 54:201-8.
Tseng YT, Chang SY, Liu WC, et al. Comparative effectiveness of two doses versus three doses of hepatitis a vaccine in HIV-infected and HIV-uninfected men who have sex with men. Hepatology. 2012 Dec 19. doi: 10.1002/hep.26210. [Epub ahead of print]
Tong MJ, el-Farra NS, Grew MI. Clinical manifestations of hepatitis A: recent experience in a community teaching hospital. J Infect Dis 1995;171 Suppl 1:S15-8. (Abstract)
Tong MJ, Thursby M, Rakela J, McPeak C, Edwards VM, Mosley JW. Studies on the maternal-infant transmission of the viruses which cause acute hepatitis. Gastroenterology 1981;80:999-1004. (Abstract)
Vento S, Garofano T, Renzini C, et al. Fulminant hepatitis associated with hepatitis A virus superinfection in patients with chronic hepatitis C. N Engl J Med 1998;338:286-90. (Abstract)
Whelan J, Sonder GJ, Bovee L, et al. Evaluation of hepatitis A vaccine in post-exposure prophylaxis, The Netherlands, 2004-2012. PLoS One 2013, 17: e78914.
Zhou Y, Callendret B, Xu D, et al. Dominance of the CD4(+) T helper cell response during acute resolving hepatitis A virus infection. J Exp Med. 2012 Jul 30;209(8):1481-92. doi: 10.1084/jem.20111906. Epub 2012 Jul 2.
Zhang L, Yesupriya A, Hu DJ, et al. Variants in ABCB1, TGFB1, and XRCC1 genes and susceptibility to viral hepatitis A infection in Mexican Americans. Hepatology. 2012; 55:1008-18.

2. Hepatitis B

Raphael Mohr, Christoph Boesecke and Jan-Christian Wasmuth

Introduction

Approximately one third of the world's population has serological evidence of past or present infection with the hepatitis B virus (HBV). An estimated 350-400 million people are surface HBV antigen (HBsAg) carriers (Goldstein 2005, EASL 2012). Thus, HBV infection is one of the most important infectious diseases worldwide. Around one million persons die of HBV-related causes annually.

There is a wide range of HBV prevalence rates in different parts of the world. HBV prevalence varies from 0.1% up to 20%. Low prevalence (<2%) areas represent 12% of the global population and include Western Europe, the United States and Canada, Australia and New Zealand. In these regions, the lifetime risk of infection is less than 20%. Intermediate prevalence is defined as 2% to 7%, with a lifetime risk of infection of 20-60% and includes the Mediterranean countries, Japan, Central Asia, the Middle East, and Latin and South America, representing about 43% of the global population. High prevalence areas (≥8%) include Southeast Asia, China, and sub-Saharan Africa, where a lifetime likelihood of infection is greater than 60%. The diverse prevalence rates are probably related to differences in age at infection, which correlates with the risk of chronicity. The progression rate from acute to chronic HBV infection decreases with age. It is approximately 90% for an infection acquired perinatally, and is as low as 5% (or even lower) for adults (Stevens 1975, Wasley 2008).

The incidence of new infections has decreased in most developed countries, most likely due to the implementation of vaccination strategies (Rantala 2008). However, exact data is difficult to generate as many cases remain undetected due to the asymptomatic nature of many infections (CDC 2010). In Germany 1670 cases of acute hepatitis B were documented in the year 2012, corresponding to an incidence rate of 0.8 per 100,000 inhabitants (RKI 2013). In 1997 there were 6135 documented cases of acute hepatitis B. Likewise, the incidence of acute hepatitis B in the United States has decreased dramatically from 1990 to 2010 (Wasley 2008, CDC 2012). It is expected that this number will further decrease in countries with implementation of vaccination programs. In Germany 87% of all children starting

school were fully vaccinated in 2006 with a trend toward increasing coverage (Poethko-Muller 2007, RKI 2013).

Although the incidence of acute HBV infection has decreased in most countries due to the implementation of vaccination programs, HBV-related complications such as cancers and deaths have been on the increase (Gomaa 2008, Hatzakis 2011, Zhang 2013). Reasons might be the delay of vaccination effects, improved diagnosis, and better documentation of HBV cases. Although a drop in prevalence has been observed in many countries, estimates are difficult due to a continuously growing migration from high or medium prevalence areas to low prevalence areas (Belongia 2008).

Transmission

The routes of HBV transmission:

- Sexual
- Percutaneous (intravenous drug use)
- Perinatal
- Horizontal
- Transfusion
- Nosocomial (including needle-stick injury)
- Organ transplantation

There is considerable variation in the predominance of transmission modes in different geographic areas. For example, in low prevalence areas such as Western Europe, the routes are mainly unprotected sexual intercourse and intravenous drug use. In high prevalence areas like sub-Saharan Africa perinatal infection is the predominant mode of transmission. Horizontal transmission, particularly in early childhood, is regarded as the major route of transmission in intermediate prevalence areas.

Sexual transmission

In low prevalence areas sexual transmission is the major route of transmission. Approximately 40% of new HBV infections in the United States is considered to be transmitted via heterosexual intercourse, and 25% occurs in men who have sex with men (MSM) (Wasley 2008). Measures to prevent HBV transmission are vaccination and safer sex, ie, use of condoms. However, there is an ongoing debate regarding what to advise low-viremic patients.

Percutaneous inoculation

Percutaneous transmission seems to be an effective mode of HBV transmission. The most important route is sharing syringes and needles by intravenous drug users (IVDU). In low prevalence areas such as Europe and the United States about 15% of newly diagnosed HBV infections is in the IVDU population (Wasley 2008).

Other situations with possible percutaneous inoculation of HBV are sharing shaving razors or toothbrushes, although the exact number remains unknown. In addition, certain practices like acupuncture, tattooing, and body piercing have been associated with transmission of hepatitis B.

Public health education and the use of disposable needles or equipment are important methods of prevention.

Perinatal transmission

Transmission from an HBeAg-positive mother to her infant may occur *in utero*, at the time of birth, or after birth. The rate of infection can be as high as 90%. However, neonatal vaccination has demonstrated high efficacy indicating that most infections occur at or shortly before birth. On the other hand, cesarean section seems not as protective as it is in other vertically transmitted diseases like HIV.

The risk of transmission from mother to infant is related to the mother's HBV replicative rate. There seems to be a direct correlation between maternal HBV DNA levels and the likelihood of transmission. In mothers with highly replicating HBV the risk of transmission may be up to 85 or 90%, and continuously lowers with lower HBV DNA levels (Burk 1994, Zhang 2012). In some studies there has been almost no perinatal transmission if the mother has no significant ongoing replication ($<10^5$ log copies/ml) (Li 2004).

It is possible to reduce the risk of perinatal transmission in several ways. The first step is identification of persons at risk. Testing for HBsAg should be performed in all women at the first prenatal visit and repeated later in pregnancy if appropriate (CDC 2011). Newborns born to HBV-positive mothers can be effectively protected by passive-active immunization (>90% protection rate) (del Canho 1997, Dienstag 2008). Hepatitis B immunoglobulin for passive immunization should be given as early as possible (within 12 hours), but can be given up to seven days after birth if seropositivity of the mother is detected later. Active immunization follows a standard regimen and is given at three time points (10 µg at day 0, month 1, and month 6). Anti-HBV treatment of the mother with nucleoside analogs may be considered, especially in mothers with high HBV DNA levels, ie, HBV DNA $>10^6$ copies/ml or 2 x 10^5 IU/ml. In one randomised, prospective, placebo-controlled study, treatment of the mother with telbivudine resulted in prevention of almost all cases of vertical transmission compared to a vertical transmission rate of about 10% in the arm receiving only active and passive immunisation (Han 2011). Telbivudine or tenofovir seem to be treatment of choice. Adefovir and entecavir are not recommended in pregnancy (Cornberg 2011).

As mentioned earlier, cesarean section should not be performed routinely, except in cases of high viral load. If the child is vaccinated, (s)he may be breastfed (Hill 2002).

Horizontal transmission

Children may acquire HBV infection through horizontal transmission via minor breaks in the skin or mucous membranes or close contact with other children. HBV remains viable outside the human body for a prolonged period and is infectious in the environment for at least 7 days (Lok 2007). As a result, transmission via contaminated household articles such as toothbrushes, razors and even toys may be possible. Although HBV DNA has been detected in various body secretions of hepatitis B carriers, there is no firm evidence of HBV transmission via body fluids other than blood.

Blood transfusion

Blood donors are routinely screened for hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg). Therefore incidence of transfusion-related hepatitis B has significantly decreased. The risk of acquiring post-transfusion hepatitis B depends on factors like prevalence and donor testing strategies. In low prevalence areas it is estimated to be one to four per million blood components transfused (Dodd 2000, Polizzotto 2008). In high prevalence areas it is considerably higher (around 1 in 20,000) (Shang 2007, Vermeulen 2011).

There are different strategies for donor screening. Most countries use HBsAg screening of donors. Others, like the United States, use both HBsAg and anti-HBc. Routine screening of anti-HBc remains controversial, as the specificity is low and patients with cleared hepatitis have to be excluded. Screening of pooled blood samples or even individual samples may be further improved by nucleic acid amplification techniques. However, this is an issue of continuous debate due to relatively low risk reduction and associated costs.

Nosocomial infection

Nosocomial infection can occur from patient to patient, from patient to health care worker and vice versa. HBV is considered the most commonly transmitted blood-borne virus in the healthcare setting.

In general, nosocomial infection of hepatitis B can and should be prevented. Despite prevention strategies, documented cases of nosocomial infections do occur (Williams 2004, Amini-Bavil-Olyaee 2012). However, the exact risk of nosocomial infection is unknown. The number of infected patients reported in the literature is likely to be an underestimate of true figures as many infected patients may be asymptomatic and only a fraction of exposed patients are recalled for testing.

Strategies to prevent nosocomial transmission of hepatitis B:

- use of disposable needles and equipment,
- sterilization of surgical instruments,
- infection control measures, and
- vaccination of healthcare workers.

Due to the implementation of routine vaccination of health care workers the incidence of HBV infection among them is lower than in the general population (Duseja 2002, Mahoney 1997). Therefore, transmission from healthcare workers to patients is a rare event, while the risk of transmission from an HBV-positive patient to a health care worker seems to be higher.

Healthcare workers positive for hepatitis B are not generally prohibited from working. However, the individual situation has to be evaluated in order to decide on the necessary measures. Traditionally, HBeAg-negative healthcare workers are considered not to be infective, whereas HBeAg-positive healthcare workers should wear double gloves and not perform certain activities, to be defined on an individual basis (Gunson 2003). However, there have been cases of transmission of hepatitis B from HBsAg-positive, HBeAg-negative surgeons to patients (Teams 1997). Hepatitis B virus has been identified with a precore stop codon mutation resulting in non-expression of HBeAg despite active HBV replication. Therefore, HBV DNA testing has been implemented in some settings, although this may not always be

reliable due to fluctuating levels of HBV DNA. In most developed countries guidelines for hepatitis B positive healthcare workers have been established and should be consulted (Cornberg 2011).

Organ transplantation

Transmission of HBV infection has been reported after transplantation of extrahepatic organs from HBsAg-positive donors (eg, kidney, cornea) (Dickson 1997). Therefore, organ donors are routinely screened for HBsAg. The role of anti-HBc is controversial, as it is in screening of blood donors. Reasons are the possibility of false positive results, the potential loss of up to 5% of donors even in low endemic areas, and the uncertainty about the infectivity of organs, especially extrahepatic organs, from donors who have isolated anti-HBc (Dickson 1997). There is an increased risk of HBV infection for the recipient if organs of such donors are transplanted as compared to anti-HBc-negative donors.

Postexposure prophylaxis

In case of exposure to HBV in any of the circumstances mentioned above, postexposure prophylaxis is recommended for all non-vaccinated persons. A passive-active immunization is recommended. The first dose of active immunization should be given as early as possible. 12 hours after the exposure is usually considered the latest time point for effective postexposure prophylaxis. One dose of hepatitis B-immunoglobulin (HBIG) should be administered at the same time, if the source is known to be HBsAg-positive. The other two doses of vaccine should be administered according to the usual schedule.

Vaccinated individuals with a documented response do not need postexposure prophylaxis. Individuals who have had no post-vaccination testing should be tested for anti-HBs titer as soon as possible. If this is not possible, or the anti-HBs titer is insufficient (<100 IU/l), they will require a second course of vaccination.

Individuals who are documented non-responders will require two doses of HBIG given one month apart.

Natural history and clinical manifestations

The spectrum of clinical manifestations of HBV infection varies in both acute and chronic disease. During the acute phase, manifestations range from subclinical or anicteric hepatitis to icteric hepatitis and, in some cases, fulminant hepatitis. During the chronic phase, manifestations range from an asymptomatic carrier state to chronic hepatitis, cirrhosis, and hepatocellular carcinoma. Extrahepatic manifestations can occur in both acute and chronic infection.

Acute hepatitis

After HBV transmission, the incubation period lasts from one to four months. A prodromal phase may appear before acute hepatitis develops. During this period a serum sickness-like syndrome may develop. This syndrome manifests with fever, skin rash, arthralgia and arthritis. It will usually cease with the onset of hepatitis. At least 70% of patients will then have subclinical or anicteric hepatitis, while less than 30% will develop icteric hepatitis. The most prominent clinical symptoms of

hepatitis are right upper quadrant discomfort, nausea, jaundice and other unspecific constitutional symptoms. In case of coinfection with other hepatitis viruses or other underlying liver disease the clinical course may be more severe. The symptoms including jaundice generally disappear after one to three months, but some patients have prolonged fatigue even after normalisation of serum aminotransferase concentrations.

Concentrations of alanine and aspartate aminotransferase levels (ALT and AST) may rise to 1000-2000 IU/L in the acute phase. ALT is typically higher than AST. Bilirubin concentration may be normal in a substantial portion of patients. In patients who recover, normalisation of serum aminotransferases usually occurs within one to four months. Persistent elevation of serum ALT for more than six months indicates progression to chronic hepatitis.

The rate of progression from acute to chronic hepatitis B is primarily determined by the age at infection (Ganem 2004, McMahon 1985). In adult-acquired infection the chronicity rate is 5% or less, whereas it is higher if acquired at younger ages. It is estimated to be approximately 90% for perinatally acquired infection, and 20-50% for infections between the ages of one and five years.

For decades it was assumed that patients who recover from acute hepatitis B actually clear the virus from the body. However, over time basic research has shown that even in patients positive for anti-HBs and anti-HBc, HBV DNA may persist lifelong in the form of covalently closed circular DNA (cccDNA) and this latent infection maintains the T cell response that keeps the virus under control (Yotsuyanagi 1998, Guner 2011, Gerlich 2013). Complete eradication rarely occurs. This is an important finding, as immunosuppression can lead to reactivation of the virus, eg, after organ transplant or during chemotherapy.

Fulminant hepatic failure is unusual, occurring in approximately 0.1-0.5% of patients. Reasons and risk factors for fulminant hepatitis B are not well understood (Garfein 2004). This may correlate with substance use or coinfections with other viruses. Fulminant hepatitis B is believed to be due to massive immune-mediated lysis of infected hepatocytes. This is why many patients with fulminant hepatitis B have no evidence of HBV replication at presentation.

Antiviral treatment of patients with acute hepatitis B usually is not recommended (Cornberg 2011). In adults, the likelihood of fulminant hepatitis B is less than 1%, and the likelihood of progression to chronic hepatitis B is less than 5%. Therefore, treatment of acute hepatitis B is mainly supportive in the majority of patients. Antiviral treatment with HBV polymerase inhibitors can be considered in certain subsets of patients, eg, patients with a severe or prolonged course of hepatitis B, patients coinfected with other hepatitis viruses or underlying liver diseases, patients with immunosuppression, or patients with fulminant liver failure undergoing liver-transplantation (Kondili 2004, Tillmann 2006).

In addition, contacts of the patient should be checked for exposure to hepatitis B.

Chronic hepatitis

The HBV chronicity rate is around 5% or less in adult-acquired infection, as mentioned earlier. In perinatally acquired infection it is estimated to be approximately 90%, and 20-50% for infections between the ages of one and five

years (Ganem 2004, McMahon 1985). Most patients will not have a history of acute hepatitis.

Most patients with chronic hepatitis B are clinically asymptomatic. Some may have nonspecific symptoms such as fatigue. In most instances, significant clinical symptoms will develop only if liver disease progresses to decompensated cirrhosis. In addition, extrahepatic manifestations may cause symptoms.

Accordingly, a physical exam will be normal in most instances. In advanced liver disease there may be clinical signs of chronic liver disease such as splenomegaly, spider angioma, caput medusae, palmar erythema, testicular atrophy, gynecomastia, etc. In patients with decompensated cirrhosis, jaundice, ascites, peripheral edema, and encephalopathy may be present.

Laboratory testing shows mild to moderate elevation in serum AST and ALT in most patients, whereas normal transaminases occur rarely. During exacerbation, serum ALT concentration may be as high as 50 times the upper limit of normal. Alpha-fetoprotein concentrations correlate with disease activity. In exacerbations of hepatitis B, concentrations as high as 1000 ng/mL may be seen.

The natural course of chronic HBV infection is determined by the interplay of viral replication and the host immune response. Other factors that may play a role in the progression of HBV-related liver disease include gender, alcohol consumption, and concomitant infection with other hepatitis virus(es). The outcome of chronic HBV infection depends upon the severity of liver disease at the time HBV replication is arrested. Liver fibrosis is potentially reversible once HBV replication is controlled.

There are two distinguishable states in chronic HBV infection: first, a highly replicative state with active liver disease and elevated serum ALT. HBV DNA and HBeAg are present. Second, a low or non-replicative phase, where serum ALT may normalize, HBeAg disappears, and anti-HBe antibodies appear. In some patients, viral replication stops completely, as demonstrated by sensitive HBV DNA assays, although they remain HBsAg-positive. These patients have undetectable HBV DNA in serum and normal ALT concentrations. No sign of ongoing liver damage or inflammation is found on liver biopsy. This state is called the inactive carrier state.

A small percentage of patients continue to have moderate levels of HBV replication and active liver disease (elevated serum ALT and chronic inflammation on liver biopsies) but remain HBeAg-negative. These patients with HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis may have residual wild type virus or HBV variants that cannot produce HBeAg due to precore or core promoter variants.

The first highly replicative phase may switch into the non-replicative phase either spontaneously or upon antiviral treatment. Conversely, the non-replicative phase may reactivate to the highly replicative phase either spontaneously or with immunosuppression (eg, in HIV infection or with chemotherapy).

In perinatally acquired chronic HBV infection there are three different states: An immune tolerance phase, an immune clearance phase, and a late non-replicative phase.

The immune tolerance phase, which usually lasts 10-30 years, is characterized by high levels of HBV replication, as manifested by the presence of HBeAg and high levels of HBV DNA in serum. However, there is no evidence of active liver disease as seen by normal serum ALT concentrations and minimal changes in liver biopsy.

It is thought that this lack of liver disease despite high levels of HBV replication is due to immune tolerance to HBV (Dienstag 2008), although the exact mechanisms are unknown. This phenomenon of immune tolerance is believed to be the most important reason for the poor response to interferon therapy in HBeAg-positive patients with normal ALT levels. During this phase there is a very low rate of spontaneous HBeAg clearance. It is estimated that the rate of spontaneous HBeAg clearance is only 15% after 20 years of infection.

During the second to third decade, the immune tolerant phase may convert to one of immune clearance. The spontaneous HBeAg clearance rate increases. It is estimated to be 10 to 20% annually. If HBeAg seroconversion occurs, exacerbations of hepatitis with abrupt increases in serum ALT are very often observed. These exacerbations follow an increase in HBV DNA and might be due to a sudden increase in immune-mediated lysis of infected hepatocytes. Most often there are no clinical symptoms during exacerbation, and rise of ALT is only detected by routine examinations. Some patients may develop symptoms mimicking acute hepatitis. Titers of anti-HBc IgM may rise as well as alpha-fetoprotein. If such patients are not known to be HBV-infected, misdiagnosis of acute hepatitis B can be made. HBeAg seroconversion and clearance of HBV DNA from the serum is not always achieved after exacerbation. In these patients recurrent exacerbation with intermittent disappearance of serum HBV DNA with or without HBeAg loss may occur. The non-replicative phase is usually characterized by the absence of HBV DNA and normalization of serum ALT, like in adult chronic HBV.

Very few patients with chronic HBV infection become HBsAg-negative in the natural course of infection. The annual rate of HBsAg clearance has been estimated to be less than 2% in Western patients and even lower (0.1-0.8%) in patients of Asian origin (Liaw 1991) following an accelerated decrease in HBsAg levels during the 3 years before HBsAg seroclearance (Chen 2011). If loss of HBsAg occurs, prognosis is considered favorable. However, clearance of HBsAg does not exclude development of cirrhosis or hepatocellular carcinoma in some patients, although the exact rate of these complications is unknown. This phenomenon is thought to be linked to the fact that HBV DNA may still be present in hepatocytes despite HBsAg loss.

Prognosis and survival

As clinical course varies among patients, there is a wide variation in clinical outcome and prognosis of chronic HBV infection. The lifetime risk of liver-related death has been estimated to be 40-50% for men and 15% for women. The risk of progression appears to be higher if immune activation occurs. The estimated five-year rates of progression (Fattovich 2008):

- Chronic hepatitis to cirrhosis – 10-20%
- Compensated cirrhosis to hepatic decompensation – 20-30%
- Compensated cirrhosis to hepatocellular carcinoma – 5-15%

Accordingly, the survival rates are:

- Compensated cirrhosis – 85% at five years
- Decompensated cirrhosis - 55-70% at one year and 15-35% at five years

Viral replication

In patients with signs of viral replication (ie, HBeAg-positive) survival is consistently worse than in patients who are HBeAg-negative. However, in recent decades, infections with HBeAg-negative precore mutants prevail by far in newly-acquired infections, resulting in a different pattern of HBeAg-negative and HBV DNA-positive hepatitis with fibrosis progression and HCC in a substantial proportion of patients. In recent years, the amount of HBV DNA has also been linked to disease progression and has replaced HBeAg-positivity as a marker for disease activity (Chen 2006). This is true both for progression to cirrhosis as well as for the risk of HCC. Therefore, most treatment guidelines today are based on the level of HBV viremia. A reasonable cut-off to distinguish patients with a low risk of progression from patients with a high risk and indication for antiviral treatment is 10^4 copies/ml (corresponding to approximately 2 x 10^3 IU/ml) (Cornberg 2011), although other cut-offs may be used.

The duration of viral replication is obviously linked with the risk of development of cirrhosis and HCC. As necroinflammation may persist longer in patients with a prolonged replicative phase, the risk of disease progression is elevated. Conversely, even in patients with decompensated cirrhosis, suppression of HBV replication and delayed HBsAg clearance can result in improvement in liver disease (Fung 2008).

Alcohol use

HBV infection in heavy alcohol users is associated with faster progression to liver injury and an elevated risk of developing cirrhosis and HCC (Bedogni 2008, Marcellin 2008). Survival is reduced compared to HBV-negative heavy alcohol users. However, there is no clear evidence that heavy alcohol use is associated with an enhanced risk of chronic HBV infection, although prevalence of HBV is estimated to be fourfold higher than in controls (Laskus 1992) with variation among regions and cohorts (Rosman 1996).

Hepatitis C coinfection

If coinfection of HCV and HBV occurs, HCV usually predominates. This may lead to lower levels of transaminases and HBV DNA (Jardi 2001). The rate of HBsAg seroconversion even appears to be increased, although this finding may be due to the fact that around one third of patients coinfected with HBV and HCV lack markers of HBV infection (ie, HBsAg) although HBV DNA is detectable. Despite lower aminotransferases and HBV DNA levels, liver damage is worse in most instances. The risks of severe hepatitis and fulminant hepatic failure seem to be elevated if both infections occur simultaneously regardless of whether it is an acute coinfection of HBV and HCV or acute hepatitis C in chronic hepatitis B (Liaw 2004).

Hepatitis D coinfection

Acute HBV and HDV coinfection tends to be more severe than acute HBV infection alone. It is more likely to result in fulminant hepatitis. If HDV superinfection in patients with chronic HBV infection occurs, HDV usually predominates, and HBV replication is suppressed (Jardi 2001). Severity of liver disease is worse and progression to cirrhosis is accelerated (Fattovich 2000, Grabowski 2010, Heidrich 2012).

It is very difficult to predict the individual course of hepatitis B due to the many factors influencing disease progression. Several predictive models of disease progression that include clinical parameters (eg, hepatic decompensation) and laboratory parameters (eg, bilirubin, INR) have been evaluated, but none of these is used routinely in the clinic at present. In patients with cirrhosis, the MELD-score (Model for End-Stage Liver Disease) and the Child-Pugh score are used (see Chapter 3).

Extrahepatic manifestations

The two major extrahepatic complications of chronic HBV are polyarteritis nodosa and glomerular disease. They occur in 10-20% of patients with chronic hepatitis B and are thought to be mediated by circulating immune complexes (Han 2004).

Polyarteritis nodosa

The clinical manifestations are similar to those in patients with polyarteritis who are HBV-negative. There may be some clinical benefit to antiviral therapy.

Nephropathy/glomerulonephritis

HBV can induce both membranous nephropathy and, less often, membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis. Most cases occur in children. The clinical hallmark is proteinuria. In contrast to polyarteritis nodosa, there is no significant benefit of antiviral treatment.

For further details, please refer to extrahepatic manifestations in Chapter 15.

References

Amini-Bavil-Olyaee S, Maes P, Van Ranst M, Pourkarim MR. Providing strong evidence of nosocomial outbreak of hepatitis B virus infection. J Hosp Infect. 2012; Mar: 80(3):269-70

Bedogni G, Miglioli L, Masutti F, et al. Natural course of chronic HCV and HBV infection and role of alcohol in the general population: the Dionysos Study. Am J Gastroenterol 2008;103:2248-53. (Abstract)

Belongia EA, Costa J, Gareen IF, et al. NIH Consensus Development Statement on Management of Hepatitis B: Draft. NIH Consens State Sci Statements 2008;25:1-29. (Abstract)

Blanco NB, Probst A, Da Costa VW, et al. Impact of a Nurse Vaccination Program on Hepatitis B Immunity in a Swiss HIV Clinic. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr. 2011;58:472-4. (Abstract)

Burk RD, Hwang LY, Ho GY, Shafritz DA, Beasley RP. Outcome of perinatal hepatitis B virus exposure is dependent on maternal virus load. J Infect Dis 1994;170:1418-23. (Abstract)

CDC Department of Health & Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Division of Viral Hepatitis. Hepatitis B. General information. J Pract Nurs 2010 Summer;60:5-6.

CDC Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). Assessing completeness of perinatal hepatitis B virus infection reporting through comparison of immunization program and surveillance data--United States. MMWR 2011;60:410-3. (Abstract)

CDC Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). Viral Hepatitis Surveillance – United States, 2010; Reported number of acute hepatitis B cases — United States, 2000-2010, http://www.cdc.gov/hepatitis/Statistics/2010Surveillance/Slide3.1.htm, accessed 26 January 2013.

Chen CJ, Yang HI, Su J, et al. Risk of hepatocellular carcinoma across a biological gradient of serum hepatitis B virus DNA level. Jama 2006;295:65-73. (Abstract)

Chen YC, Jeng WJ, Chu CM, Liaw YF. Decreasing Levels of Hepatitis B Surface Antigen Predict Hepatitis B Surface Antigen Seroclearance in Patients With Inactive Chronic Hepatitis B Virus Infection. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2011 Sep 3. [Epub ahead of print] (Abstract)
Cornberg M, Protzer U, Petersen J, et al. Prophylaxis, diagnosis and therapy of hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection: the German guidelines for the management of HBV infection. Z Gastroenterol 2011;49:871-930.
Dickson RC, Everhart JE, Lake JR, et al. Transmission of hepatitis B by transplantation of livers from donors positive for antibody to hepatitis B core antigen. The National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases Liver Transplantation Database. Gastroenterology 1997;113:1668-74. (Abstract)
Dienstag JL. Hepatitis B virus infection. N Engl J Med 2008;359:1486-500. (Abstract)
Dodd RY. Current viral risks of blood and blood products. Ann Med 2000;32:469-74. (Abstract)
Duseja A, Arora L, Masih B, et al. Hepatitis B and C virus--prevalence and prevention in health care workers. Trop Gastroenterol 2002;23:125-6. (Abstract)
European Association for the Study of the Liver. EASL clinical practice guidelines: management of chronic hepatitis B. J Hepatol 2012;57:167-185
Fattovich G, Bortolotti F, Donato F. Natural history of chronic hepatitis B: special emphasis on disease progression and prognostic factors. J Hepatol 2008;48:335-52. (Abstract)
Fung J, Lai CL, Yuen MF. New paradigms for the treatment of chronic hepatitis B. J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2008;23:1182-92. (Abstract)
Ganem D, Prince AM. Hepatitis B virus infection--natural history and clinical consequences. N Engl J Med 2004;350:1118-29. (Abstract)
Garfein RS, Bower WA, Loney CM, et al. Factors associated with fulminant liver failure during an outbreak among injection drug users with acute hepatitis B. Hepatology 2004;40:865-73. (Abstract)
Gerlich. Medical Virology of Hepatitis B: how it began and where we are now. Virol J. 2013;10: 239.
Goldstein ST, Zhou F, Hadler SC, Bell BP, Mast EE, Margolis HS. A mathematical model to estimate global hepatitis B disease burden and vaccination impact. Int J Epidemiol 2005;34:1329-39. (Abstract)
Gomaa AI, Khan SA, Toledano MB, Waked I, Taylor-Robinson SD. Hepatocellular carcinoma: epidemiology, risk factors and pathogenesis. World J Gastroenterol 2008;14:4300-8. (Abstract)
Grabowski J, Wedemeyer H. Hepatitis delta: immunopathogenesis and clinical challenges. Dig Dis. 2010;28:133-8. (Abstract)
Guner R, Karahocagil M, Buyukberber M, et al. Correlation between intrahepatic hepatitis B virus cccDNA levels and other activity markers in patients with HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B infection. Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2011;23:1185-91. (Abstract)
Gunson RN, Shouval D, Roggendorf M, et al. Hepatitis B virus (HBV) and hepatitis C virus (HCV) infections in health care workers (HCWs): guidelines for prevention of transmission of HBV and HCV from HCW to patients. J Clin Virol. 2003 Aug;27(3):213-30.
Han SH. Extrahepatic manifestations of chronic hepatitis B. Clin Liver Dis 2004;8:403-18. (Abstract)
Hatzakis A, Wait S, Bruix J, et al. The state of hepatitis B and C in Europe: report from the hepatitis B and C summit conference. J Viral Hepat. 2011 Sep;18 Suppl 1:1-16. (Abstract)
Heidrich B, Manns MP, Wedemeyer H. Treatment Options for Hepatitis Delta Virus Infection. Curr Infect Dis Rep. 2012 Dec 15.
Hill JB, Sheffield JS, Kim MJ, Alexander JM, Sercely B, Wendel GD. Risk of hepatitis B transmission in breast-fed infants of chronic hepatitis B carriers. Obstet Gynecol 2002;99:1049-52. (Abstract)
Jardí R, Rodriguez F, Buti M, et al. Role of hepatitis B, C, and D viruses in dual and triple infection: influence of viral genotypes and hepatitis B precore and basal core promoter mutations on viral replicative interference. Hepatology 2001;34:404-10. (Abstract)

Kondili LA, Osman H, Mutimer D. The use of lamivudine for patients with acute hepatitis B (a series of cases). J Viral Hepat 2004;11:427-31. (Abstract)
Laskus T, Radkowski M, Lupa E, Horban A, Cianciara J, Slusarczyk J. Prevalence of markers of hepatitis viruses in out-patient alcoholics. J Hepatol 1992;15:174-78. (Abstract)
Liaw YF, Sheen IS, Chen TJ, Chu CM, Pao CC. Incidence, determinants and significance of delayed clearance of serum HBsAg in chronic hepatitis B virus infection: a prospective study. Hepatology 1991;13:627-31. (Abstract)
Liaw YF, Chen YC, Sheen IS, Chien RN, Yeh CT, Chu CM. Impact of acute hepatitis C virus superinfection in patients with chronic hepatitis B virus infection. Gastroenterology 2004;126:1024-29. (Abstract)
Li XM, Shi MF, Yang YB, et al. Effect of hepatitis B immunoglobulin on interruption of HBV intrauterine infection. World J Gastroenterol 2004;10:3215-17. (Abstract)
Mahoney FJ, Stewart K, Hu H, Coleman P, Alter MJ. Progress toward the elimination of hepatitis B virus transmission among health care workers in the United States. Arch Intern Med 1997;157:2601-5. (Abstract)
Marcellin P, Pequignot F, Delarocque-Astagneau E, et al. Mortality related to chronic hepatitis B and chronic hepatitis C in France: evidence for the role of HIV coinfection and alcohol consumption. J Hepatol 2008;48:200-7. (Abstract)
McMahon BJ, Alward WL, Hall DB, et al. Acute hepatitis B virus infection: relation of age to the clinical expression of disease and subsequent development of the carrier state. J Infect Dis 1985;151:599-603. (Abstract)
Poethko-Muller C, Kuhnert R, Schlaud M. [Vaccination coverage and predictors for vaccination level. Results of the German Health Interview and Examination Survey for Children and Adolescents (KiGGS)]. Bundesgesundheitsblatt Gesundheitsforschung Gesundheitsschutz 2007;50:851-62.
Polizzotto MN, Wood EM, Ingham H, Keller AJ. Reducing the risk of transfusion-transmissible viral infection through blood donor selection: the Australian experience 2000 through 2006. Transfusion 2008;48:55-63. (Abstract)
Rantala M, van de Laar MJ. Surveillance and epidemiology of hepatitis B and C in Europe - a review. Euro Surveill 2008;13:pii18880. (Abstract)
RKI. Virushepatitis B und D im Jahre 2012. Epidemiologisches Bulletin 2013;29:259-272
RKI. Hepatitis C: RKI-Ratgeber Infektionskrankheiten. Epidemiologisches Bulletin 2004;17:141.
Rosman AS, Waraich A, Galvin K, Casiano J, Paronetto F, Lieber CS. Alcoholism is associated with hepatitis C but not hepatitis B in an urban population. Am J Gastroenterol 1996;91:498-505. (Abstract)
Shang G, Seed CR, Wang F, Nie D, Farrugia A. Residual risk of transfusion-transmitted viral infections in Shenzhen, China, 2001 through 2004. Transfusion 2007;47:529-39. (Abstract)
Stevens CE, Beasley RP, Tsui J, Lee WC. Vertical transmission of hepatitis B antigen in Taiwan. N Engl J Med 1975;292:771-4. (Abstract)
Teams. Transmission of hepatitis B to patients from four infected surgeons without hepatitis B e antigen. The Incident Investigation Teams and others. N Engl J Med 1997;336:178-84. (Abstract)
Tillmann HL, Hadem J, Leifeld L, et al. Safety and efficacy of lamivudine in patients with severe acute or fulminant hepatitis B, a multicenter experience. J Viral Hepat 2006;13:256-63. (Abstract)
Vermeulen M, Dickens C, Lelie N, et al. Hepatitis B virus transmission by blood transfusion during 4 years of individual-donation nucleic acid testing in South Africa: estimated and observed window period risk. Transfusion. 2011 Oct 7. doi: 10.1111/j.1537-2995.2011.03355.x. (Abstract)
Wasley A, Grytdal S, Gallagher K. Surveillance for acute viral hepatitis--United States, 2006. MMWR Surveill Summ 2008;57:1-24. (Abstract)
Williams IT, Perz JF, Bell BP. Viral hepatitis transmission in ambulatory health care settings. Clin Infect Dis 2004;38:1592-8. (Abstract)
Yotsuyanagi H, Yasuda K, Lino S, et al. Persistent viremia after recovery from self-limited acute hepatitis B. Hepatology 1998;27:1377-82. (Abstract)
Zhang Y, Zhang H, Elizabeth A, Liu XQ. Epidemiology of hepatitis B and associated liver diseases in china. Chin Med Sci J. 2013 Jan;27(4):243-8.

Zhang RL, Wang MY, Chen QY, et al. Study on the risk factors related vertical transmission of HBV positive couples to their infant. Zhonghua Liu Xing Bing Xue Za Zhi. 2012 Dec;33(12):1283-7.

3. Hepatitis C

Christoph Boesecke and Jan-Christian Wasmuth

Epidemiology

Hepatitis C is a disease with a significant global impact. According to the World Health Organization there are about 150 million people chronically infected with the hepatitis C virus (HCV), corresponding to 2-2.5% of the world's total population. There are considerable regional differences. In some countries, eg, Egypt, the prevalence is >10% (WHO 2013). In Africa and the western Pacific the prevalence is significantly higher than in North America and Europe.

It is estimated that there are 2-5 million HCV-positive persons in Europe. The prevalence of HCV antibodies in otherwise healthy blood donors is approximately 1.6% in the United States, 1.15% in Italy, 0.4% in Germany, and 0.23% in Scandinavia (RKI 2004, Hatzakis 2011). The number of patients HCV RNA-positive is estimated to be around 80 to 90% of all HCV antibody-positive persons. Certain groups are preferentially affected: the highest risk factor in most cases is injection drug use. But patients undergoing hemodialysis and persons who received blood transfusions before 1991 are at risk also. In Europe and the United States chronic hepatitis C is the most common chronic liver disease and the majority of liver transplants performed are for chronic HCV.

It is difficult to determine the number of new HCV infections, as most acute cases are not noticed clinically. Fewer than 25% of acute cases of hepatitis C are clinically apparent (Vogel 2009). In addition, the age of infection upon diagnosis is not possible to determine in most cases. Nevertheless, it has to be assumed that the number of new infections has considerably decreased over the past decades. In the US it is estimated that the number of new cases of acute HCV infection has fallen from approximately 230,000 per year in the 1980s to about 20,000 cases per year currently (Wasley 2008) with an estimated 16,500 in 2011 (http://www.cdc.gov/hepatitis/Statistics/index.htm). This decrease is primarily associated with reduced infections in injection drug users, a probable consequence of changes in injection practices motivated by education about human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) transmission. Transfusion-associated hepatitis C has had little impact on this decline, as the number of cases has been reduced almost to

zero. The only different trend is an increase in acute hepatitis C infections in HIV-positive men who have sex with men (MSM) globally over the last decade (Boesecke 2012). Recent numbers from Europe show an ongoing epidemic of acute HCV especially among intravenous drug users and MSM (Rockstroh 2012).

Transmission

Parenteral exposure to the hepatitis C virus is the most efficient means of transmission. The majority of patients infected with HCV in Europe and the US acquired the disease through intravenous drug use or blood transfusion. The latter has become rare since routine testing of the blood supply for HCV began in the early 1990s. Other types of parenteral exposure are important in specific regions in the world.

The following possible routes of infection have been identified in anti-HCV-positive blood donors (in descending order of transmission risk):

- Injection drug use
- Blood transfusion
- Sex with an intravenous drug user
- Having been in jail more than three days
- Religious scarification
- Having been struck or cut with a bloody object
- Pierced ears or body parts
- Immunoglobulin injection

Very often in patients with newly diagnosed HCV infection no clear risk factor can be identified.

Injection drug use

Injection drug use has been the most commonly identified source of acute HCV infection. It is estimated that most newly acquired infections occur in individuals who have injected illegal drugs. The seroprevalence of anti-HCV antibodies in groups of intravenous drug users may be up to 70% with considerable variation depending on factors such as region, risk behaviour, socioeconomic status, etc, underscoring the efficiency of transmission via direct blood contact (Sutton 2008). HCV infection also has been associated with a history of intranasal cocaine use, presumably due to blood on shared straws or other sniffing paraphernalia. This may explain partly the recent increase in cases of acute HCV infections in HIV+ MSM (Schmidt 2011, Rockstroh 2012).

Blood transfusion

In the past, blood transfusion or use of other blood products was a major risk factor for transmission of HCV. In some historic cohorts 10% or more of patients who received blood transfusions were infected with hepatitis C (Alter 1989). However, blood donor screening for HCV since the early 1990s has nearly eliminated this transmission route. Blood donors are screened for anti-HCV antibodies and HCV RNA – at least in developed countries. The risk is now estimated to be between 1:500,000 and 1:1,000,000 units (Pomper 2003).

In cohorts of multiply transfused patients such as hemophiliacs, over 90% of patients were infected with hepatitis C in the past (Francois 1993). Since the use of routine inactivated virus (eg, heat inactivation or pasteurization) or recombinant clotting factors, new cases of hepatitis C infection have become uncommon in these patients.

Organ transplantation

Transplant recipients who receive organs from HCV-positive donors have a high risk of acquiring HCV infection. Transmission rates in different cohorts vary from 30 to 80% (Pereira 1991, Roth 1994). Therefore, most transplant organisations have developed strategies for screening and selective utilization of organs from anti-HCV positive donors.

Sexual or household contact

Usual household contacts do not pose a risk of HCV transmission.

The efficiency of HCV transmission by sexual contact is very low. However, there is no doubt that sexual transmission of hepatitis C is possible.

The exact risk of HCV transmission in monogamous heterosexual relationships has been difficult to determine. It appears that the risk in long-term partnerships is very low. In prospective cohorts of monogamous, heterosexual couples, there was a long-term transmission risk of 0.01% or lower (Vandelli 2004). Factors that may increase the risk of HCV infection include greater numbers of sex partners, history of sexually transmitted diseases, and not using a condom. Whether underlying HIV infection increases the risk of heterosexual HCV transmission to an uninfected partner is unclear. Very often it is difficult to rule out the possibility that transmission results from risk factors other than sexual exposure.

Outbreaks of cases of acute hepatitis C in several cities in Europe and the United States among men who have sex with men (MSM) have focused attention on sexual transmission of HCV (Boesecke 2012, Rockstroh 2012). There is clear evidence that unprotected sex can transmit HCV. Unprotected anal sex, fisting, having many sex partners in a short time period, a concomitant sexually transmitted disease including HIV and use of recreational drugs were identified as risk factors (Danta 2007, Schmidt 2011). It appears that mucosal damage is a prerequisite for HCV transmission. According to these observations, the seroprevalence of HCV in MSM ranges from about 4 to 8%, which is higher than the HCV prevalence reported for general European populations.

Patients with acute or chronic HCV infection should be advised that transmission to sexual contacts is a possibility, although the risk is extremely low in heterosexual relationships. It is likely that the use of condoms will lower the risk of sexual transmission further. In most countries there are no firm recommendations to use barrier precautions in stable monogamous sexual partnerships. The transmission risk in MSM is considerably higher and – as for risk of other sexually transmitted diseases – safer sex practices are advised for this group.

Perinatal transmission

The risk of perinatal transmission of HCV in HCV RNA-positive mothers is estimated to be 5% or less (Ohto 1994). In mothers coinfected with HIV this risk

correlates with immunosuppression and has been described in up to 20%. Today, there are no specific recommendations for prevention of perinatal transmission (Pembrey 2005). Cesarean section has not been shown to reduce the transmission risk. There is no evidence that breastfeeding is a risk for infection among infants born to HCV-infected women. Early diagnosis of infection in newborns requires HCV RNA testing since anti-HCV antibodies are passively transferred from the mother.

Hemodialysis

Patients who participate in chronic hemodialysis programs are at increased risk for hepatitis C. The prevalence of HCV antibodies in such patients reaches 15%, although it has declined in recent years (Fissell 2004). A number of risk factors have been identified for HCV infection among dialysis patients. These include blood transfusions, duration of hemodialysis, prevalence of HCV infection in the dialysis unit, and type of dialysis. The risk is higher with in-hospital hemodialysis as opposed to peritoneal dialysis. The best strategy to prevent hemodialysis-associated HCV transmission is subject to debate.

Other rare transmission routes

Rare sources of percutaneous transmission of HCV are contaminated equipment used during medical procedures, procedures involved in traditional medicine (eg, scarification, cupping), tattooing, and body piercing (Haley 2001). All these routes bear the potential of transmitting HCV. However, in most instances it is not clear if the risk is due to the procedure itself, or whether there are possible contacts with persons involved who are HCV-positive. In addition, transmission via these routes is so rare that persons with exposure are not at increased risk for acquiring HCV.

Needlestick injury

There is some risk of HCV transmission for healthcare workers after unintentional needlestick injury or exposure to other sharp objects. The incidence of seroconversion after exposure to an HCV-positive source is generally estimated to be less than 2% (MMWR 2001). However, data are divergent and figures ranging from 0 to 10% can be found (Mitsui 1992, Sarrazin 2010). Exposure of HCV to intact skin has not been associated with HCV transmission.

Clinical manifestations

The spectrum of clinical manifestations of HCV infection varies in acute versus chronic disease. Acute infection with HCV is most often asymptomatic (Vogel 2009) and leads to chronic infection in about 75% of cases. The manifestations of chronic HCV range from an asymptomatic state to cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma. HCV infection usually is slowly progressive. Thus, it may not result in clinically apparent liver disease in many patients if the infection is acquired later in life. Approximately 20-30% of chronically infected individuals develop cirrhosis over a 20 to 30-year period of time.

Acute hepatitis

After inoculation of HCV, there is a variable incubation period. HCV RNA in blood (or liver) can be detected by PCR within several days to eight weeks. Aminotransferases become elevated approximately 6-12 weeks after exposure (range 1-26 weeks). The elevation of aminotransferases varies considerably among individuals, but tends to be more than 10-30 times the upper limit of normal (typically around 800 U/l). HCV antibodies can be found first around 8 weeks after exposure although in some patients it may take several months by ELISA testing.

However, the majority of newly infected patients will be asymptomatic and have a clinically non-apparent or mild course. Jaundice as a clinical feature of acute hepatitis C will be present in less than 25% of infected patients. Therefore, acute hepatitis C will not be noticed in most patients (Vogel 2009). Periodic screening for infection may be warranted in certain groups of patients who are at high risk for infection, eg, HIV+ men who have sex with men (MSM).

Other symptoms that may occur are similar to those in other forms of acute viral hepatitis, including malaise, nausea, and right upper quadrant pain. In patients who experience such symptoms of acute hepatitis, the illness typically lasts for 2-12 weeks. Along with clinical resolution of symptoms, aminotransferase levels will normalize in about 40% of patients. Loss of HCV RNA, which indicates cure from hepatitis C, occurs in fewer than 20% of patients regardless of normalisation of aminotransferases.

Fulminant hepatic failure due to acute HCV infection is very rare. It may be more common in patients with underlying chronic hepatitis B virus infection (Chu 1999).

Chronic hepatitis C

The risk of chronic HCV infection is high. 75-100% of patients remain HCV RNA positive after acute hepatitis C (Alter 1999, Vogel 2009). Most of these will have persistently elevated liver enzymes in further follow-up. By definition, hepatitis C is regarded to be chronic after persistence of more than six months. Once chronic infection is established, there is a very low rate of spontaneous clearance.

It is unclear why infection with HCV results in chronic infection in most cases. Genetic diversity of the virus and its tendency toward rapid mutation may allow HCV to escape immune recognition. Host factors may also be involved in the ability to spontaneously clear the virus. Factors that have been associated with successful HCV clearance are HCV-specific CD4 T cell responses, high titers of neutralizing antibodies against HCV structural proteins, IL28B gene polymorphisms and specific HLA-DRB1 and -DQB1 alleles (Lauer 2001, Thomas 2009, Rauch 2010). Infection with HCV during childhood appears to be associated with a lower risk of chronic infection, approximately 50-60% (Vogt 1999). Finally, there seem to be ethnic differences with lower risk of chronicity in certain populations, which may in part be explained by different distribution of host genotypes such as IL28B (Ge 2009).

Most patients with chronic infection are asymptomatic or have only mild nonspecific symptoms as long as cirrhosis is not present (Merican 1993, Lauer 2001). The most frequent complaint is fatigue. Less common manifestations are nausea, weakness, myalgia, arthralgia, and weight loss. HCV infection has also been associated with cognitive impairment. All these symptoms are non-specific and do not reflect disease activity or severity (Merican 1993). Very often symptoms may be

caused by underlying diseases (eg, depression), and it can be difficult to distinguish between different diseases. Fatigue as the most common symptom may be present in many other situations (including healthy control groups within clinical studies). Hepatitis C is rarely incapacitating.

Aminotransferase levels can vary considerably over the natural history of chronic hepatitis C. Most patients have only slight elevations of transaminases. Up to one third of patients have a normal serum ALT (Martinot-Peignoux 2001, Puoti 2002). About 25% of patients have a serum ALT concentration of between 2 and 5 times above the upper limit of normal. Elevations of 10 times the upper limit of normal are very seldomly seen.

There is a poor correlation between concentrations of aminotransferases and liver histology. Even patients with normal serum ALT show histologic evidence of chronic inflammation in the majority of cases (Mathurin 1998). The degree of injury is typically minimal or mild in these patients. Accordingly, normalisation of aminotransferases after interferon therapy does not necessarily reflect histologic improvement.

Extrahepatic manifestations

Around 30 to 40% of patients with chronic hepatitis C have an extrahepatic manifestation of HCV (Zignego 2008). There is a wide variety of extrahepatic manifestations described as being associated with HCV:

- Hematologic manifestations (essential mixed cryoglobulinemia, lymphoma)
- Autoimmune disorders (thyroiditis, presence of various autoantibodies)
- Renal disease (membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis)
- Dermatologic disease (porphyria cutanea tarda, lichen planus)
- Diabetes mellitus

For further details refer to Chapter 15.

Natural history

The risk of developing cirrhosis within 20 years is estimated to be around 10 to 20%, with some studies showing estimates up to 50% (Poynard 1997, Wiese 2000, Sangiovanni 2006, de Ledinghen 2007). Due to the long course of hepatitis C the exact risk is very difficult to determine, and figures are divergent for different studies and populations. In fact, chronic hepatitis C is not necessarily progressive in all affected patients. In several cohorts it has been shown that a substantial number of patients will not develop cirrhosis over a given time. It is estimated that about 30% of patients will not develop cirrhosis for at least 50 years (Poynard 1997).

Therefore, studies with short observation periods sometimes fail to show an increase in mortality. In addition, survival is generally not impaired until cirrhosis has developed. On the other hand, there is no doubt that patients with chronic hepatitis C have a high risk of cirrhosis, decompensation, and hepatocellular carcinoma in long-term follow-up. For example, in a cohort of patients with post-transfusion hepatitis C evaluated more than 20 years after transfusion 23% had chronic active hepatitis, 51% cirrhosis, and 5% hepatocellular carcinoma (Tong 1995). It is not completely understood why there are such differences in disease progression. An influence of host and viral factors has to be assumed.

Cirrhosis and hepatic decompensation

Complications of hepatitis C occur almost exclusively in patients who have developed cirrhosis. Interestingly, non-liver related mortality is higher in cirrhotic patients as well. However, cirrhosis may be very difficult to diagnose clinically, as most cirrhotic patients will be asymptomatic as long as hepatic decompensation does not occur. Findings that can be associated with cirrhosis are hepatomegaly and/or splenomegaly on physical examination, elevated serum bilirubin concentration, hyperalbuminemia, or low platelets. Other clinical findings associated with chronic liver disease may be found such as spider angioma, caput medusae, palmar erythema, testicular atrophy, or gynecomastia. Most of these findings are found in less than half of cirrhotic patients, and therefore none is sufficient to establish a diagnosis of cirrhosis.

Hepatic decompensation can occur in several forms. Most common is ascites, followed by variceal bleeding, encephalopathy and jaundice. As mentioned earlier, hepatic decompensation will develop only in cirrhotic patients. However, not all patients with cirrhosis actually show signs of decompensation over time. The risk for decompensation is estimated to be close to 5% per year in cirrhotics (Poynard 1997). Once decompensation has developed the 5-year survival rate is roughly 50% (Planas 2004). For this group of patients liver transplantation is the only effective therapy.

Similar to decompensation, hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) develops solely in patients with cirrhosis (in contrast to chronic hepatitis B). The risk for HCC has been estimated to be less than 3% per year once cirrhosis has developed (Di Bisceglie 1997, Fattovich 1997). However, HCV-associated HCC has significant impact on survival (see Chapter 20).

Elevated concentrations of α fetoprotein (AFP) do not necessarily indicate HCC. AFP may be mildly elevated in chronic HCV infection (ie, 10 to 100 ng/mL). Levels above 400 ng/mL as well as a continuous rise in AFP over time are suggestive of HCC.

Disease progression

Chronic hepatitis C has different courses among individuals. It is not completely understood why there are differences in disease progression. Several factors have been identified that may be associated with such differences. However, other factors not yet identified may also be important.

Age and gender: Acquisition of HCV infection after the age of 40 to 55 may be associated with a more rapid progression of liver injury, as well as male gender (Svirtlih 2007). On the contrary, children appear to have a relatively low risk of disease progression (Child 1964). In one cohort, for example, only 1 of 37 patients with HCV RNA in serum had elevated levels of serum aminotransferases, and only 3 of 17 (18%) who had liver biopsies approximately 20 years after exposure had histologic signs of progressive liver disease.

Ethnic background: Disease progression appears to be slower and changes in liver histology less severe in African-Americans (Sterling 2004).

HCV-specific cellular immune response: The severity of liver injury is influenced by the cellular immune response to HCV-specific targets. Inflammatory

responses are regulated by complex mechanisms and probably depend on genetic determinants such as HLA expression (Hraber 2007). Whether this determines progression of liver disease is not clear.

Alcohol intake: Alcohol increases HCV replication, enhances the progression of chronic HCV, and accelerates liver injury (Gitto 2009). Even moderate amounts of alcohol appear to increase the risk of fibrosis. Accordingly, in alcoholic patients with cirrhosis and liver failure a high prevalence of anti-HCV antibodies has been described. Alcohol intake should be avoided in all patients with chronic hepatitis C. There is no clear amount of safe alcohol intake.

Daily use of marijuana: Daily use of marijuana has been associated with more rapid fibrosis progression, possibly through stimulation of endogenous hepatic cannabinoid receptors.

Other host factors: Genetic polymorphisms of certain genes might influence the fibrosis progression rate (Jonsson 2008). For example, transforming growth factor B1 (TGF B1) phenotype or PNPLA3 (adiponutrin) are correlated with fibrosis stage (Zimmer 2011). Patients with moderate to severe steatosis are at higher risk for developing hepatic fibrosis.

Viral coinfection: Progression of hepatitis C clearly is accelerated in HIV-infected patients (see section on coinfection). Acute hepatitis B in a patient with chronic hepatitis C may be more severe. Chronic hepatitis B may be associated with decreased HCV replication as opposed to HCV-monoinfected patients, although HCV usually predominates. Nevertheless, liver damage is usually worse and progression faster in patients with dual HBV/HCV infections. Around one third of patients coinfected with HBV and HCV lack markers of HBV infection (ie, HBsAg) although HBV DNA is detectable.

Geography and environmental factors: There are some obvious geographic differences (Lim 2008). For example, hepatocellular carcinoma is observed more often in Japan than in the United States. The reason for this is not clear.

Use of steroids: It is well known that use of steroids increases the HCV viral load, while the effect on aminotransferases is variable. They tend to decrease in most patients, although increases in transaminases and bilirubin have also been described. Reducing dosage of corticosteroids returns HCV viral load to baseline. However, the clinical consequences of corticosteroid use are largely unknown. It seems to be reasonable to assume that short-term use of corticosteroids is not associated with significant changes in long-term prognosis.

Viral factors: The influence of viral factors on disease progression is unclear. Overall, there seems to be no significant role of different genotypes and quasispecies on fibrosis progression or outcome. However, coinfection with several genotypes may have a worse outcome as compared to monoinfection.

It is very difficult to predict the individual course of hepatitis C due to the many factors influencing disease progression. Today, assessment of liver fibrosis by non-invasive techniques such as transient elastography (FibroScan®) or by the more traditional liver biopsy is the best predictor of disease progression (Gebo 2002, Caviglia 2014). The grade of inflammation and stage of fibrosis are useful in predicting further clinical course. In patients with severe inflammation or bridging fibrosis virtually all will develop cirrhosis within ten years. In contrast, patients with

mild inflammation and no fibrosis have an annual progression risk to cirrhosis of around 1%.

Several predictive models of disease progression that include clinical parameters (eg, hepatic decompensation) and laboratory parameters (eg, bilirubin, INR) have been evaluated, but none of these models is routinely used in the clinic at present. In patients with cirrhosis, the MELD score (Model for End-Stage Liver Disease) and the Child score (Table 1) are used to stage disease and to describe the prognosis (see Chapters 21 & 22). The MELD Score is used especially to estimate relative disease severity and likely survival of patients awaiting liver transplant. It is calculated as: MELD Score = 10 x ((0.957 x ln(Creatinine)) + (0.378 x ln(Bilirubin)) + (1.12 x ln(INR))) + 6.43. An online calculator and further information can be found at the website of The United Network for Organ Sharing (UNOS) (http://www.unos.org).

However, the best way to slow down liver fibrosis and the risk for hepatic decompensation is successful treatment of HCV (van der Meer 2012, Anderson 2013). The new directly acting antivirals (DAAs) with their high efficacy and increasingly improving safety profiles will largely contribute to lowering the disease burden caused by chronic HCV infection.

Table 1. Child-Pugh classification of severity of liver disease (Child 1964)*

	Points assigned		
	1	**2**	**3**
Ascites	Absent	Slight	Moderate
Bilirubin, mg/dL	<2	2-3	>3
Albumin, g/dL	>3.5	2.8-3.5	<2.8
Prothrombin time			
Seconds over control	<4	4-6	>6
INR	<1.7	1.7-2.3	>2.3
Encephalopathy	None	Grade 1-2	Grade 3-4

*A total score of 5-6 is considered stage A (well-compensated disease); 7-9 is stage B (significant functional compromise); and 10-15 is stage C (decompensated disease). These grades correlate with one- and two-year patient survival (stage A: 100 and 85 percent; stage B: 80 and 60 percent; stage C: 45 and 35 percent).

References

Alter HJ, Purcell RH, Shih JW, et al. Detection of antibody to hepatitis C virus in prospectively followed transfusion recipients with acute and chronic non-A, non-B hepatitis. N Engl J Med 1989;321:1494-500. (Abstract)

Alter MJ, Kruszon-Moran D, Nainan OV, et al. The prevalence of hepatitis C virus infection in the United States, 1988 through 1994. N Engl J Med 1999;341:556-62. (Abstract)Anderson JP, Tchetgen Tchetgen EJ, Lo Re V 3rd et al. Antiretroviral Therapy Reduces the Rate of Hepatic Decompensation Among HIV- and Hepatitis C Virus-Coinfected Veterans. Clin Infect Dis. 2013 Dec 20.

Boesecke C, Wedemeyer H, Rockstroh JK. Diagnosis and treatment of acute hepatitis C virus infection. Infect Dis Clin North Am. 2012 Dec;26(4):995-1010.

Caviglia GP, Ciancio A, Rosso C, et al. Non-invasive methods for the assessment of hepatic fibrosis: transient elastography, hyaluronic acid, 13C-aminopyrine breath test and cytokeratin 18 fragment. Ann Hepatol. 2013 Jan-2014 Feb;13(1):91-7.

Chu CM, Yeh CT, Liaw YF. Fulminant hepatic failure in acute hepatitis C: increased risk in chronic carriers of hepatitis B virus. Gut 1999;45:613-7. (Abstract)

Danta M, Brown D, Bhagani S, et al. Recent epidemic of acute hepatitis C virus in HIV-positive men who have sex with men linked to high-risk sexual behaviours. Aids 2007;21:983-91. (Abstract)
de Ledinghen V, Trimoulet P, Mannant PR, et al. Outbreak of hepatitis C virus infection during sclerotherapy of varicose veins: long-term follow-up of 196 patients (4535 patient-years). J Hepatol 2007;46:19-25. (Abstract)
Di Bisceglie AM. Hepatitis C and hepatocellular carcinoma. Hepatology 1997;26:34S-38S. (Abstract)
Fattovich G, Giustina G, Degos F, et al. Morbidity and mortality in compensated cirrhosis type C: a retrospective follow-up study of 384 patients. Gastroenterology 1997;112:463-72. (Abstract)
Fissell RB, Bragg-Gresham JL, Woods JD, et al. Patterns of hepatitis C prevalence and seroconversion in hemodialysis units from three continents: the DOPPS. Kidney Int 2004;65:2335-42.
Francois M, Dubois F, Brand D, et al. Prevalence and significance of hepatitis C virus (HCV) viremia in HCV antibody-positive subjects from various populations. J Clin Microbiol 1993;31:1189-93. (Abstract)
Ge D, Fellay J, Thompson AJ, et al. Genetic variation in IL28B predicts hepatitis C treatment-induced viral clearance. Nature 2009; 461:399–401.
Gebo KA, Herlong HF, Torbenson MS, et al. Role of liver biopsy in management of chronic hepatitis C: a systematic review. Hepatology 2002;36:S161-71.
Gitto S, Micco L, Conti F, Andreone P, Bernardi M. Alcohol and viral hepatitis: A mini-review. Dig Liver Dis 2009; 41:67-70. (Abstract)
Haley RW, Fischer RP. Commercial tattooing as a potentially important source of hepatitis C infection. Clinical epidemiology of 626 consecutive patients unaware of their hepatitis C serologic status. Medicine (Baltimore) 2001;80:134-51. (Abstract)
Hatzakis A, Wait S, Bruix J, et al. The state of hepatitis B and C in Europe: report from the hepatitis B and C summit conference*. J Viral Hepat. 2011; 18 Suppl 1:1-16. (Abstract)
Hraber P, Kuiken C, Yusim K. Evidence for human leukocyte antigen heterozygote advantage against hepatitis C virus infection. Hepatology 2007;46:1713-21. (Abstract)
Jonsson JR, Purdie DM, Clouston AD, Powell EE. Recognition of genetic factors influencing the progression of hepatitis C : potential for personalized therapy. Mol Diagn Ther 2008;12:209-18. (Abstract)
Lauer GM, Walker BD. Hepatitis C virus infection. N Engl J Med 2001;345:41-52. (Abstract)
Lim YS, Kim WR. The global impact of hepatic fibrosis and end-stage liver disease. Clin Liver Dis 2008;12:733-46. (Abstract)
Martinot-Peignoux M, Boyer N, Cazals-Hatem D, et al. Prospective study on anti-hepatitis C virus-positive patients with persistently normal serum alanine transaminase with or without detectable serum hepatitis C virus RNA. Hepatology 2001;34:1000-5. (Abstract)
Mathurin P, Moussalli J, Cadranel JF, et al. Slow progression rate of fibrosis in hepatitis C virus patients with persistently normal alanine transaminase activity. Hepatology 1998;27:868-72. (Abstract)
Merican I, Sherlock S, McIntyre N, Dusheiko GM. Clinical, biochemical and histological features in 102 patients with chronic hepatitis C virus infection. Q J Med 1993;86:119-25. (Abstract)
Mitsui T, Iwano K, Masuko K, et al. Hepatitis C virus infection in medical personnel after needlestick accident. Hepatology 1992;16:1109-14. (Abstract)
MMWR. Updated U.S. Public Health Service Guidelines for the Management of Occupational Exposures to HBV, HCV, and HIV and Recommendations for Postexposure Prophylaxis. MMWR Recomm Rep 2001;50:1.
Ohto H, Terazawa S, Sasaki N, et al. Transmission of hepatitis C virus from mothers to infants. The Vertical Transmission of Hepatitis C Virus Collaborative Study Group. N Engl J Med 1994;330:744-50. (Abstract)
Pembrey L, Newell ML, Tovo PA. The management of HCV infected pregnant women and their children European paediatric HCV network. J Hepatol 2005;43:515-25. (Abstract)
Pereira BJ, Milford EL, Kirkman RL, Levey AS. Transmission of hepatitis C virus by organ transplantation. N Engl J Med 1991;325:454-60. (Abstract)

Planas R, Balleste B, Alvarez MA, et al. Natural history of decompensated hepatitis C virus-related cirrhosis. A study of 200 patients. J Hepatol 2004;40:823-30. (Abstract)
Pomper GJ, Wu Y, Snyder EL. Risks of transfusion-transmitted infections: 2003. Curr Opin Hematol 2003;10:412-8. (Abstract)
Poynard T, Bedossa P, Opolon P. Natural history of liver fibrosis progression in patients with chronic hepatitis C. The OBSVIRC, METAVIR, CLINIVIR, and DOSVIRC groups. Lancet 1997;349:825-32. (Abstract)
Puoti C, Castellacci R, Montagnese F, et al. Histological and virological features and follow-up of hepatitis C virus carriers with normal aminotransferase levels: the Italian prospective study of the asymptomatic C carriers (ISACC). J Hepatol 2002;37:117-23. (Abstract)
Rauch A, Kutalik Z, Descombes P, et al. Genetic variation in IL28B is associated with chronic hepatitis C and treatment failure: a genome-wide association study. Gastroenterology 2010,138:1338-1345. (Abstract)
Rockstroh J, Grint D, Boesecke C, et al. Increases in acute hepatitis C (HCV) incidence across Europe: which regions and patient groups are affected? : which regions and patient groups are affected? J Int AIDS Soc 2012;15:18116.
Roth D, Zucker K, Cirocco R, et al. The impact of hepatitis C virus infection on renal allograft recipients. Kidney Int 1994;45:238-44. (Abstract)
Sangiovanni A, Prati GM, Fasani P, et al. The natural history of compensated cirrhosis due to hepatitis C virus: A 17-year cohort study of 214 patients. Hepatology 2006;43:1303-10. (Abstract)
Sarrazin C, Berg T, Ross RS, et al. Prophylaxis, diagnosis and therapy of hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection: the German guidelines on the management of HCV infection. Z Gastroenterol 2010;48:289-351.
Schmidt AJ, Rockstroh JK, Vogel M, et al. Trouble with bleeding: risk factors for acute hepatitis C among HIV-positive gay men from Germany--a case-control study. PLoS One. 2011;6:e17781. (Abstract)
Sterling RK, Stravitz RT, Luketic VA, et al. A comparison of the spectrum of chronic hepatitis C virus between Caucasians and African Americans. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2004;2:469-73. (Abstract)
Sutton AJ, Hope VD, Mathei C, et al. A comparison between the force of infection estimates for blood-borne viruses in injecting drug user populations across the European Union: a modelling study. J Viral Hepat 2008;15:809-16. (Abstract)
Svirtlih N, Jevtovic D, Simonovic J, et al. Older age at the time of liver biopsy is the important risk factor for advanced fibrosis in patients with chronic hepatitis C. Hepatogastroenterology 2007;54:2324-7. (Abstract)
Thomas DL, Thio CL, Martin MP, et al. Genetic variation in IL28B and spontaneous clearance of hepatitis C virus. Nature 2009,461:798-801. (Abstract)
Tong MJ, el-Farra NS, Reikes AR, Co RL. Clinical outcomes after transfusion-associated hepatitis C. N Engl J Med 1995;332:1463-6. (Abstract)
Vandelli C, Renzo F, Romano L, et al. Lack of evidence of sexual transmission of hepatitis C among monogamous couples: results of a 10-year prospective follow-up study. Am J Gastroenterol 2004;99:855-9. (Abstract)
Van der Meer AJ, Veldt BJ, Feld JJ, et al. Association between sustained virological response and all-cause mortality among patients with chronic hepatitis C and advanced hepatic fibrosis. JAMA 2012;308:2584-93.
Vogel M, Deterding K, Wiegand J, Grüner NH, Baumgarten A, Jung MC, et al. Hep-Net. Initial presentation of acute hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection among HIV-negative and HIV-positive individuals-experience from 2 large German networks on the study of acute HCV infection. Clin Infect Dis. 2009;49:317-9.
Vogt M, Lang T, Frosner G, et al. Prevalence and clinical outcome of hepatitis C infection in children who underwent cardiac surgery before the implementation of blood-donor screening. N Engl J Med 1999;341:866-70. (Abstract)
Wasley A, Grytdal S, Gallagher K. Surveillance for acute viral hepatitis--United States, 2006. MMWR Surveill Summ 2008;57:1. (Abstract)
WHO, Factsheet No 164, July 2013. http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs164/en/, accessed January 5, 2014.

Wiese M, Berr F, Lafrenz M, Porst H, Oesen U. Low frequency of cirrhosis in a hepatitis C (genotype 1b) single-source outbreak in germany: a 20-year multicenter study. Hepatology 2000;32:91-6.
Zignego AL, Craxi A. Extrahepatic manifestations of hepatitis C virus infection. Clin Liver Dis 2008;12:611-36. (Abstract)
Zimmer V, Lammert F. Genetics and epigenetics in the fibrogenic evolution of chronic liver diseases. Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol. 2011 Apr;25:269-80. (Abstract)

4. Hepatitis E: an underestimated problem?

Sven Pischke and Heiner Wedemeyer

Introduction

Hepatitis E is an inflammatory liver disease caused by the hepatitis E virus (HEV), endemic in many tropical countries. It is considered to be a travel-associated, acute, self-limiting liver disease that only causes fulminant hepatic failure in specific, high-risk groups (Pischke 2013b). It has recently been estimated that HEV infection causes approximately 70,000 deaths each year worldwide (Rein 2011). In recent years sporadic cases of HEV infections have emerged also in industrialized countries, mostly caused by HEV genotype 3, for which zoonotic transmission has been described (Wedemeyer 2012, Pischke 2013).

In immunocompetent individuals infection with HEV usually leads to a clinically silent seroconversion or to an acute self-limited inflammation of the liver. In pregnant women and patients with pre-existing chronic liver diseases cases of fulminant liver failure by HEV infection are reported (Wedemeyer 2012).

Moreover, cases of chronic HEV infection associated with progressive liver disease have been described in several cohorts of immunocompromised individuals. In this context, diagnosis of HEV infection should rely on detection of HEV RNA, as testing for HEV-specific antibodies may lack sensitivity (Pischke 2010b).

Therapeutic options for chronic hepatitis E include reduction of immunosuppressive medication (Kamar 2011a), treatment with interferon α (Haagsma 2010, Kamar 2010a) or therapy with ribavirin (Kamar 2010b, Mallet 2010, Pischke 2013a).

Results of a large Phase III study have been presented investigating a novel recombinant HEV vaccine in China. The vaccine had an efficacy to prevent acute symptomatic hepatitis E of >90% (Zhu 2010). This vaccine was approved for use in China in early 2012. It is unknown yet if and when this vaccine might become available for other countries.

Genetic characteristics of HEV

The hepatitis E virus is a non-enveloped, single-stranded RNA virus classified into the family of *Hepeviridae* and its own genus *Hepevirus* (Wedemeyer 2012). There are 5 known genotypes. The HEV genome includes two short non-coding regions

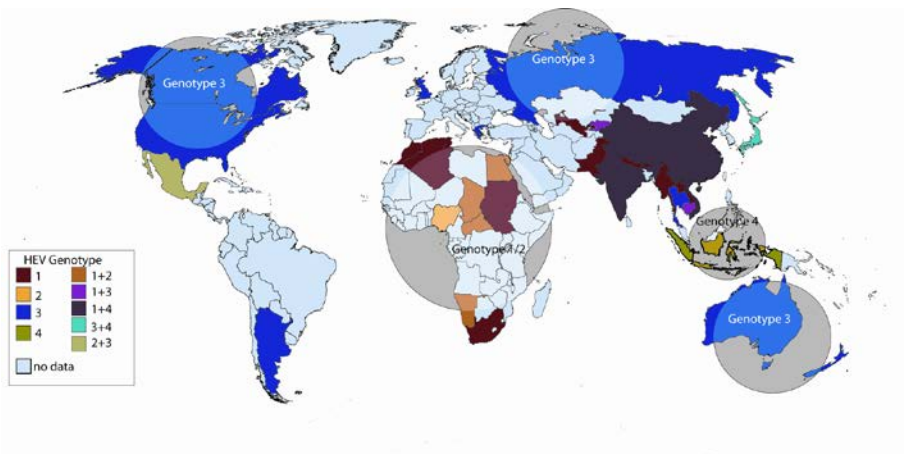
surrounding three open reading frames (ORF1 to 3). These ORFs contain the genetic information for various proteins that are necessary for capsid formation, virus replication and infectivity of HEV. Various HEV isolates have been differentiated via phylogenetic analysis based on a hypervariable region within ORF1 (Meng 1999). Four of five HEV genotypes are able to infect humans, while genotype 5, called “avian HEV”, has only been detected in birds.

HEV genotype 1 is responsible for endemic and epidemic infections by HEV in Asia, while genotype 2 is endemic in Africa and Mexico (Figure 1). These genotypes are usually transmitted fecal-orally by contaminated drinking water under conditions of poor sanitation. Only one study has described the possibility of HEV genotype 1 of infecting swine (Caron 2006). There is no known further report on zoonotic transmission for this genotype.

In contrast, HEV genotype 3 can be found in humans and animals in Europe, the US and Asia (Wedemeyer 2012). For this genotype, zoonotic transmission, foodborne transmission or via contact with infected animals has been described several times. HEV genotype 3 has been identified in pigs, wild boar, shellfish, deer, oysters, cats, rats and various rodents (Wedemeyer 2012). Genotype 4 has also been detected in both humans and pigs in both Asia (Geng 2009) and Europe (Hakze-van der Honing 2011).

Foodborne transmission can be avoided by cooking meat at above 70°C, which inactivates the virus (Emerson 2005).

Figure 1. Worldwide distribution of HEV genotypes



Hepatitis E diagnosis

In immmunocompetent patients the diagnosis of hepatitis E is based on the detection of HEV-specific antibodies. While IgG antibodies indicate acute and past HEV infections, IgM antibodies can only be found in patients with acute infections (Wedemeyer 2012). There are different commercial assays available for detection of HEV-specific antibodies. Comparison of six of these assays reveals a wide variation of diagnostic sensitivities and specificities as well as interassay disagreements

(Drobeniuc 2010). Thus, some of the remarkable discrepancies in HEV seroprevalence rates reported in different studies may be explained by varying sensitivities of the respective assays.

HEV-specific IgG antibodies can be detected in patients with previous contact with HEV. They do not differentiate between ongoing HEV infection and past contact with the virus. To prove current infection the detection of HEV RNA by PCR has been established. Numerous assays using different primers have been developed (Meng 1999, Zhao 2007). Furthermore, few quantitative PCR assays have been described (Ahn 2006, Enouf 2006). Recently a novel WHO-approved RNA standard assay has been developed (Baylis 2011).

In immunocompromised individuals, diagnosis of HEV infection may only be based on the detection of HEV RNA as seroassays lack sensitivity especially in the early phase of infection (Pischke 2010b). HEV RNA can not only be detected in serum samples but also in stool (Wedemeyer 2012), and thus infectivity of HEV infected persons can be determined by investigating stool for HEV RNA.

Worldwide distribution of HEV infections

Hepatitis E causes more than 70,000 deaths each year worldwide (Rein 2011). Most of these cases occur in the tropics, in areas with reduced hygienic standards, due to poor sanitation. Outbreaks in refugee camps are especially relevant, as reported in 2013 in the Sudan (CDC 2013).

However, the disease is not limited to developing countries. In the last few years an increasing frequency of diagnosed cases of HEV infections has been reported from various industrialised countries (Wedemeyer 2012). The presence of HEV RNA in urban sewage samples from Spain, the US and France has been shown, suggesting that HEV may be more prevalent in industrialised countries than previously assumed (Clemente-Casares 2003). In each of these three countries it was possible to discover HEV contamination in sewage samples in a notably high frequency. These findings may partially explain the huge gap between seroprevalence rates and the rather low numbers of diagnosed and reported cases of acute hepatitis E in Western countries. For example, Germany has a seroprevalence rate of 2% in a population of 80 million individuals (representing 1.6 million persons with possible previous HEV infection), yet only 200 to 400 cases of hepatitis E have been diagnosed and reported in the last few years (Pischke 2011a). The mismatch between high seroprevalence rates and the low number of symptomatic cases has also been investigated in a recent study from Egypt. 919 anti-HEV seronegative individuals from rural Egypt were followed and, interestingly, 3.7% (n=34) of these individuals seroconverted to anti-HEV within 11 months of follow up (Stoszek 2006). However, none of these 34 individuals suffered from symptomatic hepatitis E. This finding corresponds with data from a recently published large vaccine study performed in China where very few of the patients in the placebo group who seroconverted during a follow-up period developed symptomatic acute hepatitis E (Zhu 2010). Overall, these data suggest that far less than 5% of all contacts with HEV lead to symptomatic hepatitis E (Wedemeyer 2011).

Even so, a rapid increase in reported HEV infections has been recognized in several industrialized countries over the last 10 years. To investigate the potential underlying reasons for this phenomenon, we analyzed the time trend of the anti-HEV seroprevalence in healthy German individuals versus the number of reported cases of acute hepatitis E. Even though the number of reported cases has increased more than 5-fold in the last ten years (Figure 2), the anti-HEV IgG seroprevalence rate remained rather stable over the last 15 years (Pischke 2011a). In contrast, the number of scientific articles on HEV infections published in PubMed increased sharply during the same period (Figure 2). These findings may indicate that the increase of reported HEV cases in Germany and other industrialized countries is based on an increased awareness associated with more frequent diagnosis of hepatitis E but not a true increase in incidence rates (Pischke 2011a).

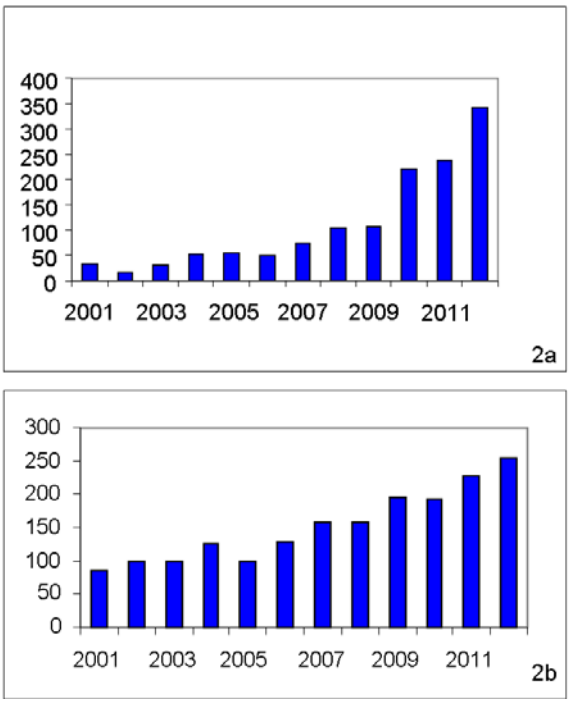


Figure 2. Number of reported HEV infections in Germany over the last decade (Figure 2a) and number of publications on HEV over the same time period (Figure 2b). Updated December 2012

Transmission of HEV

The vast majority of HEV infections worldwide happens via the ***fecal-oral route***. Patient-to-patient transmission is very rare but has been described from a large outbreak in Northern Uganda (Teshale 2011) and from hematology wards in Europe (Wedemeyer 2012). ***Bloodborne transmission*** of HEV was suggested in the late nineties (Fainboim 1999). Subsequent studies from Hong Kong, Japan, Great

Britain and France confirmed blood transfusions as a possible source of HEV transmission (Wedemeyer 2012). A large study from Germany investigating 1019 blood donors determined that 0.35% seroconverted within 1 year (Juhl 2013). A study from the Netherlands revealed that 13 out of 40,176 blood donors were HEV-viremic (Slot 2013). These data correspond to one HEV-positive blood donation per day in the Netherlands.

A single case of HEV ***transmission by transplantation*** of a liver graft from a patient with occult hepatitis E has been reported (Schlosser 2011).

Zoonotic transmission of HEV has recently been assumed to be the main source of HEV infections in industrialized countries (Figure 3). Both direct contact with HEV-infected domestic animals and foodborne transmission are possible (Wedemeyer 2012). Commercial food products such as pig meat may be contaminated with HEV as shown in studies from the Netherlands, France and Germany (Colson 2010, Melenhorst 2007, Wenzel 2011). Meat should be cooked at above 70°C to prevent foodborne HEV infections (Emerson 2005).

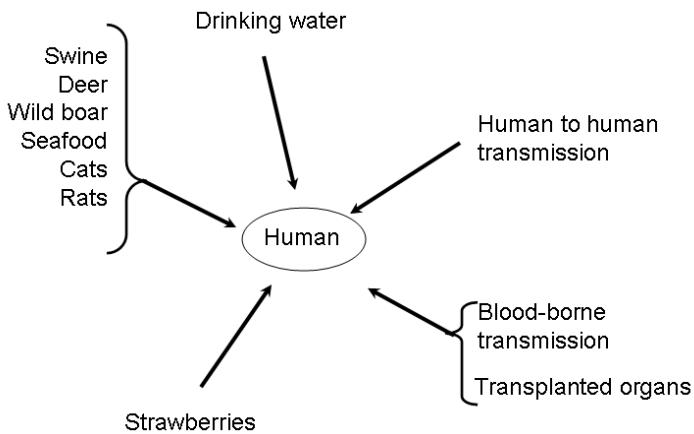


Figure 3. Possible sources of HEV infection

Acute hepatitis E in immunocompetent individuals

In the vast majority of cases, contact with HEV takes an asymptomatic course (Stoszek 2006, Wedemeyer 2012), especially if the contact happens during childhood (Buti 2008). Immunocompetent individuals should be able to clear the virus spontaneously. In symptomatic cases the incubation period of HEV infections ranges from three to eight weeks with a mean of 40 days (Wedemeyer 2012). The peak of HEV viremia can be detected in the early phase of infection while the peak of ALT elevation usually occurs around 6 weeks after infection (Wedemeyer 2012).

Initial symptoms in acute hepatitis E are typically unspecific and can include flu-like myalgia, arthralgia, weakness and vomiting. In some patients jaundice, itching, uncoloured stool and darkened urine occur accompanied by elevation of liver transaminases, bilirubin, alkaline phosphatase and gamma-glutamyltransferase.

HEV infection can lead to ***more severe acute liver disease in pregnant women*** or patients with underlying chronic liver diseases progressing to fulminant hepatic failure in individual cases (Wedemeyer 2012). Possible explanations for the more severe course in pregnant women are hormonal and immunological changes during pregnancy (Navaneethan 2008). Recently an association between reduced expression of the progesterone receptor and fatal outcome of hepatitis E in pregnant women has been reported (Bose 2011).

Single cases of ***prolonged courses of HEV infection*** in immunocompetent individuals with up to two years of viremia have been described from France (Mallet 2010), Spain (Gonzalez Tallon 2011) and China (Liu 2011). However, no case of HEV-associated liver cirrhosis or development of hepatocellular carcinoma has been reported in immunocompetent individuals.

Acute and chronic HEV infections in organ transplant recipients

Chronic courses of HEV infection have been described in European liver or kidney transplant recipients since 2008 (Gerolami 2008, Haagsma 2009, Kamar 2008, Pischke 2010b). 14 cases of acute hepatitis E were initially reported in kidney- and liver-transplanted patients from southwest France (Kamar 2008). Eight of them developed a chronic course leading to persistently elevated ALT levels, significant histological activity and fibrosis after a follow-up of more than 12 months (range 10 to 18). Subsequently, additional cases of chronic HEV infections have been reported in transplant patients by several groups (Wedemeyer 2012), clearly demonstrating that chronic hepatitis E can be associated with progressive liver disease in patients after organ transplantation (Kamar 2011c).

A study from Germany examined 226 liver-transplanted patients and 129 patients with chronic liver disease to evaluate the frequency of chronic HEV infections in liver transplant recipients in a low endemic country (Pischke 2010b). All patients were tested for HEV RNA and anti-HEV IgG. Two cases of chronic HEV infections in liver transplanted patients were identified showing different courses. One of them developed significant liver fibrosis (ISHAK F3) within less than 2 years. Both patients were infected with HEV genotype 3. The possibility of reverse zoonotic transmission was experimentally confirmed by infecting pigs with a patient's blood. HEV RNA was detectable in various organs of the pigs including muscle. Thus, these findings further support the recommendations that eating uncooked meat should be avoided by organ transplant recipients as this may represent a source for acquiring HEV infection.

Retrospective data on hepatitis E in transplant recipients were summarized from 17 centres. Overall, 85 cases of HEV infection were described, 56 (66%) of whom developed chronic hepatitis E. Of note, chronicity was associated with the use of tacrolimus and with low platelet count (Kamar 2011c). However it has to be considered that the vast majority of patients had been recruited by one center and experiences from other regions and transplant centres need to be reported.

Chronic courses of HEV infection have also been reported in heart transplant recipients (de Man 2011, Pischke 2012b). A study from Germany investigating heart transplant recipients and non-transplant cardiac patients revealed that the

seroprevalence of HEV-specific antibodies is increased 5-fold in these patient groups in comparison to healthy controls (Pischke 2012b). It has been assumed that medical procedures, especially blood products, could explain this difference in seroprevalence rates. Further studies will show how medically relevant this phenomenon is.

Recently chronic HEV infections have also been described in lung transplant recipients from the Netherlands (Rizebos-Brilman 2013) and Germany (Pischke 2014).

Overall, all recipients of solid organ transplant with elevated liver enzymes should be tested for HEV RNA unless other obvious reasons already explain the hepatitis. In immunosuppressed patients, testing for HEV RNA should be applied as antibody testing may lack sensitivity.

In contrast to solid organ transplant recipients, studies from Germany (Koenecke 2012) and France (Abravanel 2012) did not observe any case of chronicity in stem cell transplant recipients, leading to the assumption that this phenomenon is rare in this patient population. However, a large study from the Netherlands, investigating 328 stem cell transplant recipients, identified 8 cases (2.4%) of chronic HEV viremia. Four of these patients died after development of hepatitis, while the other four patients cleared HEV infection after a median period of 6.3 months. These data demonstrate that chronic HEV infections in stem cell transplant recipients are indeed relevant (Versluis 2013).

Hepatitis E in patients with HIV infection or other immunological deficiencies

Chronic hepatitis E was described for the first time in a patient with underlying HIV infection in 2009 (Dalton 2009). This patient had a CD4 T cell count of less than 200 cells and high HIV RNA levels (>100,000 copies/ml). However, subsequent studies from Spain (n=93) (Madejon 2009), Germany (n=123) (Pischke 2010a) and England (n=138) (Keane 2012) could not identify cases of chronic hepatitis in HIV-infected individuals. HEV RNA was detected for more than 10 months in only one out of 184 HIV-positive individuals in France (Kaba 2010). This patient had particularly low CD4 counts (<50 cells/mm) while two additional patients with higher CD4 levels were able to clear HEV spontaneously. Thus, persistent HEV infection is rarely observed in HIV-infected patients and only subjects with strongly impaired immune system seem to be at risk for chronic hepatitis E.

Recently the presence of chronic HEV infections in patients with different underlying conditions of immunosuppression including lupus erythematodes, granulomatosis, retroperitoneal fibrosis or CD4 deficiency has been reported (Grewal 2013, Höner zu Siederdissen 2013). In contrast to these diseases there was no case of chronic HEV infection within a German cohort of 73 patients with common variable immunodeficiency (CVID). It has been hypothezised that eventually regular immunoglobulin infusions in these patients may have protected them from infection (Pischke 2012a).

Extrahepatic manifestations of hepatitis E

There is some evidence that HEV infections maybe associated with extrahepatic manifestations. One case report described muscular weakness and a pyramidal syndrome in a kidney transplant recipient with persistent HEV infection (Kamar 2011b). Moreover, neurological disorders including polyradiculopathy, Guillain-Barre syndrome, bilateral brachial neuritis, encephalitis or proximal myopathy, have been reported in patients with acute and chronic HEV infections (Kamar 2011b). Furthermore HEV infections have been associated with neuralgic amyotrophy (van Eijk 2014) and Guillain-Barré syndrome (Van den Berg 2014). The underlying mechanisms and the clinical relevance of these associations require further investigation.

In addition, a strongly increased anti-HEV seroprevalence rate in patients with autoimmune hepatitis has been described, indicating a possible role of previous HEV infections in later development of autoimmune hepatitis (Pischke 2014).

Treatment of chronic hepatitis E

Treatment options for chronic hepatitis include reduction of immunosuppression, administration of pegylated interferon α or use of ribavirin. The first step in the treatment of chronic HEV infection should be to evaluate if it is possible to reduce the immunosuppressive medication (Wedemeyer 2012). Reduction of immunosupression in 16 solid organ transplant recipients with chronic hepatitis E led to clearance of HEV in 4 cases (25%) (Kamar 2011a). A second possible treatment option is the use of PEG-IFN α (Haagsma 2010, Kamar 2010a). Treatment durations varied between 3 and 12 months. Overall, 4 out 5 patients were successfully treated with sustained clearance of HEV RNA. However, the use of interferon can be associated with significant side effects and may cause rejection in organ transplant recipients. Interferon α is therefore not recommended in heart or kidney transplant recipients. The antiviral efficacy of ribavirin monotherapy has been evaluated by two French groups (Kamar 2010b, Mallet 2010). A sustained virological response was observed in 2/2 and 4/6 treated patients, respectively. Ribavirin has also been used in a non-transplanted patient with severe acute hepatitis E who showed rapid improvement of symptoms and liver function tests during treatment (Gerolami 2011).

Recently a study from Germany investigated the use of ribavirin in immunocompetent individuals with acute HEV infection and immunocompromised patients with chronic HEV infection (Pischke 2013a). This analysis demonstrated that in immunocompetent patients with acute hepatitis E, the use of ribavirin is not required in general, although in single cases it can be used to avoid liver failure.

However, in solid organ transplant recipients with chronic HEV infection ribavirin remains a therapeutic option.

Vaccination

A vaccine developed by GSK and the Walter Reed Army Institute that was successfully tested in a Phase II study (Shrestha 2007) has not been further developed. A group from China reported data from a very large successful Phase III

vaccine trial (Zhu 2010). This trial included almost 110,000 individuals who received either a recombinant HEV vaccine ("HEV 239") or placebo. The vaccine efficacy after three doses was 100%. This vaccine was approved in China in early 2012. It is currently not known if and when this vaccine will become available outside China. Moreover, the efficacy of this vaccine needs to be evaluated in special risks groups such as patients with end-stage liver disease or immunosuppressed individuals. It is also unknown if HEV 239 also protects from HEV genotype 3 infection (Wedemeyer 2011). However, it was demonstrated that either the vaccine or naturally acquired, post-infectious antibodies are able to prevent symptomatic hepatitis E, but not asymptomatic infection (Zhang 2013). Furthermore it was shown that this vaccine could be safely used in pregnant women (Wu 2012).

The use of this vaccine in developing countries needs to be discussed and investigated. Eventually this vaccine may help to prevent the morbidity and mortality caused by hepatitis E.

Conclusions and recommendations

In general, HEV infection has a self-limiting course associated with the clinical picture of acute hepatitis in immunocompetent populations. Special populations like pregnant women may be more likely to develop hepatic failure. In patients with immunosuppression of different etiologies, chronic cases have been reported.

In organ transplant recipients the diagnosis of HEV infection should not be based on serological assays alone as these assays may lack sensitivity. Detection of HEV RNA by PCR in serum or stool represents the gold standard for diagnosis of HEV infection.

The prevalence of chronic HEV infection in solid organ transplant recipients depends on the general prevalence in the population and is low in most industrialized countries. However, chronic hepatitis E occurs and needs to be considered in the differential diagnosis of graft hepatitis, as persistent HEV infection can be associated with progressive graft hepatitis and the development of liver cirrhosis. Currently, all reported cases of chronic HEV infections in transplant recipients have been due to HEV genotype 3. It is not known if chronic hepatitis E can also be caused by the other genotypes.

Organ transplant recipients and other immunocompromised individuals should avoid eating uncooked meats to avoid infection with HEV.

First results indicate that ribavirin treatment of chronic hepatitis E (5 months duration) is effective to achieve sustained virological response in immunocompromised persons. In contrast, in immunocompetent individuals with acute HEV infection this treatment is only required in rare cases.

The relevance of extrahepatic manifestations associated with acute or chronic HEV infection needs further exploration, especially the association between positive anti-HEV serostatus and autoimmune hepatitis.

References

Abravanel F, Mansuy JM, Huynh A, Kamar N, Alric L, Peron JM, et al. Low risk of hepatitis E virus reactivation after haematopoietic stem cell transplantation. J Clin Virol. 2012 152-5.

Ahn JM, Rayamajhi N, Gyun Kang S, Sang Yoo H. Comparison of real-time reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction and nested or commercial reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction for the detection of hepatitis E virus particle in human serum. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis 2006;56:269-74. (Abstract)

Baylis S, Hanschmann KM, Blümel J, Nübling CM; HEV Collaborative Study Group. Standardization of hepatitis E virus (HEV) nucleic acid amplification technique-based assays: an initial study to evaluate a panel of HEV strains and investigate laboratory performance. J Clin Microbiol. 2011, 1234-9.

Bose PD, Das BC, Kumar A, Gondal R, Kumar D, Kar P. High viral load and deregulation of the progesterone receptor signaling pathway: Association with Hepatitis E-related poor pregnancy outcome. J Hepatol 2011;54:1107-13. (Abstract)

Buti M, Plans P, Dominguez A, et al. Prevalence of hepatitis E virus infection in children in the northeast of Spain. Clin Vaccine Immunol 2008;15:732-4. (Abstract)

Caron M, Enouf V, Than SC, Dellamonica L, Buisson Y, Nicand E. Identification of genotype 1 hepatitis E virus in samples from swine in Cambodia. J Clin Microbiol. 2006 3440-2.

CDC, Investigation of hepatitis E outbreak among refugees - Upper Nile, South Sudan, 2012-2013. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep. 2013. 26 :581-6.

Clemente-Casares P, Pina S, Buti M, et al. Hepatitis E virus epidemiology in industrialized countries. Emerg Infect Dis 2003;9:448-54. (Abstract)

Colson P, Borentain P, Queyriaux B, et al. Pig liver sausage as a source of hepatitis E virus transmission to humans. J Infect Dis 2010;202:825-34. (Abstract)

Dalton HR, Bendall RP, Keane FE, Tedder RS, Ijaz S. Persistent carriage of hepatitis E virus in patients with HIV infection. N Engl J Med 2009;361:1025-7. (Abstract)

de Man RA, Pas SD, Osterhaus AD, Balk AH, Van der Eijk A. Diagnosis and clinical consequences of hepatitis E virus infection in orthotopic heart transplant recipients. Hepatology 2011; AASLD annual meeting.

Drobeniuc J, Meng J, Reuter G, et al. Serologic assays specific to immunoglobulin M antibodies against hepatitis E virus: pangenotypic evaluation of performances. Clin Infect Dis 2010;51:e24-7. (Abstract)

Emerson SU, Arankalle VA, Purcell RH. Thermal stability of hepatitis E virus. J Infect Dis 2005;192:930-3. (Abstract)

Enouf V, Dos Reis G, Guthmann JP, et al. Validation of single real-time TaqMan PCR assay for the detection and quantitation of four major genotypes of hepatitis E virus in clinical specimens. J Med Virol 2006;78:1076-82. (Abstract)

Fainboim H, Gonzalez J, Fassio E, et al. Prevalence of hepatitis viruses in an anti-human immunodeficiency virus-positive population from Argentina. A multicentre study. J Viral Hepat 1999;6:53-7. (Abstract)

Geng Y, Wang C, Zhao C, et al. Serological Prevalence of Hepatitis E Virus in Domestic Animals and Diversity of Genotype 4 Hepatitis E Virus in China. Vector Borne Zoonotic Dis 2009. (Abstract)

Gerolami R, Borentain P, Raissouni F, Motte A, Solas C, Colson P. Treatment of severe acute hepatitis E by ribavirin. J Clin Virol 2011;52:60-2. (Abstract)

Gerolami R, Moal V, Colson P. Chronic hepatitis E with cirrhosis in a kidney-transplant recipient. N Engl J Med 2008;358:859-60. (Abstract)

Gonzalez Tallon AI, Moreira Vicente V, Mateos Lindemann ML, Achecar Justo LM. [Chronic hepatitis E in an immunocompetent patient.]. Gastroenterol Hepatol 2011.

Grewal P, Kamili S, Motamed D. Chronic hepatitis E in an immunocompetent patient: A case report. Hepatology 2014. 59: 347-8.

Haagsma E, Riezebos-Brilman A, Van den Berg AP, Porte RJ, Niesters HG. Treatment of chronic hepatitis E in liver transplant recipients with pegylated interferon alpha-2b. Liver Transpl 2010. [epub ahead of print] (Abstract)

Haagsma EB, Niesters HG, van den Berg AP, et al. Prevalence of hepatitis E virus infection in liver transplant recipients. Liver Transpl 2009;15:1225-8. (Abstract)

Hakze-van der Honing RW, van Coillie E, Antonis AF, van der Poel WH. First Isolation of Hepatitis E Virus Genotype 4 in Europe through Swine Surveillance in the Netherlands and Belgium. PLoS One 2011;6:e22673. (Abstract)
Höner zu Siederdissen C, Pischke S, Schlue J, et al. Chronic HEV infection beyond transplantation or HIV infection. Hepatology 2013, epub ahead of print.
Juhl D, Baylis SA, Blumel J, Gorg S, Hennig H. Seroprevalence and incidence of hepatitis E virus infection in German blood donors. Transfusion 2013; 54: 49-56.
Kaba M, Richet H, Ravaux I, et al. Hepatitis E virus infection in patients infected with the human immunodeficiency virus. J Med Virol 2010;83:1704-16. (Abstract)
Kamar N, Abravanel F, Selves J, et al. Influence of immunosuppressive therapy on the natural history of genotype 3 hepatitis-E virus infection after organ transplantation. Transplantation 2011a;89:353-60. (Abstract)
Kamar N, Bendall RP, Peron JM, et al. Hepatitis E virus and neurologic disorders. Emerg Infect Dis 2011b;17:173-9. (Abstract)
Kamar N, Garrouste C, Haagsma EB, et al. Factors associated with chronic hepatitis in patients with hepatitis e virus infection who have received solid organ transplants. Gastroenterology 2011c;140:1481-9. (Abstract)
Kamar N, Izopet J, Cintas P, et al. Hepatitis e virus-induced neurological symptoms in a kidney-transplant patient with chronic hepatitis. Am J Transplant 2011d;10:1321-4. (Abstract)
Kamar N, Rostaing L, Abravanel F, et al. Pegylated Interferon-alpha for Treating Chronic Hepatitis E Virus Infection after Liver Transplantation. Clin Infect Dis 2010a.
Kamar N, Rostaing L, Abravanel F, et al. Ribavirin Therapy Inhibits Viral Replication on Patients With Chronic Hepatitis E Virus Infection. Gastroenterology 2010b. (Abstract)
Kamar N, Selves J, Mansuy JM, et al. Hepatitis E virus and chronic hepatitis in organ-transplant recipients. N Engl J Med 2008;358:811-7. (Abstract)
Keane F, Gompels M, Bendall R, et al. Hepatitis E virus coinfection in patients with HIV infection. HIV Med 2012 Jan;13(1):83-88. (Abstract)
Koenecke C, Pischke S, Heim A, Raggub L, Bremer B, Raupach R, et al. Chronic hepatitis E in hematopoietic stem cell transplant patients in a low-endemic country? Transpl Infect Dis. 2012:103-6.
Liu L, Liu Y. Analysis of acute to chronic hepatitis E: 6-10 year follow-up. Hepatogastroenterology 2011;58:324-5. (Abstract)
Madejon A, Vispo E, Bottecchia M, Sanchez-Carrillo M, Garcia-Samaniego J, Soriano V. Lack of hepatitis E virus infection in HIV patients with advanced immunodeficiency or idiopathic liver enzyme elevations. J Viral Hepat 2009. (Abstract)
Mallet V, Louvet A, Chakvetadze C, et al. Ribavirin Treatment for Chronic Hepatitis E: a Case-Series. Hepatology 2010;52:919A-1020A.
Melenhorst WB, Gu YL, Jaspers WJ, Verhage AH. Locally acquired hepatitis E in the Netherlands: associated with the consumption of raw pig meat? Scand J Infect Dis 2007;39:454-6. (Abstract)
Meng J, Cong M, Dai X, et al. Primary structure of open reading frame 2 and 3 of the hepatitis E virus isolated from Morocco. J Med Virol 1999;57:126-33. (Abstract)
Navaneethan U, Al Mohajer M, Shata MT. Hepatitis E and pregnancy: understanding the pathogenesis. Liver Int 2008;28:1190-9. (Abstract)
Pischke S, Heim A, Bremer B, et al. Hepatitis E: An Emerging Infectious Disease in Germany? Z Gastroenterol 2011a;49:1255-1257. (Abstract)
Pischke S, Hardtke S, Bode U, et al. Ribavirin treatment of acute and chronic hepatitis E: a single center experience. Liver International 2013a; 33: 722-6.
Pischke S, Geer M, Hardtke S, et al. Course and treatment of chronic hepatitis E virus infection in lung transplant recipients. Transpl. Inf. Dis. 2014, epub ahead of print
Pischke S, Gisa A, Suneetha PV, et al. Increased HEV seroprevalence in patients with autoimmune hepatitis. PLOS One 2014, epub ahead of print.
Pischke S, Ho H, Urbanek F, et al. Hepatitis E in HIV-positive patients in a low-endemic country. J Viral Hepat 2010a;17:598-9. (Abstract)
Pischke S, Horn-Wichmann R, Ernst, D, et al. Absence of chronic hepatitis E in a German cohort of common variable immunodeficiency patients. Infectious Disease Reports 2012a; volume 4:e28.
Pischke S, Stiefel P, Franz B, Bremer B, Suneetha PV, Heim A, et al. Chronic hepatitis e in heart transplant recipients. Am J Transplant. 2012b:3128-33.

Pischke S, Suneetha PV, Baechlein C, et al. Hepatitis E virus infection as a cause of graft hepatitis in liver transplant recipients. Liver Transpl 2010b;16:74-82. (Abstract)
Pischke S, Voigtlaender T, Koenecke C, et al. Chronic hepatitis E in immunosuppressed patients beyond liver- and kidney transpantation. Journal of Hepatology 2011b;54, S1:495.
Pischke S, Wedemeyer H. Hepatitis E Virus Infection: multiple faces of an underestimated problem. J. Hepoatol. 2013b: 58: 1045-6.
Rein DB, Stevens G, Theaker J, Wittenborn JS, Wiersma ST. The global burden of hepatitis E virus. Hepatology 2011; 55: 988-97. (Abstract)
Rizebos-Brilman A, Puchhammer-Stockl E, Van der Weide HY, et al. Chronic hepatitis E infection in lung transplant recipients. J Heart Lung Transplant 2013. 32: 341-6.
Schlosser B, Stein A, Neuhaus R, et al. Liver transplant from a donor with occult HEV infection induced chronic hepatitis and cirrhosis in the recipient. J Hepatol 2011. (Abstract)
Shrestha MP, Scott RM, Joshi DM, et al. Safety and efficacy of a recombinant hepatitis E vaccine. N Engl J Med 2007;356:895-903. (Abstract)
Slot E, Hogema BM, Rizebos-Brillman A, Kok TM, Molier M, Zaaijer HL. Silent hepatitis E virus infection in Dutch blood donors, 2011 to 2012. Euro Surveill. 2013;18 pii: 20550.
Stoszek SK, Engle RE, Abdel-Hamid M, et al. Hepatitis E antibody seroconversion without disease in highly endemic rural Egyptian communities. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg 2006;100:89-94. (Abstract)
Teshale EH, Grytdal SP, Howard C, et al. Evidence of person-to-person transmission of hepatitis E virus during a large outbreak in Northern Uganda. Clin Infect Dis 2011;50:1006-10. (Abstract)
Van den Berg B, Annemick A, Van den Eijk A, et al. Guillain-Barré syndrome associated with preceding hepatitis E virus infection. Neuroology 2013; epub ahead of print.
Van Eijk JJ, Madden RG, van der Eijk AA, et al. Neuralgic amyotrophy and hepatitis E virus infection. Neurology 2014, epub ahead of print.
Versluis J, Pas SD, Agteresch HJ, et al. Hepatitis E virus: an underestimated opportunistic pathogen in recipients of allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Blood 2013; 122: 1079-86.
Wedemeyer H, Pischke S, Manns MP. Pathogenesis and treatment of hepatitis e virus infection. Gastroenterology 2012, 1388-1397.
Wedemeyer H, Pischke S. Hepatitis: Hepatitis E vaccination-is HEV 239 the breakthrough? Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol 2011;8:8-10. (Abstract)
Wenzel JJ, Preiss J, Schemmerer M, Huber B, Plentz A, Jilg W. Detection of hepatitis E virus (HEV) from porcine livers in Southeastern Germany and high sequence homology to human HEV isolates. J Clin Virol 2011. (Abstract)
WuT, Zhu FC, Huang SJ, et al. Safety of the hepatitis E vaccine for pregnant women: A preliminary analysis. Hepatology 2012. 55: 2038.
Zhang J, Zhang XF, Zhou C, et al. Protection against hepatitis E virus infection by naturally acquired and vaccine-induced immunity. Clin Microbiol Infect 2013; epub ahead of print.
Zhao ZY, Ruan B, Shao H, Chen ZJ, Liu SL. Detection of hepatitis E virus RNA in sera of patients with hepatitis E by polymerase chain reaction. Hepatobiliary Pancreat Dis Int 2007;6:38-42. (Abstract)
Zhu FC, Zhang J, Zhang XF, et al. Efficacy and safety of a recombinant hepatitis E vaccine in healthy adults: a large-scale, randomised, double-blind placebo-controlled, phase 3 trial. Lancet 2010;376:895-902. (Abstract)

5. HBV Virology

Maura Dandri, Jörg Petersen

Introduction

The human hepatitis B virus (HBV) is a small-enveloped DNA virus causing acute and chronic hepatitis. Despite the availability of a safe and effective vaccine, HBV infection still represents a major global health burden, with about 240 million people chronically infected worldwide and approximately 600,000 deaths per year due to HBV-associated liver pathologies (WHO 2013). Many epidemiological and molecular studies have shown that chronic HBV infection represents the main risk factor for hepatocellular carcinoma development (Shepard 2006, Lok 2004, Pollicino 2011). The rate for chronicity is approximately 5% in adult infections, but it reaches 90% in neonatal infections. HBV transmission occurs vertically and horizontally via exchange of body fluids. In serum, up to 10^{12} HBV genome equivalents per ml serum can be found. Although HBV does not induce direct cytopathic effects under normal infection conditions (Wieland 2004, Thimme 2003), liver damage (fibrosis, cirrhosis, and eventually hepatocellular carcinoma) is believed to be induced by the ongoing immune reaction and a consistent inflammation of the liver (McMahon 2009, Chisari 2007, Dandri 2012).

HBV is the prototype member of the *Hepadnaviridae* family, which are the smallest DNA-containing, enveloped animal viruses known. Characteristic of HBV is its high tissue- and species-specificity, as well as a unique genomic organization with asymmetric mechanism of replication (Nassal 2008). Since all hepadnaviruses use a reverse transcriptase to replicate their genome, they are considered distantly related to retroviruses. Despite decades of research and significant progress in understanding the molecular virology of HBV, important steps of the infection have not yet been clarified (Glebe 2007). Only recently the discovery of the cellular receptor (Yan 2012) and the establishment of innovative infection models and molecular techniques have opened up new possibilities to investigate specific steps of the lifecycle as well as the organization and activity of the covalently closed circular DNA (cccDNA), the viral minichromosome that serves as the template of HBV transcription in the nucleus of the infected hepatocytes, enabling maintenance of chronic HBV infection (Levrero 2009).

Taxonomic classification and genotypes

The *Hepadnaviridae* form their own taxonomic group as their biological characteristics are not observed in any other viral family. Based on host and phylogenetic differences, the family of *Hepadnaviridae* contains two genera: the *orthohepadnaviruses* infecting mammals, and the *avihepadnaviruses* that infect birds. To date, *orthohepadnaviruses* have been found in human (HBV), woodchuck (WHV) (Korba 1989), ground squirrel (GSHV), arctic squirrel (ASHV) and woolly monkey (WMHBV) (Lanford 1998). *Avihepadnaviruses* include duck HBV (DHBV) (Mason 1980), heron HBV (HHBV) (Sprengel 1988), Ross's goose HBV, snow goose HBV (SGHBV), stork HBV (STHBV) (Pult 2001) and crane HBV (CHBV) (Roggendorf 2007, Funk 2007, Dandri 2005b, Schaefer 2007).

Due to the lack of proofreading activity of the viral polymerase, misincorporation of nucleotide mutations occurs during viral replication. This has led to the emergence of eight HBV genotypes, A-H, which differ in more than 8% of the genome, as well as different subgenotypes, which differ by at least 4% (Fung and Lok 2004, Guirgis 2010). The HBV genotypes have different geographic distribution (Liaw 2010), with predominance of genotype A in northwestern Europe, North and South America, genotype B and C in Asia and genotype D in eastern Europe and in the Mediterranean basin. The less diffuse remaining genotypes are mostly found in West and South Africa (genotype E), in Central and South America (genotypes F and H), while genotype G has been detected in France and in the US (Pujol 2009). The phylogenetic tree of HBV genomes is reviewed elsewhere (Schaefer 2007).

HBV structure and genomic organization

Three types of viral particles can be visualized in the infectious serum by electron microscopy: the infectious virions and the subviral particles. The infectious virus particles are the so-called Dane particles (Dane 1970), have a spherical, double-shelled structure of 42-44 nm containing a single copy of the viral DNA genome, covalently linked to the terminal protein of the virus. A hallmark of HBV infection is the presence of two additional types of particles, the spheres and the filaments, which are exclusively composed of hepatitis B surface proteins and host-derived lipids (Glebe 2007). Since they do not contain viral nucleic acids, the subviral particles are non-infectious. The spherical structures measure around 22 nm in diameter, while the filaments are of similar width, but of variable lengths (Figure 1).

The viral membrane contains three viral surface proteins and is acquired by the virus during budding into the endoplasmic reticulum (ER), whereas the viral particles are transported via the secretory pathways through the ER and Golgi. The surface proteins are named the preS1 (or large), the preS2 (or middle) and the S (or small), which correspond to the HBsAg. As with nearly all enveloped viruses, the HBV particle also contains proteins of host origin (Glebe 2007, Urban 2010).

The HBV genome consists of a partially double-stranded relaxed circular DNA of approximately 3200 nucleotides in length, varying slightly from genotype to genotype, that in concert with the core protein (HBcAg) forms the nucleocapsids (Nassal 2008). Within the Dane particle the negative strand of the viral DNA is

present in full-length, carrying the complete genetic information. In contrast, the positive strand spans only ~ 2/3 of the genome in length, whilst its 3' end is variable in size (Summers 1988, Lutwick 1977). The viral polymerase is covalently bound to the negative strand by a phosphotyrosine bond. At the 5' end of the positive strand a short RNA oligomer originating from the pre-genomic (pg) RNA residually remains bound covalently after the viral DNA synthesis. The negative strand also contains a small redundancy of 8-9 nucleotides in length on both the 5' end and the 3' end, named the R region. These redundant structures are essential for viral replication (Seeger 1986, Seeger 2000, Nassal 2008, Lee 2004).

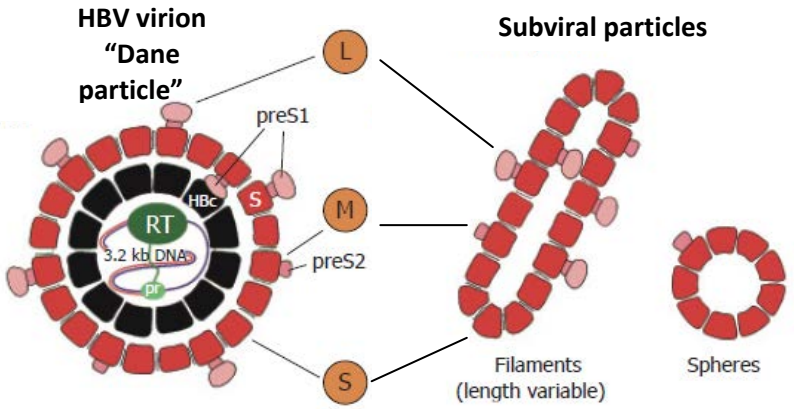


Figure 1. Schematic representation of the HBV virion and non-infectious empty subviral particles (filaments and spheres). Within the nucleocapsid (HBcAg, shown in black) is depicted the partial double-stranded viral genome (rcDNA) covalently linked to the terminal protein of reverse transcriptase. The presence and distribution of the three surface proteins L (preS1 or large), M (preS2 or middle) and S (small) are shown both on HBV and subviral particles (adapted from Glebe 2007)

The HBV genome displays four major open reading frames (ORFs) that are organized in a unique and highly condensed way (Block 2007). As shown in Figure 2, all ORFs are in an identical orientation, partially overlap and are encoded by the negative strand. On the genome, 6 start codons, four promoters and two transcription-enhancing elements have been identified. The four major ORFs are: I) the preS/S, encoding the three viral surface proteins; II) the precore/core, encoding both the core protein, essential for the formation of the nucleocapsid, and the non-structural pre-core protein, also known as the secreted e-antigen (HBeAg); III) the pol ORF of the viral polymerase, which possesses reverse transcriptase, DNA polymerase and RNase H activities, and the terminal protein; and IV) the X ORF, coding for the small regulatory X protein, which has been shown to be essential *in vivo* for viral replication (Zoulim 1994, Lucifora 2011) and is capable of transactivating numerous cellular and viral genes. Characteristic of the 4 major HBV ORFs is that they utilize a single common polyadenylation signal motif (Nassal 2008). Thus, all RNA transcripts are polyadenylated and capped.

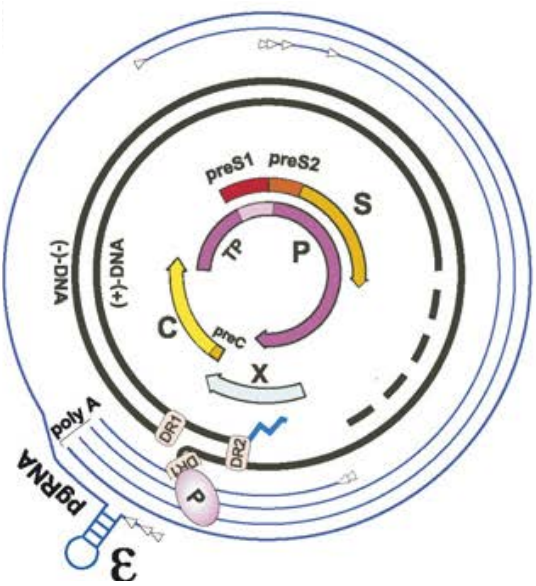


Figure 2. **Genome organization and transcripts of the human hepatitis B virus.** The outer thin lines represent the viral transcripts that initiate at different sites, under the control of distinct promoters, but are all terminated after a common polyadenylation site. The RNA signal on the terminally redundant pgRNA is indicated as a hairpin. The thick lines represent the rcDNA form of the genome as present in infectious virions. The 5' end of the minus-strand DNA is covalently linked to the terminal protein of the polymerase. The 5' end of the incomplete plus-strand DNA is constituted by an RNA oligo derived from the 5' end of pgRNA. DR1 and DR2 indicate the direct repeats. The inner arrows indicate the open reading frames (adapted from Nassal 2008)

HBV structural and non-structural proteins

The three surface proteins (L, M, and S) are encoded from one open reading frame (PreS/S) which contains three start codons (one for the large, one for the middle and one for the small protein) but promotes the transcription of 2 mRNAs of 2.4 and 2.1 Kb, named preS and S RNAs (Glebe 2007). Notably, the preS/S ORF entirely overlaps with the polymerase open reading frame (Lee 2004). The three HBV envelope proteins share the C-terminal domain of the S-protein, while the M- and L-protein display progressive N-terminal extensions of 55 and, genotype-dependent, 107 or 118 amino acids (preS2 and preS1). The small envelope protein contains the hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg). In virions the stoichiometric ratio of L, M and S is about 1:1:4, while the more abundantly secreted non-infectious subviral particles (SVPs) contain only traces of L-protein (Bruss 2007). The envelope proteins are co-translationally inserted into the ER membrane, where they aggregate, bud into the ER lumen, and are secreted by the cell, either as 22 nm subviral envelope particles (SVPs) or as 42 nm infectious virions (Dane particles), after having enveloped the DNA-containing nucleocapsids. The surface proteins of mammalian *Hepadnaviridae* have been shown to be N- and O-glycosylated (Schildgen 2004, Schmitt 2004). These glycosylations have been shown to be responsible for proper secretion of progeny viral particles. During synthesis, the

preS1 domain of L is myristoylated and translocated through the ER. This modification and the integrity of the first 77 amino acids of preS1 have been shown to be essential for infectivity (Glebe 2005, Nassal 2008) (Schulze 2010). Both spherical and filamentous SVPs are secreted into the blood of infected individuals in a 10^3-10^6-fold excess relative to the infectious particles. The biological function of the excess of SVPs in patients is not clear. It was suggested that SVPs might absorb the neutralizing antibodies produced by the host and hence increase the ability of the infectious particles to reach the hepatocytes. It has also been suggested that SVPs contribute to create a state of immune tolerance, which is a precondition for highly productive persistent infection.

In the cytoplasm, the core protein dimerises and self-assembles to form an icosahedral nucleocapsid. The full-length core protein is 183 amino acids in length and consists of an assembly domain and a nucleic acid-binding domain, which plays an active role in binding and packaging of the pregenomic RNA together with the viral polymerase, and thus enables the RT polymerase/RNA complex to initiate reverse transcription within the newly forming nucleocapsids (Kann 1994, Kann 2007, Kann 1999, Daub 2002). The core protein can be phosphorylated by several kinases. This step along with the presence of the viral polymerase is important for the specific packaging of the pgRNA (Kann 1999, Porterfield 2010).

The viral polymerase is the single enzyme encoded by the HBV genome and is an RNA-dependent DNA polymerase with RNase H activity. The HBV polymerase consists of three functional domains and a so-called spacer region; the terminal protein (TP) is located at its N-terminal domain, and serves as a primer for reverse transcription of the pgRNA into a negative-strand DNA (Zoulim 1994, Nassal 2008). The spacer domain separates the terminal protein from the polymerase domains (Beck 2007)

Despite the occurrence of nucleotide mutations due to the lack of proofreading capacity of the HBV polymerase, the peculiar genomic organization of HBV, where most of the genes overlap, imposes stronger constraints on the amino acid sequence, which significantly reduces the occurrence of mutations in the absence of strong selective pressures. Nevertheless, it has been shown that antiviral therapy with nucleoside analogs can promote the selection of nucleotide mutations within conserved domains of the reverse transcriptase, which leads to mutations on the amino acid sequence of the envelope proteins. Changes on the HBsAg structure may lead to reduced binding of anti-HBs antibodies, and hence, they may favour the selection of antibody escape mutants (Harrison 2006).

Besides the production of large amounts of empty SVPs, HBV produces and secretes a non-particulate form of the nucleoprotein, the precore protein, or HBeAg, which is not required for viral infection or replication, but appears to act as a decoy for the immune system, and hence, has tolerogenic functions in promoting viral persistence in the neonates of viremic mothers (Chen 2005, Visvanathan 2006). The precore and core proteins are translated from 2 distinct RNA species that have different 5' initiation sites: the precore RNA and the pgRNA. Indeed, the precore transcript, which also contains the full core gene, encodes a signal sequence that directs the precore protein to the lumen of the endoplasmic reticulum, where it is post-translationally processed. Here, the precore protein undergoes N- and C-terminal cleavage to produce the mature HBeAg form (p17), which is then secreted

as a monomeric protein. Interestingly, 20 to 30% of the mature protein is retained in the cytoplasm, where it may antagonise TLR signaling pathways and so contribute to the suppression of the host innate immune responses (Lang 2011). As an important marker for active viral replication, the HBeAg is widely used in molecular diagnostics (Chen 2005, Hadziyannis 2006).

The X protein is a multifunctional regulatory protein with transactivating and pro-apoptotic potential, which can modify several cellular pathways (Bouchard 2004) and act as a carcinogenic cofactor (Kim 1991, Dandri 1996, Slagle 1996). Numerous DNA transfection experiments have shown that over-expression of the X protein (HBx) causes transactivation of a wide range of viral elements and cellular promoters (Bouchard 2004). The evidence that HBx responsive enhancers/ promoters do not share any common DNA sequence and that HBx does not bind double-stranded DNA suggests that HBx may exert its transactivating activity through protein-protein interactions. *In vitro* studies have shown that HBx can affect various cytoplasmic signal transduction pathways by activating the Src kinase, Ras/Raf/MAP kinase, members of the protein kinase C, as well as Jak1/STAT. Furthermore, *in vitro* binding studies show that HBx can regulate the proteasome function, and thus, may control the degradation of cellular and viral proteins (Zhang 2004). It has also been reported that HBx can affect mitochondrial function, by altering its transmembrane potential, and that HBx can modulate calcium homeostasis (Bouchard 2001, Nassal 2008, Yang 2011).

Although the exact role of HBx in the context of HBV infection has not been fully elucidated, several lines of evidence obtained first using the woodchuck model (Zoulim 1994) and more recently using uPA-SCID mice (Tsuge 2010) and HepaRG™ cells (Lucifora 2011), have convincingly shown that HBx is required to initiate HBV replication and to maintain virion productivity. Notably, these studies indicated that despite the establishment of comparable cccDNA amounts, transcription of HBV RNAs was dramatically impaired in cells inoculated with HBV X, indicating that HBx is essential for viral transcription. These findings are also in agreement with data showing that HBx is recruited to the cccDNA minichromosome, where it appears to be involved in epigenetic control of HBV replication (Belloni 2009, Levrero 2009). In addition, HBx has been shown to enhance encapsidation of the pgRNA by increasing phosphorylation of the core protein (Melegari 2005), indicating that HBx may support virion productivity in various steps of the HBV life cycle.

Most HBV-related HCC show the integration of HBV DNA sequences including the X gene (Brechot 2004, Pollicino 2011, Lupberger 2007). Although HBV integrated forms are frequently rearranged and hence not compatible with the expression of functional proteins, HBx sequences deleted in the C-terminal portion have been frequently detected in tumoral cells (Iavarone 2003). In virus-associated cancers, viral proteins have been shown to participate in epigenetic alterations by disturbing the host DNA methylation system. Interestingly, a study suggested that the HBV regulatory X protein is a potent epigenetic modifying factor in the human liver, which can modulate the transcription of DNA methyltransferases required for normal levels of genomic methylation and maintenance of hypomethylation of tumor suppressor genes (TSGs) (Park 2007). HBx-promoted hypermethylation of

TSGs suggests a novel mechanism by which this promiscuous transactivating protein may accelerate hepatocarcinogenesis.

The HBV replication cycle

During the last 30 years, the generation of various HBV–transfected human hepatoma cell lines and the use of related HBV viruses, like the duck hepatitis B virus (DHBV) and the woodchuck hepatitis virus (WHV), have significantly contributed to elucidate many steps of the hepadnavirus replication cycle (Schultz 2004, Roggendorf 1995, Roggendorf 2007). Nevertheless, the lack of efficient *in vitro* infection systems and of easily accessible animal models has significantly hindered the identification of mechanisms and cellular factors mediating viral entry and uncoating in human hepatocytes. Although primary hepatocytes remain permissive *in vitro* for only a short time after plating, the availability of primary hepatocytes from tree shrews (*Tupaia belangeri*) for infection studies with HBV and the closely-related woolly monkey hepatitis B virus (WMHBV) (Kock 2001), and the discovery of a human hepatoma cell line (HepaRG) able to gain susceptibility for HBV infection upon induction of differentiation *in vitro* (Gripon 2002), have expanded our possibilities to functionally dissect the HBV entry process (Glebe 2007, Schulze 2010).

The first step in HBV infection was shown to involve a non-cell-type specific primary attachment to the cell-associated heparan sulfate proteoglycans (Schulze 2007). This first reversible attachment step is then followed by an irreversible binding of the virus to a specific hepatocyte-specific receptor (Urban 2010, Glebe 2007). Using mutational analysis, important determinants for infectivity were identified within the HBV envelope proteins. These include 75 amino acids of the preS1 domain of the HBV L-protein, its myristoylation and the integrity of a region in the antigenic loop of the S domain (Gripon 2005, Engelke 2006, Meier 2013). It has also been shown that HBV and HDV infection can be blocked both *in vitro* (Glebe & Urban 2007) and *in vivo* (Petersen 2008, Lütgehetmann 2012) by a small lipopeptide (MyrB) containing the same aminoacid sequence of the preS1 domain of the HBV-L protein. Although cell polarization, in addition to the differentiation status of the hepatocytes, was shown to play an essential role in the infection process (Schulze 2011), the identity of the receptor has remained a mystery for many years.

Only recently was the cellular receptor identified that allows hepatitis B and Delta viruses to enter primary human liver cells. By using a method called zero-length photo cross-linking and tandem affinity purification, the preS1 peptide was seen to specifically interact with a sodium taurocholate cotransporting polypeptide (NTCP), a multiple transmembrane transporter localized to the basolateral membrane of highly differentiated primary hepatocytes (Yan 2012). NTCP mediates the transport of conjugated bile acids and some drugs from portal blood to the liver. Based on the discovery that NTCP functions as viral entry receptor by interacting with the large surface protein of HBV. Cell lines susceptible to HBV infection have been recently established and first studies indicated that both HBV and HDV infection can be established in a significant proportion of HepG2 cells stably transfected with the human NTCP (Yan 2012, Nkongolo 2013). Although large amounts of input viruses

(MOI >1000) are still necessary to achieve HBV infection in these culture systems, the availability of *in vitro* assays permitting investigation of the early steps of infection as well as rapid screening of new anti-HBV agents has opened new opportunities in HBV research. Early *in vitro* studies indicate that HBV entry is inhibited by cyclosporins and oxysterols, which are known to bind to NTCP, in hNTCP-transfected hepatoma cells (Nkongolo 2013, Watashi 2013).

Despite the importance of such a discovery, additional as-yet-unknown factors appear to be involved in the HBV infection process, since the production of limited amounts of HBV particles is observed and murine cells (hepatoma and primary hepatocytes) engineered to express hNTCP have so far failed to permit the establishment of productive HBV infection, which involves the formation of the cccDNA template. Whether species-specific differences or the lack of essential cellular factors in murine cells is responsible for these discrepancies needs to be investigated.

Upon binding to the cell membrane, two possible entry pathways have been proposed. Experimental evidence suggests that HBV can be either involved in an endocytosis process, followed by the release of the nucleocapsid from endocytic vesicles, or HBV may enter the hepatocytes after fusion of the viral envelope at the plasma membrane. As soon as the viral nucleocapsids are released into the cytoplasm, the relaxed circular partially double-stranded DNA (rcDNA) with its covalently linked polymerase needs to enter the cell nucleus in order to convert the rcDNA genome into a covalently closed circular form (cccDNA) (Nassal 2008). Previous studies indicated that the viral capsids are transported via microtubules to the nuclear periphery (Rabe 2006). The accumulation of the capsids at the nuclear envelope would then facilitate interactions with nuclear transport receptors and adaptor proteins of the nuclear pore complex (Kann 2007). Although immature capsids may remain trapped within the nuclear baskets by the pore complexes, the mature capsids eventually disintegrate, permitting the release of both core capsid subunits and of the viral DNA polymerase complexes, which diffuse into the nucleoplasm (Schmitz 2010).

Within the infected nuclei the establishment of productive HBV infection requires the removal of the covalently attached viral polymerase and completion of the positive-strand by the cellular replicative machinery to form the supercoiled cccDNA molecule, which is then incorporated into the host chromatin and serves as the template of viral transcription and replication (Nassal 2008, Newbold 1995). For the formation of the cccDNA, the terminal protein and one of the redundant terminal repeats present on the rcDNA need to be removed. It is assumed that cellular ligases and probably other enzymes involved in DNA repair mechanisms become active and convey the relaxed circular form into the cccDNA (Seeger 2000). Unlike the provirus DNA of retroviruses, the cccDNA does not need to be incorporated into the host genome. Nevertheless, integrations of HBV DNA sequences do occur, particularly in the course of hepatocyte turnover and in the presence of DNA damage, as has been shown in cell culture (Dandri 2002) and in the woodchuck system (Petersen 1998, Summers 2004, Mason 2005).

Disguised as a stable non-integrated minichromosome (Bock 1994, Bock 2001), the cccDNA utilizes the cellular transcriptional machinery to produce all viral RNAs necessary for protein production and viral replication, which takes place in

the cytoplasm after reverse transcription of an over-length pregenomic RNA (pgRNA) (Figure 3).

Experimental DHBV infection studies indicate that the cccDNA can be formed not only from incoming virions, but also from newly synthesized nucleocapsids, which instead of being enveloped and secreted into the blood, are transported into the nucleus to ensure accumulation, and later maintenance, of the cccDNA pool (Zoulim 2005b, Nassal 2008). According to this scenario, multiple rounds of infection are not needed to establish a cccDNA pool in infected duck hepatocytes. Moreover, expression of the DHBV viral large surface (LS) protein was shown to induce a negative-feedback mechanism, whereby the accumulation of the LS protein would be fundamental to shut off the cccDNA amplification pathway and redirect the newly synthesized rcDNA-containing nucleocapsids to envelopment and extracellular secretion (Kock 2010). Although this peculiar nuclear reentry mechanism has been clearly demonstrated for the duck HBV (Summers 1991, Nassal 2008, Wu 1990) and a high copy number of cccDNA molecules is generally detected in chronically infected ducks and woodchucks (1 to 50 copies/cell) (Zhang 2003, Dandri 2000), lower cccDNA intrahepatic loads are generally determined in human liver biopsies obtained from chronically HBV-infected patients (median 0.1 to 1 cccDNA copy/cell) (Werle-Lapostolle 2004, Wong 2004, Laras 2006, Volz 2007, Wursthorn 2006, Lutgehetmann 2008) and in chronically HBV-infected human-liver chimeric uPA-SCID mice (Petersen 2008, Lutgehetmann 2011a, Lutgehetmann 2011b, Lutgehetmann 2010), suggesting that different viral and host mechanisms may control cccDNA dynamics and cccDNA pool size in human infected hepatocytes (Levrero 2009). One elegant study has shown that HBV converts the rcDNA into cccDNA less efficiently than DHBV in the same human cell background (Kock 2010).

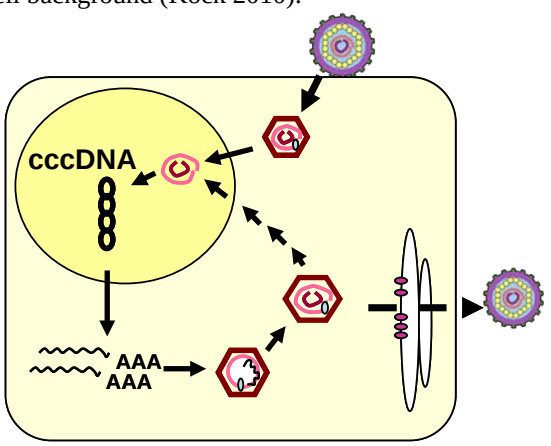


Figure 3. The HBV lifecycle. Upon hepatocyte infection the nucleocapsid is released into the cytoplasm and the rcDNA transferred to the cell nucleus where it is converted into the cccDNA minichromosome. After transcription of the viral RNAs, the pgRNA is encapsidated and reverse-transcribed by the HBV polymerase. Through Golgi and ER apparatus the core particles acquire the envelope and are secreted. Via viral entry and retransporting of the newly synthesized HBV DNA into the cell nucleus, the cccDNA pool can be amplified

Although the formation of the cccDNA minichromosome is essential to establish productive infection, studies performed in humanized uPA-SCID mice indicate that this step is achieved initially only in a minority of human hepatocytes. Indeed, three weeks post-infection, the intrahepatic cccDNA load is very low (~ 1 copy/50 human hepatocytes) and only sporadic cells stain HBcAg-positive, while within 8 weeks the majority of human hepatocytes become infected. Thus, several weeks appear to be necessary for HBV to spread among human hepatocytes *in vivo*, even in the absence of adaptive immune responses (Dandri 2011).

HBV polymerase inhibitors do not directly affect cccDNA activity and various *in vitro* and *in vivo* studies support the notion that the cccDNA minichromosome is very stable in quiescent hepatocytes (Moraleda 1997, Dandri 2000, Dandri 2005, Lutgehetmann 2010). Thus, the significant decrease in cccDNA levels (approximately 1 $\log_{10}$ reduction) generally determined after 1 year of therapy with polymerase inhibitors (Werle-Lapostolle 2004) is imagined to derive from the lack of sufficient recycling of viral nucleocapsids to the nucleus, due to the strong inhibition of viral DNA synthesis in the cytoplasm, and less incoming viruses from the blood. Nevertheless, cccDNA depletion is expected to require many years of nucleos(t)ide drug administration. Thus, despite the absence of detectable viremia, the persistence of the cccDNA minichromosome within the infected liver is responsible for the failure of viral clearance and the relapse of viral activity after cessation of antiviral therapy with polymerase inhibitors in chronically infected individuals. Furthermore, if viral suppression is not complete, the selection of resistant variants escaping antiviral therapy is likely to occur (Zoulim 2005a, Zoulim 2005b, Zoulim 2009). Resistant HBV genomes can be archived in infected hepatocytes when nucleocapsids produced in the cytoplasm by reverse transcription and containing resistant mutants are transported into the nucleus and added to the cccDNA pool. Under antiviral pressure, these variants will coexist with wild-type cccDNA molecules and function as templates for the production and possibly further selection of replication-competent resistant mutants, which will spread to other hepatocytes and, eventually may even replace the wild-type cccDNA molecules in the liver (Zoulim 2006, Zoulim 2009).

During chronic HBV infection immune-mediated cell injury and compensatory hepatocyte proliferation may favour cccDNA decline and selection of cccDNA-free cells (Mason 2005, Zhang 2003, Thermet 2008). Notably, studies with the duck model show that antiviral therapy with polymerase inhibitors induces a greater cccDNA reduction in animals displaying higher hepatocyte proliferation rates (Addison 2002). cccDNA decrease was also determined in chronically WHV-infected woodchuck hepatocytes when cell turnover was induced *in vitro* by addition of cellular growth factors and viral replication was suppressed by adefovir (Dandri 2000). Furthermore, the identification of uninfected cccDNA-negative cell clones containing “traces” of the infection in the form of viral integration indicates that cccDNA clearance without cell destruction can occur in chronically infected woodchucks (Mason 2005). Thus, in chronic infection, killing of hepatocytes may be instrumental not only to eliminate infected cells but also to induce hepatocyte proliferation, which in turn, may favour cccDNA loss (Dandri 2005, Lutgehetmann 2010). On the other hand, studies have shown that very low levels of cccDNA can

persist indefinitely, possibly explaining lifelong immune responses to HBV despite clinical resolution of HBV infection (Rehermann 1996).

As mentioned previously, the cccDNA acts chemically and structurally as an episomal DNA with a plasmid-like structure (Bock 1994, Bock 2001, Newbold 1995), which is organized as a minichromosome by histone and non-histone proteins. Hence its function is regulated, similarly to the cellular chromatin, by the activity of various nuclear transcription factors, including transcriptional coactivators, repressors and chromatin-modifying enzymes (Levrero 2009, Belloni 2012). Congruent with the fact that HBV infects hepatocytes, nearly all elements regulating viral transcription have binding sites for liver-specific transcription factors (Levrero 2009, Quasdorff 2008). Nevertheless, although a number of factors regulating viral transcription are known, the exact molecular mechanisms regulating HBV transcription are still poorly defined. Both messenger and pregenomic RNAs are transported into the cytoplasm, where they are respectively translated or used as the template for progeny genome production. Thus, the transcription of the pgRNA is the critical step for genome amplification and determines the rate of HBV replication. Identification of the factors affecting stability and transcriptional activity of the cccDNA in the course of infection and under antiviral therapy may assist in the design of new therapeutic strategies aimed at silencing and eventually depleting the cccDNA reservoir.

The next crucial step in HBV replication is the specific packaging of pgRNA plus the reverse transcriptase into new capsids. The pgRNA bears a secondary structure – named the ε structure - that is present at both the 5' and the 3' ends. The ε hairpin loops at the 5' end are first recognized by the viral polymerase and act as the initial packaging signal (Bartenschlager 1992). Binding of polymerase to the RNA stem-loop structure ε initiates packaging of one pgRNA molecule and its reverse transcription. The first product is single-stranded (ss) DNA of minus polarity; due to its unique protein priming mechanism, its 5' end remains covalently linked to the polymerase. The pgRNA is concomitantly degraded, except for its 5' terminal (~15–18 nucleotides which serve as primer for plus-strand DNA synthesis), resulting in rcDNA. The heterogeneous lengths of the plus-strand DNAs generated by capsid-assisted reverse transcription may result from a non-identical supply of dNTPs inside individual nucleocapsids at the moment of their enclosure by the dNTP impermeable envelope. This predicts that intracellular cores produced in the absence of envelopment should contain further extended positive DNAs. Alternatively, space restrictions in the capsid lumen could prevent plus-strand DNA completion; in this view, further plus-strand elongation after infection of a new cell might destabilize the nucleocapsid and thus be involved in genome uncoating (Beck 2007, Nassal 2008).

The final replication step, the assembly and release of HBV Dane particles, is also not fully understood. The envelopment of the DNA-containing nucleocapsids requires a balanced co-expression of the S and L proteins in order to recruit the nucleocapsid to the budding site. Although the role of the envelope proteins in regulating the amplification of cccDNA in HBV is not well-characterized, recent studies indicate that the lack of expression of the envelope proteins increase cccDNA levels, while coexpression of the envelope proteins not only favors the

secretion of viral particles, but also limits the completion of the plus-strand (Lentz 2011).

Animal models of HBV infection

Because of the narrow host range and the lack of easily accessible and robust *in vitro* infection systems the study of HBV biology has been limited. Consequently researchers all over the world have attempted to establish animal models and cell culture systems that are permissive for HBV replication and at least partially reproduce some stages of HBV infection and can be used, eg, for the preclinical testing of novel antiviral drugs.

Most of the progress in hepatitis B virus research is based on infection studies performed with the two most commonly used HBV-related animal viruses: DHBV, which infects Peking ducks (Mason 1980) and WHV (Summers 1978), which infects the Eastern American woodchuck (*Marmota monax*).

One of the major advantages of the DHBV model is that domestic Peking ducks can be used under normal laboratory conditions and DHBV-permissive primary hepatocytes from ducklings or embryos are easily accessible. Furthermore, ducks show very high infectivity rates *in vivo* (Jilbert 1996) with high levels of DHBV replication and antigen expression. However, in contrast to mammalian hepadnaviruses, DHBV infection is cleared within a few days post-infection if the virus is not transmitted vertically. The DHBV genome is also smaller than that of the mammalian hepadnaviruses and shares little primary nucleotide sequence homology (40%) with HBV. Furthermore, DHBV infection is usually not associated with liver disease and development of hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC). Nevertheless, the duck model was widely used in preclinical trials (Zimmerman 2008, Reaiche 2010, Chayama 2011) and has contributed substantially to elucidate the hepadnaviral replication scheme (Mason 1982, Summers 1988, Delmas 2002).

In vitro and *in vivo* studies with woodchuck hepatitis B virus (WHV) have been fundamental in the preclinical evaluation of antiviral drugs now in use for treatment of HBV infection (Moraleda 1997, Tennant 1998, Mason 1998, Block 1998, Dandri 2000, Korba 2004, Menne 2005). This is due to the fact that WHV is more similar to HBV in terms of genomic organization than the avian hepadnaviruses. Experimental infection of newborn woodchucks almost invariably leads to chronic infection, whereas most animals infected at older ages develop acute hepatitis that results in an efficient immune response leading to viral clearance.

Since acute and chronic WHV infections in woodchucks show serological profiles similar to those of HBV infection in humans, the woodchuck system has provided important information about factors involved in the establishment of virus infection, replication and viral persistence (Lu 2001). Virtually all WHV chronic carrier woodchucks succumb to HCC 2-4 years post infection. Like in human HCC, regenerative hepatocellular nodules and hepatocellular adenomas are characteristically observed in WHV-infected woodchuck livers (Korba 2004). Proto-oncogene activation by WHV DNA integration has been observed frequently and is thought to play an important role in driving hepatocarcinogenesis in woodchucks, often activating a member of the myc family by various mechanisms (Tennant 2004). Viral integration is commonly found in woodchucks even after

resolution of transient infection with WHV (Summers 2003), while its frequency increases dramatically in chronically infected animals (Mason 2005). Interestingly, WHV viral integration was used as a genetic marker to follow the fate of infected hepatocytes during resolution of transient infection in woodchucks (Summers 2003) and to estimate the amount of cell turnover occurring in the course of chronic infection (Mason 2005). Experimental infection studies in woodchucks also demonstrated that WHV mutants that lacked the X gene were unable or severely impaired to replicate *in vivo* (Chen 1993, Zoulim 1994, Zhang 2001). The woodchuck model of virally induced HCC has been used to test chemoprevention of HCC using long-term antiviral nucleoside therapy and for the development of new imaging agents for the detection of hepatic neoplasms by ultrasound and magnetic resonance imaging (Tennant 2004).

One main difference between human and rodent hepatitis B resides in the absence of associated cirrhosis in woodchuck and squirrel livers, even after prolonged viral infection (Buendia 1998). It is possible that the rapid onset of hepatocyte proliferation following liver damage in rodents does account for this discrepancy. One general disadvantage for using woodchucks is that they are genetically heterogeneous animals, difficult to breed in captivity and to handle in a laboratory setting. Nevertheless, the woodchuck model has greatly contributed in advancing our understanding of the pathogenesis of HBV infection.

Although HBV infects humans exclusively, it can be used to infect chimpanzees experimentally and, to a certain extent, *tupaia*, the Asian tree shrew (Baumert 2005). Chimpanzees were the first animals found to be susceptible to HBV infection (Barker 1973) and played an important role in the development of vaccines and in the evaluation of the efficacy of therapeutic antibodies (Ogata 1999, Dagan 2003). Though chimpanzees are not prone to develop chronic liver disease (Gagneux 2004), they provide an ideal model for the analysis of early immunological events of HBV acute infection and pathogenesis (Guidotti 1999). Infection experiments with chimpanzees showed that the majority of viral DNA is eliminated from the liver by non-cytolytic mechanisms that precede the peek of T cell infiltration (Guidotti 1999). T cell depletion studies in chimpanzees also indicate that the absence of CD8-positive cells greatly delays the onset of viral clearance (Thimme 2003). Chimpanzees have been used for preclinical testing of preventive and therapeutic vaccines (Will 1982, Guidotti 1999, Iwarson 1985, Kim 2008, Murray 2005). Nonetheless, the large size, the strong ethical constraints and the high costs of chimpanzees severely limit their use for research purposes.

The tree shrew species *Tupaia belangeri* has been analyzed for the study of HBV infection both *in vitro* and *in vivo*, taking advantage of the adaptability of these non-rodent mammals to the laboratory environment (Baumert 2005, von Weizsacker 2004). Inoculation of tree shrews with HBV-positive human serum was shown to result in viral DNA replication in their livers, HBsAg secretion into the serum, and production of antibodies to HBsAg and HBeAg (Walter 1996). Although experimental infection of tree shrew with HBV infectious serum is not highly efficient, productive HBV infection was successfully passed through five generations of tree shrews and was specifically blocked by immunization with hepatitis B vaccine (Yan 1996a). Interestingly, the development of hepatocellular carcinoma in tree shrews exposed to hepatitis B virus and/or aflatoxin B1 was reported (Yan 1996b).

Whereas experimental infection of tree shrews causes only a mild, transient infection with low viral titers, primary hepatocytes isolated from them turned out to be a valuable alternative source of HBV-permissive cells (von Weizsacker 2004). More recently, the woolly monkey hepatitis B virus (WMHV) was isolated from a woolly monkey (*Lagothrix lagotricha)*, an endangered new world primate (Lanford 1998). Interestingly, it has been shown that primary *tupaia* hepatocytes are susceptible to infection with WMHBV (Kock 2001, Dandri 2005a), providing a useful and more accessible alternative system for studying the early steps of hepadnaviral infection *in vitro* (Schulze 2011) and *in vivo* (Petersen 2008).

Because of the different limitations encountered using chimpanzees and models based on HBV-related viruses, recent developments have focused on using the natural target of HBV infection: the human hepatocyte. However, primary human hepatocytes are not easy to handle, cannot be propagated *in vitro* and their susceptibility to HBV infection is generally low and highly variable. Furthermore, cultured cells may respond differently to the infection than hepatocytes in the liver. The generation of mice harboring human chimeric livers offered new possibilities to overcome some of these limitations.

Two major models are currently available: the urokinase-type plasminogen activator (uPA) transgenic mouse (Rhim 1994) and the knockout fumarylacetoacetate hydrolase (FAH) mouse (Azuma 2007). In both systems, the absence of adaptive immune responses permits the engraftment of transplanted xenogenic hepatocytes, while the presence of transgene-induced hepatocyte damage creates the space and the regenerative stimulus necessary for the transplanted cells to repopulate the mouse liver. Both models permit the establishment of HBV infection, which can then persist for the lifespan of the chimeric mouse (Dandri 2001, Bissig 2010). While mouse hepatocytes do not support HBV infection, human chimeric mice can be efficiently infected by injecting infectious serum derived from either patients or chimeric mice. Furthermore, genetically engineered viruses created in cell culture can be used to investigate phenotype and *in vivo* fitness of distinct HBV genotypes and variants (Tsuge 2005). Within the mouse liver human hepatocytes maintain a functional innate immune system and respond to stimuli induced by exogenously applied human IFNα. The lack of an adaptive immune system and the undetectable responsiveness of mouse liver cells to human IFNα make the model ideal to exploit the capacities of HBV to interfere with pathways of the innate antiviral response in human hepatocytes (Lutgehetmann 2011). Moreover, humanized cimeric mice can be superinfected or simultaneously infected with different human hepatotropic viruses, such as HDV (Lütgehetmann 2012) and HCV (Hiraga 2009) to investigate the mechanisms of virus interference and response to antiviral treatment in the setting of coinfection.

References

Addison WR, Walters KA, Wong WW, et al. Half-life of the duck hepatitis B virus covalently closed circular DNA pool in vivo following inhibition of viral replication. J Virol 2002;76:6356-63. (Abstract)

Azuma H, Paulk N, Ranade A, et al. Robust expansion of human hepatocytes in Fah-/-/Rag2-/-/Il2rg-/- mice. Nat Biotechnol 2007;25:903-10. (Abstract)

Barker LF, Chisari FV, McGrath PP, et al. Transmission of type B viral hepatitis to chimpanzees. J Infect Dis 1973;127(6):648-62. (Abstract)

Bartenschlager R, Schaller H. Hepadnaviral assembly is initiated by polymerase binding to the encapsidation signal in the viral RNA genome. Embo J 1992;11:3413-20. (Abstract)

Baumert TF, Yang C, Schurmann P, et al. Hepatitis B virus mutations associated with fulminant hepatitis induce apoptosis in primary Tupaia hepatocytes. Hepatology 2005;41(2):247-56. (Abstract)

Beck J, Nassal M. Hepatitis B virus replication. World J Gastroenterol 2007;13:48-64. (Abstract)

Belloni L, Pollicino T, De Nicola F, et al. Nuclear HBx binds the HBV minichromosome and modifies the epigenetic regulation of cccDNA function. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2009;106:19975-9. (Abstract)

Belloni L, Allweiss, L, Guerrieri F, et al. IFN-α inhibits HBV transcription and replication in cell culture and in humanized mice by targeting the epigenetic regulation of the nuclear cccDNA minichromosome. J Clin Invest. 2012: 122(2):529-37.

Bissig KD, Wieland SF, Tran P, et al. Human liver chimeric mice provide a model for hepatitis B and C virus infection and treatment. J Clin Invest 2010;120:924-30. (Abstract)

Block TM, Guo H, Guo JT. Molecular virology of hepatitis B virus for clinicians. Clin Liver Dis 2007;11:685-706. (Abstract)

Block TM, Lu X, Mehta AS, et al. Treatment of chronic hepadnavirus infection in a woodchuck animal model with an inhibitor of protein folding and trafficking. Nat Med 1998;4:610-4. (Abstract)

Bock CT, Schranz P, Schroder CH, Zentgraf H. Hepatitis B virus genome is organized into nucleosomes in the nucleus of the infected cell. Virus Genes 1994;8:215-29. (Abstract)

Bock CT, Schwinn S, Locarnini S, et al. Structural organization of the hepatitis B virus minichromosome. J Mol Biol 2001;307:183-96. (Abstract)

Bouchard MJ, Schneider RJ. The enigmatic X gene of hepatitis B virus. J Virol 2004;78:12725-34. (Abstract)

Bouchard MJ, Wang LH, Schneider RJ. Calcium signaling by HBx protein in hepatitis B virus DNA replication. Science 2001;294:2376-8. (Abstract)

Brechot C. Pathogenesis of hepatitis B virus-related hepatocellular carcinoma: old and new paradigms. Gastroenterology 2004;127(5 Suppl 1):S56-61.

Bruss V. Hepatitis B virus morphogenesis. World J Gastroenterol 2007;13:65-73. (Abstract)

Buendia MA. Hepatitis B viruses and cancerogenesis. Biomed Pharma-cother 1998;52:34-43. (Abstract)

Chang JJ, Lewin SR. Immunopathogenesis of hepatitis B virus infection. Immunol Cell Biol 2007;85:16-23. (Abstract)

Chayama K, Hayes CN, Hiraga N, Abe H, Tsuge M, Imamura M. Animal model for study of human hepatitis viruses. J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2011;26:13-8.

Chen HS, Kaneko S, Girones R, et al. The woodchuck hepatitis virus X gene is important for establishment of virus infection in woodchucks. J Virol 1993;67:1218-26. (Abstract)

Chen M, Sallberg M, Hughes J, et al. Immune tolerance split between hepatitis B virus precore and core proteins. J Virol 2005;79:3016-27. (Abstract)

Chisari FV, Isogawa M, Wieland SF. Pathogenesis of hepatitis B virus infection. Pathol Biol (Paris);58:258-66. (Abstract)

Dagan S, Eren R. Therapeutic antibodies against viral hepatitis. Curr Opin Mol Ther 2003;5:148-55. (Abstract)

Dandri M, Burda MR, Burkle A, et al. Increase in de novo HBV DNA integrations in response to oxidative DNA damage or inhibition of poly(ADP-ribosyl)ation. Hepatology 2002;35:217-23. (Abstract)

Dandri M, Burda MR, Torok E, et al. Repopulation of mouse liver with human hepatocytes and in vivo infection with hepatitis B virus. Hepatology 2001;33:981-8. (Abstract)

Dandri M, Burda MR, Will H, Petersen J. Increased hepatocyte turnover and inhibition of woodchuck hepatitis B virus replication by adefovir in vitro do not lead to reduction of the closed circular DNA. Hepatology 2000;32:139-46. (Abstract)
Dandri M, Burda MR, Zuckerman DM, et al. Chronic infection with hepatitis B viruses and antiviral drug evaluation in uPA mice after liver repopulation with tupaia hepatocytes. J Hepatol 2005;42:54-60. (Abstract)
Dandri M, Locarnini S. New insight in the pathobiology of hepatitis B virus infection. Gut 2012; 61: i6-i17.
Dandri M, Petersen J. Chimeric Mouse Model of Hepatitis B Virus infection. J Hepatol 2011. (Abstract)
Dandri M, Petersen J. Hepatitis B virus cccDNA clearance: killing for curing? Hepatology 2005;42:1453-5. (Abstract)
Dandri M, Schirmacher P, Rogler CE. Woodchuck hepatitis virus X protein is present in chronically infected woodchuck liver and woodchuck hepatocellular carcinomas which are permissive for viral replication. J Virol 1996;70:5246-54. (Abstract)
Dandri M, Volz TK, Lutgehetmann M, Petersen J. Animal models for the study of HBV replication and its variants. J Clin Virol 2005;34 Suppl 1:S54-62. (Abstract)
Daub H, Blencke S, Habenberger P, et al. Identification of SRPK1 and SRPK2 as the major cellular protein kinases phosphorylating hepatitis B virus core protein. J Virol 2002;76:8124-37. (Abstract)
Delmas J, Schorr O, Jamard C, et al. Inhibitory effect of adefovir on viral DNA synthesis and covalently closed circular DNA formation in duck hepatitis B virus-infected hepatocytes in vivo and in vitro. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 2002;46:425-33. (Abstract)
Engelke M, Mills K, Seitz S, et al. Characterization of a hepatitis B and hepatitis delta virus receptor binding site. Hepatology 2006;43:750-60. (Abstract)
Fung SK, Lok AS. Hepatitis B virus genotypes: do they play a role in the outcome of HBV infection? Hepatology 2004;40:790-2. (Abstract)
Funk A, Mhamdi M, Will H, Sirma H. Avian hepatitis B viruses: molecular and cellular biology, phylogenesis, and host tropism. World J Gastroenterol 2007;13:91-103. (Abstract)
Gagneux P, Muchmore EA. The chimpanzee model: contributions and considerations for studies of hepatitis B virus. Methods Mol Med 2004;96:289-318. (Abstract)
Glebe D, Urban S, Knoop EV, et al. Mapping of the hepatitis B virus attachment site by use of infection-inhibiting preS1 lipopeptides and tupaia hepatocytes. Gastroenterology 2005;129:234-45. (Abstract)
Glebe D, Urban S. Viral and cellular determinants involved in hepadnaviral entry. World J Gastroenterol 2007;13:22-38. (Abstract)
Gripon P, Cannie I, Urban S. Efficient inhibition of hepatitis B virus infection by acylated peptides derived from the large viral surface protein. J Virol 2005;79:1613-22. (Abstract)
Gripon P, Rumin S, Urban S, et al. Infection of a human hepatoma cell line by hepatitis B virus. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2002;99:15655-60. (Abstract)
Guidotti LG, Rochford R, Chung J, Shapiro M, Purcell R, Chisari FV. Viral clearance without destruction of infected cells during acute HBV infection. Science 1999;284:825-9. (Abstract)
Guirgis BS, Abbas RO, Azzazy HM. Hepatitis B virus genotyping: current methods and clinical implications. Int J Infect Dis 2010;14:e941-53. (Abstract)
Hadziyannis SJ, Papatheodoridis GV. Hepatitis B e antigen-negative chronic hepatitis B: natural history and treatment. Semin Liver Dis 2006;26:130-41. (Abstract)
Harrison TJ. Hepatitis B virus: molecular virology and common mutants. Semin Liver Dis 2006;26:87-96. (Abstract)
Hiraga N, Imamura M, Hatakeyama T, et al. Absence of viral interference and different susceptibility to interferon between hepatitis B virus and hepatitis C virus in human hepatocyte chimeric mice. J Hepatol 2009;51:1046-54. (Abstract)
Iavarone M, Trabut JB, Delpuech O, et al. Characterisation of hepatitis B virus X protein mutants in tumour and non-tumour liver cells using laser capture microdissection. J Hepatol 2003;39:253-61. (Abstract)

Iwarson S, Tabor E, Thomas HC, et al. Neutralization of hepatitis B virus infectivity by a murine monoclonal antibody: an experimental study in the chimpanzee. J Med Virol 1985;16:89-96. (Abstract)
Jilbert AR, Miller DS, Scougall CA, Turnbull H, Burrell CJ. Kinetics of duck hepatitis B virus infection following low dose virus inoculation: one virus DNA genome is infectious in neonatal ducks. Virology 1996;226:338-45. (Abstract)
Kann M, Gerlich WH. Effect of core protein phosphorylation by protein kinase C on encapsidation of RNA within core particles of hepatitis B virus. J Virol 1994;68:7993-8000. (Abstract)
Kann M, Schmitz A, Rabe B. Intracellular transport of hepatitis B virus. World J Gastroenterol 2007;13:39-47. (Abstract)
Kann M, Sodeik B, Vlachou A, Gerlich WH, Helenius A. Phosphorylation-dependent binding of hepatitis B virus core particles to the nuclear pore complex. J Cell Biol 1999;145:45-55. (Abstract)
Kim CM, Koike K, Saito I, Miyamura T, Jay G. HBx gene of hepatitis B virus induces liver cancer in transgenic mice. Nature 1991;351:317-20. (Abstract)
Kim SH, Shin YW, Hong KW, et al. Neutralization of hepatitis B virus (HBV) by human monoclonal antibody against HBV surface antigen (HBsAg) in chimpanzees. Antiviral Res 2008;79:188-91. (Abstract)
Kock J, Nassal M, MacNelly S, Baumert TF, Blum HE, von Weizsacker F. Efficient infection of primary tupaia hepatocytes with purified human and woolly monkey hepatitis B virus. J Virol 2001;75:5084-9. (Abstract)
Kock J, Rosler C, Zhang JJ, Blum HE, Nassal M, Thoma C. Generation of covalently closed circular DNA of hepatitis B viruses via intracellular recycling is regulated in a virus specific manner. PLoS Pathog 2010;6:e1001082. (Abstract)
Korba BE, Cote PJ, Menne S, et al. Clevudine therapy with vaccine inhibits progression of chronic hepatitis and delays onset of hepatocellular carcinoma in chronic woodchuck hepatitis virus infection. Antivir Ther 2004;9:937-52. (Abstract)
Korba BE, Cote PJ, Wells FV, et al. Natural history of woodchuck hepatitis virus infections during the course of experimental viral infection: molecular virologic features of the liver and lymphoid tissues. J Virol 1989;63:1360-70. (Abstract)
Lanford RE, Chavez D, Brasky KM, Burns RB, Rico-Hesse R. Isolation of a hepadnavirus from the woolly monkey, a New World primate. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 1998;95:5757-61. (Abstract)
Lang T, Lo C, Skinner N, Locarnini S, Visvanathan K, Mansell A. The hepatitis B e antigen (HBeAg) targets and suppresses activation of the toll-like receptor signaling pathway. J Hepatol 2011;55:762-9. (Abstract)
Laras A, Koskinas J, Dimou E, Kostamena A, Hadziyannis SJ. Intrahepatic levels and replicative activity of covalently closed circular hepatitis B virus DNA in chronically infected patients. Hepatology 2006;44:694-702. (Abstract)
Lee JY, Locarnini S. Hepatitis B virus: pathogenesis, viral intermediates, and viral replication. Clin Liver Dis 2004;8:301-20. (Abstract)
Lentz TB, Loeb DD. Roles of the envelope proteins in the amplification of covalently closed circular DNA and completion of synthesis of the plus-strand DNA in hepatitis B virus. J Virol 2011;85:11916-27. (Abstract)
Levrero M, Pollicino T, Petersen J, Belloni L, Raimondo G, Dandri M. Control of cccDNA function in hepatitis B virus infection. J Hepatol 2009;51:581-92. (Abstract)
Liaw YF, Brunetto MR, Hadziyannis S. The natural history of chronic HBV infection and geographical differences. Antivir Ther 2010;15 Suppl 3:25-33. (Abstract)
Lok AS. Prevention of hepatitis B virus-related hepatocellular carcinoma. Gastroenterology 2004;127(5 Suppl 1):S303-9.
Lu M, Roggendorf M. Evaluation of new approaches to prophylactic and therapeutic vaccinations against hepatitis B viruses in the woodchuck model. Intervirology 2001;44:124-31. (Abstract)
Lucifora J, Arzberger S, Durantel D, et al. Hepatitis B virus X protein is essential to initiate and maintain virus replication after infection. J Hepatol 2011;55:996-1003. (Abstract)
Lupberger J, Hildt E. Hepatitis B virus-induced oncogenesis. World J Gastroenterol 2007;13:74-81. (Abstract)

Lutgehetmann M, Bornscheuer T, Volz T, et al. Hepatitis B Virus Limits Response of Human Hepatocytes to Interferon-alpha in Chimeric Mice. Gastroenterology 2011; 140(7):2074-83. (Abstract)
Lutgehetmann M, Mancke LV, Volz T, et al. Human chimeric uPA mouse model to study hepatitis B and D virus interactions and preclinical drug evaluation. Hepatology 2012;55(3):685-94. (Abstract)
Lutgehetmann M, Volz T, Kopke A, et al. In vivo proliferation of hepadnavirus-infected hepatocytes induces loss of covalently closed circular DNA in mice. Hepatology 2010;52:16-24. (Abstract)
Lutgehetmann M, Volzt T, Quaas A, et al. Sequential combination therapy leads to biochemical and histological improvement despite low ongoing intrahepatic hepatitis B virus replication. Antivir Ther 2008;13:57-66. (Abstract)
Lutwick LI, Robinson WS. DNA synthesized in the hepatitis B Dane particle DNA polymerase reaction. J Virol 1977;21:96-104. (Abstract)
Mason WS, Aldrich C, Summers J, Taylor JM. Asymmetric replication of duck hepatitis B virus DNA in liver cells: Free minus-strand DNA. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 1982;79:3997-4001. (Abstract)
Mason WS, Cullen J, Moraleda G, et al. Lamivudine therapy of WHV-infected woodchucks. Virology 1998;245:18-32. (Abstract)
Mason WS, Jilbert AR, Summers J. Clonal expansion of hepatocytes during chronic woodchuck hepatitis virus infection. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2005;102:1139-44. (Abstract)
Mason WS, Seal G, Summers J. Virus of Pekin ducks with structural and biological relatedness to human hepatitis B virus. J Virol 1980;36:829-36. (Abstract)
McMahon BJ. The natural history of chronic hepatitis B virus infection. Hepatology 2009;49(5 Suppl):S45-55.
Meier A, Mehrle S, Weiss TS, et al. Myristoilated preS1-domain of the hepatitis B virus L-protein mediates specific binding to differentiated hepatocytes. Hepatol 2013; 58:31-42.
Melegari M, Wolf SK, Schneider RJ. Hepatitis B virus DNA replication is coordinated by core protein serine phosphorylation and HBx expression. J Virol 2005;79:9810-20. (Abstract)
Menne S, Cote PJ, Korba BE, et al. Antiviral effect of oral administration of tenofovir disoproxil fumarate in woodchucks with chronic woodchuck hepatitis virus infection. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 2005;49:2720-8.
Moraleda G, Saputelli J, Aldrich CE, Averett D, Condreay L, Mason WS. Lack of effect of antiviral therapy in nondividing hepatocyte cultures on the closed circular DNA of woodchuck hepatitis virus. J Virol 1997;71:9392-9. (Abstract)
Murray JM, Wieland SF, Purcell RH, Chisari FV. Dynamics of hepatitis B virus clearance in chimpanzees. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2005;102:17780-5. (Abstract)
Nassal M. Hepatitis B viruses: reverse transcription a different way. Virus Res 2008;134:235-49. (Abstract)
Newbold JE, Xin H, Tencza M, et al. The covalently closed duplex form of the hepadnavirus genome exists in situ as a heterogeneous population of viral minichromosomes. J Virol 1995;69:3350-7. (Abstract)
Nkongolo S, Ni Y, Lempp F. et al. Cyclosporin A inhibits hepatitis B and hepatitis D virus entry by cyclophilin-independent interference with the NTCP receptor. J.Hepatol. 2013 ,: S0168-8278(13)00824-6. doi: 10.1016/j.jhep.2013.11.022. [Epub ahead of print]
Ogata N, Cote PJ, Zanetti AR, et al. Licensed recombinant hepatitis B vaccines protect chimpanzees against infection with the prototype surface gene mutant of hepatitis B virus. Hepatology 1999;30:779-86. (Abstract)
Park IY, Sohn BH, Yu E, et al. Aberrant epigenetic modifications in hepatocarcinogenesis induced by hepatitis B virus X protein. Gastroenterology 2007;132:1476-94. (Abstract)
Petersen J, Dandri M, Gupta S, Rogler CE. Liver repopulation with xenogenic hepatocytes in B and T cell-deficient mice leads to chronic hepadnavirus infection and clonal growth of hepatocellular carcinoma. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 1998;95:310-5. (Abstract)
Petersen J, Dandri M, Mier W, et al. Prevention of hepatitis B virus infection in vivo by entry inhibitors derived from the large envelope protein. Nat Biotechnol 2008;26(3):335-41. (Abstract)

Pollicino T, Saitta C, Raimondo G. Hepatocellular carcinoma: the point of view of the hepatitis B virus. Carcinogenesis 2011;32:1122-32. (Abstract)
Porterfield JZ, Dhason MS, Loeb DD, Nassal M, Stray SJ, Zlotnick A. Full-length hepatitis B virus core protein packages viral and heterologous RNA with similarly high levels of cooperativity. J Virol 2010;84:7174-84. (Abstract)
Pujol FH, Navas MC, Hainaut P, Chemin I. Worldwide genetic diversity of HBV genotypes and risk of hepatocellular carcinoma. Cancer Lett 2009;286:80-8. (Abstract)
Pult I, Netter HJ, Bruns M, et al. Identification and analysis of a new hepadnavirus in white storks. Virology 2001;289:114-28. (Abstract)
Quasdorff M, Hosel M, Odenthal M, et al. A concerted action of HNF4alpha and HNF1alpha links hepatitis B virus replication to hepatocyte differentiation. Cell Microbiol 2008;10:1478-90. (Abstract)
Rabe B, Glebe D, Kann M. Lipid-mediated introduction of hepatitis B virus capsids into nonsusceptible cells allows highly efficient replication and facilitates the study of early infection events. J Virol 2006;80:5465-73. (Abstract)
Reaiche GY, Le Mire MF, Mason WS, Jilbert AR. The persistence in the liver of residual duck hepatitis B virus covalently closed circular DNA is not dependent upon new viral DNA synthesis. Virology 2010;406:286-92. (Abstract)
Rehermann B, Ferrari C, Pasquinelli C, Chisari FV. The hepatitis B virus persists for decades after patients' recovery from acute viral hepatitis despite active maintenance of a cytotoxic T-lymphocyte response. Nat Med 1996;2:1104-8. (Abstract)
Rhim JA, Sandgren EP, Degen JL, Palmiter RD, Brinster RL. Replacement of diseased mouse liver by hepatic cell transplantation. Science 1994;263:1149-52. (Abstract)
Roggendorf M, Schulte I, Xu Y, Lu M. Therapeutic vaccination in chronic hepatitis B: preclinical studies in the woodchuck model. J Viral Hepat 2007;14 Suppl 1:51-7. (Abstract)
Roggendorf M, Tolle TK. The woodchuck: an animal model for hepatitis B virus infection in man. Intervirology 1995;38:100-12. (Abstract)
Schaefer S. Hepatitis B virus taxonomy and hepatitis B virus genotypes. World J Gastroenterol 2007;13:14-21. (Abstract)
Schildgen O, Roggendorf M, Lu M. Identification of a glycosylation site in the woodchuck hepatitis virus preS2 protein and its role in protein trafficking. J Gen Virol 2004;85:787-93. (Abstract)
Schmitt S, Glebe D, Tolle TK, et al. Structure of pre-S2 N- and O-linked glycans in surface proteins from different genotypes of hepatitis B virus. J Gen Virol 2004;85:2045-53. (Abstract)
Schmitz A, Schwarz A, Foss M, et al. Nucleoporin 153 arrests the nuclear import of hepatitis B virus capsids in the nuclear basket. PLoS Pathog 2010;6:e1000741.
Schultz U, Grgacic E, Nassal M. Duck hepatitis B virus: an invaluable model system for HBV infection. Adv Virus Res 2004;63:1-70. (Abstract)
Schulze A, Gripon P, Urban S. Hepatitis B virus infection initiates with a large surface protein-dependent binding to heparan sulfate proteoglycans. Hepatology 2007;46:1759-68. (Abstract)
Schulze A, Mills K, Weiss TS, Urban S. Hepatocyte polarization is essential for the productive entry of the hepatitis B virus. Hepatology 2011. (Abstract)
Schulze A, Schieck A, Ni Y, Mier W, Urban S. Fine mapping of pre-S sequence requirements for hepatitis B virus large envelope protein-mediated receptor interaction. J Virol 2010;84:1989-2000. (Abstract)
Seeger C, Ganem D, Varmus HE. Biochemical and genetic evidence for the hepatitis B virus replication strategy. Science 1986;232:477-84. (Abstract)
Seeger C, Mason WS. Hepatitis B virus biology. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 2000;64:51-68. (Abstract)
Shepard CW, Simard EP, Finelli L, Fiore AE, Bell BP. Hepatitis B virus infection: epidemiology and vaccination. Epidemiol Rev 2006;28:112-25. (Abstract)
Slagle BL, Lee TH, Medina D, Finegold MJ, Butel JS. Increased sensitivity to the hepatocarcinogen diethylnitrosamine in transgenic mice carrying the hepatitis B virus X gene. Mol Carcinog 1996;15:261-9. (Abstract)
Sprengel R, Kaleta EF, Will H. Isolation and characterization of a hepatitis B virus endemic in herons. J Virol 1988;62:3832-9. (Abstract)

Summers J, Jilbert AR, Yang W, et al. Hepatocyte turnover during resolution of a transient hepadnaviral infection. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2003;100:11652-9. (Abstract)
Summers J, Mason WS. Residual integrated viral DNA after hepadnavirus clearance by nucleoside analog therapy. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2004;101:638-40. (Abstract)
Summers J, Smith PM, Huang MJ, Yu MS. Morphogenetic and regulatory effects of mutations in the envelope proteins of an avian hepadnavirus. J Virol 1991;65:1310-7. (Abstract)
Summers J, Smolec JM, Snyder R. A virus similar to human hepatitis B virus associated with hepatitis and hepatoma in woodchucks. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 1978;75:4533-7. (Abstract)
Summers J. The replication cycle of hepatitis B viruses. Cancer 1988;61:1957-62. (Abstract)
Tennant BC, Baldwin BH, Graham LA, et al. Antiviral activity and toxicity of fialuridine in the woodchuck model of hepatitis B virus infection. Hepatology 1998;28:179-91. (Abstract)
Tennant BC, Toshkov IA, Peek SF, et al. Hepatocellular carcinoma in the woodchuck model of hepatitis B virus infection. Gastroenterology 2004;127(5 Suppl 1):S283-93. (Abstract)
Thermet A, Buronfosse T, Werle-Lapostolle B, et al. DNA vaccination in combination or not with lamivudine treatment breaks humoral immune tolerance and enhances cccDNA clearance in the duck model of chronic hepatitis B virus infection. J Gen Virol 2008;89:1192-201.
Thimme R, Wieland S, Steiger C, et al. CD8(+) T cells mediate viral clearance and disease pathogenesis during acute hepatitis B virus infection. J Virol 2003;77:68-76. (Abstract)
Tsuge M, Hiraga N, Akiyama R, et al. HBx protein is indispensable for development of viraemia in human hepatocyte chimeric mice. J Gen Virol 2010;91:1854-64. (Abstract)
Tsuge M, Hiraga N, Takaishi H, et al. Infection of human hepatocyte chimeric mouse with genetically engineered hepatitis B virus. Hepatology 2005;42:1046-54. (Abstract)
Urban S, Schulze A, Dandri M, Petersen J. The replication cycle of hepatitis B virus. J Hepatol 2010;52:282-4. (Abstract)
Visvanathan K, Lewin SR. Immunopathogenesis: role of innate and adaptive immune responses. Semin Liver Dis 2006;26:104-15. (Abstract)
Volz T, Lutgehetmann M, Wachtler P, et al. Impaired Intrahepatic Hepatitis B Virus Productivity Contributes to Low Viremia in Most HBeAg-Negative Patients. Gastroenterology 2007;133:843-52. (Abstract)
von Weizsacker F, Kock J, MacNelly S, Ren S, Blum HE, Nassal M. The tupaia model for the study of hepatitis B virus: direct infection and HBV genome transduction of primary tupaia hepatocytes. Methods Mol Med 2004;96:153-61. (Abstract)
Walter E, Keist R, Niederost B, Pult I, Blum HE. Hepatitis B virus infection of tupaia hepatocytes in vitro and in vivo. Hepatology 1996;24:1-5. (Abstract)
Watashi K, Sluder A, Daito T, et al. Cyclosporin A and its analogs inhibit hepatitis B virus entry into cultured hepatocytes through targeting a membrane transporter NTCP. Hepatology 2013 doi: 10.1002/hep.26982.
Werle-Lapostolle B, Bowden S, Locarnini S, et al. Persistence of cccDNA during the natural history of chronic hepatitis B and decline during adefovir dipivoxil therapy. Gastroenterology 2004;126:1750-8. (Abstract)
Wieland S, Thimme R, Purcell RH, Chisari FV. Genomic analysis of the host response to hepatitis B virus infection. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2004;101:6669-74. (Abstract)
Will H, Cattaneo R, Koch HG, et al. Cloned HBV DNA causes hepatitis in chimpanzees. Nature 1982;299:740-2. (Abstract)
Wong DK, Yuen MF, Yuan H, et al. Quantitation of covalently closed circular hepatitis B virus DNA in chronic hepatitis B patients. Hepatology 2004;40:727-37. (Abstract)
Wu TT, Coates L, Aldrich CE, Summers J, Mason WS. In hepatocytes infected with duck hepatitis B virus, the template for viral RNA synthesis is amplified by an intracellular pathway. Virology 1990;175:255-61. (Abstract)
Wursthorn K, Lutgehetmann M, Dandri M, et al. Peginterferon alpha-2b plus adefovir induce strong cccDNA decline and HBsAg reduction in patients with chronic hepatitis B. Hepatology 2006;44:675-84. (Abstract)
Yan RQ, Su JJ, Huang DR, Gan YC, Yang C, Huang GH. Human hepatitis B virus and hepatocellular carcinoma. I. Experimental infection of tree shrews with hepatitis B virus. J Cancer Res Clin Oncol 1996;122:283-8. (Abstract)

Yan RQ, Su JJ, Huang DR, Gan YC, Yang C, Huang GH. Human hepatitis B virus and hepatocellular carcinoma. II. Experimental induction of hepatocellular carcinoma in tree shrews exposed to hepatitis B virus and aflatoxin B1. J Cancer Res Clin Oncol 1996;122:289-95. (Abstract)

Yang B, Bouchard MJ. The Hepatitis B Virus X Protein Elevates Cytosolic Calcium Signals by Modulating Mitochondrial Calcium Uptake. J Virol 2011. (Abstract)

Yan H, Zhong G, Xu G, He W, et al. Sodium taurocholate cotransporting polypeptide is a functional receptor for human hepatitis B and D virus. elife. 2012;1:e00049. doi: 10.7554/eLife.00049. Epub 2012 Nov 13.

Zhang YY, Zhang BH, Theele D, Litwin S, Toll E, Summers J. Single-cell analysis of covalently closed circular DNA copy numbers in a hepadnavirus-infected liver. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2003;100:12372-7. (Abstract)

Zhang Z, Protzer U, Hu Z, Jacob J, Liang TJ. Inhibition of cellular pro-teasome activities enhances hepadnavirus replication in an HBX-dependent manner. J Virol 2004;78:4566-72. (Abstract)

Zhang Z, Torii N, Hu Z, Jacob J, Liang TJ. X-deficient woodchuck hepatitis virus mutants behave like attenuated viruses and induce protective immunity in vivo. J Clin Invest 2001;108:1523-31. (Abstract)

Zimmerman KA, Fischer KP, Joyce MA, Tyrrell DL. Zinc finger proteins designed to specifically target duck hepatitis B virus covalently closed circular DNA inhibit viral transcription in tissue culture. J Virol 2008;82:8013-21. (Abstract)

Zoulim F, Locarnini S. Hepatitis B virus resistance to nucleos(t)ide analogues. Gastroenterology 2009;137:1593-608 e1-2. (Abstract)

Zoulim F, Saputelli J, Seeger C. Woodchuck hepatitis virus X protein is required for viral infection in vivo. J Virol 1994;68:2026-30. (Abstract)

Zoulim F, Seeger C. Reverse transcription in hepatitis B viruses is primed by a tyrosine residue of the polymerase. J Virol 1994;68:6-13. (Abstract)

Zoulim F. Assessment of treatment efficacy in HBV infection and disease. J Hepatol 2006;44 Suppl 1:S95-9. (Abstract)

Zoulim F. Combination of nucleoside analogues in the treatment of chronic hepatitis B virus infection: lesson from experimental models. J Antimicrob Chemother 2005;55:608-11. (Abstract)

Zoulim F. New insight on hepatitis B virus persistence from the study of intrahepatic viral cccDNA. J Hepatol 2005;42:302-8. (Abstract)

6. HCV Virology

Bernd Kupfer

History

Hepatitis C virus (HCV) is a major cause of progressive liver disease with approximately 130-170 million people infected worldwide. HCV induces chronic infection in up to 80% of infected individuals. The main complications of HCV infection are severe liver fibrosis and cirrhosis, and 30-50% of individuals with cirrhosis go on to develop hepatocellular carcinoma (Tong 1995, Poynard 1997).

Until 1975, only two hepatitis viruses had been identified, the “infectious hepatitis virus” (hepatitis A virus, HAV) and the “serum hepatitis virus” (hepatitis B virus, HBV). However, HAV and HBV were excluded from being the cause of approximately 65% of post-transfusion hepatitides. Therefore, these hepatitis cases were termed “non-A, non-B hepatitis” (NANBH) (Feinstone 1975). Inoculation of chimpanzees (*Pan troglodytes*) with blood products derived from humans with NANB hepatitis led to persistent increases of serum alanine aminotransferase (ALT) indicating that an infectious agent was the cause of the disease (Alter 1978, Hollinger 1978). Subsequently, it was demonstrated that the NANBH agent could be inactivated by chloroform (Feinstone 1983). Moreover, it was reported that the infectious agent was able to pass through 80 nm membrane filters (Bradley 1985). Taken together these findings suggested that the NANBH causing agent would be a small virus with a lipid envelope. However, the lack of a suitable cell culture system for cultivation of the NANBH agent and the limited availability of chimpanzees prevented further characterization of the causative agent of NANBH for several years. In 1989, using a newly developed cloning strategy for nucleic acids derived from plasma of NANBH infected chimpanzees the genome of the major causative agent for NANBH was characterized (Choo 1989). cDNA clone 5-1-1 encoded immunological epitopes that interacted with sera from individuals with NANBH (Choo 1989, Kuo 1989). The corresponding infectious virus causing the majority of NANBH was subsequently termed hepatitis C virus (HCV).

Taxonomy and genotypes

HCV is a small-enveloped virus with one single-stranded positive-sense RNA molecule of approximately 9.6 kb. It is a member of the genus hepacivirus within the *Flaviviridae* family. This viral family contains four genera, flavivirus, pestivirus, hepacivirus, and the newly defined genus pegivirus (Stapleton 2011). Novel hepaciviruses have been described from bats, primates, rodents, horses, bank voles and dogs enabling researchers to possibly develop new model systems for the analysis of the molecular biology and the pathogenesis of HCV (Kapoor 2013, Drexler 2013, Lauck 2013).

Comparisons of HCV nucleotide sequences derived from individuals from different geographical regions revealed the presence of at least six major HCV genotypes with a large number of subtypes within each genotype (Simmonds 2004, Simmonds 2005). HCV strains belonging to the major genotypes 1, 2, 4, and 5 are found in sub-Saharan Africa whereas genotypes 3 and 6 are detected with extremely high diversity in South East Asia. This suggests that these geographical areas could be the origin of the different HCV genotypes. The emergence of different HCV genotypes in North America and Europe and other non-tropical countries appears to represent more recent epidemics introduced from the sites of the original HCV endemics (Simmonds 2001, Ndjomou 2003). In a very recent study more than 1300 (nearly) complete HCV coding region sequences were analysed in order to validate new genotype and subtype assignments (Smith 2014). This revealed the presence of at least 7 different HCV genotypes and 67 subtypes. However, the fast growing number of full-length HCV genome sequences will probably lead to even higher numbers of HCV genotypes. It has more recently been reported that inter-subtype as well as inter-genotype HCV recombinants occur (Shi 2012). However, these recombination events appear to be rare.

Viral structure

Structural analyses of HCV virions are very limited since the virus is difficult to cultivate in cell culture systems, a prerequisite for yielding sufficient virions for electron microscopy. Moreover, serum-derived virus particles are associated with serum low-density lipoproteins (Thomssen 1992), which makes it difficult to isolate virions from serum/plasma of infected subjects by centrifugation. Visualization of HCV virus-like particles via electron microscopy succeeds only rarely (Kaito 1994, Shimizu 1996a, Prince 1996) and it was a point of controversy if the detected structures really were HCV virions. Nevertheless, these studies suggest that HCV has a diameter of 55-65 nm confirming the prediction of the NANBH agent by ultra-filtration (Bradley 1985). Various forms of HCV virions appear to exist in the blood of infected individuals: virions bound to very low density lipoproteins (VLDL), virions bound to low density lipoproteins (LDL), virions complexed with immunoglobulins, and free circulating virions (Bradley 1991, Thomssen 1992, Thomssen 1993, Agnello 1999, Andre 2002). The reasons for the close association of a major portion of circulating virions with LDL and VLDL remain unexplained. One hypothesis is that HCV enters hepatocytes via the LDL receptor (Agnello 1999,

Nahmias 2006). Moreover, it is speculated that the association with LDL and/or VLDL protects the virus against neutralization by HCV-specific antibodies.

The design and optimization of subgenomic and genomic HCV replicons in the human hepatoma cell line Huh7 offered for the first time the possibility to investigate HCV RNA replication in a standardized manner (Lohmann 1999, Ikeda 2002, Blight 2002). However, despite the high level of HCV gene expression, no infectious viral particles are produced with that replication system. Therefore, it cannot be used for structural analysis of cell-free virions.

Infectious HCV particles have been achieved in cell culture by using recombinant systems (Heller 2005, Lindenbach 2005, Wakita 2005, Zhong 2005, Yu 2007). However, even in these *in vitro* systems the limited production of viral particles prevents 3D structural analysis (Yu 2007). Nevertheless, it has been shown by cryoelectron microscopy (cryoEM) and negative-stain transmission electron microscopy that HCV virions isolated from cell culture have a spherical shape with a diameter of approximately 50 to 55 nm (Heller 2005, Wakita 2005, Yu 2007) confirming earlier results that measured the size of putative native HCV particles from the serum of infected individuals (Prince 1996). The outer surface of the viral envelope seems to be smooth. Size and morphology are therefore very similar to other members of the *Flaviviridae* family such as the dengue virus and the West Nile virus (Yu 2007). Modifying a baculovirus system (Jeong 2004, Qiao 2004) the same authors were able to produce large quantities of HCV-like particles (HCV-LP) in insect cells (Yu 2007). Analysing the HCV-LPs by cryoEM it was demonstrated that the HCV E1 protein is present in spikes located on the outer surface of the LPs.

Using 3D modeling of the HCV-LPs together with genomic comparison of HCV and well-characterized flaviviruses it was assumed that 90 copies of a block of two heterodimers of HCV proteins E1 and E2 form the outer layer of the virions with a diameter of approximately 50 nm (Yu 2007). This outer layer surrounds the lipid bilayer that contains the viral nucleocapsid consisting of the HCV core (C) protein. An inner spherical structure with a diameter of approximately 30-35 nm has been observed (Wakita 2005) representing the nucleocapsid that harbours the genomic viral RNA (Takahashi 1992).

Genome organization

The genome of the hepatitis C virus consists of one 9.6 kb single-stranded RNA molecule with positive polarity. Similar to other positive-strand RNA viruses, the genomic RNA of hepatitis C virus serves as messenger RNA (mRNA) for the translation of viral proteins. The linear molecule contains a single open reading frame (ORF) coding for a precursor polyprotein of approximately 3000 amino acid residues (Figure 1). During viral replication the polyprotein is cleaved by viral as well as host enzymes into three structural proteins (core, E1, E2) and seven non-structural proteins (p7, NS2, NS3, NS4A, NS4B, NS5A, NS5B). An additional protein (termed F [frameshift] or ARF [alternate reading frame]) is predicted as a result of ribosomal frameshifting during translation within the core region of the genomic RNA (Xu 2001, Walewski 2001, Varaklioti 2002, Branch 2005). Detection of anti-F protein antibodies in the serum of HCV-positive subjects indicates that the

protein is indeed expressed during infection *in vivo* (Walewski 2001, Komurian-Pradel 2004).

The structural genes encoding the viral core protein and the viral envelope proteins E1 and E2 are located at the 5' terminus of the open reading frame followed downstream by the coding regions for the non-structural proteins p7, NS2, NS3, NS4A, NS4B, NS5A, and NS5B (Figure 1). The structural proteins are essential components of the HCV virions, whereas the non-structural proteins are not associated with virions but are involved in RNA replication and virion morphogenesis.

The ORF is flanked by 5' and 3' nontranslated regions (NTR; also called untranslated regions, UTR or noncoding regions, NCR) containing nucleotide sequences relevant for the regulation of viral replication. Both NTRs harbour highly conserved regions compared to the protein encoding regions of the HCV genome. The high grade of conservation of the NTRs makes them candidates i) for improved molecular diagnostics, ii) as targets for antiviral therapeutics, and iii) as targets for an anti-HCV vaccine.

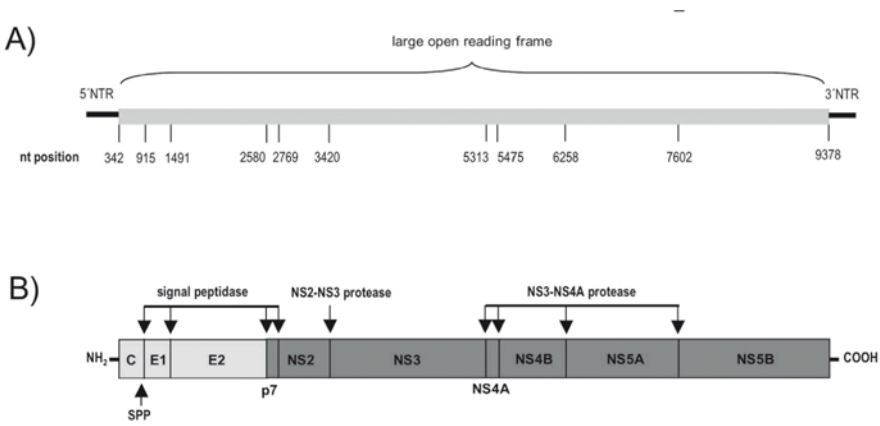


Figure 1. Genome organization and polyprotein processing. A) Nucleotide positions correspond to the HCV strain H77 genotype 1a, accession number NC_004102. nt, nucleotide; NTR, nontranslated region. B) Cleavage sites within the HCV precursor polyprotein for the signal peptide peptidase (SPP) and the viral proteases NS2/NS3 and NS3/NS4A, respectively

The 5'NTR is approximately 341 nucleotides long with a complex secondary structure of four distinct domains (I-IV) (Fukushi 1994, Honda 1999). The first 125 nucleotides of the 5'NTR spanning domains I and II have been shown to be essential for viral RNA replication (Friebe 2001, Kim 2002). Domains II-IV build an internal ribosome entry side (IRES) involved in ribosome binding and subsequent cap-independent initiation of translation (Tsukiyama-Kohara 1992, Wang 1993).

The 3'NTR consists of three functionally distinct regions: a variable region, a poly U/UC tract of variable length, and the highly conserved X tail at the 3' terminus of the HCV genome (Tanaka 1995, Kolykhalov 1996, Blight 1997). The variable region of approximately 40 nucleotides is not essential for RNA

replication. However, deletion of this sequence led to significantly decreased replication efficiency (Yanagi 1999, Friebe 2002). The length of the poly U/UC region varies in different HCV strains ranging from 30 to 80 nucleotides (Kolykhalov 1996). The minimal length of that region for active RNA replication has been reported to a homouridine stretch of 26 nucleotides in cell culture (Friebe 2002). The highly conserved 98-nucleotide X tail consists of three stem-loops (SL1-SL3) (Tanaka 1996, Ito 1997, Blight 1997) and deletions or nucleotide substitutions within that region are most often lethal (Yanagi 1999, Kolykhalov 2000, Friebe 2002, Yi 2003). Another so-called "kissing-loop" interaction of the 3'X tail SL2 and a complementary portion of the NS5B encoding region has been described (Friebe 2005). This interaction induces a tertiary RNA structure of the HCV genome that is essential for HCV replication in cell culture systems (Friebe 2005, You 2008). Finally, both NTRs appear to work together in a long-range RNA-RNA interaction possibly resulting in temporary genome circularization (Song 2006).

Genes and proteins

As described above, translation of the HCV polyprotein is initiated through involvement of some domains in NTRs of the genomic HCV RNA. The resulting polyprotein consists of ten proteins that are co-translationally or post-translationally cleaved from the polyprotein (Figure 1B). The N-terminal proteins C, E1, E2, and p7 are processed by a cellular signal peptidase (SP) (Hijikata 1991). The resulting immature core protein still contains the E1 signal sequence at its C terminus. Subsequent cleavage of this sequence by a signal peptide peptidase (SPP) leads to the mature core protein (McLauchlan 2002). The non-structural proteins NS2 to NS5B of the HCV polyprotein are processed by two virus-encoded proteases (NS2/NS3 and NS3) with the NS2/NS3 cysteine protease cleaving at the junction of NS2 and NS3 (Santolini 1995) and the NS3 serine protease cleaving the remaining functional proteins (Bartenschlager 1993, Eckart 1993, Grakoui 1993a, Tomei 1993).

The positions of viral nucleotide and amino acid residues correspond to the HCV strain H77 genotype 1a, accession number NC_004102. Some parameters characterizing HCV proteins are summarised in Table 1.

Core. The core-encoding sequence starts at codon AUG at nt position 342 of the H77 genome, the start codon for translation of the entire HCV polyprotein. During translation the polyprotein is transferred to the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) where the core protein (aa 191) is excised by a cellular signal peptidase (SP). The C terminus of the resulting core precursor still contains the signal sequence for ER membrane translocation of the E1 ectodomain (aa 174-191). This protein region is further processed by the cellular intramembrane signal peptide peptidase (SPP) leading to removal of the E1 signal peptide sequence (Hüssy 1996, McLauchlan 2002, Weihofen 2002).

The multifunctional core protein has a molecular weight of 21 kilodalton (kd). *In vivo*, the mature core molecules are believed to form homo-multimers located mainly at the ER membrane (Matsumoto 1996). They have a structural function since they form the viral capsid that contains the HCV genome. In addition, the core protein has regulatory functions including particle assembly, viral RNA binding,

and regulation of RNA translation (Ait-Goughoulte 2006, Santolini 1994). Moreover, protein expression analyses indicate that the core protein may be involved in many other cellular reactions such as cell signalling, apoptosis, lipid metabolism, and carcinogenesis (Tellinghuisen 2002). However, these preliminary findings need to be analysed further.

Table 1. Overview of the size of HCV proteins*

Protein	No. of aa	aa position in ref. seq.	MW of protein
Core immature	191	1-191	23 kd
Core mature	174	1-174	21 kd
F protein or ARF protein	126-161		~ 16-17 kd
E1	192	192-383	35 kd
E2	363	384-746	70 kd
p7	63	747-809	7 kd
NS2	217	810-1026	21 kd
NS3	631	1027-1657	70 kd
NS4A	54	1658-1711	4 kd
NS4B	261	1712-1972	27 kd
NS5A	448	1973-2420	56 kd
NS5B	591	2421-3011	66 kd

* aa, amino acid; MW, molecular weight; kd, kilodalton; ref. seq., reference sequence (HCV strain H77; accession number NC_004102)

E1 and E2. Downstream of the core coding region of the HCV RNA genome two envelope glycoproteins are encoded, E1 (gp35, aa 192) and E2 (gp70, aa 363). During translation at the ER both proteins are cleaved from the precursor polyprotein by a cellular SP. Inside the lumen of the ER both polypeptides experience post-translational N-linked glycosylation (Duvet 2002). The glycoproteins E1 and E2 harbour 6 and 11 putative N-glycosylation sites, respectively. Very recent findings suggest that HCV E2 contains a further 6-7 putative sites for O-linked glycosylation (Bräutigam 2012).

E1 and E2 are type I transmembrane proteins with large hydrophilic ectodomains and short transmembrane domains (TMD) of 30 aa. The TMD is responsible for anchoring of the envelope proteins in the membrane of the ER and ER retention (Cocquerel 1998, Duvet 1998, Cocquerel 1999, Cocquerel 2001). Moreover, the same domains have been reported to contribute to the formation of E1-E2 heterodimers (Op de Beeck 2000). The E1-E2 complex is involved in adsorption of the virus to its putative receptors tetraspanin CD81 and low-density lipoprotein (LDL) receptor inducing fusion of the viral envelope with the host cell plasma membrane (Agnello 1999, Flint 1999, Wunschmann 2000). However, the precise mechanism of host cell entry is still not understood completely. Several other host factors have been identified as involved in viral entry. These candidates include the scavenger receptor B type I (Scarselli 2002, Kapadia 2007), the tight junction proteins claudin-1 (Evans 2007) and occludin (Ploss 2009), the C-type lectins L-SIGN and DC-SIGN (Gardner 2003, Lozach 2003, Pöhlmann 2003) and heparan sulfate (Barth 2003).

Two hypervariable regions have been identified within the coding region of E2. These regions, termed hypervariable region 1 (HVR1) and 2 (HVR2), have a sequence variability of up to 80% in their amino acid sequences (Weiner 1991, Kato 2001). The first 27 aa of the E2 ectodomain represent HVR1, while the HVR2 is formed by a stretch of seven amino acids (at position 91-97). The high variability of the HVRs reflects exposure of these domains to HCV-specific antibodies. In fact, E2-HVR1 has been shown to be the most important target for neutralizing antibodies (Farci 1996, Shimizu 1996b). However, the combination of viral mutation with the selective pressure of the humoral immune response leads to viral escape via epitope alterations. Moreover, association of virions with lipoproteins and the presence of a glycan shield on the surface of the viral glycoproteins reduce the effectivity of neutralizing antibodies, respectively (Voisset 2006, Helle 2010). This makes the development of vaccines that induce effective neutralizing antibodies challenging.

The p7 protein. The small p7 protein (63 aa) is located between the E2 and NS2 regions of the polyprotein precursor. During translation the cellular SP cleaves the E2/p7 as well as the p7/NS2 junction. The functional p7 is a membrane protein localised in the endoplasmic reticulum where it forms an ion channel (Haqshenas 2007, Pavlovic 2003, Griffin 2003). The p7 protein is not essential for RNA replication since replicons lacking the p7 gene replicate efficiently (Lohmann 1999, Blight 2000), however it has been suggested that p7 plays an essential role for the formation of infectious virions (Sakai 2003, Haqshenas 2007).

NS2. The non-structural protein 2 (p21, 217 aa), together with the N-terminal portion of the NS3 protein, form the NS2/NS3 cysteine protease which autocatalyzes the cleavage of the polyprotein precursor between NS2 and NS3 (Grakoui 1993b, Santolini 1995). The N-terminus of the functional NS2 arises from the cleavage of the p7/NS2 junction by the cellular SP. After cleavage from the NS3, the protease domain of NS2 seems to play an essential role in the early stage of virion assembly and morphogenesis (Jones 2007), probably through physical interactions with the E1-E2 glycoprotein and NS3/NS4A complexes (Stapleford 2011). Moreover, it was demonstrated that NS2 interacts with different host factors. The binding of NS2 to the liver-specific pro-apoptotic CIDE-B protein (Erdtmann 2003) leads to inhibition of CIDE-B-induced apoptosis. Furthermore, the HCV NS2 protein seems to inhibit cell growth and induces cell cycle arrest in the S phase through down-regulation of cyclin A expression (Yang 2006). Finally, a very recent study indicates that HCV NS2 is involved in the inhibition of cellular IFN β production (Kaukinen 2013), weakening the unspecific antiviral cellular response.

NS3. The non-structural protein 3 (p70; 631 aa) is cleaved at its N terminus by the NS2/NS3 autoprotease. The C terminal portion of NS3 (442 aa) has ATPase/helicase activity, ie, it catalyses the binding and unwinding of the viral RNA genome during viral replication (Jin 1995, Kim 1995). However, later findings indicate that other non-structural HCV proteins such as the viral polymerase NS5B may interact functionally with the NS3 helicase (Jennings 2008). These interactions need to be investigated further in order to better understand the mechanisms of HCV replication. The N terminus (189 aa) of the NS3 protein has a serine protease activity. However, in order to develop full activity of the protease the NS3 protease domain requires a portion of NS4A (Faila 1994, Bartenschlager 1995, Lin 1995,

Tanji 1995, Tomei 1996). NS3 together with the NS4A cofactor are responsible for cleavage of the remaining downstream cleavages of the HCV polyprotein precursor. Since the NS3/NS4A protease function is essential for viral infectivity it is a promising target in the design of antiviral treatments. In 2011 two potent NS3/NS4A inhibitors, boceprevir (Malcolm 2006) and telaprevir (Perni 2006), were approved by FDA and EMA to be used in combination with IFN α and ribavirin. However, several resistance-associated mutations within the HCV NS3/NS4A coding region have been observed. Similar to antiretroviral therapy it seems to be necessary to develop further HCV-specific direct acting antivirals (DAA) in order to achieve sustained suppression of HCV replication.

NS4A. The HCV non-structural protein 4A (p4; 54 aa) is a polypeptide that acts as a cofactor of the NS3 serine protease (Faila 1994, Bartenschlager 1995, Lin 1995, Tanji 1995, Tomei 1996). Moreover, this small protein is involved in the targeting of NS3 to the endoplasmic reticulum resulting in a significant increase of NS3 stability (Wölk 2000).

NS4B. The NS4B (p27; 217 aa) is an integral membrane protein that forms oligomers (Yu 2006) localized in the endoplasmic reticulum. The N-terminal domain of the NS4B has an amphipathic character that targets the protein to the ER. This domain is crucial in HCV replication (Elazar 2004, Gretton 2005) and therefore an interesting target for the development of anti-HCV therapeutics or vaccines. In addition, a nucleotide-binding motif (129-134 aa) has been identified (Einav 2004). Moreover, NS4B has the capability of RNA binding (Einav 2008). It has already been demonstrated that the protein induces an ER-derived membranous web that may serve as a platform for HCV RNA replication (Egger 2002). In summary, NS4B appears to be the central viral protein responsible for the formation of the HCV RNA replication complex (Blight 2011).

NS5A. The NS5A protein (p56; 458 aa) is a membrane-associated phosphoprotein that has multiple functions in HCV RNA replication, viral assembly, and virion release. It is phosphorylated by different cellular protein kinases indicating an essential but still not fully understood role of NS5A in the HCV replication cycle. In addition, NS5A has been found to be associated with several other cellular proteins (MacDonald 2004) making it difficult to determine the exact functions of the protein. One important property of NS5A is that it contains a domain of 40 amino acids, the so-called IFN α sensitivity-determining region (ISDR) that plays a significant role in the response to IFN α-based therapy (Enomoto 1995, Enomoto 1996). An increasing number of mutations within the ISDR showed positive correlation with sustained virological response to IFN α-based treatment. A previous study suggests that NS5A interacts with cytosolic cyclophilin A (CypA) and that this interaction is essential for viral replication (Chatterji 2009). Since inhibitors of CypA, eg, cyclosporins, already exist, these important findings offer new opportunities for the development of potent anti-HCV therapeutic strategies. Furthermore, HCV NS5A seems to play a key role in preventing oxidative stress-mediated apoptosis keeping the host cell alive, thus enabling the virus to further produce progeny virus (Amako 2013). In addition to the viral enzymes, NS5A is also an interesting target for the development of anti-HCV acting therapeutics, due to its multi-functional properties during different stages of HCV replication.

NS5B. The non-structural protein 5B (p66; 591 aa) represents the RNA-dependent RNA polymerase of HCV (Behrens 1996). The hydrophobic domain (21 aa) at the C terminus of NS5B inserts into the membrane of the endoplasmic reticulum, while the active sites of the polymerase are located in the cytoplasm (Schmidt-Mende 2001). During HCV RNA replication NS5B is an essential compound of the HCV replication complex within the NS4B-induced membranous web.

The cytosolic domains of the viral enzyme form the typical polymerase right-handed structure with "palm", "fingers", and "thumb" subdomains (Ago 1999, Bressanelli 1999, Lesburg 1999). In contrast to mammalian DNA and RNA polymerases the fingers and thumb subdomains are connected resulting in a fully enclosed active site for nucleotide triphosphate binding. This unique structure makes the HCV NS5B polymerase an attractive target for the development of antiviral drugs.

Using the genomic HCV RNA as a template, the NS5B promotes the synthesis of minus-strand RNA that then serves as a template for the synthesis of genomic positive-strand RNA by the polymerase.

Similar to other RNA-dependent polymerases, NS5B is an error-prone enzyme that incorporates wrong ribonucleotides at a rate of approximately 10^{-3} per nucleotide per generation. Unlike cellular polymerases, the viral NS5B lacks a proofreading mechanism leading to the conservation of misincorporated ribonucleotides. These enzyme properties together with the high rate of viral replication promote a pronounced intra-patient as well as inter-patient HCV evolution.

F protein, ARFP. In addition to the ten proteins derived from the long HCV ORF, the F (frameshift) or ARF (alternate reading frame) or core+1 protein has been reported (Walewski 2001, Xu 2001, Varaklioti 2002). As the designations indicate, the ARFP is the result of a -2/+1 ribosomal frameshift between codons 8 and 11 of the core protein-encoding region. The ARFP length varies from 126 to 161 amino acids depending on the corresponding genotype. *In vitro* studies have shown that ARFP is a short-lived protein located in the cytoplasm (Roussel 2003) primarily associated with the endoplasmic reticulum (Xu 2003). Detection of anti-F protein antibodies in the serum of HCV-positive subjects indicates that the protein is expressed during infection *in vivo* (Walewski 2001, Komurian-Pradel 2004). However, the functions of ARFP in the viral life cycle are still unknown and remain to be elucidated.

Viral lifecycle

Due to the absence of a suitable small animal model system and efficient *in vitro* HCV replication systems it has long been difficult to investigate the viral life cycle of HCV. The recent development of such systems has offered the opportunity to analyse in detail the different steps of viral replication.

Adsorption and viral entry

Binding to and entry of HCV into hepatocytes is a very complex multistep process and more and more host factors involved in that process have been identified over

the last 15 years. The first candidate as receptor for HCV was the tetraspanin CD81 (Pileri 1998). CD81 is an ubiquitous 25 kd molecule expressed on the surface of a large variety of cells including hepatocytes and PBMCs. Experimental binding of anti-CD81 antibodies to CD81 were reported to inhibit HCV entry into Huh7 cells and primary human hepatocytes (Hsu 2003, Bartosch 2003a, Cormier 2004, McKeating 2004, Zhang 2004, Lindenbach 2005, Wakita 2005). Moreover, gene silencing of CD81 using specific siRNA molecules confirmed the relevance of CD81 in viral entry (Bartosch 2003b, Cormier 2004, Zhang 2004, Akazawa 2007). Finally, expression of CD81 in cell lines lacking CD81 made them permissive for HCV entry (Zhang 2004, Lavillette 2005, Akazawa 2007). However, more recent studies have shown that CD81 alone is not sufficient for HCV viral entry and that cofactors such as scavenger receptor B type I (SR-BI) are needed (Bartosch 2003b, Hsu 2003, Scarselli 2002, Kapadia 2007). Moreover, it appears that CD81 is involved in a post-HCV binding step (Cormier 2004, Koutsoudakis 2006, Bertaud 2006). These findings together with the identification of other host factors involved in HCV cell entry generate the current model for the early steps of HCV infection (Lupberger 2012).

Adsorption of HCV to its target cell is the first step of viral entry. Binding is possibly initiated by the interaction of the HCV E2 envelope glycoprotein and the glycosaminoglycan heparan sulfate on the surface of host cells (Germi 2002, Barth 2003, Basu 2004, Heo 2004). Moreover, it is assumed that HCV initiates hepatocyte infection via LDL receptor binding (Agnello 1999, Monazahian 1999, Wünschmann 2000, Nahmias 2006, Molina 2007). This process may be mediated by VLDL or LDL that is reported to be associated with HCV virions in human sera (Bradley 1991, Thomssen 1992, Thomssen 1993). After initial binding the HCV E2 glycoprotein interacts with the SR-BI in cell culture (Scarselli 2002). SR-BI is a protein expressed on the surface of the majority of mammalian cells. It acts as a receptor for LDL as well as HDL (Acton 1994, Acton 1996) emphasizing the role of these compounds for HCV infectivity. Alternative splicing of the SR-BI transcript leads to the expression of a second isoform of the receptor SR-BII (Webb 1998), which also may be involved in HCV entry into target cells (Grove 2007). As is the case for all steps of viral entry the exact mechanism of the HCV E2/SR-BI interaction remains unknown. In some studies it has been reported that HCV binding to SR-BI is a prerequisite for the concomitant or subsequent interaction of the virus with CD81 (Kapadia 2007, Zeisel 2007).

The multi-step procedure of HCV cell entry was shown to be even more complex since a cellular factor termed claudin-1 (CLDN1) has been identified as being involved in this process (Evans 2007). CLDN1 is an integral membrane protein that forms a backbone of tight junctions and is highly expressed in the liver (Furuse 1998). Inhibition assays reveal that CLDN1 involvement occurs downstream of the HCV-CD81 interaction (Evans 2007). Recent findings suggest that CLDN1 could also act as a compound enabling cell-to-cell transfer of hepatitis C virus independently of CD81 (Timpe 2007). Furthermore, it was reported that two other members of the claudin family, claudin-6 and claudin-9, may play a role in HCV infection (Zheng 2007, Meertens 2008). The fact that some human cell lines were not susceptible to HCV infection despite expressing SR-BI, CD81, and CLDN1 indicated that other cellular factors must be involved in viral entry (Evans 2007). In

fact, a cellular four-transmembrane domain protein named occludin (OCLN) was identified to represent an additional cellular factor essential for the susceptibility of cells to HCV infection (Liu 2009, Ploss 2009). Similar to claudin-1, OCLN is a component of the tight junctions in hepatocytes. All tested cells expressing SR-BI, CD81, CLDN1, and OCLN were susceptible to HCV. Although the precise mechanism of HCV uptake in hepatocytes is still not clarified, these four proteins may represent the complete set of host cell factors necessary for cell-free HCV entry. Finally, it has been shown that two receptor tyrosine kinases (RTKs) and the Niemann–Pick C1-like 1 (NPC1L1) cholesterol uptake receptor are cellular cofactors for HCV entry into hepatocytes (Lupberger 2011, Sainz 2012).

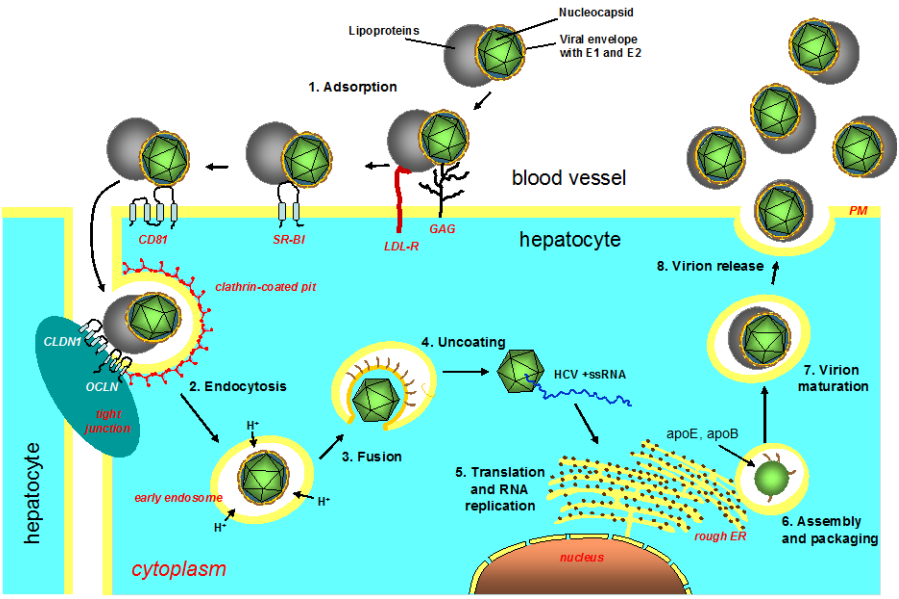


Figure 2. Current model of the HCV lifecycle. Designations of cellular components are in red. For a detailed illustration of viral translation and RNA replication, see Pawlotsky 2007. Abbreviations: HCV +ssRNA, single stranded genomic HCV RNA with positive polarity; rough ER, rough endoplasmic reticulum; PM, plasma membrane. For other abbreviations see text

After the complex procedure of binding to the different host membrane factors HCV enters the cell in a pH-dependent manner indicating that the virus is internalized via clathrin-mediated endocytosis (Bartosch 2003b, Hsu 2003, Blanchard 2006, Codran 2006). The acidic environment within the endosomes is assumed to trigger HCV E1-E2 glycoprotein-mediated fusion of the viral envelope with the endosome membrane (Blanchard 2006, Meertens 2006, Lavillette 2007).

In summary, HCV adsorption and viral entry into the target cell is a very complex procedure that is not yet fully understood. Despite having identified several host factors that probably interact with the viral glycoproteins, the precise mechanisms of interaction need to continue to be investigated.

Besides the infection of cells through cell-free HCV it has been documented that HCV can also spread via cell-to-cell transmission (Valli 2006, Valli 2007). This transmission pathway may differ significantly with regard to the cellular factors needed for HCV entry into cells. CD81 is dispensable for cell-to-cell transmission in cultivated hepatoma cells (Witteveldt 2009). These findings require further investigation in order to analyze the process of cell-to-cell transmission of HCV both *in vitro* and *in vivo*. Antiviral treatment strategies must account for the cellular pathways of both cell-free virus and HCV transmitted via cell-to-cell contact.

Translation and post-translational processes

As a result of the fusion of the viral envelope and the endosomic membrane, the genomic HCV RNA is released into the cytoplasm of the cell. As described above, the viral genomic RNA possesses a nontranslated region (NTR) at each terminus. The 5'NTR consists of four distinct domains, I-IV. Domains II-IV form an internal ribosome entry side (IRES) involved in ribosome-binding and subsequent cap-independent initiation of translation (Fukushi 1994, Honda 1999, Tsukiyama-Kohara 1992, Wang 1993). The HCV IRES binds to the 40S ribosomal subunit complexed with eukaryotic initiation factors 2 and 3 (eIF2 and eIF3), GTP and the initiator tRNA, resulting in the 48S preinitiation complex (Spahn 2001, Otto 2002, Sizova 1998, reviewed in Hellen 1999). Subsequently, the 60S ribosomal subunit associates with that complex leading to the formation of the translational active complex for HCV polyprotein synthesis at the endoplasmic reticulum. HCV RNA contains a large ORF encoding a polyprotein precursor. Post-translational cleavages lead to the 10 functional viral proteins Core, E1, E2, p7, NS2-NS5B (see Figure 1B). The viral F protein (or ARF protein) originates from a ribosomal frameshift within the first codons of the core-encoding genome region (Walewski 2001, Xu 2001, Varaklioti 2002). Besides several other cellular factors that have been reported to be involved in HCV RNA translation, various viral proteins and genome regions have been shown to enhance or inhibit viral protein synthesis (Zhang 2002, Kato 2002, Wang 2005, Kou 2006, Bradrick 2006, Song 2006).

The precursor polyprotein is processed by at least four distinct peptidases. The cellular signal peptidase (SP) cleaves the N-terminal viral proteins' immature core protein, E1, E2, and p7 (Hijikata 1991), while the cellular signal peptide peptidase (SPP) is responsible for the cleavage of the E1 signal sequence from the C-terminus of the immature core protein, resulting in the mature form of the core (McLauchlan 2002). The E1 and E2 proteins remain within the lumen of the ER where they are subsequently N-glycosylated, with E1 having 5 N-glycosylation sites and E2 harbouring 11 putative N-glycosylation sites (Duvet 2002).

In addition to the two cellular peptidases HCV encodes two viral enzymes responsible for cleavage of the non-structural proteins NS2 to NS5B within the HCV polyprotein precursor. The zinc-dependent NS2/NS3 cysteine protease consisting of the NS2 protein and the N-terminal portion of NS3 autocatalytically cleaves the junction between NS2 and NS3 (Santolini 1995), whereas the NS3 serine protease cleaves the remaining functional proteins (Bartenschlager 1993, Eckart 1993, Grakoui 1993a, Tomei 1993). However, for its peptidase activity NS3

needs NS4A as a cofactor (Failla 1994, Tanji 1995, Bartenschlager 1995, Lin 1995, Tomei 1996).

HCV RNA replication

The complex process of HCV RNA replication is poorly understood. The key enzyme for viral RNA replication is NS5B, an RNA-dependent RNA polymerase (RdRp) of HCV (Behrens 1996). In addition, several cellular as well as viral factors have been reported to be part of the HCV RNA replication complex. One important viral factor for the formation of the replication complex appears to be NS4B, which is able to induce an ER-derived membranous web containing most of the non-structural HCV proteins including NS5B (Egger 2002). This web could serve as the platform for the next steps of viral RNA replication. The RdRp uses the previously released genomic positive-strand HCV RNA as a template for the synthesis of an intermediate minus-strand RNA.

After the viral polymerase has bound to its template, the NS3 helicase is assumed to unwind putative secondary structures of the template RNA in order to facilitate the synthesis of minus-strand RNA (Jin 1995, Kim 1995). In turn, again with the assistance of the NS3 helicase, the newly synthesized antisense RNA molecule serves as the template for the synthesis of numerous plus-strand RNA. The resulting sense RNA may be used subsequently as genomic RNA for HCV progeny as well as for polyprotein translation.

Assembly and release

After the viral proteins, glycoproteins, and the genomic HCV RNA have been synthesized these single components have to be arranged in order to produce infectious virions. As is the case for all other steps in the HCV lifecycle viral assembly is a multi-step procedure involving most viral components along with many cellular factors. Investigation of viral assembly and particle release is still in its infancy since the development of *in vitro* models for the production and release of infectious HCV occurred only recently. Previously it was reported that core protein molecules were able to self-assemble *in vitro*, yielding nucleocapsid-like particles. More recent findings suggest that viral assembly takes place within the endoplasmic reticulum (Gastaminza 2008) and that lipid droplets (LD) are involved in particle formation (Moradpour 1996, Barba 1997, Miyanari 2007, Shavinskaya 2007, Appel 2008). It appears that LD-associated core protein targets viral non-structural proteins and the HCV RNA replication complex including positive- and negative-stranded RNA from the endoplasmic reticulum to the LD (Miyanari 2007). Besides the Core protein, LD-associated NS5A interacting with apolipoprotein E (apoE) seems to play a key role in the formation of infectious viral particles (Appel 2008, Benga 2010). Moreover, E2 molecules are detected in close proximity to LD-associated membranes. Finally, spherical virus-like particles associated with membranes can be seen very close to the LD. Using specific antibodies the virus-like particles were shown to contain core protein as well as E2 glycoprotein molecules indicating that these structures may represent infectious HCV (Miyanari

2007). However, the precise mechanisms for the formation and release of infectious HCV particles are still unknown.

Model systems for HCV research

For a long time HCV research was limited due to a lack of small animal models and efficient cell culture systems. The development of the first HCV replicon system (HCV RNA molecule, or region of HCV RNA, that replicates autonomously from a single origin of replication) 10 years after the identification of the hepatitis C virus offered the opportunity to investigate the molecular biology of HCV infection in a standardized manner (Lohmann 1999).

HCV replicon systems. Using total RNA derived from the explanted liver of an individual chronically infected with HCV genotype 1b, the entire HCV ORF sequence was amplified and cloned in two overlapping fragments. The flanking NTRs were amplified and cloned separately and all fragments were assembled into a modified full-length sequence. Transfection experiments with *in vitro* transcripts derived from the full-length clones failed to yield viral replication. For this reason, two different subgenomic replicons consisting of the 5'IRES, the neomycin phosphotransferase gene causing resistance to the antibiotic neomycin, the IRES derived from the encephalomyocarditis virus (EMCV) and the NS2/3'NTR or NS3/3'NTR sequence, respectively, were generated.

In vitro transcripts derived from these constructs without the genome region coding for the structural HCV proteins were used to transfect the hepatoma cell line Huh7 (Lohmann 1999). The transcripts are bicistronic, ie, the first cistron containing the HCV IRES enables the translation of the neomycin phosphotransferase as a tool for efficient selection of successfully transfected cells and the second cistron containing the EMCV IRES directs translation of the HCV-specific proteins. Only some Huh7 clones can replicate replicon-specific RNA in titres of approximately 10^8 positive-strand RNA copies per microgram total RNA. Moreover, all encoded HCV proteins are detected predominantly in the cytoplasm of the transfected Huh7 cells. The development of this replicon is a milestone in HCV research with regard to the investigation of HCV RNA replication and HCV protein analyses.

More recently, the methodology has been improved in order to achieve significantly higher replication efficiency. Enhancement of HCV RNA replication was achieved by the use of replicons harbouring cell culture-adapted point mutations or deletions within the NS genes (Blight 2000, Lohmann 2001, Krieger 2001). Further development has led to the generation of selectable full-length HCV replicons, ie, genomic replicons that also contain genetic information for the structural proteins Core, E1, and E2 (Pietschmann 2002, Blight 2002). This improvement offered the opportunity to investigate the influence of the structural proteins on HCV replication. Thus it has been possible to analyse the intracellular localisation of these proteins although viral assembly and release has not been achieved.

Another important milestone was reached when a subgenomic replicon based on the HCV genotype 2a strain JFH-1 was generated (Kato 2003). This viral strain derived from a Japanese subject with fulminant hepatitis C (Kato 2001). The

corresponding replicons showed higher RNA replication efficiency than previous replicons. Moreover, cell lines distinct from Huh7, such as HepG2 or HeLa were transfected efficiently with transcripts derived from the JFH-1 replicon (Date 2004, Kato 2005).

HCV pseudotype virus particles (HCVpp). The generation of retroviral pseudotypes bearing HCV E1 and E2 glycoproteins (HCVpp) offers the opportunity to investigate E1-E2-dependent HCVpp entry into Huh7 cells and primary human hepatocytes (Bartosch 2003a, Hsu 2003, Zhang 2004). In contrast to the HCV replicons where cells were transfected with HCV-specific synthetic RNA molecules, this method allows a detailed analysis of the early steps in the HCV life cycle, eg, adsorption and viral entry.

Infectious HCV particles in cell culture (HCVcc). Transfection of Huh7 and 'cured' Huh7.5 cells with full-length JFH-1 replicons led for the first time to the production of infectious HCV virions (Zhong 2005, Wakita 2005). The construction of a chimera with the core NS2 region derived from HCV strain J6 (genotype 2a) and the remaining sequence derived from JFH-1 improved infectivity. Importantly, the secreted viral particles are infectious in cell culture (HCVcc) (Wakita 2005, Zhong 2005, Lindenbach 2005) as well as in chimeric mice with human liver grafts as well as in chimpanzees (Lindenbach 2006).

An alternative strategy for the production of infectious HCV particles was developed (Heller 2005): a full-length HCV construct (genotype 1b) was placed between two ribozymes in a plasmid containing a tetracycline-responsive promoter. Huh7 cells were transfected with those plasmids, resulting in efficient viral replication with HCV RNA titres of up to 10^7 copies/ml cell culture supernatant.

The development of cell culture systems that allow the production of infectious HCV represents a breakthrough for HCV research and it is now possible to investigate the whole viral life cycle from viral adsorption to virion release. These studies will help to better understand the mechanisms of HCV pathogenesis and they significantly accelerate the development of HCV-specific antiviral compounds.

Small animal models. Very recently, substantial progress was achieved in establishing two mouse models for HCV infection via genetically humanized mice (Dorner 2011). In this experiment immunocompetent mice were transduced using viral vectors containing the genetic information of four human proteins involved in adsorption and entry of HCV into hepatocytes (CD81, SR-BI, CLDN1, OCLN). This humanisation procedure enabled the authors to infect the transduced mice with HCV. Although this mouse model does not enable complete HCV replication in murine hepatocytes it will be useful to investigate the early steps of HCV infection *in vivo*. Moreover, the approach should be suitable for the evaluation of HCV entry inhibitors and vaccine candidates.

A second group of investigators have chosen another promising strategy for HCV-specific humanisation of mice. After depleting murine hepatocytes human CD34+ hematopoietic stem cells and hepatocyte progenitors were cotransplanted into transgenic mice leading to efficient engraftment of human leukocytes and hepatocytes, respectively (Washburn 2011). A portion of the humanised mice became infectable with primary HCV isolates resulting in low-level HCV RNA in the murine liver. As a consequence HCV infection induced liver inflammation, hepatitis, and fibrosis. Furthermore, due to the cotransplantation of CD34+ human

hematopoietic stem cells, an HCV-specific T cell immune response could be detected.

Both strategies are promising and have already delivered new insights into viral replication and the pathogenesis of HCV. However, the methods lack some important aspects and need to be improved. As soon as genetically humanised mice that are able to replicate HCV completely are created, they can be used for the investigation of HCV pathogenesis and HCV-specific immune responses. The Washburn method should be improved in order to achieve higher HCV replication rates. A reconstitution of functional human B cells would make this mouse model suitable to study the important HCV-specific antibody response.

References

Acton SL, Scherer PE, Lodish HF, et al. Expression cloning of SR-BI, a CD36-related class B scavenger receptor. J Biol Chem 1994;269:21003-9. (Abstract)

Acton S, Rigotti A, Landschulz KT, et al. Identification of scavenger receptor BI as a high-density lipoprotein receptor. Science 1996;271:518-20. (Abstract)

Agnello V, Abel G, Elfahal M, et al. Hepatitis C virus and other Flaviviridae viruses enter cells via low-density lipoprotein receptor. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 1999;96:12766-71. (Abstract)

Ago H, Adashi T, Yoshida A, et al. Crystal structure of the RNA-dependent RNA polymerase of hepatitis C virus. Structure 1999;7:1417-26. (Abstract)

Ait-Goughoulte M, Hourioux C, Patient R, et al. Core protein cleavage by signal peptide peptidase is required for hepatitis C virus-like particle assembly. J Gen Virol 2006;87:855-60. (Abstract)

Akazawa D, Date T, Morikawa K, et al. CD81 expression is important for the permissiveness of Huh7 cell clones for heterogeneous hepatitis C virus infection. J Virol 81:5036-5045. (Abstract)

Alter HJ, Holland PV, Purcell RH, et al. Transmissible agent in non-A, non-B hepatitis. Lancet 1978;1:459-63. (Abstract)

Amako Y, Igloi Z, Mankouri J, et al. Hepatitis C virus NS5A inhibits mixed lineage kinase 3 to block apoptosis. J Biol Chem 2013;288:24753-63.

Andre P, Komurian-Pradel F, Deforges S, et al. Characterization of low- and very-low-density hepatitis C virus RNA-containing particles. J Virol 2002;76:6919-28. (Abstract)

Appel N, Zayas M, Miller S, et al. Essential role of domain III of nonstructural protein 5A for hepatitis C virus infectious particle assembly. PLoS Pathog 2008;4:e1000035. (Abstract)

Barba G, Harper F, Harada T, et al. Hepatitis C virus core protein shows a cytoplasmic localization and associates to cellular lipid storage droplets. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 1997;94:1200-5. (Abstract)

Bartenschlager R, Ahlborn-Laake L, Mous J, et al. Nonstructural protein 3 of hepatitis C virus encodes a serine-type proteinase required for cleavage at the NS3/4 and NS4/5 junctions. J Virol 1993;67:3835-44. (Abstract)

Bartenschlager R, Lohmann V, Wilkinson T, et al. Complex formation between the NS3 serinetype proteinase of the hepatitis C virus and NS4A and its importance for polyprotein maturation. J Virol 1995;69:7519-28. (Abstract)

Barth H, Schäfer C, Adah MI, et al. Cellular binding of hepatitis C virus envelope glycoprotein E2 requires cell surface heparan sulphate. J Biol Chem 2003;278:41003-12. (Abstract)

Bartosch B, Dubuisson J, Cosset FL. Infectious hepatitis C virus pseudoparticles containing functional E1-E2 envelope protein complexes. J Exp Med 2003a;197:633-42. (Abstract)

Bartosch B, Vitelli A, Granier C, et al. Cell entry of hepatitis C virus requires a set of coreceptors that include CD81 and SR-B1 scavenger receptor. J Biol Chem 2003b;278:41624-30. (Abstract)

Behrens SE, Tomei L, DeFrancesco R. Identification and properties of the RNA-dependent RNA polymerase of hepatitis C virus. EMBO J 1996;15:12-22. (Abstract)
Benga WJA, Krieger SE, Dimitrova M, et al. Apolipoprotein E interacts with hepatitis C virus nonstructural protein 5A and determines assembly of infectious particles. Hepatology 2010;51:43-53.
Bertaux C, Dragic T. Different domains of CD81 mediate distinct stages of hepatitis C virus pseudoparticle entry. J Virol 2006;80:4940-8. (Abstract)
Blanchard E, Belouzard S, Goueslain L, et al. Hepatitis C virus entry depends on clathrin-mediated endocytosis. J Virol 2006;80:6964-72. (Abstract)
Blight KJ and Rice CM. Secondary structure determination of the conserved 98-base sequence at the 3´terminus of hepatitis C virus genome RNA. J Virol 1997;71:7345-52. (Abstract)
Blight KJ, Kolykhalov AA, Rice CM. Efficient initiation of HCV RNA replication in cell culture. Science 2000;290:1972-4. (Abstract)
Blight KJ, McKeating JA, Rice CM. Highly permissive cell lines for subgenomic and genomic hepatitis C virus RNA replication. J Virol 2002;76:13001-14. (Abstract)
Blight KJ. Charged residues in hepatitis C virus NS4B are critical for multiple NS4B functions in RNA replication. J Virol 2011;85:8158-71.
Bradley DW, McCaustland KA, Cook EH, et al. Post-transfusion non-A, non-B hepatitis in chimpanzees: physiochemical evidence that the tubule-forming agent is a small, enveloped virus. Gastro 1985;88:773-9. (Abstract)
Bradley D, McCaustland K, Krawczynski K, et al. Hepatitis C virus: buoyant density of the factor VIII-derived isolate in sucrose. J Med Virol 1991;34:206-8. (Abstract)
Bradrick SS, Walters RW, Gromeier M. The hepatitis C virus 3'-untranslated region or a poly(A) tract promote efficient translation subsequent to the initiation phase. Nucleic Acids Res 2006;34:1293-303. (Abstract)
Branch AD, Stumpp DD, Gutierrez JA et al. The hepatitis virus alternate reading frame (ARF) and its family of novel products: the alternate reading frame protein/F-protein, the double-frameshift protein, and others. Semin Liv Dis 2005;25:105-17.
Bräutigam J, Scheidig AJ, Egge-Jacobsen W. Mass spectrometric analysis of hepatitis C viral envelope protein E2 reveals extended microheterogeneity of mucin-type O-linked glycosylation. Glycobiology 2012 Dec 14. (Epub ahead of print).
Bressanelli S, Tomei L, Roussel A, et al. Crystal structure of the RNA-dependent RNA polymerase of hepatitis C virus. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1999;96:13034-9. (Abstract)
Chatterji U, Bobardt M, Selvarajah S, et al. The isomerise active site of cyclophilin A is critical for hepatitis C virus replication. J Biol Chem 2009;284:16998-7005.
Choo QL, Kuo G, Weiner AJ, et al. Isolation of a cDNA clone derived from a blood-borne non-A, non-B viral hepatitis genome. Science 1989;244:359-62. (Abstract)
Cocquerel L, Meunier JC, Pillez A, et al. A retention signal necessary and sufficient for endoplasmic reticulum localization maps to the transmembrane domain of hepatitis C virus glycoprotein E2. J Virol 1998;72:2183-91. (Abstract)
Cocquerel L, Duvet S, Meunier JC, et al. The transmembrane domain of hepatitis C virus glycoprotein E1 is a signal for static retention in the endoplasmic reticulum. J Virol 1999;73:2641-9. (Abstract)
Cocquerel L, Meunier JC, Op de Beeck A, et al. Coexpression of hepatitis C virus envelope proteins E1 and E2 in cix improves the stability of membrane insertion of E2. J Gen Virol 2001;82:1629-35. (Abstract)
Codran A, Royer C, Jaeck D, et al. Entry of hepatitis C virus pseudotypes into primary human hepatocytes by clathrin-dependent endocytosis. J Gen Virol 2006;87:2583-93. (Abstract)
Cormier EG, Tsamis F, Kajumo F, et al. CD81 is an entry coreceptor for hepatitis C virus. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2004;101:7270-4. (Abstract)
Date T, Kato T, Miyamoto M, et al. Genotype 2a hepatitis C virus subgenomic replicon can replicate in HepG2 and IMY-N9 cells. J Biol Chem 2004;279:22371-6. (Abstract)
Dorner M, Horwitz JA, Robbins JB, et al. A genetically humanized mouse model for hepatitis C virus infection. Nature 2011;474:208-11. (Abstract)
Drexler JF, Corman VM, Müller MA, et al. Evidence for novel hepaciviruses in rodents. PLoS Pathog 2013;9:e1003438.

Duvet S, Cocquerel L, Pillez A, et al. Hepatitis C virus glycoprotein complex localization in the endoplasmic reticulum involves a determinant for retention and not retrieval. J Biol Chem 1998;273:32088-95. (Abstract)
Duvet S, Op de Beeck A, Cocquerel L, et al. Glycosylation of the hepatitis C virus envelope protein E1 occurs posttranslationally in a mannosylphosphoryldolichol-deficient CHO mutant cell line. Glycobiology 2002;12:95-101. (Abstract)
Eckart MR, Selby M, Maisiarz F, et al. The hepatitis C virus encodes a serine protease involved in processing of the putative non-structural proteins from the viral polyprotein precursor. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 1993;192:399-406. (Abstract)
Egger D, Wölk B, Gosert R, et al. Expression of hepatitis C virus proteins induce distinct membrane alterations including candidate viral replication complex. J Virol 2002;76:5974-84. (Abstract)
Einav S, Elazar M, Danieli T, et al. A nucleotide binding motif in hepatitis C virus (HCV) NS4B mediates HCV RNA replication. J Virol 2004;78:11288-95. (Abstract)
Einav SD, Gerber D, Bryson PD, et al. Discovery of a hepatitis C target and its pharmacological inhibitors by microfluidic affinity analysis. Nat Biotechnol 2008;26:1019–27.
Elazar M, Liu P, Rice CM, et al. An N-terminal amphipathic helix in hepatitis C virus (HCV) NS4B mediates membrane association, correct localization of replication complex proteins, and HCV RNA replication. J Virol 2004;78:11393-400. (Abstract)
Enomoto N, Sakuma I, Asahina Y, et al. Comparison of full-length sequences of interferon sensitive and resistant hepatitis C virus 1b. Sensitivity to interferon is conferred by amino acid substitutions in the NS5A region. J Clin Investig 1995;96:224-30. (Abstract)
Enomoto N, Sakuma I, Asahina Y, et al. Mutations in the nonstructural protein 5A gene and response to interferon in patients with chronic hepatitis C virus 1b infection. N Engl J Med 1996;334:77-81. (Abstract)
Erdtmann L, Franck N, Lerat H, et al. The hepatitis C virus NS2 protein is an inhibitor of CIDE-B-induced apoptosis. J Biol Chem 2003;278:18256–64.
Evans MJ, von Hahn T, Tscherne DM, et al. Claudin-1 is a hepatitis C virus co-receptor required for a late step in entry. Nature 2007;446:801-5. (Abstract)
Failla C, Tomei L, DeFrancesco R. Both NS3 and NS4A are required for proteolytic processing of hepatitis C virus nonstructural proteins. J Virol 1994;68:3753-60. (Abstract)
Farci P, Shimoda A, Wong D, et al. Prevention of hepatitis C virus infection in chimpanzees by hyperimmune serum against the hypervariable region 1 of the envelope 2 protein. Proc Nat. Acad Sci USA 1996;93:15394-9. (Abstract)
Feinstone SM, Kapikian AZ, Purcell RH, et al. Transfusion-associated hepatitis not due to viral hepatitis type A or B. N Engl J Med 1975;292:767-70.
Feinstone SM, Mihalik KB, Purcell AH, et al. Inactivation of hepatitis B virus and non-A, non-B hepatitis by chloroform. Infect Immun 1983;41:816-21. (Abstract)
Flint M, Maidens C, Loomis-Price LD, et al. Characterization of hepatitis C virus E2 glycoprotein interaction with a putative cellular receptor, CD81. J Virol 1999;73:6235-44. (Abstract)
Friebe P, Lohmann V, Krieger N, et al. Sequences in the 5' nontranslated region of hepatitis C virus required for RNA replication. J Virol 2001;75:12047-57. (Abstract)
Friebe P and Bartenschlager R. Genetic analysis of sequences in the 3' nontranslated region of hepatitis C virus that are important for RNA replication. J Virol 2002;76:5326-38. (Abstract)
Friebe P, Boudet J, Simorre JP, et al. Kissing-loop interaction in the 3' end of the hepatitis C virus genome essential of RNA replication. J Virol 2005;79:380-92. (Abstract)
Fukushi S, Katayama K, Kurihara C, et al. Complete 5' noncoding region is necessary for the efficient internal initiation of hepatitis C virus RNA. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 1994;199:425-32. (Abstract)
Furuse M, Fujita K, Hiiragi T, et al. Claudin-1 and -2: novel integral membrane proteins localizing at tight junctions with no sequence similarity to occludin. J Cell Biol 1998;141:1539-50. (Abstract)
Gardner JP, Durso RJ, Arrigale RR, et al. L-SIGN (CD209L) is a liver-specific capture receptor for hepatitis C virus. Proc Nat. Acad Sci USA 2003;100:4498-503.
Gastaminza P, Cheng G, Wieland S, et al. Cellular determinants of hepatitis C virus assembly, maturation, degradation, and secretion. J Virol 2008;82:2120-9. (Abstract)

Germi R, Crance JM, Garin D, et al. Cellular glycosaminglycans and low density lipoprotein receptor are involved in hepatitis C virus adsorption. J Med Virol 2002;68:206-15. (Abstract)
Grakoui A, McCourt DW, Wychowski C, et al. Characterization of hepatitis C virus-encoded serine proteinase: determination of proteinase-dependent polyprotein cleavage sites. J Virol 1993a;67:2832-43. (Abstract)
Grakoui A, McCourt DW, Wychowski C, et al. A second hepatitis C virus-encoded proteinase. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1993b;90:10583-7. (Abstract)
Gretton SN, Taylor AI, McLauchlan J. Mobility of the hepatitis C virus NS4B protein on the endoplasmic reticulum membrane and membrane-associated foci. J Gen Virol 2005;86:1415-21. (Abstract)
Griffin SD, Beales LP, Clarke DS, et al. The p7 protein of hepatitis C virus forms an ion channel that is blocked by the antiviral drug, Amantadine. FEBS Lett 2003;535:34-8. (Abstract)
Grove J, Huby T, Stamataki Z, et al. Scavenger receptor BI and BII expression levels modulate hepatitis C virus infectivity. J Virol 2007;81: 3162-9. (Abstract)
Haqshenas G, Mackenzie JM, Dong X, et al. Hepatitis C virus p7 protein is localized in the endoplasmic reticulum when it is encoded by a replication-competent genome. J Gen Virol 2007;88:134-42. (Abstract)
Helle F, Vieyres G, Elkrief L, et al. Role of N-linked glycans in the functions of hepatitis C virus envelope proteins incorporated into infectious virions. J Virol 2010;84:11905-15. (Abstract)
Hellen CU, Pestova TV. Translation of hepatitis C virus RNA. J Viral Hepat 1999;6:79-87.
Heller TS, Saito J, Auerbach T, et al. An in vitro model of hepatitis C virion production. Proc Nat. Acad Sci USA 2005;102:2579-83. (Abstract)
Heo TH, Chang JH, Lee JW, et al. Incomplete humoral immunity against hepatitis C virus is linked with distinct recognition of putative multiple receptors by E2 envelope glycoprotein. J Immunol 2004;173:446-55. (Abstract)
Hollinger FB, Gitnick GL, Aach RD, et al. Non-A, non-B hepatitis transmission in chimpanzees: a project of the Transfusion-transmitted Viruses Study Group. Intervirology 1978;10:60-8. (Abstract)
Honda M, Beard MR, Ping LH, et al. A phylogenetically conserved stem-loop structure at the 5´ border of the internal ribosome entry site of hepatitis C virus is required for cap-independent viral translation. J Virol 1999;73:1165-74.
Hsu M, Zhang J, Flint M, et al. Hepatitis C virus glycoproteins mediate pH-dependent cell entry of pseudotyped retroviral particles. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2003;100:7271-6. (Abstract)
Hüssy P, Langen H, Mous J, et al. Hepatitis C virus core protein: carboxy-terminal boundaries of two processed species suggest cleavage by a signal peptide peptidase. Virology 1996;224-93-104. (Abstract)
Ito T and Lai MMC. Determination of the secondary structure of and cellular protein binding to the 3'-untranslated region of the hepatitis C virus RNA genome. J Virol 1997;71:8698-706. (Abstract)
Jennings TA, Chen Y, Sikora D, et al. RNA unwinding activity of the hepatitis C virus NS3 helicase is modulated by the NS5B polymerase. Biochemistry 2008;47:1126-35. (Abstract)
Jeong SH, Qiao M, Nascimbeni M, et al. Immunization with hepatitis C virus-like particles induces humoral and cellular immune responses in honhuman primates. J Virol 2004;78:6995-7003. (Abstract)
Jin L and Peterson DL. Expression, isolation, and characterization of the hepatitis C virus ATPase/RNA helicase. Arch Biochem Biophys 1995;323:47-53. (Abstract)
Jones CT, Murray CL, Eastman DK, et al. Hepatitis C virus p7 and NS2 proteins are essential for production of infectious virus. J Virol 2007;81:8374-83. (Abstract)
Kaito M, Watanabe S, Tsukiyama-Kohara K, et al. Hepatitis C virus particle detected by immunoelectron microscopy study. J Gen Virol 1994;75:1755-60. (Abstract)
Kapadia SB, Barth H, Baumert T, et al. Initiation of hepatitis C virus infection is dependent on cholesterol and cooperativity between CD81 and scavenger receptor B type I. J Virol 2007;81:374-83. (Abstract)

Kapoor A, Simmonds P, Scheel TK, et al. Identification of rodent homologs of hepatitis C virus and pegiviruses. MBio 2013;4:e00216-13.
Kato J, Kato N, Yoshida H, et al. Hepatitis C virus NS4A and NS4B proteins suppress translation in vivo. J Med Virol 2002;66:187-99. (Abstract)
Kato N. Molecular virology of hepatitis C virus. Acta Med Okayama 2001;55:133-159. (Abstract)
Kato T, Furusaka A, Miyamoto M, et al. Sequence analysis of hepatitis C virus isolated from a fulminant hepatitis patient. J Med Virol 2001;64:334-9. (Abstract)
Kato T, Date T, Miyamoto M, et al. Efficient replication of the genotype 2a hepatitis C virus subgenomic replicon. Gastroenterology 2003;125:1808-17. (Abstract)
Kato T, Date T, Miyamoto M, et al. Nonhepatic cell lines HeLa and 293 support efficient replication of hepatitis C virus genotype 2a subgenomic replicon. J Virol 2005;79:592-6. (Abstract)
Kaukinen P, Sillanpää M, Nousiainen L, Melén K, Julkunen I. Hepatitis C virus NS2 protease inhibits host cell antiviral response by inhibiting IKKε and TBK1 functions. J Med Virol 2013 ;85:71-82.
Kim DW, Gwack Y, Han JH, et al. C-terminal domain of the hepatitis C virus NS3 protein contains an RNA helicase activity. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 1995;215:160-6. (Abstract)
Kim YK, Kim CS, Lee SH, et al. Domains I and II in the 5' nontranslated region of the HCV genome are required for RNA replication. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 2002;290:105-12. (Abstract)
Kolykhalov AA, Feinstone SM, Rice SM. Identification of a highly conserved sequence element at the 3´terminus of hepatitis C virus genome RNA. J Virol 1996;70:3363-71. (Abstract)
Kolykhalov AA, Mihalik K, Feinstone SM, et al. Hepatitis C virus-encoded enzymatic activities and conserved RNA elements in the 3' nontranslated region are essential for virus replication in vivo. J Virol 2000;74:2046-51.. (Abstract)
Komurian-Pradel F, Rajoharison A, Berland JL, et al. Antigenic relevance of F protein in chronic hepatitis C virus infection. Hepatology 2004;40:900-9. (Abstract)
Kou YH, Chou SM, Wang YM, et al. Hepatitis C virus NS4A inhibits cap-dependent and the viral IRES-mediated translation through interacting with eukaryotic elongation factor 1A. J Biomed Sci 2006;13:861-74. (Abstract)
Koutsoudakis G, Kaul A, Steinmann E, et al. Characterization of the early steps of hepatitis C virus infection by using luciferase reporter viruses. J Virol 2006;80:5308-20. (Abstract)
Krieger N, Lohmann V, Bartenschlager R. Enhancement of hepatitis C virus RNA replication by cell culture-adaptive mutations. J Virol 2001;75:4614-24. (Abstract)
Kuo G, Choo QL, Alter HJ, et al. An assay for circulating antibodies to a major etiologic virus of human non-A, non-B hepatitis. Science 1989;244:362-4. (Abstract)
Lauck M, Sibley SD, Lara J, et al. A novel hepacivirus with an unusually long and intrinsically disordered NS5A protein in a wild Old World primate. J Virol 2013;87:8971-81.
Lavillette D, Tarr AW, Voisset C, et al. Characterization of host-range and cell entry properties of the major genotypes and subtypes of hepatitis C virus. Hepatology 2005;41:265-74. (Abstract)
Lavillette D, Pécheur EI, Donot P, et al. Characterization of fusion determinants points to the involvement of three discrete regions of both E1 and E2 glycoproteins in the membrane fusion process of hepatitis C virus. J Virol 2007;81:8752-65. (Abstract)
Lesburg CA, Cable MB, Ferrari E, et al. Crystal structure of the RNA-dependent RNA polymerase from hepatitis C virus reveals a fully encircled active site. Nat Struct Biol 1999;6:937-43. (Abstract)
Lin C, Thomson JA, Rice CM. A central region in the hepatitis C virus NS4A protein allows formation of an active NS3-NS4A serine proteinase complex in vivo and in vitro. J Virol 1995;69:4373-80. (Abstract)
Lindenbach BD, Evans MJ, Syder AJ, et al. Complete replication of hepatitis C virus in cell culture. Science 2005;309:623-6. (Abstract)
Lindenbach BD, Meuleman P, Ploss A, et al. Cell culture-grown hepatitis C virus is infectious in vivo and can be recultured in vitro. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2006;103:3805-9. (Abstract)

Liu S, Yang W, Shen L, et al. Tight junction proteins claudin-1 and occludin control hepatitis C virus entry and are downregulated during infection to prevent superinfection. J Virol 2009;83:2011-4. (Abstract)
Lohmann V, Körner F, Koch JO, et al. Replication of subgenomic hepatitis C virus RNAs in a hepatoma cell line. Science 1999;285:110-3. (Abstract)
Lohmann V, Körner F, Dobierzewska A, et al. Mutations in hepatitis C virus RNAs conferring cell culture adaptation. J Virol 2001;75:1437-49. (Abstract)
Lozach PY, Lortat-Jacob H, de Lacroix de Lavalette A, et al. DC-SIGN and L-SIGN are high affinity binding receptors for hepatitis C virus glycoprotein E2. J Biol Chem 2003;278:20358-66. (Abstract)
Lupberger J, Zeisel MB, Xiao F, et al. EGFR and EphA2 are host factors for hepatitis C virus entry and possible targets for antiviral therapy. Nat Med 2011;17:589-95.
Lupberger J, Felmlee DJ, Baumert TF. Cholesterol uptake and hepatitis C virus entry. J Hepatol 2012;57:215-7.
Malcolm BA, Liu R, Lahser F. et al. SCH 503034, a mechanism-based inhibitor of hepatitis C virus NS3 protease, suppresses polyprotein maturation and enhances the antiviral activity of alpha interferon in replicon cells. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 2006;50: 1013-20.
Matsumoto M, Hwang SB, Jeng KS, et al. Homotypic interaction and multimerization of hepatitis C virus core protein. Virology 1996;218:43-51. (Abstract)
McKeating JA, Zhang LQ, Logvinoff C, et al. Diverse hepatitis C virus glycoproteins mediate viral infection in a CD81-dependent manner. J Virol 2004;78:8496-505. (Abstract)
McLauchlan J, Lemberg MK, Hope G, et al. Intramembrane proteolysis promotes trafficking of hepatitis C virus core protein to lipid droplets. EMBO J 2002;21:3980-8. (Abstract)
Meertens L, Bertaux C, Dragic T. Hepatitis C virus entry requires a critical postinternalization step and delivery to early endosomes via clathrin-coated vesicles. J Virol. 2006;80:11571-8. (Abstract)
Meertens L, Bertaux C, Cukierman L, et al. The tight junction proteins claudin-1, -6, and -9 are entry cofactors for hepatitis C virus. J Virol 2008;82:3555-60. (Abstract)
Miyanari Y, Atsuzawa K, Usuda N, et al. The lipid droplet is an important organelle for hepatitis C virus production. Nat Cell Biol 2007;9:961-9. (Abstract)
Molina S, Castet V, Fournier-Wirth C, et al. The low-density lipoprotein receptor plays a role in the infection of primary human hepatocytes by hepatitis C virus. J Hepatol 2007;46:411-9. (Abstract)
Monazahian M, Böhme I, Bonk S, et al. Low-density lipoprotein receptor as a candidate receptor for hepatitis C virus. J Med Virol 1999;57:223-9. (Abstract)
Moradpour D, Englert C, Wakita T, et al. Characterization of cell lines allowing tightly regulated expression of hepatitis C virus core protein. Virology 1996;222:52-63. (Abstract)
NahmiasY, Casali M, Barbe L, et al. Liver endothelial cells promote LDL-R expression and the uptake of HCV-like particles in primary rat and human hepatocytes. Hepatology 2006;43:257-65. (Abstract)
Ndjomou J, Pybus OG, Matz B. Phylogenetic analysis of hepatitis C virus isolates indicates a unique pattern of endemic infection in Cameroon. J Gen Virol 2003;84:2333-41. (Abstract)
Op de Beeck A, Montserret R, Duvet S, et al. The transmembrane domains of hepatitis C virus envelope glycoprotein E1 and E2 play a major role in heterodimerization. J Biol Chem 2000;275:31428-37. (Abstract)
Otto GA, Lukavsky PJ, Lancaster AM, et al. Ribosomal proteins mediate the hepatitis C virus IRES-HeLa 40S interaction. RNA 2002;8:913-23. (Abstract)
Pavlovic D, Neville DC, Argaud O, et al. The hepatitis C virus p7 protein forms an ion channel that is inhibited by long-alkyl-chain iminosugar derivatives. Proc Nat. Acad Sci USA 2003;100:6104-8. (Abstract)
Pawlotsky JM, Chevalier S, McHutchinson JG. The hepatitis C virus life cycle as a target for new antiviral therapies. Gastroenterology 2007;132:1979-98. (Abstract)
Perni RB, Almquist SJ, Byrn RA, et al. Preclinical profile of VX-950, a potent, selective, and orally bioavailable inhibitor of hepatitis C virus NS3-4A serine protease. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 2006;50:899-909.
Pietschmann T, Lohmann V, Kaul A, et al. Persistent and transient replication of full-length hepatitis C virus genomes in cell culture. J Virol 2002;76:4008-21. (Abstract)

Pileri P, Uematsu Y, Campagnoli S, et al. Binding of hepatitis C virus to CD81. Science 1998, 282:938-941. Ploss A, Evans MJ, Gaysinskaya VA, et al. Human occluding is a hepatitis C virus entry factor required for infection of mouse cells. Nature 2009;457:882-6. (Abstract)
Ploss A, Evans MJ, Gaysinskaya VA, et al. Human occluding is a hepatitis C virus entry factor required for infection of mouse cells. Nature 2009;457:882-6. (Abstract)
Pöhlmann S, Zhang J , Baribaud F, et al. Hepatitis C virus glycoproteins interact with DC-SIGN and DC-SIGNR. J Virol 2003;77:4070-80. (Abstract)
Poynard T, Bedossa P, Opolon P et al. Natural history of liver fibrosis progression in patients with chronic hepatitis C. Lancet 1997;349:825-33. (Abstract)
Prince AM, Huima-Byron T, Parker TS, et al. Visualization of hepatitis C virions and putative defective interfering particles isolated from low-density lipoproteins. J Viral Hepat 1996;3:11-7. (Abstract)
Qiao M, Ashok M, Bernard KA, et al. Induction of sterilizing immunity against West Nile virus (WNV) by immunization with WNV-like particles produced in insect cells. J Infect Dis 2004;190:2104-8. (Abstract)
Roussel J, Pillez A, Montpellier C, et al. Characterization of the expression of the hepatitis C virus F protein. J Gen Virol 2003;84:1751-9. (Abstract)
Sakai A, Claire MS, Faulk K, et al. The p7 polypeptide of hepatitis C virus is critical for infectivity and contains functionally important genotype-specific sequences. Proc Nat. Acad Sci USA 2003;100:11646-51. (Abstract)
Sainz Jr. B, Barretto N, Martin DN, et al. Identification of the Niemann-Pick C1-like cholesterol absorption receptor as a new hepatitis C virus entry factor. Nat Med 2012;18:281-5.
Santolini E, Migliaccio G, La Monica N. Biosynthesis and biochemical properties of the hepatitis C virus core protein. J Virol 1994;68:3631-41. (Abstract)
Santolini E, Pacini L, Fipaldini C, et al. The NS2 protein of hepatitis C virus is a transmembrane polypeptide. J Virol 1995;69:7461-71. (Abstract)
Scarselli E, Ansuini H, Cerino R, et al. The human scavenger receptor class B type I is a novel candidate receptor for the hepatitis C virus. EMBO J 2002;21:5017-25. (Abstract)
Schmidt-Mende J, Bieck E, Hugle T, et al. Determinants for membrane association of the hepatitis C virus RNA-dependent RNA polymerase. J Biol Chem 2001;276:44052-63. (Abstract)
Shavinskaya A, Boulant S, Penin F, et al. The lipid droplet binding domain of hepatitis C virus core protein is a major determinant for efficient virus assembly. J Biol Chem 2007;282:37158-69. (Abstract)
Shi W, Freitas IT, Zhu C, Zheng W, Hall WW, Higgins DG. Recombination in hepatitis C virus: identification of four novel naturally occurring inter-subtype recombinants. PLoS One 2012;7:e41997.
Shimizu YK, Feinstone SM, Kohara M, et al. Hepatitis C virus: detection of intracellular virus particles by electron microscopy. Hepatology 1996a;23:205-9. (Abstract)
Shimizu YK, Igarashi H, Kiyohara T, et al. A hyperimmune serum against a synthetic peptide corresponding to the hypervariable region 1 of hepatitis C virus can prevent viral infection in cell cultures. Virology 1996b;223:409-12. (Abstract)
Simmonds P. The origin and evolution of hepatitis viruses in humans. J Gen Virol 2001, 82:693-712. Simmonds P. Genetic diversity and evolution of hepatitis C virus - 15 years on. J Gen Virol 2004;85:3173-88. (Abstract)
Simmonds P, Bukh J, Combet C, et al. Consensus proposals for a unified system of nomenclature of hepatitis C virus genotypes. Hepatology 2005;42:962-73. (Abstract)
Sizova DV, Kolupaeva VG, Pestova TV, et al. Specific interaction of eukaryotic translation initiation factor 3 with the 5' nontranslated regions of hepatitis C virus and classical swine fever virus RNAs. J Virol 1998;72:4775-82. (Abstract)
Smith DB, Bukh J, Kuiken C, et al. Expanded classification of hepatitis C virus into 7 genotypes and 67 subtypes : Updated criteria and genotype assignment web resource. Hepatology 2014 ;59:318-27.
Song Y, Friebe P, Tzima E, et al. The hepatitis C virus RNA 3'-untranslated region strongly enhances translation directed by the internal ribosome entry site. J Virol 2006;80:11579-88. (Abstract)
Spahn CM, Kieft JS, Grassucci RA, et al. Hepatitis C virus IRES RNA-induced changes in the conformation of the 40s ribosomal subunit. Science 2001;291:1959-62. (Abstract)

Stapleford KA, Lindenbach BD. Hepatitis C virus NS2 coordinates virus particle assembly through physical interactions with the E1-E2 glycoprotein and NS3-NS4A enzyme complexes. J Virol 2011;85:1706-17.
Stapleton JT, Foung S, Muerhoff AS, Bukh J, Simmonds P. The GB viruses: a review and proposed classification of GBV-A, GBV-C (HGV), ad GBV-D in genus Pegivirus within the family Flaviviridae. J Gen Virol 2011;92:233-46.
Takahashi K, Kishimoto S, Yoshizawa H, et al. p26 protein and 33-nm particle associated with nucleocapsid of hepatitis C virus recovered from the circulation of infected hosts. Virology 1992;191:431-4. (Abstract)
Tanaka T, Kato N, Cho MJ, et al. A novel sequence found at the 3' terminus of hepatitis C virus genome. Biochem Biophys Res 1995;215:744-9. (Abstract)
Tanaka T, Kato N, Cho MJ, et al. Structure of the 3' terminus of the hepatitis C virus genome. J Virol 1996;70:3307-12. (Abstract)
Tanji Y, Hijikata M, Satoh S, et al. Hepatitis C virus-encoded nonstructural protein NS4A has versatile functions in viral protein processing. J Virol 1995;69:1575-81. (Abstract)
Thomssen R, Bonk S, Propfe C, et al. Association of hepatitis C virus in human sera with lipoprotein. Med Microbiol Immunol 1992;181:293-300. (Abstract)
Thomssen R, Bonk S, Thiele A. Density heterogeneities of hepatitis C virus in human sera due to the binding of beta-lipoproteins and immunoglobulins. Med Microbiol Immunol 1993;182:329-34. (Abstract)
Timpe JM, Stamataki Z, Jennings A, et al. Hepatitis C virus cell-cell transmission in hepatoma cells in the presence of neutralizing antibodies. Hepatology 2007;47:17-24. (Abstract)
Tomei L, Failla C, Santolini E, et al. NS3 is a Serine protease required for processing of hepatitis C virus polyprotein. J Virol 1993;67:4017-26. (Abstract)
Tomei L, Failla C, Vitale RL, et al. A central hydrophobic domain of the hepatitis C virus NS4A protein is necessary and sufficient for the activation of the NS3 protease. J Gen Virol 1996;77:1065-70. (Abstract)
Tong MJ, el-Farra NS, Reikes AR et al. Clinical outcomes after transfusion-associated hepatitis C. N Engl J Med 1995;332:1463-6. (Abstract)
Tsukiyama-Kohara K, Iizuka N, Kohara M, et al. Internal ribosome entry site within hepatitis C virus RNA. J Virol 1992;66:1476-83. (Abstract)
Valli MB, Serafino A, Crema A, et al. Transmission in vitro of hepatitis C virus from persistently infected human B-cells to hepatoma cells by cell-to-cell contact. J Med Virol 2006;78:192-201. (Abstract)
Valli MB, Crema A, Lanzilli G, et al. Molecular and cellular determinants of cell-to-cell transmission of HCV in vitro. J Med Virol 2007;79:1491-9. (Abstract)
Varaklioti A, Vassilaki N, Georgopoulou U, et al. Alternate translation occurs within the core coding region of the hepatitis C viral genome. J Biol Chem 2002;17713-21. (Abstract)
Voisset C, Op de Beeck A, Horellou P, et al. High-density lipoproteins reduce the neutralizing effect of hepatitis C virus (HCV)-infected patient antibodies by promoting HCV entry. J Gen Virol 2006;87:2577–81.
Wakita T, Pietschmann T, Kato T, et al. Production of infectious hepatitis C virus in tissue culture from a cloned viral genome. Nat Med 2005;11:791-6. (Abstract)
Walewski JL, Keller TR, Stump DD, et al. Evidence for a new hepatitis C virus antigen encoded in an overlapping reading frame. RNA 2001;7:710-21. (Abstract)
Wang C, Sarnow P, Siddiqui A. Translation of human hepatitis C virus RNA in cultured cells is mediated by an internal ribosome-binding mechanism. J Virol 1993;67:3338-44. (Abstract)
Wang H, Shen XT, Ye R, et al. Roles of the polypyrimidine tract and 3' noncoding region of hepatitis C virus RNA in the internal ribosome entry site-mediated translation. Arch Virol 2005;150:1085-99. (Abstract)
Washburn ML, Bility MT, Zhang L, et al. A humanized mouse model to study hepatitis C virus infection, immune response, and liver disease. Gastroenterology 2011;140:1334-44. (Abstract)
Webb NR, Connell PM, Graf GA, et al. SR-BII, an isoform of the scavenger receptor BI containing an alternate cytoplasmic tail, mediates lipid transfer between high-density lipoprotein and cells. J Biol Chem 1998;273:15241-8. (Abstract)
Weihofen A, Binns K, Lemberg MK, et al. Identification of signal peptide peptidase, a presenelin-type aspartic protease. Science 2002;296:2215-8. (Abstract)

Weiner AJ, Brauer MJ, Rosenblatt J, et al. Variable and hypervariable domains are found in the regions of HCV corresponding to the flavivirus envelope and NS1 proteins and the pestivirus envelope glycoproteins. Virology 1991;180:842-8. (Abstract)
Witteveldt J, Evans MJ, Bitzegeio J, et al. CD81 is dispensable for hepatitis C virus cell-to-cell transmission in hepatoma cells. J Gen Virol 2009;90:48-58. (Abstract)
Wölk B, Sansonno D, Kräusslich HG, et al. Subcellular localization, stability, and transcleavage competence of the hepatitis C virus NS3-NS4A complex expressed in tetracycline-regulated cell lines. J Virol 2000;74:2293-304. (Abstract)
Wünschmann S, Medh JD, Klinzmann D, et al. Characterization of hepatitis C virus (HCV) and HCV E2 interactions with CD81 and the low-density lipoprotein receptor. J Virol 2000;74:10055-62. (Abstract)
Xu Z, Choi J, Yen TS, et al. Synthesis of a novel hepatitis C virus protein by ribosomal frameshift. EMBO J 2001;20:3840-8. (Abstract)
Xu Z, Choi J, Lu W, et al. Hepatitis C virus F protein is a short-lived protein associated with the endoplasmic reticulum. J Virol 2003;77:1578-83. (Abstract)
Yanagi M, St Claire M, Emerson SU. In vivo analysis of the 3' untranslated region of the hepatitis C virus after in vitro mutagenesis of an infectious cDNA clone. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1999;96:2291-5. (Abstract)
Yang XJ, Liu J, Ye L, et al. HCV NS2 protein inhibits cell proliferation and induces cell cycle arrest in the S-phase in mammalian cells through down-regulation of cyclin A expression. Virus Res 2006;121:134–43.
Yi M and Lemon SM. 3' Nontranslated RNA signals required for replication of hepatitis C virus RNA. J Virol 2003;77:3557-68. (Abstract)
Yi M, Villanueva RA, Thomas DL, et al. Production of infectious genotype 1a hepatitis C virus (Hutchinson strain) in cultured hepatoma cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2006;103:2310-5. (Abstract)
You S and Rice CM. 3´ RNA elements in hepatitis C virus replication: kissing partners and long poly(U). J Virol 2008;82:184-95. (Abstract)
Yu GY, Lee KJ, Gao L, Lai MM. Palmitoylation and polymerization of hepatitis C virus NS4B protein. J Virol 2006;80:6013–23.
Yu X, Qiao M, Atanasov I, et al. Cryo-electron microscopy and three-dimensional reconstructions of hepatitis C virus particles. Virology 2007;367:126-34. (Abstract)
Zeisel MB, Koutsoudakis G, Schnober EK, et al. Scavenger receptor class B type I is a key host factor for hepatitis C virus infection required for an entry step closely linked to CD81. Hepatology 2007;46:1722-31. (Abstract)
Zhang J, Yamada O, Yoshida H, et al. Autogenous translational inhibition of core protein: implication for switch from translation to RNA replication in hepatitis C virus. Virology 2002;293:141-50. (Abstract)
Zhang LQ, Randall G, Higginbottom A, et al. CD81 is required for hepatitis C virus glycoprotein-mediated viral infection. J Virol 2004;78:1448-55. (Abstract)
Zheng A, Yuan F, Li Y, et al. Claudin-6 and claudin-9 function as additional coreceptors for hepatitis C virus. J Virol 2007;81:12465-71. (Abstract)
Zhong J, Gastaminza P, Cheng G, et al. Robust hepatitis C virus infection in vitro. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2005;102:9294-9. (Abstract)

7. Prophylaxis and Vaccination

Heiner Wedemeyer

Introduction

Understanding the biology and modes of transmission of hepatitis viruses has significantly improved over the last decades. Even so, there are prophylactic vaccines available only for HAV and HBV. Although an enormous amount of basic and clinical research has been performed in trying to develop a vaccine against hepatitis C, it is very unlikely that a prophylactic or therapeutic HCV vaccine will be available anytime soon. A first Phase III vaccine trial against hepatitis E showed success in China and the vaccine has been licensed there; it is currently unknown if or when this vaccine will become available in other countries. Prophylaxis of HCV, HDV (for HBV-infected patients) and HEV infection therefore must still occur by avoiding all routes of exposure to the respective hepatitis viruses discussed in detail in Chapters 1-4.

Prophylaxis of hepatitis viruses

Hepatitis A and E

The hepatitis A and E viruses are usually transmitted by oral ingestion of contaminated food or water. Thus, particular caution is warranted when individuals from low endemic areas such as Western Europe and the US travel to countries with a high prevalence of HAV and HEV infections. Several outbreaks of HEV infection have occurred in different regions of the world in the recent past, associated with significant morbidity and mortality, eg, the recent outbreak of hepatitis E in refugee camps in South Sudan of more than 5000 acute jaundice cases within a time period of 5 months showed a fatality rate of about 10% in pregnant women (CDC 2013). In addition, hepatitis E can also be a zoonosis. A German case-control study identified 32% of all reported HEV infections as being autochthonous infections, meaning not associated with traveling to endemic countries (Wichmann 2008). In these patients consumption of offal and wild boar meat was independently associated with HEV infection. This may have significant implications for immunosuppressed patients as

cases of chronic hepatitis E with the development of advanced fibrosis have been described in patients after organ transplantation (Wedemeyer 2012). HEV has frequently been detected in the meat of pigs; Danish farmers show a higher prevalence of HEV antibodies. Importantly, zoonotic HEV infection is usually caused by HEV genotype 3 while HEV genotype 1 can be found in travel-associated hepatitis E (Wedemeyer 2012). It is important to note that HEV is heat sensitive (>70°C) and cooking the meat should be sufficient to prevent HEV infection. HAV and HEV can also be transmitted by blood transfusion although cases are extremely rare. The risk might be slightly higher for HEV, as up to 10% of pooled plasma products can contain HEV RNA in Europe. The relevance of HEV transmission by blood products is discussed in detail in Chapter 4. Distinct genetic polymorphisms may be associated with the risk of becoming infected with HAV (Zhang 2012) and HEV (Wedemeyer 2012).

Hepatitis B and D

HBV and HDV were transmitted frequently by blood transfusion before HBsAg testing of blood products was introduced in the 1970s. Since then, vertical transmission and sexual exposure have become the most frequent routes of HBV infection. Medical procedures still represent a potential source for HBV transmissions and thus strict and careful application of standard hygienic precautions for all medical interventions are absolutely mandatory, and not only in endemic areas. This holds true in particular for immunocompromised individuals who are highly susceptible to HBV infection as HBV is characterized by a very high infectivity (Wedemeyer 1998). Moreover, immunosuppressed patients are at risk for reactivation of occult HBV infection after serological recovery from hepatitis B. Treatments with high doses of steroids and rituximab have especially been identified as major risk factors for HBV reactivation (Lalazar 2007, Loomba 2008). After a new diagnosis of HBV infection, all family members of the patient need to be tested for their immune status against HBV. Immediate active vaccination is recommended for all anti-HBc-negative contact persons. HBsAg-positive individuals should use condoms during sexual intercourse if it is not known if the partner has been vaccinated. Non-immune individuals who have experienced an injury and were exposed to HBsAg-positive fluids should undergo passive immunization with anti-HBs as soon as possible, preferentially within 2-12 hours (Cornberg 2011).

Hepatitis C

Less than 1% of individuals who are exposed to HCV by an injury with contaminated needles develop acute HCV infection. At Hannover Medical School, not a single HCV seroconversion occurred after 166 occupational exposures with anti-HCV positive blood in a period of 6 years (2000-2005). A systematic review of the literature identified 22 studies including a total of 6956 injuries with HCV contaminated needles. Only 52 individuals (0.75%) became infected. The risk of acute HCV infection was lower in Europe at 0.42% compared to eastern Asia at 1.5% (Kubitschke 2007). Thus, the risk of acquiring HCV infection after a needle-stick injury is lower than frequently reported. Worldwide differences in HCV seroconversion rates may suggest that genetic factors provide some level of natural

resistance against HCV. Indeed, distinct polymorphisms have been identified that are associated either with protection from HCV infection or with a higher likelihood of recovering spontaneously from acute hepatitis C (Schaefer 2011). Factors associated with a higher risk of HCV transmission are likely to be the level of HCV viremia in the index patient, the amount of transmitted fluid and the duration between contamination of the respective needle and injury. Suggested follow-up procedures after needlestick episode:

- Persons who experience an injury with an HCV-contaminated needle should be tested for HCV RNA immediatly and an ALT testing should be performed.
- If possible, a HCV quantification of the index patient should be measured.
- There is no need for a prophylactic treatment with IFN and ribavirin.
- HCV RNA should be performed after 2 and 4 weeks; if the results are negative, HCV RNA testing should be repeated at weeks 6 and 8.
- After 12 and 24 weeks anti-HCV and ALT levels should be determined; if the results are out of range, HCV RNA testing should be performed.

Sexual intercourse with HCV-infected persons has clearly been identified as a risk for HCV infection, as about 10-20% of patients with acute hepatitis C report this as having been a potential risk factor (Deterding 2009). However, there is also evidence that the risk of acquiring HCV sexually is extremely low in individuals in stable partnerships who avoid injuries. Cohort studies including more than 500 HCV-infected patients followed over periods of more than 4 years could not identify any cases of confirmed HCV transmission. The risk for HCV transmission has recently been estimated to be about 1 per 190,000 sexual contacts (Terrault 2013). There was no association between specific sexual practices and HCV infection in monogamous heterosexual couples. Thus, current guidelines do not recommend the use of condoms in monogamous relationships (EASL 2011). However, this does not hold true for HIV-positive homosexual men. Several outbreaks of acute hepatitis C have been described in this scenario (Fox 2008, Low 2008, van de Laar 2009). Transmitted cases had more sexual partners, increased levels of high-risk sexual behaviour (in particular, fisting) and were more likely to have shared drugs via a nasal or anal route than controls (Turner 2006).

Due to the low HCV prevalence in most European countries and due to a relatively low vertical transmission rate of 1-6%, general screening of pregnant women for anti-HCV is not recommended. Interestingly, transmission may be higher for girls than for boys (European Pediatric Hepatitis C Virus Network 2005). Transmission rates are higher in HIV-infected women so pregnant women should be tested for hepatitis C. Other factors possibly associated with high transmission rates are the level of HCV viremia, maternal intravenous drug use, and the specific HLA types of the children. Immunoregulatory changes during pregnancy reduce the pressure by cytotoxic T cells which may select viruses with optimized replication fitness and thereby facilitate vertical transmission (Honegger 2013). Cesarean sections are not recommended for HCV RNA positive mothers as there is no clear evidence that these reduce transmission rates. Children of HCV-infected mothers should be tested for HCV RNA after 1 month as maternal anti-HCV antibodies can

be detected for several months after birth. Mothers with chronic hepatitis C can breast-feed their children as long as they are HIV-negative and do not use intravenous drugs (European Pediatric Hepatitis C Virus Network 2001, EASL 2011). This clinical recommendation is supported by experimental data showing inactivation of HCV by human breast milk in a dose dependent manner. Of note this effect is specific to human breast milk and the mechanism is destruction of the lipid envelope but not of viral RNA or capsids (Pfaender 2013).

The Spanish Acute HCV Study Group has identified hospital admission as a significant risk factor for acquiring HCV infection in Spain (Martinez-Bauer 2008). The data are in line with reports from Italy (Santantonio 2006), France (Brouard 2008) and the US (Corey 2006). We have reported data from the German Hep-Net Acute HCV Studies and found 38 cases (15% of the entire cohort) of acute HCV patients who reported a medical procedure as the most likely risk factor for having acquired HCV (Deterding 2008). The majority of those were hospital admissions with surgery in 30 cases; other invasive procedures, including dental treatment, were present in only 4 cases. Medical procedures were significantly more often the probable cause of infection in patients older than 30 years of age ($p=0.002$) but not associated with disease severity or time from exposure to onset of symptoms. Thus, medical treatment per se still represents a significant risk factor for HCV infection – even in developed countries. Strict adherence to universal precaution guidelines is urgently warranted.

HCV is surprisingly stable and can be infectious for at least 6 months if stored in liquids at 4° C (Ciesek 2010) and for up to 3 weeks in bottled water (Doerrbecker 2013). HCV is also associated with filter material used by people who inject drugs (Doerrbecker 2013). Moreover, HCV shows a prolonged survival in lipid-containing fluids such as propofol (Steinmann 2011). These findings demonstrate that it is absolutely critical to strictly follow hygienic standards in medical practice to prevent HCV transmissions.

Vaccination against hepatitis A

The first active vaccine against HAV was licensed in 1995. The currently available inactive vaccines are manufactured from cell culture-adapted HAV, grown either in human fibroblasts or diploid cells (Nothdurft 2008). Two doses of the vaccine are recommended. The second dose should be given between 6 and 18 months after the first dose. All vaccines are highly immunogenic and basically all vaccinated healthy persons develop protective anti-HAV antibodies. Similar vaccine responses are obtained in both children and adults and no relevant regional differences in response to HAV vaccination have been observed. The weakest vaccine responses have been described for young children receiving a 0, 1 & 2 months schedule (Hammitt 2008). Patients with chronic liver disease do respond to vaccination but may display lower anti-HAV titers (Keeffe 1998). HAV vaccination in HIV-positive persons is more effective if HIV replication is already suppressed by antiretroviral therapy and patients have higher CD4+ T-cell counts (Tseng 2013). A combined vaccine against HAV and HBV is available that needs to be administered three times, on a 0, 1, and 6 months schedule. More than 80% of healthy individuals have detectable HAV antibodies by day 21 applying an accelerated vaccine schedule of 0, 7 and 21 days

using the combined HAV/HBV vaccine, and all study subjects were immune against HAV by 2 months (Kallinowski 2003).

HAV vaccines are very well tolerated and no serious adverse events have been linked with the administration of HAV vaccines (Nothdurft 2008). The vaccine can safely be given together with other vaccines or immunoglobulins without compromising the development of protective antibodies.

Vaccination is recommended for non-immune individuals who plan to travel to endemic countries, medical health professionals, homosexual men, persons in contact with hepatitis A patients, and individuals with chronic liver diseases. Some studies have suggested that patients with chronic hepatitis C have a higher risk of developing fulminant hepatitis A (Vento 1998), although this finding has not been confirmed by other investigators (Deterding 2006). The implementation of childhood vaccination programs has led to significant and impressive declines of HAV infections in several countries, justifying further efforts aiming at controlling the spread of HAV in endemic countries (Hendrickx 2008). It is important to highlight that most studies have confirmed that HAV vaccination is cost-effective (Rein 2008, Hollinger 2007). However, the recommendation to vaccinate all patiens with hepatitis C against hepatitis A has recently been challenged. A meta-analysis including studies on mortality from hepatitis A in HCV-infected persons revealed a number-needed-to-vaccinate to prevent one death of more than 800,000 (Rowe 2012), thus questioning the use of routine HAV vaccination in anti-HCV-positive persons.

Long-term follow-up studies after complete HAV vaccinations have been published. Interestingly, anti-HAV titers sharply decline during the first year after vaccination but remain detectable in almost all individuals for at least 10-15 years after vaccination (Van Herck 2011) which also has been confirmed by systematic reviews (Ott 2012). Based on these studies it was estimated that protective anti-HAV antibodies should persist for at least 27-30 years after successful vaccination (Hammitt 2008, Bovier 2010).

Vaccination against hepatitis B

The hepatitis B vaccine was the first vaccine able to reduce the incidence of cancer. In Taiwan, a significant decline in cases of childhood hepatocellular carcinoma has been observed since the implementation of programs to vaccinate all infants against HBV (Chang 1997). This landmark study impressively highlighted the usefulness of universal vaccination against HBV in endemic countries. Controversial discussions are ongoing regarding to what extent universal vaccination against HBV may be cost-effective in low-endemic places such as the UK, the Netherlands or Scandinavia (Zuckerman 2007). In 1992 the World Health Organization recommended general vaccination against hepatitis B. It should be possible to eradicate hepatitis B by worldwide implementation of this recommendation, because humans are the only epidemiologically relevant host for HBV. 179 countries have introduced a hepatitis B vaccine in their national infant immunization schedules by the end of 2010, including parts of India and the Sudan (WHO 2011).

The first plasma-derived hepatitis B vaccine was approved by FDA in 1981. Recombinant vaccines consisting of HBsAg produced in yeast became available in

1986. In the US, two recombinant vaccines are licensed (Recombivax® and Engerix-B®) while additional vaccines are used in other countries. The vaccines are administered three times, on a 0, 1, and 6 months timetable.

Who should be vaccinated? The German Guidelines (Cornberg 2011)

- Hepatitis B high-risk persons working in health care settings including trainees, students, cleaning personnel;
- Personnel in psychiatric facilities or comparable welfare institutions for cerebrally damaged or disturbed patients; other persons who are at risk because of blood contact with possibly infected persons dependent on the risk evaluation, e.g., persons giving first aid professionally or voluntarily, employees of ambulance services, police officers, social workers, and prison staff who have contact with drug addicts;
- Patients with chronic kidney disease, dialysis patients, patients with frequent blood or blood component transfusions (e.g., hemophiliacs), patients prior to extensive surgery (e.g., before operations using heart-lung machine. The urgency of the operation and the patient's wish for vaccination protection are of primary importance);
- Persons with chronic liver disease including chronic diseases with liver involvement as well as HIV-positive persons without HBV markers;
- Persons at risk of contact with HBsAg carriers in the family or shared housing, sexual partners of HBsAg carriers;
- Patients in psychiatric facilities or residents of comparable welfare institutions for cerebrally damaged or disturbed persons as well as persons in sheltered workshops;
- Special high-risk groups, e.g., homosexually active men, regular drug users, sex workers, prisoners serving extended sentences;
- Persons at risk of contacting HBsAg carriers in facilities (kindergarten, children's homes, nursing homes, school classes, day care groups);
- Persons travelling to regions with high hepatitis B prevalence for an extended period of time or with expected close contact with the local population;
- Persons who have been injured by possibly contaminated items, e.g., needle puncture (see post-exposition prophylaxis);
- Infants of HBsAg-positive mothers or of mothers with unknown HBsAg status (independent of weight at birth) (see post-exposition prophylaxis).

Routine testing for previous contact with hepatitis B is not necessary before vaccination unless the person belongs to a risk group and may have acquired immunity against hepatitis B before. Pre-vaccine testing is usually not cost-effective in populations with an anti-HBc prevalence below 20%. Vaccination of HBsAg-positive individuals can be performed without any danger – however, it is ineffective.

Efficacy of vaccination against hepatitis B

A response to HBV vaccination is determined by the development of anti-HBs antibodies, detectable in 90-95% of individuals one month after a complete

vaccination schedule (Wedemeyer 2007, Coates 2001). Responses are lower in elderly people and much weaker in immunocompromised persons such as organ transplant recipients, patients receiving hemodialysis and HIV-infected individuals. In case of vaccine non-response, another three courses of vaccine should be administered and the dose of the vaccine should be increased. Other possibilities to increase the immunogenicity of HBV vaccines include intradermal application and coadministration of adjuvants and cytokines (Cornberg 2011). The response to vaccination should be monitored in high-risk individuals such as medical health professionals and immunocompromised persons. Some guidelines also recommend testing elderly persons after vaccinations as vaccine response does decline more rapidly in the elderly (Wolters 2003).

Post-exposure prophylaxis

Non-immune persons who have been in contact with HBV-contaminated materials (e.g., needles) or who have had sexual intercourse with an HBV-infected person should undergo active-passive immunization (active immunization plus hepatitis B immunoglobulin) as soon as possible – preferentially within the first 48 hours of exposure to HBV. Individuals previously vaccinated but who have an anti-HBs titer of <10 IU/L should also be vaccinated both actively and passively. No action is required if an anti-HBs titer of >100 IU/l is documented; active vaccination alone is sufficient for persons with intermediate anti-HBs titers between 10 and 100 IU/L (Cornberg 2011).

Safety of HBV vaccines

Several hundred million individuals have been vaccinated against hepatitis B. The vaccine is very well tolerated. Injection site reactions in the first 1-3 days and mild general reactions are common, although they are usually not long lasting. Whether there is a causal relationship between the vaccination and the seldomly observed neurological disorders occurring around the time of vaccination is not clear. In the majority of these case reports the concomitant events most likely occurred coincidentally and are independent and not causally related. That hepatitis B vaccination causes and induces acute episodes of multiple sclerosis or other demyelating diseases has been repeatedly discussed (Geier 2001, Hernan 2004, Girard 2005). However, there are no scientific facts proving such a relationship. Numerous studies have not been able to find a causal relationship between the postulated disease and the vaccination (Sadovnick 2000, Monteyne 2000, Ascherio 2001, Confavreux 2001, Schattner 2005).

Long-term immunogenicity of hepatitis B vaccination

Numerous studies have been published in recent years investigating the long-term efficacy of HBV vaccination. After 10-20 years, between one third and two thirds of vaccinated individuals have completely lost anti-HBs antibodies and only a minority maintain titers of >100 IU/L. However, in low/intermediate endemic countries such as Italy, this loss in protective humoral immunity did not lead to many cases of acute or even chronic HBV infection (Zanetti 2005). To what extent memory T cell responses contribute to a relative protection against HBV in the absence of anti-HBs

remains to be determined. Nevertheless, in high-endemic countries such as Gambia a significant proportion of vaccinated infants still seroconvert to anti-HBc indicating active HBV infection (18%) and some children even develop chronic hepatitis B (van der Sande 2007). Thus, persons at risk should receive booster immunization if HBs antibodies have been lost. A very high efficacy of a single booster vaccine after 15-20 years has been shown recently (Su 2013). However, protective titers are frequently lost again a few years afterbooster vaccination.

Prevention of vertical HBV transmission

Infants of HBsAg-positive mothers should be immunized actively and passively within 12 hours of birth. This is very important as the vertical HBV transmission rate can be reduced from 95% to <5% (Ranger-Rogez 2004). Mothers with high HBV viremia, of >1 million IU/ml, should receive in addition antiviral therapy with a potent HBV polymerase inhibitor (EASL 2009, Peterson 2011, Han 2011). Tenofovir and telbivudine have been classified as Category B drugs by the FDA and can therefore be given during pregnancy as no increased rates of birth defects have been reported (FDA pregnancy exposure registries 2013). If active/passive immunization has been performed, there is no need to recommend cesarean section. Mothers of vaccinated infants can breastfeed unless antiviral medications are being taken by the mother, which can pass through breast milk. If exposure to HBV polymerase inhibitors to infants by breast milk is associated with any specific risk is currently unknown.

Vaccination against hepatitis C

No prophylactic or therapeutic vaccine against hepatitis C is available. As re-infections after spontaneous or treatment-induced recovery from hepatitis C virus infection have frequently been reported, the aim of a prophylactic vaccine would very likely be not to prevent completely an infection with HCV but rather to modulate immune responses in such a way that the frequency of evolution to a chronic state can be reduced (Torresi 2011).

HCV specific T cell responses play an important role in the natural course of HCV infection. The adaptive T cell response is mediated both by CD4+ helper T cells and CD8+ killer T cells. Several groups have consistently found an association between a strong, multispecific and maintained HCV-specific CD4+ and CD8+ T cell response and the resolution of acute HCV infection (Rehermann 2009). While CD4+ T cells seem to be present for several years after recovery, there are conflicting data whether HCV-specific CD8+ T cells responses persist or decline over time (Wiegand 2007). However, several studies have observed durable HCV-specific T cells in HCV-seronegative individuals who were exposed to HCV by occupational exposure or as household members of HCV-positive partners, but who never became HCV RNA positive. A 10-year longitudinal study involving 72 healthcare workers showed that about half of the individuals developed HCV-specific T cell responses detectable most frequently 4 weeks after exposure (Heller 2013). These observations suggest that HCV-specific T cells may be induced upon subclinical exposure and may contribute to protection against clinically apparent HCV infection. However, it might also be that repeated subinfectious exposure to

HCV may not protect from HCV but rather increase susceptibility by expansion of regulatory T cells which suppress effector T cells (Park 2013). T cell responses are usually much weaker in chronic hepatitis C. The frequency of specific cells is low but also effector function of HCV-specific T cells is impaired. Different mechanisms are discussed as being responsible for this impaired T cell function, including higher frequencies of regulatory T cells (Tregs), altered dendritic cell activity, upregulation of inhibitory molecules such as PD-1, CTL-A4 or 2B4 on T cells and escape mutations. HCV proteins can directly or indirectly contribute to altered functions of different immune cells (Rehermann 2013).

To what extent humoral immune responses against HCV contribute to spontaneous clearance of acute hepatitis C is less clear. Higher levels of neutralizing antibodies early during the infection are associated with viral clearance (Pestka 2007). Antibodies with neutralizing properties occur at high levels during chronic infection, although HCV constantly escapes these neutralizing antibodies (von Hahn 2007). Yet, no completely sterilizing humoral anti-HCV immunity exists in the long-term after recovery (Rehermann 2009). Attempts to use neutralizing antibodies to prevent HCV reinfection after liver transplant have not been successful even though onset of viremia may be delayed by administration of HCV antibodies (Gordon 2011, Chung 2013).

Few Phase I vaccine studies based either on vaccination with HCV peptides, HCV proteins alone or in combination with distinct adjuvants or recombinant viral vectors expressing HCV proteins have been completed (Torresi 2011). HCV-specific T cells or antibodies against HCV were induced by these vaccines in healthy individuals. Particular broad, rather strong and sustained CD4 and CD8+ T cell responses could be induced by a vaccine based on human and chimpanzee adenoviruses expressing non-structural HCV proteins (Barnes 2012) Studies in chimpanzees have shown that it is very unlikely that a vaccine will be completely protective against heterologous HCV infections. However, a reasonable approach might be the development of a vaccine that does not confer 100% protection against acute infection but prevents progression of acute hepatitis C to chronic infection. In any case, there are no vaccine programs that have reached Phase III yet (Halliday 2011). Therapeutic vaccination against hepatitis C has also been explored (Klade 2008, Wedemeyer 2009, Torresi 2011). These studies show that induction of HCV-specific humoral or cellular immune responses is possible even in chronically infected individuals. The first studies showed a modest antiviral efficacy of HCV vaccination in some patients (Sallberg 2009, Habersetzer 2011, Wedemeyer 2011). Therapeutic vaccination was also able to enhance responses to interferon α and ribavirin treatment (Pockros 2010, Wedemeyer 2011). Future studies will need to explore the potential role of HCV vaccines in combination with direct acting antivirals against hepatitis C.

Vaccination against hepatitis E

A Phase II vaccine trial performed in Nepal with 2000 soldiers showed a 95% efficacy for an HEV recombinant protein (Shrestha 2007). However, the development of this vaccine has been stopped. In September 2010, data from a very large Phase III trial were reported involving about 110,000 individuals in China

(Zhu 2010). The vaccine efficacy of HEV-239 was 100% after three doses to prevent cases of symptomatic acute hepatitis E. Further observation confirmed the ability of the vaccine to prevent clinical hepatitis. However, the induction of HEV antibodies does not induce sterilizing immunity and thus does not completely protect from HEV infection. Still, vaccination largely reduces infection rates with a RR of 0.15 during further follow-up of the Chinese vaccine trial (Huang 2014). Similarly, naturally acquired immunity against HEV does not provide complete protection (Huang 2014). It remains to be formally determined if the HEV genotype 1-derived vaccine also prevents against zoonotic HEV genotype 3, while the vaccine was effective in China against HEV genotype 4. One can therefore assume that the vaccine should induce pan-genotypic immunity. Moreover, vaccine efficacy in special risk groups such patients with end-stage liver disease, immunocompromised individuals or elderly persons is unknown. Finally, the duration of protection needs to be determined as antibody titers have been shown to decline after vaccination (Shrestha 2007, Zhu 2010, Wedemeyer 2011). To what extent cellular immunity against HEV is important in the context of HEV vaccination is also unknown but HEV-specific T cell response has been associated with the control of HEV infection (Suneetha 2012). It is currently unknown if and when the vaccine HEV-239 will become available in other countries. Until then, preventive hygienic measures remain the only option to avoid HEV infection.

References

Ascherio A, Zhang SM, Hernan MA, Olek MJ, Coplan PM, Brodovicz K, Walker AM. Hepatitis B vaccination and the risk of multiple sclerosis. N Engl J Med 2001;344:327-32. (Abstract)

Barnes E, Folgori A, Capone S, Swadling L, Aston S, Kurioka A, et al. Novel adenovirus-based vaccines induce broad and sustained T cell responses to HCV in man. Sci Transl Med. 2012;4:115ra1.

Bovier PA, Bock J, Ebengo TF, et al. Predicted 30-Year Protection After Vaccination With an Aluminum-Free Virosomal Hepatitis A Vaccine. Journal of Medical Virology 2010;82:1629-34. (Abstract)

Brouard C, Pradat P, Delarocque-Astagneau E, Silvain C. Epidemiological characteristics and medical follow-up of 61 patients with acute hepatitis C identified through the hepatitis C surveillance system in France. Epidemiol Infect 2008; 136: 988-96.

Centers for Disease Control (CDC). Investigation of hepatitis E outbreak among refugees – South Sudan 2012-2013. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep 2013;62:581-6.

Chang MH, Chen CJ, Lai MS, et al. Universal hepatitis B vaccination in Taiwan and the incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma in children. Taiwan Childhood Hepatoma Study Group. N Engl J Med 1997;336:1855-9. (Abstract)

Chung RT, Gordon FD, Curry MP, Schiano TD, Emre S, Corey K et al. Human Monoclonal Antibody MBL-HCV1 Delays HCV Viral Rebound Following Liver Transplantation: A Randomized Controlled Study. Am J Transplant. 2013 Jan 28

Ciesek S, Friesland M, Steinmann J, Becker B, Wedemeyer H, Manns MP, et al. How stable is the hepatitis C virus? Environmental stability of hepatitis C virus and its susceptibility towards chemical biocies. J Infect Dis. 2010; 201:1859-66.

Coates T, Wilson R, Patrick G, Andre F, Watson V. Hepatitis B vaccines: assessment of the seroprotective efficacy of two recombinant DNA vaccines. Clin Ther 2001;23: 392-403. (Abstract)

Confavreux C, Suissa S, Saddier P, Bourdes V, Vukusic S. Vaccinations and the risk of relapse in multiple sclerosis. Vaccines in Multiple Sclerosis Study Group. N Engl J Med 2001;344:319-26. (Abstract)

Corey K.E, Ross A.S, Wurcel A, Schulze Zur W.J, Kim A.Y, Lauer G.M, Chung R.T. Outcomes and treatment of acute hepatitis C virus infection in a United States population. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2006;4:1278-82. (Abstract)

Cornberg M Protzer U, Petersen J, et al. Prophylaxis, Diagnosis and Therapy of Hepatitis B Virus Infection - The German Guideline. Zeitschrift Fur Gastroenterologie 2011;49:871-930.

Deterding K, Tegtmeyer B, Cornberg M, et al. Hepatitis A virus infection suppresses hepatitis C virus replication and may lead to clearance of HCV. J Hepatol 2006;45:770-8. (Abstract)

Deterding K, Wiegand J, Gruner N, Wedemeyer H. Medical procedures as a risk factor for HCV infection in developed countries: Do we neglect a significant problem in medical care? J Hepatol 2008;48:1019-20. (Abstract)

Deterding K, Wiegand J, Gruner N, et al. The German Hep-Net acute hepatitis C cohort: impact of viral and host factors on the initial presentation of acute hepatitis C virus infection. Z Gastroenterol 2009;47:531-40. (Abstract)

Doerrbecker J, Behrendt P, Mateu-Gelabert P, Ciesek S, Riebesehl N, Wilhelm C, et al. Transmission of hepatitis C virus among people who inject drugs: viral stability and association with drug preparation equipment. J Infect Dis. 2013; 207:281-7.

EASL Clinical Practice Guidelines: Management of hepatitis C virus infection. J Hepatol 2011;55:245-64.

European Association For The Study Of The Liver (2008). EASL Clinical Practice Guidelines: Management of chronic hepatitis B. J Hepatol 2009. (Abstract)

European Paediatric Hepatitis C Virus Network. Effects of mode of delivery and infant feeding on the risk of mother-to-child transmission of hepatitis C virus. BJOG 2001;108:371-7. (Abstract)

European Paediatric Hepatitis C Virus Network. A significant sex--but not elective cesarean section--effect on mother-to-child transmission of hepatitis C virus infection. J Infect Dis 2005;192:1872-9. (Abstract)

FDA Pregnancy Exposure Registries. Science and Research. http://www.fda.gov/ScienceResearch/SpecialTopics/WomensHealthResearch/ucm132172.htm, accessed 13 Feb 2013.

Fox J, Nastouli E, Thomson E, Muir D, McClure M, Weber J, Fidler S. Increasing incidence of acute hepatitis C in individuals diagnosed with primary HIV in the United Kingdom. AIDS 2008;22:666-8. (Abstract)

Geier MR, Geier DA. Immunologic reactions and hepatitis B vaccine. Ann Intern Med 2001;134:1155. (Abstract)

Girard M. Autoimmune hazards of hepatitis B vaccine. Autoimmun Rev 2005;4:96-100. (Abstract)

Gordon FT, Chung RT, Curry MP, et al. Molrine Monoclonal Antibody MBL-HCV1 Suppresses Return of HCV Following Liver Transplantation. Hepatology 2011.

Habersetzer F, Honnet G, Bain C, et al. A Poxvirus Vaccine Is Safe, Induces T-Cell Responses, and Decreases Viral Load in Patients With Chronic Hepatitis C. Gastroenterology 2011;141:890-9. (Abstract)

Halliday J, Klenerman P, Barnes E. Vaccination for hepatitis C virus: closing in on an evasive target. Expert Review of Vaccines 2011;10:659-72. (Abstract)

Hammitt LL, Bulkow L, Hennessy TW, Zanis C, Snowball M, Williams JL, et al. Persistence of antibody to hepatitis A virus 10 years after vaccination among children and adults. J Infect Dis 2008;198:1776-82. (Abstract)

Han GR, Cao MK, Zhao W, et al. A prospective and open-label study for the efficacy and safety of telbivudine in pregnancy for the prevention of perinatal transmission of hepatitis B virus infection. J Hepatol 2011;55:1215-21. (Abstract)

Heller T, Werner JM, Rahman F, Mizukoshi E, Sobao Y, Gordon AM et al. Occupational exposure to hepatitis C virus: early T-cell responses in the absence of seroconversion in a longitudinal cohort study. J Infect Dis. 2013;208:1020-5.

Hendrickx G, Van Herck K, Vorsters A, et al. Has the time come to control hepatitis A globally? Matching prevention to the changing epidemiology. J Viral Hepat 2008;15 Suppl 2:1-15. (Abstract)

Hernan MA, Jick SS, Olek MJ, Jick H. Recombinant hepatitis B vaccine and the risk of multiple sclerosis: a prospective study. Neurology 2004;63:838-42. (Abstract)

Hollinger FB, Bell B, Levy-Bruhl D, Shouval D, Wiersma S, Van Damme P. Hepatitis A and B vaccination and public health. J Viral Hepat 2007;14 Suppl 1:1-5. (Abstract)
Honegger JR, Kim S, Price AA, Kohout JA, McKnight KL, Prasad MR, et al. Loss of immune escape mutations during persistent HCV infection in pregnancy enhances replication of vertically transmitted viruses. Nat Med. 2013;19:1529-33.
Huang SJ, Liu XH, Zhang J, Ng MN. Protective immunity against HEV. Current Opinion VIrol 2014; 5:1-6.
Kallinowski B, Jilg W, Buchholz L, Stremmel W, Engler S. Immunogenicity of an accelerated vaccination regime with a combined hepatitis a/b vaccine in patients with chronic hepatitis C. Z Gastroenterol 2003;41:983-90. (Abstract)
Keeffe EB, Iwarson S, McMahon BJ, et al. Safety and immunogenicity of hepatitis A vaccine in patients with chronic liver disease. Hepatology 1998;27:881-6. (Abstract)
Klade CS, Wedemeyer H, Berg T, et al. Therapeutic vaccination of chronic hepatitis C nonresponder patients with the peptide vaccine IC41. Gastroenterology 2008;134:1385-95. (Abstract)
Kubitschke A, Bader.C Tillmann, H. L Manns, M. P Kuhn, S, Wedemeyer H. Injury with HCV-contaminated needles: What is the true rate of serconversion? Internist (Berl) 2007; 48: 1165-72. (Abstract)
Lalazar G, Rund D, Shouval D. Screening, prevention and treatment of viral hepatitis B reactivation in patients with haematological malignancies. Br J Haematol 2007;136:699-712. (Abstract)
Loomba R, Rowley A, Wesley R, Liang TJ, et al. Systematic review: The effect of preventive lamivudine on hepatitis B reactivation during chemotherapy. Ann Intern Med 2008; 148:519-28. (Abstract)
Low E, Vogel M, Rockstroh J, Nelson M. Acute Hepatitis C in HIV-Positive Individuals. AIDS Rev 2008;10:245-53.
Martinez-Bauer E, Forns X, Armelles M, et al. Hospital admission is a relevant source of hepatitis C virus acquisition in Spain. J Hepatol 2008;48:20-7. (Abstract)
Monteyne P, Andre FE. Is there a causal link between hepatitis B vaccination and multiple sclerosis? Vaccine 2000;18:1994-2001. (Abstract)
Nothdurft H.D. Hepatitis A vaccines. Expert Rev Vaccines 2008;7:535-45. (Abstract)
Ott JJ, Irving G, WIersma ST. Long-term protective effects of hepatitis A vaccines: A systematic review. Vaccine 2012;31:3-11.
Park SH, Veerapu NS, Shin EC, Biancotto A, McCoy JP, Capone S, et al. Subinfectious hepatitis C virus exposures suppress T cell responses against subsequent acute infection. Nat Med. 2013;19:1638-42.
Pestka JM, Zeisel MB, Blaser E, et al. Rapid induction of virus-neutralizing antibodies and viral clearance in a single-source outbreak of hepatitis C. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2007;104:6025-30. (Abstract)
Petersen J. HBV treatment and pregnancy. J Hepatol 2011;55:1171-3. (Abstract)
Pfaender S, Heyden J, Friesland M, Ciesek S, Ejaz A, Steinmann J, et al. Inactivation of hepatitis C virus infectivity by human breast milk. J Infect Dis 2013;208:1943-52.
Pockros P, Jacobson I, Boyer TD, et al. Gi-5005 Therapeutic Vaccine Plus Peg-Ifn/Ribavirin Improves Sustained Virologic Response Versus Peg-Ifn/Ribavirin in Prior Non-Responders with Genotype 1 Chronic Hcv Infection. Hepatology 2010;52:404a-5a.
Ranger-Rogez S, Denis F. Hepatitis B mother--to--child transmission. Expert Rev Anti Infect Ther 2004;2:133-45. (Abstract)
Rehermann B. Hepatitis C virus versus innate and adaptive immune responses: a tale of coevolution and coexistence. Journal of Clinical Investigation 2009;119:1745-54. (Abstract)
Rehermann B. Pathogenesis of chronic viral hepatitis: different roles of T cells and NK cells. Nat Med 2013;19:859-68.
Rein DB, Weinbaum CM. The cost-effectiveness of using hepatitis A/B combined vaccine versus hepatitis B vaccine alone for high-risk heterosexuals. Vaccine 2008;26:5331-3. (Abstract)
Rowe IA, Parker R, Armstrong MJ, Houlihan DD, Mutimer DJ. Hepatitis A virus vaccination in persons with hepatitis C virus infection: consequences of quality measure implementation. Hepatology. 2012; 56:501-6.

Sadovnick AD, Scheifele DW. School-based hepatitis B vaccination programme and adolescent multiple sclerosis. Lancet 2000;355:549-50. (Abstract)
Sallberg MM, Frelin L, Diepolder H, et al. A First Clinical Trial of Therapeutic Vaccination Using Naked DNA Delivered by in Vivo Electroporation Shows Antiviral Effects in Patients with Chronic Hepatitis C. Journal of Hepatology 2009;50:S18-S19.
Santantonio T, Medda E, Ferrari C, et al. Risk factors and outcome among a large patient cohort with community-acquired acute hepatitis C in Italy. Clin Infect Dis 2006;43:1154-9. (Abstract)
Schaefer EA, Chung RT. The impact of human gene polymorphisms on HCV infection and disease outcome. Sem Liver Dis 2011; 31: 374-86.
Schattner A. Consequence or coincidence? The occurrence, pathogenesis and significance of autoimmune manifestations after viral vaccines. Vaccine 2005;23:3876-86. (Abstract)
Shrestha M.P, Scott R.M, Joshi D.M, et al. Safety and efficacy of a recombinant hepatitis E vaccine. N Engl J Med 2007;356:895-903. (Abstract)
Steinmann E, Ciesek S, Friesland M, Erichsen TJ, Pietschmann T. Prolonged survival of hepatitis C virus in the anesthetic propofol. Clin Infect Dis. 2011; 53:963-4.
Su FH, Chu FY, Bai CH, Lin YS, Hsueh YM, Sung FC, Yeh CC. Efficacy of hepatitis B vaccine boosters among neonatally vaccinated university freshmen in Taiwan. J Hepatol. 2013;58:684-9.
Suneetha PV, Pischke S, Schlaphoff V, Grabowski J, Fytili P, Gronert A, et al. Hepatitis E virus (HEV)-specific T-cell responses are associated with control of HEV infection. Hepatology. 2012;55:695-708.
Terrault NA, Dodge JL, Murphy EL, Tavis JE, Kiss A, Levin TR, et al. Sexual transmission of HCV among monogamous heterosexual couples: The HCV partners study. Hepatology 2013;57:881-9.
Torresi J, Johnson D, Wedemeyer H. Progress in the development of preventative and therapeutic vaccines for hepatitis C virus. J Hepatology 2011. (Abstract)
Tseng YT, Chang SY, Liu WC, Sun HY, Wu CH, Wu PY, et al. Comparative effectiveness of two doses versus three doses of hepatitis A vaccine in human immunodeficiency virus-infected and -uninfected men who have sex with men. Hepatology. 2013;57:1734-41.
Turner J.M, Rider A.T, Imrie J, Copas A.J, Edwards S.G, Dodds J.P, Stephenson J.M. Behavioural predictors of subsequent hepatitis C diagnosis in a UK clinic sample of HIV positive men who have sex with men. Sex Transm Infect 2006;82:298-300. (Abstract)
van de Laar T, Pybus O, Bruisten S, et al. Evidence of a large, international network of HCV transmission in HIV-positive men who have sex with men. Gastroenterology 2009;136:1609-17. (Abstract)
van der Sande MA, Waight PA, Mendy M, et al. Long-term protection against HBV chronic carriage of Gambian adolescents vaccinated in infancy and immune response in HBV booster trial in adolescence. PLoS ONE 2007;2: e753. (Abstract)
Van Herck K, Jacquet JM, Van Damme P. Antibody Persistence and Immune Memory in Healthy Adults Following Vaccination With a Two-Dose Inactivated Hepatitis A Vaccine: Long-Term Follow-Up at 15 Years. J Med Virol 2011;83:1885-91. (Abstract)
Vento S, Garofano T, Renzini C, Cainelli F, Casali F, Ghironzi G, et al. Fulminant hepatitis associated with hepatitis A virus superinfection in patients with chronic hepatitis C. N Engl J Med 1998;338:286-90. (Abstract)
Wedemeyer H, Cornberg M, Protzer U, Berg T, Dollinger MM. [German guidelines on diagnosis and therapy of hepatitis B]. Dtsch Med Wochenschr 2007;132:1775-82.
Wedemeyer H, Pethig K, Wagner D, et al. Long-term outcome of chronic hepatitis B in heart transplant recipients. Transplantation 1998;66:1347-53. (Abstract)
Wedemeyer H, Schuller E, Schlaphoff V, et al. Therapeutic vaccine IC41 as late add-on to standard treatment in patients with chronic hepatitis C. Vaccine 2009;27:5142-51. (Abstract)
Wedemeyer H, Janczewska-Kazek E, Mazur WW, et al. HCVac study: Antiviral activity of TG4040 therapeutic vaccine in genotype-1 chronic HCV patients. Hepatology 2011.
Wedemeyer H, Pischke S. Hepatitis: Hepatitis E vaccination--is HEV 239 the breakthrough? Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol 2011;8:8-10. (Abstract)

Wedemeyer H, Pischke S, Manns MP. Management of Hepatitis E. Gastroenterology Gastroenterology. 2012 May;142(6):1388-1397.e1

WHO, Revised WHO position paper on hepatitis B vaccine, Oct 2009, http://www.who.int/immunization/documents/positionpapers/en/index.html#hepb, accessed 2011. (Abstract)

Wiegand J, Cornberg M, Aslan N, et al. Fate and function of hepatitis-C-virus-specific T-cells during peginterferon-alpha 2b therapy for acute hepatitis C. Antivir Ther 2007;12:303-16. (Abstract)

Wichmann O, Schimanski S, Koch J, Kohler M, Rothe C, Plentz A, et al. Phylogenetic and case-control study on hepatitis E virus infection in Germany. J Infect Dis 2008;198:1732-41. (Abstract)

Wolters B, Junge U, Dziuba S, Roggendorf M. Immunogenicity of combined hepatitis A and B vaccine in elderly persons. Vaccine 2003;21:3623-28. (Abstract)

Zanetti AR, Mariano A, Romano L, et al. Long-term immunogenicity of hepatitis B vaccination and policy for booster: an Italian multicentre study. Lancet 2005;366:1379-84. (Abstract)

Zhang L, Yesupriya A, Hu DJ, Chang MH, Dowling NF, Ned RM, et al. Variants in ABCB1, TGFB1, and XRCC1 genes and susceptibility to viral hepatitis A infection in Mexican Americans. Hepatology. 2012;55:1008-18.

Zhu FC, Zhang J, Zhang XF, et al. Efficacy and safety of a recombinant hepatitis E vaccine in healthy adults: a large-scale, randomised, double-blind placebo-controlled, phase 3 trial. Lancet 2010;376:895-902. (Abstract)

Zuckerman J, van Hattum J, Cafferkey M, Gjorup I, Hoel T, Rummukainen M.L, Weiland O. Should hepatitis B vaccination be introduced into childhood immunisation programmes in northern Europe? Lancet Infect Dis 2007;7:410-19. (Abstract)

8. Hepatitis B: Diagnostic Tests

Jörg Petersen

Introduction

The diagnosis of hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection was initiated by the discovery of the Australia antigen (hepatitis B surface antigen, HBsAg). During the ensuing decades, serologic assays were established for HBsAg and other HBV antigens and antibodies. Advances in molecular biology techniques led to the development of polymerase chain reaction (PCR) assays for direct determination of hepatitis B virus DNA (HBV DNA).

Diagnosis of HBV infection tests for a series of serological markers of HBV and excludes alternative etiological agents such as hepatitis A, C, and D viruses. Serological tests are used to distinguish acute, self-limited infections from chronic HBV infections and to monitor vaccine-induced immunity. These tests are also performed to determine if the patient should be considered for antiviral therapy. Nucleic acid testing for HBV DNA is used as the standard to quantify HBV viral load and measures, together with HBV antigens and HBV antibodies, the effectiveness of therapeutic agents.

Other causes of chronic liver disease should be systematically looked for including coinfection with HCV, HDV or HIV. Cytomegalovirus, Epstein-Barr virus, enteroviruses, other hepatotoxic drugs, and even herbal medicines should be considered when appropriate. Moreover, comorbidities, including alcoholic, autoimmune and metabolic liver disease with steatosis or steatohepatitis should be assessed. Finally, vaccination status and previous test results should be used to guide appropriate testing.

Serological tests for HBV

Collection and transport

Serological tests for viral antigens can be performed on either serum or plasma (Yang 2002). The World Health Organization (WHO) has defined an international standard for normalisation of expression of HBV DNA concentrations (Quint 1990). Serum HBV DNA levels should be expressed in IU/ml to ensure comparability; the same assay should be used in the same patient to evaluate antiviral efficacy. Both

HBV antigens and antibodies are stable at room temperature for days, at 4°C for months, and frozen at -20°C to -70°C for many years. Because current testing involves automated enzyme immunoassays that depend on colorimetric or chemiluminescence signal measurement, care should be taken to avoid hemolysis of the sample because it may interfere with the ability of the assay to accurately detect these markers. Care must be taken to avoid the degradation of the viral nucleic acid in the specimen, which can result in falsely low or no measurable viral load. Serum should therefore be removed from clotted blood within 4 hours of collection and stored at -20°C to -70°C (Krayden 1998). Alternatively, the presence of EDTA in plasma is known to stabilize viral nucleic acids. EDTA blood can be stored for up to five days at 4°C without affecting the viral load. Polymerase chain reaction-based tests that are routinely used as standard can use either serum or plasma. In principle, the diagnosis of HBV infection can also be made by the detection of HBsAg or hepatitis B core antigen (HBcAg) in liver tissues by immunohistochemical staining and of HBV DNA by Southern hybridization or *in situ* hybridization.

Hepatitis B surface antigen and antibody

Hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg) is the serologic hallmark of HBV infection. The HBsAg level is a reflection of the transcriptional activity of the matrix of HBV infection, the covalently closed circular HBV DNA (ccc DNA). It is an important marker that not only indicates active hepatitis B infection but can also predict clinical and treatment outcomes. It can be detected by radioimmunoassays (RIA) or enzyme immunoassays (EIA). HBsAg appears in serum 1 to 10 weeks after acute exposure to HBV, prior to the onset of hepatitis and elevation of serum alanine aminotransferase. HBsAg usually becomes undetectable after four to six months in patients who recover from hepatitis B. Persistence of HBsAg for more than six months implies chronic infection. It is estimated that about 5 percent of immunocompetent adult patients with genuine acute hepatitis B progress to chronic infection (Chu 1989). Among patients with chronic HBV infection, the rate of clearance of HBsAg is approximately 0.5 to 1 percent per year (Liaw 1991). The disappearance of HBsAg is frequent, but not always followed by the appearance of hepatitis B surface antibody (anti-HBs). In most patients, anti-HBs persists for decades, thereby conferring long-term immunity. The coexistence of HBsAg and anti-HBs has been reported in HBsAg positive individuals (Tsang 1986, Dufour 2000). In most instances, the antibodies are unable to neutralize the circulating virions. These individuals should therefore be regarded as carriers of the hepatitis B virus.

In recent years the quantification of HBsAg levels (qHBsAg) has become more important. Assays for qHBsAg are fully automated and have high output. qHBsAg titres are higher in HBeAg(+) than in HBeAg(-) patients and are negatively correlated with liver fibrosis in HBeAg(+) patients. In HBeAg(-) chronic hepatitis B, an HBsAg level <1000 IU/ml and an HBV DNA titre <2000 IU/ml accurately identify inactive carriers (Brunetto 2010). During PEG-IFN treatment, HBsAg quantification is used as an on-treatment stopping rule to identify patients who will not benefit from therapy, and treatment may be stopped or switched at week 12 (EASL 2012). In contrast, in patients with nucleos(t)ide therapy the measurement of qHBsAg levels over time have not yielded definite answers yet in helping to

distinguish patients that will clinically resolve chronic hepatitis B infection with HBsAg loss or seroconversion. In clinical practice, HBsAg quantification is a simple and reproducible tool that can be used in association with HBV DNA to classify patients during the natural history of HBV and to monitor therapy (Martinot-Peignoux 2013).

Hepatitis B core antigen and antibody

Hepatitis B core antigen (HBcAg) is an intracellular antigen that is expressed in infected hepatocytes. It is not detectable in serum. Anti-HBc can be detected throughout the course of HBV infection in the serum.

During acute infection, anti-HBc is predominantly class IgM, which is an important marker of HBV infection during the window period between the disappearance of HBsAg and the appearance of anti-HBs. IgM anti-HBc may remain detectable for up to two years after acute infection. Furthermore, the titer of IgM anti-HBc may increase to detectable levels during exacerbations of chronic hepatitis B (Maruyama 1994). This can present a diagnostic problem, incorrectly suggesting acute hepatitis B. Other common causes of acute exacerbation of chronic hepatitis B are superinfection with hepatitis D virus (delta virus) or hepatitis C virus. IgG anti-HBc persists along with anti-HBs in patients who recover from acute hepatitis B. It also persists in association with HBsAg in those who progress to chronic HBV infection.

Isolated detection of anti-HBc can occur in three settings: during the window period of acute hepatitis B when the anti-HBc is predominantly IgM; many years after recovery from acute hepatitis B when anti-HBs has fallen to undetectable levels; and after many years of chronic HBV infection when the HBsAg titer has decreased to below the level of detection. HBV DNA can be detected in the liver of most persons with isolated anti-HBc. Transmission of HBV infection has been reported from blood and organ donors with isolated anti-HBc. There are, in a small percentage of cases, false-positive isolated anti-HBc test results.

The evaluation of individuals with isolated anti-HBc should include repeat testing for anti-HBc, HBsAg, anti-HBe, and anti-HBs. Those who remain isolated anti-HBc positive should be tested for the presence of IgM anti-HBc to rule out recent HBV infection. Individuals with evidence of chronic liver disease should be tested for HBV DNA to exclude low-level chronic HBV infection.

Hepatitis B e antigen and antibody

Hepatitis B e antigen (HBeAg) is a secretory protein processed from the precore protein. It is generally considered to be a marker of HBV replication and infectivity. HBeAg to anti-HBe seroconversion occurs early in patients with acute infection, prior to HBsAg to anti-HBs seroconversion. However, HBeAg seroconversion may be delayed for years to decades in patients with chronic HBV infection. In such patients, the presence of HBeAg is usually associated with the detection of high levels of HBV DNA in serum and active liver disease and is associated with higher rates of transmission of HBV infection. However, HBeAg-positive patients with perinatally acquired HBV infection may have normal serum ALT concentrations and minimal inflammation in the liver (Chang 1988).

Seroconversion from HBeAg to anti-HBe is usually associated with a decrease in serum HBV DNA and remission of liver disease. However, some patients continue to have active liver disease after HBeAg seroconversion. Such individuals may have low levels of wild type HBV or HBV variants with a stop codon in the precore or dual nucleotide substitutions in the core promoter region that prevent or decrease the production of HBeAg (Carman 1989).

Serum HBV DNA assays

Qualitative and quantitative tests for HBV DNA in serum have been developed to assess HBV replication. Currently, most HBV DNA assays use real-time PCR techniques, report results in IU/mL, have a lower limit of detection of around 5-20 IU/mL and a range of linearity of up to 8 $\log_{10}$ IU/mL.

Recovery from acute hepatitis B is usually accompanied by the disappearance of HBV DNA in serum. However, HBV DNA may remain detectable in serum for many years if tested by PCR assays (Cornberg 2011) suggesting that the virus persists but is controlled by the immune system.

In patients with spontaneous or treatment-induced HBeAg seroconversion in chronic hepatitis B, PCR assays usually remain positive except in patients with HBsAg seroconversion. By contrast, most patients who develop HBeAg seroconversion during nucleos(t)ide analog therapy have undetectable serum HBV DNA. In fact, many patients receiving nucleos(t)ide analog therapy remain HBeAg-positive despite having undetectable serum HBV DNA for months or years. The explanation for this phenomenon is unclear but is likely related to the lack of direct effect of nucleos(t)ide analogs on ccc DNA and viral RNA transcription and viral protein expression.

HBV DNA levels are also detectable in patients with HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis, although levels are generally lower than in patients with HBeAg-positive chronic hepatitis. Because of the fluctuations in HBV DNA levels there is no absolute cutoff level that is reliable for differentiating patients in the inactive carrier state from those with HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B (Chu 2002).

HBV genotypes

HBV can be classified into eight genotypes and four major serotypes. There have been reports about differing therapeutic responses with nucleos(t)ide analogs and interferon α with respect to different genotypes. Furthermore, some genotypes, such as B and C, may have a greater risk for the development of hepatocellular carcinomas. Nevertheless, in the clinical setting in contrast to hepatitis C, the diagnosis of HBV genotypes is not part of the clinical routine (Thursz 2011).

Antiviral resistance testing

Drug-resistant hepatitis B virus (HBV) mutants frequently arise, leading sometimes to treatment failure and progression to liver disease. There has been much research time invested into the mechanisms of resistance to nucleos(t)ides and the selection of mutants. The genes that encode the polymerase and envelope proteins of HBV overlap, so resistance mutations in the polymerase usually affect the hepatitis B surface antigen; these alterations affect infectivity, vaccine efficacy, pathogenesis of

liver disease, and transmission throughout the population (see Chapter 2). Associations between HBV genotype and resistance phenotype have allowed cross-resistance profiles to be determined for many commonly detected mutants, so genotyping assays can be used to adapt therapy. *In vitro* phenotyping procedures are established in a rather small number of HBV laboratories and are not commercially available. Known mutations can be detected by commercially available tests with a threshold of about 5% (line probe assays, Inno-Lipa®) whereas determination of novel mutations remains for research-oriented labs with full-length sequencing methods. Novel ultra-deep pyrosequencing techniques are much more sensitive and can detect many more viral variants but are a tool only for specialised research laboratories and not part of clinical routine (Zoulim 2009, Margeridon-Thermet 2009).

Assessment of liver disease

As a first step, the causal relationship between HBV infection and liver disease has to be established and an assessment of the severity of liver disease needs to be performed. Not all patients with chronic hepatitis B virus infection have persistently elevated aminotransferases. Patients in the immune-tolerant phase have persistently normal ALT levels and a proportion of patients with HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B may have intermittently normal ALT levels. Therefore appropriate, longitudinal long-term follow-up is crucial.

The assessment of the severity of liver disease should include: biochemical markers, including aspartate aminotransferase (AST) and ALT, gammaglutamyl transpeptidase (GGT), alkaline phosphatase, prothrombin time and serum albumin, blood counts, and hepatic ultrasound. Usually, ALT levels are higher than AST. However, when the disease progresses to cirrhosis, the ratio may be reversed. A progressive decline in serum albumin concentrations and prolongation of the prothrombin time, often accompanied by a drop in platelet counts, are characteristically observed once cirrhosis has developed (EASL 2012).

Acute HBV infection

The diagnosis of acute hepatitis B is based upon the detection of HBsAg and IgM anti-HBc. During the initial phase of infection, markers of HBV replication, HBeAg and HBV DNA, are also present. Recovery is accompanied by the disappearance of HBV DNA, HBeAg to anti-HBe seroconversion, and subsequently HBsAg loss or seroconversion to anti-HBs..

The differential diagnosis of HBsAg-positive acute hepatitis includes acute hepatitis B, exacerbations of chronic hepatitis B, reactivation of chronic hepatitis B, superinfection of a hepatitis B carrier with hepatitis C or D virus (Tassopoulos 1987), and acute hepatitis due to drugs or other toxins in a hepatitis B carrier.

Past HBV infection

Previous HBV infection is characterized by the presence of anti-HBs and/or IgG anti-HBc. Immunity to HBV infection after vaccination is indicated by the presence of anti-HBs only.

HBsAg
- If negative, acute HBV infection is ruled out (Dufour 2000).
- If positive, the patient is infected with HBV. A repeat test six months later will determine if the infection has resolved or is chronic.

Anti-HBs
- If negative, the patient has no apparent immunity to HBV.
- If positive, the patient is considered immune to HBV (either because of resolved infection or vaccination).

Anti-HBc IgM

In rare cases, anti-HBc immunoglobulin M (IgM) may be the only HBV marker detected during the early convalescence or 'window period' when the HBsAg and anti-HBs tests are negative. Because current tests for HBsAg are very sensitive, an anti-HBc IgM that is typically positive with acute HBV infection is not generally required to diagnose active infection. Because some chronic HBV carriers remain anti-HBc IgM-positive for years, epidemiological information is necessary to confirm that the infection is indeed acute. A negative anti-HBc IgM in the presence of a positive HBsAg suggests that the infection is likely chronic. For these reasons, routine testing for anti-HBc IgM is not generally recommended to screen for acutely infected patients.

Chronic HBV infection

Chronic HBV infection is defined by the continued presence of HBsAg in the blood for longer than six months. Additional tests for HBV replication, HBeAg and serum HBV DNA, should be performed to determine if the patient should be considered for antiviral therapy. All patients with chronic HBV infection should be regularly monitored for progression of liver disease because HBV DNA and ALT levels vary during the course of infection. In addition, patients who are not candidates for treatment at the time of presentation may become candidates for treatment during follow-up.

HBeAg-negative patients who have normal serum ALT and low (<2000 IU/mL) or undetectable HBV DNA are considered to be in an inactive carrier state. These patients generally have a good prognosis and antiviral treatment is not indicated. However, serial tests are necessary to accurately differentiate them from patients with HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis who have fluctuating ALT and/or HBV DNA levels (Lok 2007). Patients who are truly inactive carriers should continue to be monitored but at less frequent intervals. HBeAg-negative patients with elevated serum ALT concentrations should be tested for serum HBV DNA to determine if the liver disease is related to persistent HBV replication.

HBsAg
- If negative, chronic HBV infection is typically ruled out.
- If positive, the patient is considered HBV-infected. Chronic infection is diagnosed when the HBsAg remains detectable for more than six months.

Antibody to hepatitis B core protein
- If negative, past infection with HBV is typically ruled out.
- If positive, the patient has been infected with HBV. Infection may be resolved (HBsAg-negative) or ongoing (HBsAg-positive). If the infection is resolved, the person is considered naturally immune to HBV infection.

Antibody to hepatitis B surface protein
- If negative, the patient has no apparent immunity to HBV.
- If positive, the patient is considered immune to HBV (either because of resolved infection or as the result of prior vaccination). Very rarely (less than 1%) chronic carriers can be positive for HBsAg and antibody to hepatitis B surface protein (anti-HBs) at the same time (Tsang 1986, Dufour 2000). In such cases, the patient is considered infectious.

Serum transaminases

Once an individual has been diagnosed with chronic HBV infection, follow-up testing must be performed for alanine aminotransferase (ALT), a marker of liver cell inflammation. Repeat periodic testing is indicated because the ALT levels can fluctuate (eg, from less than the upper limit of normal to intermittently or consistently elevated). Sustained and intermittent elevations in ALT beyond the upper limit of normal are indicative of hepatic inflammation and correlate with an increased risk of progressive liver disease. It must be noted that the normal ALT ranges are both age and sex dependent and, occasionally, individuals with severe liver disease may not manifest elevated ALT (Cornberg 2011, EASL 2012).

Occult HBV infection

This is defined as the presence of detectable HBV DNA by PCR in patients who are negative for HBsAg. Most of these patients have very low or undetectable serum HBV DNA levels accounting for the failure to detect HBsAg. Infections with HBV variants that decrease HBsAg production or have mutations in the S gene with altered S epitopes evading detection in serology assays for HBsAg are uncommon. HBV DNA is often detected in the liver and transplantation of livers from these persons can result in *de novo* HBV infection (Margeridon-Thermet 2009).

Assessment of HBV immunity

Immunity to HBV is acquired from a resolved infection or from vaccination. The HBV vaccine has been shown to induce protective immunity in 90% to 95% of vaccinees. Most vaccinees will have protective levels of anti-HBs for 5-10 years after vaccination, although the exact duration of immunity remains undefined.

Anti-HBs
- If the anti-HBs level is less than 10 mIU/mL, this implies that the person is not immune to HBV. In individuals who have received a complete course of HBV vaccine, the level of anti-HBs may drop to less than 10 mIU/mL after five to 10 years, but these individuals might still be considered to be immune, based on their vaccination history (Maruyama 1994). In clinical practice, these individuals should receive a booster vaccination.

– If the anti-HBs result is greater than 10 mIU/mL, the person is considered to be immune. Immunity may be due to immunization or resolved natural infection. These two states can be distinguished by testing for antibody to hepatitis B core protein (anti-HBc), which is present in subjects that have had HBV infection but absent in vaccinees (see below).

Anti-HBc

– If the anti-HBc total test is positive, this is compatible with current or resolved HBV infection. A negative HBsAg confirms a resolved infection. HBV vaccination does not induce anti-HBc.

Liver biopsy and noninvasive liver transient elastography

A liver biopsy is still the standard procedure for determining the degree of necroinflammation and fibrosis since hepatic morphology can assist the decision to start treatment. Biopsy is also useful for evaluating other possible causes of liver disease such as fatty liver disease. Although liver biopsy is an invasive procedure, the risk of severe complications is low. It is important that the size of the needle biopsy specimen be large enough to accurately assess the degree of liver injury and fibrosis. A liver biopsy is usually not required in patients with clinical evidence of cirrhosis or in those in whom treatment is indicated irrespective of the grade of activity or the stage of fibrosis.

There is growing interest in the use of noninvasive methods, including serum markers and transient elastography, to assess hepatic fibrosis to complement or avoid a liver biopsy. Transient elastography offers high diagnostic accuracy for the detection of cirrhosis, although the results may be confounded by severe inflammation associated with high ALT levels and the optimal cut-off of liver stiffness measurements varies among studies (Cornberg 2011, EASL 2012, see also Chapter 19).

References

Brunetto MR, Oliveri F, Colombatto P, et al. Hepatitis B surface antigen serum levels help to distinguish active from inactive hepatitis B virus genotype D carriers. Gastroenterology 2010;139:483-90. (Abstract)

Carman WF, Jacyna MR, Hadziyannis S, et al. Mutation preventing formation of hepatitis B e antigen in patients with chronic hepatitis B infection. Lancet 1989;2:588. (Abstract)

Chang MH, Hwang LY, Hsu HC, et al. Prospective study of asymptomatic HBsAg carrier children infected in the perinatal period: clinical and liver histologic studies. Hepatology 1988;8:374. (Abstract)

Chu CJ, Hussain M, Lok AS. Quantitative serum HBV DNA levels during different stages of chronic hepatitis B infection. Hepatology 2002;36:1408. (Abstract)

Chu CM, Liaw YF, Pao CC, Huang MJ. The etiology of acute hepatitissuperimposed upon previously unrecognized asymptomatic HBsAg carriers. Hepatology 1989;9:452. (Abstract)

Cornberg, M, Protzer U, Petersen J, et al. Aktualisierung der S3 Leitliniezur Prophylaxe, Diagnostik und Therapie der Hepatitis-B-Virusinfektion. Z Gastroenterol 2011;49:871-930.

Dufour DR, Lott JA, Nolte FS, Gretch DR, Koff RS, Seeff LB. Diagnosis and monitoring of hepatic injury. I. Performance characteristics of laboratory tests. Clin Chem 2000;46:2027-49. (Abstract)

EASL Clinical Practice Guidelines: Management of chronic Hepatitis B. J Hepatology 2012;57:167-85.

Hepatitis B virus resistance to nucleos(t)ide analogues. Zoulim F, Locarnini S. Gastroenterology 2009;137:1593-608. (Abstract)
Krajden M, Comanor L, Rifkin O, Grigoriew A, Minor JM, Kapke GF. Assessment of hepatitis B virus DNA stability in serum . J Clin Microbiol 1998;36:382-6.
Liaw YF, Sheen IS, Chen TJ, et al. Incidence, determinants and significance of delayed clearance of serum HBsAg in chronic hepatitis B virus infection: a prospective study. Hepatology 1991;13:627. (Abstract)
Lok AS, McMahon BJ. Chronic hepatitis B. Hepatology 2007;45:507. (Abstract)
Margeridon-Thermet S, Shulman NS, Ahmed A, et al. Ultra-deep pyrosequencing of hepatitis B virus quasispecies from nucleoside and nucleotide reverse-transcriptase inhibitor (NRTI)-treated patients and NRTI-naive patients. J Infect Dis 2009;199:1275-85. (Abstract)
Martinot-Peignoux M, Lapalus M, Asselah T, Marcellin P. The role of HBsAg quantification for monitoring natural history and treatment outcome. Liver Int. 2013 Feb;33 Suppl 1:125-32. doi: 10.1111/liv.12075. (Review)
Maruyama T, Schödel F, Iino S, et al. Distinguishing between acute and symptomatic chronic hepatitis B virus infection. Gastroenterology 1994;106:1006. (Abstract)
Quint WG, de Bruijn I, Kruining H, Heijtink RA. HBV-DNA detection by gene amplification in acute hepatitis B. Hepatology 1990;12:653-6. (Abstract)
Raimondo G, Allain JP, Brunetto MR, et al. Statements from the Taormina expert meeting on occult hepatitis B virus infection. J Hepatol 2008;49:652. (Abstract)
Tassopoulos NC, Papaevangelou GJ, Sjogren MH, et al. Natural history of acute hepatitis B surface antigen-positive hepatitis in Greek adults. Gastroenterology 1987;92:1844. (Abstract)
Thursz M, Yee L, Khakoo S Understanding the host genetics of chronic hepatitis B and C. Semin Liver Dis 2011;31:115-127. (Abstract)
Tsang TK, Blei AT, O'Reilly DJ, Decker R. Clinical significance of concurrent hepatitis B surface antigen and antibody positivity. Dig Dis Sci 1986;31:620. (Abstract)
Yang HI, Lu SN, Liaw YF, et al. Hepatitis B e antigen and the risk of hepatocellular carcinoma. N Engl J Med 2002;347:168-74. (Abstract)

9. Hepatitis B Treatment

Florian van Bömmel, Johannes Wiegand, Thomas Berg

Introduction

Individuals with HBV infection carry a significantly increased risk of life-threatening complications such as hepatic decompensation, liver cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) (Beasley 1988). Long term observational studies of the natural history of HBV infections have shown that the level of serum HBV DNA correlates higher with the risk of developing cirrhosis and HCC as compared to other baseline or virologic parameters (Chen 2006, Iloeje 2006) (Figure 1). Thus, suppressing the replication of HBV to undetectable levels has become the major goal in HBV treatment (Liaw 2008, Lok 2009, EASL 2012, Cornberg 2011). Moreover, it has now become clear that continuous suppression of HBV replication can revert liver fibrosis or even cirrhosis in most patients (Marcellin 2011, Schiff 2011). HBeAg seroconversion is another endpoint, provided that HBV replication remains durably suppressed to low levels. The ultimate treatment goal, however, the loss of HBsAg or HBsAg seroconversion, remains difficult to achieve. The level of hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg) before and during interferon-based treatment is becoming a marker for response to interferon based treatment and may also become important for estimating the risk of HCC development in patients with low serum HBV DNA.

Two drug classes are available for the treatment of chronic HBV infection: the immune modulator interferon α (standard or pegylated (PEG)-INF α) as well as nucleoside or nucleotide analogs, which act as reverse transcriptase inhibitors of the HBV polymerase. Currently, the nucleoside analogs lamivudine (LAM), telbivudine (LdT), entecavir (ETV) and the acyclic nucleotide analogs adefovir dipivoxil (ADV) and tenofovir disoproxil fumarate (TDF) are available. Due to this broad spectrum of therapeutic options disease progression and complications can be prevented if the infection is diagnosed early and treated effectively. The early diagnosis of chronic hepatitis B by HBsAg screening in high-risk groups and in patients with elevated transaminases plays a crucial role in the management of HBV infection.

Indication for antiviral therapy

Acute hepatitis B

Acute hepatitis resolves spontaneously in 95-99% of cases (McMahon 1985, Liaw 2009). Therefore, treatment with the currently available drugs is generally not indicated. However, in a recent trial comparing treatment with LAM 100 mg/day versus no treatment in 80 Chinese patients with fulminant hepatitis B, a reduced mortality of 7.5% was found in patients receiving LAM treatment compared to 25% in the control group (p=0.03) (Yu 2010). These observations are supported by a placebo-controlled trial investigating the use of LAM in 71 patients with fulminant hepatitis B in India (Kumar 2007). Several case reports from Europe also revealed that patients with severe and fulminate hepatitis B may benefit from early antiviral therapy with LAM or other nucleos(t)ide analogs by reducing the need for high-urgency liver transplantation (Tillmann 2006). As a result, treatment for fulminant hepatitis B with LAM is recommended by EASL and with LAM or LdT by AASLD (EASL 2012, Lok 2009). Interferon therapy is contraindicated in patients with acute HBV infection because on the one hand no benefit for the patients could be demonstrated and on the other hand because of the risk of increasing the inflammatory activity of the hepatitis (Tassopoulos 1997). The endpoint of treatment of acute HBV infections is HBsAg clearance (EASL 2012, Cornberg 2011, Lok 2009).

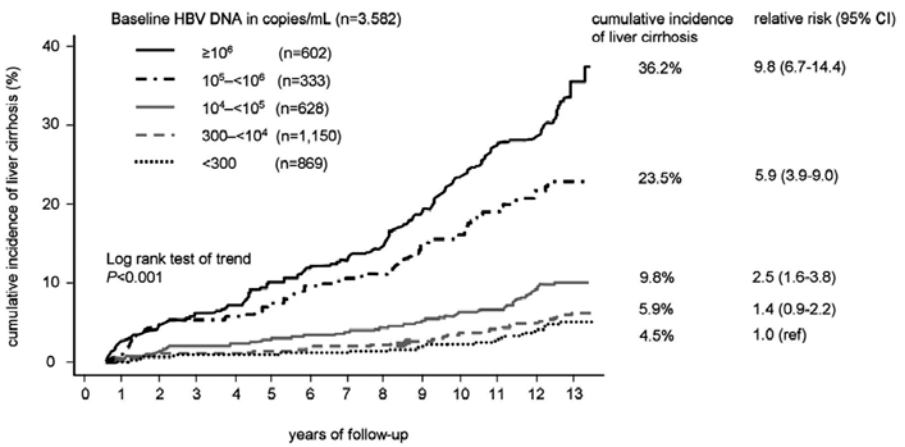


Figure 1. Cumulative incidence of liver cirrhosis in untreated HBV-infected individuals within a mean observation period of 11.4 years (REVEAL Study). The incidence of liver cirrhosis increases over time depending on baseline HBV DNA levels (Iloeje 2006). The relative risk for developing HCC was 1.4 in patients with HBV DNA levels of 300 to 1,000 and increased to 2.4 in patients with 1,000-10,000 to 5.4 in patients with 10,000 to 100,000 and to 6.7 in patients with HBV DNA levels >1 million copies/ml. A similar association between HBV DNA levels and the risk of HCC development was shown (Chen 2006)

Table 1. Key guideline recommendations for indication for antiviral treatment of HBV infection

AASLD (Lok 2007, Lok 2009)	Consider treatment: • HBeAg(+): HBV DNA >20,000 IU/mL + ALT ≤2x ULN + biopsy shows moderate/severe inflammation or significant fibrosis • HBeAg(+): HBV DNA >20,000 IU/mL + ALT >2x ULN. Observe for 3-6 months and treat if no spontaneous HBeAg loss • HBeAg(-): HBV DNA >20,000 IU/mL + ALT >2x ULN Consider biopsy: • HBeAg(+): HBV DNA >20,000 IU/mL + ALT >2x ULN + compensated • HBeAg(+): HBV DNA >20,000 IU/mL + ALT 1-2x ULN + age >40 years or family history of HCC • HBeAg(-): HBV DNA >2000-20,000 IU/mL + ALT 1-2x ULN
APASL (Liaw 2012)	Consider treatment: • All patients: HBV DNA detectable + advanced fibrosis/cirrhosis • HBeAg(+): HBV DNA >20,000 IU/mL + ALT >2x ULN + impending/ overt decompensation • HBeAg(-): HBV DNA >2,000 + ALT >2x ULN + impending/ overt decompensation
EASL (EASL 2012)	Consider treatment: • HBV DNA >2000 IU/mL + moderate to severe necroinflammation and/or ALT > ULN • HBV DNA >20,000 IU/mL, ALT >2x ULN without liver histology
Belgian (Colle 2007)	Consider treatment: • HBeAg(+): HBV DNA >20,000 IU/mL + ALT >2x ULN (or moderate/severe hepatitis on biopsy) • HBeAg(-): HBV DNA ≥2,000 IU/mL and elevated ALT Consider biopsy: • Fluctuating or minimally elevated ALT (especially in those older than 35-40 years)
Dutch (Buster 2008)	Consider treatment: • HBeAg(+) and HBeAg(-): HBV DNA ≥20,000 IU/mL and ALT ≥2x ULN or active necrotic inflammation • HBeAg(-): HBV DNA ≥2000–20,000 IU/mL and ALT ≥2x ULN (and absence of any other cause of hepatitis)
German (Cornberg 2011)	Consider treatment: • HBV DNA >2000 IU/mL + minimal inflammation/low fibrosis or ALT elevation
Italian (Carosi 2011)	Consider treatment: • HBeAg(+): HBV DNA >20,000 IU/mL + ALT > ULN and/or METAVIR ≥ F2 or Ishak ≥ S3 • HBeAg(-): HBV DNA >2000 IU/mL + ALT > ULN and/or METAVIR ≥ F2 or Ishak ≥ S3 Consider biopsy: • when fibrosis is suspected by non-invasive evaluation
Turkish TASL (Akarca 2008)	Consider treatment: • HBV DNA >2000 IU/mL + histological fibrosis >2 • HBV DNA >20,000 IU/mL + any histological finding + ALT >2x ULN
Korean (KASL 2012)	Consider treatment: • HBeAg(+): HBV DNA >20,000 IU/mL + ALT >2x ULN or ALT 1-2x ULN and moderate-to-severe degree of inflammation or periportal fibrosis • HBeAg(-): HBV DNA >2000 IU/mL + ALT >2x ULN or ALT 1-2x ULN and moderate-to-severe degree of inflammation or periportal fibrosis

Chronic hepatitis B

All patients with HBsAg positive chronic hepatitis should be considered as possible candidates for antiviral therapy especially in situations when there is a significant level of HBV replication (Chen 2006, Iloeje 2006). The decision whether to initiate treatment should be made on the criteria 1) serum HBV DNA levels, 2) ALT elevation and 3) severity of the liver disease (Lok 2009, Liaw 2012, Cornberg 2011, EASL 2012). Differentiation between HBeAg-positive and HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B is not necessary anymore for treatment indication, although with respect to the choice of the appropriate antiviral drug (reverse transcriptase inhibitors *vs.* interferon) these criteria may be still useful.

Current recommendations of the different national and international societies are shown in Table 1 (Akarca 2008, Carosi 2011, Colle 2007, Cornberg 2011, EASL 2012, Liaw 2008, Buster 2008, Lok 2009, KASL 2012). In most of these guidelines, the most relevant factor for a decision to initiate treatment has shifted from histological proven disease activity to the level of HBV DNA. Thus, most guidelines now recommend antiviral treatment for patients with HBV DNA levels >2,000 IU/mL (corresponding to >10,000 copies/mL) in association with a sign of ongoing hepatitis which can either be elevated ALT levels or liver fibrosis demonstrated by liver histology greater than A1/F1.

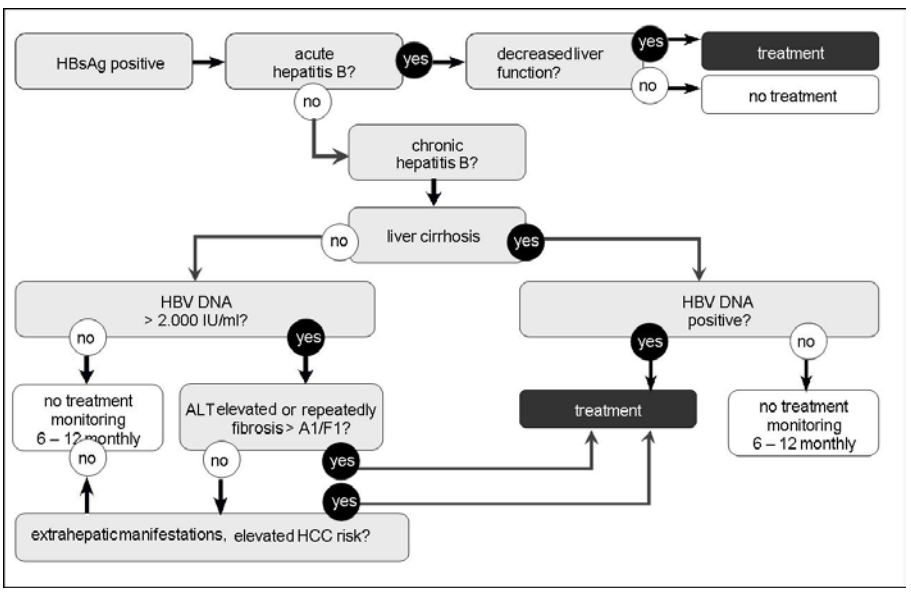


Figure 2. Indication for antiviral treatment according to the German guidelines for the treatment of chronic HBV infection. Treatment should be considered if HBV DNA levels exceed 10^4 copies/ml and if ALT are elevated or if liver histology is abnormal. Of note, all patients with liver cirrhosis and asymptomatic carriers with family history of HCC should receive treatment even if signs of hepatitis are absent (Cornberg 2011)

All patients with liver cirrhosis or high-grade liver fibrosis and any measurable HBV DNA should be considered for antiviral therapy (KASL 2012, APASL 2012,

EASL 2012, Lok 2007, Cornberg 2011). The indication for antiviral treatment according to the recent German guidelines is depicted in Figure 2 (Cornberg 2011). In patients with decompensated cirrhosis Child-Pugh score B or C, INF α is contraindicated.

Inactive chronic HBsAg carriers, characterised by negative HBeAg and positive anti-HBeAg, low HBV DNA levels (<2,000 IU/ml) and serum aminotransferases within normal levels do not have an indication for antiviral therapy (Cornberg 2011, Brunettto 2011). However, differentiation between inactive HBsAg carriers and patients with chronic HBeAg-negative hepatitis may be difficult in some cases. Elevated transaminases are no reliable parameter for assessing the stage of liver fibrosis and long-term prognosis of HBV-infected patients. Even in patients with normal or slightly elevated aminotransferases there can be a significant risk for the development of HBV-associated complications (Chen 2006, Iloeje 2006, Kumar 2008). HBsAg levels may be helpful to predict reactivation of HBV replication and inflammatory activity (Martinot-Peignoux 2013). It is reasonable to perform a liver biopsy in these individuals and to control the levels of HBV DNA and ALT at three-month intervals. However, a liver biopsy is not mandatory to initiate treatment for the majority of patients (Table 1).

HBV immunotolerant patients are mostly under 30 years old and can be recognised by their high HBV DNA levels, positive HBeAg, normal ALT levels and minimal or absence of significant histological changes. According to most practice guidelines immediate therapy is not required (Akarca 2007, Balik 2008, Carosi 2008, Colle 2007, Cornberg 2011, EASL 2012, Buster 2008, Juszczyk 2008, Keeffe 2007, Liaw 2008, Lok 2009, Waked 2008, KASL 2012). However, patients with elevated risk for HCC development, such as those with a positive family history, and patients from high endemic areas like Asia or Africa may perhaps benefit from early antiviral therapy (Cornberg 2011). A treatment with either TDF or a combination of TDF plus emtricitabine was recently shown to be effective in suppressing HBV replication in in Asian immunetolerant patients with high-level viremia (Chan 2014). However, the HBeAg loss rates were low at 2-6% after 195 weeks of treatment. Studies are under way to further clarify this issue, especially to answer the question whether early intervention with antiviral therapy will positively influence the long-term risk for HCC.

Summary of treatment indications in the German Guidelines of 2011

- All patients with chronic hepatitis B should be evaluated for treatment. Indication for treatment initiation depends on the level of viral replication (HBV DNA ≥2000 IU/mL, corresponding to ml ≥10,000 copies/mL), any elevation of serum aminotransferases and the histological grading and staging.
- Patients with advanced fibrosis or cirrhosis and detectable viremia need consistent antiviral therapy.
- Reactivation of HBV replication due to immunosuppression should be avoided by preventive therapy.
- Alcohol and drug consumption are not a contraindication for treatment with nucleos(t)ide analogs.

- Therapy with nucleos(t)ide analogs during pregnancy may be considered if the benefit outweighs the risk. A running treatment with LAM or TDF can be continued during pregnancy.
- Occupational and social aspects and extrahepatic complications may justify therapy in individual cases.

Endpoints of antiviral treatment

Due to persistence of episomal covalently closed circular DNA (cccDNA), a template of the HBV genome located in the nucleus of infected hepatocytes, a complete eradication of HBV infection is currently impossible (Rehermann 1996). Reactivation of an HBV infection can occur in certain circumstances from these nuclear reservoirs even decades after HBsAg loss, for instance during immunosuppressive therapy. The aim of treatment of chronic hepatitis B is to reduce complications such as liver failure and HCC and to increase survival (EASL 2012, Lok 2009, Cornberg 2011, Liaw 2012, APASL 2012, KASL 2013). To determine the success of antiviral therapy surrogate markers are used during and after treatment. These parameters include virologic (HBeAg and HBsAg serological status, HBsAg levels, HBV DNA level) and patient-related parameters (aminotransferases, liver histology).

Suppression of HBV replication. In two recent studies a close correlation between baseline HBV DNA levels and progression of the disease was demonstrated. In the REVEAL study, 3774 untreated HBV-infected individuals were followed over a mean time period of 11.4 years in Taiwan (Chen 2006, Iloeje 2006). HBV DNA levels at baseline were the strongest predictors of cirrhosis and HCC development (Figure 1). In multivariate models, the relative risk of cirrhosis increased when HBV DNA reached levels greater than 300 copies/mL, independent of whether patients were negative or positive for HBeAg. In addition, individuals with HBV DNA levels $\geq 10^4$ copies/mL (or $\geq$2000 IU/mL) were found to have a 3-15 fold greater incidence of HCC as compared to those with a viral load $<10^4$ copies/mL. According to these results, a meta-analysis covering 26 prospective studies revealed a statistically significant and consistent correlation between viral load levels and histologic, biochemical, or serologic surrogate markers (Mommeja-Marin 2003). On the other hand, the suppression of HBV replication during antiviral treatment with TDF or with ETV was shown to be associated with a reversion of fibrosis. Moreover, a decrease in HCC incidences was found during long-term antiviral treatment with either TDF, ETV or LMV (KIM 2013, Kwon 2011). It can therefore be concluded that the complete and persistent suppression of HBV replication is a reliable endpoint for the treatment of chronic HBV infection.

Induction of HBeAg seroconversion. In HBeAg-positive patients, seroconversion from HBeAg to anti-HBe was found to be a reliable surrogate marker for prognosis of chronic HBV infection leading in many cases to an inactive HBsAg carrier state (Figure 3). In these patients, HBsAg remains detectable but HBV replication continues at low or even undetectable levels and transaminases are generally within normal ranges.

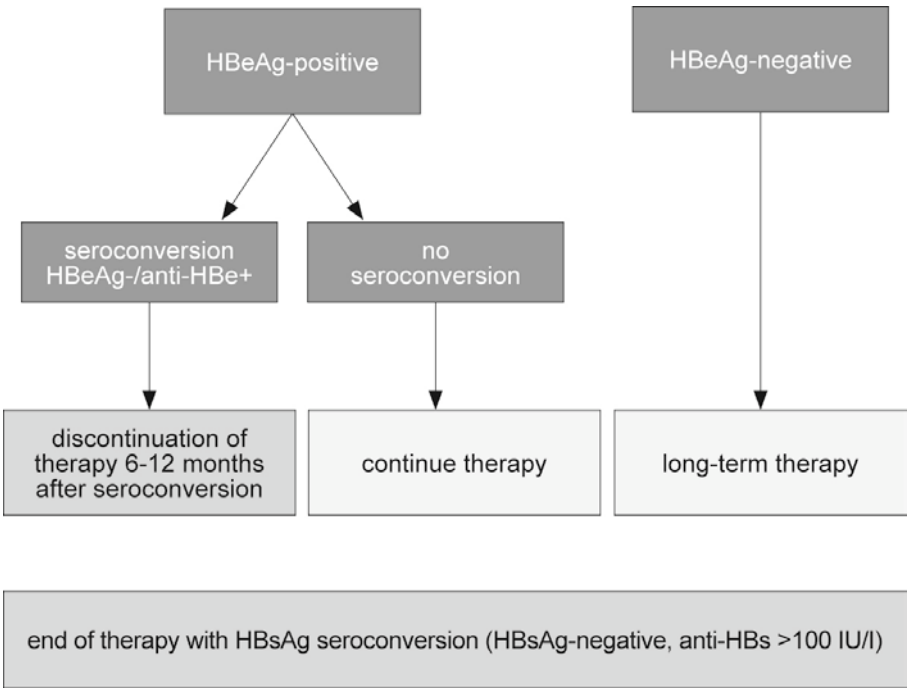


Figure 3. Possible endpoints of treatment of chronic HBV infection. After achieving HBeAg or HBsAg seroconversion, antiviral treatment can be stopped. However, it is recommended to maintain treatment for a period of 6-12 months after HBeAg or HBsAg seroconversion

Long-term observations reveal, however, that HBeAg seroconversion cannot always be taken as a guarantee of long-term remission. A reactivation of the disease with "seroreversion" (HBeAg becoming detectable again) as well as a transition to HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B with increased, often fluctuating, HBV DNA levels, can occur in up to 30% of patients (Hadziyannis 1995, Hadziyannis 2001, Hadziyannis 2006). Therefore, HBeAg seroconversion should be regarded as a stable treatment endpoint only in conjunction with durable and complete suppression of HBV replication.

In the natural course of HBV infection, the time point of HBeAg seroconversion is important regarding the probability of long-term complications. In a recent long-term observational study in 483 HBeAg-positive patients achieving spontaneous HBeAg seroconversion, it was shown that for 15 years after HBeAg seroconversion the incidence of cirrhosis and HCC was lower for patients who had achieved HBeAg seroconversion at an age <30 years old compared to patients achieving seroconversion at an age >40 years old (Chen 2010). This observation raises the question of whether HBeAg seroconversions during antiviral treatment in patients older than 40 years are also associated with a higher risk of complications compared to patients who achieve HBeAg seroconversion at a younger age.

Sustained response and "immune control". The endpoint of therapy for patients with HBeAg-negative disease is more difficult to assess. Because HBsAg loss is a

rare event in these patients, long-term suppression of HBV replication and ALT normalization are the only practical parameters of response to therapy. Once antiviral therapy is stopped, durability of response is not guaranteed due to the fluctuating course of HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B.

For treatment with PEG-IFN α in both, HBeAg-positive and -negative patients, the inducing of a so-called 'immune control' status, characterized by persistent suppression of viral replication with HBV DNA levels <2,000 IU/ml and normalisation of ALT levels was recently defined as another, combined treatment endpoint (Marcellin 2009). If this condition is maintained over time, it increases the probability of HBsAg loss and reduces the development of liver fibrosis and HCC. Late relapse beyond 6 months post-treatment has been described, but a sustained response at 1 year post-treatment appears to be durable through long-term follow-up (EASL 2009, Marcellin 2009). However, the immune control status needs to be regularly monitored, and treatment needs to be re-introduced in case of increase of HBV replication. For patients presenting any signs of liver fibrosis or family history of HCC, immune control should not be regarded as the treatment endpoint but rather the complete suppression of HBV replication.

Induction of HBsAg loss. The ultimate goal of antiviral treatment is HBsAg loss or even seroconversion to anti-HBs. Because HBsAg loss or seroconversion is associated with a complete and definitive remission of the activity of chronic hepatitis B and an improved long-term outcome, it is regarded as a cure from chronic hepatitis B. However, HBsAg loss or seroconversion can be induced in only a limited number of patients after short-term treatment (<5%). Interestingly, in recent follow-up studies in PEG-INF α as well as nucleoside/nucleotide analog treated patients an increase of the rates of HBsAg loss during long-term studies was shown (Marcellin 2009, Marcellin 2012). However, as the probability of HBsAg seroclearance during therapy with nucleoside or nucleotide analogs is linked to the decrease of HBsAg levels during the early treatment period, it seems questionable if after a treatment duration of 4-5 years significantly higher rates of HBsAg loss can be expected (Figure 4) (Marcellin 2011).

Reversion of liver fibrosis. With long-term treatment with different nucleoside and nucleotide analogs it has been demonstrated that liver fibrosis and even cirrhosis can be reverted in the majority of patients. This was recently impressively shown a subanalysis of the trials 102 and 103 evaluating 348 patients who underwent biopsies before and after five years of TDF monotherapy. Of those patients, 88% experienced an improvement in overall liver histology as measured by an improvement of at least two points in the Knodell score of HAI (histologic activity index) (Figure 5). Of the 94 patients who had cirrhosis at the start of therapy, 73% experienced regression of cirrhosis, and 72% had at least a two-point reduction in fibrosis scoring (Marcellin 2013). The positive effect of and effective antiviral treatment on liver histology was also shown in a subgroup of 59 patients from a rollover study including two Phase III trials of the efficacy of ETV in treatment-naïve patients. Liver biopsies taken at baseline and after a median treatment duration of 6 years (range, 3-7 years) showed an histologic improvement, defined as a decrease of 2 points or greater in the Knodell necroinflammatory score in absence of worsening of the Knodell fibrosis score, in 96% of patients. In

addition, an improvement of more than 1 point in the Ishak fibrosis score was seen in 88%, including all 10 patients who had advanced fibrosis or cirrhosis when they entered the Phase 3 studies (Chang 2010a).

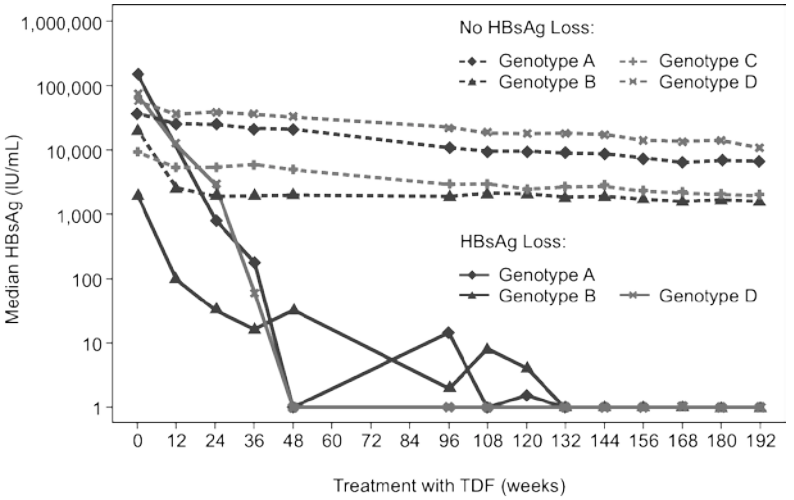


Figure 4. Patients in the TDF studies 102 and 103 who lost HBsAg showed a significant decline in HBsAg levels already in the early treatment phase (Marcellin 2011)

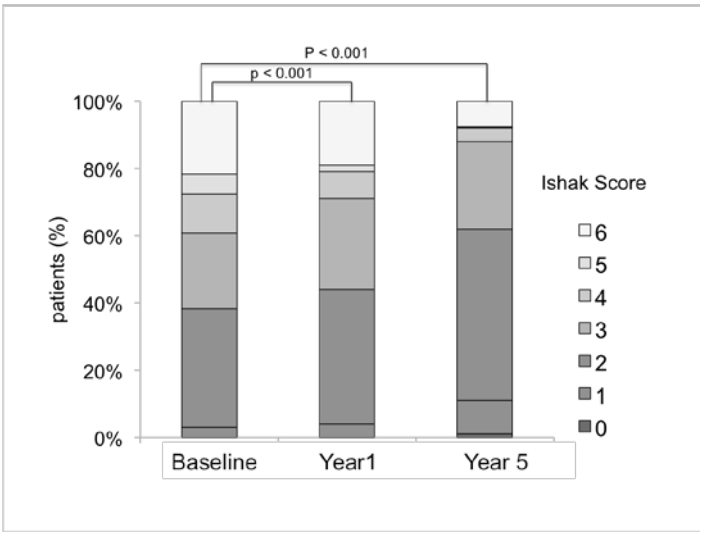


Figure 5. Changes in liver histology after five years of TDF treatment. In a study looking at 348 patients with paired liver biopsies, regression of liver fibrosis and even liver cirrhosis (Ishak score 5 and 6) was found in the majority of patients (adapted from Marcellin 2013). A similar extent of the regression of liver fibrosis was observed during up to seven years of treatment with entecavir (Chang 2010a)

Criteria for treatment response

Virologic response

- sustained decrease of HBV DNA, to at least <2,000 IU/mL (corresponding to <10,000 copies/mL), ideally to <60 IU/mL (<300 copies/mL).
- sustained HBeAg seroconversion in HBeAg positive patients
- ideally, loss of HBsAg with or without appearance of anti-HBs

Biochemical response

- sustained ALT normalization

Histologic response

- reduction of fibrosis (histological staging)
- reduction of inflammatory activity (histological grading)

Potential long-term effects

- avoidance of cirrhosis, hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC), transplantation, and death

How to treat

Therapy of chronic hepatitis B is possible with PEG-INFα in order to induce an immunologic long-term control by finite treatment or with nucleos(t)ide analogs by long-term inhibition of HBV replication (Figure 6) (Table 2).

At first, the option of interferon therapy should be evaluated. However, if a patient does not fulfil the criteria for a higher likelihood for treatment success with PEG-INFα, has contraindications, or is intolerant, long-term therapy with nucleos(t)ide analogs is recommended (Figure 6). If a nucleos(t)ide analog is chosen, several parameters have to be considered prior to therapy: the antiviral efficacy of the drug, the durability of response, the resistance barrier, and the stage of liver disease.

If the initial viral load is low and liver cirrhosis has been excluded, any approved drug may be used. The use of LAM, however, should be restricted to patients with mild fibrosis and HBV DNA levels $<10^5$ copies/ml. For patients with high-level HBV replication ($>10^9$ copies/ml) only drugs with a high genetic barrier should be used (ie, ETV or TDF) (Table 3).

Treatment options

Because of a limited tolerability due to adverse events, duration with PEG-IFN α is limited for a period of 6-12 months (maximum 24 months). Nucleoside and nucleotide analogs have a good tolerability and are used in long-term treatment. However, the efficacy of these oral agents can be hampered by emergence of resistance. Two interferons and five oral HBV polymerase inhibitors are currently approved for the treatment of chronic HBV infections: standard IFN α-2b and PEG-IFN α-2a, lamivudine (LAM), adefovir dipivoxil (ADV), telbivudine (LdT), entecavir (ETV) and tenofovir disoproxil fumarate (TDF) (Table 2). The efficacy of the available drugs after one year of treatment, assessed by the proportion of individuals with HBV DNA below the limit of detection, normalised transaminases and HBeAg seroconversion is shown in Figure 7.

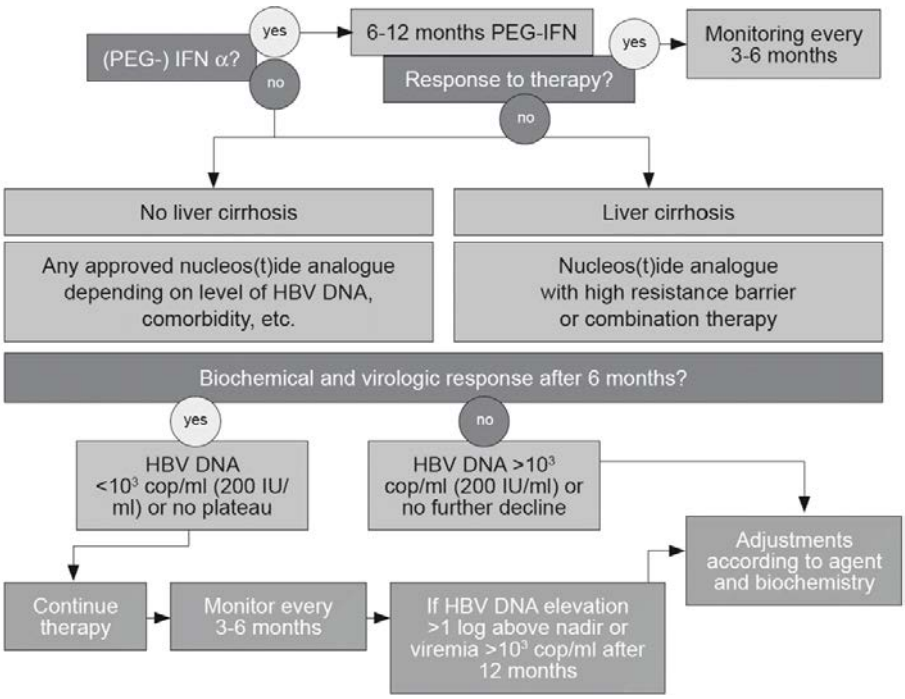


Figure 6. Treatment algorithm for chronic HBV infection according to the German Guidelines (Cornberg 2011). The indication for interferon therapy should always be considered. For treatment with nucleoside or nucleotide analogs, agents with high genetic barrier against resistance such as entecavir or tenofovir should be preferred

Table 2. Overview of interferons and oral antiviral drugs currently approved for the treatment of HBV infection

Drug	Name	Dose	Duration
Interferon α			
Standard Interferon α-2a	Roferon®	2.5-5 mio. U/m² body surface 3x/week	4-6 months
Standard Interferon α-2b	Intron A®	5-10 mio. IU 3x/week	4-6 months
Pegylated Interferon α-2a	Pegasys®	180 µg/week	48 weeks
Nucleoside analogs			
Lamivudine	Zeffix®	100 mg/day	long-term*
Telbivudine	Sebivo®	600 mg/day	long-term*
Entecavir	Baraclude®	0.5 mg/day	long-term*
		1 mg/day for patients with lamivudine resistance	long-term*
Nucleotide analogs			
Adefovir dipivoxil	Hepsera®	10 mg/day	long-term*
Tenofovir disoproxil fumarate	Viread®	300 mg/day	long-term*

* see Figure 7

Table 3. Recommendations for the use of nucleos(t)ide analogs in clinical practice

Drug	Advantage	Disadvantage	Recommendation
Lamivudine (LAM)	• Low treatment costs • Oral solution available for children or individual dosage in case of renal impairment	• High risk of resistance in long-term monotherapy • Cross-resistance to ETV and LdT	• Use as first-line therapy only in selected patients with low viral load • Prevention of exacerbation in HBsAg+, HBV DNA- patients with immunosuppression • Preemptive therapy in case of HBsAg-negative, anti-HBc positive patients with immunosuppression • Use in pregnancy possible
Adefovir dipivoxil (ADV)	• Experience in combination with LAM • No cross-resistance to LAM	• Moderate antiviral activity • Primary non-response in 10-20% of cases • Slow viral kinetics during therapy • Risk of viral resistance in long-term monotherapy • Nephrotoxicity	• Not to be used as first-line therapy
Telbivudine (LdT)	• High antiviral efficacy • Potentially no cross-resistance to entecavir	• Moderate risk for viral resistance in long-term monotherapy • Neuropathy and myopathy	• First-line therapy • Can be combined with TDF
Entecavir (ETV)	• High antiviral efficacy • Low risk for viral resistance in long-term monotherapy in lamivudine-naïve patients • Combination therapy with TDF as rescue therapy • Oral solution available for individual dosage in case of renal impairment	• In LAM-experienced patients high risk for the development of viral resistance and virologic failure in long-term monotherapy	• First-line therapy • Can be combined with TDF
Tenofovir disoproxil fumarate (TDF)	• High antiviral efficacy • Low risk for viral resistance in long-term monotherapy	• Rare Nephrotoxicity* • Decrease in bone mineral density	• First- and any second-line therapy • Can be combined with ETV, LdT or LAM if needed

* in HBV-monoinfected patients no renal toxicity was observed in 5 years of TDF treatment

Interferons

INF α is a natural occurring cytokine with immunomodulatory, antiproliferative and antiviral activity. During treatment, the therapeutic efficacy of INF α can often be clinically recognised by an increase of ALT levels to at least twice the baseline levels. These ALT flares often precede virologic response.

The main aim of INF α treatment is to induce a long-term remission by finite treatment duration. Overall a long-term response defined by either HBeAg seroconversion or durable suppression of HBV DNA to low or undetectable levels can be achieved in approximately 30% of treated patients. In these responders the chance for HBsAg loss in the long-term is relatively high.

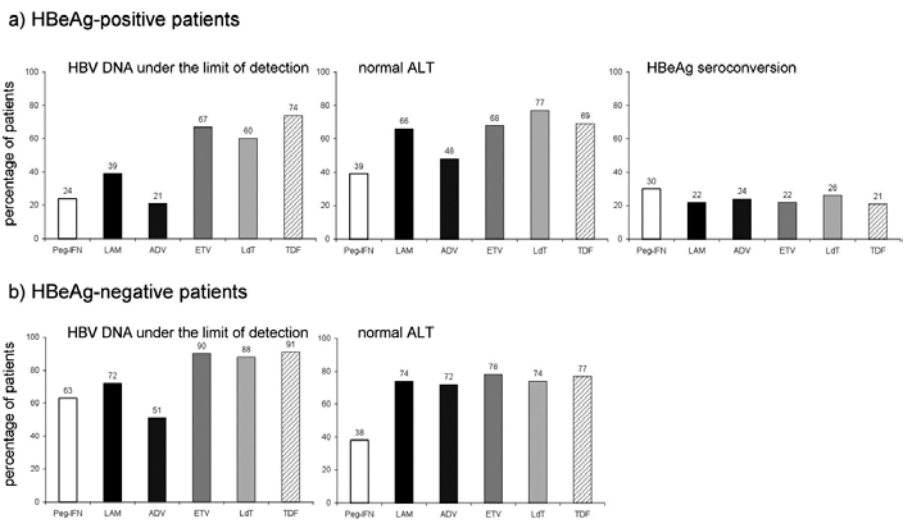


Figure 7. One-year efficacy of medications currently approved for the treatment of chronic HBV infection (Lok 2009). Treatment efficacy is expressed as suppression of HBV DNA below the limit of detection, ALT normalisation and rates of HBeAg seroconversion. As no head-to-head trials comparing the substances have been undertaken, differences in antiviral efficacy have to be interpreted with caution

Standard INF α. Standard IFN α was approved for treatment of chronic hepatitis B in 1992. IFN α is applied in dosages ranging from 5 million units (MU) to 10 MU every other day or thrice weekly. In a meta-analysis, a significant improvement in endpoints was shown in patients with HBeAg-positive chronic hepatitis B being treated with standard IFN compared to untreated patients (Craxí 2003). Complete remission of fibrotic changes was observed in some patients and the loss of HBsAg occurred comparatively often. Furthermore, there was a trend towards reduction of hepatic decompensation (treated 8.9% vs. untreated 13.3%), hepatocellular carcinoma (1.9 vs. 3.2%), and liver associated deaths (4.9 vs. 8.7%) (Craxí 2003).

A significant decrease in ALT and in HBV DNA serum levels was also shown for standard IFN α in the treatment of HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B (Brunetto 2003). However, a high percentage (25-89%) of these patients relapses after the end of treatment showing elevation of ALT levels and a return of HBV DNA levels. The

relapse rate seems to be higher when treatment duration is short (16 to 24 weeks) compared to longer treatment (12 to 24 months). A retrospective comparison of IFN therapies lasting from 5 to 12 months showed that with longer treatment the chance of a long-term response was 1.6 times higher (normalization of ALT, HBV DNA $<1x10^6$ copies/ml 1-7 years after end of therapy). The overall response rates were 54% at the end of therapy, 24% at 1 year after therapy, and 18% 7 years after therapy (Manesis 2001).

Patients with long-term response to treatment have a more favourable course than patients who were untreated, unresponsive, or who had a relapse interferon α therapy with respect to progression to liver cirrhosis, liver associated deaths, and development of hepatocellular carcinoma (Brunetto 2003, Lampertico 2003). However, due to higher antiviral efficacy PEG-IFN α should be preferred to standard IFN α.

PEG-INF α. The addition of a polyethylene glycol molecule to the IFN resulted in a significant increase in half-life, thereby allowing administration once weekly. Two types of subcutaneously administered PEG-IFN α were developed: PEG-IFN α-2a and PEG-IFN α-2b, of which PEG-IFN α-2a was licensed for the treatment of chronic HBV infections in a weekly dose of 180 µg for 48 weeks in both HBeAg-positive and HBeAg-negative patients. However, PEG-IFN α-2b shows similar efficacy. After one year on treatment with PEG-IFN α-2a and α-2b, 22% to 27% of patients were reported to achieve HBeAg seroconversion (Janssen 2005, Lau 2005).

The safety profiles of standard IFN α and PEG-IFN α are similar. Following therapy termination a relatively high relapse rate is to be expected (>50%). The dose of 180 µg per week applied for 48 weeks was recently shown to exert a stronger antiviral efficacy compared to administration for 24 weeks or to administration of 90 µg per week (Liaw 2011). Treatment durations longer than 48 weeks are not recommended in current guidelines.

PEG-IFN α in HBeAg-positive patients. Four randomized, controlled studies investigating the efficacy of PEG-IFN α in HBeAg-positive patients have been conducted (Crespo 1994, Chan 2005, Janssen 2005, Lau 2005). These studies compared 180 µg PEG-INF α per week to standard IFN, LAM, and/or a combination treatment with PEG-INF α + LAM for 48 weeks. Sustained HBeAg seroconversion at the end of follow-up (week 72) was significantly higher in patients treated with PEG-IFN α-2a alone or in combination with LAM than in patients treated with LAM alone (32% and 27% versus 19%) (Marcellin 2004).

Importantly, it was recently shown that PEG-IFN α can induce immunomodulatory effects which persist beyond the end of therapy leading to considerable HBsAg clearance rates in the follow-up period. In a recent study, 97 patients with chronic HBV infection who had received treatment with standard IFN α were retrospectively analyzed for a median period of 14 (range, 5-20) years. During the observation period, 28 patients (29%) of this cohort lost HBsAg (Moucari 2009).

PEG-IFN α in HBeAg-negative patients. The efficacy and safety of 48 weeks treatment with 180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a once weekly + placebo, + 100 mg LAM daily, or LAM alone was compared in 177, 179, and 181 HBeAg-negative patients, respectively. After 24 weeks of follow-up, the percentage of patients with normalisation of ALT levels or HBV DNA levels below 20,000 copies/ml was

significantly higher with PEG-IFN α-2a monotherapy (59% and 43%, respectively) and PEG-IFN α-2a plus LAM (60% and 44%) than with LAM monotherapy (44% and 29%); the rates of sustained suppression of HBV DNA below 400 copies/ml were 19% with PEG-IFN α-2a monotherapy, 20% with combination therapy, and 7% with LAM alone.

Also in HBeAg-negative patients HBsAg loss can be induced in some patients by PEG-IFN α treatment. In a study in 315 patients who were treated with either PEG-IFN α-2a, LAM 100 mg or a combination of both drugs for 48 weeks, three years after the end of treatment, the rate of HBsAg loss was 8.7% in those who had been treated with PEG-IFN α-2a alone or in combination with LAM while no patient treated with LAM as monotherapy cleared HBsAg (Marcellin 2009a). Of the patients who had received a PEG-IFN α-2a and who still had undetectable HBV DNA three years after treatment, 44% had lost HBsAg.

Prolongation of PEG-IFN α treatment beyond 48 weeks may increase sustained response rates. This was found in an Italian study in 128 mainly genotype D–infected HBeAg-negative patients who were randomized to either treatment with 180 µg/week PEG-IFN α-2a for 48 weeks or a continuing treatment with PEG-IFN α-2a at 135µg/week. Additionally, in a third arm patients received combination treatment with PEG-IFN α-2a 180µg/week and LAM 100 mg/day, followed by 48 weeks of PEG-IFN α-2a in the dosage of 135 µg/week. As a result, 48 weeks after the end of treatment 26% of patients who had received 96 weeks of PEG-IFN treatment showed HBV DNA levels <2000 IU/mL compared to only 12% of the patients who had received PEG-IFN for 48 weeks. Combination with LAM showed no additional effect (Lampertico 2010a).

Nucleoside and nucleotide analogs

Nucleoside and nucleotide analogs inhibit HBV replication by competing with the natural substrate deoxyadenosine triphosphate (dATP) and causing terminating of the HBV DNA chain prolongation. They represent two different subclasses of reverse transcriptase inhibitors: while both are based on purines or pyrimidines, acyclic nucleotide analogs have an open (acyclic) ribose ring that confers greater binding capacity to resistant HBV polymerase strains.

Treatment duration for nucleos(t)ide analogs is not well-defined but a short-term application of these agents for 48 weeks is associated with prompt relapse in viremia and they should be administered for longer periods. Treatment efficacy of nucleoside and nucleotide analogs implies complete suppression of HBV DNA levels in serum. This should be achieved within six months if agents with high risk for resistance development as LAM, ADV, and LdT are used.

Effective long-term control of HBV replication with nucleoside or nucleotide analogs is associated with a reduction of long-term complications such as liver cirrhosis and the development of HCC, especially in patients which already present with liver cirrhosis (Toy 2009, Hosaka 2012) (Figure 8). Studies with different nucleoside and nucleotide analogs have demonstrated that suppression of HBV replication is associated with a significant decrease in histologic inflammatory activity and fibrosis, including partial reversion of liver cirrhosis (Chen 2006, Iloeje 2006, Mom-meja-Marin 2003, Chen 2010, Marcellin 2011, Schiff 2011). With increasing treatment duration HBeAg seroconversion rates increase (Liaw 2000, Lok 2000).

Most importantly, there is also evidence that effective inhibition of HBV replication can reduce HBV cccDNA, possibly running parallel to the decline in serum HBsAg levels (Werle-Lapostolle 2004, Wursthorn 2006). These findings may indicate that long-term antiviral therapy may lead to a complete response in a significant number of patients.

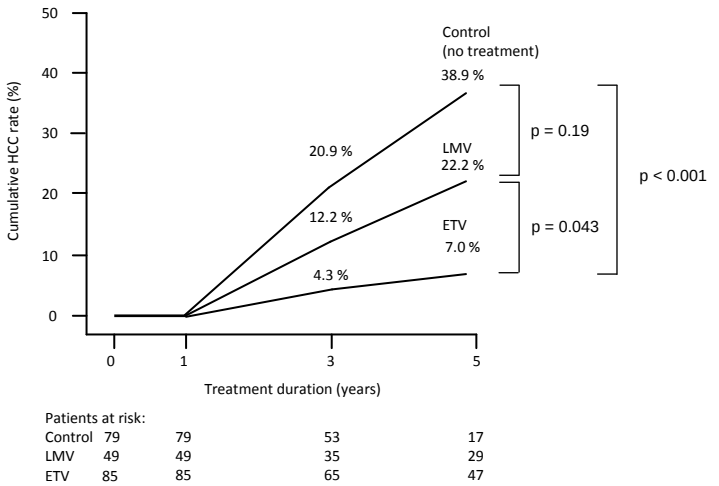


Figure 8: Comparison of HCC rates between patients with chronic hepatitis B and liver cirrhosis receiving either ETV or LMV or no treatment. The figure shows HCC cumulative incidences in the entecavir (ETV)-treated group, in the lamivudine (LAM)-treated, and the control group. The HCC rates after 5 years were the lowest in the ETV treated patients. This effect was not observed in patients without cirrhosis (Hosaka 2013).

Lamivudine (LAM). LAM, a (-) enantiomer of 2' -3' dideoxy-3'-thiacytidine, is a nucleoside analog that was approved for the treatment of chronic HBV infection in 1988 with a daily dose of 100 mg. This dose was chosen based on a preliminary trial that randomly assigned 32 patients to receive 25, 100, or 300 mg of LAM daily for a total of 12 weeks (Dienstag 1995). In this study the dose of 100 mg was more effective than 25 mg and was similar to 300 mg in reducing HBV DNA levels. LAM exerts its therapeutic action in its phosphorylated form. By inhibiting both the RNA- and DNA-dependent DNA polymerase activities, the synthesis of both the first strand and the second strand of HBV DNA are interrupted.

Long-term LAM treatment is associated with an increasing rate of antiviral drug resistance reaching approximately 70% after 5 years in patients with HBeAg-positive HBV infections. Therefore, in many guidelines LAM is not considered a first-line agent in the treatment of chronic HBV infection any more. However, LAM still may play a role in combination regimens or in patients with mild chronic hepatitis B expressing low levels of HBV DNA ($<10^5$ copies/ml). An early and complete virologic response to LAM within 6 months of therapy (<400 copies/mL) constitutes a prerequisite for long-term control of HBV infection without the risk of developing resistance.

Adefovir dipivoxil (ADV). Adefovir dipivoxil was approved for treatment of chronic hepatitis B in the US in 2002 and in Europe in 2003. It is an oral diester prodrug of adefovir, an acyclic nucleotide adenosine analog that is active in its diphosphate form. Because the acyclic nucleotide already contains a phosphate-mimetic group, it needs only two, instead of three, phosphorylation steps to reach the active metabolite stage. ADV was the first substance with simultaneous activity against wild type, pre-core, and LAM-resistant HBV variants. It is active *in vitro* against a number of DNA viruses other than HBV and retroviruses (i.e., HIV). The dose of 10 mg per day was derived from a study comparing 10 mg versus 30 mg/d. The higher dosage leads to stronger suppression of HBV DNA levels but also to renal toxicity with an increase of creatinine levels (Hadziyannis 2003).

ADV was the first acyclic nucleotide that was widely used in the treatment of LAM-resistant HBV infections. However, the antiviral effect of ADV in the licensed dosage of 10 mg/day is rather low as compared to other available antivirals (Figure 7); this disadvantage makes ADV vulnerable to HBV resistance (Hadziyannis 2006a). Now that TDF is approved, ADV should not be used as first-line monotherapy.

Telbivudine (LdT). Telbivudine is a thymidine analog which is active against HBV but at least *in vitro* not active against other viruses, including HIV and hepatitis C virus (HCV). LdT at 600 mg/day expresses higher antiviral activity compared to either LAM at 100 mg/day or ADV at 10 mg/day (Figure 7). More patients achieved HBeAg loss within 48 weeks as compared to other nucleos(t)ides.

LdT was reported to be non-mutagenic, non-carcinogenic, non-teratogenic, and to cause no mitochondrial toxicity. A favourable safety profile at a daily dose of 600 mg was demonstrated (Hou 2008, Lai 2007). However, CK elevations were observed more often as compared to the group treated with LAM and neurotoxicity may be an issue when LdT is administered in combination with PEG-INF α (Fleischer 2009). Thus, in the GLOBE trial, during a period of 104 weeks grades 3/4 elevations in CK levels were observed in 88 of 680 (12.9%) patients who received LdT and in 28 of 687 (4.1%) patients who received LAM ($p<0.001$) (Liaw 2009). However, rhabdomyolysis was not observed. Peripheral neuropathy was described in 9 of 48 (18.75%) patients who received combination therapy of PEG-INF αnd LdT and only in 10 of 3500 (0.28%) patients who received LdT monotherapy (Goncalves 2009).

In comparison to other nucleos(t)ide analogues, some patients receiving treatment with LdT were shown to experience an increase in GFR rates. This was especially the case in patients with mild renal insufficiency (Sun 2013). However, it is not clear if this potential benefit outweighs the side effects of LdT.

Resistance to LdT has been found to occur in up to 21% of patients after 2 years of treatment (Tenney 2009), predominantly in those who did not achieve undetectable HBV DNA level by 24 weeks of treatment (Zeuzem 2009). LdT shows cross-resistance to LAM and ETV. As a consequence LdT should not be used in LAM or ETV refractory patients.

Entecavir (ETV). Entecavir, a cyclopentyl guanosine nucleoside analog, is a selective inhibitor of HBV replication and was licensed in 2006. Entecavir blocks all three polymerase steps involved in the replication process of the hepatitis B virus: first, base priming; second, reverse transcription of the negative strand from

the pregenomic messenger RNA; third, synthesis of the positive strand of HBV DNA. In comparison to all other nucleoside and nucleotide analogs, ETV is more efficiently phosphorylated to its active triphosphate compound by cellular kinases. It is a potent inhibitor of wild-type HBV but is less effective against LAM-resistant HBV mutants. Therefore, ETV was approved at a dose of 0.5 mg per day for treating naïve HBeAg-positive and -negative patients at the dose of 1 mg per day for patients with prior treatment with LAM (Lai 2005, Sherman 2008). ETV and LAM are the only nucleoside analogs available as a tablet and an oral solution.

Treatment-naïve HBeAg-positive patients achieved undetectable HBV DNA levels in 67% and 74% after one and two years of ETV treatment, reaching 94% after five years, respectively (Figure 5, Figure 9) (Chang 2010). Long-term studies in ETV responder patients demonstrated that response can be maintained in nearly all patients over an observation period of up to six years. So far, the rate of resistance at six years of treatment is estimated to be approximately 1.2% for treatment-naïve patients (Tenney 2009). Loss of HBsAg occurs in 5% of treatment-naïve individuals after two years of ETV therapy (Gish 2010). A non-randomised Italian study in a mixed population of predominantly HBeAg-negative patients could demonstrate undetectable HBV DNA levels in 91% and 97% of patients at 1 and 2 years of ETV treatment, respectively (Lampertico 2010).

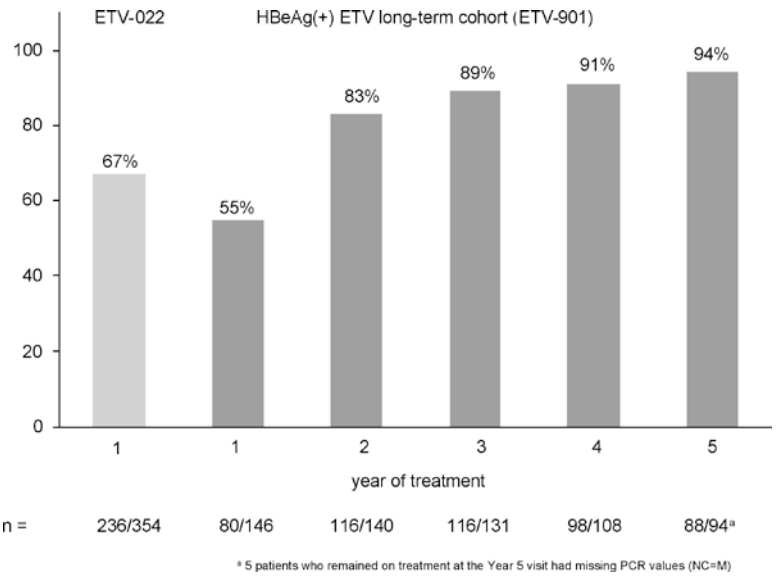


Figure 9. Percentage of patients achieving HBV DNA levels <400 copies/ml during long-term treatment with 1 mg ETV per day (Chang 2010). The long-term cohort ETV-901 consists of HBeAg-positive patients initially treated in the study ETV-022 (ETV 0.5 mg/day), which was designed for a duration of one year

In LAM-resistant patients ETV is less potent. Only 19% and 40% of these patients achieved undetectable HBV DNA after one and two years, respectively, despite an increased dose of 1 mg/day (Gish 2007, Sherman 2008). Due to cross-

resistance up to 45% of patients with LAM resistance develop resistance against ETV after 5 years of treatment (Tenney 2009).

ETV has a favourable tolerability profile and can be easily adjusted to renal function. However, ETV may cause severe lactic acidosis in patients with impaired liver function and a MELD score of >20 points (Lange 2009).

Tenofovir (TDF). Tenofovir disoproxil fumarate, an ester prodrug form of tenofovir (PMPA; (R)-9-(2-phosphonylmethoxypropyl)), is an acyclic nucleoside phosphonate, or nucleotide analog closely related to ADV. TDF has selective activity against retroviruses and hepadnaviruses and is currently approved for the treatment of HIV infection and of chronic hepatitis B. TDF showed marked antiviral efficacy over six years (HBV DNA <400 copies/ml) in almost all treatment-naïve HBeAg-negative and -positive patients (Figure 10). HBeAg loss and HBeAg seroconversion were found in 55% and 40% of patients, respectively. Of the HBeAg-positive patients, 11% experienced HBsAg loss (Marcellin 2012). Other clinical studies showing a high efficacy of TDF in LAM-resistant HBV infections irrespective of the mutation mediating LAM resistance (van Bömmel 2010, Levrero 2010). Due to possibly existing cross-resistance to ADV, the efficacy of TDF might be hampered by the presence of ADV resistance in patients with high HBV viremia; however, a breakthrough of HBV DNA during TDF treatment in patients with previous ADV failure or in treatment-naïve patients has not been observed (van Bömmel 2010, Levrero 2010, Snow-Lampert 2011).

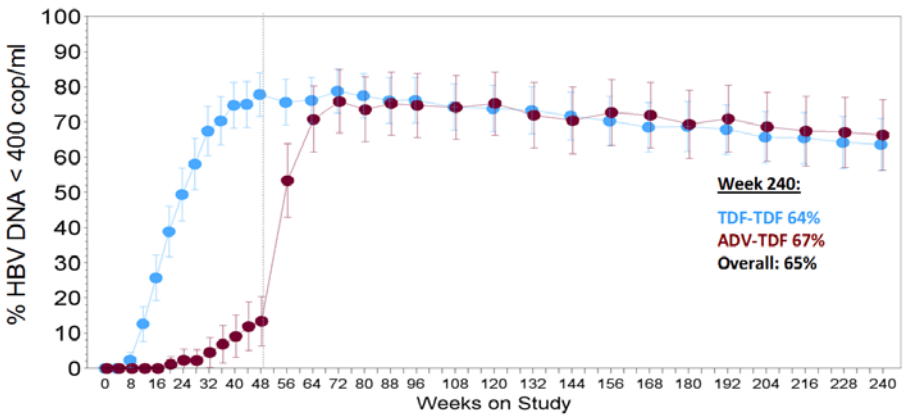


Figure 10. Percentage of HBeAg-positive patients achieving HBV DNA levels <400 copies/mL during 5 years treatment with 300 mg TDF per day (Marcellin 2011). Patients were originally randomised to treatment with 300 mg TDF or 10 mg ADV per day. After one year, patients receiving ADV were switched to TDF. The 103 study shown here and the 102 study involved more than 600 treatment-naïve HBeAg positive and negative patients. The on-treatment analysis excluding the missing patients showed undetectable HBV DNA in 99% of HBeAg negative and positive patients at year fife 99% at year seven (data for year 7 not shown). The HBeAg seroconversion rate was 40% and the HBeAg seroconversion rate 55% at year 7. Twelve percent of HBeAg positive and 1 HBeAg negative patient achieved HBsAg loss (Marcellin 2013)

TDF is generally well-tolerated and not associated with severe side effects. For HBV-monoinfected, treatment-naïve patients, renal safety during TDF monotherapy was investigated in three studies. In a randomized study comprising HBeAg-negative patients, none of 212 patients treated with TDF for three years and none of 112 patients who were treated with ADV for one year and then switched to TDF for two years had a decrease in GFR to levels of <50 ml/min or an increase of serum creatinine levels to >0.5 mg/dl (Marcellin 2009). In a similar study in HBeAg-positive patients, of 130 patients treated with TDF for 3 years and of 76 patients treated with ADV for one year and consecutively with TDF for 2 years, only one patients showed an increase in serum creatinine levels >0.5 mg/dl starting at year two (Heathcote 2011). In a sub-analysis of both studies in 152 HBeAg-positive and -negative Asian patients, no increase of serum creatinine >0.5 mg/dl or of eGFR <50 ml/min was found in up to 3 years of TDF treatment (Liaw 2009a). In addition, in a recent study a benefit in renal function was found in treated patients when compared to untreated patients with HBV infection, which might reflect a lower incidence of glomerulonephritis caused by HBsAg-induced immune complexes in treated patients (Mauss 2011).

The use of tenofovir in HIV-coinfected patients is discussed in detail in Chapter 17.

Combination therapy as first-line treatment. As of now, first-line combination treatments with nucleoside and nucleotide analogs or PEG-IFN α + nucleos(t)ide analogs are not indicated. There is only one study comparing a combination therapy with LAM and ADV to LAM monotherapy in untreated patients (Sung 2008). In this study, there was no difference in the virologic and biochemical response between both groups. The rate of LAM resistance was much lower in the combination group. However, the development of resistance could not be completely avoided even with the use of an additional dose of ADV. Another study analyzing the combination of LAM with LdT also showed no benefit for combination therapy (Lai 2005).

Especially in patients with liver cirrhosis, a fast and complete suppression of HBV replication is desirable. A monotherapy with ETV was found to be as safe and effective as monotherapy with TDF, and an addition of emtricitabine to TDF showed no improvement in response. Therefore, in these patients as well, combination treatment is currently not recommended (Liaw 2011).

In immune tolerant patients and other patients with very high HBV DNA a combination therapy with ETV+TDF or TDF+FTC was viroligically superior to ETV or TDF monotherapy, but induction of HBeAg or HBsAg loss was not different (Lok 2012, Chan 2014).

Combination treatment with LdT and PEG-INF α should not be conducted. In a recent study, peripheral neuropathy was described in 9 of 48 (18.8%) patients who received combination therapy of PEG-INF α and LdT and only in 10 of 3,500 (0.28%) patients who received LdT monotherapy (Goncalves 2009). Although combination of LAM plus PEG-IFN α failed to demonstrate benefit when evaluated at the end of follow-up in most studies, a more pronounced on-treatment virologic response (week 48) was observed with combination therapy as compared to LAM or PEG-IFN α alone. This more profound HBV DNA suppression induced by the

combination regimen was associated with a lower incidence of LAM resistance (presence of resistance mutations in 1% vs. 18% at the end of therapy).

However, combination therapies between PEG-IFN α and more potent nucleos(t)ide analogs may be attractive. Recently, a combination treatment of ETV and PEG-IFN α after 4 years of complete response to ETV was superior to continuation of ETV treatment by HBeAg and HBsAg loss and seroconversion rates (Han 2013). Similar studies are currently being undertaken investigating combination treatment of PEG-IFN α and TDF. However due to the preliminary character of the results a combination treatment of nucleos(t)ide analogs plus PEG-INF α is still not recommended.

Choosing the right treatment option

One can choose either to treat with PEG-IFN α in order to induce a long-term control by finite treatment or with nucleos(t)ide analogs to inhibit HBV replication in the long-term (Figure 6).

At first, interferon therapy should be evaluated. However, if a patient does not fulfil the criteria for PEG-IFN α, has contraindications, or is intolerant, long-term therapy with nucleos(t)ide analogs is recommended. If a nucleos(t)ide analog is chosen several parameters have to be considered prior to therapy: the antiviral efficacy of the drug, the durability of response, the resistance barrier, and the stage of liver disease.

If the initial viral load is low and liver cirrhosis has been excluded, any approved drug may be used. The use of LAM, however, should be restricted to patients with mild fibrosis and HBV DNA levels <2000 IU/mL (or $<10^4$ copies/mL). For patients with high-level HBV replication (>2 x 10^8 IU/mL or $>10^9$ copies/mL) only drugs with a high genetic barrier should be used (ie, ETV or TDF) (Table 3).

Prognostic factors for treatment response

Several factors are positively associated with long-term remission and may help to guide treatment decisions. Pretreatment factors predictive of HBeAg seroconversion are low viral load, high ALT levels (above 2-5 x ULN) and high histological grading (Flink 2006, Hadziyannis 2006a, Lai 2007, Perrillo 1990, Perrillo 2002, Wong 1993, Yuen 2007, Zoulim 2008). These general baseline predictors are relevant especially for treatment regimens with PEG-IFN α but may in part be relevant also for nucleos(t)ide analogs (Table 4).

A pooled analysis from the two largest trials using PEG-IFN α-2a or -2b in chronic hepatitis B tried to calculate a score predicting successful interferon therapy based on an individual patient's characteristics (viral load, ALT level, HBV genotype, age, gender). However, this approach may only be feasible in HBeAg-positive patients (Buster 2009).

Table 4. Predictors of response to antiviral therapy

	Nucleos(t)ide analogs	PEG-IFN α
Before treatment	Low viral load (HBV DNA ≤10^7 IU/mL), high serum ALT levels (above 3 times ULN), high activity scores on liver biopsy (at least A2)	
During treatment	Undetectable HBV DNA in a real-time PCR assay at 24 or 48 weeks is associated with HBeAg seroconversion in HBeAg-positive patients and lower incidence of resistance	HBV DNA decrease <20,000 IU/ml at 12 weeks is associated with 50% chance of HBeAg seroconversion in HBeAg-positive patients and with a 50% chance of sustained response in HBeAg-negative patients
HBeAg decrease		HBeAg decrease at week 24 may predict HBeAg seroconversion
HBV genotype	HBV genotype shows no influence on suppression of HBV DNA levels. HBsAg seroconversions only observed for genotypes A and D	Association with HBV genotype A and B and response to IFN α is higher than with genotypes C and D, however the association is weak and HBV genotype should not be the only argument for treatment decision

HBV genotypes and treatment response. HBV genotypes have been shown to be associated with IFN α treatment success. Patients with HBV genotype A, prevalent in northern Europe and the US, show a much higher rate of HBeAg and HBsAg seroconversion than patients with HBV genotype D, prevalent in the south of Europe, or the HBV genotypes B or C originating from Asia (Keeffe 2007, Wiegand 2008). During treatment with nucleos(t)ide analogs, suppression of HBV replication and induction of HBeAg loss can be achieved regardless of the present genotype. However, HBsAg loss was almost exclusively observed in patients with genotypes A or D.

HBV DNA levels and treatment response. During antiviral therapy, the decrease of HBV DNA levels from baseline is the most important tool in monitoring treatment efficacy. Complete response to antiviral therapy is defined as suppression of HBV DNA to below the limit of detection as measured by a sensitive real time PCR assay (Figure 11). Incomplete suppression is characterized by persistent HBV replication despite antiviral therapy. Ongoing HBV replication should be avoided to prevent the selection of resistant HBV strains by replication of the virus in the presence of drug in the so-called “plateau phases”. An HBV DNA breakthrough despite continuous antiviral therapy is often caused by viral resistance. Measuring of HBV DNA kinetics early during therapy will help to guide antiviral treatment and to establish early stopping rules or add-on strategies to avoid antiviral failure (Figure 11).

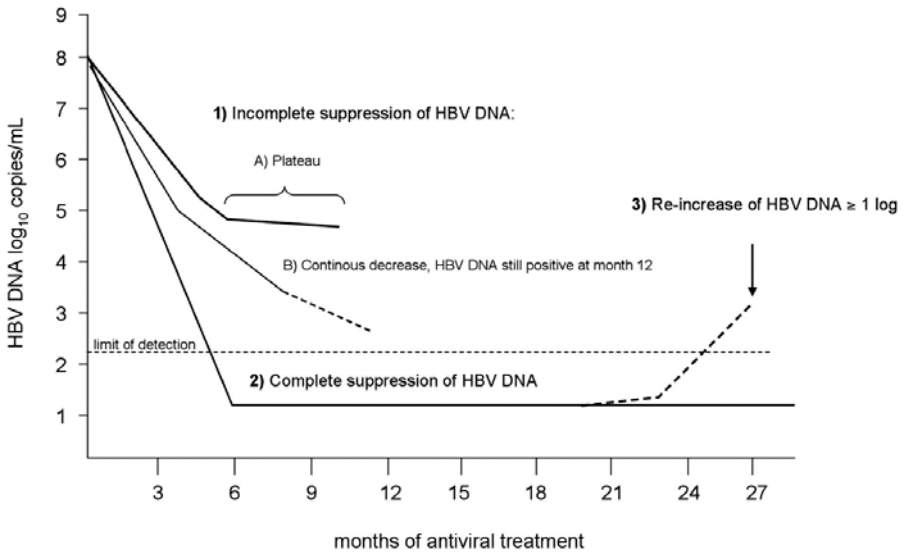


Figure 11. Possible courses of HBV DNA levels during treatment with nucleoside or nucleotide analogs. Incomplete suppression of HBV DNA results in either a "plateau phase" or in a continuous slow decline. A plateau phase represents a high risk for selection of resistant HBV variants, therefore treatment should be changed to a more effective agent or combination therapy. A continuous slow decline should induce a treatment change after 6 months if drugs with a low genetic barrier like LAM or LdT are used. If drugs with a high genetic barrier like ETV or TDF are taken, a continuous slow decline can be monitored for at least 12 months without increased risk of HBV resistance

Incomplete or partial virologic response to oral nucleoside or nucleotide analogs is defined as a decrease of HBV DNA >1 $\log_{10}$ but remaining measurable (Lavanchy 2004) (Figure 11). The definition of partial response depends on the type of treatment; thus, for agents with a high genetic barrier against resistance like ETV or TDF partial response is defined after 12 months and for substances with a low genetic barrier like LAM or LdT, after 6 months of monotherapy. In case of partial response to a drug with a low genetic barrier, an appropriate rescue therapy should be initiated. By current guidelines, a combination treatment with a nucleotide analog is recommended for these patients. However, it was recently shown that patients with partial response to LAM or to ADV have a high probability of responding to TDF monotherapy, without risking the development of resistance (Heathcote 2011, Marcellin 2011b, van Bömmel 2010, Berg 2010). Patients with a partial response to ADV were also shown to have a high probability of responding to a subsequent monotherapy with ETV, irrespective of the presence of mutations associated with HBV resistance to ADV (Leung 2009, Leung 2009a).

For patients with partial response to a drug with a high genetic barrier as ETV or TDF, current guidelines also recommend the initiation of a combination treatment. Recently published long-term studies have shown that the continuation of a first-line monotherapy in these patients does increase the percentage of patients with undetectable HBV DNA without increasing the risk of development of resistance (Chang 2010, Marcellin 2011b, Snow-Lampert 2011) (Figure 9, Figure 10). Thus,

during monotherapy with TDF in HBeAg-positive and HBeAg-negative patients, an increase of patients with complete suppression of HBV DNA between the end of the first and the end of the fifth year of treatment from 81% and 90% to 100% was shown.

For monotherapy with ETV at 1 mg/day, an increase from 55% to 91% and 94% after the fourth and fifth years was demonstrated (Chang 2010). In case of incomplete viral suppression at week 48, a continuation of monotherapy with TDF or ETV 1 mg is advisable as long as HBV DNA levels decrease continuously. However, the debate on whether switching or adding a second drug as optimal management is not yet resolved.

Even though prolongation of monotherapy with ETV or TDF will probably lead to undetectable HBV DNA in the long term in most patients, a fast suppression of HBV replication is mandatory in some patients (eg, those with liver cirrhosis) to stop the progression of liver disease. For these patients, no definite therapeutic strategies have been evaluated yet. Preliminary results of a study assessing the efficacy of a rescue combination therapy with ETV and TDF have recently been able to induce suppression to undetectable levels in most patients with partial response; however, data on long-term efficacy and safety are not available (Petersen 2011).

In any case of treatment failure, adherence to therapy should be evaluated prior to treatment modification. Elimination of HBV DNA during TDF-based therapeutic regimes can drop from 87% to 71% of cases if adherence is not ensured, which is also important in preventing drug resistance (Berg 2010).

Since only 30-35% of all patients treated with PEG-IFN α reach HBeAg seroconversion after 48 weeks, studies have been conducted recently to predict the probability of seroconversion in relation to viral kinetics. In one retrospective analysis early prediction of stable seroconversion was possible by week 12 of therapy if HBV DNA had reached levels below 5 $\log_{10}$ UI/mL within this short treatment period (Fried 2005). In 53% of these patients, HBeAg seroconversion was observed while patients with HBV DNA levels of 5 to 9 $\log_{10}$ copies/ml or levels above 9 $\log_{10}$ IU/mL achieved HBeAg seroconversion in only 17% and 14%, respectively.

Timepoint of HBeAg loss. In one study with 172 patients who were treated with PEG-IFN α-2b as monotherapy or in combination with LAM, the loss of HBeAg within the first 32 weeks of treatment was shown to be an on-treatment predictor for HBsAg loss during a mean period of 3.5 years after the end of treatment. HBsAg loss was found in 36% of the patients with early HBeAg loss and only in 4% of the patients with HBeAg loss after 32 weeks of treatment (Buster 2009)

HBsAg levels and treatment response. Response of HBeAg-positive and HBeAg-negative patients to PEG-IFN treatment can be predicted by measuring HBsAg levels before and changes of HBsAg levels during treatment (Figure 12).

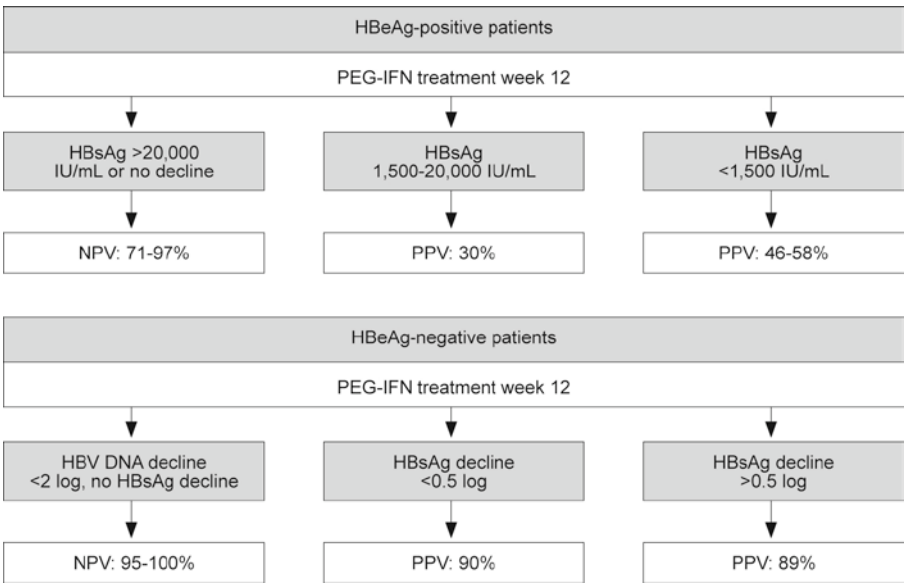


Figure 12. On-treatment prediction of treatment response by HBsAg levels. In different trials, an association of the decline in HBsAg levels within the first 12 weeks of PEG-IFN α treatment and treatment response defined as HBV DNA levels <2,000 copies/mL six months after treatment was found (Zonneveld 2010, Piratvisuth 2011, Lau 2009, Gane 2011, Rijckborst 2010, Moucari 2009). Patients showing no decline in HBsAg levels at week 12 had only a very small chance of long-term response

During PEG-IFN treatment for HBeAg-positive chronic HBV infection, an absence of a decline in HBsAg levels at week 12 of treatment reduces the probability of response to <5% in one study (Sonnefeld 2010). In the NEPTUNE trial investigating the predictive value of HBsAg levels in 114 HBeAg-positive patients receiving PEG-IFN α2a over 48 weeks, it was shown that in patients achieving suppression of HBsAg to levels <1,500 IU/mL after 12 weeks of treatment, the chance of reaching HBeAg seroconversion, suppression of HBV DNA to levels <2000 IU/mL and HBsAg loss 6 months after treatment was 58%, 52% and 10%, compared to 42%, 31% and 0% in patients with HBsAg levels between 1500-20,000. In this study, patients still showing HBsAg levels >20,000 IU/mL after 12 weeks of treatment achieved none of the endpoints (Gane 2011). Beyond that, the probability of HBeAg loss rose to 68% in patients with elevation of ALT levels >2 x the upper limit of normal at treatment initiation (Figure 13).

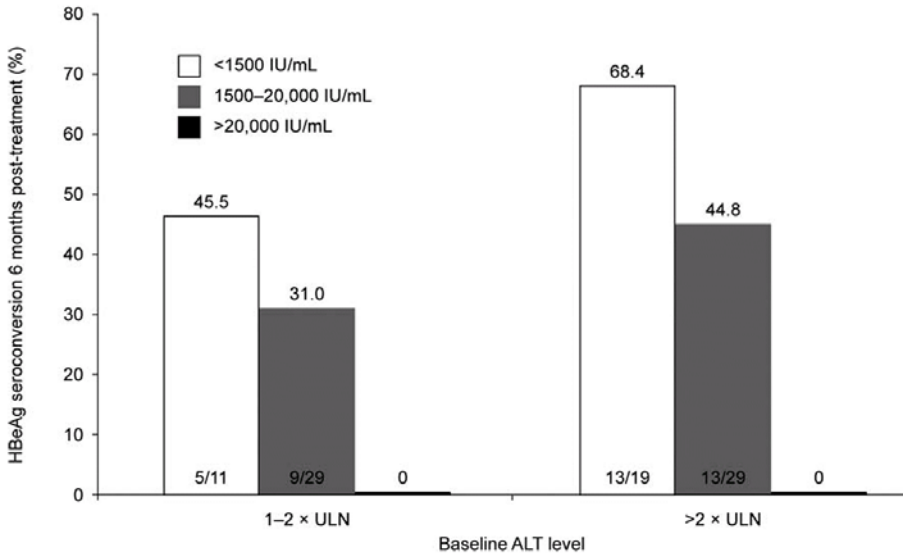


Figure 13. The level of HBsAg levels after 12 weeks of treatment with PEG-IFN α-2a is predictive for HBeAg seroconversion six months after treatment. A combination of ALT levels and HBsAg decline improves positive predictive value in these patients (Gane 2011)

Also in HBeAg-negative patients the decrease of HBsAg after 12 weeks of PEG-IFN α treatment can predict long-term response. This prediction can be made even more precise regarding the kinetics of both HBsAg and HBV DNA. In another study comprising 48 patients who were treated with PEG-IFN α-2a, a decrease in serum HBsAg levels of 0.5 and 1 $\log_{10}$ IU/mL at weeks 12 and 24 of therapy was associated with a positive predictive value for HBsAg loss of 90% and 97% at week 96 after treatment, respectively (Moucari 2009).

Monitoring before and during antiviral therapy

Before therapy, HBV DNA levels should be measured with a highly sensitive assay. These results should be confirmed 1-2 months after initiation of therapy. In addition, ALT levels reflecting the inflammatory activity as well as creatinine levels should be determined. HBV genotyping is only recommended in patients who are considered candidates for treatment with interferon. HBV resistance testing can be useful in patients with prior failure to more than one nucleoside/nucleotide analog, but this is not yet a standard diagnostic approach. HBV resistance has to be expected when an increase of HBV DNA of >1 $\log_{10}$ during antiviral treatment is observed. In cases of primary treatment failure an appropriate second line treatment can be chosen without resistance testing.

During therapy, HBV DNA, ALT and creatinine levels should be measured initially, after 4 to 6 weeks and then every 3 months. The early identification of viral resistance and an early adjustment of therapy are crucial. Patients with suppression of HBV replication to <300 copies/ml (60 IU/ml) for at least 2 years may perhaps

be scheduled at 6 month intervals (Table 5). However, no studies have been performed that support this procedure.

In HBeAg-positive patients, HBeAg and anti-HBe as well as HBsAg and anti-HBs should be also measured if HBV DNA levels become undetectable to identify seroconversion as an endpoint of HBV therapy (Table 5).

Because the risk for HCC development remains increased even in patients with complete suppression during long-term treatment with nucleos(t)ide analogs, these patients should still regularly receive ultrasound examinations (Papatheodoridis 2011).

Table 5. Recommendation for laboratory tests for monitoring antiviral therapy

Tests before antiviral treatment	
HBV DNA quantitative	
HBeAg, anti-HBe	
HBsAg quantitative	If IFN-based treatment is planned
HBV genotype	If IFN-based treatment is planned
ALT level	
Creatinine level	
Other chemistry tests	
Tests during antiviral treatment	**Interval**
HBV DNA quantitative	After 4-6 weeks, after 12 weeks, then every 3-6 months
HBeAg, anti-HBe	3-6 months, if HBV DNA is undetectable
HBsAg, anti-HBs	3-6 months, in HBeAg-positive patients after HBeAg seroconversion in and HBeAg-negative patients if
HBV	DNA is undetectable
HBV resistance test	If HBV DNA increases >1 log during antiviral treatment and pretreatment history is not known, but first check on treatment adherence!
ALT level	Initially every month, than every 3-6 months
Creatinine level*	Every 3-6 months
Other chemistry tests	Every 3-6 months

* Patients treated with TDF or ADV should initially be monitored every 4 weeks to monitor kidney function

Treatment duration and stopping rules

In HBeAg-positive patients continuous treatment with nucleos(t)ide analogs is necessary as long as HBeAg seroconversion is not achieved. Even after seroconversion antiviral therapy should be continued for at least another 12 months to avoid the risk of “seroreversion” upon stopping the nucleos(t)ide analog therapy.

Criteria for optimal treatment duration with nucleos(t)ide analogs are still lacking in patients with HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B, therefore currently unlimited treatment with nucleos(t)ide analogs is recommended.

PEG-IFN α should be administered for 48 weeks in HBeAg-positive and -negative patients.

Recently, the effect of stopping therapy after a long-term ADV treatment of 4 to 5 years with complete viral suppression was recently evaluated (Hadziyannis 2008). Despite the fact that all patients suffered a slight virologic relapse within 3 months

of stopping therapy, most patients went below detection over the following 4 years without any therapy. Moreover, 28% of the patients lost HBsAg. But final recommendations about the treatment period with defined stopping rules do not exist for HBeAg negative patients.

In patients with liver cirrhosis oral antiviral treatment should not be discontinued at any time point because of the risk of liver decompensation during a virologic rebound.

Management of HBV resistance

Resistance development. The mechanism of action of nulceoside and nucleotide analogues is a competitive inhibition of the HBV polymerase. During treatment with these substances, HBV variants bearing mutations within the HBV polymerase gene may become selected from the HBV quasispecies. Cross resistance has been described within the groups of nucleoside and nucleotide analogues, respectively (Figure 14). If a resistant population becomes the majority in an individual treatment might fail and a viral breakthrough during treatment may appear which may be associated with severe reactivation (Zoulim 2012).

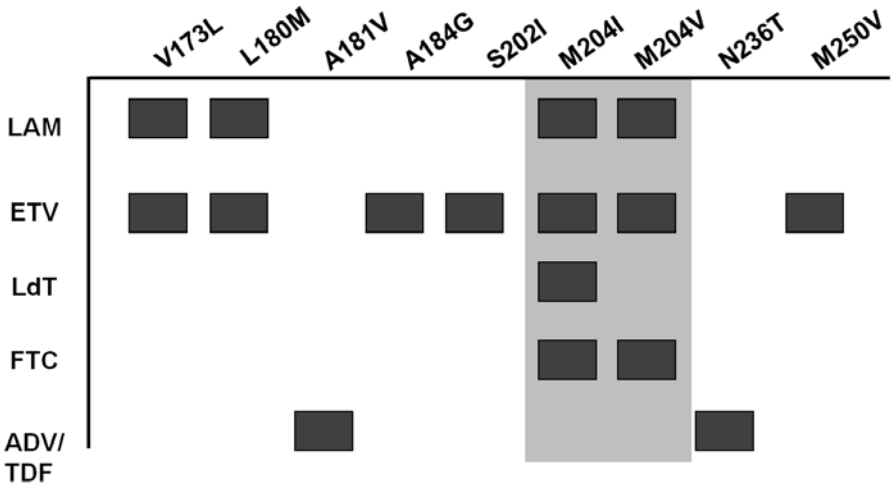


Figure 14. Resistance patterns of different antiviral drugs used for the treatment of chronic hepatitis B. The numbers indicate the respective amino acid position in the HBV polymerase gene. For entecavir, resistance at positions rt204 plus an additional mutation at position rt184, rt202 or rt250 is required to lead to clinically significant drug resistance. The mutations rtA181V and rtN236T cause resistance against ADV and weaker response to TDF in some patients; however, to date, viral breakthrough while on TDF treatment has not yet been shown to be associated with HBV variants

Theoretically, all available substances may select resistant HBV strains. However, resistance is very rare in treatment-naïve patients who receive substances with strong antiviral activity, ie, TDF or ETV, but resistance rates against LdT, ADV and especially LAM are significantly higher (Figure 15).

Interestingly, for patients treated with TDF no resistance has ever been found, even thogh ADV resistance-associated mutations might influence treatment response (Snow-Lampert 2011, van Bömmel 2012).

Detection of HBV resistance. Generally, a confirmed re-increase of HBV DNA >1 log from nadir during treatment with nucleoside/nucleotide analogues is considered being a viral breakthrough caused by HBV resistance (Figure 11). Genotypic resistance testing is not available to most treating physicians and it is generally not recommended (EALS 2012, Cornberg 2011). However, genotypic resistance testing might be helpful in individual cases. It has to be considered that most viral breakthroughs in treatment-naïve patients receiving ETVor TDFare the result of adherence issues. Therefore, patient adherence should be assessed before genotypic resistance testing is done.

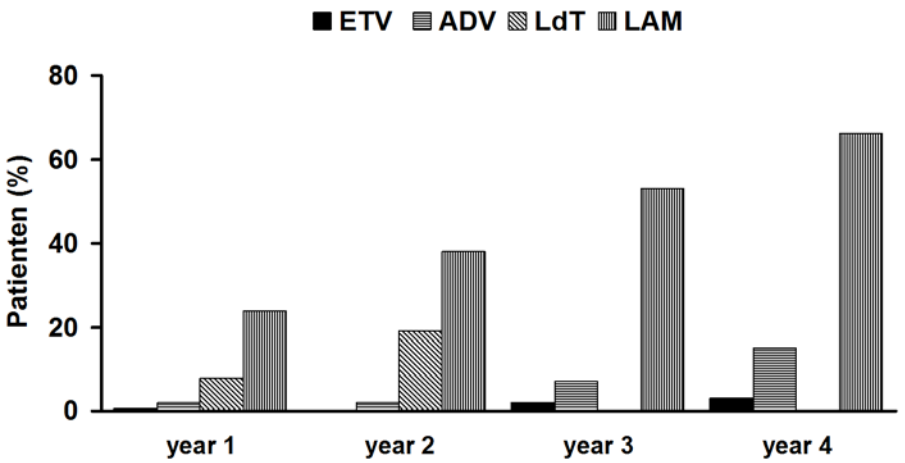


Figure 15. Cumulative incidence of HBV resistance. These numbers are average estimates based on different studies. Overall, resistance rates have been higher in HBe antigen-positive patients than in HBe antigen-negative patients. Long-term data for adefovir has only been reported for HBe antigen-negative patients and thus resistance rates may be even higher for HBe antigen-positive individuals. Data for entecavir is biased since both patients with best responses (eg, HBe antigen seroconversion) and patients with suboptimal virological responses (>700,000 copies/ml after one year of treatment) were withdrawn from the study. For TDF no viral breakthrough associated with HBV resistance has been described yet

Avoidance of HBV resistance. HBV resistance ocurrs most frequently in patients treated with LAM, LdT or ADV. The selection of resistant HBV strains becomes more likely if HBV DNA levels do not become suppressed to undetectable levels within 6 months of treatment with these substances. Therefore, in patients undergoing treatment with these substances who show detectable HBV DNA after 6 months of treatment, the treatment should be adjusted (EASL 2012, Cornberg 2011, Lok 2009). Also, patients with high viral load (> 10^9 copies/mL) are at increased risk of resistance and should not be treted with these substances. First-line treatment with ETV or TDF is recommended by many guidelines to avoid HBV resistance (EASL 2012, Cornberg 2011, Lok 2009).

Treatment of HBV resistance. Generally, resistance against a nucleoside analogue should be treated with a nucleotide analogue and *vice versa* (Figure 14). A switch to a monotherapy with TDF was shown to be very effective in patients with resistance to LAM and also to many patients with resistance to ADV. However, some of those patients with genotypic ADV resistance, especially those with HBV DNA levels > 10^7 copies/mL show delayed or incomplete response to TDF (van Bömmel 2010). ETV was shown to be effective as monotherapy in patients with resistance to ADV. General recommendations for the management of HBV resistance aregiven in Table 6.

Table 6. Recommendations for the treatment of HBV resistance

Resistance to nucleoside analogs	**Recommended therapeutic option**
lamivudine	tenofovir, adefovir*
telbivudine	tenofovir, adefovir*
entecavir	tenofovir, adefovir*
Resistance to nucleotide analogs	**Recommended therapeutic option**
adefovir (LAM-naïve)	entecavir, tenofovir, (telbivudine), (lamivudine)
adefovir (LAM-resistant)	tenofovir
tenofovir (no *in vivo* data available)	entecavir, (telbivudine), (lamivudine)

*in case tenofovir is not available

Combination treatment consisting of one nucleotide and one nucleoside analogue is not necessary for the majority of patients, however combination of TDF with a nucleoside analogue might be useful in patients with multiple pre-treatments who have accumulated different resistance mutations (Petersen 2012, van Bömmel 2012). In therapeutic setting where TDF is unavailable a combination treatment with ADV should be conducted if resistance to LAM, LdT or ETV occurs. The combination of ADV and LAM in the presence of LAM resistance delays the development of ADV resistance considerably compared to switching to adefovir monotherapy (Lampertico 2007).

Treatment of HBV infection in special populations

Pregnancy. For a neonate born to a mother with high levels of HBV DNA (>8 $\log_{10}$ copies/mL) the risk of perinatal transmission is elevated. Therefore, antiviral treatment is principally recommended in these women. PEG-IFN α is not indicated in pregnant women, but most nucleos(t)ide analogs can be used. The risk of teratogenicity of nucleos(t)ide analogs is assessed by a classification based on data gathered in clinical trials as well as through the FDA Pregnancy Registry. TDF and LdT are listed as pregnancy category B drugs and LAM, whereas ADV and ETV as category C drugs.

In pregnant women with high levels of HBV DNA, LAM treatment during the last trimester of pregnancy was reported to reduce the risk of intrauterine and perinatal transmission of HBV if given in addition to passive and active vaccination by HBIg and HBV (van Zonneveld 2003). During treatment with TDF, the birth defect

prevalence was recently shown to be as high as during treatment with LAM (Brown 2009). Finally, LdT administered for an average of 15 weeks at the end of pregnancy plus active-passive immunization to neonates reduced vertical transmission rates from 23% to 4% over immunization alone (Han 2011). However, treatment with nucleos(t)ide analogs during pregnancy should be carefully monitored and limited to the second and third trimester. As exacerbations of chronic hepatitis B may occur, women with HBV should be monitored closely after delivery (ter Borg 2008).

Immunosuppression. During immunosuppressive treatment, a reactivation of an asymptomatic or inactive HBV infection can occur in 20% to 50% of patients (Lok 2009). Reactivations can occur in HBsAg carriers, but also in HBsAg-negative but anti–hepatitis B core antibody (HBc)–positive patients. These reactivations are characterised by an increase in HBV replication followed by an increase in liver inflammation during immune reconstitution resulting in liver damage or even liver failure in some patients (Feld 2010, Roche 2011).

HBV reactivation was especially frequently observed during treatment with corticosteroids and antitumor necrosis factor therapies (ie, infliximab, etanercept, adalimumab), anti-CD20 therapies (ie, rituximab-containing chemotherapy) and intra-arterial chemoembolisation for HCC (Vassilopoulos 2007, Moses 2006, Park 2005, Rutgeerts 2009). Reactivations during chemotherapy tend to appear predominantly in men as well as in those undergoing treatments for breast cancer or lymphoma.

Prior to initiating immunosuppressive therapies, screening for HBV infection is recommended (Lok 2009, EASL 2009). Patients with baseline HBV DNA levels <2000 IU/mL should continue antiviral therapy for 6-12 months after the discontinuation of chemotherapy/immunosuppression, while patients with baseline HBV DNA levels >2000 IU/mL should continue HBV therapy until they reach a treatment endpoint.

References

Akarca US. Chronic hepatitis B. A guideline to diagnosis, approach, management, and follow-up 2007. Turkish Association for the Study of Liver. Turk J Gastroenterol2008;19:207-30. (Abstract)

Beasley RP. Hepatitis B virus. The major etiology of hepatocellular carcinoma. Cancer 1988;61:1942-56. (Abstract)

Berg T, Marcellin P, Zoulim F, et al. Tenofovir is effective alone or with emtricitabine in adefovir-treated patients with chronic-hepatitis B virus infection. Gastroenterology 2010;139:1207-17. (Abstract)

Brown RS Jr, Verna EC, Pereira MR, et al. Hepatitis B virus and human immunodeficiency virus drugs in pregnancy: findings from the Antiretroviral Pregnancy Registry. J Hepatol. 2012 Nov;57(5):953-9.

Brunetto MR, Oliveri F, Colombatto P, et al. Treatment of HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B with interferon or pegylated interferon. J Hepatol 2003;39:S164-7. (Abstract)

Brunetto MR, Oliveri F, Colombatto P, et al. Hepatitis B surface antigen serum levels help to distinguish active from inactive hepatitis B virus genotype D carriers. Gastroenterology 2010;139:483-90. (Abstract)

Buster EH, Flink HJ, Simsek H, et al. Early HBeAg loss during peginterferon alpha-2b therapy predicts HBsAg loss: results of a long-term follow-up study in chronic hepatitis B patients. Am J Gastroenterol 2009;104:2449-57. (Abstract)

Buster EH, van Erpecum KJ, Schalm SW, et al. Treatment of chronic hepatitis B virus infection - Dutch national guidelines. Neth J Med 2008;66:292-306. (Abstract)

Carosi G, Rizzetto M, Alberti A, et al. Treatment of chronic hepatitis B: update of the recommendations from the 2007 Italian Workshop. Dig Liver Dis. 2011 Apr;43:259-65.
Chan HL, Leung NW, Hui AY, et al. A randomized, controlled trial of combination therapy for chronic hepatitis B: comparing pegylated interferon-alpha2b and lamivudine with lamivudine alone. Ann Intern Med 2005;142:240-50. (Abstract)
Henry L.Y. Chan HL, Chan CK, Hui AJ, et al. Tenofovir Disoproxil Fumarate in Chronic HBV Patients With Normal ALT Levels and High HBV DNA Levels, also titled: Tenofovir DF (TDF) compared to emtricitabine (FTC)/TDF in HBeAg-positive, chronic hepatitis B (CHB) virus-infected patients in the immune tolerant (IT) phase. EASL 48th Annual Meeting April 24th - 28th 2013, Amsterdam, The Netherlands.
Chan HL, Chan CK, Hui AJ, et al. Effects of Tenofovir Disoproxil Fumarate in Hepatitis B e Antigen-Positive Patients with Normal Levels of Alanine Aminotransferase and High Levels of HBV DNA Gastroenterology. 2014 Jan 23. pii: S0016-5085(14)00103-6. doi: 10.1053/j.gastro.2014.01.044. [Epub ahead of print].
Chang TT, Lai CL, Kew Yoon S, et al. Entecavir treatment for up to 5 years in patients with hepatitis B e antigen-positive chronic hepatitis B. Hepatology 2010;51:422-30. (Abstract)
Chang TT, Liaw YF, Wu SS, et al. Long-term entecavir therapy results in the reversal of fibrosis/cirrhosis and continued histological improvement in patients with chronic hepatitis B. Hepatology 2010;52:886-93. (Abstract)
Chen CJ, Yang HI, Su J, et al. Risk of hepatocellular carcinoma across a biological gradient of serum hepatitis B virus DNA level. JAMA 2006;295:65-73. (Abstract)
Chen YC, Chu CM, Liaw YF. Age-specific prognosis following spontaneous hepatitis B e antigen seroconversion in chronic hepatitis B. Hepatology 2010;51:435-44. (Abstract)
Cho SW, Koh KH, Cheong JY, et al. Low efficacy of entecavir therapy in adefovir-refractory hepatitis B patients with prior lamivudine resistance. J Viral Hepat 2009 Aug 12. J Viral Hepat 2010;17:171-7. (Abstract)
Coca S, Perazella MA. Acute renal failure associated with tenofovir: evidence of drug-induced nephrotoxicity. Am J Med Sci 2002;324:342-4. (Abstract)
Colle I, Adler M, Brenard R, et al. Acta Gastroenterol Belg 2007;70:389-420. (Abstract)
Cornberg M, Protzer U, Petersen J, et al. Prophylaxis, diagnosis and therapy of hepatitis B virus infection - the German guideline. Z Gastroenterol 2011;49:871-930
Craxi A, Cooksley WG. Pegylated interferons for chronic hepatitis B. Antiviral Res. 2003;60:87-9. (Abstract)
Créput C, Gonzales-Canali G, Hill G, et al. Renal lesions in HIV-1-positive patient treated with tenofovir. AIDS 2003;17:935-7. (Abstract)
Crespo J, Lozano JL, Echevarría S, et al. Influence of hepatitis C virus infection and human immunodeficiency on the natural history of chronic delta hepatitis. Rev Esp Enferm Dig 1994;85:185-91. (Abstract)
European Association for the Study of the Liver. EASL Clinical Practice Guidelines: management of chronic hepatitis B. J Hepatol 2012;57:167-85.
Feld JJ. HBV reactivation and cancer chemotherapy. 2010. Available at: http://goo.gl/XB4ge. Accessed December 1, 2011.
Fleischer RD, Lok AS. Myopathy and neuropathy associated with nucleos(t)ide analog therapy for hepatitis B. J Hepatol 2009;51:787-91. (Abstract)
Flink HJ, van Zonneveld M, Hansen BE, et al. Treatment with Peginterferon alpha-2b for HBeAg-positive chronic hepatitis B: HBsAg loss is associated with HBV genotype. Am J Gastroenterol 2006;101:297-303. (Abstract)
Fried MW, Piratvisuth T, Lau GK, et al. HBeAg and hepatitis B virus DNA as outcome predictors during therapy with peginterferon alfa-2a for HBeAg-positive chronic hepatitis B. Hepatology 2008;47:428-34. (Abstract)
Gane E, Jia J, Han K, et al. NEPTUNE study: on-treatment HBsAg level analysis confirms prediction of response observed in phase 3 study of peginterferon alfa-2a in HBeAg-positive patients. J Hepatol 2011;54:S31.
Gallant JE, Parish MA, Keruly JC, Moore RD. Changes in renal function associated with tenofovir disoproxil fumarate treatment, compared with nucleoside reverse-transcriptase inhibitor treatment. Clin Infect Dis 2005;40:1194-8. (Abstract)

Gaspar G, Monereo A, Garcia-Reyne A, de Guzman M. Fanconi syndrome and acute renal failure in a patient treated with tenofovir: a call to action. AIDS 2004;18:351-2. (Abstract)
Gish RG, Lok AS, Chang TT, et al. Entecavir therapy for up to 96 weeks in patients with HBeAg-positive chronic hepatitis B. Gastroenterology 2007;133:1437-44. (Abstract)
Gish RG, Chang TT, Lai CL, et al. Loss of HBsAg antigen during treatment with entecavir or lamivudine in nucleoside-naïve HBeAg-positive patients with chronic hepatitis B. J Viral Hepat 2010;17:16-22. (Abstract)
Goncalves J, Laeufle R, Avila C. Increased risk with combination of telbivudine and pegylated-interferon Alfa-2A in study CLDT600A2406, compared to uncommon rate with telbivudine monotherapy from the novartis global database. J Hepatol 2009;50:A329.
Hadziyannis S. Hepatitis B e antigen negative chronic hepatitis B: from clinical recognition to pathogenesis and treatment. Viral Hepat Rev 1995;1:7-13.
Hadziyannis SJ, Vassilopoulos D. Hepatitis B e antigen-negative chronic hepatitis B. Hepatology 2001;34:617-24. (Abstract)
Hadziyannis SJ, Tassopoulos NC, Heathcote EJ, et al. Adefovir dipivoxil for the treatment of hepatitis B e antigen-negative chronic hepatitis B. N Engl J Med 2003;348:800-7. (Abstract)
Hadziyannis SJ, Tassopoulos NC, Heathcote EJ, et al. Long-term therapy with adefovir dipivoxil for HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B for up to 5 years. Gastroenterology 2006a;131:1743-51. (Abstract)
Hadziyannis SJ, Papatheodoridis GV. Hepatitis B e antigen-negative chronic hepatitis B: natural history and treatment. Semin Liver Dis 2006;26:130-41. (Abstract)
Hadziyannis SJ, Costamena A, Laras A, Hadziyannis E. Predictors/determinants of sustained virological response (SVR) and of HBsAg loss following long term adefovir dipivoxil (ADV) therapy in HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis (CHB). Program and abstracts of the 59th Annual Meeting of the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases; October 31 - November 4, 2008; San Francisco, California. Abstract 874.
Han GR, Cao MK, Zhao W, et al. A prospective and open-label study for the efficacy and safety of telbivudine in pregnancy for the prevention of perinatal transmission of hepatitis B virus infection. J Hepatol 2011;55:1215-21. (Abstract)
Heathcote EJ, Marcellin P, Buti M, et al. Three-year efficacy and safety of tenofovir disoproxil fumarate treatment for chronic hepatitis B. Gastroenterology 2011;140:132-43. (Abstract)
Hosaka T, Suzuki F, Kobayashi M, et al. Long-term entecavir treatment reduces hepatocellular carcinoma incidence in patients with hepatitis B virus infection. Hepatology 2013;58:98-107.
Hou J, Yin YK, Xu D, et al. Telbivudine versus lamivudine in Chinese patients with chronic hepatitis B: Results at 1 year of a randomized, double-blind trial. Hepatology 2008;47:447-54. (Abstract)
Iloeje UH, Yang HI, Su J, et al. Predicting cirrhosis risk based on the level of circulating hepatitis B viral load. Gastroenterology 2006;130:678-86. (Abstract)
Janssen HL, van Zonneveld M, Senturk H, et al. Pegylated interferon alpha-2b alone or in combination with lamivudine for HBeAg-positive chronic hepatitis B: a randomised trial. Lancet 2005;365:123-9. (Abstract)
Juszczyk J, Boro?-Kaczmarska A, Cianciara J, et al. Antiviral treatment of chronic B hepatitis; 2010 - therapeutic recommendations. Pol Merkur Lekarski 2010;29:103-6. (Abstract)
Karras A, Lafaurie M, Furco A, et al. Tenofovir-related nephrotoxicity in human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients: three cases of renal failure, Fanconi syndrome, and nephrogenic diabetes insipidus. Clin Infect Dis 2003;36:1070-3. (Abstract)
Kim WR, Berg T, Loomba R, et al. Long term tenofovir disoproxil fumarate (TDF) therapy and the risk of hepatocellular carcinoma. J Hep 2013:55;S19.
Korean Association for the Study of the Liver.KASL Clinical Practice Guidelines: Management of chronic hepatitis B. Clin Mol Hepatol. 2012 Jun;18(2):109-62.
Keeffe EB, Zeuzem S, Koff RS, Dieterich DT, et al. Report of an international workshop: Roadmap for management of patients receiving oral therapy for chronic hepatitis B. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2007;5:890-7. (Abstract)

Kumar M, Satapathy S, Monga R, et al. A randomized controlled trial of lamivudine to treat acute hepatitis B. Hepatology 2007;45:97-101. (Abstract)
Kwon H, Lok AS. Does antiviral therapy prevent hepatocellular carcinoma? Antivir Ther. 2011;16:787-95.
Lai CL, Leung N, Teo EK, et al. Telbivudine Phase II Investigator Group. A 1-year trial of telbivudine, lamivudine, and the combination in patients with hepatitis B e antigen-positive chronic hepatitis B. Gastroenterology 2005;129:528-36. (Abstract)
Lai CL, Gane E, Liaw YF, et al. Telbivudine versus lamivudine in patients with chronic hepatitis B. N Engl J Med 2007;357:2576-88. (Abstract)
Lampertico P, Del Ninno E, Viganò M, et al. Long-term suppression of hepatitis B e antigen-negative chronic hepatitis B by 24-month interferon therapy. Hepatology 2003;37:756-63. (Abstract)
Lampertico P, Viganò M, Manenti E, et al. Low resistance to adefovir combined with lamivudine: a 3-year study of 145 lamivudine-resistant hepatitis B patients. Gastroenterology 2007;133:1445-51. (Abstract)
Lampertico P, Vigano M, Di Costanzo G, et al. Safety and tolerability of extended (96 weeks) treatment with peginterferon alfa-2a [40KD] in genotype D patients with HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B. Hepatology 2010;52:387A.
Lampertico P, Vigano M, Facchetti F, et al. Effectiveness of entecavir for NUC-naive, HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B patients in clinical practice: A 2-year multicenter cohort study in 311 patients. Program and abstracts of the 45th Annual Meeting of the European Association for the Study of the Liver; April 14-18, 2010; Vienna, Austria. Abstract 1009.
Lange CM, Bojunga J, Hofmann WP, et al. Severe lactic acidosis during treatment of chronic hepatitis B with entecavir in patients with impaired liver function. Hepatology 2009;50:2001-6.B. Gastroenterology 2009;136:486-95. (Abstract)
Lau GK, Piratvisuth T, Luo KX, et al. Peginterferon Alfa-2a, lamivudine, and the combination for HBeAg-positive chronic hepatitis B. N Engl J Med 2005;352:2682-95. (Abstract)
Lavanchy D. Hepatitis B virus epidemiology, disease burden, treatment, and current and emerging prevention and control measures. J Viral Hepat 2004;11:97-107. (Abstract)
Leung NJ. Entecavir (ETV) therapy in chronic hepatitis B patients previously treated with adefovir (ADV) with incomplete response on-treatment or relapse off-treatment. Hepatology 2009;50:S334.
Leung N, Peng CY, Hann HW, et al. Early hepatitis B virus DNA reduction in hepatitis B e antigen-positive patients with chronic hepatitis B: A randomized international study of entecavir versus adefovir. Hepatology 2009a;49:72-9. (Abstract)
Levrero M, Cimino L, Lampertico P, et al. Tenofovir (TDF) for Chronic Hepatitis B Patients with Suboptimal Response to Adefovir (ADV) or ADV/LAM Treatment: Results of the OptiB Italian Multicenter Prospective Open Label Study. Hepatology 2010;52:96A.
Liaw YF, Leung NW, Chang TT, et al. Effects of extended lamivudine therapy in Asian patients with chronic hepatitis B. Asia Hepatitis Lamivudine Study Group. Gastroenterology 2000;119:172-80. (Abstract)
Liaw YF, Kao JH, Piratvisuth T, et al. Asian-Pacific consensus statement on the management of chronic hepatitis B: a 2012 update. Hepatol Int 2012; 6: 531–61.
Liaw YF, Gane E, Leung N, et al. 2-Year GLOBE trial results: telbivudine is superior to lamivudine in patients with chronic hepatitis B. Gastroenterology 2009;136:486-95. (Abstract)
Liaw YF, Chu CM. Hepatitis B virus infection. Lancet 2009;373:582-92. (Abstract)
Liaw YF, Sheen IS, Lee CM, et al. Tenofovir disoproxil fumarate (TDF), emtricitabine/TDF, and entecavir in patients with decompensated chronic hepatitis B liver disease. Hepatology 2011;53:62-72.
Lok AS, Lai CL, Leung N, et al. Long-term safety of lamivudine treatment in patients with chronic hepatitis B. Gastroenterology 2000;119:172-80.
Lok AS, McMahon BJ. Chronic hepatitis B. Hepatology 2007 ;45:507-39. (Abstract)
Lok AS, McMahon BJ. Chronic Hepatitis B: Update 2009. Hepatology 2009;50:1-35.
Lok AS, Trinh H, Carosi G, et al. Efficacy of entecavir with or without tenofovir disoproxil fumarate for nucleos(t)ide-naïve patients with chronic hepatitis B. Gastroenterology. 2012, 143(3):619-28.

Manesis EK, Hadziyannis SJ. Interferon alpha treatment and retreatment of hepatitis B e antigen-negative chronic hepatitis B. Gastroenterology 2001;121:101-9. (Abstract)
Manns MP, Akarca US, Chang TT, et al. Long-term safety and tolerability of entecavir in patients with chronic hepatitis B in the rollover study ETV-901. Expert Opin Drug Saf 2012. In press. (Abstract)
Marcellin P, Lau GK, Bonino F, et al. Peginterferon a-2a alone, lamivudine alone, and the two in combination in patients with HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B. N Engl J Med 2004;351:1206-17. (Abstract)
Marcellin P, Bonino F, Lau GK, et al. Sustained response of hepatitis B e antigen-negative patients 3 years after treatment with peginterferon a-2a. Gastroenterology 2009a;136:2169-79. (Abstract)
Marcellin P, Piratvishut T, Brunetto MR, et al. A finite course of peginterferon alfa-2a results in inactive chronic hepatitis B and HBsAg clearance 5 years post-treatment in patients with HBeAg-negative disease: baseline characteristics and predictive factors of long-term response. 60th Annual Meeting of the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases (AASLD 2009). Boston 2009b, Abstract 387.
Marcellin P, Heathcote J, Buti M, et al. Characterization of HBsAg seroconversion in patients with chronic hepatitis B (CHB) treated with tenofovir disoproxil fumarate (TDF). Hepatology 2011;54:1036A.
Marcellin P, Heathcote EJ, Buti M, et al. HBeAg kinetics in patients with chronic hepatitis B (CHB) treated with tenofovir disoproxil fumarate (TDF) for up to 4 years. J Hepatol 2011:54:S297.
Marcellin P, Gane E, Buti M, et al. Regression of cirrhosis during treatment with tenofovir disoproxil fumarate for chronic hepatitis B: a 5-year open-label follow-up study. Lancet 2013;381:468-75.
Marcellin P, Gane EJ, Tsai N, et al. Seven Years of Treatment with Tenofovir DF for Chronic Hepatitis B Virus Infection is Safe and Well Tolerated and Associated with Sustained Virological, Biochemical, and Serological Responses with no Detectable Resistance. 64th Annual Meeting of the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases (AASLD 2013). Washington, DC, November 1-5, 2013. Abstract 926.
Martinot-Peignoux M, Lapalus M, Laouénan C, et al. Prediction of disease reactivation in asymptomatic hepatitis B e antigen-negative chronic hepatitis B patients using baseline serum measurements of HBsAg and HBV-DNA. J Clin Virol 2013;58:401-7.
McMahon BJ, Alward WL, Hall DB, et al. Acute hepatitis B virus infection: relation of age to the clinical expression of disease and subsequent development of the carrier state. J Infect Dis 1985;151:599-603. (Abstract)
Mommeja-Marin H, Mondou E, Blum MR, Rousseau F. Serum HBV DNA as a marker of efficacy during therapy for chronic HBV infection: analysis and review of the literature. Hepatology 2003;37:1309-19. (Abstract)
Moses SE, Lim ZY, Sudhanva M, et al. Lamivudine prophylaxis and treatment of hepatitis B virus-exposed recipients receiving reduced intensity conditioning hematopoietic stem cell transplants with alemtuzumab. J Med Virol 2006;78:1560-3. (Abstract)
Moucari R, Mackiewicz V, Lada O, et al. Early serum HBsAg drop: a strong predictor of sustained virological response to pegylated interferon a-2a in HBeAg-negative patients. Hepatology 2009;49:1151-7. (Abstract)
Moucari R, Korevaar A, Lada O, et al. High rates of HBsAg seroconversion in HBeAg-positive chronic hepatitis B patients responding to interferon: a long-term follow-up study. J Hepatol 2009;50:1084-92. (Abstract)
Han M, Jiang J, Hou J, et al. Sustained immune control in HBeAg-positive chronic hepatitis B patients who switched from long-term entecavir therapy to peginterferon alfa-2a (40KD): 1-year follow-up of the OSST study. Hepatology 2013:59;665A.
Papatheodoridis GV, Manolakopoulos S, Touloumi G, et al. Virological suppression does not prevent the development of hepatocellular carcinoma in HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B patients with cirrhosis receiving oral antiviral(s) starting with lamivudine monotherapy: results of the nationwide HEPNET. Greece cohort study. Gut 2011;60:1109-16.
Park JW, Park KW, Cho SH, et al. Risk of hepatitis B exacerbation is low after transcatheter arterial chemoembolization therapy for patients with HBV-related hepatocellular

carcinoma: report of a prospective study. Am J Gastroenterol 2005;100:2194-200. (Abstract)
Perrillo RP, Lai CL, Liaw YF, et al. Predictors of HBeAg loss after lamivudine treatment for chronic hepatitis B. Hepatology 2002;36:186-94. (Abstract)
Perrillo RP, Schiff ER, Davis GL, et al. A randomized, controlled trial of interferon alpha-2b alone and after prednisone withdrawal for the treatment of chronic hepatitis B. N Engl J Med 1990;323:295-301. (Abstract)
Petersen J, Ratziu V, Buti M, et al. Entecavir plus tenofovir combination as rescue therapy in pre-treated chronic hepatitis B patients: an international multicenter cohort study. J Hepatol. 2012 Mar;56(3):520-6.(Abstract)
Peyriere H, Reynes J, Rouanet I, et al. Renal tubular dysfunction associated with tenofovir therapy: report of 7 cases. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr 2004;35:269-73. (Abstract)
Rehermann B, Ferrari C, Pasquinelli C, Chisari FV. The hepatitis B virus persists for decades after patients' recovery from acute viral hepatitis despite active maintenance of a cytotoxic T-lymphocyte response. Nat Med 1996;2:1104-8. (Abstract)
Reijnders JG, Pas SD, Schutten M, et al. Entecavir shows limited efficacy in HBeAg-positive hepatitis B patients with a partial virologic response to adefovir therapy. J Hepatol 2009;50:674-83. (Abstract)
Reijnders JG, de Vries-Sluijs T, Hansen BE, et al. Five years tenofovir therapy is associated with maintained virologic response, but significant decline in renal function in HIV/HBV coinfected patients. 60th Annual Meeting of the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases (AASLD 2009). Boston 2009a. Abstract 425.
Roche B, Samuel D. The difficulties of managing severe hepatitis B virus reactivation. Liver Int 2011;31:104-10. (Abstract)
Rutgeerts P, Vermeire S, Van Assche G. Biological therapies for inflammatory bowel diseases. Gastroenterology. 2009;136:1182-97. (Abstract)
Schiff ER, Lee SS, Chao YC, et al. Long-term treatment with entecavir induces reversal of advanced fibrosis or cirrhosis in patients with chronic hepatitis B. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2011;9:274-6. (Abstract)
Sherman M, Yurdaydin C, Simsek H, et al. Entecavir therapy for lamivudine-refractory chronic hepatitis B: improved virologic, biochemical, and serology outcomes through 96 weeks. Hepatology 2008;48:99-108.
Seto WK, Lai CL, Fung J, et al. Significance of HBV DNA levels at 12 weeks of telbivudine treatment and the 3 years treatment outcome. J Hepatol 2011;55:522-8. (Abstract)
Snow-Lampart A, Chappell B, Curtis M, et al. No resistance to tenofovir disoproxil fumarate detected after up to 144 weeks of therapy in patients monoinfected with chronic hepatitis B virus. Hepatology 2011;53:763-73.
Sonneveld MJ, Rijckborst V, Boucher CA, et al. Prediction of sustained response to peginterferon alfa-2b for hepatitis B e antigen-positive chronic hepatitis B using on-treatment hepatitis B surface antigen decline. Hepatology 2010;52:1251-7.
Sun J, Xie Q, Tan D, et al. 104-week efficacy and safety of telbivudine based optimization strategy in chronic hepatitis B patients: A randomized, controlled study. Hepatology. 2013 Nov 14.
Sung JJ, Lai JY, Zeuzem S, et al. Lamivudine compared with lamivudine and adefovir dipivoxil for the treatment of HBeAg-positive chronic hepatitis B. J Hepatol 2008;48:728-35. (Abstract)
Tassopoulos NC, Koutelou MG, Polychronaki H, Paraloglou-Ioannides M, Hadziyannis SJ. Recombinant interferon-alpha therapy for acute hepatitis B: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. J Viral Hepat 1997; 4: 387–94.
ter Borg MJ, Leemans WF, de Man RA, Janssen HL. Exacerbation of chronic hepatitis B infection after delivery. J Viral Hepat 2008;15:37-41. (Abstract)
Tillmann HL, Hadem J, Leifeld L, et al. Safety and efficacy of lamivudine in patients with severe acute or fulminant hepatitis B, a multicenter experience. J Viral Hepat 2006;13:256-63. (Abstract)
Tenney DJ, Rose RE, Baldick CJ, et al. Long-term monitoring shows hepatitis B virus resistance to entecavir in nucleoside-naïve patients is rare through 5 years of therapy. Hepatology 2009;49:1503-14. (Abstract)

Toy M, Veldhuijzen IK, de Man RA, et al. Potential impact of long-term nucleoside therapy on the mortality and morbidity of active chronic hepatitis B. Hepatology 2009;50:743-751. (Abstract)
van Bömmel F, Trojan J, Deterding K, et al. Evolution of adefovir-resistant HBV polymerase gene variants after switching to tenofovir disoproxil fumarate monotherapy. Antivir Ther. 2012;17(6):1049-58.
van Bömmel F, de Man RA, Wedemeyer H, et al. Long-term efficacy of tenofovir monotherapy for hepatitis B virus-monoinfected patients after failure of nucleoside/nucleotide analogues. Hepatology 2010;51:73-80. (Abstract)
van Zonneveld M, van Nunen AB, Niesters HG, et al. Lamivudine treatment during pregnancy to prevent perinatal transmission of hepatitis B virus infection. J Viral Hepat 2003;10:294-7. (Abstract)
Verhelst D, Monge M, Meynard JL, et al. Fanconi syndrome and renal failure induced by tenofovir: a first case report. Am J Kidney Dis 2002;40:1331-3. (Abstract)
Vassilopoulos D, Calabrese LH. Risks of immunosuppressive therapies including biologic agents in patients with rheumatic diseases and co-existing chronic viral infections. Curr Opin Rheumatol. 2007;19:619-25. (Abstract)
Waked I, Salama M, Zayed N, et al. Egyptian Guidelines 2008.
Werle-Lapostolle B, Bowden S, Locarnini S, et al. Persistence of cccDNA during the natural history of chronic hepatitis B and decline during adefovir dipivoxil therapy. Gastroenterology. 2004;126:1750-8. (Abstract)
Wiegand J, Wedemeyer H, Finger A, et al. A decline in hepatitis B virus surface antigen (HBsAg) predicts clearance, but does not correlate with quantitative HBeAg or HBV DNA levels. Antivir Ther 2008;13:547-54.
Wong DK, Cheung AM, O'Rourke K, et al. Effect of alpha-interferon treatment in patients with hepatitis B e antigen-positive chronic hepatitis B. A meta-analysis. Ann Intern Med 1993;119:312-23. (Abstract)
Wursthorn K, Lutgehetmann M, Dandri M, et al. Peginterferon alpha-2b plus adefovir induce strong cccDNA decline and HBsAg reduction in patients with chronic hepatitis B. Hepatology 2006;44:675-84. (Abstract)
Yu JW, Sun LJ, Zhao YH, et al. The Study of Efficacy of Lamivudine in Patients with Severe Acute Hepatitis B. Dig Dis Sci 2010;55:775-83. (Abstract)
Yuen MF, Fong DY,Wong DK, et al. Hepatitis B virus DNA levels at week 4 of lamivudine treatment predict the 5-year ideal response. Hepatology 2007;46:1695-1703. (Abstract)
Zhang QQ, An X, Liu YH, Li SY, Zhong Q, Wang J, et al. Long-Term Nucleos(t)ide Analogues Therapy for Adults With Chronic Hepatitis B reduces the Risk of Long-Term Complications: a meta-analysis. Virol J 2011;8:72.
Zeuzem S, Gane E, Liaw YF, et al. Baseline characteristics and early on-treatment response predict the outcomes of 2 years of telbivudine treatment of chronic hepatitis B. J Hepatol 2009;51:11-20. (Abstract)
Zoulim F, Perrillo R. Hepatitis B: reflections on the current approach to antiviral therapy. J Hepatol 2008;48:S2-S19. (Abstract)
Zoulim F, Locarnini S. Management of treatment failure in chronic hepatitis B. J Hepatol. 2012;56 Suppl

10. Hepatitis D – Diagnosis and Treatment

Heiner Wedemeyer

Introduction

Hepatitis delta is the most severe form of viral hepatitis in humans. The hepatitis delta virus (HDV) is a defective RNA virus which requires the hepatitis B virus (HBV) surface antigen (HBsAg) for complete replication and transmission, while the full extent of the HBV helper function is unexplored (Rizzetto 1983, Taylor 2006). Hence, hepatitis delta occurs only in HBsAg-positive individuals either as acute coinfection or as superinfection in patients with chronic hepatitis B (Wedemeyer 2010) (Figure 1). Several studies have shown that chronic HDV infection leads to more severe liver disease than chronic HBV monoinfection, with an accelerated course of fibrosis progression, possibly a slightly increased risk of hepatocellular carcinoma and early decompensation in the setting of established cirrhosis (Hughes 2011). Simultaneous HBV and HDV infection has also been shown to be more severe than infection with HBV alone in chimpanzees (Dienes 1990). An easy to apply clinical score has been suggested to predict the likelihood of experiencing a clinical event for patients with hepatitis delta, the baseline-event-anticipation (BEA) score (Calle-Serrano 2014). So far, only interferon α treatment has been shown to exert some antiviral activity against HDV (Lamers 2012) and has been linked to improve the long-term outcome (Farci 2004). Data on the use of pegylated interferon confirm earlier findings, leading to prolonged virological off-treatment responses in about one quarter of patients. Alternative treatment options including HBV entry inhibitors (Petersen 2008) and prenylation inhibitors (www.clinicaltrials.gov) are currently in clinical development.

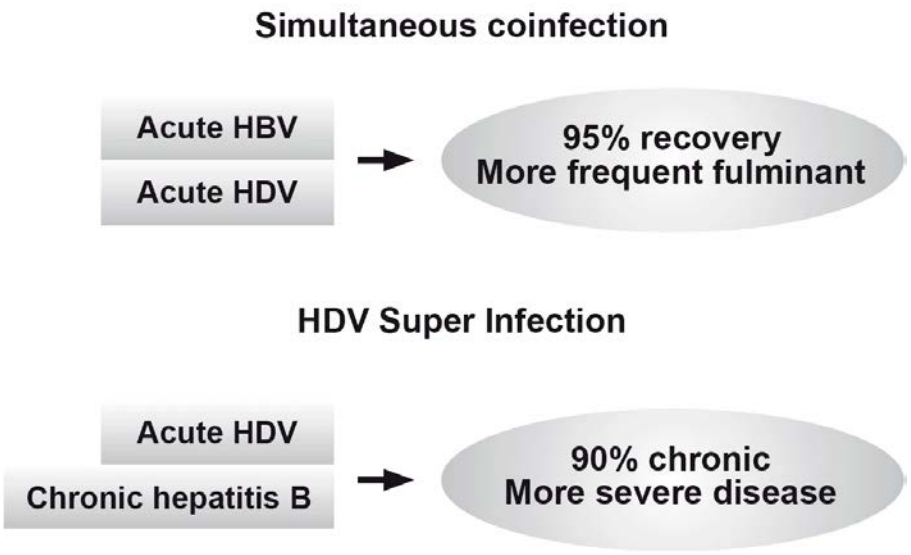


Figure 1. Courses of hepatitis delta

Virology of hepatitis delta

The HDV virion is approximately 36 nm in size, containing HDV RNA and delta antigen. HDV RNA is single-stranded, highly base-paired, circular and by far the smallest known genome of any animal virus, containing close to 1700 nucleotides (Taylor 2006). It is coated with the envelope protein derived from the pre-S and S antigens of the hepatitis B virus. The HDV RNA has six open reading frames (ORFs), three on the genomic and three on the antigenomic strand. One ORF codes for the hepatitis delta antigen (HDAg), while the other ORFs do not appear to be actively transcribed. Two HDAgs exist: the small HDAg (24 kD) is 155 amino acids long and the large HDAg (27 kD) is 214 amino acids long. A single nucleotide change (A-G) in the small HDAg sequence leads to the synthesis of the large HDAg. The small HDAg accelerates genome synthesis, while the large HDAg that inhibits HDV RNA synthesis is necessary for virion morphogenesis (Taylor 2006). Replication of HDV RNA occurs through a 'double rolling circle' model in which the genomic strand is replicated by a host RNA polymerase to yield a multimeric linear structure that is then autocatalytically cleaved to linear monomers and ligated into the circular HDV RNA viral progeny.

Genetic analysis has revealed the presence of at least eight HDV genotypes (Hughes 2011) (Figure 2). Genotype 1 is the most frequently seen genotype and is distributed throughout the world, especially in Europe, the Middle East, North America and North Africa. Genotype 2 is seen in East Asia and the Yakutia region of Russia, and genotype 3 is seen exclusively in the northern part of South America, especially in the Amazon Basin. Genotype 4 is seen in Taiwan and Japan while genotypes 5-8 are found in Africa. Genotype 1 is associated with both severe and

mild disease whereas genotype 2 causes a milder disease over a long-term course (Su 2006).

HBV genotypes may also contribute to distint clinical courses of hepatitis delta. There is no evidence that specific HDV genotypes may coinfect patients with one specific HBV genotype only. The global distribution of HBV and HDV genotypes is shown in Table 1.

Table 1. HBV and HDV genotypes

Region	HDV genotype	HBV genotype
Europe	1	D/A
Brazil	1/3	F/A/D
China, Taiwan, Japan	1/2/4	B/C
Turkey, Iran, Pakistan, India	1	D
Western Pacific	1/2	B/C/D
Africa	1, 5-8	D/A/E

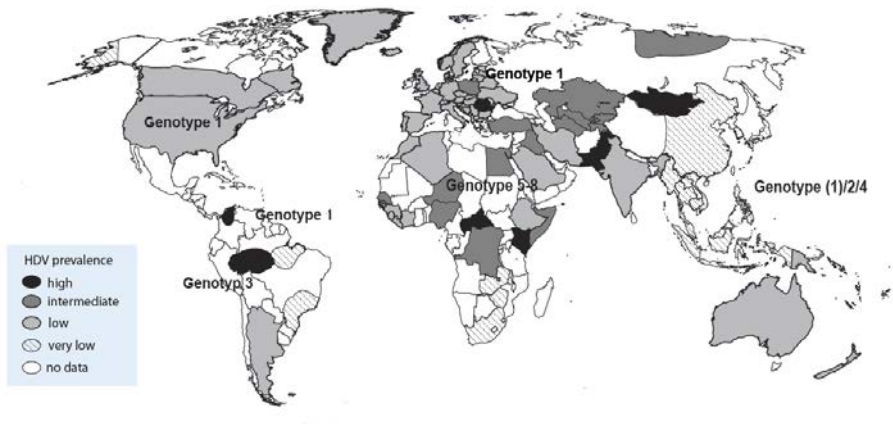


Figure 2. Prevalence of HDV genotypes

Epidemiology of hepatitis delta

Hepatitis delta is not an uncommon disease. Being linked to HBV, HDV is spread in the same way as HBV, mainly through parenteral exposure (Niro 1999). It is highly endemic in Mediterranean countries, the Middle East, Central Africa, and northern parts of South America (Hughes 2011) (Figure 2). In Western countries, high anti-HDV prevalence is found in HBsAg-positive intravenous drug users both in Europe (Gaeta 2000, Heidrich 2009, Erhardt 2010) and North America (Kurcirka 2010). Worldwide, more than 350 million people are chronically infected with HBV and 15-20 million of those are estimated to be anti-HDV positive (Wedemeyer 2010). Hepatitis delta was endemic in Southern Europe. Several studies performed in the

1980s and 1990s showed a prevalence of anti-HDV among HBsAg-positive individuals of more than 20%. As a result of the implementation of HBV vaccination programs, the incidence of HDV infections significantly decreased in Southern Europe in the 1990s (Gaeta 2000) (Figure 3). In Turkey, the HDV prevalence in HBsAg-positive patients ranged from <5% in western Turkey to >27% in southeast Turkey (Degertekin 2008). Other countries with a particularly high prevalence of hepatitis delta are Mongolia with up to one third of chronic hepatitis cases being caused by HDV infection (Tsatsralt-Od 2005), some Central Asian republics, Pakistan, northwestern states of Brazil, and some Polynesian islands (Hughes 2011). Of note, prevalence rates of HBV and HDV are not linked - for example, HDV infections are rather rare in most parts of mainland China despite very high frequencies of hepatitis B. A particular problem is that many HBsAg-positive patients are not tested for hepatitis D. A recent study from Greece even suggests that anti-HDV testing declined over the last 10 years and only about one third of hepatitis B patients are currently assessed for the presence of HDV antibodies (Manesis 2013).

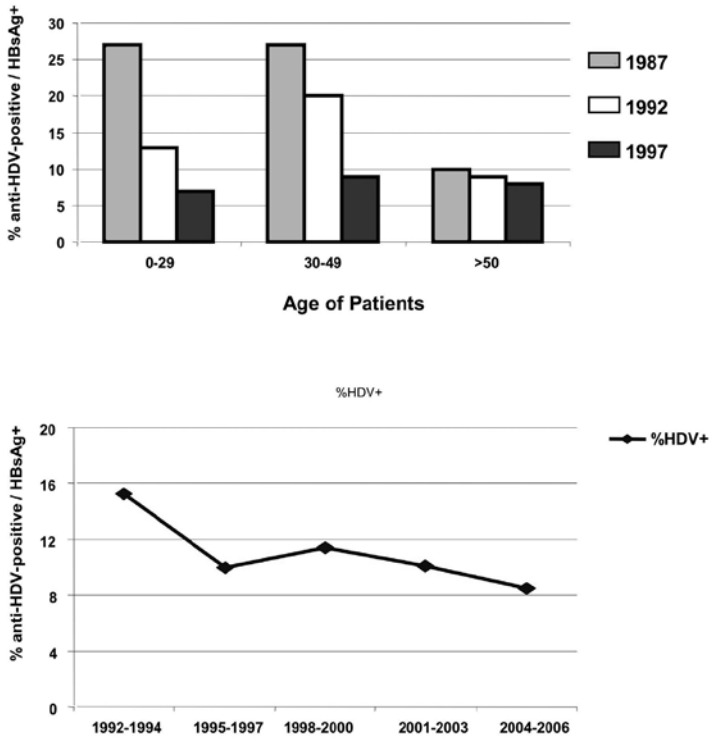


Figure 3. Prevalence of hepatitis D virus in Italy and Germany. Above: Chronic Hepatitis D: a vanishing disease. From Gaeta GB, Hepatology 2000. Below: Hepatitis D virus infection - Not a vanishing disease in Europe! From Wedemeyer, Hepatology 2007

In our experience at a referral center for liver disease, about 8-10% of HBsAg-positive patients test positive for anti-HDV (Figure 3) as chronic hepatitis delta still represents a significant health burden in Central Europe, which is a source of immigration (Wedemeyer 2007, Heidrich 2009, Erhardt 2003, Erhardt 2010) (Figure 4, Table 1). More than three quarters of our hepatitis delta patients were not born in Germany. However, the geographical origin of our patients has changed during the last decade. While until the mid-1990s the majority of HDV-positive patients were born in Turkey, the proportion of Eastern European patients has significantly increased in recent years (Wedemeyer 2007). Similarly, high HDV prevalence in immigrant populations has been described in clinics in the UK (Cross 2008), France and Italy (Le Gal 2007, Mele 2007). HDV can also be found in high frequencies in HBsAg-positive HIV-infected individuals with about 14.6% in different European regions (Soriano 2011). In France, the prevalence of HDV infection has increased during the last 15 years, again mainly in pre-infected newly arriving immigrants (Servant-Delmas 2013).

HDV prevalence is much lower in hepatitis B patients without specific risk factors and cohorts excluding a referral bias. In this setting, less than 1-2% of HBsAg-positive individuals test anti-HDV-positive, even in countries like Italy where the HDV prevalence is thought to be higher than in Northern Europe (Ippolito 2011). Thus, even though HDV infection is a major problem in distinct regions and specific cohorts, hepatitis delta is overall a rare disease and has therefore been granted orphan designation both by the FDA in November 2013 and by the European Commussion in January 2014.

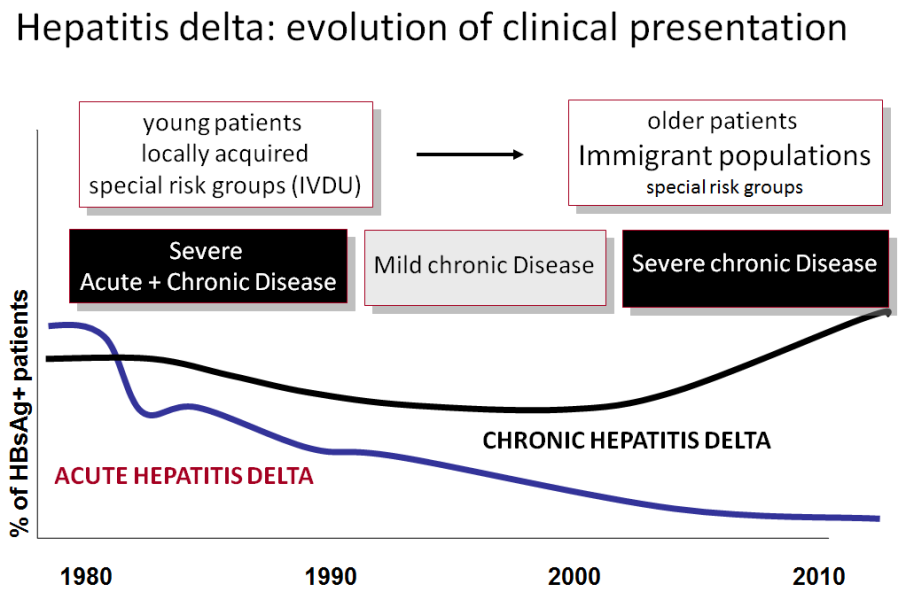


Figure 4. Hepatitis delta: evolution of clinical presentation

Pathogenesis of HDV infection

Knowledge about the pathogenesis of hepatitis delta infection is limited. Clinical observations have provided examples of mostly an immune-mediated process in hepatitis delta disease (Lunemann 2010). However, patterns suggesting a cytopathic viral disease have occasionally been observed. A typical example of this were outbreaks of severe hepatitis in the northern part of South America (Nakano 2001). These mostly fulminant hepatitis cases were induced by genotype 3 delta virus. In hepatitis delta the liver histology is not different from a patient with hepatitis B or hepatitis C with accompanying necroinflammatory lesions. Importantly, HDV viremia is not directly associated with the stage of liver disease (Zachou 2010).

Cellular immune responses against the hepatitis D virus have been described (Nisini 1997, Huang 2004, Grabowski 2011) suggesting that the quantity and quality of T cell responses may be associated with some control of the infection. Some data from our group indicate that the frequency of cytotoxic CD4+ T cells is higher in hepatitis delta patients than in individuals with HBV or HCV infection (Aslan 2006) and that HDV-specific IFN gamma and IL-2 responses are more frequent in patients with low HDV viremia (Grabowski 2011). NK cells from patients with HDV infection have recently been investigated in more detail in comparision with other hepatitis virus infections (Lunemann 2013). Overall, NK cell frequencies increased but the cells were less activated and functionally impaired. HDV infection also did not alter NK cell differentiation, and the activity of liver disease reflected alterations in NK cell surface receptor expression. Collectively, this information suggests that HDV is mainly an immune-mediated disease, at least in HDV genotype 1 infection. Ideally, antiviral therapies should therefore also aim to enhance anti-HDV immunity to confer long-term control of the infection. Still, sterilizing immunity against HDV has yet to be demonstrated. Of note, chimpanzees that have recovered from HDV infection were successfully reinfected with HDV in one study performed in the 1980s (Negro 1988).

Coinfections with multiple hepatitis viruses are associated with diverse patterns of reciprocal inhibition of viral replication (Raimondo 2006, Wedemeyer 2010). HDV has frequently been shown to suppress HBV replication (Jardí 2001, Sagnelli 2000). Between 70% and 90% of hepatitis delta patients are HBeAg-negative with low levels of HBV DNA. Humanized HBsAg-positve mice that become superinfected with HDV also show a decrease in HBV replication (Lutgehetmann 2011). A molecular explanation for the suppression of HBV replication by HDV has been suggested via the HDV proteins p24 and p27 repressing HBV enhancers (Williams 2009). However, viral dominance may change over time (Wedemeyer 2010) and about half of the hepatitis delta patients showed significant HBV replication in one study (Schaper 2010).

There is increasing evidence that HDV not only suppresses HBV replication but also HCV replication in triple-infected patients. In our experience, less than one fifth of anti-HCV/HBsAg/anti-HDV-positive individuals are positive for HCV RNA (Heidrich 2009). We even observed a case where acute HDV/HBV superinfection led to clearance of chronic hepatitis C infection (Deterding 2009). It is not clear how many anti-HCV-positive/HCV RNA-negative patients have recovered from HCV infection and how many of these patients just show a suppressed HCV replication in

the context of viral coinfections. Repeated HCV RNA testing is suggested in this context. We did not observe HCV relapses after interferon-induced cure of hepatitis delta (Wedemeyer 2011).

Clinical course of hepatitis delta

Acute HBV/HDV coinfection

Acute HBV/HDV coinfection in adults leads to recovery in more than 90% of cases but frequently causes severe acute hepatitis with a high risk for developing a fulminant course (Rizzetto 2009). In contrast, HDV is cleared spontaneously only in a minority of patients with HDV superinfection of chronic HBsAg carriers (Figure 1). The observation that the histopathology of simultaneous HBV and HDV infection is more severe than in infection with HBV alone has also been documented in experiments with chimpanzees (Dienes 1990). Several outbreaks of very severe courses of acute hepatitis delta have been described in different regions of the world (Casey 1996, Flodgren 2000, Tsatsralt-Od 2006). Fortunately, acute hepatitis delta has become rather infrequent over the last two decades in Western countries due to the introduction of vaccination programs (Figures 3 and 4).

Chronic hepatitis delta

Several early studies have shown that chronic HDV infection leads to more severe liver disease than chronic HBV monoinfection, with an accelerated course of fibrosis progression, and early decompensation in the presence of cirrhosis (Fattovich 1987, Jardi 2001, Sagnelli 2000, Rizzetto 2000, Uzunalimoglu 2001). HDV accounts for almost half of all cases of liver cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma in southeast Turkey (Degertekin 2008, Uzunalimoglu 2001, Yurdaydin 2006a). An observational study from Taiwan has reported a cumulative survival of HDV genotype 1-infected patients of as low as 50% after 15 years (Su 2006). Long-term follow-up data from Italy, Spain, Greece and Germany confirmed the particularly severe course of hepatitis delta (Romeo 2009, Niro 2010, Butí 2011, Manesis 2013, Calle-Serrano 2014). HDV infection has also been associated with a higher risk of developing liver cirrhosis in HIV-coinfected patients (Calle-Serrano 2012). In one cross-sectional study from Spain 66% of HIV/HBV/HCV/HDV-infected patients but only 6% of HBV/HCV/HIV-infected patients presented with liver cirrhosis (Castellares 2008). Similarly, hepatitis delta was associated with poorer survival in HIV-infected patients in Taiwan (Sheng 2007). An easy-to-apply clinical score, the baseline-event anticipation (BEA) score, has been suggested to predict the risk of developing liver-related morbidity and mortality (Calle-Serrano 2014). Factors associated with a poor long-term outcome included age above 40, male sex, low platelet counts, high bilirubin and INR values and southeast Mediterranean origin. The score is available on www.hepatitis-delta.org. Anti-HDV IgM testing may also be useful as anti-IgM levels are associated with activity of liver disease and seem to have prognostic implications (Mederacke 2012).

Diagnosis of hepatitis delta

We recommend that every HBsAg-positive patient be tested for anti-HDV antibodies at least once (Figure 5). There is currently no evidence that direct testing for HDV RNA in the absence of anti-HDV is of any use. A positive result for anti-HDV does not necessarily indicate "active" hepatitis delta, as HDV RNA can become negative indicating recovery from HDV infection. Over the long term as well, anti-HDV antibodies can be lost after recovery. However, anti-HDV may persist for years even when the patient has experienced HBsAg seroconversion (Wedemeyer 2007) and anti-HDV remains detectable in most patients even after liver transplantation when HBsAg and HDV RNA are cleared (Mederacke 2012).

"Active" replicative hepatitis delta should be confirmed by the detection of HDV RNA. If HDV RNA is positive, subsequent evaluation of grading and staging of liver disease, surveillance for hepatocellular carcinoma and consideration of antiviral treatment is indicated. HDV RNA quantification is offered by some laboratories. However, so far there is no evidence that HDV RNA levels correlate with any clinical marker of liver disease (Zachou 2010). HDV RNA quantification is useful in particular if antiviral treatment is indicated. Stopping rules during antiviral treatment depending on the level of antiviral decline are currently being evaluated. Patients with less than a 3 $\log_{10}$ decline of HDV RNA after 24 weeks of treatment will not benefit from antiviral treatment with PEG-IFN α-2b (Erhardt 2006). However, theses findings needs to be confirmed in prospective studies. A WHO standard for HDV has just recently been released which will allow comparision of performances of various PCR assays that have been published in recent years (Mederacke 2010, Niro 2011). Even commercial assays may show limited performance in detecting and quantifiying HDV RNA (Brichler 2013).

HDV genotyping is performed by some research labs and may help to identify patients with a higher or lower risk of developing end-stage liver disease (Su 2006). In Western countries almost all patients are infected with HDV genotype 1, thus genotyping may be considered mainly in immigrants or populations with mixed genotype prevalence.

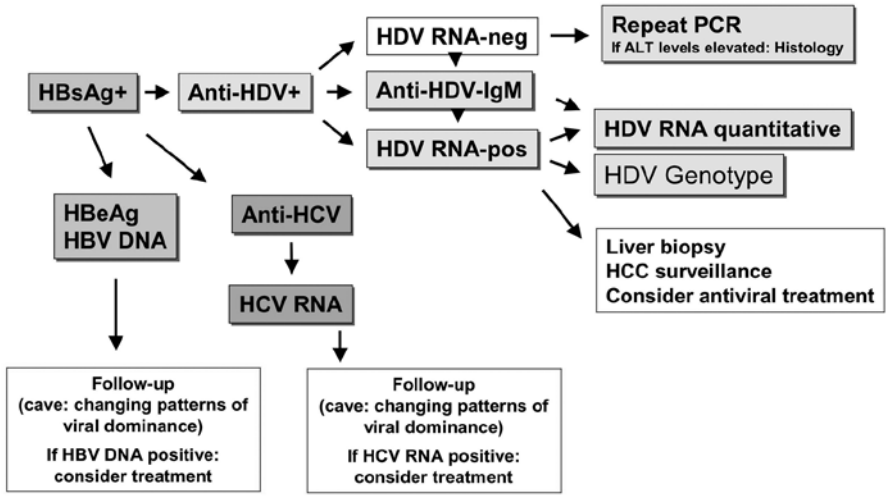


Figure 5. Diagnostic steps in hepatitis delta

In the 1980s and 1990s the diagnosis of active hepatitis delta was dependent on anti-HDV IgM testing. Anti-HDV IgM testing might still be useful in patients who test HDV RNA negative but have evidence of liver disease, which cannot be explained by other reasons. Due to the variability of the HDV genome and the lack of standardization of HDV RNA assays, HDV RNA may test false negative or be under the detection limit of the assay in the case of fluctuating viral load. In these cases, HDV RNA testing should be repeated and anti-HDV IgM testing might be performed, if available. Anti-HDV IgM levels also correlate with disease activity and may be predictive for response to IFN α-based antiviral therapy (Mederacke 2012).

As hepatitis delta only occurs in the context of HBV coinfection, a solid work-up of HBV infection including HBV DNA quantification and HBeAg/anti-HBe determination is warranted. Between 10% and 20% of hepatitis delta patients are HBeAg-positive. Of note, HBV DNA is suppressed even in HBeAg-positive hepatitis (Heidrich 2012) suggesting that the inhibitory effect of HDV on HBV is independent from the phase of HBV infection. The long-term clinical outcome of anti-HDV-positive patients did not differ between HBeAg-positive and HBeAg-neagtive individuals. Most hepatitis delta patients in Europe are infected with HBV genotype D but infection with genotype A can also occur (Soriano 2011) which may have significant implications for treatment decisions, as HBV genotype A shows a better responses to interferon α therapy (Janssen 2005). Similarly, testing for anti-HCV and anti-HIV is mandatory. In our experience, up to one third of anti-HDV-positive patients also test positive for anti-HCV (Heidrich 2009).

Treatment of hepatitis delta

Nucleoside and nucleotide analogs

Several nucleoside and nucleotide analogs used for the treatment of HBV infection have been shown to be ineffective against HDV (Table 2).

Table 2. Treatment options in hepatitis delta

Nucleos(t)ide Analogs	
Famciclovir ineffective	Yurdaydin 2002
Lamivudine ineffective	Wolters 2000, Lau 1999, Niro 2005a, Niro 2008, Yurdaydin 2008
Ribavirin ineffective	Niro 2006, Garripoli 1994, Gunsar 2005
Adefovir ineffective (12 months)	Wedemeyer 2011
Entecavir ineffective (12 months)	Kabacam 2012b
Tenofovir no evidence of short-term effect; long-term treatment associated with HBsAg and HDV RNA decline	Sheldon 2008
Interferon α	
Sustained biochemical responses in 0-36% of patients Few studies with virological endpoints Treatment >12 months may be required	Farci 1994, Di Marco 1996, Niro 2005b, Yurdaydin 2008
Higher IFN doses were associated with better survival in small study cohort	Farci 2004

Famciclovir, used in the 1990s to treat HBV infection (Wedemeyer 1999), had no significant antiviral activity against HDV in a Turkish trial (Yurdaydin 2002). Similarly, lamivudine was ineffective in trials of hepatitis delta (Wolters 2000, Niro 2005a, Yurdaydin 2008, Lau 1999b). Ribavirin alone or in combination with interferon also did not lead to increased rates of HDV RNA clearance (Niro 2005a, Gunsar 2005, Garripoli 1994). None of the patients treated with adefovir monotherapy for 12 months became HDV RNA-negative in the HIDIT-1 trial (Wedemeyer 2011). Similarly, short-term entecavir treatment did not show significant activity against HDV (Kabacam 2012b) However, a long-term observational study of HIV-infected individuals receiving HAART followed HBV/HDV/HIV-coinfected individuals for a median of more than 6 years; over this time, a decline of HDV RNA from 7 $\log_{10}$ to 5.8 $\log_{10}$ was observed and 3 out of 16 patients became HDV RNA-negative (Sheldon 2008). Thus, very long treatment with HBV polymerase inhibitors may lead to beneficial effects in hepatitis delta possibly due to a reduction of HBsAg levels (Figure 6). Future long-term trials will need to confirm these data in triple-infected individuals.

One promising and surprising alternative to the currently approved HBV polymerase inhibitors may have been clevudine. Clevudine, a nucleoside analog no longer in development for the treatment of hepatitis B, was shown to inhibit delta virus viremia in woodchucks (Casey 2005). However, a first pilot trial showed no significant HDV RNA declines (Yakut 2010).

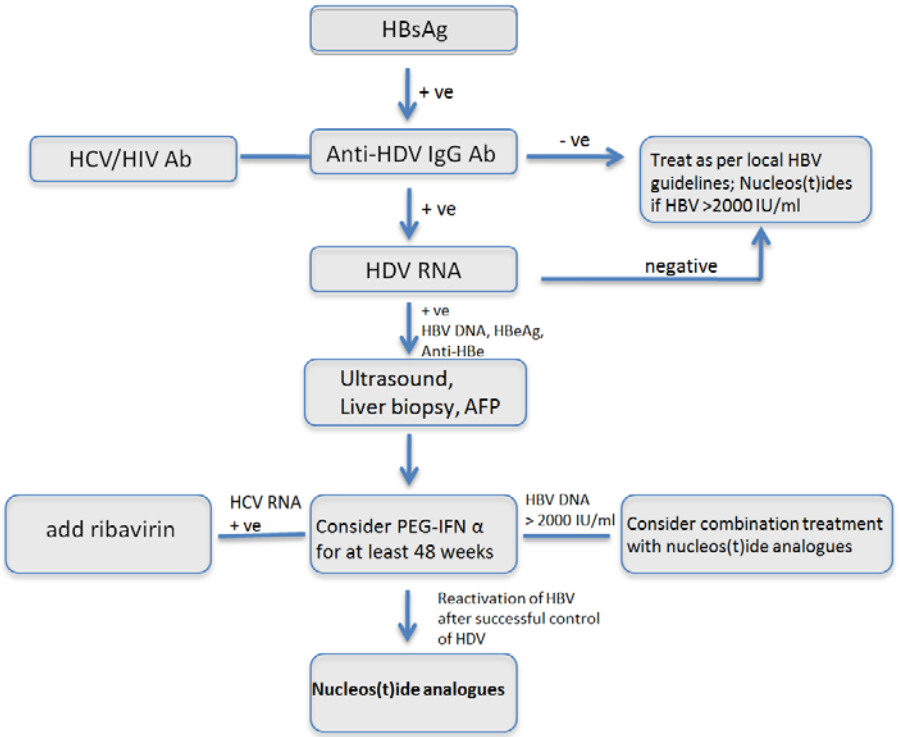


Figure 6. Treatment algorithm for hepatitis delta

Recombinant interferon α

Interferon α has been used for the treatment of hepatitis delta since the mid-1980s (Rizzetto 1986). Since then, many trials have explored different durations and doses of interferon α in HDV-infected patients. However, data are difficult to compare as endpoints are different in the trials and few studies have followed HDV RNA levels over time (Niro 2005b).

One randomized Italian study on the use of high dose interferon α associated a beneficial long-term outcome in hepatitis delta patients with high dose interferon treatment (Farci 1994, Farci 2004). Some studies have used extended doses of interferon treatment and it seems that two years of treatment is superior in terms of HDV RNA clearance (Niro 2005b). In one NIH case report, 12 years of interferon treatment led finally to resolution of both HDV infection and HBsAg clearance (Lau 1999a). However, high doses of interferon and extended treatment are tolerated only by a minority of patients and treatment options are very limited for the majority (Manns 2006).

Pegylated interferon α

Pegylated interferon has been used in small trials to treat hepatitis delta, with post-treatment virological response rates of about 20% (Castelnau 2006, Niro 2006, Erhardt 2006) (Table 3).

Table 3. Pegylated interferon in hepatitis delta

Study	Course of therapy	Outcome*
Castelnau, Hepatology 2006	12 months of PEG-IFN α-2b (n=14)	FU24R in 6 patients (43%)
Niro, Hepatology 2006	72 weeks of PEG-IFN α-2b (n=38) – Monotherapy: n=16 – PEG-IFN + ribavirin during first 48 weeks: n=22	FU24R in 8 patients (21%) Ribavirin had no additional effect
Erhardt, Liver Int 2006	48 weeks of PEG-IFN α-2b (n=12)	FU24R in 2 patients (17%)
Wedemeyer,, NEJM 2011	a) 48 weeks PEG-IFN α-2a + adefovir (n=31) or b) PEG-IFN α-2a + placebo (n=29) or c) Adefovir (n=30)	FU24R Group a) 26% Group b) 31% Group c) 0%
Ormeci, Hepatogastroenterology 2011	PEG-IFN α-2b 24 months (n=11) vs. 12 months (n=7)	No additional benefit of extended therapy
Karaca, Antivir Ther 2013	24 months PEG-IFN α-2a (n=32)	FU24R in 15 patients (47%)

*FU24R: "Follow-up week 24 response" meaning HDV RNA negativity 24 weeks after the end of therapy. The term "SVR" should be avoided as late HDV RNA relapses may occur and thus an early off-treatment response may not necessarily be "sustained".

Results of the Hep-Net International Delta hepatitis Intervention Trial (HIDIT-1) were published in 2011 (Wedemeyer 2011). 90 patients (42 in Germany, 39 in Turkey and 9 in Greece) with chronic HDV infection and compensated liver disease were randomized to receive either 180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a QW plus 10 mg adefovir dipivoxil QD (group A, n=31), 180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a QW plus placebo (group B, n=29) or 10 mg adefovir dipivoxil qd alone (group C, n=30) for 48 weeks. HBV DNA and HDV RNA were measured by real-time PCR. Ten patients did not complete 48 weeks of therapy because of disease progression (n=6) or interferon-associated side effects (n=4). Both PEG-IFN groups showed a significantly higher reduction in mean HDV RNA levels than the adefovir monotherapy group by week 48. HDV RNA was negative 24 weeks after the end of treatment in 28% of patients receiving PEG-IFN but in none of those treated with adefovir alone. While patients receiving PEG-IFN α-2a alone or adefovir monotherapy had similar mean HBsAg levels at week 0 and week 48, the PEG-IFN α-2a + adefovir combination group showed a 1.1 $\log_{10}$ IU/ml decline of HBsAg levels by week 48 ($p<0.001$) with 10/30 patients achieving a decline in HBsAg of more than 1 $\log_{10}$ IU/ml. These data are similar to a report from Greece of a significant decline in HbsAg levels in hepatitis delta patients receiving long-term treatment with interferon α (Manesis 2007).

Overall the HIDIT-1 study showed that (i) PEG-IFN α-2a displays a significant antiviral efficacy against HDV in more than 40% of patients with about one fourth

becoming HDV RNA negative after 48 weeks; (ii) adefovir dipivoxil has little efficacy in terms of HDV RNA reduction but may be considered for patients with significant HBV replication; (iii) combination therapy of PEG-IFN α-2a plus adefovir has no advantages for HBV DNA or HDV RNA reduction; (iv) a combination therapy of pegylated interferon + adefovir was superior to either monotherapy in reducing HBsAg levels in HBV-infected patients (Wedemeyer 2011). However, adefovir treatment was associated with a decline in glomerular filtration rates (Mederacke 2012) and thus PEG-IFN α + adefovir combination treatment cannot be recommended as first-line treatment for all patients with hepatitis delta. Treatment was safe and effective in patients with compensated liver cirrhosis (Kabacam 2012a), however treatment is not recommended in individuals with more advanced liver disease as liver decompensation may occur (Heidrich 2013). Moreoever, a long-term follow-up study of the HIDIT-1 trial showed that late HDV RNA relapses can occur even though these were not associated with the development of clinical hepatic events.

Currently, additional trials are ongoing to investigate the efficacy of PEG-IFN α-2a in combination with tenofovir for the treatment of hepatitis delta. First data of the HIDIT-2 trial were presented in 2013 showing that up to 47% of patients became HDV RNA negative after 96 weeks of PEG-IFN α-2a therapy irrespective of adding tenofovir or placebo (Wedemeyer 2013). In contrast to combination with adefovir, PEG-IFN α-2a plus tenofovir had no advantages in terms of HBsAg reduction after one year. However, relapses occurred after therapy and thus prolonged therapy may not necessarily prevent re-appearance of HDV and thus should not be considered in all patients unless prononounced HBsAg declines are observed – even though a smaller Turkish study reported rather high response rates of close to 50% (Karaca 2013).

Alternative treatment options for hepatitis delta are currently being explored. Among these, prenylation inhibitors are promising (Bordier 2003). HDV replication depends on a prenylation step and prenylation inhibitors have already been developed for the treatment of malignancies. First proof-of-concept studies exploring the safety and efficacy of prenylation inhibitors in patients with hepatitis delta have been initiated (www.clinicaltrials.gov). The HBV entry inhibitor Myrcludex-B is also being developed for hepatitis delta. Myrcludex-B is a lipopeptide derived from the preS1 domain of the HBV envelope (Petersen 2008) and has been shown to hinder HDV infection in uPA/SCID mice transplanted with human hepatocytes (Lütgehetmann 2011). The molecular target of Myrcludex is the bile acid transporter sodium taurocholate cotransporting peptide (Ni 2013). The compound is also currently being tested in Phase 1 and Phase 2a trials in healthy volunteers and patients with hepatitis B.

Liver transplantation for hepatitis delta

Liver transplantation remains the ultimate treatment option for many hepatitis delta patients with end-stage liver disease. Hepatitis delta patients have lower risk for reinfection after transplantation than HBV-monoinfected patients (Samuel 1993). If prophylaxis by passive immunization with anti-HBs antibodies and administration of HBV polymerase is applied, HBV/HDV reinfection can be prevented in all

individuals (Rosenau 2007) leading to an excellent long-term outcome after transplantation. HDV RNA levels rapidly decline during the first days after transplantation (Mederacke 2012) but HDAg may persist in the transplanted liver for several years (Smedile 1998, Mederacke 2012). The possibility of reactivation of latent HDV infection by HBV superinfection has also been confirmed experimentally in a mouse model with transplanted human hepatocytes (Giersch 2013). Mice infected with HDV lacking HBV could be rescued by HBV superinfection after 2-6 weeks leading to a productive coinfection. Long-term prophylaxis to prevent HBV reinfection is therefore recommended in patients transplanted for hepatitis delta as reinfection may lead to HDV reactivation for which treatment options are very limited.

More information on hepatitis delta for physicians and patients can be found on the website of the Heptitis Delta International Network: www.hepatitis-delta.org

References

Aslan N, Yurdaydin C, Wiegand J, Greten T, Ciner A, Meyer MF, et al. Cytotoxic CD4 T cells in viral hepatitis. J Viral Hepat 2006;13:505-14. (Abstract)

Bordier BB, Ohkanda J, Liu P, Lee SY, Salazar FH, Marion PL, et al. In vivo antiviral efficacy of prenylation inhibitors against hepatitis delta virus. J Clin Invest 2003;112:407-14. (Abstract)

Brichler S, Le Gal F, Butt A, Chevret S, Gordien E. Commercial real-time reverse transcriptase PCR assays can underestimate or fail to quantify hepatitis delta virus viremia. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2013;11:734-40.

Butí M, Homs M, Rodriguez-Frias F, Funalleras G, Jardi R, et al. Clinical outcome of acute and chronic hepatitis delta over time: a long-term follow-up study. J Viral Hepat 2011; 18: 434-442.

Calle-Serrano B, Großhennig A, Homs M, et al. Development and Evaluation of a Baseline Event-Anticipation (BEA)-Score for Hepatitis Delta. Journal of Viral Hepatitis 2014; epub.

Calle-Serrano B, Manns MP, Wedemeyer H. Hepatitis Delta in HIV-infected individuals. Seminars in Liver Disease 2012; 32: 120-9.

Casey J, Cote PJ, Toshkov IA, Chu CK, Gerin JL, Hornbuckle WE, et al. Clevudine inhibits hepatitis delta virus viremia: a pilot study of chronically infected woodchucks. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 2005;49:4396-9. (Abstract)

Casey JL, Niro GA, Engle RE, Vega A, Gomez H, McCarthy M, et al. Hepatitis B virus (HBV)/hepatitis D virus (HDV) coinfection in outbreaks of acute hepatitis in the Peruvian Amazon basin: the roles of HDV genotype III and HBV genotype F. J Infect Dis 1996;174:920-6. (Abstract)

Castellares C, Barreiro P, Martin-Carbonero L, Labarga P, Vispo ME, Casado R, et al. Liver cirrhosis in HIV-infected patients: prevalence, aetiology and clinical outcome. J Viral Hepat 2008;15:165-72. (Abstract)

Castelnau C, Le Gal F, Ripault MP, Gordien E, Martinot-Peignoux M, Boyer N, et al. Efficacy of peginterferon alpha-2b in chronic hepatitis delta: relevance of quantitative RT-PCR for follow-up. Hepatology 2006;44:728-35. (Abstract)

Cross TJ, Rizzi P, Horner M, et al. The increasing prevalence of hepatitis delta virus (HDV) infection in South London. J Med Virol 2008;80:277-82. (Abstract)

Dienes HP, Purcell RH, Popper H, Ponzetto A. The significance of infections with two types of viral hepatitis demonstrated by histologic features in chimpanzees. J Hepatol 1990;10:77-84. (Abstract)

Degertekin H, Yalcin K, Yakut M, Yurdaydin C. Seropositivity for delta hepatitis in patients with chronic hepatitis B and liver cirrhosis in Turkey: a meta-analysis. Liver Int 2008;28:494-98. (Abstract)

Deterding K, Pothakamuri SV, Schlaphoff V, et al. Clearance of chronic HCV infection during acute delta hepatitis. Infection 2009;37:159-62. (Abstract)

Erhardt A, Knuth R, Sagir A, Kirschberg O, Heintges T, Haussinger D. Socioepidemiological data on hepatitis delta in a German university clinic--increase in patients from Eastern Europe and the former Soviet Union. Z Gastroenterol 2003;41:523-6. (Abstract)

Erhardt A, Gerlich W, Starke C, Wend U, Donner A, Sagir A, et al. Treatment of chronic hepatitis delta with pegylated interferon-alpha2b. Liver Int 2006;26:805-10. (Abstract)

Erhardt A, Hoernke M, Heinzel-Pleines U, Sagir A, Göbel T, Häussinger D. Retrospective analysis of chronic hepatitis D in a Western German University Clinic over two decades: migratory pattern, prevalence and clinical outcome. Z Gastroenterol 2010; 48:813-7.

Farci P, Mandas A, Coiana A, Lai ME, Desmet V, Van Eyken P, et al. Treatment of chronic hepatitis D with interferon alfa-2a. N Engl J Med 1994;330:88-94. (Abstract)

Farci P, Roskams T, Chessa L, Peddis G, Mazzoleni AP, Scioscia R, et al. Long-term benefit of interferon alpha therapy of chronic hepatitis D: regression of advanced hepatic fibrosis. Gastroenterology 2004;126:1740-9. (Abstract)

Fattovich G, Boscaro S, Noventa F, Pornaro E, Stenico D, Alberti A, et al. Influence of hepatitis delta virus infection on progression to cirrhosis in chronic hepatitis type B. J Infect Dis 1987;155:931-5. (Abstract)

Fattovich G, Giustina G, Christensen E, Pantalena M, Zagni I, Realdi G, et al. Influence of hepatitis delta virus infection on morbidity and mortality in compensated cirrhosis type B. The European Concerted Action on Viral Hepatitis (Eurohep). Gut 2000;46:420-6. (Abstract)

Flodgren E, Bengtsson S, Knutsson M, Strebkova EA, Kidd AH, Alexeyev OA, et al. Recent high incidence of fulminant hepatitis in Samara, Russia: molecular analysis of prevailing hepatitis B and D virus strains. J Clin Microbiol 2000;38:3311-6. (Abstract)

Gaeta GB, Stroffolini T, Chiaramonte M, Ascione T, Stornaiuolo G, Lobello S, et al. Chronic hepatitis D: a vanishing Disease? An Italian multicenter study. Hepatology 2000;32(4 Pt 1):824-7. (Abstract)

Garripoli A, Di Marco V, Cozzolongo R, et al. Ribavirin treatment for chronic hepatitis D: a pilot study. Liver 1994;14:154-7. (Abstract)

Giersch K, Helbig M, Volz T, Allweiss L, Mancke LV, Lohse AW et al. Persistent hepatitis D virus mono-infection is efficiently converted by hepatitis B virus to a productive co-infection. J Hepatol 2013, epub Nov 13.

Grabowski J, Wedemeyer H. Hepatitis delta: immunopathogenesis and clinical challenges. Dig Dis 2010;28:133-8.

Grabowski J, Yurdaydin C, Zachou K, et al. Hepatitis D virus-specific cytokine responses in patients with chronic hepatitis delta before and during interferon alfa-treatment. Liver Int 2011;31:1395-405. (Abstract)

Gunsar F, Akarca US, Ersoz G, Kobak AC, Karasu Z, Yuce G, et al. Two-year interferon therapy with or without ribavirin in chronic delta hepatitis. Antivir Ther 2005;10:721-6. (Abstract)

Hadziyannis SJ. Review: hepatitis delta. J Gastroenterol Hepatol 1997;12:289-98. (Abstract)

Heidrich B, Deterding K, Tillmann HL, Raupach R, Manns MP, Wedemeyer H. Virological and clinical characteristics of delta hepatitis in Central Europe. J Viral Hepat 2009;16:883-94. (Abstract)

Heidrich B, C Serrano B, Idilman R, Kabaçam G, Bremer B, Raupach R, et al. HBeAg-positive hepatitis delta: virological patterns and clinical long-term outcome HBeAg-positive hepatitis delta. Liver Int 2012:32:1415-25. (Abstract)

Heidrich B, Manns MP, Wedemeyer H. Treatment Options for Hepatitis Delta Virus Infection. Curr Infect Dis Rep 2013;15:31-8.

Hershow RC, Chomel BB, Graham DR, Schyve PM, Mandel EJ, Kane MA, et al. Hepatitis D virus infection in Illinois state facilities for the developmentally disabled. Epidemiology and clinical manifestations. Ann Intern Med 1989;110:779-85. (Abstract)

Huang YH, Tao MH, Hu CP, Syu WJ, Wu JC. Identification of novel HLA-A*0201-restricted CD8+ T-cell epitopes on hepatitis delta virus. J Gen Virol 2004;85(Pt 10):3089-3098. (Abstract)

Hughes SA, Wedemeyer H, Harrison PM. Hepatitis delta virus. Lancet 2011;378:73-85. (Abstract)

Ippolito AM, Niro GA, Fontana R, et al. Unawareness of HBV infection among inpatients in a Southern Italian hospital. J Viral Hepatitis 2011; 18:e206-211.
Janssen HL, van Zonneveld M, Senturk H, et al. Pegylated interferon alfa-2b alone or in combination with lamivudine for HBeAg-positive chronic hepatitis B: a randomised trial. Lancet 2005;365:123-9. (Abstract)
Jardi R, Rodriguez F, Buti M, et al. Role of hepatitis B, C, and D viruses in dual and triple infection: influence of viral genotypes and hepatitis B precore and basal core promoter mutations on viral replicative interference. Hepatology 2001;34:404-410. (Abstract)
Kabaçam G, Dalekos GN, Cakaloğlu Y, et al. Pegylated interferon-based treatment in patients with advanced liver disease due to chronic delta hepatitis. Turk J Gastroenterol. 2012a; 23:560-8.
Kabacam G, Onder FO, Yakut M, et al. Entecavir treatment of chronic hepatitis D. Clin Infect Dis 2012b, 55: 645-650.
Karaca C, Soyer OM, Baran B, et al. Efficacy of pegylated interferon-α treatment for 24 months in chronic delta hepatitis and predictors of response. Antivir Ther. 2013;18:561-6.
Lamers MH, Kirgiz OO, Heidrich B, Wedemeyer H, Drenth JP. Interferon-α for patients with chronic hepatitis delta: a systematic review of randomized clinical trials. Antivir Ther 2012;17:1029-37.
Lau DT (a), Kleiner DE, Park Y, Di Bisceglie AM, Hoofnagle JH. Resolution of chronic delta hepatitis after 12 years of interferon alfa therapy. Gastroenterology 1999;117:1229-33. (Abstract)
Lau DT (b), Doo E, Park Y, et al. Lamivudine for chronic delta hepatitis. Hepatology 1999;30:546-9.
Le Gal F, Castelneau C , Gault E, et al. Hepatitis D virus infection-not a vanishing disease in Europe! Hepatology 2007;45:1332-3. (Abstract)
Lunemann S, Malone DF, Hengst J, Port K, Grabowski J, Deterding K et al. Compromised Function of Natural Killer Cells in Acute and Chronic Viral Hepatitis. J Infect Dis. 2013 Nov 1.
Lütgehetmann M, Mancke LV, Volz T, et al. Humanized chimeric uPA mouse model for the study of hepatitis B and D virus interactions and preclinical drug evaluation. Hepatology 2012;55:685-94. (Abstract)
Manns MP, Wedemeyer H, Cornberg M. Treating viral hepatitis C: efficacy, side effects, and complications. Gut 2006;55:1350-59. (Abstract)
Manesis EK, Schina M, Le Gal F, Agelopoulou O, Papaioannou C, Kalligeros C, et al. Quantitative analysis of hepatitis D virus RNA and hepatitis B surface antigen serum levels in chronic delta hepatitis improves treatment monitoring. Antivir Ther 2007;12:381-8. (Abstract)
Manesis EK, Vourli G, Dalekos G, Vasiliadis T, Manolaki N, Hounta A, et al. Prevalence and clinical course of hepatitis delta infection in Greece: a 13 year prospective study. J Hepatol 2013; 59:949-59.
Mederacke I, Bremer B, Heidrich B, et al. Establishment of a novel quantitative hepatitis D virus (HDV) RNA assay using the Cobas TaqMan platform to study HDV RNA kinetics. J Clin Microbiol 2010;48:2022-9. (Abstract)
Mederacke I, Yurdaydin C, Großhennig A, et al. Renal function during treatment with adefovir plus peginterferon alfa-2a vs either drug alone in hepatitis B/D co-infection. J Viral Hepat 2012;19:387-395.
Mederacke I, Filmann N, Yurdaydin C, et al. Rapid early HDV RNA decline in the peripheral blood but prolonged intrahepatic hepatitis delta antigen persistence after liver transplantation. J Hepatol 2012;56:115-22. (Abstract)
Mederacke I, Yurdaydin C, Dalekos GN, Bremer B, Erhardt A, Cakaloglu Y, et al. Anti-HDV immunoglobulin M testing in hepatitis delta revisited: correlations with disease activity and response to pegylated interferon-α2a treatment. Antivir Ther 2012;17:305-12.
Mele A, Mariano A, Tosti ME, Stroffolini T, et al. Acute hepatitis delta virus infection in Italy: incidence and risk factors after the introduction of the universal anti-hepatitis B vaccination campaign. Clin Infect Dis 2007; 44:e17-24. (Abstract)
Nakano T, Shapiro CN, Hadler SC, Casey JL, Mizokami M, Orito E, et al. Characterization of hepatitis D virus genotype III among Yucpa Indians in Venezuela. J Gen Virol 2001;82(Pt 9):2183-2189. (Abstract)

Negro F, Bergmann KF, Baroudy BM, et al. Chronic hepatitis D virus (HDV) infection in hepatitis B virus carrier chimpanzees experimentally superinfected with HDV. J Infect Dis 1988;158:151-9. (Abstract)
Ni Y, Lempp FA, Mehrle S, Nkongolo S, Kaufman C, Fälth M et al. Hepatitis B and D Viruses Exploit Sodium Taurocholate Co-transporting Polypeptide for Species-specific Entry into Hepatocytes. Gastroenterology. 2013 Dec 18.
Niro GA, Casey JL, Gravinese E, Garrubba M, Conoscitore P, Sagnelli E, et al. Intrafamilial transmission of hepatitis delta virus: molecular evidence. J Hepatol 1999;30:564-9. (Abstract)
Niro GA (a), Ciancio A, Tillman HL, Lagget M, Olivero A, Perri F, et al. Lamivudine therapy in chronic delta hepatitis: a multicentre randomized-controlled pilot study. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2005;22:227-32. (Abstract)
Niro GA (b), Rosina F, Rizzetto M. Treatment of hepatitis D. J Viral Hepat 2005;12:2-9. (Abstract)
Niro GA, Ciancio A, Gaeta GB, Smedile A, Marrone A, Olivero A, et al. Pegylated interferon alpha-2b as monotherapy or in combination with ribavirin in chronic hepatitis delta. Hepatology 2006;44:713-20. (Abstract)
Niro GA, Smedile A, Ippolito AM, et al. Outcome of chronic delta hepatitis in Italy: a long-term cohort study. J Hepatol 2010;53:834-40. (Abstract)
Niro GA, Gioffreda D, Fontana R. Hepatitis delta virus infection: open issues. Dig Liver Dis 2011;43 Suppl 1:S19-24. (Abstract)
Nisini R, Paroli M, Accapezzato D, Bonino F, Rosina F, Santantonio T, et al. Human CD4+ T-cell response to hepatitis delta virus: identification of multiple epitopes and characterization of T-helper cytokine profiles. J Virol 1997;71:2241-51. (Abstract)
Ormeci N, Bolukbas F, Erden E, et al. Pegylated interferon alfa-2B for chronic delta hepatitis: 12 versus 24 months. Hepatogastroenterology 2011;58:1648-53. (Abstract)
Petersen J, Dandri M, Mier W, et al. Prevention of hepatitis B virus infection in vivo by entry inhibitors derived from the large envelope protein. Nat Biotechnol 2008;26:335-41. (Abstract)
Radjef N, Gordien E, Ivaniushina V, Gault E, Anais P, Drugan T, et al. Molecular phylogenetic analyses indicate a wide and ancient radiation of African hepatitis delta virus, suggesting a deltavirus genus of at least seven major clades. J Virol 2004;78:2537-44. (Abstract)
Raimondo G, Brunetto MR, Pontisso P, Smedile A, Maina AM, Saitta C, et al. Longitudinal evaluation reveals a complex spectrum of virological profiles in hepatitis B virus/hepatitis C virus-coinfected patients. Hepatology 2006;43:100-7. (Abstract)
Rizzetto M. The delta agent. Hepatology 1983;3:729-37. (Abstract)
Rizzetto M, Rosina F, Saracco G, Bellando PC, Actis GC, Bonino F, et al. Treatment of chronic delta hepatitis with alpha-2 recombinant interferon. J Hepatol 1986;3 Suppl 2:S229-33. (Abstract)
Rizzetto M. Hepatitis D: thirty years after. J Hepatol 2009;50:1043-50. (Abstract)
Romeo R, Del Ninno E, Rumi M, et al. A 28-year study of the course of hepatitis Delta infection: a risk factor for cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma. Gastroenterology 2009;136:1629-38. (Abstract)
Rosenau J, Kreutz T, Kujawa M, et al. HBsAg level at time of liver transplantation determines HBsAg decrease and anti-HBs increase and affects HBV DNA decrease during early immunoglobulin administration. J Hepatol 2007;46:635-44. (Abstract)
Sagnelli E, Coppola N, Scolastico C, et al. Virologic and clinical expressions of reciprocal inhibitory effect of hepatitis B, C, and delta viruses in patients with chronic hepatitis. Hepatology 2000;32:1106-10. (Abstract)
Samuel D, Muller R, Alexander G, et al. Liver transplantation in European patients with the hepatitis B surface antigen. N Engl J Med 1993;329:1842-7. (Abstract)
Schaper M, Rodriguez-Frias F, Jardi R, et al. Quantitative longitudinal evaluations of hepatitis delta virus RNA and hepatitis B virus DNA shows a dynamic, complex replicative profile in chronic hepatitis B and D. J Hepatol 2010;52:658-64. (Abstract)
Servant-Delmas A, Le Gal F, Gallian P, Gordien E, Laperche S. Increasing prevalence of HDV/HBV infection over 15 years in France. J Clin Virol 2013, epub Dec 7.

Sheldon J, Ramos B, Toro C, et al. Does treatment of hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection reduce hepatitis delta virus (HDV) replication in HIV-HBV-HDV-coinfected patients? Antivir Ther 2008;13:97-102. (Abstract)
Sheng WH, Hung CC, Kao JH, et al. Impact of hepatitis D virus infection on the long-term outcomes of patients with hepatitis B virus and HIV coinfection in the era of highly active antiretroviral therapy: a matched cohort study. Clin Infect Dis 2007;44:988-95. (Abstract)
Smedile A, Casey JL, Cote PJ, et al. Hepatitis D viremia following orthotopic liver transplantation involves a typical HDV virion with a hepatitis B surface antigen envelope. Hepatology 1998;27:1723-9. (Abstract)
Soriano V, Grint D, d'Arminio Monforte A, et al. Hepatitis delta in HIV-infected individuals in Europe. AIDS 2011;25:1987-92. (Abstract)
Su CW, Huang YH, Huo TI, Shih HH, Sheen IJ, Chen SW, et al. Genotypes and viremia of hepatitis B and D viruses are associated with outcomes of chronic hepatitis D patients. Gastroenterology 2006;130:1625-35. (Abstract)
Taylor JM. Hepatitis delta virus. Virology 2006;344:71-6. (Abstract)
Tsatsralt-Od B, Takahashi M, Nishizawa T, Endo K, Inoue J, Okamoto H. High prevalence of dual or triple infection of hepatitis B, C, and delta viruses among patients with chronic liver disease in Mongolia. J Med Virol 2005;77:491-99. (Abstract)
Tsatsralt-Od B, Takahashi M, Endo K, et al. Infection with hepatitis A, B, C, and delta viruses among patients with acute hepatitis in Mongolia. J Med Virol 2006;78:542-50. (Abstract)
Troisi CL, Hollinger FB, Hoots WK, et al. A multicenter study of viral hepatitis in a United States hemophilic population. Blood 1993;81:412-18. (Abstract)
Uzunalimoglu O, Yurdaydin C, Cetinkaya H, et al. Risk factors for hepatocellular carcinoma in Turkey. Dig Dis Sci 2001;46:1022-28. (Abstract)
Wedemeyer H, Boker KH, Pethig K, et al. Famciclovir treatment of chronic hepatitis B in heart transplant recipients: a prospective trial. Transplantation 1999;68:1503-11. (Abstract)
Wedemeyer H, Yurdaydin C. Delta Hepatitis. In: Tillman HL, editor. Handbuch Hepatitis B: Diagnostik, Verlauf, Therapie. Bremen: Uni-Med, 2007: 96-103.
Wedemeyer H, Heidrich B, Manns MP. Hepatitis D virus infection - Not a vanishing disease in Europe! Hepatology 2007;45:1331-1332. (Abstract)
Wedemeyer H, Manns MP. Epidemiology, pathogenesis and management of hepatitis D: update and challenges ahead. Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol 2010;7:31-40. (Abstract)
Wedemeyer H. Re-emerging interest in hepatitis delta: new insights into the dynamic interplay between HBV and HDV. J Hepatol 2010;52:627-9. (Abstract)
Wedemeyer H, Yurdaydìn C, Dalekos GN, Erhardt A, Çakaloğlu Y, Değertekin H, et al. Pegylated interferon plus adefovir versus either drug alone for hepatitis delta. N Engl J Med 2011; 364:322-31.
Wedemeyer H, Yurdaydın C, Caruntu FA; Curescu MG, Yalçın K, Akarca US, et al. Pegylated-Interferon-alfa-2a plus Tenofovir or Placebo for the Treatment of Hepatitis Delta. 64th Annual Meeting of the American Association for the Study of Liver Disease (AASLD 2013). Washington DC, November 1-5. 2013.
Weisfuse IB, Hadler SC, Fields HA, Alter MJ, O'Malley PM, Judson FN, et al. Delta hepatitis in homosexual men in the United States. Hepatology 1989;9:872-4. (Abstract)
Williams V, Brichler S, Radjef N, et al. Hepatitis delta virus proteins repress hepatitis B virus enhancers and activate the alpha/beta interferon-inducible MxA gene. J Gen Virol 2009;90:2759-67. (Abstract)
Wolters LM, van Nunen AB, Honkoop P, Vossen AC, Niesters HG, Zondervan PE, et al. Lamivudine-high dose interferon combination therapy for chronic hepatitis B patients co-infected with the hepatitis D virus. J Viral Hepat 2000;7:428-34. (Abstract)
Yakut M, Seven G, Baran B, et al. Clevudine treatment of chronic delta hepatitis. J Hepatol 2010;52 Suppl 1:473.
Yurdaydin C, Bozkaya H, Gurel S, Tillmann HL, Aslan N, Okcu-Heper A, et al. Famciclovir treatment of chronic delta hepatitis. J Hepatol 2002;37:266-71. (Abstract)
Yurdaydin C. Delta hepatitis in Turkey: decreasing but not vanishing and still of concern. Turk J Gastroenterol 2006;17:74-5. (Abstract)

Yurdaydin C (b), Bozkaya H, Onder FO, Senturk H, Karaaslan H, Akdogan M, et al. Treatment of chronic delta hepatitis with lamivudine vs lamivudine + interferon vs interferon. J Viral Hepat 2008;15:314-21. (Abstract)
Zachou K, Yurdaydin C, Drebber U, et al. Quantitative HBsAg and HDV-RNA levels in chronic delta hepatitis. Liver Int 2010;30:430-7. (Abstract)

11. Hepatitis C: Diagnostic Tests

Christian Lange and Christoph Sarrazin

Common symptoms of hepatitis C like fatigue, muscle ache, loss of appetite or nausea are non-specific and, in many cases, mild or not present. Consequently, hepatitis C is often diagnosed accidentally and, unfortunately, remains heavily under-diagnosed. It is estimated that only 30-50% of individuals infected with HCV are aware of their disease and can take advantage of treatment options and avoid the risk of further transmission of the virus (Deuffic-Burban 2010). Untreated hepatitis C advances to a chronic state in up to 80% of people, which leads to liver cirrhosis in 20-40% with an accompanying risk of hepatic decompensation, hepatocellular carcinoma and death (McHutchison 2004). In light of these facts, HCV diagnostics should be performed thoroughly in all patients presenting with increased aminotransferase levels, with chronic liver disease of unclear etiology and with a history of enhanced risk of HCV transmission (ie, past IV or nasal drug dependency, transfusion of blood or blood products before the year 1990, major surgery before 1990, needlestick injuries, non-sterile tattoos or piercings, enhanced risk of sexual transmission).

For the diagnosis of hepatitis C both serologic and nucleic acid-based molecular assays are available (Scott 2007). Serologic tests are sufficient when chronic hepatitis C is expected, with a sensitivity of more than 99% in the 3rd generation assays. Positive serologic results require HCV RNA or (with slightly reduced sensitivity) HCV core antigen measurement in order to differentiate between chronic hepatitis C and resolved HCV infection from the past. When acute hepatitis C is considered, serologic screening alone is insufficient because anti-HCV antibodies may develop late after transmission of the virus. In contrast, HCV RNA is detectable within a few days of infection, making nucleic acid-based tests mandatory in diagnosing acute hepatitis C. HCV RNA measurement is furthermore important in the determination of treatment indication, duration and success (Terrault 2005). For a number of antiviral combination therapies HCV RNA has to be determined at clearly defined times during treatment to decide whether therapy should be continued or not. Traditionally, it should be repeated 24 weeks after treatment completion to assess whether a sustained virologic response (SVR) has been achieved. However, as the probability of virologic relapse is similar after 12 and 24 weeks the new time point for assessment of final virological treatment outcome is 12 weeks after the end-of-treatment. Both qualitative and quantitative

HCV RNA detection assays are available. Qualitative tests are highly sensitive and are used for diagnosing hepatitis C for the first time, for the screening of blood and organ donations and for confirming SVR after treatment completion. Quantitative HCV RNA detection assays offer the possibility of measuring the viral load exactly and are essential in treatment monitoring. Qualitative and quantitative HCV RNA assays have now been widely replaced by real-time PCR-based assays that can detect HCV RNA over a very wide range, from low levels of approximately 10 IU/ml up to 10 million IU/ml.

After diagnosing hepatitis C, the HCV genotype should be determined by nucleic acid-based techniques in every patient considered for HCV therapy, because the currently recommended treatment schedules and durations as well as the specific ribavirin doses differ among HCV genotypes and subtypes.

Morphological methods like immunohistochemistry, *in situ* hybridization or PCR from liver specimens play no relevant role in the diagnosis of hepatitis C because of their low sensitivity, poor specificity and low efficacy compared to serologic and nucleic acid-based approaches.

Serologic assays

In current clinical practice, antibodies against multiple HCV epitopes are detected by commercially available 2nd and 3rd generation enzyme-linked immunoassays (EIAs). In these tests, HCV-specific antibodies from serum samples are captured by recombinant HCV proteins and are then detected by secondary antibodies against IgG or IgM. These secondary antibodies are labelled with enzymes that catalyse the production of coloured, measurable compounds.

The first applied EIAs for the detection of HCV-specific antibodies were based on epitopes derived from the NS4 region (C-100) and had a sensitivity of 70–80% and a poor specificity (Scott 2007). C-100-directed antibodies occur approximately 16 weeks after viral transmission. 2nd generation EIAs additionally detect antibodies against epitopes derived from the core region (C-22), NS3 region (C-33) and NS4 region (C-100), which leads to an increased sensitivity of approximately 95% and to a lower rate of false-positive results. With these assays HCV-specific antibodies can be detected approximately 10 weeks after HCV infection (Pawlotsky 2003). To narrow the diagnostic window from viral transmission to positive serological results, a 3rd generation EIA has been completed by an antigen from the NS5 region and/or the substitution of a highly immunogenic NS3 epitope. This innovation allows the detection of anti-HCV antibodies approximately four to six weeks after infection with a sensitivity of more than 99% (Colin 2001). Anti-HCV IgM measurement can narrow the diagnostic window in only a minority of patients. Anti-HCV IgM detection is also not sufficient to discriminate between acute and chronic hepatitis C because some chronically infected patients produce anti-HCV IgM intermittently and not all patients respond to acute HCV infection by producing anti-HCV IgM.

The specificity of serologic HCV diagnostics is difficult to define since an appropriate gold standard is lacking. It is evident, however, that false-positive results are more frequent in patients with rheumatoid factors and in populations with a low hepatitis C prevalence, ie, in blood and organ donors. Although several

immunoblots for the confirmation of positive HCV EIA results are available, these tests have lost their clinical importance since the development of highly sensitive methods for HCV RNA detection. Immunoblots are mandatory to make the exact identification of serologically false-positive-tested individuals possible. Importantly, the sensitivity of immunoblotting is lower compared to EIAs, which bears the risk of false-negatively classifying HCV-infected individuals.

False-negative HCV antibody testing may occur in patients on hemodialysis or in severely immunosuppressed patients like in HIV infection or in hematological malignancies.

HCV core antigen assays

In principle, detection of the HCV core antigen in serum could be a cheaper alternative to nucleic acid testing for the diagnosis and management of hepatitis C. However, the introduction of a reliable and sensitive HCV core antigen assay is burdened with a number of difficulties like the development of specific monoclonal antibodies recognizing all different HCV subtypes and the need for accumulation and dissociation of HCV particles from immune complexes to increase sensitivity. The first HCV core antigen detection system (trak-C, Ortho Clinical Diagnostics) became commercially available in the US and Europe several years ago. This HCV core antigen assay proved highly specific (99.5%), genotype independent, and had a low inter- and intra-assay variability (coefficient of variation 5–9%) (Veillon 2003). HCV core antigen is measurable 1–2 days after HCV RNA becomes detectable. The limit of detection is 1.5 pg/ml (approximately 10,000–50,000 IU/ml HCV RNA). In a study of anti-HCV antibody and HCV RNA-positive patients presenting in an outpatient clinic, 6/139 people (4%) were HCV core antigen negative. In these patients, HCV RNA concentrations were 1300–58,000 IU/ml, highlighting the limitations of the HCV core antigen assay as confirmation of ongoing hepatitis C in anti-HCV-positive patients. As a consequence, this first HCV core antigen assay was withdrawn from the market.

More recently, another quantitative HCV core antigen assay (Architect HCV Ag, Abbott Diagnostics), a further development of the previous assay, was approved by the EMA. This assay comprises 5 different antibodies to detect HCV core antigen, is highly specific (99.8%), equally effective for different HCV genotypes, and shows a relatively high sensitivity for determination of chronic hepatitis C (corresponding to 600-1000 IU/ml HCV RNA). However, HCV core antigen correlated well but not fully linearly with HCV RNA serum levels, and false-negative results were obtained in patients with impaired immunity (Mederacke 2009, Medici 2011). Another study has shown that HCV core antigen quantification could be an alternative to HCV RNA quantification for on-treatment antiviral response monitoring (Vermehren 2012). Here, HCV core antigen below the limit of quantification at treatment week 1 was strongly predictive of RVR, whereas patients with a less than 1 $\log_{10}$ decline in HCV core antigen at treatment week 12 had a high probability of achieving non-response.

The new HCV core antigen assay could be a cheaper, though somewhat less sensitive, alternative for nucleic acid testing. For careful monitoring of treatment with the majority of conventional dual or triple combination therapies, prospective studies need to be performed to determine the proper rules and time points for

response-guided treatment algorithms. For highly effective conventional triple therapies as well as all oral combination therapies without the need of on-treatment assessment of virologic response, the HCV core antigen assay may be an alternative for assessment of active HCV infection before initiation of antiviral therapy and for determination of viral eradication 12 weeks after the end-of-treatment.

Nucleic acid testing for HCV

Until 1997, HCV quantitative results from various HCV RNA detection systems did not represent the same concentration of HCV RNA in a clinical sample. Because of the importance of an exact HCV RNA determination for patient management, the World Health Organization (WHO) established the HCV RNA international standard based on international units (IU) which is used in all clinically applied HCV RNA tests. Other limitations of earlier HCV RNA detection assays were the false-negative results due to polymerase inhibition, for example by drug interference, false-positive results due to sample contamination because the reaction tubes had to be opened frequently, or due to under- and over-quantification of samples of certain HCV genotypes (Morishima 2004, Pawlotsky 2003, Pawlotsky 1999). Currently, several HCV RNA assays are commercially available (Table 1).

Table 1. Commercially available HCV RNA detection assays

Assay	Distributor	Technology	Approval status
Qualitative HCV RNA detection assays			
Amplicor™ HCV 2.0	Roche Molecular Systems	PCR	FDA, CE
Versant™ HCV	Siemens Medical Solutions Diagnostics	TMA	FDA, CE
Quantitative HCV RNA detection assays			
Amplicor™ HCV Monitor 2.0	Roche Molecular Systems	PCR	CE
HCV SuperQuant™	National Genetics Institute	PCR	
Versant™ HCV RNA 3.0	Siemens Medical Solutions Diagnostics	bDNA	FDA, CE
Cobas AmpliPrep/ High pure system /Cobas® TaqMan®	Roche Molecular Systems	Real-time PCR	FDA, CE
Abbott RealTime™ HCV	Abbott Diagnostics	Real-time PCR	FDA, CE
Artus HCV QS-RGQ assay	Qiagen	Real-time PCR	CE
Versant™ HCV 1.0 kPCR assay	Siemens	Real-time PCR	CE

Qualitative assays for HCV RNA detection

Until recently, qualitative assays for HCV RNA had substantially lower limits of detection in comparison to quantitative HCV RNA assays. The costs of a qualitative assay are also lower compared to a quantitative assay. Therefore, qualitative HCV RNA tests are used for the first diagnosis of acute hepatitis C, in which HCV RNA concentrations are fluctuating and may be very low, as well as for confirmation of chronic hepatitis C infection in patients with positive HCV antibodies. In addition, they are used for the confirmation of virologic response during, at the end of, and

after antiviral therapy, as well as in screening blood and organ donations for presence of HCV.

Qualitative RT-PCR

In reverse transcriptase-PCR- (RT-PCR-) based assays, HCV RNA is used as a matrix for the synthesis of a single-stranded complementary cDNA by reverse transcriptase. The cDNA is then amplified by a DNA polymerase into multiple double-stranded DNA copies. Qualitative RT-PCR assays are expected to detect 50 HCV RNA IU/ml or less with equal sensitivity for all genotypes.

The Amplicor™ HCV 2.0 is an FDA- and CE-approved RT-PCR system for qualitative HCV RNA testing that allows detection of HCV RNA concentrations down to 50 IU/ml of all genotypes (Table 1) (Nolte 2001). The DNA polymerase of *Thermus thermophilus* used in this assay provides both DNA polymerase and reverse transcriptase activity and allows HCV RNA amplification and detection in a single-step, single-tube procedure.

Transcription-mediated amplification (TMA) of HCV RNA

TMA-based qualitative HCV RNA detection has a very high sensitivity (Hendricks 2003, Sarrazin 2002). TMA is performed in a single tube in three steps: target capture, target amplification and specific detection of target amplicons by a hybridization protection assay. Two primers, one of which contains a T7 promoter, one T7 RNA polymerase and one reverse transcriptase, are necessary for this procedure. After RNA extraction from 500 µl serum, the T7 promoter-containing primer hybridizes the viral RNA with the result of reverse transcriptase-mediated cDNA synthesis. The reverse transcriptase also provides an RNase activity that degrades the RNA of the resulting RNA/DNA hybrid strand. The second primer then binds to the cDNA that already contains the T7 promoter sequence from the first primer, and a DNA/DNA double-strand is synthesized by the reverse transcriptase. Next, the RNA polymerase recognizes the T7 promoter and produces 100-1000 RNA transcripts, which are subsequently returned to the TMA cycle leading to exponential amplification of the target RNA. Within one hour, approximately 10 billion amplicons are produced. The RNA amplicons are detected by a hybridisation protection assay with amplicon-specific labelled DNA probes. The unhybridized DNA probes are degraded during a selection step and the labelled DNA is detected by chemiluminescence.

A commercially available TMA assay is the Versant™ HCV RNA Qualitative Assay. This system is accredited by the FDA and CE and provides an extremely high sensitivity, superior to RT-PCR-based qualitative HCV RNA detection assays (Hofmann 2005, Sarrazin 2001, Sarrazin 2000). The lower detection limit is 5-10 IU/ml with a sensitivity of 96-100%, and a specificity of more than 99.5%, independent of the HCV genotype.

Quantitative HCV RNA detection

HCV RNA quantification can be achieved either by target amplification techniques (competitive and real-time PCR) or by signal amplification techniques (branched DNA (bDNA) assay) (Table 1). Several FDA- and CE-approved standardised

systems are commercially available. The Cobas Amplicor™ HCV Monitor is based on a competitive PCR technique whereas the Versant™ HCV RNA Assay is based on a bDNA technique. More recently, the Cobas® TaqMan® assay and the Abbott RealTime™ HCV test, both based on real-time PCR technology, have been introduced. The technical characteristics, detection limits and linear dynamic detection ranges of these systems are summarized below. Due to their very low detection limit and their broad and linear dynamic detection range, they have already widely replaced the previously used qualitative and quantitative HCV RNA assays.

Competitive PCR: Cobas® Amplicor™ HCV 2.0 monitor

The Cobas® Amplicor™ HCV 2.0 monitor is a semi-automated quantitative detection assay based on a competitive PCR technique. Quantification is achieved by the amplification of two templates in a single reaction tube, the target and the internal standard. The latter is an internal control RNA with nearly the same sequence as the target RNA with a clearly defined initial concentration. The internal control is amplified by the same primers as the HCV RNA. Comparison of the final amounts of both templates allows calculation of the initial amount of HCV RNA. The dynamic range of the Amplicor™ HCV 2.0 monitor assay is 500 to approximately 500,000 IU/ml with a specificity of almost 100%, independent of the HCV genotype (Konnick 2002, Lee 2000). For higher HCV RNA concentrations pre-dilution of the original sample is required.

Branched DNA hybridisation assay (Versant™ HCV RNA 3.0 quantitative assay)

Branched DNA hybridisation assay is based on signal amplification technology. After reverse transcription of the HCV RNA, the resulting single-stranded complementary DNA strands bind to immobilised captured oligonucleotides with a specific sequence from conserved regions of the HCV genome. In a second step, multiple oligonucleotides bind to the free ends of the bound DNA strands and are subsequently hybridised by multiple copies of an alkaline phosphatase-labelled DNA probe. Detection is achieved by incubating the alkaline phosphatase-bound complex with a chemiluminescent substrate (Sarrazin 2002). The Versant™ HCV RNA assay is at present the only FDA- and CE-approved HCV RNA quantification system based on a branched DNA technique. The lower detection limit of the current version 3.0 is 615 IU/ml and linear quantification is ensured between 615–8,000,000 IU/ml, independent of the HCV genotype (Morishima 2004). The bDNA assay only requires 50 µl serum for HCV RNA quantification and is currently the assay with the lowest sample input.

Real-time PCR-based HCV RNA detection assays

Real-time PCR technology provides optimal features for both HCV RNA detection and quantification because of its very low detection limit and broad dynamic range of linear amplification (Sarrazin 2006) (Figure 1). Distinctive for real-time PCR technology is the ability to simultaneously amplify and detect the target nucleic acid, allowing direct monitoring of the PCR process. RNA templates are first

reverse-transcribed to generate complementary cDNA strands followed by a DNA polymerase-mediated cDNA amplification.

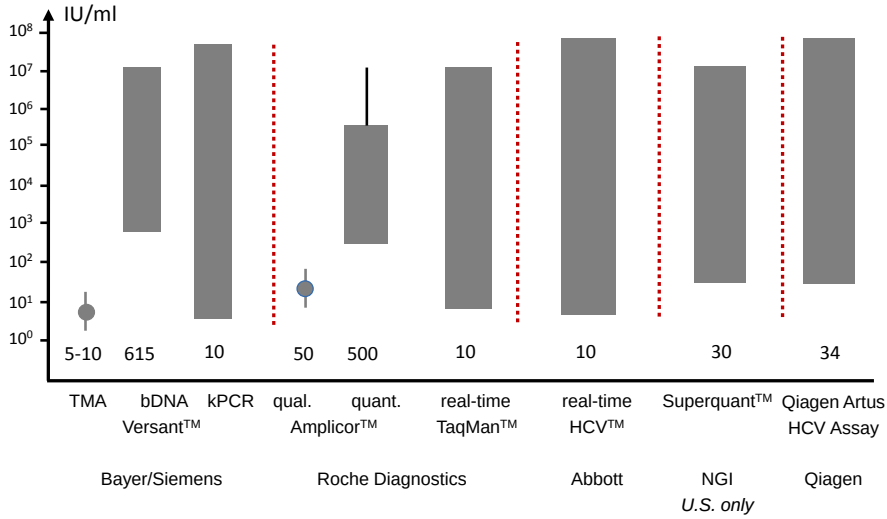


Figure 1. Detection limits and linear dynamic ranges of commercially available HCV RNA detection assays

DNA detection simultaneous to amplification is preferentially achieved by the use of target sequence-specific oligonucleotides linked to two different molecules, a fluorescent reporter molecule and a quenching molecule. These probes bind the target cDNA between the two PCR primers and are degraded or released by the DNA polymerase during DNA synthesis. In case of degradation the reporter and quencher molecules are released and separated, which results in the emission of an increased fluorescence signal from the reporter. Different variations of this principle of reporter and quencher are used by the different commercially available assays. The fluorescence signal, intensified during each round of amplification, is proportional to the amount of RNA in the starting sample. Quantification in absolute numbers is achieved by comparing the kinetics of the target amplification with the amplification kinetics of an internal control of a defined initial concentration.

Highly effective and almost completely automated real-time PCR-based systems for HCV RNA measurement have been introduced.

All commercially available HCV RNA assays are calibrated to the WHO standard based on HCV genotype 1. Significant differences between different RT-PCR assays and other quantitative HCV RNA tests have been reported - in the case of the real-time PCR-based assays a slight under-quantification by one assay and a slight over-quantification by the other, in comparison to the WHO standard by Cobas® TaqMan®. In addition, it has been shown that results may vary significantly between assays with different HCV genotypes despite standardisation to IU (Chevaliez 2007, Vermehren 2008).

Cobas® TaqMan® HCV test

The FDA- and CE-accredited Cobas® TaqMan® (CTM) assay uses reporter- and quencher-carrying oligonucleotides specific to the 5' UTR of the HCV genome and to the template of the internal control, a synthetic RNA for binding the same primers as for HCV RNA. Reverse transcription and cDNA amplification is performed by the Z05 DNA polymerase. For HCV RNA extraction from serum or plasma samples, a Cobas® TaqMan® assay was developed either in combination with the fully automated Cobas® AmpliPrep (CAP) instrument using magnetic particles, or in combination with manual HCV RNA extraction with glass fiber columns using the High Pure System (HPS) viral nucleic acid kit. The current versions of both combinations have a lower detection limit of approximately 10 IU/ml and a linear amplification range of HCV RNA from approximately 40 to 10,000,000 IU/ml. Samples from HCV genotypes 2-5 have been shown to be under-quantified by the first version of the HPS-based Cobas® TaqMan® assay. The second version of this assay has now demonstrated equal quantification of all HCV genotypes (Colucci 2007). For the Cobas® AmpliPrep/ Cobas® TaqMan® (CAP/CTM) assay, significant under-quantification of HCV genotype 4 samples has been shown. In the meanwhile, a second version CAP/CTM assay (CAP/CTM HCV Test, v2.0) was evaluated. Based on a dual-probe design, this assay was able to accurately quantify HCV RNA samples from patients infected with all HCV genotypes, including HCV genotype 4 transcripts with rare sequence variants that had been under-quantified by the first generation assay (Vermehren 2011). Furthermore, this assay has a lower limit of detection and quantification of approximately 15 IU/ml across all HCV gentoypes, and a linear amplification range of HCV RNA from approximately 15 to 10,000,000 IU/ml (Zitzer 2013). Taken together, the Cobas® TaqMan® assay makes both highly sensitive qualitative and linear quantitative HCV RNA detection feasible with excellent performance in one system with complete automation.

RealTime HCV test

The CE-accredited RealTime HCV test also uses reporter- and quencher-carrying oligonucleotides specific for the 5'UTR. HCV RNA concentrations are quantified by comparison with the amplification curves of a cDNA from the hydroxypyruvate reductase gene from the pumpkin plant *Cucurbita pepo*, which is used as an internal standard. This internal standard is amplified with different primers from those of the HCV RNA, which may be the reason for the linear quantification of very low HCV RNA concentrations. The RealTime HCV test provides a lower detection limit of approximately 10 IU/ml, a specificity of more than 99.5% and a linear amplification range from 12 to 10,000,000 IU/ml independent of the HCV genotype (Vehrmeren 2008, Michelin 2007, Sabato 2007). In a recent multi-centre study, its clinical utility to monitor antiviral therapy of patients infected with HCV genotypes 1, 2 and 3 was proven and the FDA approved the RealTime HCV test (Vermehren 2011). In this study, highly concordant baseline HCV RNA levels as well as highly concordant data on rapid and early virologic response were obtained compared to reference tests for quantitative and qualitative HCV RNA measurement, the Versant® HCV Quantitative 3.0 branched DNA hybridization assay and the Versant® HCV RNA Qualitative assay.

Artus hepatitis C virus QS-RGQ assay

Recently, Qiagen has developed a novel real-time based HCV RNA assay, the artus HCV QS-RGQ assay. The artus HCV RNA assay has a lower limit of quantification of 30 IU/mL and a linear range of quantification up to 10^8 IU/mL. Compared to the Cobas® TaqMan® assay, the artus HCV assay had a slightly lower sensitivity (Paba 2012).

Versant HCV 1.0 kPCR assay

For replacement of the qualitative TMA and the quantitative bDNA-based assays, a real-time-based PCR test (Versant® kPCR Molecular System) has been introduced recently. While little is known for the use of this assay in response-guided conventional dual and triple therapies in HCV genotype 1-infected patients, a limitation of this assay seems to be a substantial underquantification of HCV RNA concentrations in certain HCV subtypes (2a, 3a, 4a) (Kessler 2013).

HCV genotyping

HCV is heterogeneous with an enormous genomic sequence variability due to a rapid replication cycle with the production of 10^{12} virions per day and the low fidelity of the HCV RNA polymerase. Six genotypes (1-6), multiple subtypes (a, b, c…) and most recently a seventh HCV genotype have been characterized. These genotypes vary in approximately 30% of their RNA sequence with a median variability of approximately 33%. HCV subtypes are defined by differences in their RNA sequence of approximately 10%. Within one subtype, numerous quasispecies exist and may emerge during treatment with specific antivirals. These quasispecies are defined by a sequence variability of less than 10% (Simmonds 2005). Because the currently recommended treatment durations and ribavirin doses depend on the HCV genotype, HCV genotyping is mandatory in every patient who considers antiviral therapy (Bowden 2006). For many conventional triple therapies with HCV protease inhibitors and some future multiple direct acting antiviral combination therapies, determination of HCV subtypes is of importance because of significantly distinct barriers to resistance on the HCV subtype level. However, the importance for HCV genotyping may decline with the availability of highly and broadly effective all oral combination therapies in the future.

Both direct sequence analysis and reverse hybridization technology allow HCV genotyping. Initial assays were designed to analyse exclusively the 5' untranslated region (5'UTR), which is burdened with a high rate of misclassification especially on the subtype level. Current assays were improved by additionally analyzing the coding regions, in particular the genes encoding the non-structural protein NS5B and core protein, both of which provide non-overlapping sequence differences between the genotypes and subtypes (Bowden 2006).

Reverse hybridizing assay (Versant® HCV Genotype 2.0 System (LiPA))

In reverse hybridizing, biotinylated cDNA clones from HCV RNA are produced by reverse transcriptase and then transferred and hybridized to immobilised

oligonucleotides specific to different genotypes and subtypes. After removing unbound DNA by a washing step, the biotinylated DNA fragments can be detected by chemical linkage to colored probes.

The Versant® HCV Genotype 2.0 System is suitable for indentifying genotypes 1-6 and more than 15 different subtypes and is currently the preferred assay for HCV genotyping. By simultaneous analyses of the 5' UTR and core region, a high specificity is achieved to differentiate the genotype 1 subtypes. In a study evaluating the specificity of the Versant® HCV Genotype 2.0 System, 96.8% of all genotype 1 samples and 64.7% of all genotype samples were correctly subtyped. No misclassifications at the genotype level were observed. Difficulties in subtyping occurred in particular in genotypes 2 and 4. Importantly, none of the misclassifications would have had clinical consequences, which qualifies the Versant® HCV Genotype 2.0 System as highly suitable for clinical decision-making (Bouchardeau 2007).

Direct sequence analysis (Trugene® HCV 5'NC genotyping kit)

The TruGene® assay determines the HCV genotype and subtype by direct analysis of the nucleotide sequence of the 5'UTR region. Incorrect genotyping rarely occurs with this assay. However, the accuracy of subtyping is poor because of the exclusive analyses of the 5'UTR (Pawlotsky 2003).

Real-time PCR technology (RealTime™ HCV Genotype II assay)

The current RealTime HCV Genotype II assay is based on real-time PCR technology, which is less time consuming than direct sequencing. Preliminary data revealed a 96% concordance at the genotype level and a 93% concordance on the genotype 1 subtype level when compared to direct sequencing of the NS5B and 5'UTR regions. Nevertheless, single genotype 2, 3, 4, and 6 isolates were misclassified at the genotype level, indicating a need for assay optimization (Ciotti 2010).

Implications for diagnosing and managing acute and chronic hepatitis C

Diagnosing acute hepatitis C

When acute hepatitis C is suspected, the presence of both anti-HCV antibodies and HCV RNA should be tested. For HCV RNA detection, sensitive qualitative techniques with a lower detection limit of 50 IU/ml or less are required, for example TMA, qualitative RT-PCR or the newer real-time PCR systems. Testing for anti-HCV alone is insufficient for the diagnosis of acute hepatitis C because HCV specific antibodies appear only weeks (up to 6 months) after viral transmission. In contrast, measurable HCV RNA serum concentrations emerge within the first days after infection. However, HCV RNA may fluctuate during acute hepatitis C, making a second HCV RNA test necessary several weeks later in all negatively tested patients with a suspicion of acute hepatitis C. When HCV RNA is detected in

seronegative patients, acute hepatitis C is very likely. When patients are positive for both anti-HCV antibodies and HCV RNA, it may be difficult to discriminate between acute and acutely exacerbated chronic hepatitis C. Anti-HCV IgM detection will not clarify this because its presence is common in both situations. In rare cases and especially in association with low amounts of inoculum, HCV infection may be only associated with transient HCV RNA detectability or exclusively by markers of innate immune response (Werner 2013, Heller 2013).

Diagnosing chronic hepatitis C

Chronic hepatitis C should be considered in every patient presenting with clinical, morphological or biological signs of chronic liver disease. When chronic hepatitis C is suspected, screening for HCV antibodies by 2nd or 3rd generation EIAs is adequate because their sensitivity is >99%. False-negative results may occur rarely in immunosuppressed patients (ie, HIV) and in patients on dialysis. When anti-HCV antibodies are detected, the presence of HCV RNA has to be determined in order to discriminate between chronic hepatitis C and resolved HCV infection. The latter cannot be distinguished by HCV antibody tests from rarely occurring false-positive serological results, the exact incidence of which is unknown. Serological false-positive results can be identified by the additional performance of an immunoblot assay. Many years after disease resolution, anti-HCV antibodies may become undetectable on commercial assays in some patients.

Diagnostic tests in the management of hepatitis C therapy

The current treatment recommendations for acute and chronic hepatitis C are based on HCV genotyping and on HCV RNA load determination before, (during) and after antiviral therapy. When HCV RNA has been detected, exact genotyping and HCV RNA load determination is necessary in every patient considered for antiviral therapy. Exact subtyping appears to be highly important during therapies with some directly acting antiviral (DAA) agents because some subtypes (especially HCV genotype 1a vs. 1b) behave differently regarding treatment response and the development of resistance. Low HCV RNA concentration (<600,000–800,000 IU/ml) is a positive predictor of SVR. Genotyping is mandatory for the selection of the optimal treatment regimen and duration of therapy, since many DAA agents are selectively effective for only some HCV genotypes (Lange 2010), and depending on selected treatment regimens, durations can be shorter for patients infected with HCV genotypes 2 or 3 compared to patients infected with genotypes 1 or 4 (Manns 2006).

Dual combination therapy (PEG-IFN + ribavirin)

For HCV genotype 1 (and 4) treatment can be shortened to 24 weeks in patients with low baseline viral load (<600,000–800,000 IU/ml) and rapid virologic response (RVR) with undetectable HCV RNA at week 4 of treatment. In slow responders with a 2 $\log_{10}$ decline but still detectable HCV RNA levels at week 12 and undetectable HCV RNA at week 24, treatment should be extended to 72 weeks, though treatment with DAAs appears much more promising in such patients. In patients with complete early virologic response with undetectable HCV RNA at week 12 (cEVR), standard treatment is continued to 48 weeks. Genotypes 5 and 6

are treated the same as genotype 1-infected patients due to the lack of adequate clinical trials, whereas genotypes 2 and 3 generally allow treatment duration of 24 weeks, which may be shortened to 16 weeks (depending on RVR and [low] baseline viral load) or extended to 36-48 weeks depending on the initial viral decline (Manns 2006, Layden-Almer 2006).

Independent of the HCV genotype, proof of HCV RNA decrease is necessary to identify patients with little chance of achieving SVR. HCV RNA needs to be quantified before and 12 weeks after treatment initiation and antiviral therapy should be discontinued if a decrease of less than 2 $\log_{10}$ HCV RNA is observed (negative predictive value 88-100%). In a second step, HCV RNA should be tested with highly sensitive assays after 24 weeks of treatment because patients with detectable HCV RNA at this time point only have a 1-2% chance of achieving SVR.

Triple therapy (telaprevir or boceprevir + PEG-IFN + ribavirin)

Complex treatment algorithms have been introduced now when an HCV NS3 protease inhibitor is used for chronic HCV genotype 1 infection. These algorithms are different for treatment with telaprevir or boceprevir.

Shortening of treatment duration with boceprevir triple therapy to 28 weeks is possible in treatment-naïve patients who achieve an extended rapid virologic response (eRVR) defined by undetectable HCV RNA levels at weeks 8 and 24 of treatment. Stopping rules are based on detectable HCV RNA concentrations above 100 IU/ml at week 12 or detectable HCV RNA by a sensitive assay at week 24.

For telaprevir triple therapy, shortening of treatment duration to 24 weeks in treatment-naïve and relapser patients is based on undetectable HCV RNA at weeks 4 and 12 of treatment. Stopping rules include detectable HCV RNA >1000 IU/ml at week 4 or 12 and detectable HCV RNA at week 24.

Importantly, the lower limit of detection of different assays may have a substantial impact on clinical decisions. In this regard, a recent study has shown that usage of the COBAS® TaqMan® Assay (lower limit of quantification of 25 IU/mL) during telaprevir therapy resulted in a higher proportion of patients with negative HCV RNA at the above indicated timepoints and shortened treatment duration compared to when the Abbott RealTime Assay (lower limit of quantification of 12 IU/mL) is used (Fevery 2014). A second, real-world study assessed HCV RNA levels with the Cobas® Ampliprep/Cobas® TaqMan® (CAP) versus the RealTime HCV (ART) in samples of patients with telaprevir-based triple therapy at different European tertiary referral centers (Vermehren 2013). Overall, 67% and 31% of patients had undetectable HCV RNA at week 4 by CAP and ART, respectively, and 18/31 (58%) of patients eligible for shortened treatment based on CAP had detectable HCV RNA by ART at week 4. The authors concluded that for the ART, detectable HCV RNA levels <12 IU/ml at week 4 may be sufficient as part of the criteria used to select patients to receive a shortened treatment regimen.

Another study in boceprevir-treated patients showed that on-treatment viral load quantification with the COBAS® TaqMan® Assay resulted in 2.8 fold higher HCV RNA concentrations compared to the Abbott RealTime HCV test (Hunyady 2013). As a consequence, the concordance of both assays for the stopping rule of HCV RNA >100 IU/ml at treatment weeks 12 and 24 was only 91% and 97%, respectively. However, this study could not show a clinical advantage of using

either of the methods for on-treatment viral load monitoring during boceprevir-based triple therapy.

Results of a recent retrospective re-analysis of 663 patients treated with telaprevir-based triple therapy in the Optimize study showed an even higher discordance between the assays (Sarrazin 2013). In this analysis, 15% of HCV RNA negative samples according to measurement with the Roche High Pure System/Cobas® TaqMan® assay were HCV RNA positive when analyzed with the Abbott RealTime HCV RNA assays. At treatment week 4, HCV RNA was negative in 72% and 34% according to the Roche and Abbott assays, respectively, while no relevant discordance was observed at treatment week 12. In conclusion, this study showed that a significantly lower number of patients would be eligible for a shorter treatment duration with telaprevir if the Abbott Assay were applied using criteria originally established on the basis of measurements with the Cobas® TaqMan® assay.

Measurement of HCV RNA at additional time points during boceprevir- or telaprevir-based triple therapies is recommended to identify viral breakthrough due to the emergence of HCV variants resistant to DAA agents.

SVR, defined as the absence of detectable HCV RNA 24 weeks after treatment completion, should be assessed by an HCV RNA detection assay with a lower limit of 50 IU/ml or less to evaluate long-lasting treatment success.

Due to the differences in HCV RNA concentrations of up to a factor of 4 between the different commercially available assays, despite standardisation of the results to IU, and due to intra- and interassay variability of up to a factor of 2, it is recommended to always use the same assay in a given patient before, during and after treatment and to repeat HCV RNA measurements at baseline in cases with HCV RNA concentrations between 400,000 and 1,000,000 IU/ml. Furthermore, the new stopping rules for boceprevir and telaprevir triple therapies based on viral cut-offs of 100 and 1000 IU/ml respectively, were assessed by the Cobas® TaqMan® assay, and – as described above - several studies have shown a significant discordance between this and other assays in the identification of candidates for treatment termination.

Triple therapy (simeprevir + PEG-IFN + ribavirin)

Recently, simeprevir as a second generation NS3 protease inhibitor was approved by FDA. Pivotal Phase III studies were performed with a classic response-guided therapy approach in treatment-naïve and relapse patients to previous dual combination therapy (Forns 2013, Zeuzem 2013, Jacobson 2013b). However, because >90% of patients were eligible for the shortened 24 week treatment duration, it is recommended to use HCV RNA assessment at week 4 of triple therapy only as a stopping rule. Thus, the standard treatment duration is 24 weeks and all patients with a viral load >25 IU/ml at week 4 should discontinue antiviral therapy. Nothing is known so far regarding how the cut-off of 25 IU/ml (Roche High Pure System HCV / Cobas® TaqMan® assay) can be transferred to a real world setting with the predominant use of the Roche Cobas® AmpliPrep / Cobas® TaqMan® and the Abbott RealTime HCV assays with lower limits of detections of 15 and 12 IU/ml.

Sofosbuvir-based antiviral therapies

All patients on sofosbuvir-based combination therapies with ribavirin, with and without the additional application of PEG-IFN α achieved undetectable HCV RNA concentrations on antiviral therapy and no response-guided therapy approaches have been developed (Jacobson 2013, Lawitz 2013). Therefore, on-treatment monitoring of HCV RNA is not necessary for determination of treatment duration or early stopping rules. However, HCV RNA measurement during treatment may be useful for assessment of adherence and motivation of patients. Future studies have to explore the potential of very early HCV RNA kinetics for determination of treatment duration.

Outlook

It can be anticipated that in the near future many patients will be treated with interferon-free or interferon α-based combination therapies including two or more DAAs. For the success of such regimens, a thorough determination of novel algorithms to define treatment duration, treatment failure, or the selection of optimal regimens for individual patients is crucial. Particularly, a careful monitoring of antiviral resistance development may be decisive. This applies for example for triple therapy containing the NS3-4A inhibitor simeprevir, which is less efficient in patients in whom a variant at position Q80K in the NS3-4A protease is detected (see Chapters 12 and 13 for details). Currently, resistance testing is still a domain of research using “home-brew” assays (reviewed in Vermehren 2012, as well as in Chapters 12 & 13), although the development of commercially available assays can be expected in the near future. To clarify the optimal time point for assessing SVR after IFN-free regimens is another important question to be addressed by future research, as a few cases of late relapse (>24 weeks post treatment) have been observed after all-oral therapy (reviewed in Lange 2013).

References

Bouchardeau F, Cantaloube JF, Chevaliez S, et al. Improvement of hepatitis C virus (HCV) genotype determination with the new version of the INNO-LiPA assay. J Clin Microbiol 2007;45:1140-5. (Abstract)

Bowden DS, Berzsenyi MD. Chronic hepatitis C virus infection: genotyping and its clinical role. Future Microbiol 2006;1:103-12. (Abstract)

Chevaliez S, Bouvier-Alias M, Brillet R, Pawlotsky JM. Overestimation and underestimation of hepatitis C virus RNA levels in a widely used real-time polymerase chain reaction-based method. Hepatology 2007;46:22-31. (Abstract)

Ciotti M, Marcuccilli F, Guenci T, et al. A multicenter evaluation of the Abbott RealTime HCV Genotype II assay. J Virol Methods 2010;167:205-7. (Abstract)

Colin C, Lanoir D, Touzet S, Meyaud-Kraemer L, Bailly F, Trepo C. Sensitivity and specificity of third-generation hepatitis C virus antibody detection assays: an analysis of the literature. J Viral Hepat 2001;8:87-95. (Abstract)

Colucci G, Ferguson J, Harkleroad C, et al. Improved COBAS TaqMan hepatitis C virus test (Version 2.0) for use with the High Pure system: enhanced genotype inclusivity and performance characteristics in a multisite study. J Clin Microbiol 2007;45:3595-600.

Deuffic-Burban S, Deltenre P, Buti M, Stroffolini T, J. P. HCV burden in Europe: impact of national treatment practices on future HCV-related morbitidy and mortality though a modeling approach. Hepatology 2010;52:678.

Fevery B, Susser S, Lenz O, Cloherty G, Perner D, Picchio G, Sarrazin C. HCV RNA quantification with different assays: implications for response-guided therapy during protease inhibitor therapy. *Antivir Ther* 2014 in press.
Forns X, Lawitz E, Zeuzem S, et al. Simeprevir (TMC435) with pegylated interferon-a-2a/ribavirin for treatment of chronic HCV genotype 1 infection in patients who relapsed after previous interferon-based therapy: efficacy and safety in patient sub-populations in the PROMISE Phase III trial. Hepatology 2013;58:737.
Heller T, Werner JM, Rahman F, Mizukoshi E, Sobao Y, Gordon AM, Sheets A, et al. Occupational exposure to hepatitis C virus: early T-cell responses in the absence of seroconversion in a longitudinal cohort study.J Infect Dis. 2013;208:1020-5.
Hendricks DA, Friesenhahn M, Tanimoto L, Goergen B, Dodge D, Comanor L. Multicenter evaluation of the VERSANT HCV RNA qualitative assay for detection of hepatitis C virus RNA. J Clin Microbiol 2003;41:651-6. (Abstract)
Hunyadi B, Makara M, Haragh A, et al. Predictive value of low level on-treatment viremia during boceprevir-based re-treatment in a prospective study on difficult to treat previous treatment failure chronic hepatitis C patients. Hepatology 2013;58:1165.
Hofmann WP, Dries V, Herrmann E, Gartner B, Zeuzem S, Sarrazin C. Comparison of transcription mediated amplification (TMA) and reverse transcription polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) for detection of hepatitis C virus RNA in liver tissue. J Clin Virol 2005;32:289-93.
Jacobson IM, Gordon SC, Kowdley KV, et al. Sofosbuvir for hepatitis C genotype 2 or 3 in patients without treatment options. The New England journal of medicine 2013;368:1867-77.
Jacobson I, Dore GJ, Foster G, et al. Simeprevir (TMC435) with peginterferon/ribavirin for treatment of chronic HCV genotype 1 infection in treatment-naïve patients: efficacy in difficult-to-treat patient sub-populations in the QUEST-1 and 2 Phase III trials. Hepatology 2013;58:756.
Kessler HH, Hübner M, Konrad PM, Stelzl E, Stübler MM, et al. Genotype impact on HCV RNA levels determined with the VERSANTHCV RNA 1.0 assay (kPCR). J Clin Virol. 2013;58:522-7.
Konnick EQ, Erali M, Ashwood ER, Hillyard DR. Performance characteristics of the COBAS Amplicor Hepatitis C Virus (HCV) Monitor, Version 2.0, International Unit assay and the National Genetics Institute HCV Superquant assay. J Clin Microbiol 2002;40:768-73. (Abstract)
Lange CM, Sarrazin C, Zeuzem S. Review article: specifically targeted antiviral therapy for hepatitis C - a new era in therapy. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2010;32:14-28. (Abstract)
Lange CM, Jacobson CM, Rice CM, Zeuzem S. Emerging therapies for the treatment of hepatitis C. EMBO Mol Med 2013, epub.
Lawitz E, Mangia A, Wyles D, et al. Sofosbuvir for previously untreated chronic hepatitis C infection. The New England journal of medicine 2013;368:1878-87.
Layden-Almer JE, Cotler SJ, Layden TJ. Viral kinetics in the treatment of chronic hepatitis C. J Viral Hepat 2006;13:499-504. (Abstract)
Lee SC, Antony A, Lee N, et al. Improved version 2.0 qualitative and quantitative AMPLICOR reverse transcription-PCR tests for hepatitis C virus RNA: calibration to international units, enhanced genotype reactivity, and performance characteristics. J Clin Microbiol 2000;38:4171-9. (Abstract)
Manns MP, Wedemeyer H, Cornberg M. Treating viral hepatitis C: efficacy, side effects, and complications. Gut 2006;55:1350-9. (Abstract)
McHutchison JG. Understanding hepatitis C. Am J Manag Care 2004;10:S21-9. (Abstract)
Mederacke I, Wedemeyer H, Ciesek S, et al. Performance and clinical utility of a novel fully automated quantitative HCV-core antigen assay. J Clin Virol 2009;46:210-5. (Abstract)
Medici MC, Furlini G, Rodella A, et al. Hepatitis C virus core antigen: analytical performances, correlation with viremia and potential applications of a quantitative, automated immunoassay. J Clin Virol 2011;51:264-9. (Abstract)
Michelin BD, Muller Z, Stelzl E, Marth E, Kessler HH. Evaluation of the Abbott RealTime HCV assay for quantitative detection of hepatitis C virus RNA. J Clin Virol 2007;38:96-100. (Abstract)

Morishima C, Chung M, Ng KW, Brambilla DJ, Gretch DR. Strengths and limitations of commercial tests for hepatitis C virus RNA quantification. J Clin Microbiol 2004;42:421-5. (Abstract)
Nolte FS, Fried MW, Shiffman ML, et al. Prospective multicenter clinical evaluation of AMPLICOR and COBAS AMPLICOR hepatitis C virus tests. J Clin Microbiol 2001;39:4005-12. (Abstract)
Paba B, Fabeni L, Perno CF, Ciotti M. Performance evaluation of the Artus hepatitis C virus QS-RGQ assay. J Virol Methods 2012, 179:77-80.
Pawlotsky JM, Martinot-Peignoux M, Poveda JD, et al. Quantification of hepatitis C virus RNA in serum by branched DNA-based signal amplification assays. J Virol Methods 1999;79:227-35. (Abstract)
Pawlotsky JM. Diagnostic testing in hepatitis C virus infection: viral kinetics and genomics. Semin Liver Dis 2003;23 Suppl 1:3-11. (Abstract)
Pawlotsky JM. Use and interpretation of hepatitis C virus diagnostic assays. Clin Liver Dis 2003;7:127-37. (Abstract)
Sabato MF, Shiffman ML, Langley MR, Wilkinson DS, Ferreira-Gonzalez A. Comparison of performance characteristics of three real-time reverse transcription-PCR test systems for detection and quantification of hepatitis C virus. J Clin Microbiol 2007;45:2529-36. (Abstract)
Sarrazin C, Diernynck I, Cloherty G, et al. Appropriate use of Abbott RealTime HCV RNA Assay in the Management of HCV patients treated with telaprevir-based regimen: a retrospective analysis of the OPTIMIZE study. Presented at Hep Dart 2013.
Sarrazin C, Gartner BC, Sizmann D, et al. Comparison of conventional PCR with real-time PCR and branched DNA-based assays for hepatitis C virus RNA quantification and clinical significance for genotypes 1 to 5. J Clin Microbiol 2006;44:729-37. (Abstract)
Sarrazin C, Hendricks DA, Sedarati F, Zeuzem S. Assessment, by transcription-mediated amplification, of virologic response in patients with chronic hepatitis C virus treated with peginterferon alpha-2a. J Clin Microbiol 2001;39:2850-5. (Abstract)
Sarrazin C, Teuber G, Kokka R, Rabenau H, Zeuzem S. Detection of residual hepatitis C virus RNA by transcription-mediated amplification in patients with complete virologic response according to polymerase chain reaction-based assays. Hepatology 2000;32:818-23. (Abstract)
Sarrazin C. Highly sensitive hepatitis C virus RNA detection methods: molecular backgrounds and clinical significance. J Clin Virol 2002;25 Suppl 3:S23-9. (Abstract)
Schutten M, Fries E, Burghoorn-Maas C, Niesters HG. Evaluation of the analytical performance of the new Abbott RealTime RT-PCRs for the quantitative detection of HCV and HIV-1 RNA. J Clin Virol 2007;40:99-104. (Abstract)
Scott JD, Gretch DR. Molecular diagnostics of hepatitis C virus infection: a systematic review. Jama 2007;297:724-32. (Abstract)
Simmonds P, Bukh J, Combet C, et al. Consensus proposals for a unified system of nomenclature of hepatitis C virus genotypes. Hepatology 2005;42:962-73. (Abstract)
Terrault NA, Pawlotsky JM, McHutchison J, et al. Clinical utility of viral load measurements in individuals with chronic hepatitis C infection on antiviral therapy. J Viral Hepat 2005;12:465-72. (Abstract)
Vehrmeren J, Kau A, Gärtner B, Göbel R, Zeuzem S, Sarrazin C. Differences between two real-time PCR based assays (Abbott RealTime HCV, COBAS AmpliPrep/COBAS TaqMan) and one signal amplification assay (VERSANT HCV RNA 3.0) for HCV RNA detection and quantification. J Clin Virol 2008;52:133-7.
Veillon P, Payan C, Picchio G, Maniez-Montreuil M, Guntz P, Lunel F. Comparative evaluation of the total hepatitis C virus core antigen, branched DNA, and amplicor monitor assays in determining viremia for patients with chronic hepatitis C during interferon plus ribavirin combination therapy. J Clin Microbiol 2003;41:3121-30. (Abstract)
Vermehren J, Colluci G, Gohl P, et al. Development of a secon version of the Cobas AmpliPrep/Cobas TaqMan hepatitis C virus quantitative test with improved genotype inclusivity. J Clin Microbiol 2011;49:3309-15. (Abstract)
Vermehren J, Yu ML, Monto A, et al. Multi-center evaluation of the Abbott RealTime HCV Assay for monitoring patients undergoing antiviral therapy for chronic hepatitis C. J Clin Virol 2011;52:133-7. (Abstract)

Vermehren J, Susser S, Berger A, et al. Clinical utility of the ARCHITECT HCV Ag assay for early treatment monitoring in patients with chronic hepatitis C gentoype 1 infection. J Clin Virol;55:17-22.
Vermehren J, Sarrazin C. The role of resistance in HCV treatment. Best Prac Res Clin Gastroenterol 2012;26:487-503.
Vermehren J, Aghemo A, Falconer K, et al. Clinical significance of residual viremia detected by two real-time PCR based assays for response guided therapy of HCV genotype 1 infection.. J Hepatol 2013; in press.
Werner JM, Heller T, Gordon AM, Sheets A, Sherker AH, Kessler E, et al. Innate immune responses in hepatitis C virus-exposed healthcare workers who do not develop acute infection. Hepatology 2013, in press.
Zeuzem S, Berg T, Gane E, et al. Simeprevir Increases Rate of Sustained Virologic Response Among Treatment-Experienced Patients with HCV Genotype-1 Infection: a Phase IIb Trial. Gastroenterology 2013, in press.
Zitzer H, Heilek G, Truchon K, et al. Second generation COBAS® AmpliPrep/COBAS® TaqMan® HCV quantitative test for viral load monitoring: a novel dual-probe assay design. Clin Microbiol 2013;49:3309-15.

12. Standard Therapy of Chronic Hepatitis C Virus Infection

Markus Cornberg, Christoph Höner zu Siederdissen, Benjamin Maasoumy, Svenja Hardtke, Katja Deterding, Kerstin Port, Michael P. Manns, Heiner Wedemeyer

Goal of antiviral therapy

Globally, there are approximately 130-170 million people chronically infected with hepatitis C virus (HCV), in Europe 8-11 million (Cornberg 2011, Shepard 2005). Despite the implementation of blood-donor screening in the early ‘90s, the global prevalence of anti-HCV has increased from 2.3% to 2.8% between 1990 and 2005 (Mohd Hanafiah 2013) and there is an anticipated increase of HCV-related cirrhosis, hepatic decompensation, and hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) over the course of the next decade (Davis 2010, Maasoumy 2012). The goal of antiviral therapy is to cure hepatitis C via a sustained elimination of the virus. A sustained elimination of HCV is achieved if the HCV RNA remains negative six months after the end of treatment (sustained virological response, SVR) (Table 1). Follow-up studies document that more than 99% of patients who achieve an SVR remain HCV RNA negative 4-5 years after the end of treatment and no signs of hepatitis have been documented (Manns 2008, Swain 2010). Importantly, long-term benefits of SVR are the reduction of HCV-related hepatocellular carcinoma and overall mortality (Backus 2011, Veldt 2007, van der Meer 2012). In 2011, the FDA accepted SVR-12 (HCV RNA negativity 12 weeks after end of treatment) as endpoint for future trials because HCV relapse usually occurs within the first 12 weeks after the end of treatment. However, virologic relapses at later time points may appear in rare cases, and have been reported for interferon-based therapy (Swain 2010, Manns 2013a) as well as interferon-free therapy (Lawitz 2012). In addition to liver disease, several other hepatic manifestations such as cryoglobulinemia, non-Hodgkin’s lymphoma, membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis or porphyria cutanea tarda have been reported in the natural history of hepatitis C virus infection (HCV). Antiviral treatment may improve symptoms even if an SVR is not achieved. In HIV coinfected patients SVR leads to a reduction of non liver-related mortality (Berenguer 2012). On the other hand,

antiviral therapy may worsen extrahepatic manifestations (Pischke 2008, Zignego 2007, Maasoumy 2013a).

Basic therapeutic concepts and medication

Before the identification of HCV as the infectious agent for non-A, non-B hepatitis (Choo 1989), interferon α (IFN) led to a normalisation of transaminases and an improvement of liver histology in some patients (Hoofnagle 1986). After the identification of HCV it became possible to measure success of therapy as the long-lasting disappearance of HCV RNA from serum, the SVR. Since then, SVR rates have increased from 5-20% with IFN monotherapy up to 40-50% with the combination of IFN + ribavirin (RBV) (McHutchison 1998, Poynard 1998). Different HCV genotypes (HCV GT) show different SVR rates. Patients with the most frequent HCV GT1 require a longer treatment duration and still get a lower SVR compared to HCV GT2 and HCV GT3 (Figure 1). The development of pegylated interferon α (PEG-IFN) improved the pharmacokinetics of IFN, allowing more convenient dosing intervals and resulting in higher SVR, especially for HCV GT1. Two PEG-IFNs are available; PEG-IFN α-2b (PEG-Intron®, Merck) and PEG-IFN α-2a (PEGASYS®, Roche). Although smaller trials from southern Europe have suggested slightly higher SVR rates in patients treated with PEG-IFN α-2a (Ascione 2010, Rumi 2010), a large US multicentre study did not detect any significant difference between the two PEG-IFNs + RBV regarding SVR (McHutchison 2009b).

The two PEG-IFNs do have different pharmacokinetic profiles due to their different polyethylene glycol moieties. PEG-IFN α-2b is bound to a single linear 12 kDa polyethylene glycol molecule, whereas PEG-IFN α-2a is covalently attached to a 40 kDa branched chain polyethylene glycol moiety. The distinct sizes of the PEG-IFN influence the volume of distribution. PEG-IFN α-2b is dosed according to body weight (1.5 µg/kg once weekly), while the larger PEG-IFN α-2a is given in a fixed dose of 180 µg once weekly (reviewed in Cornberg 2002) (Table 2). PEG-IFN α-2b may also be dosed at 1.0 µg/kg once patients become negative for HCV RNA without major declines in SVR rates (Manns 2011a, McHutchison 2009b). This may be important for patients with leucopenia or thrombopenia. RBV should be administered according to the bodyweight of the patient. A retrospective analysis of the large PEG-IFN α-2b + RBV pivotal trial revealed that the optimal dose of RBV (Rebetol®) is at least 11 mg/kg (Manns 2001). A prospective, multicentre, open-label, investigator-initiated study confirmed that PEG-IFN α-2b plus weight-based RBV is more effective than flat-dose ribavirin, particularly in HCV GT1 patients (Jacobson 2007). A RBV dose of 15 mg/kg would be ideal, although higher doses are associated with higher rates of anemia (Snoeck 2006).

When combined with PEG-IFN α-2a, a RBV dose of 1000 mg if <75 kg or 1200 mg if ≥75 kg is recommended for HCV GT1 patients while a flat dose of 800 mg RBV was initially suggested for patients with HCV GT2 and 3 (Hadziyannis 2004). However, a weight-based dose of ribavirin (12-15 mg/kg) may be preferred, especially in difficult-to-treat patients and in response-guided therapy (RGT) approaches (Sarrazin 2010, EASL 2014).

The development of direct-acting antiviral agents (DAA) against HCV has revolutionized the treatment of chronic hepatitis C. The main targets for DAA are the NS3/4A protease, NS5B polymerase and the NS5A replication complex. Combinations of different DAAs from different classes will allow very potent treatments. In 2011, the first selective protease inhibitors (PI) were approved for patients with HCV GT1. Boceprevir (Victrelis®) and telaprevir (Incivek®; Incivo®) improve SVR rates by up to 75% in naïve HCV GT1 patients (Jacobson 2011b, Poordad 2011b) and 29-88% in treatment-experienced HCV GT1 (Bacon 2011, Zeuzem 2011) patients. However, both PIs require combination with PEG-IFN + RBV because monotherapy results in rapid emergence of drug resistance. Also, these two PIs cannot be combined as they have the same target and cross-resistance. Either of the two PIs can be combined with PEG-IFN α-2a or PEG-IFN α-2b (Sarrazin 2012). TLV has to be administered at least twice daily (Buti 2013) and BOC three times daily and both PIs are associated with severe side effects, especially anemia (Hézode 2013, Maasoumy 2013b, Backus 2014).

In 2014, new DAAs have already been approved or regulatory approval is expected. Simeprevir (Olysio®, Sovriad®) and faldaprevir will be the first once-daily PIs. Again, both PIs still require combination therapy in 2014 with PEG-IFN + RBV. The SVR rates for treatment-naïve GT1 patients increase to 72-80% (Jensen 2013, Jacobson 2013a) which is not a major improvement over BOC or TLV triple therapy. However, more patients achive an early treatment response (HCV RNA <25 IU/ml at week 4 and negative at week 8-12) and qualify for shorter treatment duration of 24 weeks. In addition, the new PIs have significantly less side effects. Patients with prior treatment failure respond according to their PEG-IFN/RBV responsiveness, with relapsers having the best response and null responders the poorest (Jacobson 2013a, Zeuzem 2013a). Sofosbuvir (Sovaldi®) is the first available once-daily NS5B polymearse inhibitor (Approved 12/2013 by FDA and 1/2014 by EMA). For genotype 1, PEG-IFN/RBV + SOF for just 12 weeks leads to 89% SVR in treatment-naïve patients (Lawitz 2013a).

The resistance barrier of SOF is much higher compared to the availbale PIs. Very few individuals have developed a confirmed selection of SOF-resistant variants. Thus, combination with just RBV may be sufficient for some patients. Valid data are availbale for genotypes 2 and 3 (Lawitz 2013a, Zeuzem 2013b) with SVR rates of 85-100% for treatment-naïve GT2/3 patients. SOF could potentially be combinbed with a PI or a NS5A inhibitor. Data are availbale for SOF + SMV (simepravir) showing >90% SVR with 12 weeks treatment (Jacobson 2013b).

In early January 2014, the European Medicines Agency (EMA) accepted the marketing authorization application for the use of daclatasvir (DCV), an NS5A inhibitor, for the treatment of adults with chronic hepatitis C with compensated liver disease. The application seeks approval of DCV for use in combination with other agents, including sofosbuvir. Importantly, the combination SOF + DCV for 24 weeks showed 98% SVR in 41 GT1 patients with treatment failure to PEG-IFN/RBV/PI triple therapy (Sulkowski 2014). It may well be possible, that daclatasvir (Daklinza®) will be available by autumn 2014. In 2015, the approval of other DAAs is expected that will allow IFN-free combination therapies for all patients (Chapter 13).

Table 1. Relevant definitions for HCV treatment

Abbreviation	Term	Description
SVR	Sustained Virological Response	HCV RNA-negative 6 months after the end of therapy
SVR-12	Sustained Virological Response	HCV RNA-negative 12 weeks after the end of therapy; FDA-accepted endpoint for future trials
RVR	Rapid Virological Response	HCV RNA-negative after 4 weeks of therapy
EVR	Early Virological Response	HCV RNA-positive at week 4 but negative at week 12
DVR	Delayed Virological Response	HCV RNA decline ≥2 $\log_{10}$ decrease from baseline but detectable HCV RNA at week 12, then undetectable at week 24
eRVR (BOC)	Extended Rapid Virological Response (for boceprevir)	HCV RNA negative (LLD, not LLQ) between week 8 and week 24 of BOC therapy: RGT criterion for BOC
eRVR (TLV)	Extended Rapid Virological Response (for telaprevir)	HCV RNA negative (LLD, not LLQ) between week 4 and week 12 of TLV therapy: RGT criterion for TLV
[1]ETS (FDV)	Early Treatment Success	HCV RNA <25 IU/ml at week 4 and negative at week 8: RGT criterion for FDV
[2]ETS (SMV)	Early Treatment Success	HCV RNA <25 IU/ml at week 4 and negative at week 12: RGT criterion for SMV
NR (BOC)	Non-response (boceprevir)	HCV RNA ≥100 IU/mL at week 12; or HCV RNA positive at week 24, futility rule for BOC
NR (TLV)	Non-response (telaprevir)	HCV RNA ≥1000 IU/mL at week 4 or week 12; or HCV RNA positive at week 12, futility rule for TLV
[3]NR (SMV)	Non-response (simeprevir)	HCV RNA ≥25 IU/mL at week 4, 12 or 24, futility rule for SMV
NR (FDV)	Non-response (faldaprevir)	not defined in 1/2014
RL	Relapse	HCV RNA negative at EOT and recurrence of HCV RNA during the follow-up
PR	Partial Response	HCV RNA decline ≥2 $\log_{10}$ at week 12 but positive at week 24 during PEG-IFN + RBV
NULR	Null response	HCV RNA decline <2 $\log_{10}$ at week 12 during PEG-IFN + RBV
LI	Lead-In	4 weeks PEG-IFN + RBV before adding a PI

LLD, lower limit of detection (<10-15 IU/mL; here indicated as negative); LLQ, lower limit of quantification; EOT, end of treatment; RGT, response-guided therapy

[1]as defined in the Phase III trials; Recommendation in the final prescribing information may differ.

[2]as defined in the Phase III trials; Recommendation for RGT are different in the final prescribing information of the US (no RGT) and Canada (undetectable result required at week 4)

[3]as defined in the US (FDA) label. In Canada futility rules are met if HCV RNA is detetectable at any level at week 12 or 24 or ≥25 IU/ml at week 4.

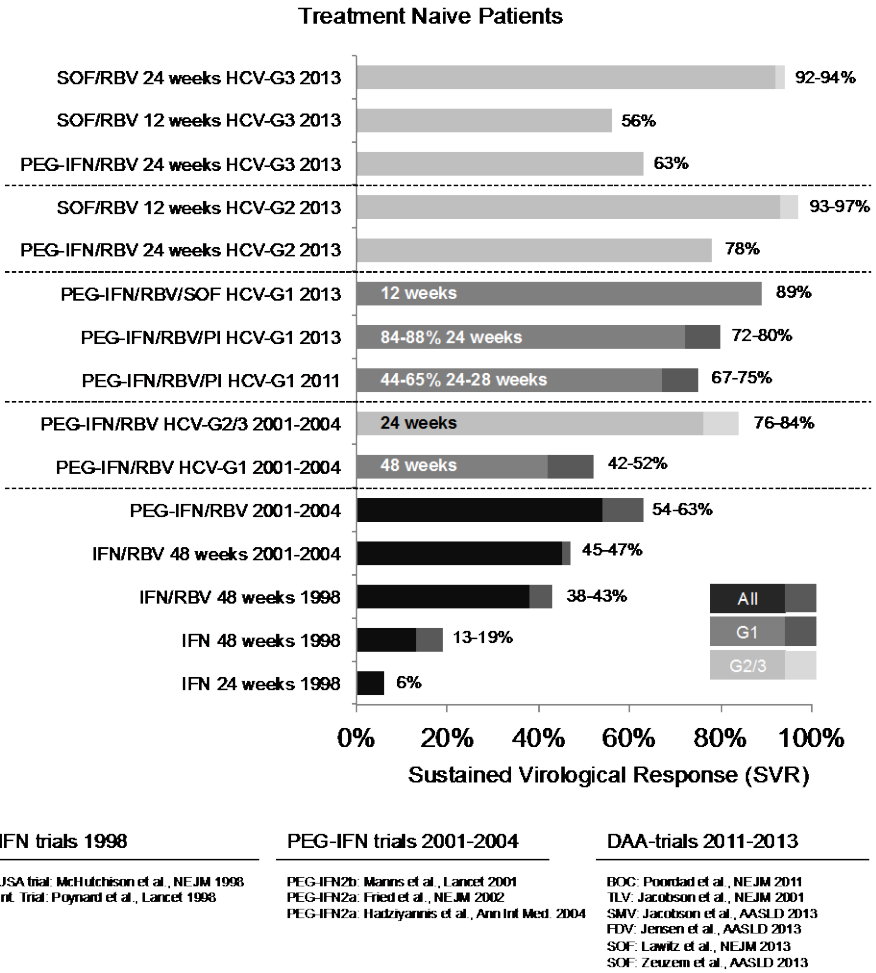


Figure 1. Development of chronic hepatitis C therapy. The sustained virologic response rates have improved from around 5% with interferon monotherapy in the early 90s to >80% today with triple therapy of PEG-IFN + RBV + PI or SOF or even SOF + RBV (data for treatment-naïve patients). Indicated trials are not head-to-head and it is difficult to compare SVR between different studies because the populations had significant differences in genetic and socioeconomic backgrounds.

Table 2. Approved drugs for the treatment of chronic hepatitis C and drugs that will be most likely approved in 2014

Medication	Dosing
Type I interferons	**Subcutaneous injection**
Pegylated interferon α-2a (Pegasys®)	180 µg once weekly
Pegylated interferon α-2b (PEG-Intron®)	1.5 µg/kg once weekly
Interferon α-2a (Roferon®)	3 - 4.5 Mill IU three times weekly
Interferon α-2b (Intron A®)	3 Mill IU three times weekly
Consensus Interferon (Infergen®)	9 µg three times weekly
Ribavirin	**Oral**
Ribavirin (Copegus®)	800 - 1200 mg daily (200 mg or 400 mg tablets)
Ribavirin (Rebetol®)	600 - 1400 mg daily (200 mg capsules or solution)
HCV NS3/4A protease inhibitors	**Oral**
Boceprevir (Victrelis®)	800 mg (4 x 200 mg capsules) every 7-9 hours
Telaprevir (Incivek®, Incivo®)	750 mg (2 x 375 mg tablets) every 7-9 hours* *3 x 375 mg every 12 hours is as effective in treatment-naïve patients (Buti 2013)
Simeprevir (Olysio® (US), Sovriad® (Japan), Galexos® (Canada))	150 mg (1 x 150 mg capsules) once daily *100 mg in Japan*
Faldaprevir	120 mg once daily or 240 mg once daily Loading dose (240 mg or 480 mg) at the first day
HCV NS5B polymerase inhibitors	**Oral**
Sofosbuvir (Sovaldi®)	1 x 400 mg once daily
HCV NS5A replication complex inhibitor	**Oral**
Daclatasvir (Daklinza®)	1 x 60 mg once daily

Predictors of treatment response

Over the last decade, tailoring treatment duration and dosing according to individual parameters associated with response has improved SVR. Predicting SVR before the start of antiviral treatment helps in making treatment decisions. Important baseline factors associated with SVR to PEG-IFN/RBV are the HCV genotype, the degree of liver fibrosis and steatosis, baseline viral load, presence of insulin resistance, age, gender, body mass index, ethnicity, and HIV coinfection (Berg 2011, McHutchison 2009b).

Many of these factors may have less relevance for triple therapy, ie, insulin resistance seems not to impact SVR to PEG-IFN/RBV/PI (Berg 2011, Serfaty 2010) whereas low-density lipoprotein (LDL) was associated with SVR (at least for TLV) (Berg 2011). On the other hand, new parameters seem to be more important such as HCV subtypes 1a and 1b. Patients with HCV GT1a have a higher risk of developing resistance during PI-based therapy compared to HCV GT1b because HCV GT1a

requires an exchange of only one nucleotide versus two for HCV GT1b at position 155 in order to develop resistance (reviewed in Sarrazin and Zeuzem 2010b). This will remain important also for future IFN-free therapies. For simeprevir, a GT1a variant with the so-called Q80K mutation is important. In the PROMISE trial of PEG-IFN/RBV relapse patients, only 47% of HCV GT1a Q80K+ infected patients achieved SVR after re-therapy with SMV/ PEG-IFN/RBV triple therapy. In contrast, SVR rates increased to 79% in patients with HCV GT1a infection with the Q80K wild type (Forns 2013). Similar results were observed in treatment-naïve patients.

In the QUEST-1 study, in which almost half of the patients were recruited in the US, there was no significant increase in SVR rates compared to placebo if patients with HCV GT1a Q80K+ were treated with SMV (Jacobson 2013c), while cure rates between HCV GT1a Q80K- and GT1b appear to be almost similar. In the US prescribing information, testing for the Q80K mutation is recommended for HCV GT1a patients. It is unclear whether this is cost-effective, in particular in areas of the world where the Q80K mutation is rare. While the Q80K variant was present in 41% of the HCV GT1a patients in the QUEST-1 study, only 23% of the HCV GT1a patients had this specific variant in the QUEST-2 trial that mainly took place in Europe (Zeuzem 2013a). Although SVR rates were markedly impaired in the PROMISE and the QUEST-2 trial if the Q80K variant was detected at baseline, patients still had significantly higher chances to achieve SVR if SMV was part of the regimen (Forns 2013, Manns 2013b).

During treatment, the kinetics of the HCV RNA decline is a strong predictor of response. HCV RNA measurements at weeks 4, 12 and 24 are important for a response-guided treatment approach for PEG-IFN/RBV but also for the new triple therapy including BOC, TLV, SMV and FDV. Definitions of response and futility rules are summarized in Table 1. (Futility means that if at certain time points, the viral load threshold is exceeded or detected in serum, therapy should be stopped). In contrast to the Phase III trials, RGT is not recommended for SMV in the US label (Figure 2C), while in the Canadian prescribing information recommended HCV RNA thresholds differ from those applied in the pivotal trials. So far, there is no RGT for triple therapy with sofosbuvir as treatment duration is 12 weeks for all patients (Figure 2D).

For the intepretation of on-treatment HCV RNA results, different assay perfomances have to be considered. It has been shown that the Roche HPS/TaqMan Test v2.0, which was used in most of the clinical trials has a significantly lower sensitivity compared with, ie, the Roche Cobas Ampliprep/Cobas TaqMan (CAP/CTM) v.2.0 or the Abbott RealTime assay (ART). A retrospective analysis of 164 patients treated with TLV revealed that 67% and 31% had undetectable HCV RNA at week 4 by CAP/CTM and ART, respectively. However, 58% of eligible patients for RGT treatment based on CAP had detectable HCV RNA by ART at week 4, but relapse was not observed in these patients. Thus if the Abbott RealTime assay is used, shortening of treatment may also be discussed if HCV RNA is detected but below the assay level of quantification (Vermehren 2014).

Furthermore, it has to be considered that the reliability of all HCV RNA assays is limited if HCV RNA yields levels close to or below the assay's so-called "limit of detection" (LOD). The LOD is defined as the threshold where HCV RNA can be

detected in 95% of the cases. If levels drop below the LOD HCV RNA may still be found and reported as detected but in less than 95%. Recently it has been shown that residual viremia could be detected after two repeated tests in 32-50% of the week 4 samples that initially tested HCV RNA negative (Maasoumy 2014). In a post-hoc analysis of the BOC and TLV Phase III trials it was shown that SVR chances are best in those achieving HCV RNA undetectability early during treatment even compared to those with only residual viremia at levels below the assay's limit of quantification (Harrington 2012). In difficult-to-treat patients (advanced fibrosis, previous PEG-IFN/RBV treatment failure) SVR chances further increased if a negative HCV RNA result can be confirmed by repeat testings, which may be considered in single patients with a poor treatment tolerability (Maasoumy 2014).

Recently, genome-wide association studies have identified host genetic polymorphisms (ie, rs12979860, rs8099917) located on chromosome 19 located upstream of the region coding for IL28B (or IFN λ3) associated with spontaneous HCV clearance and SVR to treatment with PEG-IFN/RBV in HCV GT1 patients (Ge 2009, Rauch 2010, Suppiah 2009, Tanaka 2009) but also to a lesser extent for HCV GT2/3 (Sarrazin 2011b, Mangia 2010). Data on IL28B explain the different responses to PEG-IFN/RBV between different ethnic groups, ie, the low SVR in African Americans and the high SVR in Asian patients. However, the negative predictive value is not strong enough to recommend general testing (EASL 2014).

Recently, a new dinucleotide variant ss469415590 (TT or ΔG) upstream of IL28B (or IFN λ3), which is in high linkage disequilibrium with IL28B rs12979860 was discovered (Prokunina-Olsson 2013). IFN λ4 ss469415590[ΔG] is a frameshift variant that creates a novel gene, encoding the IFN λ4 protein. Compared to the IL28B SNP, the IFN λ4 DNP is more strongly associated with HCV clearance in individuals of African ancestry, although it provides comparable information in Europeans and Asians (Prokunina-Olsson 2013).Viral kinetics, especially response at week 4, have a higher predictive value (Sarrazin 2011a, Poordad 2012), and the relevance of IL28B as a predictive marker for the success of triple therapy with PEG-IFN/RBV/PI is less significant (Jacobson 2011a, Pol 2011a, Poordad 2012). However, IL28B testing may be useful to determine the IFN responsiveness and the likelihood of achieving RVR with PEG-IFN/RBV before starting triple therapy with PEG-IFN/RBV plus one DAA, especially in countries with limited health budgets. It may be of relevance to discuss treatment options with the individual patient (see below). Additional predictive markers are being evaluated. For example, low serum levels of interferon γ inducible protein 10 (IP-10) are associated with SVR and may improve the predictive value for discrimination between SVR and non-response (Darling 2011, Fattovich 2011). Predictive markers for the first IFN-free regimen SOF plus RBV patients are, ie, female sex and to a lesser degree with a baseline viremia of <6 $\log_{10}$ IU/mL, a body weight <30 kg/m^2. However, apart from female sex, the predictive markers are of lesser value in the subgroups of treatment-experienced and cirrhotic patients. Further studies are needed, given the overall lower number of treated patients so far (Lawitz 2013a, Jacobson 2013d). For HCV GT3 patients on-treatment HCV RNA kinetics may predict a later relapse (Osinusi 2013).

Antiviral resistance

The development of direct antiviral agents leads to the emerging problem of drug resistance due to so-called resistance-associated amino acid variants (RAVs) of the virus. Patients who received monotherapy with BOC or TLV developed resistance within a few days (Sarrazin 2007). Due to their overlapping resistance profiles, one PI cannot substitute the other in the case of viral breakthrough. Also, a combination of the two PIs will not work. As mentioned above, combination with PEG-IFN/RBV or other DAA classes is mandatory for the usage of these PIs. Importantly, if patients have a decreased PEG-IFN/RBV response, the risk of developing significant RAVs is higher. Measures for the prevention of drug resistance are adherence to the dose of the medications (most importantly to the PI) and compliance with the futility rules (see below). If RAVs emerge, it is not completely known for how long they persist and if this has any significant consequences for future therapies. Some studies suggest that the majority of PI resistant variants revert to wild type within 1-2 years after the end of therapy (Sarrazin 2007, Sherman 2011b). At this stage there is no rationale to routinely analyse HCV sequences either before therapy or during treatment because it has no practical consequence. One exception is the testing for the Q80K variant in GT1a patients, especially in North America, as discussed earlier. The combination of different DAA classes may overcome the problem of resistance and allow IFN-free combinations (see Chapter 13). SOF has a very high resistance barrier and even SOF plus the weak antiviral RBV lead to high SVR rates (Lawitz 2013a, Jacobson 2013d, Osinusi 2013, Sulkowski 2013a). Theoretically, SOF could be combined with a PI or an NS5A inhibitor if these drugs are available. However, is not recommended to combine SOF with BOC or TLV due to lack of data and potential drug interactions via the Pgp transporter. So far, the combination of SOF and SMV has been evaluated in the COSMOS trial, which showed >90% SVR for 12 weeks SOF plus SMV, even without RBV (Jacobson 2013b). This combination may be considered in patients with an urgent need for treatment and IFN intolerance. SOF plus DCV has been studied in 221 patients with GT1-3, among those 41 GT1 patients with treatment failure to PEG-IFN/RBV/PI triple therapy. The SVR was achieved in all 41 patients with previous PI failure (Sulkowski 2014) (Table 7).

Treatment of HCV genotype 1

Treatment of naïve patients

In 2014, untreated patients with HCV genotype 1 (HCV GT1) have various treatment options, which can be different around the world as not all new treatment options will be availbale in all countries at the same time. For detailed information regarding dual treatment with PEG-IFN/RBV we would like to refer to the Hepatology Textbook 2013 (available at www.FlyingPublisher.com/9003.php). Here we describe the different treatment strategies including the DAAs available in 2014 (boceprevir, telaprevir, simeprevir, faldaprevir, sofosbuvir and daclatasvir) (Table 2). However, dual therapy in easy-to-treat patients may still be an option also in this setting as later discussed.

Triple therapy with PEG-IFN + RBV + PI increases the overall SVR by around 30% (Table 3, Table 4). Many patients qualify for response-guided therapy (RGT) based on viral kinetics. For BOC and TLV, 44-65% of patients achieve eRVR and treatment duration can be reduced to 24-28 weeks (Figures 2A, 2B), some 4-6 times more than with PEG-IFN/RBV. SMV and FDV triple therapy icrease the rate of patients that qualify for shorter treatment of 24 weeks, up to 84-91% according to the RGT criteria that were applied in the respective Phase III trials (Table 4). However, according to the US label of SMV all treatment-naïve patients are supposed to receive only 24 weeks of treatment (Figure 2C). If HCV RNA is detected at levels are ≥25 IU/ml after 4 weeks of treatement discontinuation of all drugs is recommended. Also the recommended treatment regimens differ from those in the pivotal trials. Here, detectable HCV RNA levels <25 IU/ml are not sufficient to recommend shortening of treatment. Instead an undetectable result was required at weeks 4 and 12.

At the time of writing, it is unclear what the recommendations will look like in Europe. The same may be true of the final recommendations for FDV regimens. Triple therapy with SOF plus PEG-IFN/RBV is just a 12-week treatment with SVR rates of 89% for GT1 (Table 5). The cost for SOF will be much higher than for other therapies. In countries with limited health care budgets and where approval of new DAAs is not forseable within the next year, dual therapy with PEG-IFN/RBV may still be an option for patients with favourable predictors for SVR (low baseline HCV RNA, IL28B-CC, no advanced fibrosis). In those patients, a lead-in of 4 weeks with PEG-IFN/RBV can identify patients with RVR who will achieve a high SVR rate without adding a PI. Patients with low viral load at baseline who achieve an RVR have demonstrated 78-100% SVR with 24 weeks of PEG-IFN/RBV dual therapy alone (Berg 2009, Ferenci 2008, Jensen 2006, Sarrazin 2011a, Zeuzem 2006) (Table 6). One prospective trial confirmed that 24 weeks of dual therapy is not inferior compared to 28 weeks PEG-IFN/RBV/BOC in patients with low viral load and RVR (Pearlman 2014). Not adding a DAA will reduce costs and adverse events. The number of patients who qualify for dual therapy varies depending on the distribution of IL28B (IFN λ3) polymorphisms.

On the other hand, a lead-in therapy may identify patients with a poor response to IFN with a high chance of developing resistance. Other negative predictors (HCV GT1a, cirrhosis) together with the lead-in concept may increase the negative predictive value of achieving an SVR with PEG-IFN/RBV and a PI. In that case a wait-and-see strategy may be considered if other options (ie, SOF combination) are not yet available. The 4-week lead-in strategy also proved useful in assessing compliance, tolerability and safety before initiating the PI. The lead-in concept was developed in the BOC studies with the hypothesis of reducing resistance and improving SVR (Kwo 2010). However, the lead-in seems to have no significant effect on the SVR or on the development of antiviral resistance (Kwo 2010, Zeuzem 2011). For newer treatment options, this strategy will be less important. It is recommended to discuss the lead-in option and the consequences with the patient before initiation of treatment.

Another option for many patients without an urgent treatment indication in 2014 is to use a wait-and-see strategy as new IFN-free regimes for GT1 are foreseeable for 2015 (see Chapter 13). Again, this may be different in many countries around the

world. In contrast, for some patients with urgent treatment indication and IFN intolerance, even RBV-free combinations of SOF and SMV or SOF and DCV may be considered in 2014. Some companies may provide DAAs in compassionate use or early access programms. For example, the European Medicines Agency advises on compassionate use of DCV in combination with SOF in patients in urgent need of therapy to prevent progression of liver disease (Anonymous 2014, http://goo.gl/XMqr01).

Table 3. Phase III studies with BOC or TLV treatment regimens in treatment-naïve patients with HCV genotype 1. Studies are not head-to-head and it is difficult to compare SVR between different studies because the populations had significant differences in genetic and socioeconomic backgrounds

Study	Dosing	eRVR, SVR
SPRINT-2 (Poordad 2011b) n=938 non-black (NB) n=159 black *28 weeks if eRVR BOC	a) 1.5 µg/kg PEG-IFN α-2b, 600-1400 mg RBV 48 weeks 44 weeks placebo (wk 4-48) b) 1.5 µg/kg PEG-IFN α-2b, 600-1400 mg RBV 28*-48 weeks 24 weeks 800 mg TID BOC (wk 4-28) c) 1.5 µg/kg PEG-IFN α-2b, 600-1400 mg RBV 48 weeks 44 weeks 800 mg TID BOC (wk 4-48)	a) eRVR: 40/363 (11%) / NB: 12% SVR: 137/363 (38%) / NB: 40% b) eRVR: 156/368 (42%) / NB: 45% SVR: 233/368 (63%) / NB: 67% c) eRVR: 155/366 (42%) / NB: 44% SVR: 242/366 (66%) / NB: 68%
ADVANCE (Jacobson 2011b) n=1088 *24 weeks if eRVR TLV	a) 180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a, 1000-1200 mg RBV 24*-48 weeks, 12 weeks 750 mg TID TLV (wk 0-12) *(T12PR)* b) 180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a, 1000-1200 mg RBV 24*-48 weeks, 8 weeks 750 mg TID TLV, 4 weeks placebo (wk 0-12) c) 180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a, 1000-1200 mg RBV 48 weeks, 12 weeks placebo (wk 0-12)	a) eRVR: 210/363 (58%) SVR: 271/363 (75%)** b) eRVR: 207/363 (57%) SVR: 250/364 (69%) c) SVR: 158/361 (44%)
ILLUMINATE (Sherman 2011a) n=540 n=352 (65%) eRVR n=322 randomised	a) eRVR: 180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a, 1000-1200 mg RBV 24 weeks, 12 weeks 750 mg TID TLV (wk 0-12) b) eRVR: 180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a, 1000-1200 mg RBV 48 weeks, 12 weeks 750 mg TID TLV (wk 0-12) c) no eRVR: 180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a, 1000-1200 mg RBV 48 weeks, 12 weeks 750 mg TID TLV (wk 0-12)	a) SVR: 149/162 (92%) b) SVR: 140/160 (88%) c) SVR: 76/118 (64%)

**numbers from the published data are different from the numbers accepted by FDA, ie, 79% SVR for telaprevir 12 weeks, PEG-IFN/RBV

Table 4. Phase III studies with SMV or FDV treatment regimens in treatment-naïve patients with HCV genotype 1. Studies are not head-to-head and it is difficult to compare SVR between different studies because the populations had significant differences in genetic and socioeconomic backgrounds

Study	Dosing	eRVR, SVR
QUEST 1&2 (Jacobson 2013a) n=785 *24 weeks if ETS SMV	a) 180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a, 1000-1200 mg RBV 48 weeks 12 weeks placebo	SVR: 50%
	b) 180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a/2b, 1000-1200 mg RBV 24*-48 weeks 12 weeks 150 mg QD SMV (wk 0-12)	SVR: 80% ETS: 88%, SVR 90%
STARTVerso 1&2 (Jensen 2013) n=1309 *24 weeks if ETS FDV *STARTVerso 2	a) 180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a, 1000-1200 mg RBV 48 weeks, 12 weeks placebo	SVR: 131/264 (50%)
	b) 180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a, 1000-1200 mg RBV 24*-48 weeks, 12-24* weeks 120 mg QD FDV	ETS: 436/521 (84%), SVR 83% SVR: 382/521 (73%)
	c) 180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a, 1000-1200 mg RBV 24*-48 weeks, 12 weeks 240 mg QD FDV	ETS: 441/524 (84%), SVR 83% SVR: 378/524 (72%)

**numbers from the published data are different from the numbers accepted by FDA, i.e., 79% SVR for telaprevir 12 weeks, PEG-IFN/RBV

Table 5. Phase II and III study with SOF treatment regimens in treatment-naïve patients with HCV genotype 1. Studies are not head-to-head and it is difficult to compare SVR between different studies because the populations had significant differences in genetic and socioeconomic backgrounds

Study	Dosing	SVR
NEUTRINO (Lawitz 2013a) N=292	180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a, 1000-1200 mg RBV + 400 mg SOF QD 12 weeks	89% Cirrhosis: 80%
(Osinusi 2013) N=60	a) 1000-1200 mg RBV + 400 mg SOF QD 24 weeks	F0-F2: 90%
	b) 1000-1200 mg RBV + 400 mg SOF QD 24 weeks	F0-F4: 68% including compensated cirrhosis
	c) 600mg RBV + 400 mg SOF QD 24 weeks	F0-F4: 48% including compensated cirrhosis
PHOTON (Sulkowski 2013a) N=182 (HIV-coinfected)	a) 1000-1200 mg RBV + 400 mg SOF QD 24 weeks N=114, GT1	76%
	b) 1000-1200 mg RBV + 400 mg SOF QD 12 weeks N=68, GT2/3	G2: 88% G3: 67%
	c) 1000-1200 mg RBV + 400 mg SOF QD 24 weeks N=41, GT2/3	n.a.
COSMOS (Jacobson 2013b) N=167 (n=121 with data)	a) 400 mg SOF QD + 150 mg SMV12-24 weeks N=80	Naive (F0-F2): 79-96%
	b) 400 mg SOF QD + 150 mg SMV 12 weeks N=41 (SVR4 data)	All fibrosis stages: Naive: 100% NR: 93-100%

SMV: simeprevir, SOF: sofosbuvir, RBV: ribavirin, SVR: sustained virological response, NR: null response

Table 6. High SVR in naïve patients with HCV genotype 1 and low baseline viral load treated with 24 weeks of PEG-IFN/RBV

Study	Treatment	Subgroups (fast responder)	Weeks	SVR
(Zeuzem 2006) n=235	1.5 µg/kg PEG-IFN α-2b 800-1400 mg ribavirin	<600,000 IU/ml TW0 <600,000 IU/ml TW0 & <29 IU/ml TW4 (RVR)	24 24	50% 89% 1.
(Berg 2009) n=433	1.5 µg/kg PEG-IFN α-2b 800-1400 mg ribavirin	<5.3 IU/ml TW4 (RVR) <800,000 IU/ml TW0 & <5.3 IU/ml TW4 (RVR)	18-24 18-24	80% 100%
(Sarrazin 2011a) n=398	1.5 µg/kg PEG-IFN α-2b 800-1400 mg ribavirin	<800,000 IU/ml TW0 & <5-10 IU/ml TW4 (RVR)	24	88%
(Jensen 2006) n=216	180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a or 800 mg or 1000-1200 mg ribavirin	<50 IU/ml TW4 (RVR) >50 IU/ml TW4 (RVR)	24 24	89% 19%
(Ferenci 2008) n=120	180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a or 1000-1200 mg ribavirin	<50 IU/ml TW4 (RVR)	24	74% ITT 79% PP
(Pearlman 2014) n=171	1.5 µg/kg PEG-IFN α-2b 1000-1200 mg ribavirin	Patients with <25 IU/ml TW4 (RVR) were randomized 1:1	24	89% Relapse 6%
	1.5 µg/kg PEG-IFN α-2b, 1000-1200 mg RBV 800 mg TID BOC (wk 4-28)		28	90% Relapse 3%

* SVR, sustained viral response; RVR, rapid virologic response

Approved DAA treatment regimens (1/2014)

Treatment regimens with boceprevir

Boceprevir (BOC) is a linear peptidomimetic ketoamide serine protease inhibitor that binds reversibly to the HCV non-structural 3 (NS3) active site. BOC results in a significant decline of HCV RNA but given as monotherapy leads to rapid emergence of viral resistance (Sarrazin and Zeuzem 2010b). Thus, combination with PEG-IFN/RBV is necessary (Mederacke 2009). 800 mg BOC is given as 200 mg capsules every 7-9 hours together with food in combination with the optimal dose of PEG-IFN/RBV (Table 2). In all Phase III trials BOC was added after the 4-week lead-in period as described above. In SPRINT-2 (serine protease inhibitor therapy 2), the Phase III study with 1097 treatment-naïve HCV GT1 patients, safety and efficacy of two regimens of BOC added to PEG-IFN α-2b/RBV after a 4-week lead-in with PEG-IFN/RBV were compared to PEG-IFN/RBV/placebo (Table 3) for 44 weeks. The two groups receiving BOC were treated with an RGT concept or a fixed duration of BOC. Patients in the RGT group received 24 weeks triple combination after the lead-in period. Treatment with PEG-IFN/RBV was continued through week 48 only if the criteria for eRVR were not met (HCV RNA levels undetectable from week 8 through week 24). Patients in the fixed therapy duration group received PEG-IFN/RBV/BOC for 44 weeks following the 4-week lead-in

phase. Based on published data for response rates being lower for African-American patients, black and non-black patients were analysed as two different pre-defined cohorts in the SPRINT-2 study. Overall, adding BOC to PEG-IFN/RBV significantly improved SVR in previously untreated patients with HCV genotype 1 leading to approval in 2011. Non-black patients achieved 27-28% higher SVR, black patients increased SVR by 19-30%.

The responsiveness to PEG-IFN/RBV is very important for the success of treatment with BOC. This is highlighted by the fact that the HCV RNA decline at week 4 is highly predictive of SVR. Patients with more than 1 $\log_{10}$ HCV RNA decrease after the 4-week lead-in phase demonstrates an SVR of about 80% if treated with BOC, while only 28-38% responded if HCV RNA declined less than 1 $\log_{10}$. Thus, the lead-in phase can be valuable in predicting responsiveness to PEG-IFN/RBV for further individualization of therapy as discussed above. Importantly, the overall SVR rates between the RGT group and the fixed 48-week therapy group were comparable (Table 4). Patients achieving eRVR were eligible for a 28 week total therapy duration and almost all patients (96%) went on to achieve SVR (Poordad 2011b). Of note, HCV RNA-negative means below the limit of detection (LLD) and not below limit of quantification (LLQ). This is important because SVR is diminished in patients with LLQ at weeks 8-24 who were treated for a shorter duration (Harrington 2012). However, this may depend on the HCV RNA assay as discussed above.

FDA and EMA have approved RGT for treatment-naïve patients except for patients with liver cirrhosis (Figure 2A) but the accepted treatment duration for BOC RGT is different than the definition within the Phase III study (32 vs 24 weeks BOC for patients without eRVR) (Figure 2A). In addition, futility rules on prescription information differ from those applied in the Phase III trials, ie, there was no week 12 stopping criteria in the SPRINT-2 study, while patients were supposed to discontinue treatment if they had detectable HCV RNA at week 12 in the RESPOND-2 trial. None of the 65 patients with HCV RNA level >100 IU/ml at week 12 achieved SVR in the SPRINT-2 study (Jacobson 2012). However, 21 patients achieved SVR despite detectable HCV RNA but <100 IU/ml at week 12. Based on a retrospective analysis in a small number of patients, this supports the futility rule of >100 IU/ml at week 12. There is no week 8 stopping rule in the prescribing information for BOC, while comparable stopping criteria have been established for TLV (4 weeks of triple therapy). However, Phase III data provide some support for a stopping rule at week 8. A futility rule of <3 $\log_{10}$ decline at week 8 would have missed SVR in only 2/53 patients (Jacobson 2012). The question is whether achieving SVR in two more patients, while exposing 51 patients unnecessarily to four more weeks of triple therapy with the associated costs and AEs is reasonable. Treatment discontinuation could be discussed in these patients on an individual basis.

BOC was initially combined with PEG-IFN α-2b. Recently, a study in therapy-experienced patients including relapsers and partial responders showed similar results with PEG-IFN α-2a/RBV (Flamm 2013). Thus, both PEG-IFNs can be combined with BOC. This concept seems to be valid for all other DAA.

Treatment regimens with telaprevir

Telaprevir (TLV) is also an orally administered reversible, selective, peptidomimetic NS3/4A serine protease inhibitor, which leads to a significant decline of HCV RNA although viral resistance emerges rapidly if given as monotherapy (Sarrazin 2007). Thus, 750 mg TLV given as 375 mg tablets every 7-9 hours together with food (ideally >20 g fat) is combined with optimal PEG-IFN/RBV. One prospective trial has demonstrated similar response rates with 750 mg three times a day or with 1125 mg twice daily in treatment-naïve patients (Buti 2013). TLV was administered for a maximum of 12 weeks in the Phase III trials; longer treatment duration is associated with increasing adverse events (McHutchison 2010). Two large Phase III studies (ADVANCE and ILLUMINATE) with a total of 1628 treatment-naïve HCV GT1 patients showed that PEG-IFN/RBV/TLV significantly improved SVR compared to PEG-IFN/RBV and RGT is possible (Jacobson 2011b, Sherman 2011a).

TLV was approved for the treatment of HCV GT1 in 2011. In the ADVANCE trial, 3 treatment groups were assessed for efficacy and safety using RGT in treatment-naïve patients (Jacobson 2011b). 12 weeks of TLV versus 8 weeks of TLV in combination with 24-48 weeks PEG-IFN/RBV were compared to 48 weeks PEG-IFN/RBV alone. Patients who achieved eRVR qualified for 24 weeks of therapy (Table 3). SVR was significantly higher among those receiving TLV compared to the placebo group; 12 weeks TLV resulted in the highest SVR (Table 3). In all treatment groups, more than 80% of patients who achieved eRVR attained SVR (89%, 83%, and 97%, respectively) (Jacobson 2011b).

To validate RGT, telaprevir 750 mg every 8 hours for 12 weeks was evaluated in an open-label study (ILLUMINATE trial) to prospectively assess 24 vs 48 weeks of treatment for HCV GT1 patients who achieved eRVR. If HCV RNA levels were undetectable at weeks 4 and 12, patients were randomly assigned to continue with PEG-IFN/RBV for an additional 24 or 48 weeks. If eRVR was not attained, patients received PEG-IFN/RBV for up to 48 weeks. Of the 540 subjects, 389 (72%) achieved HCV RNA levels LLD at week 4 and 352 (65%) achieved eRVR. Patients who achieved eRVR and were randomized to the 24-week cohort experienced 92% SVR, versus 88% who were treated for 48 weeks (Table 3) (Sherman 2011a). Importantly, patients with liver cirrhosis showed higher relapse rates with shorter treatment, therefore RGT for TLV has only been approved for naïve HCV GT1 patients without liver cirrhosis. Also, retrospective analysis of the data showed that early HCV RNA measurement at week 4 is predictive of non-response to TLV. Patients with HCV RNA values >1000 IU/mL after 4 weeks PEG-IFN/RBV/TLV did not achieve SVR. Therefore, therapy must be stopped (Figure 2B).

In contrast, some easy-to-treat patients may only require 12 weeks of treatment. A retrospective analysis of the PROVE2 study revealed that all 12 naïve patients with IL28B CC genotype without cirrhosis achieved SVR after 12 weeks of PEG-IFN/RBV/TLV (Bronowicki 2012). However, the prospective CONCISE trial that evaluated 12 weeks PEG-IFN/RBV/TLV in 239 IL28B CC patients showed that those patients with RVR who were treated for 12 weeks showed 87% SVR while those patients who continued PEG-IFN/RBV for an additional 12 weeks achieved 97% (Nelson 2013).

Treatment regimens with simeprevir

Simeprevir (SMV) is an orally administered reversible, selective, macrocyclic NS3/4A serine protease inhibitor, which leads to a significant decline of HCV RNA although viral resistance emerges rapidly if given as monotherapy (Reesink 2010). Standard therapy is SMV 150 mg given once daily together with food, and requires combination with PEG-IFN/RBV. SMV is given for the first 12 weeks of therapy. Regimens with a longer 24 weeks treatment phase were investigated in the Phase II study PILLAR but revealed no significant benefit in terms of SVR rates (Fried 2013). Two large Phase III trials QUEST-1 and QUEST-2 were performed to prove the efficacy and safety of SMV in treatment-naïve HCV GT1 infected patients. A total number of 785 patients were randomized to receive either SMV (n=521) or placebo (n=264), both in combination with PEG-IFN/RBV. Patients that received SMV achieved SVR in 80% of the cases compared to only 50% in placebo group (Table 4).

At the end of 2013, SMV was approved in Japan, Canada and the US. All large Phase IIb and III study (Jacobson 2013a, Fried 2013) patients were treated for only 24 weeks if they showed a rapid decline in HCV RNA levels (ETS, Table 1). The applied RGT criteria were HCV RNA <25 IU/ml even if still detectable at week 4 and undetectable HCV RNA at week 12. 85% and 91% of the patients in QUEST-1 and QUEST-2 achieved this, respectively. Patients with an HCV RNA level ≥25 IU/ml at week 4 achieved SVR in only 25%. Thus, the US prescribing information recommends treatment discontinuation in these cases. If the HCV RNA was <25 IU/ml but still detectable SVR rates were slightly lower compared with those with an undetetectable result at week 4 (68% vs. 90%) (Jacobson 2013a). In contrast with TLV and BOC regimes, the recommended treatment duration for patients with compensated cirrhosis does not differ from those with lower stages of liver fibrosis (Figure 2C).

SMV increases SVR rates irrespective of the type of PEG-IFN (2a or 2b) that is used. This was shown in the QUEST-2 study, in which 245 patients were randomized to receive either PEG-IFN 2a or PEG-IFN 2b. There was a numerically higher SVR rate in the PEG-IFN 2a group. However, there was no difference between the PEG-IFN 2b group and a third group of patients that received PEG-IFN 2a without randomization (Manns 2013b). Furthermore, the aim was not nor was the study approprately powered to directly compare the two types of PEG-IFN. The aim was simply to show that SVR rates are improved independent of the type of PEG-IFN. While it remains unclear whether there is a benefit for any of the two types of PEG-IFN, it was shown that both can safely be used in combination with SMV.

Treatment regimens with sofosbuvir

Sofosbuvir (SOF) is an oral NS5B polymerase inhibitor (Sofia 2010). SOF has a pangenotypic activity and a very high barrier to resistance (Lam 2012), although SOF should only be taken in combination with other antiviral(s), and monotherapy should be avoided. It is taken once daily at a dosage of 400 mg (Table 2). The NEUTRINO trial evaluated the use of PEG-IFN/RBV and SOF in 327 treatment-naïve patients with HCV GT1, GT4, GT5 and GT6 infection. 292 of these patients had HCV GT1. Therapy was given for 12 weeks. The total SVR for all GT1 patients

was 89%. Cirrhotic patients achieved SVR in 80% (Table 5). However, there was no control group, so direct comparison with PEG-IFN/RBV or other therapies is not possible (Lawitz 2013a).

SOF was also evaluated as an interferon-free regimen in combination with RBV in HCV-monoinfected patients (Osinusi 2013) and HIV-coinfected patients in the PHOTON-1 trial (Sulkowski 2013a) (Table 5). A patient population with predictors of a negative treatment outcome was selected (Osinusi). Most of the patients were male African Americans, had HCV GT1a infection and the IL28B CT/TT genotype. In the first part of the study 10 patients with mild to moderate fibrosis (F0-F2) were treated with weight-based RBV and 400 mg SOF for 24 weeks. 90% achieved SVR. In the second part of the study 50 patients were equally randomized to either weight-based RBV and 400 mg SOF or 600 mg RBV and 400 mg SOF for 24 weeks. In the low dose RBV group, 48% achieved SVR, whereas in the weight-based RBV group the SVR rate was 68% (Table 5).

More data on SOF and RBV in HCV GT1 infection and HIV/HCV coinfected patients in the PHOTON-1 trial was presented. 114 treatment-naïve patients were selected for treatment with SOF and RBV for 24 weeks. Several ART regimens for HIV treatment were allowed. CD4 T cell count needed to be >200 cells/mm^3 and HIV RNA <50 cop/ml. Although cirrhotic patients were allowed, only 4% of patients had cirrhosis. 76% achieved SVR (Sulkowski 2013a). Similar to the Osinusi trial, the majority of patients were male. Other predictors of a negative treatment outcome, ie, GT1a infection and African American background, were less common.

So far, SOF in combination with RBV with or without PEG-IFN has not been tested in patients with HCV GT1 infection and previous relapse or null reponse. Because of missing control arms in the existing studies, a direct comparison with other treatment regimens is not possible. As the label of SOF allows combination with antiviral therapies, the potential combination with other approved drugs such as SMV or DCV may be considered. However, so far there are only data from Phase II trials for these combinations (Table 5, Table 7). Still, the SVR rates are >90% for 12-24 weeks of IFN and RBV-free treatment with SOF + SMV or DCV (Jacobson 2013b, Sulkowski 2014)

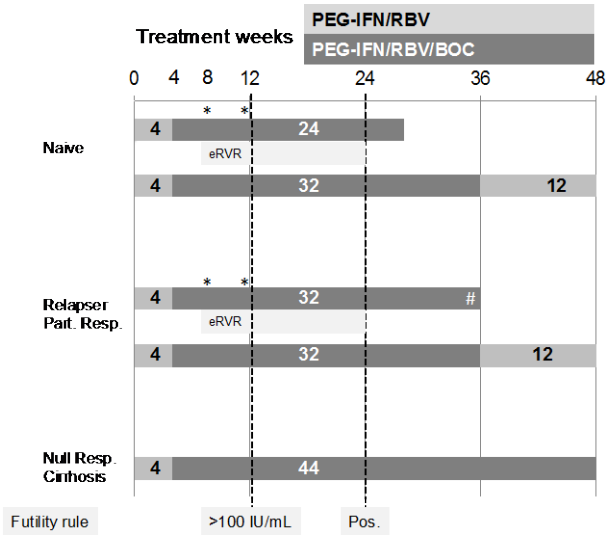


Figure 2A. Treatment with BOC/PEG-IFN/RBV: Approved treatment algorithm for HCV GT1 patients. *, RGT if eRVR (HCV RNA LLD week 8-24); #, EMA did not approve RGT for BOC regimens in previously-treated patients

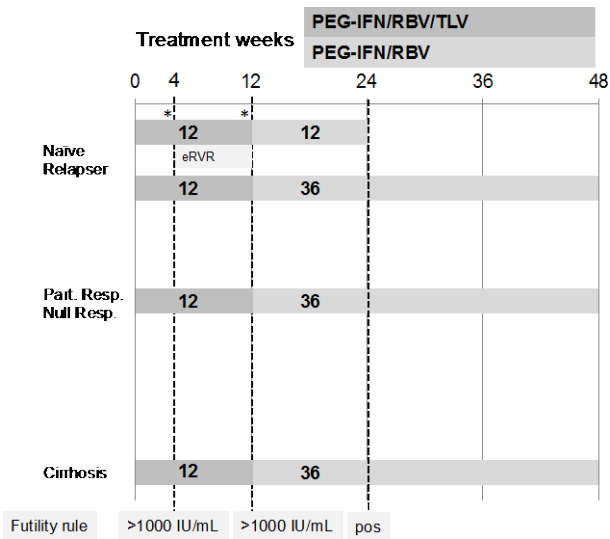


Figure 2B. Treatment with TLV/PEG-IFN/RBV: Approved treatment algorithm for HCV GT1 patients. *RGT if eRVR (HCV RNA LLD week 4-12)

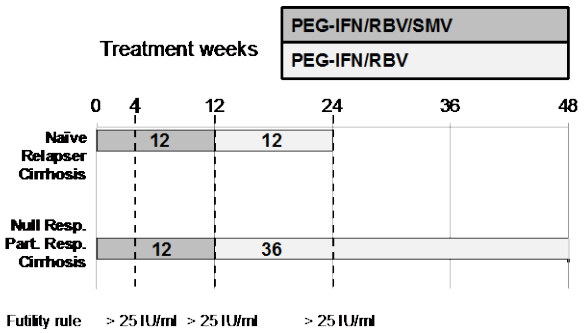


Figure 2C. Treatment with SMV/PEG-IFN/RBV: Treatment algorithm for HCV GT1 patients according to FDA approval.

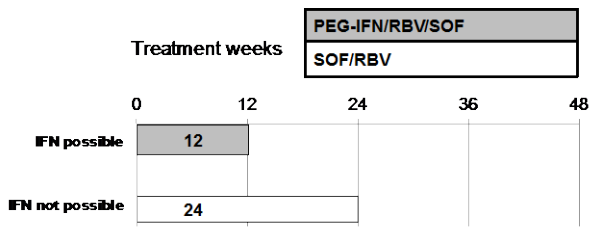


Figure 2D. Treatment with SOF/PEG-IFN/RBV: Treatment algorithm for HCV GT1 patients according to FDA and EMA approval. If patients have contraindications for PEG-IFN, treatment with SOF/RBV can be given for 24 weeks. Although not evaluated, SOF combination therapy has been also approved for patients with previous treatment failure.

Not yet approved DAA treatment regimens (1/2014)

Treatment regimens with faldaprevir

Faldaprevir (FDV) is an inhibitor of the HCV NS3/4A protease, binding to this enzyme active site non-covalently and reversibly, impacting viral replication in HCV-infected host cells. The half-life of FDV is approximately 20-30 hours allowing for a once daily administration. FDV was studied in Phase III clinical trials in a broad population of naïve patients infected by HCV GT1 (Jensen 2013) and previously experienced to interferon-based treatments (relapsers, partial and null responders) (Jacobson 2013e) as well as in HIV-coinfected patients (STARTVerso 4) (Rockstroh 2013). Overall, 1314 naive GT1 patients were recruited into two double-blinded placebo-controlled trials. STARTVerso 1 was conducted in Europe and Japan and STARVerso 2 in North America, South Korea and Taiwan. A combined analysis of the two studies was presented at AASLD 2013 (Jensen 2013). In group 1, patients received 48 weeks of PEG-IFN/RBV. Group 2 received 24 weeks PEG-IFN/RBV in combination with 120 mg FDV for 12 or 24 weeks (STARTVerso 1: FDV for 12 weeks; STARTVerso 2: FDV for 24 weeks) in the case of an early treatment response (ETS = HCV RNA <25 after week 4 and negative at week 8). Patients without ETS were treated for 48 weeks with PEG-IFN/RBV and 24 weeks with 120 mg FDV. Patients in group 3 received 24 weeks

PEG-IFN/RBV plus 12 weeks 240 mg FDV if ETS was achieved and if not, an additional 24 weeks (total 48 weeks) PEG-IFN/RBV (Table 4). Overall, FDV triple therapy resulted in 72-73% SVR, which was 22-23% higher *vs.* dual PEG-IFN/RBV. 84% of patients treated with FDV achieved ETS and could be treated for the shorter period of 24 weeks with 83% SVR. Response rates in Asia (PEG-IFN/RBV 62% *vs.* PEG-IFN/RBV/FDV 88%) were higher compared to Europe (PEG-IFN/RBV 49% *vs.* PEG-IFN/RBV/FDV 77-78%) or North America (PEG-IFN/RBV 45% *vs.* PEG-IFN/RBVFDV 60-63%). At baseline, the Q80K variant that was associated with poorer response to SMV was present in 34% of GT1a patients. However, importantly, SVR rates were not associated with Q80K in patients treated with FDV. Patients with GT1a showed slightly higher rates of breakthrough (10-11% *vs.* 4%) and relapse (10-16% *vs.* 6-8%) compared with GT1b patients. The exact treatment algorithm for FDV is currently (1/2014) not known. The efficacy and safety results indicate that the possible treatment regimen is similar to the one used for TLV and SMV, an initial 12 week period of 120 mg FDV combined with PEG-IFN/RBV, followed by a 12 week period of PEG-IFN/RBV in the case of ETS in naive as well as relapse patients. Similar to SMV, patients with cirrhosis and ETS did not benefit from longer treatment. It is not clear if FDA and EMA will approve RGT (48 weeks for non-ETS patients). Futility rules are also not clear at this point. They may be similar to SMV triple therapy.

Treatment regimens with daclatasvir

Daclatasvir (DCV) is an inhibitor of the HCV NS5A replication complex (Gao 2010). DCV is given one daily at a dose of 60 mg. DCV has been tested in combination regimens with PEG-IFN/RBV as well as with other DAAs including asunaprevir (Lok 2012, Suzuki 2013) and sofosbuvir (Sulkowski 2014). Details of the DCV studies are given in Chapter 13. Due to the recent marketing authorization application for the use of DCV for the treatment of adults with chronic chronic hepatitis C with compensated liver disease and possible early access programs with DCV, we will focus on some aspects of DCV in the section of patients with treatment failure below. Of interest are the IFN-free data with DCV plus SOF (Table 7) that may be considered for patients with an urgent treatment indication.

Treatment of patients with prior antiviral treatment failure

As more patients are treated, the size of the population of patients who have failed to achieve SVR with PEG-IFN/RBV and PEG-IFN/RBV/PI also has expanded. Many non-responder patients have advanced liver disease and successful treatment may extend life expectancy (Backus 2011, Veldt 2007, van der Meer 2012). Retreatment of patients with previous treatment failure is one of the most important current topics in the treatment of chronic hepatitis C.

Definition of treatment failure

Definition of response to or failure on antiviral therapy is very important when considering retreating patients with chronic hepatitis C because the success of PI-based regimens depends on the IFN responsiveness. So far there is lack of data with SOF triple therapy in prior nonresponders. Patients may have been treated with different treatment regimens and compliance on those therapies may have varied greatly. Most importantly, HCV RNA kinetics and the response profile during the

previous therapy have to be taken into account before starting a new treatment. It is crucial to screen the patient's records and check treatment duration, drug dosing and HCV RNA of the previous therapy. Non-response is the failure of a patient to clear HCV RNA at any point during treatment. Definitions used for trials assessing novel therapy approaches have generally defined non-response as the failure to achieve ≥2 $\log_{10}$ reduction of HCV RNA after 12 weeks. Classifications of non-response include null response, partial response, relapse, and breakthrough (see Table 1, Figure 3).

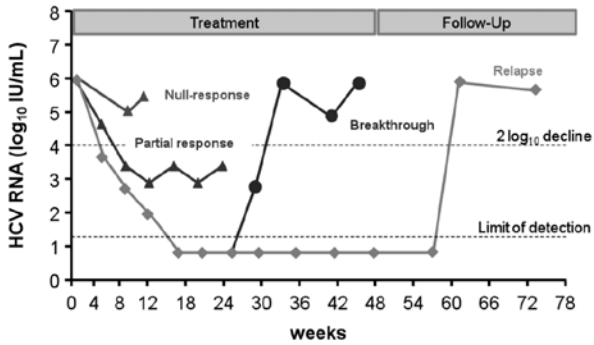


Figure 3. Different scenarios of antiviral treatment failure in chronic hepatitis C

Retreatment of HCV GT1 patients with relapse after PEG-IFN/RBV

Retreatment with PEG-IFN/RBV of relapse patients after IFN/RBV or PEG-IFN/RBV resulted in an SVR of 24-34% (Bacon 2011, Poynard 2009, Zeuzem 2011). Triple therapy with PEG-IFN/RBV/PI increases SVR dramatically to 69-89% (Bacon 2011, Zeuzem 2011, Zeuzem 2013a) (Table 7). Relapse patients are the ideal patients for retreatment with a PI-based triple therapy regimen. Patients have already proven to respond to PEG-IFN and RBV. Thus, the backbone to prevent PI resistance is effective and a lead-in strategy may not be as important as in other situations. RGT is possible with TLV and BOC based regimes (Figures 2A, 2B) if cirrhosis is excluded (Ghany 2011, Sarrazin 2012). However, BOC RGT has only been approved by the FDA and not by the EMA because SVR was slightly lower in the RESPOND-2 RGT group (Table 7). The EMA label for SMV and FDV is currently uncertain. The FDA recommends that relapsers and naïve patients should be treated with the same 24-weeks regimen if SMV/PEG-IFN/RBV triple therapy is considered (Figure 2C). Importantly, this also includes relapse patients with liver cirrhosis. So fare there are no data for PEG-IFN/RBV/SOF in relapsers but FDA and EMA have approved treatment. The use of DCV has not yet been discussed, so the EMA label is not clear.

Retreatment of HCV GT1 patients with previous partial response

Patients who are partial responders (PR) to standard PEG-IFN/RBV combination therapy have demonstrated SVRs ranging between 7% and 15% with a standard PEG-IFN/RBV retreatment (Bacon 2011, Zeuzem 2011). Retreatment with PI based triple therapy increases SVR to 40%-86% (Bacon 2011, Zeuzem 2011, Zeuzem

2013a) (Table 7). FDA, but not EMA, has approved RGT for BOC (Figures 2A, 2B). Treatment duration for PEG-IFN/RBV/TLV or SMV is 48 weeks for all PR patients (Figure 2B, 2C). The 4-7-fold increase justifies retreatment. However, SVR decreases significantly in patients with cirrhosis (ie, 34% with TLV) and other negative response factors (Pol 2011b). So far there are no data for PEG-IFN/RBV/SOF in partial responders, but FDA and EMA have approved treatment. The use of DCV has not yet been discussed, so the EMA label is not known.

Retreatment of HCV GT1 patients with previous null response

Patients who are null responders (NULR) to standard PEG-IFN/RBV combination therapy have demonstrated SVR ranging between 5% and 16% with an optimised PEG-IFN/RBV retreatment (Jensen 2009, Poynard 2009, Zeuzem 2011). Retreatment with PEG-IFN/RBV/PI increased SVR more than 6-fold in the REALIZE trial (Zeuzem 2011). However, overall SVR with triple therapy is limited to 29-59% (Zeuzem 2011, Vierling 2013) (Table 7). If further negative predictive factors are present (GT1a, cirrhosis), SVR rates are low. This may justify the lead-in concept to decide if treatment with a PI is beneficial. Patients who do not acheive a 1 $\log_{10}$ decline of HCV RNA after 4 weeks demonstrate only 15% SVR with PEG-IFN/RBV/TLV (Zeuzem 2011). Response rates have been slightly more promising with SMV regimens in the Phase II study ASPIRE (Zeuzem 2013a). Here, cirrhotic NULR achieved SVR in 31-46% of the cases. However, the number of patients was small and unfortunately previous NULR were excluded from Phase III trials. Futility rules are the same for treatment-experienced patients as for treatment-naïve patients (Figures 2A, 2B, 2C). So far there are no data for SOF triple therapy in NULR patients, but FDA and EMA have approved treatment based on data in naïve difficult-to-treat IL28B TT patients. As more potent IFN-free combination therapies are expected by 2015, patients without an urgent treatment indication may consider waiting for new treatment options.

Retreatment of HCV GT1 patients with failure to previous PI based triple therapy

Data for retreatment of patients with HCV GT1 infection and failure to previous therapy with PEG-IFN/RBV + TLV or BOC have been presented in cohorts (Sulkowski 2014). 41 patients with nonresponse, relapse or breakthrough to the aforementioned therapies were randomized into two cohorts. Cohort 1 (n=21) received 60 mg of DCV and 400 mg of SOF daily for 24 weeks. Cohort 2 (n=20) received 60 mg of DCV, 400 mg of SOF and 1000-1200 mg of RBV daily for 24 weeks. All patients were non-cirrhotic. Cohort 1 achieved 100% SVR and cohort 2 achieved 95% SVR. However, 1 patient in cohort 2 missed his follow up visit at week 12 but tested HCV RNA negative 12 weeks later, thus all patients were cured (Table 7). No grade 3 or higher adverse events occured in the DCV/SOF cohort and 1 SAE was documented in the DCV/SOF/RBV cohort. DCV is submitted for approval in combination with SOF in Europe and may be availabe by Q3 2014 in some countries, providing patients with failure to previous PI-based therapy and other patients with an urgent treatment indication a possible solution.

Table 7. Phase III studies with PI treatment regimens in treatment-experienced patients infected with HCV genotype 1. Studies are not head-to-head and SVR between studies are difficult to compare because they had significant differences in genetic and socioeconomic backgrounds

Study	Dosing	SVR12, SVR24	
RESPOND-2 (Bacon 2011) n=403	a) 1.5 µg/kg PEG-IFN α-2b, 600-1400 mg RBV 48 weeks 44 weeks placebo (wk 4-48)	REL: 29% PR: 7%	All: 21%
*36 weeks if eRVR BOC	b) 1.5 µg/kg PEG-IFN α-2b, 600-1400 mg RBV 36*-48 weeks 32 weeks 800 mg TID BOC (wk 4-36)	REL: 69% PR: 40%	All: 59%
	c) 1.5 µg/kg PEG-IFN α-2b, 600-1400 mg RBV 48 weeks 44 weeks 800 mg TID BOC (wk 4-48)	REL: 75% PR: 52%	All: 66%
(Flamm 2013) n=201	a) 180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a, 1000-1200 mg RBV 48 weeks 44 weeks placebo (wk 4-48)	REL, PR: 21%	
	b) 180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a, 1000-1200 mg RBV 48 weeks 44 weeks 800 mg TID BOC (wk 4-48)	REL, PR: 64%	
PROVIDE (Vierling 2013) n=164	1.5 µg/kg PEG-IFN α-2b, 600-1400 mg RBV 48 weeks 44 weeks 800 mg TID BOC (wk 4-48)	38% (20/52) NULR 67% (57/85) PR 93% (27/28) REL	
REALIZE (Zeuzem 2011) n=663	a) 180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a, 1000-1200 mg RBV 48 weeks, 12 weeks placebo (wk 0-12)	REL: 24% PR: 15% NULR: 5%	
	b) 180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a, 1000-1200 mg RBV 48 weeks, 4 weeks placebo (wk 0-4), 12 weeks 750 mg TID TLV (wk 4-16) → Lead-in cohort	REL: 88% PR: 54% NULR: 33%	
	c) 180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a, 1000-1200 mg RBV 48 weeks, 12 weeks 750 mg TID TLV (wk 0-12), 4 weeks placebo (wk 12-16)	REL: 83% PR: 59% NULR: 29%	
ASPIRE (Zeuzem 2013) n=462	a) 180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a, 1000-1200 mg RBV 48 weeks, 12/24/48 weeks placebo	REL: 37% PR: 9% NULR: 19%	
	b) 180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a, 1000-1200 mg RBV 48 weeks, 12/24/48 weeks 100/150 mg QD SMV	REL: 77-89% PR: 48-86% NULR: 38-59%	
PROMISE (Forns 2013) n=393	a) 180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a, 1000-1200 mg RBV 48 weeks, 12 weeks placebo	REL: 37%	
	b) 180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a, 1000-1200 mg RBV 24-48 weeks, 12 weeks 150 mg QD SMV	REL: 79%	
STARTVerso 3 (Jacobson 2013e) n=677	a) 180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a, 1000-1200 mg RBV 48 weeks, 12 weeks placebo	REL: 14% PR: 3% NULR: n.a.	
	b) 180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a, 1000-1200 mg RBV 48 weeks, 12 weeks 240 mg QD FDV	REL: 70% (RGT possible) PR: 58% NULR: 33%	
	c) 180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a, 1000-1200 mg RBV 48 weeks, 24 weeks 240 mg QD FDV	REL: 70% (RGT possible) PR: 47% NULR: 33%	
(Sulkowski 2014) n=41 failure to previous PI based therapy (TLV, BOC)	a) DCV 60 mg + SOF 400 mg qd 24 weeks	100% (SVR12)	
	b) DCV 60 mg + SOF 400 mg qd and 1000-1200 mg RBV 24 weeks	100%* (1 patient LTFU achieved SVR24)	

PEG-IFN maintenance therapy

There has been much interest in the past concerning the use of low-dose PEG-IFN maintenance therapy in patients with a null response since data has suggested that IFN may halt progression of liver disease (Nishiguchi 1995). There are two major published trials that have analyzed if maintenance treatment with IFN alters the natural course of chronic hepatitis C (EPIC^3 trial, HALT-C trial). However, both studies revealed no benefit (Bruix 2011, Di Bisceglie 2008). In conclusion, long-term treatment with low-dose PEG-IFN cannot be recommended (Sarrazin 2010a). This information may be still relevant for some areas of the world.

Treatment of HCV genotypes 2 and 3

Naïve patients

Therapy of GT2/3 will see a major change in 2014 with the approval of sofosbuvir (SOF). As previously mentioned, SOF is a new NS5B polymerase inhibitor with pangenotypic efficacy and extensive data were acquired in the treatment of GT2- and GT3-infected patients in 2013 prior to approval as the first IFN-free regimen for hepatitis C. The FISSION trail evaluated the direct comparison of SOF/RBV for 12 weeks and PEG-IFN/RBV for 24 weeks in treatment-naïve patients (Lawitz 2013a). Of note, in the PEG-IFN/RBV arm, RBV was given as a flat dosage of 800 mg and not weight-based. Both regimens showed an overall SVR of 67% but the subgroup analysis demonstrated a superior result for SOF/RBV in GT2. In GT2 the overall SVR rate was 97%, whereas for the PEG-IFN/RBV arm the SVR was 78% (Table 8). The POSITRON trial evaluated the use of SOF/RBV in patients who were intolerant to PEG-IFN, due to contraindication or patient's decision (Jacobson 2013d). This trial showed an SVR of more than 90% in both cirrothic and non-cirrhotic patients for patients with GT2.

GT3 patients had an inferior response to 12 weeks of SOF/RBV with an SVR of 56% in the FISSION trial and 61% in the POSITRON trial (Lawitz 2013a, Jacobson 2013d). In GT3 cirrhotic patients SVR rates even decreased to 21%. Therefore a treatment extension to 24 weeks was looked at in the VALENCE trial (Zeuzem 2013b). The VALENCE trial was initially designed for a shorter treatment period, but given the data from POSITRON and FISSION, an amendment for treatment prolongation in GT3 to 24 weeks was proposed. An SVR of up to 94% was reached in treatment-naïve patients (Zeuzem 2013b) (Table 8).

Given the availability of SOF, previous considerations of the addition of TLV or BOC in GT2/3 are outdated. Indeed, in their latest recommendation the AASLD and IPSA advocate the soley use of SOF/RBV and advice against the use of PEG-IFN/RBV. However, treatment with PEG-IFN/RBV dual therapy may be still considered depending on the health care system, especially for easy-to-treat patients (Figure 4). Treatment with IFN-free SOF for 12-24 weeks in GT2/3 can be 10-20 times more expensive *vs.* PEG-IFN-based treatment.

Table 8. SVR rates of Sofosbuvir in HCV GT2/3 infection*

Study	Treatment	SVR GT2	SVR GT3
Lawitz 2013a (FISSION) N=253	RBV (1-1,2g) + SOF 12W	97%	56%
	PEG-IFN/RBV (0,8 g) 24W	78%	53%
Jacobson 2013d (POSITRON) N=207 IFN intolerant pts	RBV (1-1,2g) + SOF 12W	no cirrhosis: 92%; cirrhosis: 94%	no cirrhosis: 68%; cirrhosis: 21%
Jacobson 2013d (FUSION) N=201 NullR or Rel.	RBV (1-1,2g) + SOF 12W	no cirrhosis: 96.2% cirrhosis: 60%	no cirrhosis: 36.8% cirrhosis: 19.2%
	RBV (1-1,2g) + SOF 16W	no cirrhosis: 100% cirrhosis: 77.8%	no cirrhosis: 62.5% cirrhosis: 60.9%
Zeuzem 2013b (VALENCE) N=334	RBV (1-1,2g) + SOF 12W	naive: 97% naive, cirrhosis: 100%	naive: 94% naive, cirrhosis: 92%
	RBV (1-1,2g) + SOF 24W	exp.: 91% exp. cirrhosis: 88%	exp.:81% exp., cirrhosis: 60%
Lawitz 2013b (LONESTAR-2) N=47	PEG-IFN/RBV + SOF 12W	exp.:100% exp.: cirrhosis: 93%	exp.: 83% exp.: cirrhosis: 83%

NullR: Null Response, Rel: Relapse, PEG-IFN: pegylated Interferon alpha, RBV: ribavirin, SOF: sofosbuvir, W: weeks, exp.: treatment-experienced patients

For PEG-IFN/RBV a fixed duration of treatment (24 weeks) has been suggested, although the optimal results are likely to be achieved when the duration of therapy is adjusted based on viral kinetics. Many studies have investigated the reduction of treatment duration for HCV GT2/3 to 16, 14, or even 12 weeks. Overall, reducing the treatment duration to less than 24 weeks increases the number of relapses (Andriulli 2008, Dalgard 2008, Mangia 2005, Manns 2011a, Shiffman 2007b). However, some HCV GT2/3 patients may indeed be treatable for 12-16 weeks if certain prerequisites are fulfilled, especially the rapid virologic response (RVR) by week 4 of therapy (Slavenburg 2009). Only patients with RVR have high SVR rates after 16 weeks (Manns 2011a, von Wagner 2005), 14 weeks (Dalgard 2008), or even 12 weeks of therapy (Mangia 2005) (Table 9).

In addition to the RVR, the specific HCV genotype and the baseline viral load are associated with response. Similar to the IFN-free treatment with SOF, patients with GT2 respond better to PEG-IFN/RBV than those infected with GT3 (Zeuzem 2004b). Furthermore, the shorter treatment schedules reveal that HCV GT3 patients with low baseline viremia (<400-800,000 IU/ml) had a much better chance of responding than those with high viral load (>400-800,000 IU/ml) (Shiffman 2007b, von Wagner 2005). Patients with GT3 plus low viral load who achieve RVR can be treated for less than 24 weeks. However, reducing treatment duration is not recommended in patients with advanced liver fibrosis or cirrhosis, insulin resistance, diabetes mellitus or BMI >30 kg/m^2 (Aghemo 2006, Sarrazin 2010a, Sarrazin 2011). Patients treated with a response-guided approach should be started on high-dose ribavirin, which appears to increase the rate of RVR in patients with HCV GT2/3 undergoing short treatment (Mangia 2010b).

Table 9. Response-guided therapy with PEG-IFN and RBV for patients with HCV genotypes 2 and 3

Study	Treatment	Subgroups	Therapy weeks	SVR*
(von Wagner 2005) n=153	180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a 800-1200 mg ribavirin	>600 IU/ml TW4	24	36%
		<600 IU/ml TW4	24	80%, 84% if HCV RNA<800,000 IU/ml
		<600 IU/ml TW4	16	82%, 93% if HCV RNA<800,000 IU/ml
(Shiffman 2007b) n=1469	180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a 800 mg ribavirin	All patients	24	70%
		All patients	16	62%
		<50IU/ml TW4 (RVR)	24	85%
		<50IU/ml TW4 (RVR)	16	79%
		<400,000IU/ml TW0 (LVL)	24	81%
		<400,000IU/ml TW0 (LVL)	16	82%
(Mangia 2005) n=283	1.0 µg PEG-IFN α-2b 1000-1200 mg ribavirin	Standard group	24	76%
		Standard group	24	91% if TW4 HCV RNA <50 IU/ml
		>50 IU/ml TW4 (no RVR)	24	64%
		<50 IU/ml TW4 (RVR)	12	85%
(Dalgard 2008) n=428	1.5 µg PEG-IFN α-2b 800-1400 mg ribavirin	<50 IU/ml TW4 (RVR)	24	91% ITT, 93% with F24 HCV RNA test
		<50 IU/ml TW4 (RVR)	14	81% ITT, 86% with F24 HCV RNA test
		>50 IU/ml TW4 (no-RVR)	24	55% ITT, 59% with F24 HCV RNA test
(Manns 2011a) n=682	1.0 µg PEG-IFN α-2b 1.5 µg PEG-IFN α-2b 800-1400 mg ribavirin	All patients	24 (1.5)	67% ITT, 82% as-treated
		All patients	24 (1.0)	64% ITT, 80% as-treated
		All patients	16 (1.5)	57% ITT, 68% as-treated

* SVR, sustained viral response; RVR, rapid virologic response; LVL, low baseline viral load.

In contrast, GT2/3 patients who do not achieve RVR (especially HCV GT3 with high viral load) may be treated for longer than 24 weeks (ie, 36-48 weeks) if SOF is not available. However, most data are retrospective (Willems 2007). The prospective N-Core study investigated 24 weeks versus 48 weeks of PEG-IFN α-2a/RBV. This study was prematurely terminated because of slow enrolment and could only show a significant difference in those patients who completed the study (73% *vs.* 54% SVR), but not in the intent-to-treat analysis (Cheinquer 2012). A prospective study from Italy showed a numerically significant benefit of 36 weeks versus 24 weeks (75% vs. 62%) (Mangia 2010a). Depending on the assay used to determine RVR, around 25-30% of GT2/3 patients belong to this difficult-to-treat population not achieving RVR (Table 9). Patients without RVR are the patients that

may benefit most from SOF treatment. Tailoring treatments individually for patients with HCV GT2/3 will reduce costs and side effects and further optimise the response rates.

Table 10. SVR of patients with HCV genotypes 2 or 3 not achieving RVR

Study	Frequency of patients without RVR	SVR without RVR (24 wks therapy)
(von Wagner 2005) 180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a 800-1200 mg ribavirin	7% (HCV RNA >600 IU/ml TW4)	24 weeks 36% SVR
(Shiffman 2007b) 180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a 800 mg ribavirin	36% (HCV RNA >50 IU/ml TW4) (24 wk group)	24 weeks 45% SVR
(Mangia 2005) 1.0 µg/kg PEG-IFN α-2b 1000-1200 mg ribavirin	36%-38% (HCV RNA >50 IU/ml TW4)	24 weeks 48%-64% SVR
(Dalgard 2004) 1.5 µg/kg PEG-IFN α-2b 800-1400 mg ribavirin	22% (HCV RNA >50 IU/ml TW4/TW8)	24 weeks 56% SVR
(Dalgard 2008) 1.5 µg/kg PEG-IFN α-2b 800-1400 mg ribavirin	29% (HCV RNA >50 IU/ml TW4)	24 weeks 55% SVR
(Cheinquer 2012) 180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a 1000-1200 mg ribavirin	n=188 patients with non-RVR were randomized for 24 versus 48 weeks	24 weeks 52% ITT SVR 24 weeks 54% SC SVR 48 weeks 61% ITT SVR 48 weeks 73% SC SVR

ITT: intention to treat, SC: study completers

Treatment of HCV GT2/3 patients with prior antiviral treatment failure

The use of SOF was specifically studied in patients with non-response or relapse to a previous therapy with PEG-IFN/RBV in the FUSION trial (Jacobson 2013d). Treatment-experienced patients with GT2 infection showed a favourable reponse to 12 weeks of SOF/RBV with an SVR of 86%. However, a significant drop in response could be shown for treatment-experienced cirrhotic patients with a mere SVR of 60%. Treatment prolongation to 16 weeks was able to remedy this issue and raise SVR rates to 94% and 77.8% in non-cirrhotic and cirrhotic patients, respectively (Table 8). However, the FDA label recommends 12 weeks SOF/RBV for GT2 patients.

Results for 12 weeks of treatment with SOF/RBV in patients with GT3 infection and relapse or non-response to previous treatment showed an SVR of 30% in non-cirrothic patients and only 19.2% in cirrhotic patients. Treatment prolongation to 24 weeks was evaluted in the VALENCE trial (Zeuzem 2013b), and the SVR raised to 60% for treatment-experienced, cirrhotic patients and to 87% for treatment experienced, non-cirrhotic patients. In treatment-experienced patients with cirrhosis and GT3 infection the addition of PEG-IFN to the SOF/RBV regimen for 12 weeks

should be considered. This regimen was evaluated in the LONESTAR-2 trial and showed an SVR of 83% in treatment-experienced patients, irrespective of the degree of fibrosis, including patients with compensated cirrhosis (55% of patients had cirrhosis) (Lawitz 2013b) (Figure 4). A total of 24 patients with GT3 were included and 22 patients completed treatment. One patient discontinued the treatment due to adverse events and 1 patient was lost to follow-up.

Although a direct head-to-head comparison of an IFN-free treatment with SOF/RBV and PEG-IFN/RBV/SOF regimen was not done, data indicates that the addition of PEG-IFN can still lead to a shorter treatment duration with better response rates in the difficult-to-treat patients with HCV GT3, cirrhosis and failure of previous treatment. However, SOF will not be available in all countries and retreatment with PEG-IFN/RBV for 24 weeks is a viable option in patients with relapse after a short course of PEG-IFN/RBV (Mangia 2009). In patients with unfavourable predictors, longer treatment duration for 48 weeks is advisable **(**EASL 2014**)**. Non-responders can be retreated with an additional course of PEG-IFN/RBV. It is important to optimise dose and duration of treatment.

Future DAA will be pan-genotypic and therefore also effective for HCV GT3 (see Chapter 13). Also DCV will be effective in GT3 patients and may be considered in difficult-to-treat patients when available after regulatory approval. Nevertheless, non-responder patients with mild fibrosis may wait for new treatment options that become available in 2015, but it is important to understand that fibrosis progression is faster in patients with HCV GT3 (Bochud 2009).

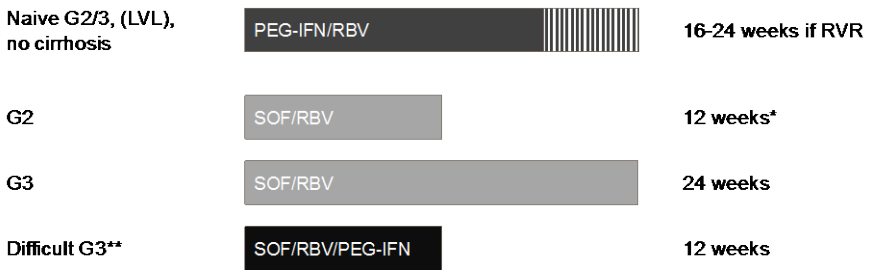


Figure 4. Suggestions for the treatment of HCV genotypes 2 and 3 for 2014 in countries where SOF is available. Interferon free regimens should be preferred due to the much better adverse event profile. Due to economical reasons, we suggest to consider PEG-IFN/RBV in easy to treat patients with G2 or 3, i.e. with LVL = low viral load at baseline <800,000 IU/ml. Sensitive HCV RNA assays (limit of detection 12-15 IU/ml or 50 IU/ml) at weeks 4 is important to define rapid virological response (RVR). Patients should not have cirrhosis. *16 weeks for G2 with cirrhosis may result in higher SVR. ** Treatment experienced G3 patients with cirrhosis may benefit from 12 weeks triple therapy with PEG-IFN/RBV/SOF.

Treatment of HCV genotypes 4, 5, and 6

All new DAAs have barely been tested in patients with HCV GT4, 5, or 6. There are some data for SMV showing adequate antiviral efficacy for GT4-6 (Lenz 2013) which may be considered. Also DCV has shown considerable results in GT4

patients (Wang 2012). Triple therapy of SOF + PEG-IFN/RBV for 12 weeks has resulted in 96-100% SVR in GT4-6 patients (Lawitz 2013a). However, the number of patients was low (n=35) although the data was sufficient for the approval of SOF for all genotypes (EMA label 1/2014).

GT4-6 are the major genotypes in Africa and Asia (see below) and in many of these countries PEG-IFN/RBV will remain the SOC in 2014. In general, treatment duration of 48 weeks PEG-IFN/RBV is recommended based on the results of large, randomized Phase III trials (Fried 2002, Hadziyannis 2004, Manns 2001). However, these trials included few patients with HCV GT4, 5, and 6 and large, prospective randomized studies with RGT are rare. Importantly, GT4, 5, and 6 are very common in areas where chronic hepatitis C is highly prevalent. For example, HCV GT4 is most prevalent in the Middle East and Egypt where it accounts for >80% of all HCV cases (approximately 34 million people) (Khattab 2011). HCV GT5 is most prevalent in South Africa, and genotype 6 in Southeast Asia (Nguyen 2005). Available study results, although limited, suggest that patients with HCV GT4, 5 and 6 may show different clinical courses and treatment outcomes. Ethnicity-related factors (ie, IL28B, regional aspects) may contribute to these findings.

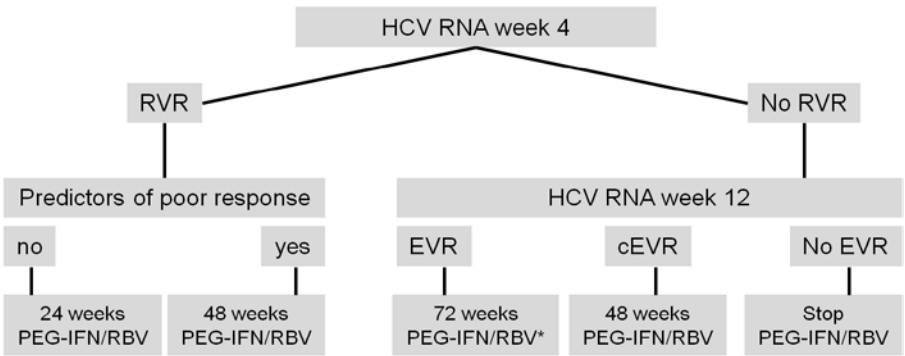


Figure 5. Suggestion for treatment of HCV genotypes 4, 5, and 6 2014 if SOF + PEG-IFN/RBV is not possible. This algorithm was initially proposed for HCV GT4 (adapted from Khattab 2011). Sensitive HCV RNA assays (limit of detection 12-15 IU/ml or 50 IU/ml) at weeks 4 and 12 may determine treatment duration. Reducing treatment duration is not recommended in patients with predictors of poor response (liver cirrhosis, insulin resistance, diabetes mellitus or hepatic steatosis, high baseline viral load >800,000 IU/mL)

Table 11. Efficacy of antiviral treatment with PEG-IFN plus ribavirin in patients with chronic hepatitis C infected with genotypes 4, 5, and 6. Selected trials

Study	Treatment	HCV genotype/Duration		SVR
(Diago 2004) n=49	180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a 800/1000/1200 mg ribavirin	G4	24 weeks 24 weeks 48 weeks 48 weeks	0% (if low RBV) 67% (if high RBV) 63% (if low RBV) 79% (if high RBV)
(Hasan 2004) n=66	1.5 µg/kg PEG-IFN α-2b 1000/1200 mg ribavirin	G4	48 weeks 48 weeks 48 weeks	68% 55% (if HVL) 86% (if LVL)
(Kamal 2005) n=287	1.5 µg/kg PEG-IFN α-2b 1000/1200 mg ribavirin	G4	24 weeks 36 weeks 48 weeks	29% 66% 69%
(Kamal 2007) n=358	1.5 µg/kg PEG-IFN α-2b 10.6 mg/kg ribavirin RGT	G4	24 weeks RGT 36 weeks RGT 48 weeks RGT 48 weeks	86% (if RVR) 76% (if EVR) 56% (if DVR) 58%
(Ferenci 2008) n=66	180 µg PEG-IFN α-2a 1000/1200 mg ribavirin RGT	G4	24 weeks RGT	87% (if RVR)
(Bonny 2006) n=59	PEG-IFN α-2a or b 800-1200 mg ribavirin	G5	48 weeks	58%
(Lam 2010) n=60	PEG-IFN α-2a 800-1200 mg ribavirin	G6	24 weeks 48 weeks	70% 79%
(Nguyen 2008) n=35	PEG-IFN α-2a or b 800-1200 mg ribavirin	G6	24 weeks 48 weeks	39% 75%
(Thu Thuy 2012) n=105	PEG-IFN α-2a 15 mg/kg/day ribavirin	G6	24 weeks 48 weeks	60% ITT, 72% PP 71% ITT, 79% PP

RBV, ribavirin; LVL, low baseline viral load; HVL, high baseline viral load; RGT, response-guided therapy

Overall, data from smaller studies suggest that GT4, 5 and 6 appear easier-to-treat compared to HCV GT1 but the optimal treatment duration is not clear (Antaki 2010, Nguyen 2005) (Table 11). Although some studies show SVR on the same order as for HCV GT2/3 patients, a fixed duration of 24 weeks of treatment as for GT2/3 is not advisable, even for patients with HCV GT6, which appears to show the best SVR (Lam 2010, Nguyen 2008). RGT based on early viral kinetics should be possible. Patients who achieve RVR are candidates for a short treatment regimen of

24 weeks if they do not have predictors of poor response (Figure 5). Based on data for GT1 (Berg 2006, Sanchez-Tapias 2006), patients without RVR and/or partial response may be considered for 72 weeks. This has been proposed for HCV GT4 by an international expert panel (Khattab 2011), but the evidence is limited. The proposed algorithm is shown in Figure 5. We suggest treating GT5 and 6 also according to this algorithm. Patients with treatment failure may be considered for retreatment, especially if the previous therapy was suboptimal. It is important to optimize dose and duration of treatment during retreatment.

In countries where SOF is availbale, triple therapy of PEG-IFN/RBV/SOF for 12 weeks is the optimal treatment for GT4-6 (1/2014).

Optimisation of HCV treatment

Adherence to therapy

Adherence to therapy is one of the most important factors associated with the success of antiviral treatment (McHutchison 2002). The definition of adherence used here is the "80/80 rule", that is, patients who receive more than 80% of the medication and are treated for more than 80% of the planned duration of treatment are considered adherent. One of the first studies investigating the effect of adherence in PEG-IFN/RBV treatment demonstrated that patients who fulfilled the 80/80 rule had a 63% SVR compared to 52% of those with less than 80% adherence (McHutchison 2002). Another study showed that a cumulative ribavirin dose of more than 60% is important to achieve an SVR (Reddy 2007). For the triple therapy, adherence to the PI becomes even more important. Reduction of the PI or irregular intake bears the risk of rapid emergence of drug resistance. Dose reduction of the PI is associated with significantly diminished SVR (Gordon 2011) and is therefore not an option for managing side effects. Thus, the new once-daily DAAs are a step forward in the treatment of HCV infection. An optimal management of PEG-IFN/RBV side effects is essential in order to optimize treatment response. In the case of anemia, dose reduction of ribavirin is possible and not associated with impaired SVR (Roberts 2011). Another important and new issue is drug interactions that can diminish the effectiveness of the PI or induce toxicity of concomitant medications, which may lead to discontinuation of all drugs. Knowledge about drug interactions is therefore important for the optimal management of patients receiving DAA.

Management of side effects and complications

Severe side effects may reduce adherence to therapy and may result in dose modifications that result in a less-than-optimal response. IFN, RBV and some of the PI induce side effects that have to be managed, with involvement of the patient (see Chapter 14). The IFN-related side effects can be divided into IFN-induced bone marrow suppression, flu-like symptoms, neuropsychiatric disorders, and autoimmune syndromes. The main problem of RBV is hemolytic anemia. BOC and TLV are associated with additional side effects such as rash or dysgeusia and additionally an increase of anemia (Jacobson 2011b, Manns 2011b, Vertex 2011, Zeuzem 2011). SMV and FDV are much better tolerated and importantly not

associated with higher rates of anemia. SMV and FDV show an increase in unconjugated bilirubin not related to liver toxicity. FDV requires sun protection; otherwise photosensitivity/phototoxicity can occur more frequently compared to other PIs. The adverse events in the SOF trials are more or less the PEG-IFN/RBV or RBV side effects. Headache may be more frequent (see Chapter 14).

Overall, side effects result in premature withdrawals from therapy and additional patients require dose modifications during treatment. In trials with dual therapy, the frequency of treatment discontinuations and dose modifications were lower in recent studies, suggesting an improved understanding and management of adverse events. Similar developments can be expected for treatment with PI. For example, the reported cases of rash decreased from 60% in Phase II (McHutchison 2009a) to 36% in Phase III (Jacobson 2011b). After photosensitivity was reported in 10-14% in the Phase II trials with FDV, sun protection was provided in the Phase III trials that reduced photosensitiyty to 0.6% with 120 mg FDV plus PEG-IFN/RBV, which was similar to PEG-IFN/RBV/placebo with 1%.

However, the frequency of adverse events that occurred in registrational trials with carefully selected patients may differ from general clinical practice, where patients with, eg, history of psychiatric disorders or advanced liver disease are being treated. For example, factors significantly associated with developing anemia on TLV were older age and advanced fibrosis (Roberts 2011). The first real-life cohorts revealed higher serious adverse events in patients with advanced liver cirrhosis (Hézode 2013, Maasoumy 2013b). Thus, the management of side effects is one of the most important factors for the success of treatment and deserves its own chapter (Chapter 14).

Drug interactions

With the introduction of DAAs to the treatment of chronic HCV infection a completely new challenge has to be faced: drug-drug interactions (DDI). First generation PIs undergo extensive hepatic metabolization, especially via the cytochrome P450 CYP3A pathway, which metabolizes more than 50% of clinically used drugs and is often involved in adverse drug interactions (Maasoumy 2013c, Burger 2012). Thus, both PIs are targets as well as perpetrators of drug interactions. DDIs are not infrequent. Up to 49% of hepatitis C patients are at risk for a DDI if treated with TLV or BOC due to their regular outpatient medication (Maasoumy 2013c).

Next wave PIs SMV and FDV as well as the NS5A inhibitor DCV are also metabolized by CYP3A (Kiser 2013). Concomitant drugs that induce CYP3A may result in decreased plasma concentrations of the respective PI or DCV, which can reduce the therapeutic effect. In contrast, the NS5B polymerase inhibitor SOF seems to be unaffected by the CYP3A pathway. PIs are also inhibitors of CYP3A, which may increase plasma concentrations of concomitant drugs that are metabolized via the same route, leading to prolonged therapeutic effects and/or toxicity. The impact on CYP3A differs between the individual DAA. SMV is only a mild (majorly affecting the intestinal CYP3A), FDV and BOC moderate and TLV a strong inhibitor of CYP3A (Kiser 2013). Co-administartion of TLV with the immunosuprresant drug tacrolimus may lead to a 70-fold increase of the plasma

levels of tacrolimus, while levels are not influenced at all if co-administered with SMV.

DDIs are not limited to the CYP3A pathway. Interactions may also occur with the p-glycoprotein (P-gp) transport or the organic anion transporting polypeptide 1B1 (OATP1B1). TLV, BOC, and DCV are substrates and inhibitors of P-gp. Co-administration of one of these DAAs with drugs that are substrates for P-gp transport may result in increased plasma concentrations of such drugs, which could increase adverse reactions. SOF and FDV are both substrates of P-gp, which may cause DDI with strong P-gp inhibitors like rifampicin. BOC, DCV, SMV and FDV all inhibit OATP1B1 (Kiser 2013), therefore substrates of OATPs (such as bosentan) should also be used with caution.

Overall, the risk for DDIs seems to be lower with the second-wave DAAs. In particular, SOF seems to interact with only a relatively small number of drugs. Still, the risk of DDI is present and must not be neglected. For optimal therapeutic management, it is essential to specifically ask patients about concomitant medications and investigate if those drugs may interact with the DAA(s). In some cases a closer monitoring or slight dose modifications may be sufficient while some drugs should be strictly avoided especially if alternatives are available that do not cause interactions. Furthermore, the patient has to be informed that self-medication may also be a problem since interactions are not limited to approved drugs. Even herbals and foods have to be considered, as St. John's Wort is a potent inducer of CYP3A and P-gp. Naringin, a flavinoid of grapefruit is an inhibitor of CYP3A. A list of drug interactions is given in the official prospectus. However, these lists may sometimes not be fully comprehensive. Supportive online tools or apps for mobile devices are available. One example is the very comprehensive drug interaction resource provided by the University of Liverpool (http://www.hep-druginteractions.org). The website provides clinically useful and evidence-based information which is updated when new drug interactions are analyzed and published. Drug interactions are usually considered significant if the area under the plasma concentration time curve (AUC) is altered by more than 30%. The table *Overview of drug interactions of HCV PIs with frequently used co-medication* (see http://hepatologytextbook.com/Table12_11.pdf) gives an overview about potential interactions of frequently used drugs with the first generation PIs (TLV and BOC) and implications for management and alternative drugs.

Treatment of hepatitis C in special populations

Patients with acute hepatitis C

The goal of acute hepatitis C treatment is the prevention of persistent HCV infection. The natural rate of HCV evolution to a chronic state is 50-90%. As a vaccine is not yet available, early treatment of acute HCV infection with IFN is the only option to prevent persistent HCV infection; however, the diagnosis of acute primary HCV infection may be difficult and its distinction from exacerbation of an underlying unrecognized chronic HCV infection may be difficult (Sarrazin 2010a). The immediate treatment of patients with symptomatic acute hepatitis C with recombinant IFN or PEG-IFN monotherapy for 24 weeks can prevent the

development of chronic hepatitis C in approximately 90% of cases (Broers 2005, Jaeckel 2001, Santantonio 2005, Vogel 1996, Wiegand 2006). However, good patient adherence to therapy is necessary to achieve these response rates (Wiegand 2006). Co-administration with ribavirin does not seem to be necessary. This may be different in patients with HIV coinfection (Grebely 2011a) (see Chapter 17). DAAs have not been tested in patients with acute HCV infection. Symptomatic patients also have a good chance of clearing HCV spontaneously (Gerlach 2003, Hofer 2003), occurring usually in the first 12 weeks after the onset of symptoms.

As for patients with treatment-induced SVR, spontaneous clearance of HCV is also associated with IL28B polymorphisms and IP-10 (Beinhardt 2012, Grebely 2010, Thomas 2009, Tillmann 2010), which may be useful for decision-making. The treatment of only those patients who remain HCV RNA-positive 12 weeks after the onset of symptoms results in an overall SVR (self-limited and treatment-induced) in >90% of patients with adherence. However, in those cases PEG-IFN/RBV is required for 24 weeks (Gerlach 2003, Deterding 2013). Thus, the decision to wait for 12 weeks after diagnosis or to treat immediately may be made individually. Importantly, the compliance of the patient should be assessed. Host genetics (IL28B), other markers (IP-10), or HCV RNA kinetics during the first weeks may help to decide when to treat. For example, asymptomatic patients with IL28B rs12979860-CT or TT may be treated immediately since these patients have a higher risk for evolution to a chronic state. However, early treatment of acute HCV infection to prevent chronic disease does have its limitations. A main problem is that primary HCV infection is usually asymptomatic and most patients aare not identified in this early stage of disease. Another reason is that a number of patients have medical contraindications for treatment with IFN or may not be ready for therapy because they are still active intravenous drug users (IDU).

There are two concerns in treating active IDUs with IFN. In case of successful therapy there is a risk of reinfection with HCV (Grebely 2012). The second concern is the side effect profile of IFN, especially the neuropsychiatric problems that may result in a worsening of addictive behaviour (Wiegand 2006). In addition, it has been shown that the acceptance of and adherence to antiviral therapy by these patients can be low due to the side effects of IFN (Broers 2005). While a recent meta-analysis did see a difference in drug-using populations *vs.* those not using drugs in hepatitis C treatment trials that broke out the difference (68.5% vs 81.5% SVR), the same authors went on to note that this difference may be bridged by enrolment in drug treatment or multidisciplinary treatment programs and/or requirements of abstinence from actively using drugs in order to facilitate optimal treatment outcomes (Hellard 2009).

Soon we will see the first results of DAA regimens that allow IFN-free therapies in acute HCV infection. However, the role of DAAs in acute HCV infection has to be defined. The risk of HCV reinfection in high-risk populations needs to be addressed. The minimal required treatment duration and the time for starting antiviral therapy are unclear.

Patients with normal aminotransferase levels

Approximately 30% of patients with chronic hepatitis C maintain persistently normal alanine aminotransferase (ALT) levels despite having detectable HCV RNA in serum. These patients have generally mild liver disease and show a slow progression to cirrhosis. However, up to one third of patients with normal ALT can present with significant liver fibrosis necessitating an effective treatment (Bacon 2002, Zeuzem 2004a). In current guidelines, ALT elevation is not a prerequisite to start antiviral therapy and the assessment of liver disease severity should be made regardless of ALT (EASL 2014).

Patients with compensated liver cirrhosis

Successful therapy of patients with advanced fibrosis and liver cirrhosis is associated with decreased incidence of HCC, decompensation and liver-related mortality (Morgan 2010, Veldt 2007, van der Meer 2012). In addition, in patients awaiting liver transplantation, successful therapy prevents graft reinfection (Everson 2005, Forns 2003). Thus, patients should be considered for therapy if no contraindications are present. However, SVR is diminished in patients with cirrhosis, for triple therapy with PEG-IFN/RBV plus DAA as well (Pol 2011b, Lawitz 2013a) and also for IFN free combinations in GT1 but also GT2/3 (Lawitz 2013a, Jacobson 2013d, Osinusi 2013, Sulkowski 2013a).

Treatment of patients with liver cirrhosis requires close patient monitoring. With PEG-IFN/RBV-based regimens, hematological adverse events are more frequent than in non-cirrhotic patients (EASL 2013, Hézode 2012). In the first real-life cohorts, a platelet count <100,000-110,000/µl was associated with serious adverse events and hospitalization (Hezode 2013, Maasoumy 2013b). The rate of severe anemia requiring blood transfusions is significantly higher in patients with advanced liver cirrhosis. Some patients even experienced severe complications with fatal outcomes mainly due to septicemia as a consequence of infections. In general, PEG-IFN-based treatment should be limited to patients with early compensated cirrhosis. In patients with advanced cirrhosis (ie, low platelets as surrogate for portal hypertension), therapy may be only considered in individual cases in experienced centres. If ascites is present, antibiotic prophylaxis should be given.

IFN-free DAA combinations are the best option for patients with advanced liver cirrhosis. In 2014, different compassionate use programms will allow treatment of patients with advanced liver cirrhosis with DAA combination therapy. So far, we have very little data to predict exact SVR rates in patients with advanced liver cirrhosis.

If patients with cirrhosis achieve SVR, it is important to perform HCC surveillance because cirrhosis remains and HCC development is reduced but not abolished (EASL 2014).

Patients after liver transplantation

HCV reinfection occurs in almost all patients after liver transplantation. While the course of hepatitis C in liver transplant recipients was believed to be rather benign in the late ‘80s and early ‘90s (Boker 1997), HCV has led to a more rapid

progression post-transplant in recent years (Berenguer 2005, Neumann 2004) with cirrhosis within the first 5-10 years in 20-30% of patients. HCV definitely takes a more rapid course post-transplant than in immunocompetent individuals and treatment needs are obvious.

Antiviral therapy of HCV may be started before transplant to prevent reinfection of the graft. If this approach is successful, reinfection can be prevented in two-thirds of patients who received IFN-based therapies (Forns 2003). However, treatment with IFN/RBV and even more so with triple therapy including TLV or BOC is poorly tolerated in individuals with decompensated cirrhosis with a high risk for infections and is feasible in only a minority of patients (Everson 2005, Forns 2003, Maasoumy 2013b). Treatment with IFN-free therapies will hopefully change this. At AASLD 2013, data from patients with HCC awaiting liver transplantation treated with SOF and RBV until transplantation was presented. In 23 of 37 patients reinfection was prevented (Curry 2013). However, all patients had a MELD score <22. Data in decompensated cirrhosis so far (1/2014) are lacking.

Patients with HCV reinfection after liver transplantation have an urgent treatment indication due to the fast progression to cirrhosis. Treatment with IFN-based therapies of HCV reinfection after liver transplantation will now be replaced by IFN-free regimens. IFN-based therapies, especially triple therapies including TLV or BOC are associated with severe adverse events and the problem of drug interactions with immunosuppressive drugs. For example, TLV increases levels of tacrolimus by approximately 70-fold (Garg 2011). In some studies with triple therapies, the frequency of severe anemia was more than 50% and mortality has also been reported (Coilly 2013). The use of PEG-IFN/RBV-based triple therapies must be carefully evaluated after liver transplantation in relation to drug-drug interactions and tolerance. Preliminary data of an IFN-free combination of SOF+RBV for 24 weeks were presented at AASLD 2013 (Charlton 2013). 40 patients with established HCV reinfection after transplantation were included. 88% of them were treatment-experienced and 40% of them had cirrhosis at the time of treatment. 80% had GT1 infection. At week 4 after end of treatment (SVR4), 77% were HCV RNA negative. Although SVR4 is too early to predict a long-term response, SOF/RBV is a potential all-oral therapy after transplantation. The treatment discontinuation rate was 5% and no interaction between the treatment regimen and the immunosuppressive medication was observed. As SOF should be available at centers that perform liver transplantation, we suggest using SOF-based IFN-free regimes in those patients. Compassionate use programms may allow combinations with other DAAs.

Hemodialysis patients

Treatment needs for dialysis patients with hepatitis C are obvious, especially if patients are considered for kidney transplantation. The outcome of HCV post-kidney transplantation is worse than for HCV-negative patients after renal transplantation. However, IFN-based therapies are contraindicated post-transplantation since they may induce rejection. Thus, if possible, HCV should be eliminated before transplantation. There have been several smaller reports on the treatment of HCV with IFN monotherapy in patients with end-stage renal disease

(Fabrizi 2002). Surprisingly, the results for IFN monotherapy on dialysis were better than in patients not undergoing dialysis, with SVR results of 21-64%. Data on combination with ribavirin are limited since ribavirin is contraindicated in this setting. However, ribavirin can be given at lower doses in dialysis patients, usually at 200-400 mg daily (Bruchfeld 2001). It has to be considered that there may be significant differences between the two pegylated-interferons in the setting of dialysis since PEG-IFN α-2a is eliminated mainly by the liver while PEG-IFN α-2b is cleared via the kidney (reviewed in Cornberg 2002). Thus, only PEG-IFN α-2a should be used in this setting. The efficacy of BOC and TLV has not been tested in many HCV patients with end stage renal disease or in patients undergoing hemodialysis. Theoretically, BOC and TLV can be administered in patients with compensated renal insufficiency and dose adjustment is not necessary because both drugs are metabolized through the liver and mainly eliminated via the feces with minimal urinary excretion (Ghany 2011, Wiegand 2013). Data for SOF are limited in this patient population (1/2014). In accordance with the FDA and EMA label, SOF is not recommended in patients with GFR <30 ml/min.

Drug abuse and patients on stable maintenance substitution

Treatment of patients with active drug use is an individual approach and should only be performed in an experienced multidisciplinary setting including hepatologists, psychiatrists and addiction specialists. Drug interactions with DAAs need to be considered.

Patients with coinfections

Due to the similar routes of transmission, patients with chronic hepatitis C are frequently coinfected with hepatitis B virus, hepatitis D virus or human immunodeficiency virus. These important patient groups are discussed in Chapters 10, 17 and 18.

Patients with hemophilia

Due to contaminated clotting factor concentrates, many patients with hemophilia are infected with HCV and/or HIV. Studies investigating PEG-IFN/RBV in hemophilia patients are limited and often include small numbers of patients. Review of available data suggest that treatment success of HCV-infected hemophiliacs is similar to that achieved in the general HCV-infected population (Franchini 2008).

Patients with extrahepatic manifestations

More than 50% of HCV-infected patients suffer from extrahepatic manifestations ranging from fatigue to severe symptoms of mixed cryoglobulinemia (Cacoub 1999) (see Chapter 15). The primary goal of treatment is HCV eradication, which is associated with improvement of clinical symptoms, especially in patients with mixed cryoglobulinemia (Cresta 1999, Pischke 2008, Zignego 2007, Maasoumy 2013a). Insulin resistance can be improved in HCV GT1 patients with SVR (Thompson 2012). In patients with severe symptoms of mixed cryoglobulinemia, treatment with rituximab may be considered (Cacoub 2008). Recent studies have

also tested the combination of PEG-IFN/RBV and rituximab. The clinical response may be achieved faster and SVR is not diminished in patients who receive rituximab (Dammacco 2010, Saadoun 2010). Exacerbation of certain extrahepatic manifestations may occur with IFN-based therapy or IFN may be contraindicated (Zignego 2007). Studies using HCV PIs were done in patients with HCV and mixed cryoglobulinemia vasculitis. After 3 months, triple therapy was highly effective in terms of virological response as well as clinical response, but adverse events were frequent (>80% anemia, >50% infections) (Saadoun 2012). Similar to patients after transplantation, a PI regimen should be administered cautiously considering the high rates of side effects. In 2014, SOF combination therapies may be an option for this group of patients but so far data are lacking.

References

Afdhal N, Dusheiko G, Giannini EG, et al. Final results of enable 1, a pahase 3, multicenter study of eltrombopag as an adjunct for antiviral treatment of hepatitis c virus-related chronic liver disease associated with thrombocytopenia. Hepatology 2011;54:1427A-28A.

Afdhal NH, Dieterich DT, Pockros PJ, et al. Epoetin alfa maintains ribavirin dose in HCV-infected patients: a prospective, double-blind, randomized controlled study. Gastroenterology 2004;126:1302-11. (Abstract)

Aghemo A, Rumi MG, Soffredini R, et al. Impaired response to interferon-alpha2b plus ribavirin in cirrhotic patients with genotype 3a hepatitis C virus infection. Antivir Ther 2006;11:797-802. (Abstract)

Andriulli A, Mangia A, Iacobellis A, Ippolito A, Leandro G, Zeuzem S. Meta-analysis: the outcome of anti-viral therapy in HCV genotype 2 and genotype 3 infected patients with chronic hepatitis. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2008;28:397-404. (Abstract)

Anonymous. European Medicines Agency - News and Events - European Medicines Agency advises on compassionate use of daclatasvir. Available at: http://goo.gl/XMqr01 [Accessed January 13, 2014]. (Abstract)

Antaki N, Craxi A, Kamal S et al. The neglected hepatitis C virus genotypes 4, 5 and 6: an international consensus report. Liver Int 2010;30:342-55. (Abstract)

Ascione A, De Luca M, Tartaglione MT et al. Peginterferon alfa-2a plus ribavirin is more effective than peginterferon alfa-2b plus ribavirin for treating chronic hepatitis C virus infection. Gastroenterology 2010;138:116-22. (Abstract)

Backus LI, Belperio PS, Shahoumian TA, et al. Comparative effectiveness of the hepatitis C virus protease inhibitors boceprevir and telaprevir in a large U.S. cohort. Aliment. Pharmacol. Ther. 2014;39:93–103. (Abstract)

Backus LI, Boothroyd DB, Phillips BR, Belperio P, Halloran J, Mole LA. A sustained virologic response reduces risk of all-cause mortality in patients with hepatitis C. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2011;9:509-516.e1. (Abstract)

Bacon BR, Gordon SC, Lawitz E et al. Boceprevir for previously treated chronic HCV genotype 1 infection. N Engl J Med 2011;364:1207-17. (Abstract)

Bacon BR. Treatment of patients with hepatitis C and normal serum aminotransferase levels. Hepatology 2002;36:S179-84. (Abstract)

Beinhardt S, Aberle JH, Strasser M et al. Serum Level of IP-10 Increases Predictive Value of IL28B Polymorphisms for Spontaneous Clearance of Acute HCV Infection. Gastroenterology 2012;142:78-85.e2. (Abstract)

Benhamou Y, Afdhal NH, Nelson DR, et al. A phase III study of the safety and efficacy of viramidine versus ribavirin in treatment-naive patients with chronic hepatitis C: viser1 results. Hepatology 2009;50:717-26. (Abstract)

Berenguer J, Rodríguez E, Miralles P, et al. Sustained virological response to interferon plus ribavirin reduces non-liver-related mortality in patients coinfected with HIV and Hepatitis C virus. Clin. Infect. Dis. 2012;55:728–36. (Abstract)

Berenguer M. What determines the natural history of recurrent hepatitis C after liver transplantation? J Hepatol 2005;42:448-56. (Abstract)

Berg T, Andreone P, Pol S, et al. Predictors of virologic response with telaprevir-based combination treatment in HCV genotype 1-infected patients with prior peginterferon/ribavirin treatment failure: post-hoc analysis of the phase III realize study. Hepatology 2011;54:375A-376A.

Berg T, von Wagner M, Nasser S, et al. Extended treatment duration for hepatitis C virus type 1: comparing 48 versus 72 weeks of peginterferon-alfa-2a plus ribavirin. Gastroenterology 2006;130:1086-97. (Abstract)

Berg T, Weich V, Teuber G, et al. Individualized treatment strategy according to early viral kinetics in hepatitis C virus type 1-infected patients. Hepatology 2009;50:369-77. (Abstract)

Bochud PY, Cai T, Overbeck K, et al. Genotype 3 is associated with accelerated fibrosis progression in chronic hepatitis C. J Hepatol 2009;51:655-66. (Abstract)

Boker KH, Dalley G, Bahr MJ, et al. Long-term outcome of hepatitis C virus infection after liver transplantation. Hepatology 1997;25:203-10. (Abstract)

Bonny C, Fontaine H, Poynard T, et al. Effectiveness of interferon plus ribavirin combination in the treatment of naive patients with hepatitis C virus type 5. A French multicentre retrospective study. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2006;24:593-600. (Abstract)

Broers B, Helbling B, Francois A, et al. Barriers to interferon-alpha therapy are higher in intravenous drug users than in other patients with acute hepatitis C. J Hepatol 2005;42:323-28. (Abstract)

Bronowicki JP, Davis M, Flamm S, et al. Sustained Virologic Response (SVR) in Prior PegInterferon/ribavirin (PR) Treatment Failures After Retreatment with Boceprevir (BOC) + PR: The PROVIDE Study Interim Results. J Hepatol 56:S6.

Bronowicki JP, Hezode C, Bengtsson L, et al. 100% SVR in IL28B CC patients treated with 12 weeks of telaprevir, peginterferon and ribavirin in the PROVE2 trial. J Hepatol 2012;56:S430–S431.

Bruchfeld A, Lindahl K, Schvarcz R, Stahle L. Dosage of ribavirin in patients with hepatitis C should be based on renal function: a population pharmacokinetic analysis. Ther Drug Monit 2002;24:701-8. (Abstract)

Bruchfeld A, Stahle L, Andersson J, Schvarcz R. Ribavirin treatment in dialysis patients with chronic hepatitis C virus infection--a pilot study. J Viral Hepat 2001;8:287-92. (Abstract)

Bruix J, Poynard T, Colombo M, et al. Maintenance therapy with peginterferon alfa-2b does not prevent hepatocellular carcinoma in cirrhotic patients with chronic hepatitis C. Gastroenterology 2011;140:1990-9. (Abstract)

Bruno S, Vierling JM, Esteban R, et al. Boceprevir in addition to standard of care enhanced svr in hepatitis c virus (HCV) genotype-1 with advanced fibrosis/cirrhosis: subgroup analysis of sprint-2 and respond-2 studies. J Hepatol 2011;54:S4-S4.

Burger D, Back D, Buggisch P, et al. Clinical management of drug-drug interactions in HCV therapy: Challenges and solutions. J Hepatol 2012.

Buti M, Agarwal K, Horsmans Y, et al. Non-inferiority of twice-daily telaprevir versus administration every 8 hours in treatment-naïve, genotype 1 HCV infected patients. Hepatology 2012;56:Abstract: LB-8.

Buti M, Agarwal K, Horsmans Y, et al. Telaprevir Twice Daily Is Noninferior to Telaprevir Every 8 Hours for Patients With Chronic Hepatitis C. Gastroenterology 2013. (Abstract)

Cacoub P, Delluc A, Saadoun D, Landau DA, Sene D. Anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody (rituximab) treatment for cryoglobulinemic vasculitis: where do we stand? Ann Rheum Dis 2008;67:283-87. (Abstract)

Cacoub P, Poynard T, Ghillani P, et al. Extrahepatic manifestations of chronic hepatitis C. MULTIVIRC Group. Multidepartment Virus C. Arthritis Rheum 1999;42:2204-12. (Abstract)

Carrion JA, Navasa M, Garcia-Retortillo M, et al. Efficacy of antiviral therapy on hepatitis C recurrence after liver transplantation: a randomized controlled study. Gastroenterology 2007;132:1746-56. (Abstract)

Charlton M, Gane E, Manns M, et al. Sofosbuvir and Ribavirin for the Treatment of Established Recurrent Hepatitis C Infection After Liver Transplantation: Preliminary Results of a Prospective, Multicenter Study. Annu. Meet. Am. Assoc. Study Liver Dis. (AASLD 2013). Washington, DC, Novemb. 1-5, 2013. (Abstract)

Cheinquer H, Shiffman M, Zeuzem S, et al. The outcome of 24 vs 48 weeks of peginterferon alfa-2a (40KD) plus ribavirin on sustained virologic response rates in patients infected with genotype 2 or 3 hepatitis C virus who do not achieve a rapid viral response: the N-CORE study. Hepatology 56:Abstract: A156.

Choo QL, Kuo G, Weiner AJ, Overby LR, Bradley DW, Houghton M. Isolation of a cdna clone derived from a blood-borne non-A, non-B viral hepatitis genome. Science 1989;244:359-62. (Abstract)

Coilly A, Roche B, Dumortier J, et al. Safety and efficacy of protease inhibitors to treat hepatitis C after liver transplantation: A multicenter experience. J. Hepatol. 2014;60:78–86. (Abstract)

Coilly A, Roche B, Samuel D. Current management and perspectives for HCV recurrence after liver transplantation. Liver Int 2013;33 Suppl 1:56-62.

Cornberg M, Razavi HA, Alberti A, et al. A systematic review of hepatitis C virus epidemiology in Europe, Canada and Israel. Liver Int 2011;31 Suppl 2:30-60. (Abstract)

Cornberg M, Wedemeyer H, Manns MP. Treatment of chronic hepatitis C with pegylated interferon and ribavirin. Curr Gastroenterol Rep 2002;4:23-30. (Abstract)

Costelloe SJ, Wassef N, Schulz J, et al. Thyroid dysfunction in a UK hepatitis C population treated with interferon-alpha and ribavirin combination therapy. Clin Endocrinol (Oxf) 2010;73:249-56. (Abstract)

Cresta P, Musset L, Cacoub P, et al. Response to interferon alpha treatment and disappearance of cryoglobulinaemia in patients infected by hepatitis C virus. Gut 1999;45:122-28. (Abstract)

Curry M, Forns X, Chung R, et al. Pretransplant Sofosbuvir and Ribavirin to Prevent Recurrence of HCV Infection after Liver Transplantation. Hepatology 2013;58:314A, Asbtract 213.

Dalekos GN, Wedemeyer H, Obermayer-Straub P, et al. Epitope mapping of cytochrome P4502D6 autoantigen in patients with chronic hepatitis C during alpha-interferon treatment. J Hepatol 1999;30:366-75. (Abstract)

Dalgard O, Bjoro K, Hellum KB, et al. Treatment with pegylated interferon and ribavarin in HCV infection with genotype 2 or 3 for 14 weeks: a pilot study. Hepatology 2004;40:1260-65. (Abstract)

Dalgard O, Bjoro K, Ring-Larsen H, et al. Pegylated interferon alfa and ribavirin for 14 versus 24 weeks in patients with hepatitis C virus genotype 2 or 3 and rapid virological response. Hepatology 2008;47:35-42. (Abstract)

Dammacco F, Tucci FA, Lauletta G, et al. Pegylated interferon-alpha, ribavirin, and rituximab combined therapy of hepatitis C virus-related mixed cryoglobulinemia: a long-term study. Blood 2010;116:343-53. (Abstract)

Darling JM, Aerssens J, Fanning G, et al. Quantitation of pretreatment serum interferon-gamma-inducible protein-10 improves the predictive value of an IL28B gene polymorphism for hepatitis C treatment response. Hepatology 2011;53:14-22. (Abstract)

Davis GL, Alter MJ, El-Serag H, Poynard T, Jennings LW. Aging of hepatitis C virus (HCV)-infected persons in the United States: a multiple cohort model of HCV prevalence and disease progression. Gastroenterology 2010;138:513-21, 521.e1-6. (Abstract)

Deterding K, Gruener N, Wiegand J, et al. Early versus delayed treatment of acute hepatitis C: the German hep-net acute HCV-iii study - a randomized controlled trial. J Hepatol 2009;50:S380-S380.

Deterding K, Grüner N, Buggisch P, et al. Delayed versus immediate treatment for patients with acute hepatitis C: a randomised controlled non-inferiority trial. Lancet Infect. Dis. 2013;13:497–506. (Abstract)

Di Bisceglie AM, Shiffman ML, Everson GT, et al. Prolonged therapy of advanced chronic hepatitis C with low-dose peginterferon. N Engl J Med 2008;359:2429-41. (Abstract)

Diago M, Hassanein T, Rodes J, Ackrill AM, Sedarati F. Optimized virologic response in hepatitis C virus genotype 4 with peginterferon-alpha2a and ribavirin. Ann Intern Med 2004;140:72-3. (Abstract)

Dumortier J, Scoazec JY, Chevallier P, Boillot O. Treatment of recurrent hepatitis C after liver transplantation: a pilot study of peginterferon alfa-2b and ribavirin combination. J Hepatol 2004;40:669-74. (Abstract)

EASL Clinical Practice Guidelines: management of hepatitis C virus infection. J Hepatol 2011;55:245-64. (PDF)
European Association for the Study of the Liver. EASL Clinical Practice Guidelines: Management of hepatitis C virus infection. J Hepatol 2014;60:392–420 (Free full text)
Everson GT, Trotter J, Forman L, et al. Treatment of advanced hepatitis C with a low accelerating dosage regimen of antiviral therapy. Hepatology 2005;42:255-62. (Abstract)
Fabrizi F, Poordad FF, Martin P. Hepatitis C infection and the patient with end-stage renal disease. Hepatology 2002;36:3-10. (Abstract)
Fattovich G, Covolo L, Bibert S, et al. IL28B polymorphisms, IP-10 and viral load predict virological response to therapy in chronic hepatitis C. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2011;33:1162-72. (Abstract)
Ferenci P, Laferl H, Scherzer TM, et al. Peginterferon alfa-2a and ribavirin for 24 weeks in hepatitis C type 1 and 4 patients with rapid virological response. Gastroenterology 2008;135:451-58. (Abstract)
Flamm S, Lawitz E, Jacobson I, et al. High sustained virologic response (SVR) among genotype 1 previous non-responders and relapsers to peginterferon/ribavirin when re-treated with boceprevir (BOC) plus peginterferon alfa-2a/ribavirin. J Hepatol 2011;54:S541-S542.
Flamm SL, Lawitz E, Jacobson I, et al. Boceprevir with peginterferon alfa-2a-ribavirin is effective for previously treated chronic hepatitis C genotype 1 infection. Clin. Gastroenterol. Hepatol. 2013;11:81–87.e4; quiz e5. (Abstract)
Forns X, Garcia-Retortillo M, Serrano T, et al. Antiviral therapy of patients with decompensated cirrhosis to prevent recurrence of hepatitis C after liver transplantation. J Hepatol 2003;39:389-96. (Abstract)
Forns X, Lawitz E, Zeuzem S, et al. Simeprevir (TMC435) with peg-interferon α-2a/ribavirin for treatment of chronic HCV genotype 1 infection in patients who relapsed after previous interferon-based therapy: efficacy and safety in patient sub-populations in the PROMISE phase III trial. Hepatology 2013;58:Abstract 1092.
Foster GR, Hezode C, Bronowicki JP, et al. Telaprevir alone or with peginterferon and ribavirin reduces HCV RNA in patients with chronic genotype 2 but not genotype 3 infections. Gastroenterology 2011;141:881-9.e1. (Abstract)
Franchini M, Mengoli C, Veneri D, Mazzi R, Lippi G, Cruciani M. Treatment of chronic hepatitis C in haemophilic patients with interferon and ribavirin: a meta-analysis. J Antimicrob Chemother 2008;61:1191-1200. (Abstract)
Fried MW, Buti M, Dore GJ, et al. Once-daily simeprevir (TMC435) with pegylated interferon and ribavirin in treatment-naïve genotype 1 hepatitis C: The randomized PILLAR study. Hepatology 2013;58:1918–29. (Abstract)
Fried MW, Shiffman ML, Reddy KR, et al. Peginterferon alfa-2a plus ribavirin for chronic hepatitis C virus infection. N Engl J Med 2002;347:975-82. (Abstract)
Ganne-Carrie N, Medini A, Coderc E, et al. Latent autoimmune thyroiditis in untreated patients with HCV chronic hepatitis: a case-control study. J Autoimmun 2000;14:189-93. (Abstract)
Gao M, Nettles RE, Belema M, et al. Chemical genetics strategy identifies an HCV NS5A inhibitor with a potent clinical effect. Nature 2010;465:96–100. (Abstract)
Garg V, van Heeswijk R, Lee JE, Alves K, Nadkarni P, Luo X. Effect of telaprevir on the pharmacokinetics of cyclosporine and tacrolimus. Hepatology 2011;54:20-7. (Abstract)
Ge D, Fellay J, Thompson AJ, et al. Genetic variation in IL28B predicts hepatitis C treatment-induced viral clearance. Nature 2009;461:399-401. (Abstract)
Gerlach JT, Diepolder HM, Zachoval R, et al. Acute hepatitis C: high rate of both spontaneous and treatment-induced viral clearance. Gastroenterology 2003;125:80-8. (Abstract)
Ghany MG, Nelson DR, Strader DB, Thomas DL, Seeff LB. An update on treatment of genotype 1 chronic hepatitis C virus infection: 2011 practice guideline by the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases. Hepatology 2011;54:1433-44. (Free full-text)
Gordon SC, Lawitz EJ, Bacon BR, et al. Adherence to assigned dosing regimen and sustained virologic response among hepatitis c genotype 1 treatment-naive and peg/ribavirin

treatment-failures treated with boceprevir plus peginterferon alfa-2b/ribavirin. J Hepatol 2011;54:S173-S174.
Grebely J, Matthews GV, Dore GJ. Treatment of acute HCV infection. Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol 2011a;8:265-74. (Abstract)
Grebely J, Petoumenos K, Hellard M, et al. Potential role for interleukin-28B genotype in treatment decision-making in recent hepatitis C virus infection. Hepatology 2010;52:1216-24. (Abstract)
Grebely J, Pham ST, Matthews GV, et al. Hepatitis C virus reinfection and superinfection among treated and untreated participants with recent infection. Hepatology 2012;55:1058-69 (Abstract)
Hadziyannis SJ, Sette HJ, Morgan TR, et al. Peginterferon-alpha2a and ribavirin combination therapy in chronic hepatitis C: a randomized study of treatment duration and ribavirin dose. Ann Intern Med 2004;140:346-55. (Abstract)
Hanafiah, KM, Groeger, J, Flaxman, AD et al. Global epidemiology of hepatitis C virus infection: New estimates of age-specific antibody to hepatitis C virus seroprevalence. Hepatology 2013;57:1333-42. (Abstract)
Harrington PR, Zeng W, Naeger LK. Clinical relevance of detectable but not quantifiable hepatitis C virus RNA during boceprevir or telaprevir treatment. Hepatology 2012;55:1048–57. (Abstract)
Hasan F, Asker H, Al-Khaldi J, et al. Peginterferon alfa-2b plus ribavirin for the treatment of chronic hepatitis C genotype 4. Am J Gastroenterol 2004;99:1733-7. (Abstract)
Hellard M, Sacks-Davis R, Gold J. Hepatitis C treatment for injection drug users: a review of the available evidence. Clin. Infect. Dis. 2009;49:561–73. (Abstract)
Hellard M, Sacks-Davis R, Gold J. Hepatitis C Treatment for Injection Drug Users: A Review of the Available Evidence. Clin Infect Dis. 2009;49(4): 561-573 doi:10.1086/600304.
Hezode C, Dorival C, Zoulim F, et al. Safety and efficacy of telaprevir or boceprevir in combination with peginterferon alfa/ribavirin in 455 cirrhotic non responders. Week 16 analysis of the French early access program (ANRS CO20-CUPIC) in real-life setting. Hepatology 2012;56:Abstract: A51.
Hézode C, Fontaine H, Dorival C, et al. Triple therapy in treatment-experienced patients with HCV-cirrhosis in a multicentre cohort of the French Early Access Programme (ANRS CO20-CUPIC) - NCT01514890. J. Hepatol. 2013;59:434–41. (Abstract)
Hofer H, Watkins-Riedel T, Janata O, et al. Spontaneous viral clearance in patients with acute hepatitis C can be predicted by repeated measurements of serum viral load. Hepatology 2003;37:60-4. (Abstract)
Hoofnagle JH, Mullen KD, Jones DB, et al. Treatment of chronic non-A, non-B hepatitis with recombinant human alpha interferon. A preliminary report. N Engl J Med 1986;315:1575-8. (Abstract)
INCIVO (telaprevir) EU SmPC 2011. PDF, 147 pages. Accessed on February 25, 2012.
Jacobson IM, Brown RSJ, Freilich B, et al. Peginterferon alfa-2b and weight-based or flat-dose ribavirin in chronic hepatitis C patients: a randomized trial. Hepatology 2007;46:971-81. (Abstract)
Jacobson IM, Catlett I, Marcellin P, et al. Telaprevir substantially improved SVR rates across all IL28B genotypes in the ADVANCE trial. J Hepatol 2011a;54:S542-S543.
Jacobson IM, Marcellin P, Zeuzem S, et al. Refinement of stopping rules during treatment of hepatitis C genotype 1 infection with boceprevir and peginterferon/ribavirin. Hepatology 2012;56:567–75. (Abstract)
Jacobson IM, mchutchison JG, Dusheiko G, et al. Telaprevir for previously untreated chronic hepatitis C virus infection. N Engl J Med 2011b;364:2405-16. (Abstract)
Jacobson I (2013a), Dore G, Foster G, et al. Simeprevir (TMC435) with peginterferon/ribavirin for treatment of chronic HCV genotype 1 infection in treatment-naive patients: efficacy in difficult-to-treat patient sub-populations in the QUEST 1 and 2 phase III trials. Hepatology 2013;58:Abstract 1122.
Jacobson J (2013b), Ghalib R, Rodriguez-Torres M, et al. SVR results of a once-daily regimen of simeprevir (TMC435) plus sofosbuvir (GS-7977) with or without ribavirin in cirrhotic and non-cirrhotic HCV genotype 1 traetment-naive and prior null responder patients: the COSMOS study. 64th Annu. Meet. Am. Assoc. Study Liver Dis. (AASLD 2013). Washington, DC, Novemb. 1-5, 2013.:Abstract LB–3.

Jacobson I (2013c), Dore G, Foster G, et al. Simeprevir (TMC435) with peginterferon/ribavirin for chronic HCV genotype 1 infection in treatment-nave patients: results from QUEST-1, a phase III trial. Int. Liver Congr. Amsterdam, poster 1425 2013.
Jacobson IM (2013d), Gordon SC, Kowdley K V, et al. Sofosbuvir for hepatitis C genotype 2 or 3 in patients without treatment options. N Engl J Med 2013;368:1867–77. (Abstract)
Jacobson (2013e) et al. I. STARTVerso3: A randomized, double-blind, placebo- controlled Phase III trial of faldaprevir in combination with pegylated interferon alfa-2a and ribavirin in treat- ment-experienced patients with chronic hepatitis C genotype-1 infection. Hepatology 2013;58:742A, Abstract 1100.
Jaeckel E, Cornberg M, Wedemeyer H, et al. Treatment of acute hepatitis C with interferon alfa-2b. N Engl J Med 2001;345:1452-57. (Abstract)
Janssen HL, Brouwer JT, van der Mast RC, Schalm SW. Suicide associated with alfa-interferon therapy for chronic viral hepatitis. J Hepatol 1994;21:241-3. (Abstract)
Jensen DM, Marcellin P, Freilich B, et al. Re-treatment of patients with chronic hepatitis C who do not respond to peginterferon-alpha2b: a randomized trial. Ann Intern Med 2009;150:528-540. (Abstract)
Jensen DM, Morgan TR, Marcellin P, et al. Early identification of HCV genotype 1 patients responding to 24 weeks peginterferon alpha-2a (40 kd)/ribavirin therapy. Hepatology 2006;43:954-60. (Abstract)
Jensen et al. DM. A pooled analysis of two randomized, double-blind placebo-controlled Phase III trials (STARTVerso1&2) of faldaprevir plus pegylated interferon alfa-2a and rib- avirin in treatment-naïve patients with chronic hepatitis C genotype-1 infection. Hepatology 2013;58:734A–735A, Abstract 1088.
Kamal SM, El Kamary SS, Shardell MD, et al. Pegylated interferon alpha-2b plus ribavirin in patients with genotype 4 chronic hepatitis C: The role of rapid and early virologic response. Hepatology 2007;46:1732-40. (Abstract)
Kamal SM, El Tawil AA, Nakano T, et al. Peginterferon {alpha}-2b and ribavirin therapy in chronic hepatitis C genotype 4: impact of treatment duration and viral kinetics on sustained virological response. Gut 2005;54:858-66. (Abstract)
Khattab MA, Ferenci P, Hadziyannis SJ, et al. Management of hepatitis C virus genotype 4: recommendations of an international expert panel. J Hepatol 2011;54:1250-62. (Abstract)
Kieffer TL, Sarrazin C, Miller JS, et al. Telaprevir and pegylated interferon-alpha-2a inhibit wild-type and resistant genotype 1 hepatitis C virus replication in patients. Hepatology 2007;46:631-9. (Abstract)
Kiser JJ, Burton JR, Everson GT. Drug-drug interactions during antiviral therapy for chronic hepatitis C. Nat. Rev. Gastroenterol. Hepatol. 2013;10:596–606. (Abstract)
Kraus MR, Schafer A, Schottker K, et al. Therapy of interferon-induced depression in chronic hepatitis C with citalopram: a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled study. Gut 2008;57:531-6. (Abstract)
Kuntzen T, Timm J, Berical A, et al. Naturally occurring dominant resistance mutations to hepatitis C virus protease and polymerase inhibitors in treatment-naive patients. Hepatology 2008;48:1769-78. (Abstract)
Kwo PY, Lawitz EJ, McCone J, et al. Efficacy of boceprevir, an NS3 protease inhibitor, in combination with peginterferon alfa-2b and ribavirin in treatment-naive patients with genotype 1 hepatitis C infection (SPRINT-1): an open-label, randomised, multicentre phase 2 trial. Lancet 2010;376:705-16. (Abstract)
Lam AM, Espiritu C, Bansal S, et al. Genotype and subtype profiling of PSI-7977 as a nucleotide inhibitor of hepatitis C virus. Antimicrob. Agents Chemother. 2012;56:3359–68. (Abstract)
Lam KD, Trinh HN, Do ST, et al. Randomized controlled trial of pegylated interferon-alfa 2a and ribavirin in treatment-naive chronic hepatitis C genotype 6. Hepatology 2010;52:1573-80. (Abstract)
Lawitz E, Poordad F, Kowdley K, et al. A 12-week interferon-free regimen of ABT-450r, ABT-072 and ribavirin was well tolerated and achieved sustained virological response in 91% of treatment-naive HCV IL28B-CC genotype-1 infected patients. J Hepatol 2012;56:S7.
Lawitz E (2013a), Mangia A, Wyles D, et al. Sofosbuvir for previously untreated chronic hepatitis C infection. N Engl J Med 2013;368:1878–87. (Abstract)

Lawitz E (2013b), Poordad F, Brainard D, et al. Sofosbuvir in Combination With PegIFN and Ribavirin for 12 Weeks Provides High SVR Rates in HCV-Infected Genotype 2 or 3 Treatment- Experienced Patients with and without Compensated Cirrhosis: Results from the LONESTAR-2 Study. 64rd Annu. Meet. Am. Assoc. Study Liver Dis. Washington, DC Nov 1-5 2013:Abstract LB–4.

Lenz O, Vijgen L, Berke JM, et al. Virologic response and characterisation of HCV genotype 2-6 in patients receiving TMC435 monotherapy (study TMC435-C202). J. Hepatol. 2013;58:445–51. (Abstract)

Lok AS, Everhart JE, Wright EC, et al. Maintenance peginterferon therapy and other factors associated with hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with advanced hepatitis C. Gastroenterology 2011;140:840-849.

Lok AS, Gardiner DF, Lawitz E, et al. Preliminary study of two antiviral agents for hepatitis C genotype 1. N. Engl. J. Med. 2012;366:216–24. (Abstract)

Maasoumy, B, Wedemeyer, H. Natural history of acute and chronic hepatitis C. Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol 2012;26:401-412. (Abstract)

Maasoumy, B. (2013a), Manns, M. P. and Cornberg, M. Extrahepatic Manifestations of Hepatitis C Virus Infection, in Viral Hepatitis, Fourth Edition (eds H. C. Thomas, A. S.F. Lok, S. A. Locarnini and A. J. Zuckerman), John Wiley & Sons, Ltd, Oxford, UK.

Maasoumy B (2013b), Port K, Markova AA, et al. Eligibility and safety of triple therapy for hepatitis C: lessons learned from the first experience in a real world setting. PLoS One 2013;8:e55285. (Abstract)

Maasoumy B (2013c), Port K, Calle Serrano B, et al. The clinical significance of drug-drug interactions in the era of direct-acting anti-viral agents against chronic hepatitis C. Aliment. Pharmacol. Ther. 2013;38:1365–72. (Abstract)

Maasoumy B, Cobb B, Bremer B, et al. Detection of low HCV viraemia by repeated HCV RNA testing predicts treatment failure to triple therapy with telaprevir. Aliment. Pharmacol. Ther. 2014;39:85–92. (Abstract)

Mangia A, Bandiera F, Montalto G, et al. Individualized treatment with combination of Peg-interferon alpha 2b and ribavirin in patients infected with HCV genotype 3. J Hepatol 2010a;53:1000-5. (Abstract)

Mangia A, Dalgard O, Minerva N, et al. Ribavirin dosage in patients with HCV genotypes 2 and 3 who completed short therapy with peg-interferon alpha-2b and ribavirin. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2010b;31:1346-53. (Abstract)

Mangia A, Minerva N, Bacca D, et al. Determinants of relapse after a short (12 weeks) course of antiviral therapy and re-treatment efficacy of a prolonged course in patients with chronic hepatitis C virus genotype 2 or 3 infection. Hepatology 2009;49:358-63. (Abstract)

Mangia A, Santoro R, Minerva N, et al. Peginterferon alfa-2b and ribavirin for 12 vs. 24 weeks in HCV genotype 2 or 3. N Engl J Med 2005;352:2609-17. (Abstract)

Mangia A, Thompson AJ, Santoro R, et al. An IL28B polymorphism determines treatment response of hepatitis C virus genotype 2 or 3 patients who do not achieve a rapid virologic response. Gastroenterology 2010;139:821–7, 827.e1. (Abstract)

Mangia A, Thompson AJ, Santoro R, et al. An IL28B polymorphism determines treatment response of hepatitis C virus genotype 2 or 3 patients who do not achieve a rapid virologic response. Gastroenterology 2010c;139:821-7, 827.e1.

Manns M (b), Marcellin P, Poordad F, et al. Simeprevir (TMC435) with peginterferon/ribavirin for treatment of chronic HCV genotype -1 infection in treatment-naıve patients: results from QUEST-2, a phase III trial. Int. Liver Congr. Amsterdam, Abstr. 1413 2013.

Manns M, Lindsay KL, Gordon SC, et al. Sustained virologic response after peginterferon alfa-2b and ribavirin treatment predicts long-term clearance of HCV at 5-year follow-up. J Hepatol 2008;48:S300-S300.

Manns M, Zeuzem S, Sood A, et al. Reduced Dose and Duration of Peginterferon alfa-2b and Weight-Based Ribavirin in Patients With Genotype 2 and 3 Chronic Hepatitis C. J Hepatol 2011a;55:554-63. (Abstract)

Manns MP (a), Pockros PJ, Norkrans G, et al. Long-term clearance of hepatitis C virus following interferon α-2b or peginterferon α-2b, alone or in combination with ribavirin. J. Viral Hepat. 2013;20:524–9. (Abstract)

Manns MP, Felizarta F, Schiff E, et al. Overall safety profile of boceprevir plus peginterferon alfa-2b/ribavirin. J Hepatol 2011b;54:S183-S183.
Manns MP, mchutchison JG, Gordon SC, et al. Peginterferon alfa-2b plus ribavirin compared with interferon alfa-2b plus ribavirin for initial treatment of chronic hepatitis C: a randomised trial. Lancet 2001;358:958-65. (Abstract)
Manns MP, Wedemeyer H, Cornberg M. Treating viral hepatitis C: efficacy, side effects, and complications. Gut 2006;55, 1350-9. (Abstract)
Marcellin P, Gish RG, Gitlin N, et al. Safety and efficacy of viramidine versus ribavirin in viser2: randomized, double-blind study in therapy-naive hepatitis C patients. J Hepatol 2010;52:32-8. (Abstract)
McHutchison JG, Dusheiko G, Shiffman ML, et al. Eltrombopag for thrombocytopenia in patients with cirrhosis associated with hepatitis C. N Engl J Med 2007;357:2227-36. (Abstract)
McHutchison JG, Everson GT, Gordon SC, et al. Telaprevir with peginterferon and ribavirin for chronic HCV genotype 1 infection. N Engl J Med 2009a;360:1827-38. (Abstract)
McHutchison JG, Gordon SC, Schiff ER, et al. Interferon alfa-2b alone or in combination with ribavirin as initial treatment for chronic hepatitis C. Hepatitis Interventional Therapy Group. N Engl J Med 1998;339:1485-92. (Abstract)
McHutchison JG, Lawitz EJ, Shiffman ML, et al. Peginterferon alfa-2b or alfa-2a with ribavirin for treatment of hepatitis C infection. N Engl J Med 2009b;361:580-93. (Abstract)
McHutchison JG, Manns M, Patel K, et al. Adherence to combination therapy enhances sustained response in genotype-1-infected patients with chronic hepatitis C. Gastroenterology 2002;123:1061-9. (Abstract)
McHutchison JG, Manns MP, Muir AJ, et al. Telaprevir for previously treated chronic HCV infection. N Engl J Med 2010;362:1292-1303. (Abstract)
Mederacke I, Wedemeyer H, Manns MP. Boceprevir, an NS3 serine protease inhibitor of hepatitis C virus, for the treatment of HCV infection. Curr Opin Investig Drugs 2009;10:181-9. (Abstract)
Meer AJ van der, Veldt BJ, Feld JJ, et al. Association between sustained virological response and all-cause mortality among patients with chronic hepatitis C and advanced hepatic fibrosis. JAMA 2012;308:2584–93. (Abstract)
Mohd Hanafiah K, Groeger J, Flaxman AD, et al. Global epidemiology of hepatitis C virus infection: new estimates of age-specific antibody to HCV seroprevalence. Hepatology 2013;57:1333-42. (Abstract)
Morgan TR, Ghany MG, Kim HY, et al. Outcome of sustained virological responders with histologically advanced chronic hepatitis C. Hepatology 2010;52:833-44. (Abstract)
Muir AJ, Poordad FF, McHutchison JG, et al. Retreatment with telaprevir combination therapy in hepatitis C patients with well-characterized prior treatment response. Hepatology 2011;54:1538-46. (Abstract)
Neff GW, O'Brien CB, Cirocco R, et al. Prediction of sustained virological response in liver transplant recipients with recurrent hepatitis C virus following combination pegylated interferon alfa-2b and ribavirin therapy using tissue hepatitis C virus reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction testing. Liver Transpl 2004;10:595-8. (Abstract)
Nelson D, Poordad F, Feld J, et al. High SVR rates (SVR4) for 12-week total telaprevir combination therapy in IL28b cc treatment-naives and prior relapsers with G1 chronic hepatitis C: CONCISE interim analysis. Hepatology 2013;58:Abstract 881.
Neumann UP, Berg T, Bahra M, et al. Long-term outcome of liver transplants for chronic hepatitis C: a 10-year follow-up. Transplantation 2004;77:226-31. (Abstract)
Nguyen MH, Keeffe EB. Prevalence and treatment of hepatitis C virus genotypes 4, 5, and 6. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2005;3:S97-S101. (Abstract)
Nguyen MH, Trinh HN, Garcia R, Nguyen G, Lam KD, Keeffe EB. Higher rate of sustained virologic response in chronic hepatitis C genotype 6 treated with 48 weeks versus 24 weeks of peginterferon plus ribavirin. Am J Gastroenterol 2008;103:1131-5. (Abstract)
Nishiguchi S, Kuroki T, Nakatani S, et al. Randomised trial of effects of interferon-alpha on incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma in chronic active hepatitis C with cirrhosis. Lancet 1995;346:1051-5. (Abstract)

Osinusi A, Meissner EG, Lee Y-J, et al. Sofosbuvir and ribavirin for hepatitis C genotype 1 in patients with unfavorable treatment characteristics: a randomized clinical trial. JAMA 2013;310:804–11. (Abstract)
Pearlman B, Ehlebenet C. Hepatitis C virus (HCV) genotype 1 (G1) infection with low viral load (LVL) and rapid virologic response (RVR) to peginterferon and ribavirin (PEG/RBV) can be treated without a protease inhibitor (PI), irrespective of IL-28B status or patient ethnicity. Hepatology 56:Abstract: A151.
Pearlman BL, Ehleben C. Hepatitis C genotype 1 virus with low viral load and rapid virologic response to peginterferon/ribavirin obviates a protease inhibitor. Hepatology 2014;59:71–7. (Abstract)
Pischke S, Cornberg M, Manns MP. [Hepatitis associated cryoglobulinemia]. Internist (Berl) 2008;49:297-304. (Abstract)
Pol S, Aerssens J, Zeuzem S, et al. Similar SVR rates in IL28b cc, ct or tt prior relapser, partial- or null-responder patients treated with telaprevir/peginterferon/ribavirin: retrospective analysis of the realize study. J Hepatol 2011a;54:S6-S7.
Pol S, Roberts SK, Andreone P, et al. Efficacy and safety of telaprevir-based regimens in cirrhotic patients with hcv genotype 1 and prior peginterferon/ribavirin treatment failure: subanalysis of the realize phase III study. Hepatology 2011b;54:374A-375A.
Poordad F, Bronowicki JP, Gordon SC, et al. Factors that predict response of patients with hepatitis C virus infection to boceprevir. Gastroenterology 2012;143:608-18.e1-5.
Poordad F, McCone JJr, Bacon BR, et al. Boceprevir for untreated chronic HCV genotype 1 infection. N Engl J Med 2011;364:1195-206. (Abstract)
Poynard T, Colombo M, Bruix J, et al. Peginterferon alfa-2b and ribavirin: effective in patients with hepatitis C who failed interferon alfa/ribavirin therapy. Gastroenterology 2009;136:1618-28.e2. (Abstract)
Poynard T, Marcellin P, Lee SS, et al. Randomised trial of interferon alpha2b plus ribavirin for 48 weeks or for 24 weeks versus interferon alpha2b plus placebo for 48 weeks for treatment of chronic infection with hepatitis C virus. International Hepatitis Interventional Therapy Group (IHIT). Lancet 1998;352:1426-32. (Abstract)
Prokunina-Olsson L, Muchmore B, Tang W, et al. A variant upstream of IFNL3 (IL28B) creating a new interferon gene IFNL4 is associated with impaired clearance of hepatitis C virus. Nat. Genet. 2013;45:164–71. (Abstract)
Rauch A, Kutalik Z, Descombes P, et al. Genetic variation in IL28B is associated with chronic hepatitis C and treatment failure: a genome-wide association study. Gastroenterology 2010;138:1338-45. (Abstract)
Reddy KR, Shiffman ML, Morgan TR, et al. Impact of ribavirin dose reductions in hepatitis C virus genotype 1 patients completing peginterferon alfa-2a/ribavirin treatment. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2007;5:124-29. (Abstract)
Reesink HW, Fanning GC, Farha KA, et al. Rapid HCV-RNA decline with once daily TMC435: a phase I study in healthy volunteers and hepatitis C patients. Gastroenterology 2010;138:913–21. (Abstract)
Roberts SK, Andreone P, Pol S, et al. Impact of anemia and ribavirin dose reduction on svr to a telaprevir-based regimen in patients with hcv genotype 1 and prior peginterferon/ribavirin treatment failure in the phase III realize study. Hepatology 2011;54:1007A-1008A.
Roche B, Sebagh M, Canfora ML, et al. Hepatitis C virus therapy in liver transplant recipients: response predictors, effect on fibrosis progression, and importance of the initial stage of fibrosis. Liver Transpl 2008;14:1766-77. (Abstract)
Rockstroh J, et al. STARTVerso4: Phase III trial of faldaprevir plus pegylated interferon α-2a and ribavirin in patients with HIV and HCV genotype-1 co-infection. 64th Annu. Meet. Am. Assoc. Study Liver Dis. Washington, DC,2013:Abstract 1099.
Rodriguez-Luna H, Khatib A, Sharma P, et al. Treatment of recurrent hepatitis C infection after liver transplantation with combination of pegylated interferon alpha2b and ribavirin: an open-label series. Transplantation 2004;77:190-4. (Abstract)
Rumi MG, Aghemo A, Prati GM, et al. Randomized study of peginterferon-alpha2a plus ribavirin vs peginterferon-alpha2b plus ribavirin in chronic hepatitis C. Gastroenterology 2010;138:108-15. (Abstract)

Saadoun D, Pol S, Lebray P, et al. Peg-IFNalpha/Ribavirin/Protease inhibitor combination is highly effective in HCV-mixed cryoglobulinemia vasculitis. Hepatology 2012;56:Abstract: A790.
Saadoun D, Resche Rigon M, Sene D, et al. Rituximab plus Peg-interferon-alpha/ribavirin compared with Peg-interferon-alpha/ribavirin in hepatitis C-related mixed cryoglobulinemia. Blood 2010;116:326-34. (Abstract)
Sanchez-Tapias JM, Diago M, Escartin P, et al. Peginterferon-alfa2a plus ribavirin for 48 versus 72 weeks in patients with detectable hepatitis C virus RNA at week 4 of treatment. Gastroenterology 2006;131:451-60. (Abstract)
Santantonio T, Fasano M, Sinisi E, et al. Efficacy of a 24-week course of PEG-interferon alpha-2b monotherapy in patients with acute hepatitis C after failure of spontaneous clearance. J Hepatol 2005;42:329-33. (Abstract)
Sarrazin C, Berg T, Cornberg M, et al. [Expert opinion on boceprevir- and telaprevir-based triple therapies of chronic hepatitis C]. Z. Gastroenterol. 2012;50:57–72. (Abstract)
Sarrazin C, Berg T, Ross RS, et al. [Prophylaxis, diagnosis and therapy of hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection: the German guidelines on the management of HCV infection]. Z Gastroenterol 2010a;48:289-351. (Abstract)
Sarrazin C, Kieffer TL, Bartels D, et al. Dynamic hepatitis C virus genotypic and phenotypic changes in patients treated with the protease inhibitor telaprevir. Gastroenterology 2007;132:1767-77. (Abstract)
Sarrazin C, Schwendy S, Moller B, et al. Improved responses to pegylated interferon alfa-2b and ribavirin by individualizing treatment for 24-72 weeks. Gastroenterology 2011a;141:1656-64. (Abstract)
Sarrazin C, Susser S, Doehring A, et al. Importance of IL28B gene polymorphisms in hepatitis C virus genotype 2 and 3 infected patients. J Hepatol 2011b;54:415-21. (Abstract)
Sarrazin C, Zeuzem S. Resistance to direct antiviral agents in patients with hepatitis C virus infection. Gastroenterology 2010b;138:447-62. (Abstract)
Serfaty L, Forns X, Goeser T, et al. No impact of insulin resistance on antiviral efficacy of telaprevir-based regimen in hcv genotype 1 treatment-naive patients: sub-analysis of c208 study. Hepatology 2010;52:705A-705A.
Shepard CW, Finelli L, Alter MJ. Global epidemiology of hepatitis C virus infection. Lancet Infect Dis 2005;5:558-67. (Abstract)
Sherman KE, Flamm SL, Afdhal NH, et al. Response-guided telaprevir combination treatment for hepatitis C virus infection. N Engl J Med 2011;365:1014-24. (Abstract)
Sherman KE, Sulkowski MS, Zoulim F, et al. Follow-up of svr durability and viral resistance in patients with chronic hepatitis c treated with telaprevir-based regimens: interim analysis of the extend study. Hepatology 2011;54:485A-486A.
Shiffman ML, Hofmann CM, Luketic VA, Sanyal AJ. Use of granulocyte macrophage colony stimulating factor alone or in combination with interferon-alpha-2b for treatment of chronic hepatitis C. J Hepatol 1998;28:382-9. (Abstract)
Shiffman ML, Salvatore J, Hubbard S, et al. Treatment of chronic hepatitis C virus genotype 1 with peginterferon, ribavirin, and epoetin alpha. Hepatology 2007a;46:371-9. (Abstract)
Shiffman ML, Suter F, Bacon BR, et al. Peginterferon alfa-2a and ribavirin for 16 or 24 weeks in HCV genotype 2 or 3. N Engl J Med 2007b;357:124-34. (Abstract)
Silva M, Kasserra C, Gupta S, Treitel MA, Hughes E, O'Mara E. Antiviral Activity of Boceprevir Monotherapy in Treatment-Naive Subjects With Chronic Hepatitis C Genotype 2/3. APASL 2011.
Slavenburg S, Weggelaar I, van Oijen MG, Drenth JP. Optimal length of antiviral therapy in patients with hepatitis C virus genotypes 2 and 3: a meta-analysis. Antivir Ther 2009;14:1139-48. (Abstract)
Snoeck E, Wade JR, Duff F, Lamb M, Jorga K. Predicting sustained virological response and anaemia in chronic hepatitis C patients treated with peginterferon alfa-2a (40KD) plus ribavirin. Br J Clin Pharmacol 2006;62:699-709. (Abstract)
Sofia MJ, Bao D, Chang W, et al. Discovery of a β-d-2'-deoxy-2'-α-fluoro-2'-β-C-methyluridine nucleotide prodrug (PSI-7977) for the treatment of hepatitis C virus. J. Med. Chem. 2010;53:7202–18. (Abstract)
Soza A, Everhart JE, Ghany MG, et al. Neutropenia during combination therapy of interferon alfa and ribavirin for chronic hepatitis C. Hepatology 2002;36:1273-9. (Abstract)

Sulkowski M (2013a), Rodriguez-Torres M, Lalezari JP, et al. All-Oral Therapy With Sofosbuvir Plus Ribavirin For the Treatment of HCV Genotype 1, 2, and 3 Infection in Patients Co-infected With HIV (PHOTON-1). Hepatology 2013;58:313A, Abstract 212.
Sulkowski M, Gardiner D, Rodriguez-Torres M, et al. Daclatasvir plus Sofosbuvir for Previously Treated or Untreated Chronic HCV Infection. N Engl J Med 2014:211–221. (Abstract)
Sulkowski MS, Poordad F, Manns MP, et al. Anemia during treatment with peginterferon alfa-2b/ribavirin with or without boceprevir is associated with higher svr rates: analysis of previously untreated and previous-treatment-failure patients. J Hepatol 2011;54:S194-S195.
Suppiah V, Moldovan M, Ahlenstiel G, et al. IL28B is associated with response to chronic hepatitis C interferon-alpha and ribavirin therapy. Nat Genet 2009;41:1100-4. (Abstract)
Suzuki Y, Ikeda K, Suzuki F, et al. Dual oral therapy with daclatasvir and asunaprevir for patients with HCV genotype 1b infection and limited treatment options. J. Hepatol. 2013;58:655–62. (Abstract)
Svensson JO, Bruchfeld A, Schvarcz R, Stahle L. Determination of ribavirin in serum using highly selective solid-phase extraction and high-performance liquid chromatography. Ther Drug Monit 2000;22:215-8. (Abstract)
Swain MG, Lai M-Y, Shiffman ML, et al. A sustained virologic response is durable in patients with chronic hepatitis C treated with peginterferon alfa-2a and ribavirin. Gastroenterology 2010;139:1593–601. (Abstract)
Tanaka Y, Nishida N, Sugiyama M, et al. Genome-wide association of IL28B with response to pegylated interferon-alpha and ribavirin therapy for chronic hepatitis C. Nat Genet 2009;41:1105-9. (Abstract)
Tandon P, Doucette K, Fassbender K, Vandermeer B, Durec T, Dryden DM. Granulocyte colony-stimulating factor for hepatitis C therapy-associated neutropenia: systematic review and economic evaluation. J Viral Hepat 2011;18:e381-93. (Abstract)
Terrault NA. Prophylactic and preemptive therapies for hepatitis C virus-infected patients undergoing liver transplantation. Liver Transpl 2003;9:S95-S100. (Abstract)
Thomas DL, Thio CL, Martin MP, et al. Genetic variation in IL28B and spontaneous clearance of hepatitis C virus. Nature 2009;461:798-801. (Abstract)
Thompson AJ, Patel K, Chuang WL, et al. Viral clearance is associated with improved insulin resistance in genotype 1 chronic hepatitis C but not genotype 2/3. Gut 2012;61:128-34. (Abstract)
Thu Thuy PT, Bunchorntavakul C, Tan Dat H, et al. A randomized trial of 48 versus 24 weeks of combination pegylated interferon and ribavirin therapy in genotype 6 chronic hepatitis C. J. Hepatol. 2012;56:1012–8. (Abstract)
Tillmann HL, Thompson AJ, Patel K, et al. A polymorphism near IL28B is associated with spontaneous clearance of acute hepatitis C virus and jaundice. Gastroenterology 2010;139:1586-92. (Abstract)
Todros L, Saracco G, Durazzo M, et al. Efficacy and safety of interferon alfa therapy in chronic hepatitis C with autoantibodies to liver-kidney microsomes. Hepatology 1995;22:1374-8. (Abstract)
Tran HA, Jones TL, Ianna EA, Reeves GE. The natural history of interferon-alpha induced thyroiditis in chronic hepatitis c patients: a long term study. Thyroid Res 2011;4:2. (Abstract)
van der Meer AJ, Veldt BJ, Feld JJ, et al. Association between sustained virological response and all-cause mortality among patients with chronic hepatitis C and advanced hepatic fibrosis. JAMA 2012;308:2584-2593.
Veldt BJ, Heathcote EJ, Wedemeyer H, et al. Sustained virologic response and clinical outcomes in patients with chronic hepatitis C and advanced fibrosis. Ann Intern Med 2007;147:677-84. (Abstract)
Vermehren J, Aghemo A, Falconer K, et al. Clinical significance of residual viremia detected by two real-time PCR assays for response-guided therapy of HCV genotype 1 infection. J. Hepatol. 2014.
Vertex Pharmaceuticals Incorporated. Prescribing Information Incivek (telaprevir). PDF, 23 pages, accessed February 25, 2012.

Vierling JM, Davis M, Flamm S, et al. Boceprevir for Chronic HCV Genotype 1 Infection in Patients with Prior Treatment Failure to Peginterferon/Ribavirin, including Prior Null Response. J. Hepatol. 2013. [Epub ahead of print] (Abstract)
Vierling JM, Flamm SL, Gordon SC, et al. Efficacy of boceprevir in prior null responders to peginterferon/ribavirin: the provide study. Hepatology 2011;54:796A-797A.
Vogel W, Graziadei I, Umlauft F, et al. High-dose interferon-alpha2b treatment prevents chronicity in acute hepatitis C: a pilot study. Dig Dis Sci 1996;41:81S-85S. (Abstract)
Von Wagner M, Huber M, Berg T, et al. Peginterferon-alpha-2a (40KD) and ribavirin for 16 or 24 weeks in patients with genotype 2 or 3 chronic hepatitis C. Gastroenterology 2005;129:522-27. (Abstract)
Wang C, Jia L, Huang H, et al. In vitro activity of BMS-790052 on hepatitis C virus genotype 4 NS5A. Antimicrob. Agents Chemother. 2012;56:1588–90. (Abstract)
Werner CR, Egetemeyr DP, Lauer UM, et al. Telaprevir-based triple therapy in liver transplant patients with hepatitis C virus: A 12-week pilot study providing safety and efficacy data. Liver Transpl 2012;18:1464-1470.
Wesche B, Jaeckel E, Trautwein C, et al. Induction of autoantibodies to the adrenal cortex and pancreatic islet cells by interferon alpha therapy for chronic hepatitis C. Gut 2001;48:378-83. (Abstract)
Wiegand J, Buggisch P, Boecher W, et al. Early monotherapy with pegylated interferon alpha-2b for acute hepatitis C infection: the HEP-NET acute-HCV-II study. Hepatology 2006;43:250-6. (Abstract)
Wiegand J, Maasoumy B, Buggisch P, et al. Telaprevir triple therapy in multimorbid chronic hepatitis C genotype 1 patients under hemodialysis. Hepatology 2013;58:1112A, Abstract 1879.
Willems B, Hadziyannis SJ, Morgan TR, et al. Increased SVR rate with 48 wks' treatment and higher RBV dose in HCV genotype 2/3 pts without a rapid virologic response (Rvr) treated with peginterferon alfa-2a (40KD) (Pegasys (R)) plus RBV (Copegus (R)). Gastroenterology 2007;132:A728-A728.
Younossi ZM, Nader FH, Bai C, et al. A phase II dose finding study of darbepoetin alpha and filgrastim for the management of anaemia and neutropenia in chronic hepatitis C treatment. J Viral Hepat 2008;15:370-8. (Abstract)
Zeuzem S, Andreone P, Pol S, et al. Telaprevir for retreatment of HCV infection. N Engl J Med 2011;364:2417-28. (Abstract)
Zeuzem S, Buti M, Ferenci P, et al. Efficacy of 24 weeks treatment with peginterferon alfa-2b plus ribavirin in patients with chronic hepatitis C infected with genotype 1 and low pretreatment viremia. J Hepatol 2006;44:97-103. (Abstract)
Zeuzem S, Diago M, Gane E, et al. Peginterferon alfa-2a (40 kilodaltons) and ribavirin in patients with chronic hepatitis C and normal aminotransferase levels. Gastroenterology 2004a;127:1724-32. (Abstract)
Zeuzem S, Hultcrantz R, Bourliere M, et al. Peginterferon alfa-2b plus ribavirin for treatment of chronic hepatitis C in previously untreated patients infected with HCV genotypes 2 or 3. J Hepatol 2004b;40:993-9. (Abstract)
Zeuzem S (2013a), Berg T, Gane E, et al. Simeprevir Increases Rate of Sustained Virologic Response Among Treatment-Experienced Patients With HCV Genotype-1 Infection: A Phase IIb Trial. Gastroenterology 2013:S0016–5085(13)01576–X.
Zeuzem S (2013b), Dusheiko GM, Salupere R, et al. Sofosbuvir and Ribavirin for 12 or 24 Weeks for Patients With HCV Genotype 2 or 3: the VALENCE Trial. Hepatology. 2013;58:Abstract 1085.
Zignego AL, Ferri C, Pileri SA, Caini P, Bianchi FB. Extrahepatic manifestations of Hepatitis C Virus infection: a general overview and guidelines for a clinical approach. Dig Liver Dis 2007;39:2-17. (Abstract)

13. Hepatitis C: New Drugs

Christian Lange, Christoph Sarrazin

Introduction

Combination therapy with pegylated-interferon (PEG-IFN) α plus weight-based ribavirin leads to sustained virologic response (SVR, defined by undetectable HCV RNA 24 weeks after treatment completion) in approximately 50% of all HCV genotype 1-infected patients, compared to 70-90% of those infected with HCV genotypes 2 and 3 (Zeuzem 2009). The limited treatment success especially in HCV genotype 1 patients, the need for long treatments (up to 72 weeks), the numerous side effects of PEG-IFN α plus ribavirin therapy, and the exploding knowledge of the HCV life cycle and of structural features of the HCV proteins has spurred development of many promising directly acting antiviral agents (DAA) (Bartenschlager 2004, Lange 2012, Moradpour 2013, Moradpour 2007).

In principle, each of the four HCV structural and six non-structural proteins, HCV-specific RNA structures such as the IRES, as well as host factors on which HCV depends, are suitable targets for DAA agents. In the following section, DAA compounds currently in clinical development are presented (Table 1, Figure 1). Recently, the NS3/4A protease inhibitors telaprevir, boceprevir, and simeprevir as well as the nucleoside analog sofosbuvir were approved in combination with PEG-IFN α plus ribavirin (triple therapy). However, escpecially for patients with previous failure to PEG-IFN α / RBV therapy, the efficacy of the triple regimens is limited and a large proportion of patients continue to be intolerant to the side effects associated with IFN α. As a first step into an interferon-free treatment world for HCV genotype 2-infected patients the recently approved combination of the nucleoside analog sofosbuvir plus ribavirin seems to be highly effective. Therefore, the approval of novel interferon-free DAA combination regimens with coverage also of other HCV genotypes is eagerly awaited.

Table 1. Selected directly acting antiviral agents (DAAs) and host targeting agents (HTAs) in the pipeline

Drug name	Company	Target / Active site	Phase
NS3/4A protease inhibitors			
Telaprevir (VX-950)	Vertex	Active site / linear	IV
Boceprevir (SCH503034)	Merck	Active site / linear	IV
Simeprevir (TMC435)	Janssen / Medivir	Active site / macrocyclic	IV
Danoprevir (R7227)	Roche / InterMune	Active site / macrocyclic	III
Vaniprevir (MK-7009)	Merck	Active site / macrocyclic	III
MK-5172	Merck	Active site / macrocyclic	III
Faldaprevir (BI201335)	Boehringer Ingelheim	Active site / linear	IV
Asunaprevir (BMS-650032)	Bristol-Myers Squibb	Active site	III
GS-9256	Gilead	Active site	II
GS-9451	Gilead	Active site	II
ABT-450	Abbott	Active site	III
IDX320	Idenix	Active site	II
ACH-1625	Achillion	Active site / macrocyclic?	II
Nucleoside analog NS5B polymerase inhibitors (NI)			
Mericitabine (R7128)	Roche / Pharmasset	Active site	III
Sofosbuvir (GS-7977)	Gilead	Active site	III
VX-135 (ALS-2200)	Vertex / Alios	Active site	II
IDX 20963	Idenix	Active site	I
ACH-3422	Achillion	Active site	I
Non-nucleoside NS5B polymerase inhibitors (NNI)			
Deleobuvir (BI207127)	Boehringer Ingelheim	NNI site 1 / thumb 1	HALTED
BMS-791325	Bristol-Myers Squibb	NNI site 1 / thumb 1	II
TMC647055	Janssen	NNI site 1 / thumb 1	I
VX-222	Vertex	NNI site 2 / thumb 2	II
GS-9669	Gilead	NNI site 3 / palm 1	II
ABT-333	Abbott	NNI site 3 / palm 1	III
Tegobuvir (GS-9190)	Gilead	NNI site 4 / palm 2	II
Setrobuvir (ANA598)	Anadys / Roche	NNI site 4? / palm 1	II
NS5A inhibitor	Bristol-Myers	NS5A domain 1	
Daclatasvir (BMS-790052)	Squibb	inhibitor	III
BMS-824393	Bristol-Myers Squibb	NS5A protein	I
PPI-461	Presidio	NS5A protein	II
PPI-668	Presidio	NS5A protein	II
Ledipasvir (GS-5885)	Gilead	NS5A protein	III
GS-5816	Gilead	NS5A protein	II
ABT-267	Abbott	NS5A protein	III

ACH-2928	Achillion	NS5A protein	I
MK-8742	Merck	NS5A protein	II
Host targeting agents			
SCY-635	Scynexis	Cyclophilin inhibitor	II
Alisporivir (Debio-025)	Novartis	Cyclophilin inhibitor	II
Miravirsen	Santaris	miRNA122 antisense RNA	II

Table 1a. Selected directly acting antiviral agents (DAAs) and host targeting agents whose development has been stopped or temporarily halted

Drug name	Company	Target / Active site
NS3/4A protease inhibitors		
Ciluprevir (BILN 2061)	Boehringer Ingelheim	Active site / macrocyclic
Narlaprevir (SCH900518)	Schering-Plough	Active site / linear
PHX1766	Pheromix	Active site
Nucleoside analog NS5B polymerase inhibitors (NI)		
Valopicitabine (NM283)	Idenix/ Novartis	Active site
R1626	Roche	Active site
GS-938	Gilead	Active site
IDX184	Idenix	Active site
Non-nucleoside NS5B polymerase inhibitors (NNI)		
BILB 1941	Boehringer Ingelheim	NNI site 1 / thumb 1
MK-3281	Merck	NNI site 1 / thumb 1
VX-759	Vertex	NNI site 2 / thumb 2
VX-916	Vertex	NNI site 2 / thumb 2
ABT-072	Abbott	NNI site 3 / palm 1
HCV-796	ViroPharma / Wyeth	NNI site 4 / palm 2
Filibuvir (PF-00868554)	Pfizer	NNI site 2 / thumb 2
IDX375	Idenix	NNI site 4 / palm 2
Host targeting agents		
NIM811	Novartis	Cyclophilin inhibitor

HCV life cycle and treatment targets

HCV is a positive-sense single-stranded RNA virus of approximately 9600 nucleotides. The HCV genome contains a single large open reading frame encoding for a polyprotein of about 3100 amino acids. From this initially translated polyprotein, the structural HCV protein core (C) and envelope glycoproteins 1 and 2 (E1, E2), p7, and the six non-structural HCV proteins NS2, NS3, NS4A, NS4B, NS5A and NS5B, are processed by both viral and host proteases. The core protein forms the viral nucleocapsid carrying E1 and E2, the receptors for viral attachment and host cell entry. The non-structural proteins are multifunctional proteins essential for the HCV life cycle (Bartenschlager 2004, Moradpour 2007). P7 is a small hydrophobic protein that oligomerizes into a circular hexamer, most likely serving as an ion channel through the viral lipid membrane. The large translated section of the HCV genome is flanked by the strongly conserved HCV 3' and 5' untranslated regions (UTR). The 5' UTR is comprised of four highly structured domains forming the internal ribosome entry site (IRES), which plays an important role in HCV replication (Figure 2).

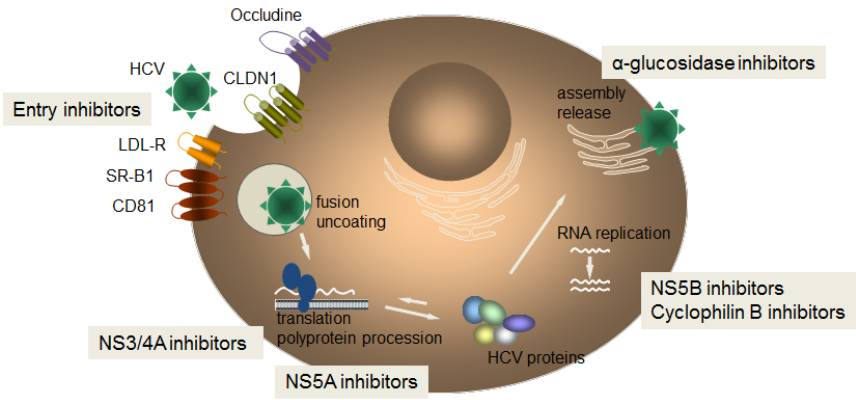


Figure 1. HCV life cycle and targets for directly acting antiviral (DAA) agents

NS3/4A protease inhibitors

Molecular biology

After receptor-mediated endocytosis, the fusion of HCV with cellular membranes and uncoating of the viral nucleocapsid, the single-stranded positive-sense RNA genome of the virus is released into the cytoplasm to serve as messenger RNA for the HCV polyprotein precursor. HCV mRNA translation is under the control of the internal ribosome entry site (IRES) (Bartenschlager 2004, Moradpour 2007). IRES mediates the HCV polyprotein translation by forming a stable complex with the 40S ribosomal subunit, eukaryotic initiation factors and viral proteins.

From the initially translated HCV polyprotein, the three structural and seven non-structural HCV proteins are processed by both host and viral proteases (Bartenschlager 2004, Moradpour 2007). NS2 is a metalloproteinase that cleaves itself from the NS2/NS3 protein, leading to its own loss of function and to the release of the NS3 protein (Lorenz 2006), which activates the serine protease, located in a small groove, and the helicase/NTPase (Kim 1998, Kim 1996). NS3 forms a tight, non-covalent complex with its cofactor and enhancer NS4A, which is essential for proper protein folding (Figure 3). The NS3/4A protease cleaves the junctions between NS3/NS4A, NS4A/NS4B, NS4B/NS5A and NS5A/NS5B. Besides its essential role in protein processing, NS3 is integrated into the HCV RNA replication complex, supporting the unwinding of viral RNA by its helicase activity. Moreover, NS3 may play an important role in HCV persistence via blocking TRIF-mediated toll-like receptor signaling and Cardif-mediated RIG-I signaling, subsequently resulting in impaired induction of type I interferons (Meylan 2005). Thus, pharmacologic NS3 inhibition might support viral clearance by restoring the innate immune response.

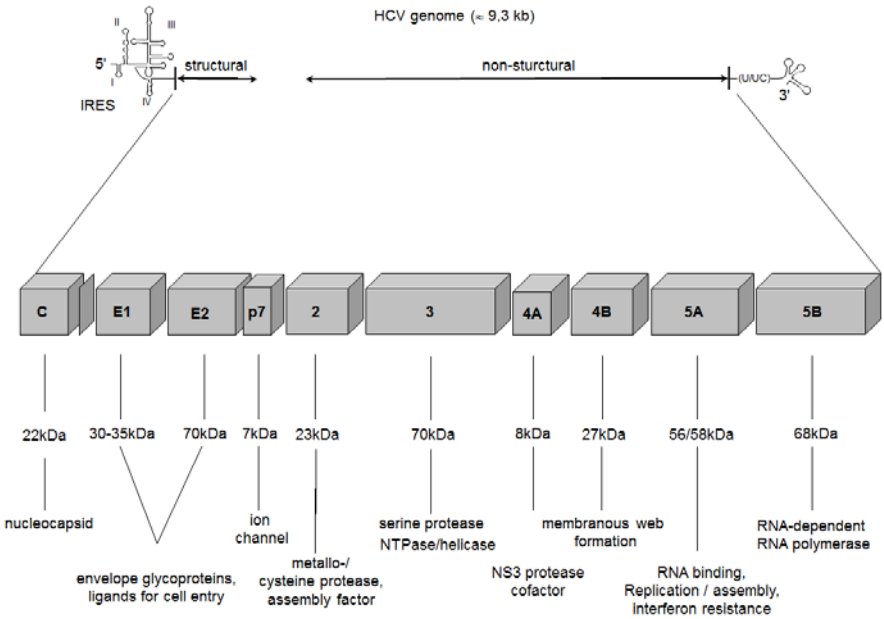


Figure 2. Genomic organisation of HCV

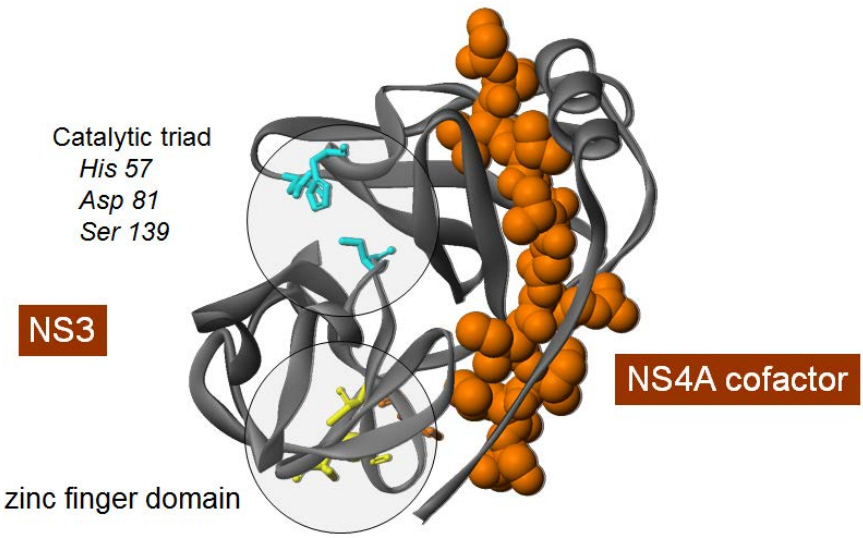


Figure 3. Molecular structure of the HCV NS3/4A protease

The location of the active site of the NS3/4A protease, the shallow groove mentioned previously, makes the design of compound inhibitors relatively difficult. Nevertheless, many NS3/4A protease inhibitors have been developed and they can be divided into two classes, the macrocyclic inhibitors and the linear tetrapeptide-based α-ketoamide derivatives. In general, NS3/4A protease inhibitors have been shown to strongly inhibit HCV replication during monotherapy but can also cause the selection of resistant mutants followed by viral breakthrough. The additional administration of pegylated interferon plus ribavirin, however, was shown to reduce the frequency of development of resistance. The logical aim for combination therapies with different antiviral drugs is to be efficacious while preventing the development of resistance.

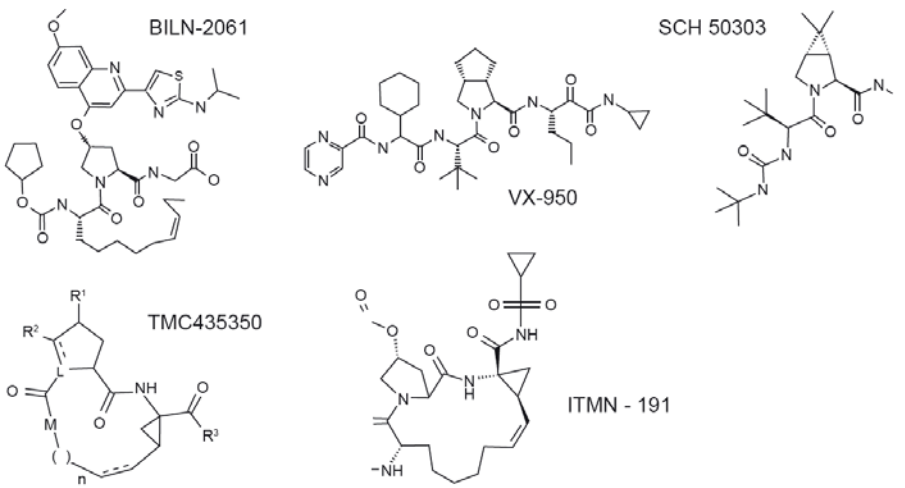


Figure 4. Molecular structure of selected NS3/4A inhibitors

Telaprevir (Incivek/Incivo®) and boceprevir (Victrelis®)

Telaprevir and boceprevir were approved for the treatment of chronic hepatitis C virus genotype 1 infection by FDA, EMA and several other agencies in 2011. Both telaprevir and boceprevir are orally bioavailable, peptidomimetic NS3/4A protease inhibitors belonging to the class of α-ketoamide derivatives (Figure 4). Like other NS3/4A inhibitors, telaprevir and boceprevir are characterized by a remarkable antiviral activity against HCV genotype 1. However, monotherapy with these agents results in the rapid selection of drug-resistant variants followed by viral breakthrough (Reesink 2006, Sarrazin 2007). Phase II and III studies showed that the addition of pegylated interferon α plus ribavirin leads to a substantially reduced frequency of resistant mutants and viral breakthrough, and to significantly higher SVR rates in both treatment-naïve and treatment-experienced HCV genotype 1 patients compared to treatment with PEG-IFN plus RBV alone (reviewed in (Lange 2012). Telaprevir- and boceprevir-based triple therapies form the new standard of care for HCV genotype 1 patients. Results of the Phase III telaprevir and boceprevir

registration studies are summarized in Figure 5. Futher details on telaprevir- and boceprevir-based triple therapies are discussed in the chapter on standard treatment of chronic hepatitis C (Chapter 12).

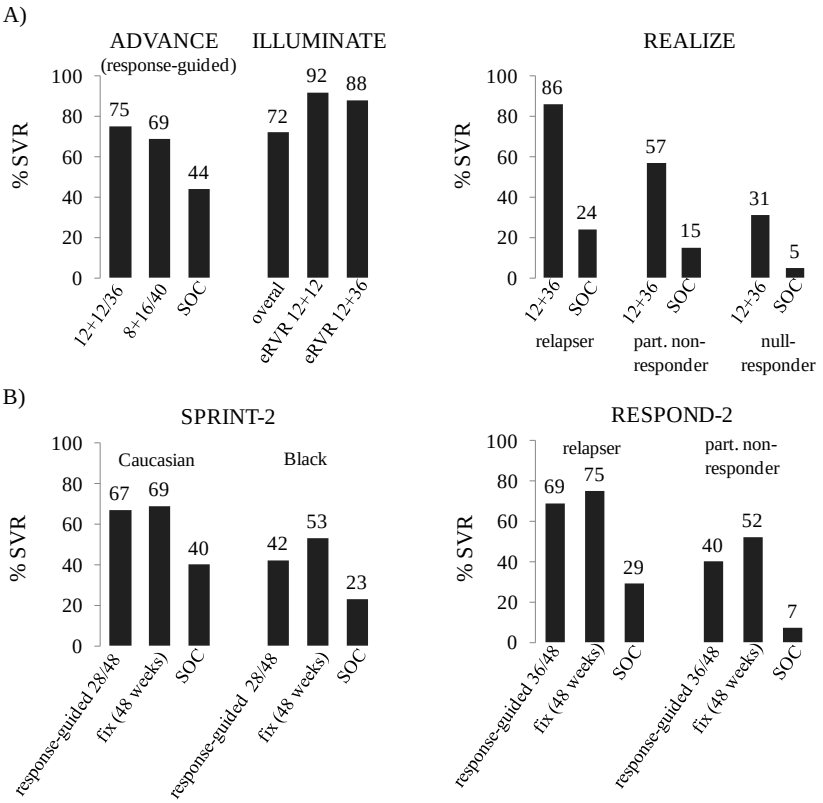


Figure 5. SVR rates in Phase III clinical trials evaluating telaprevir (A) or boceprevir (B) in combination with PEG-IFN α plus ribavirin (RBV). ADVANCE, ILLUMINATE and SPRINT-2 enrolled treatment-naïve patients, REALIZE and RESPOND-2 enrolled treatment-experienced patients. Telaprevir was administered for 8 or 12 weeks in combination with PEG-IFN α-2a plus RBV, followed by 12-40 weeks of PEG-IFN α-2a plus RBV alone. Boceprevir was administered over the whole treatment period of 28 or 48 weeks in combination with PEG-INF α-2b plus RBV, except for the first 4 weeks of lead-in therapy of PEG-IFN α-2b plus RBV only. eRVR, extended early virologic response; SOC, standard of care; LI, lead-in (4 wks of PEG-INF α plus RBV only)

Other NS3 protease inhibitors

Other NS3 protease inhibitors are currently in various stages of development - danoprevir (R7227), faldaprevir (BI201335), simeprevir (TMC435), asunaprevir (BMS-650032), ACH-1625, IDX320, ABT-450, MK-5172, GS-9256, GS-9451 - and should significantly increase treatment options for chronic hepatitis C in the near future. In general, comparable antiviral activities to telaprevir and boceprevir in

HCV genotype 1-infected patients were observed during mono- and triple- therapy studies (Brainard 2010, Dvory-Sobol 2012, Ferenci 2013, Lawitz 2012, Manns 2013, Manns 2011, Manns 2011, Reesink 2010, Summa 2012, Zeuzem 2013). Potential advantages of these second and third generation protease inhibitors may be improved tolerability, broader genotypic activity (eg, MK-5172, danoprevir, simeprevir), different resistance profiles (eg, MK-5172), and/or improved pharmacokinetics for once-daily dosing (eg, simeprevir, faldaprevir). Different resistance profiles between linear tetrapeptide and macrocyclic inhibitors binding to the active site of the NS3 protease have been shown. R155 is the main resistance codon and different mutations at this amino acid site within the NS3 protease confer cross-resistance to nearly all protease inhibitors currently in advanced clinical development (Sarrazin 2010). An exception is MK-5172, which exhibits potent antiviral activity against variants carrying mutations at position R155 (Romano 2012). MK-5172 also shows potent antiviral activity against HCV genotypes 1 and 3 isolates, although the required doses to suppress HCV gentoype 3 may be limited toxicity issues (Brainard 2010).

The currently most advanced second wave NS3/4A protease inhibitors are faldaprevir and simeprevir. Simeprevir was approved by FDA in 2013 for the treatment of HCV genotype 1 infection; the approval of simeprevir in Europe and of faldaprevir is expected for 2014 (see Chapter 12 for details). In recently completed approval studies (QUEST 1 and QUEST 2 for treatment-naïve patients; PROMISE and ASPIRE for relapsers and non-responders), simeprevir (150 mg) was administered for 12 weeks once daily plus PEG-IFN α-2a or PEG-IFN α-2b and ribavirin, followed by 12 or 36 weeks of PEG-IFN α-2a and ribavirin alone. Overall, this regimen led to SVR rates of approximately 80% in treatment-naïve HCV genotype 1 patients / relapsers and 50% in previous partial- and null-responders. SVR rates were lower in patients with advanced liver fibrosis as well as in patients carrying a variant at position 80 (Q80R/K) of the HCV NS3 protein at the start of antiviral therapy (see below). Approximately 90% of treatment naïve and relapse patients were eligible for shortening treatment duration to 24 weeks (Forns 2013, Jacobson 2013, Zeuzem 2013).

Several Phase III studies assessed faldaprevir-based triple therapy in treatment-naïve HCV genotype 1 patients (STARTverso™1 and 2), in treatment-experienced HCV genotype 1 patients (STARTverso™3), and in patients with HIV coinfection (STARTverso™4). In these studies, faldaprevir was administered for 12-24 weeks together with PEG-IFN α and ribavirin for 24-48 weeks. Generally, most patients were eligible for a total treatment duration of 24 weeks. Overall SVR rates for faldaprevir-based triple therapy were 70-80% in treatment-naïve HCV genotype 1 patients / HIV-coinfected patients and 30-70% in treatment-experienced patients (Jacobson 2013, Jensen 2103, Rockstroh 2013).

Resistance to NS3/4A inhibitors

Because of the high replication rate of HCV and the poor fidelity of its RNA-dependent RNA polymerase, numerous variants (quasispecies) are continuously produced during HCV replication. Among them, variants carrying mutations altering the conformation of the binding sites of DAA compounds can develop.

During treatment with specific antivirals, these pre-existing drug-resistant variants have a fitness advantage and can be selected to become the dominant viral quasispecies. Many of these resistant mutants exhibit an attenuated replication with the consequence that, after termination of exposure to specific antivirals, the wild type may displace the resistant variants (Sarrazin 2007, Sarrazin 2010). HCV quasispecies resistant to NS3/4A protease inhibitors or non-nucleoside polymerase inhibitors can be detected at low levels in some patients (approximately 1%) who have never been treated with these specific antivirals before (Gaudieri 2009). The clinical relevance of these pre-existing mutants is not completely understood, although there is evidence that they may reduce the chance of achieving an SVR with DAA-based triple therapies if the patient's individual sensitivity to pegylated-interferon α plus ribavirin is low.

More recently, the Q80R/K variant has been described as conferring low-level resistance to simeprevir (TMC435), a macrocyclic protease inhibitor. Interestingly, the Q80K variant can be detected in up to 50% of HCV genotype 1a-infected patients (approximately 20% in Europe and 50% in the US), while in <1% in 1b isolates, and a slower viral decline and lower SVR rates on simeprevir-based triple therapy were observed (Jacobson 2013, Lenz 2011, Zeuzem 2013). Table 2 summarizes the resistance profile of selected NS3/4A inhibitors. Although the resistance profiles differ significantly, R155 is an overlapping position for resistance development and different mutations at this position confer resistance to nearly all protease inhibitors (although not MK-5172) currently in advanced clinical development (Sarrazin 2010). Importantly, many resistance mutations can be detected *in vivo* only by clonal sequencing. For example, mutations at four positions conferring telaprevir resistance have been characterized so far (V36A/M/L, T54A, R155K/M/S/T and A156S/T), but only the A156 was identified initially *in vitro* in the replicon system (Lin 2005). These mutations, alone or as double mutations, conferred low (V36A/M, T54A, R155K/T, A156S) to high (A156T/V, V36M + R155K, V36M + 156T) levels of resistance to telaprevir (Sarrazin 2007). It is thought that the resulting amino acid changes of these mutations alter the configuration of the catalytic pocket of the protease, which impedes binding of the protease inhibitor (Welsch 2008).

As shown for other NS3/4A protease inhibitors (eg, danoprevir), the genetic barrier to telaprevir resistance differs significantly between HCV subtypes. In all clinical studies of telaprevir alone or in combination with PEG-IFN α plus RBV, viral resistance and breakthrough occurrs much more frequently in patients infected with HCV genotype 1a compared to genotype 1b. This difference was shown to result from nucleotide differences at position 155 in HCV subtype 1a (aga, encodes R) versus 1b (cga, also encodes R). The mutation most frequently associated with resistance to telaprevir is R155K. Changing R to K at position 155 requires 1 nucleotide change in HCV subtype 1a, and 2 nucleotide changes in subtype 1b isolates (McCown 2009). In addition, HCV genotype 1a isolates generally display a higher fitness compared to HCV genotype 1b isolates, which explains a higher risk of resistance development at other positions within NS3/4A and other genomic regions of HCV genotype 1a (Romano 2012).

Table 2. Resistance mutations to selected HCV NS3 protease inhibitors

	36	54	55	80	155	156A	156B	168	170
Telaprevir* (linear)									
Boceprevir* (linear)									
SCH900518* (linear)									
Faldaprevir (BI201335*) (linear)									
BILN 2061** (macrocyclic)									
Danoprevir* (macrocyclic)									
MK-7009* (macrocyclic)									
Simeprevir (TMC435*) (macrocyclic)									
Asunaprevir (BMS-650032*) (macrocyclic)									
GS-9451* (macrocyclic)									
ABT-450* (macrocyclic)									
IDX320** (macrocyclic)									
ACH-1625** (macrocyclic)									
MK-5172*** (macrocyclic)									

36: V36A/M; 54: T54S/A; 55: V55A; 80: Q80R/K; 155: R155K/T/Q; 156A: A156S; 156B: A156T/V; 168: D168A/V/T/H; 170: V170A/T

* mutations associated with resistance in patients

** mutations associated with resistance *in vitro*

*** no viral breakthrough on 7 days monotherapy

Q80 variants have been observed in approximately 10% of treatment-naïve patients and was associated with slower viral decline during simeprevir (TMC435) triple therapy

It will be important to better define whether treatment failure due to the development of variants resistant to DAA agents has a negative impact on re-treatment with the same or other DAA treatment regimens. Follow-up studies of telaprevir and boceprevir Phase III studies have revealed a rapid decline of resistant variants to below the limit of detection (>20% of quasispecies) using population sequencing techniques (Barnard 2011, Sherman 2011). However, telaprevir- and boceprevir-resistant variants were detectable by a clonal sequencing approach several years after treatment in single patients who had been treated with telaprevir or boceprevir within smaller Phase Ib studies (Susser 2011). Furthermore, re-treatment with simeprevir-based triple therapy in 5 patients who had developed

simeprevir resistance previously during monotherapy resulted in SVR in only 3 out of 5 patients, indicating a possible effect of low-level persistence of resistant variants (Lenz 2012).

NS5B polymerase inhibitors

Molecular biology

HCV replication is initiated by the formation of the replication complex, a highly structured association of viral proteins and RNA, of cellular proteins and cofactors, and of rearranged intracellular lipid membranes derived from the endoplasmic reticulum (Moradpour 2007). The key enzyme in HCV RNA replication is NS5B, an RNA-dependent RNA polymerase that catalyzes the synthesis of a complementary negative-strand RNA by using the positive-strand RNA genome as a template (Lesburg 1999) (Figure 6). From this newly synthesized negative-strand RNA, numerous RNA strands of positive polarity are produced by NS5B activity that serve as templates for further replication and polyprotein translation. Because of poor fidelity leading to a high rate of errors in its RNA sequencing, numerous different isolates are generated during HCV replication in any given patient, termed HCV quasispecies. Due to the lack of proofreading of the NS5B polymerase together with the high replication rate of HCV, every possible mutation is generated every day.

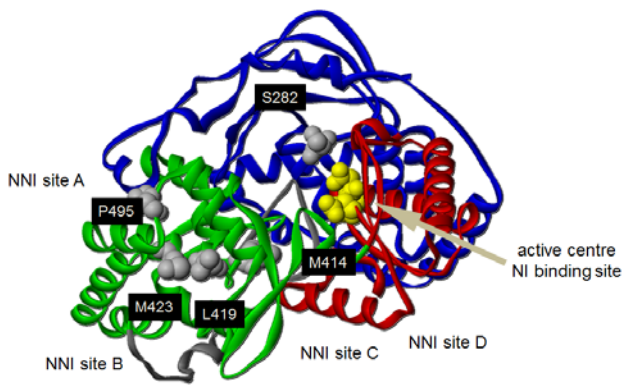


Figure 6. Structure of the HCV NS5B RNA polymerase and binding sites

NS5B RNA polymerase inhibitors can be divided into two distinct categories. Nucleoside analog inhibitors (NIs) like mericitabine, sofosbuvir, or ALS-220 mimic the natural substrates of the polymerase and are incorporated into the growing RNA chain, thus causing direct chain termination by blocking the active site of NS5B (Koch 2006). Because the active centre of NS5B is a highly conserved region of the HCV genome, NIs are potentially effective against different genotypes. Single amino acid substitutions in every position of the active centre may result in loss of

function or in extremely impaired replicative fitness. Thus, there is a relatively high barrier to the development of resistance to NIs.

In contrast to NIs, the heterogeneous class of non-nucleoside inhibitors (NNIs) achieves NS5B inhibition by binding to different allosteric enzyme sites, which results in conformational protein change before the elongation complex is formed (Beaulieu 2007). For allosteric NS5B inhibition high chemical affinity is required. NS5B is structurally organized in a characteristic "right hand motif", containing finger, palm and thumb domains, and offers at least four NNI binding sites, a benzimidazole-(thumb 1)-, thiophene-(thumb 2)-, benzothiadiazine-(palm 1)- and benzofuran-(palm 2)-binding site (Lesburg 1999) (Figure 6). Because of their distinct binding sites, different NNI (polymerase) inhibitors can theoretically be used in combination or in sequence to manage the development of resistance.

But because NNIs bind relatively distantly from the active center of NS5B (Figure 7), their application may rapidly lead to the development of resistant mutants *in vitro* and *in vivo*. Moreover, mutations at the NNI binding sites do not necessarily lead to impaired function of the enzyme. Figure 7 shows the structure of selected nucleoside and non-nucleoside inhibitors as well as the active center.

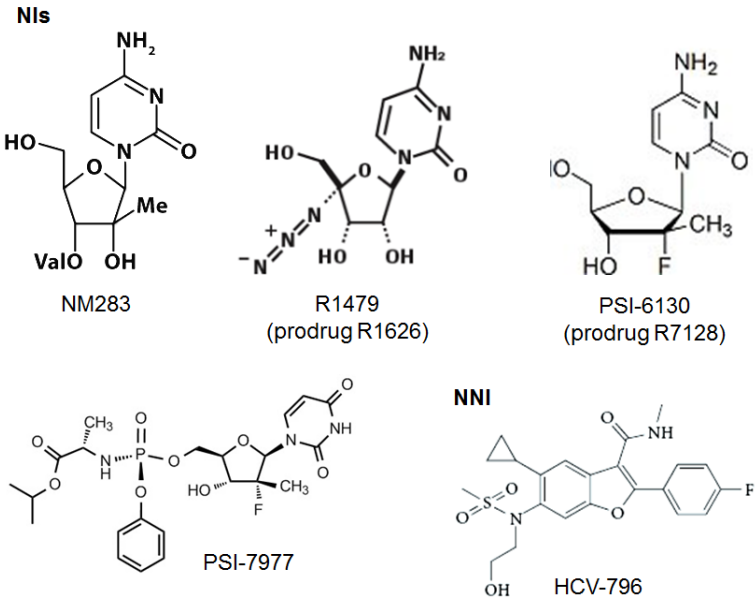


Figure 7. Molecular structure of selected NS5B polymerase inhibitors

Nucleoside analogs

Mericitabine (RG7128) is safe and well-tolerated, moderately effective against all HCV genotypes, and thus far viral resistance against mericitabine has been observed very rarely in clinical studies. Mericitabine-based triple therapies in HCV genotype 1-, 2-, 3-infected patients revealed superior SVR rates compared to PEG-IFN α

alone (Pockros 2011). In an all-oral regimen, administration of mericitabine in combination with the protease inhibitor R7227 (danoprevir) for 14 days, a synergistic antiviral activity of both drugs was observed (Gane 2010). No viral breakthrough with selection of resistant variants has been reported.

Very promising clinical data have been published recently for sofosbuvir, a nucleoside analog NS5B inhibitor strongly effective against all HCV genotypes. Striking Phase II results were obtained for triple therapy including sofosbuvir, which resulted in 90% and 90-100% SVR after only 12 weeks of treatment in treatment-naïve HCV genotype 1 patients and HCV genotype 2 and 3 patients, respectively (Kowdley 2013, Lawitz 2013). These high SVR rates were confirmed by a 90% SVR rate in a Phase III trial in treatment-naïve patients with genotypes 1, 4, 5 and 6 (Lawitz 2013). However, in the Phase III Lonestar-2 trial only 83% of treatment-experienced HCV genotype 3 patients with or without liver cirrhosis (but 93-100% of treatment-experienced HCV genotype 2 patients) achieved SVR after 12 weeks of sofosbuvir-based triple therapy (Lawitz 2013). In all studies, no sofosbuvir-associated side effects have been reported, and no virologic breakthrough was observed during triple therapy. Furthermore, some very promising sofosbuvir-based interferon-free regimens are in development (see below). Thus far, sofosbuvir resistance has only been observed in single patients after sofosbuvir monotherapy (mutation S282T) (Svaroyskaia 2012).

Overall, nucleoside analogs like sofosbuvir demonstrate high antiviral activities that, together with their high genetic barrier to resistance, suggest that they are optimal candidates for all-oral combination therapies (see below).

Non-nucleoside analogs

At least 4 different allosteric binding sites have been identified for inhibition of the NS5B polymerase by non-nucleoside inhibitors. Currently, numerous non-nucleoside inhibitors are in Phase I and II clinical evaluation (eg, thumb 1 inhibitors BI207127, BMS-791325; thumb 2 inhibitors filibuvir and VX-222; palm I inhibitor ANA598 and ABT-333; palm II inhibitors tegobuvir and IDX-375) (Ali 2008, Cooper 2007, Erhardt 2009, Kneteman 2009, Larrey 2012). In general, these non-nucleoside analogs display a low to medium antiviral activity and a low genetic barrier to resistance, evidenced by frequent viral breakthrough during monotherapy studies and selection of resistance mutations at variable sites of the enzyme. In line with these experiences in Phase I studies, a Phase II triple therapy study with filibuvir in combination with pegylated interferon plus RBV showed high relapse and relative low SVR rates (Jacobson 2010). In contrast to nucleoside-analogs, non-nucleoside analogs in general do not display antiviral activity against different HCV genotypes (Sarrazin 2010). Due to their low antiviral efficacy and low genetic barrier to resistance, non-nucleoside analogs will probably only be developed as a component of multiple drug all-oral regimens (see below).

NS5A inhibitors

The HCV NS5A protein seems to play a manifold role in HCV replication, assembly and release (Moradpour 2007). It was shown that NS5A is involved in the early formation of the replication complex by interacting with intracellular lipid

membranes, and it initiates viral assembly at the surface of lipid droplets together with the HCV core (Shi 2002). NS5A may also serve as a channel that helps to protect and direct viral RNA within the membranes of the replication complex (Tellinghuisen 2005). Moreover, it was demonstrated that NS5A is able to interact with NS5B, which results in an enhanced activity of the HCV RNA polymerase. Besides its regulatory impact on HCV replication, NS5A has been shown to modulate host cell signaling pathways, which has been associated with interferon resistance (Wohnsland 2007). Furthermore, mutations within the NS5A protein have been clinically associated with resistance / sensitivity to IFN-based antiviral therapy (Wohnsland 2007).

Daclatasvir (BMS-790052) was the first NS5A inhibitor to be clinically evaluated. Even low doses of daclatasvir display high antiviral efficacy against all HCV genotypes *in vitro*. Monotherapy with daclatasvir led to a sharp initial decline of HCV RNA concentrations, though its genetic barrier to resistance is relatively low (Gao 2010). In HCV genotype 1 and 4 patients, daclatasvir-based triple therapies for 24 or 28 weeks led to extended RVR (eRVR) rates of up to 83% of patients, compared to 9% in the control group (Pol 2012). SVR rates in this study ranged from 59-100%, according to daclatasvir dosage and HCV gentoype / subtype (Hezode 2012).

During monotherapy, rapid selection of variants resistant to daclatasvir occurred (Nettles 2011). The most common resistance mutations in HCV genotype 1a patients were observed at residues M28, Q30, L31, and Y93 of NS5A. In HCV genotype 1b patients, resistance mutations were observed less frequently, predominantly at positions L31 and Y93. These resistance mutations increased the EC50 to daclatasvir moderately to strongly (Fridell 2011). Interestingly and different to NS3 protease inhibitor resistance mutations, variants conferring resistance to NS5A inhibitors are not associated with impaired replication fitness and thus during follow-up after the end of treatment do not disapear. Indeed, in a first follow-up study for approximately 1 year, persistence of the majority of NS5A resistance mutations was seen (McPhee 2013). However, no cross-resistance between daclatasvir and other DAA agents has been reported.

Other NS5A inhibitors (eg, BMS-824393, PPI-461, ledipasvir (GS-5885), ABT-267) are in clinical development. Like daclatasvir, these NS5A inhibitors are characterised by broad genotypic coverage, high antiviral activity, but also by a low genetic barrier to resistance development and overlapping resistance profiles (cross-resistance). Collectively, daclatasvir and other NS5A inhibitors are highly promising agents for both triple therapy and – most importantly - for all-DAA combination therapy approaches.

Compounds targeting viral attachment and entry

The tetraspanin protein CD81, claudin-1, occludine, scavenger receptor class B type 1 (SR-B1), the low-density lipoprotein (LDL) receptor, glycosaminoglycans and the dendritic cell- /lymph node-specific intercellular adhesion molecule 3-grabbing non-integrin (DC-SIGN/L-SIGN) have been identified as putative ligands for E1 and E2 during viral attachment and entry (Moradpour 2007).

HCV entry inhibition might enrich future hepatitis C treatment opportunities, in particular in the prevention of HCV liver graft reinfection. HCV entry inhibition can be theoretically achieved by the use of specific antibodies or small molecule compounds either blocking E1 and E2 or their cellular receptors. So far, only results from clinical trials using polyclonal (eg, civacir) (Davis 2005) or monoclonal (eg, HCV-AB 68) (Schiano 2006) HCV-specific antibodies are available. The clinical benefit of these antibodies has been poor, however. The development of small molecule entry inhibitors is in a preclinical stage and is complicated by difficulties in the crystallographic characterization of the HCV envelope proteins.

Host factors as targets for treatment

Cyclophilin B inhibitors

HCV depends on various host factors throughout its life cycle. Cyclophilin B is expressed in many human tissues and provides a cis-trans isomerase activity, which supports the folding and function of many proteins. Cyclophilin B enhances HCV replication by incompletely understood mechanisms, like the modulation of NS5B activity. Alisporivir (Debio-025) is an orally bioavailable cyclophilin B inhibitor exerting an antiviral impact on both HCV and HIV replication. In clinical trials in HIV/HCV-coinfected patients, treatment with 1200 mg alisporivir twice daily for two weeks led to a mean maximal $\log_{10}$ reduction of HCV RNA of 3.6 and of HIV DNA of 1.0 (Flisiak 2008). Alisporivir was well-tolerated and no viral breakthrough occurred during the 14 days of treatment.

Combination therapy of alisporivir 200 mg, 600 mg or 1000 mg and PEG-IFN α-2a was evaluated in a double-blind placebo-controlled Phase II trial in treatment-naïve patients monoinfected with HCV genotypes 1, 2, 3 or 4. Treatment was administered for 29 days. Mean $\log_{10}$ reductions in HCV RNA at day 29 were 4.75 (1000 mg), 4.61 (600 mg) and 1.8 (200 mg) in the combination therapy groups compared to 2.49 (PEG-IFN α-2a alone) and 2.2 (1000 mg alisporivir alone) in the monotherapy groups. No differences in antiviral activity were observed between individuals infected with the different genotypes. Alisporivir was safe and well tolerated but led to a reversible bilirubin increase in some of the patients treated with 1000 mg alisporivir daily (Flisiak 2009). A high genetic barrier to resistance of alisporivir and a broad HCV genotypic activity highlight the potential of drugs targeting host proteins.

In a Phase II clinical trial in treatment-naïve HCV genotype 1 patients, combination therapy with alisporivir, PEG-IFN α-2a plus ribavirin for 24-48 weeks resulted in SVR rates of 69-76% compared to 55% in the control group (Flisiak 2011). Furthermore, interesting first studies with interferon-free treatment regimens including alisporivir and ribavirin have been conducted. Despite these promising data, the development of alisporivir was put on hold due to rare cases of severe pancreatitis during combination therapy with alisporivir and PEG-IFN α-2a and only very recently further development of alisporivir was re-initiated.

Nitazoxanide

Nitazoxanide with its active metabolite tizoxanide is a thiazolide antiprotozoal approved for the treatment of *Giardia lamblia* and *Cryptosporidium parvum*

infections. *In vitro* studies have revealed an essential inhibitory impact on HCV and HBV replication by still unknown mechanisms.

Results of two Phase II studies evaluating 500 mg nitazoxanide twice daily for 12 weeks followed by nitazoxanide, PEG-IFN α-2a ± RBV for 36 weeks yielded conflicting results with SVR rates of 79% in treatment-naïve genotype 4 patients, but of only 44% in HCV genotype 1 patients (Rossignol 2009). However, additional studies revealed a less impressive gain in SVR rates with the addition of nitazoxanide to PEG-IFN α-2a plus RBV.

Silibinin

Silymarin, an extract of milk thistle (*Silybum marianum*) with antioxidant activity, has been empirically used to treat chronic hepatitis C and other liver diseases. Silibinin is one of the six major flavonolignans in silymarin. Surprisingly, recent reports demonstrated that silibinin inhibits HCV at various steps of its life cycle (Ahmed-Belkacem 2010, Wagoner 2010). In addition, intravenous silibinin in non-responders to prior IFN-based antiviral therapy led to a decline in HCV RNA between 0.55 to 3.02 $\log_{10}$ IU/ml after 7 days and a further decrease after an additional 7 days in combination with PEG-IFN α-2a/RBV in the range of 1.63 and 4.85 $\log_{10}$ IU/ml (Ferenci 2008). On a case report basis, it was shown that treatment with silibinin can prevent recurrent hepatitis C after liver transplantation in selected cases (Neumann 2010).

Miravirsen

MicroRNA-122 (miRNA-122) is a liver-specific microRNA that has been shown to be a critical host factor for HCV (Landford 2010). MiRNA-122 binds to the 5' NTR region of the HCV genome, which appears to be vital in the HCV replication process. Miravirsen is a modified antisense oligonucleotide that targets miRNA-122 and thereby prevents binding of miRNA-122 to the HCV genome. In a Phase IIa proof-of-principle study, weekly subcutaneous injections of miravirsen led to a reduction of HCV RNA serum concentration of up to 2.7 $\log_{10}$ IU/mL, indicating that an antisense oligonucleotide-based approach of miRNA-122 inhibition could be a promising modality for antiviral therapy (Janssen 2013). No relevant side effects were seen in this study.

Newer combination therapies

The approval of the HCV protease inhibitors telaprevir and boceprevir in 2011 constitutes a milestone in the treatment of chronic HCV genotype 1 infection. Nevertheless, telaprevir- or boceprevir-based triple therapy has certain limitations. In particular, treatment success still depends on the interferon sensitivity of individual patients because a slow decline of HCV viral load during triple therapy is associated with a high risk of antiviral resistance development. Consequently, viral breakthrough of drug resistant variants was observed in a significant number of patients with previous partial or null response to treatment with PEG-IFN α plus ribavirin, in patients with limited HCV viral load decline during lead-in treatment with PEG-IFN α plus ribavirin only, or in difficult-to-cure populations like blacks (who hae a higher percentile of…) or patients with advanced liver fibrosis. In

addition, triple therapy is not an option for patients with contraindications to PEG-IFN α or ribavirin, such as patients with decompensated liver cirrhosis or liver transplant failure.

To overcome these limitations, triple therapy regimens including more potent DAAs, or quadruple therapies based on the combination of two different DAAs plus PEG-IFN α / ribavirin may be applicable. Several triple therapy regimens including newer NS3/4A, NS5A, or NI NS5B inhibitors have been shown to be possibly superior over telaprevir or boceprevir-based triple therapy (Feld 2012, Gane 2013, Jacobson 2013, Lenz 2012, Rockstroh 2013, Zeuzem 2013). As described above, this applies in particular for combination therapies with the NI sofosbuvir plus PEG-IFN α / ribavirin, which results in high SVR rates in HCV genotype 1-6 patients after short treatment periods.

Furthermore, a high potential of the quadruple therapy approach has already been demonstrated in Phase I and II clinical trials, with outstanding SVR rates even in previous null responders to PEG-IFN α plus ribavirin alone. However, these clinical trials were performed in highly selected patients, and neither triple nor quadruple therapy approaches are an option for patients with contraindications to PEG-IFN α or ribavirin, such as patients with decompensated liver cirrhosis or liver transplant failure.

For that reason, numerous trials have been initiated to investigate the potential of interferon-free combination therapies with different DAA agents (+/- ribavirin) alone (Table 3). As is well established in the treatment of HIV infection, combining agents with different antiviral resistance profiles should result in a substantially decreased risk of viral breakthrough of resistant variants. Nucleoside analog NS5B inhibitors plus drugs targeting host factors such as the cyclophilin inhibitor alisporivir display a high genetic barrier to resistance development and may therefore be key agents for effective DAA combinations (Sarrazin 2010).

In contrast, NS3/4A and NS5A inhibitors display a low genetic barrier to resistance development, but in view of their high antiviral efficacy they appear to be promising combination partners for nucleoside analogs or cyclophilin inhibitors. Despite their low antiviral efficacy and low genetic barrier to resistance development, some NNI NS5B inhibitors have been shown to be valuable partners in all-oral regimens.

In the following section, current data on combination therapies of different DAAs, with or without PEG-IFN α and / or RBV will be summarized.

Table 3. Selected trials evaluating DAA combination therapies

DAAs	Additional agents	Phase
Nucleoside NS5B inhibitor		
Sofosbuvir	+ / - ribavirin, + / - PEG-IFN α plus RBV	III
Nucleoside NS5B inhibitor + NS3/4A protease inhibitor		
Mericitabine + danoprevir/ritonavir	+ / - ribavirin, + / - PEG-IFN α plus RBV	III
Sofosbuvir + simeprevir	+ / - ribavirin	II
Nucleoside NS5B inhibitor + NS5A inhibitor		
Sofosbuvir + daclatasvir	+ / - ribavirin	II
Sofosbuvir + ledispavir	+ / - ribavirin	III
Non-nucleoside NS5B inhibitor + NS3/4A protease inhibitor		
Faldaprevir + deleobuvir	+ ribavirin, + / - PEG-IFN α plus RBV	Halted
Tegobuvir + GS-9256	+ / - ribavirin, + / - PEG-IFN α plus RBV	II
ABT-333 + ABT-450/r	+ ribavirin + / - PEG-IFN α	III
ABT-072 + ABT-450/r	+ ribavirin	Stopped
VX-222 + telaprevir	+ / - ribavirin, + / - PEG-IFN α plus RBV	III
NS3/4A protease inhibitor + NS5A inhibitor		
Asunaprevir + daclatasvir	+ / - ribavirin, + / - PEG-IFN α plus RBV	III
MK-5171 + MK-8742	+ / - ribavirin	II
Multiple DAA agent combinations		
NS5A inhibitor (GS-5885) + NS3/4A inhibitor (GS-9451) + NNI (tegobuvir)	+ ribavirin	II
NS5A inhibitor (ABT-267) + NS3/4A inhibitor (ABT-450/r) + NNI (ABT-333)	+/- ribavirin	III
NS5A inhibitor (PPI-668) + NS3/4A inhibitor (faldaprevir) + NNI (deleobuvir)	+/- ribavirin	II
NS5A inhibitor (daclatasvir) + NS3/4A inhibitor-(asunaprevir) + NNI (BMS-791325)		III
Host targeting agents		
Alisporivir	+ / - ribavirin, + / - PEG-IFN α plus RBV	Halted
Miravirsen	+ PEG-IFN-α and ribavirin	II

PEG-IFN α-based quadruple therapy

Preliminary SVR data of a small but highly informative trial serves as proof-of-concept for the potential of a quadruple therapy approach for patients with previous null response to PEG-IFN α plus RBV (Lok 2012). In one Phase II study, 11 HCV genotype 1 patients with prior null response were treated with a combination of the NS5A inhibitor daclatasvir and the protease inhibitor asunaprevir together with PEG-IFN α plus ribavirin for 24 weeks. Quadruple therapy resulted in 100% SVR 12 weeks after treatment completion in both HCV genotype 1a- and 1b-infected

patients. Even though the number of patients included in this trial was very limited, the high SVR rate seems impressive compared to SVR rates of ~30% that were achieved with telaprevir-based triple therapy in prior null responders (Zeuzem 2011). The efficacy of this quadruple regimen in both HCV genotype 1a and 1b patients with prior null response has since been confirmed in a larger trial (Lok 2012).

A Phase II clinical trial assessed quadruple therapy with the non-nucleoside NS5B inhibitor tegobuvir in combination with the NS3/4A protease inhibitor GS-9256 + PEG-IFN α plus RBV for 28 days in treatment-naïve HCV genotype 1 patients (Zeuzem 2011). The primary endpoint of this study was rapid virologic response (RVR), which was achieved in 100% of patients. After 28 days of quadruple therapy, treatment with PEG-IFN α and ribavirin was continued, which led to complete early virologic reponse (cEVR) in 94% of patients.

Another Phase II clinical trial investigated a response-guided approach during quadruple therapy containing the non-nucleoside NS5B inhibitor VX-222 (100 mg or 400 mg) in combination with the NS3/4A inhibitor telaprevir + PEG-IFN α plus RBV in treatment-naïve HCV genotype 1 patients (Nelson 2011). Quadruple treatment was administered for 12 weeks. All treatment was stopped after 12 weeks in patients who were HCV RNA-negative at treatment weeks 2 and 8. Patients in whom HCV RNA was detectable at treatment week 2 or 8 received an additional 12 weeks of PEG-IFN α plus ribavirin alone. Up to 50% of patients met the criteria for the 12-week treatment. Of those, 82-93% achieved an SVR 12 weeks after treatment. In patients who were treated with an additional 12 weeks of PEG-IFN α plus RBV, the end-of-treatment response was 100%.

Recently, a head-to-head comparision of triple-therapy, quadruple therapy, and interferon-free therapy based on the NI mericitabine was reported (Matterhorn trial) (Feld 2012). In this study, HCV gentoype 1a and 1b patients with prior partial- or null-response were randomized to treatment with either mericitabine plus PEG-IFN α / RBV (triple therapy), mericitabine in combination with the NS3/4A protease inhibitor danoprevir/ritonavir plus PEG-IFN α / RBV (quadruple therapy), or mericitabine in combination with danoprevir/ritonavir and ribavirin (interferon-free). According to an incomplete preliminary analysis, SVR rates were 95%, 100%, and 44-72% in the triple-, quadruple, and interferon-free treatment arm, respectively. HCV gentoype 1a patients in particular experienced high rates of viral breakthrough on the interferon-free therapy. Importantly, viral breakthrough was associated with resistance to danoprevir but not to mericitabine. Collectively, the quadruple therapy approach appears to be highly promising in patients with limited sensitivity to IFN α, even in patients with HCV subtype 1a and prior null response to PEG-IFN α / RBV. However, the current development of potent triple therapy and IFN-free therapy regimens will probably make the quadruple approach unnecessary for the vast majority of patients.

All-oral therapy with or without ribavirin

Nucleoside analog NS5B inhibitors with or without ribavirin

The NI sofosbuvir displays a high antiviral efficacy and a high barrier to resistance development. In small Phase II clinical trials, sofosbuvir plus ribavirin administered

for 12 weeks led to impressive SVR rates of 84–100% in treatment-naïve HCV genotype 1, 2 and 3 patients, but to a significantly lower SVR rate (11% (1/9)) in treatment-experienced HCV genotype 1 patients (Gane 2013). The large Phase III Fission trial compared 12 weeks of sofosbuvir plus ribavirin with 24 weeks of PEG-IFN α and ribavirin in treatment-naïve HCV genotypes 2 and 3 patients. Both treatment arms resulted in overall SVR rates of 67%. However, in patients infected with HCV genotype 3, SVR rates were significantly lower (34 and 61% in patients with or without liver cirrhosis, respectively) than in HCV genotype 2 patients (91% and 98% in patients with or without liver cirrhosis, respectively) (Lawitz 2013). The Phase III Positron study yielded comparable SVR rates in IFN-intolerant, -ineligible or -unwilling HCV genotype 2 and 3 patients after treatment with sofosbuvir and ribavirin for 12 weeks (Jacobson 2013). Additional studies (Fusion and Valence) assessed longer treatment durations (16-24 weeks) of sofosbuvir plus ribavirin in treatment-naïve and treatment-experienced HCV genotype 2 and 3 patients. Generally, 12 weeks of sofosbuvir and ribavirin was sufficient to achieve SVR in the vast majority of HCV genotype 2 patients, at least in the absence of liver cirrhosis. However, in HCV genotype 3 patients with or without liver cirrhosis, SVR rates after 12 weeks were only 19 and 37%, respectively, but 61-87% and 63-60% after 16-24 weeks of therapy (Jacobson 2013, Zeuzem 2013). Overall, therapy with sofosbuvir plus ribavirin for 12 weeks seems a potent and promising regimen for HCV genotype 2 patients, but for other HCV genotypes, especially in patients with liver cirrhosis, alternative strategies such as longer treatment durations, or the addition of another DAA or of PEG-IFN α appear to be necessary.

Importantly, sofosbuvir plus ribavirin appears to be a potent option to prevent recurrent hepatitis C after liver transplantation as well - in one study, treatment with sofosbuvir plus ribavirin before liver transplantation led to HCV erradication in 64% of patients who were HCV RNA negative at the time of transplantation (Curry 2013).

Combinations of nucleoside analog NS5B inhibitors and NS3/4A protease inhibitors with or without ribavirin

A first interferon-free clinical trial (INFORM-1 study) evaluated the combination of the NI mericitabine with the NS3/4A inhibitor danoprevir. In this proof of concept study, patients received both compounds for up to 14 days (Gane 2010). HCV RNA declined up to 5.2 $\log_{10}$ IU/ml, viral breakthrough occurred in a single patient, and HCV RNA was undetectable at the end of dosing in up to 63% of patients. However, the fundamental question of whether an SVR can be achieved with combination therapies of different DAA compounds without PEG-IFN α plus RBV will have to be answered by subsequent trials.

In the meantime, the INFORM-SVR study provided SVR data for the combination of mericitabine and danoprevir/r (ritonavir-boosted) with or without ribavirin for 12-24 weeks (Gane 2012). SVR rates in HCV genotype 1a and 1b patients were 26% and 71% in treatment arms including ribavirin (n=83), respectively, but significantly lower in all the RBV-free treatment groups (n=86). Importantly, resistance-associated variants in patients with viral breakthrough were predominantly identified within NS3/4A while a resistance mutation in NS5B was

discovered only in one single patient (S282T). Recently, the large Matterhorn trial has shown in a head-to-head comparision that, in prior partial and null responders, IFN-free therapy containing mericitabine, danoprevir and ribavirin generally resulted in lower SVR rates than danoprevir-based triple therapy or quadruple therapy, especially in patients with HCV genotype 1a (Feld 2012).

The NI sofosbuvir has a higher antiviral activity than mericitabine. The Cosmos trial evaluated the IFN-free combination of sofosbuvir plus the NS3-4A protease inhibitor simeprevir with or without ribavirin for 12-24 weeks in treatment-naïve and treatment-experienced HCV genotype 1 patients (Jacobson 2013). Overall, this regimen led to SVR rates of approximately 90%, independent of previous treatment history, presence of liver cirrhosis, IL28B genotype or presence of the Q80K variant in the HCV NS3 protein at baseline. Furthermore, the addition of ribavirin did not appear to improve SVR rates in this study, and a treatment duration of 12 weeks did not result in lower SVR rates compared to 24 weeks of therapy. As both compounds, sofosbuvir and simeprevir, are approved and available in the US and are expected to be available in Europe by mid-2014, combination therapy theoretically is possible and highly effective although formally not approved.

Combinations of nucleoside analog NS5B inhibitors plus NS5A inhibitors with or without ribavirin

Impressive results have been shown for the combination of the NS5A inhibitor daclatasvir with the NI sofosbuvir, with or without ribavirin for 24 weeks (Sulkowski 2012). In approximately 90 treatment-naïve HCV genotype 1 patients, SVR rates were 100% and 86-88% in HCV genotype 2 and 3 patients, respectively. In this study, the addition of RBV did not improve virologic response rates but resulted in anemia in a significant proportion of patients. Furthermore, an unfavorable IL28B genotype apparently did not decrease the chance of cure in this study. Importantly, this regimen given for 24 weeks resulted in a 100% SVR rate in 41 HCV genotype 1 patients who had failed protease inhibitor-based triple therapy (Sulkowski 2013).

In addition, sofosbuvir was evaluated in combination with another NS5A inhibitor (ledipasvir, GS-5885) with or without ribavirin (Lonestar study) as well as in combination with the NNI GS-9669 plus ribavirin. In both treatment-naïve and treatment-experienced HCV genotype 1 patients, treatment with these combinations resulted in SVR rates >90%. Importantly, treatment duration of 8-12 weeks with sofosbuvir plus ledispavir appeared to be sufficient to cure most HCV genotype 1 patients, even in the presence of advanced liver fibrosis or in patients with previous failure of protease inhibitor based triple therapies (Gane 2013, Lawitz 2013). These high SVR rates recently have been confirmed in large Phase III studies (ION studies, Gilead press release December 2013) In the very first study of three strong DAAs (sofosbuvir, ledipasvir plus the non-nucleoside NS5B GS-9669 or the NS3 protease inhibitor GS-9451), even with only 6 weeks of treatment, high SVR rates (>90%) seems to be achievable in non-cirrhotic genotype 1-infected patients (NIH Synergy study) (Kohli 2013).

Combinations of NS3/4A protease inhibitors and non-nucleoside analog NS5B inhibitors with or without ribavirin

The SOUND-C1 trial assessed the combination of the NS3/4A inhibitor faldaprevir (BI201335), the NNI deleobuvir (BI207127) (400 or 600 mg q8h) and ribavirin for 4 weeks (Zeuzem 2011). Virologic response rates in patients treated with 600 mg q8h of deleobuvir were 82%, 100% and 100% at treatment days 15, 22, and 29, respectively (SVR rates for this regimen were not provided). Overall virologic response rates were lower in subtype 1a vs. subtype 1b patients. Importantly, the large SOUND-C2 trial provided SVR rates for faldaprevir in combination with deleobuvir with or without RBV, administered for 16-40 weeks in approximately 360 treatment-naïve HCV genotype 1 patients (Zeuzem 2013). Overall, SVR12 rates ranged from 56% to 68% in treatment arms including ribavirin, compared to 39% in a single RBV-free treatment arm. In all treatment arms, SVR rates were consistently higher in HCV genotype 1b than in 1a patients, or in patients with the "good response" IL28B genotype. Importantly, SOUND-C2 included a significant number of patients with liver cirrhosis. In these patients, SVR rates were promising, though lower than in patients without advanced liver disease (Soriano 2012). In SOUND-C2, the predominantly observed resistance-associated variants in patients with virologic failure were at position R155 in NS3 and at position P495 in NS5B, including double mutations in numerous patients, especially those with on-treatment failure (Cote-Martin 2012). SOUND-C3 is a Phase III study evaluating faldaprevir plus deleobuvir and ribavirin for 16 weeks in treatment-naïve HCV genotype 1 patients. SVR was achieved in 95% of HCV genotype 1b patients, but only in 17% of HCV genotype 1a patients (Dufour 2013). To improve SVR rates in HCV genotype 1a patients, a regimen containing faldaprevir, deleobuvir and the NS5A inhibitor PPI-668 is under development (see below).

The combination of tegobuvir (GS-9190), another NNI, together with GS-9256, a NS3/4A inhibitor, +/- ribavirin was assessed in a trial of treatment-naïve HCV genotype 1 patients (Zeuzem 2011). Again, tegobuvir + GS-9256 + ribavirin led to higher RVR rates compared to tegobuvir + GS-9256 alone (38% versus 7%, respectively), further proving the benefit of ribavirin in distinct interferon-free DAA combination therapies.

A comparable approach can be seen in the ZENITH trial, assessing the antiviral activity of the NS3/4A inhibitor telaprevir and the NNI VX-222 alone, in combination with RBV, or in combination with PEG-IFN α plus ribavirin (quadruple therapy) in treatment-naïve HCV genotype 1 patients. Again, quadruple therapy led to high SVR rates. However, in the all-oral treatment arms, high rates of viral breakthrough were observed (Jacobson 2012, Nelson 2011).

The above described data for all-oral combinations with NS3/4A inhibitors plus NNIs are contrasted by strongly encouraging results of the recent Co-Pilot study. In Co-Pilot, 12 weeks of combination therapy with the NS3/4A inhibitor ABT-450/r (ritonavir-boosted), the NNI ABT-333, plus RBV resulted in 93% and 47% SVR in treatment-naïve HCV genotype 1 patients and in previous null-responders to PEG-IFN α plus RBV alone, respectively (Poordad 2013). Furthermore, in the single arm Pilot study evaluating ABT-450 in combination with the NNI ABT-072 plus ribavirin, SVR was achieved in 91% (10/11) of treatment-naïve HCV genotype 1 patients, all of whom had the "good-response" IL28B genotype (Lawitz 2012,

Poordad 2013). Importantly, a single patient in Pilot who achieved SVR 24 weeks after treatment completion experienced a late viral relapse between weeks 24 and 36 post-treatment. Sequencing analyses in this patient identified a resistant mutant in NS5B, possibly indicating that interferon-free treatment regimens may require longer follow-up times than conventional PEG-IFN α and ribavirin therapy. Sequencing analyses in patients who experienced viral breakthrough during treatment or early relapse after therapy (in Pilot or Co-Pilot) identified resistance variants in both NS3 and NS5B. Interestingly, in NS3 substitutions were predominantly observed at position D168, whereas R155K was identified only in a single patient.

Combinations of NS3/4A inhibitors and NS5A inhibitors

The first clinical trial to report SVR data for an interferon-free regimen investigated the combination of the NS5A inhibitor daclatasvir with the NS3/4A protease inhibitor asunaprevir for 24 weeks in 10 HCV genotype 1 patients with prior null response to PEG-IFN α plus RBV (Lok 2012). 36% of patients achieved SVR. Importantly, viral breakthrough was observed only in patients infected with HCV genotype 1a, and in all of them resistance mutations against both agents were identified. Nevertheless, this trial constituted a proof-of-principle that SVR can be achieved by all-oral regimens, especially in patients infected with HCV subtype 1b. This has been confirmed in a larger follow-up study (Lok 2012), as well as by a 100% SVR rate in a small study evaluating the same agents (daclatasvir plus asunaprevir) in Japanese HCV genotype 1b infected previous null responder patients (Chayama 2012), and in a subsequent Japanese study in HCV genotype 1b patients with prior null response (n=21) or ineligibility to IFN (n=22), in whom SVR rates of 91% and 64% were seen, respectively (Suzuki 2012). For HCV gentoype 1a patients, promising data were presented for a more potent all-oral regimen including daclatasvir, asunaprevir plus the NNI BMS-791325 (see below).
The C-Worthy study evaluated the potent NS3-4A inhibitor MK-5171 in combination with the NS5A inhibitor MK-8742 with or without ribavirin for 12 weeks in treatment-naïve HCV genotype 1 patients. SVR rates in this study ranged from 89-100%. In HCV genotype 1b patients the addition of ribavirin did not improve SVR rates (Lawitz 2013).

Combinations of multiple DAAs with or without ribavirin

A first study evaluating a multiple DAA regimen, namely the combination of the NS5A inhibitor GS-5885, the NS3/4A inhibitor GS-9451, the NNI tegobuvir plus RBV was recently presented (Sulkowski 2012). In this so-called QUAD study, treatment-naïve HCV genotype 1 patients were treated for 12-24 weeks with this all-oral quadruple regimen. Patients were switched to a PEG-IFN α-based rescue therapy if HCV RNA did not fall below the limit of detection until treatment week 2. Approximately 70% of all patients were eligible for all-oral therapy in this study, and of those, at least 77% and 89% of HCV genotype 1a and 1b patients achieved SVR, respectively.

Another study evaluating an all-oral quadruple therapy included the NS3/4A protease inhibitor ABT-450/r, the NS5A inhibitor ABT-267, the NNI ABT-333, plus ribavirin. Strikingly, this regimen administered for 12 weeks led to SVR in

99% and 93% of treatment-naïve and prior null responders with HCV genotype 1 infection, respectively (Kowdley 2012). The AVIATOR study evaluated an all-oral quadruple therapy including the NS3-4A inhibitor ABT-450/r, the NS5A inhibitor ABT-267 and/or the NNI ABT-333, plus ribavirin for 8–24 weeks. In both treatment-naïve patients and prior null-responders with HCV genotype 1 infection, combination of three DAAs plus ribavirin led to comparable SVR rates after 12 or 24 weeks of treatment (higher than 90%), whereas slightly higher relapse rates were observed after 8 weeks of therapy (Kowdley 2013). Overall, the 12 week duration of this regimen appeared to be sufficient and showed a high tolerability. Most recently, the high efficacy of this multiple DAA combination regimen in non-cirrhotic genotype 1 infected patients has been confirmed in a large Phase III study (Sapphire; Abbvie press release November 2013). Results of the subsequent Pearl-I study suggest that dual therapy with the NS3-4A inhibitor ABT-450/r and the NS5A inhibitor ABT-267 might be sufficient to cure HCV gentoype 1b (but probably not 1a) patients, as even 90% of previous null-responders without liver cirrhosis achieved SVR12 (Lawitz 2013).

Encouraging results were also achieved with the all-oral combination of the NS3-4A inhibitor asunaprevir plus the NS5A inhibitor daclatasvir and the NNI BMS-791325 for 12 weeks. This regimen cured 92-98% of treatment-naïve HCV genotype 1a and 1b patients, including a small number of patients with liver cirrhosis (Everson 2013). Finally, the NS3-4A inhibitor faldaprevir, the NNI deleobuvir and the NS5A inhibitor PPI-668 are assessed in combination with or without ribavirin in an recently finihed trial in HCV gentoype 1a patients. The SVR rates of this regimen were less than desired and Boehringer has stopped the development of deleobuvir (BI press release, 17.01.2014).

Cyclophilin inhibitor-based therapies

The VITAL-1 Phase IIb clinical study evaluated the cyclophilin inhibitor alisporivir with or without RBV for 24 weeks in treatment-naïve HCV genotype 2 and 3, complemented by the addition of PEG-IFN α if RVR was not achieved (Pawlotsky 2012). SVR rates in the per protocol analysis were approximately 90% in patients treated with alisporivir plus RBV, and 70% in patients treated with alisporivir alone, but only 29-42% of all patients were eligible for treatment with all-oral therapy. Alisporivir resistance was rarely observed in patients with virologic failure.

Novel interferons

Over the years, attempts have been made to lessen the side effects and treatment discomfort of PEG-IFN α. However, interferons with longer half-life and sustained plasma concentrations (eg, albinterferon, a fusion protein of IFN α-2b with human albumin) have so far shown no overall benefit with respect to SVR rates (Zeuzem 2010). Still promising is the development of PEG-IFN lambda 1 (though the importance of IFN to treat HCV infection is generally declining). Like other type 3 interferons, IFN lambda 1, also called interleukin-29 (IL-29), binds to a different receptor than IFN α, but downstream the signaling pathways of IFN lambda and IFN α are largely comparable. The IFN lambda receptor is predominantly expressed in hepatocytes. Thus, interferon-related side effects may be less frequent during

PEG-IFN lambda treatment. A Phase I clinical trial evaluating pegylated interferon lambda with or without ribavirin was completed (Muir 2010). Interferon lambda was well-tolerated and the majority of patients achieved a greater than 2 $\log_{10}$ decline of HCV RNA by 4 weeks. According to an interim analysis of a subsequent Phase II clinical trial, PEG-IFN lambda (240 ug, 180 ug, or 120 ug once weekly) was compared to PEG-IFN α-2a. PEG-IFN lambda at doses of 240 or 180 ug resulted in approximately 10% higher RVR and approximately 20% higher cEVR rates, a lower frequency of flu-like symptoms, but with more frequent aminotransferase and bilirubin elevations than PEG-IFN α-2a (Zeuzem 2011). There is now a full Phase III development plan for IFN lambda with DAAs.

Conclusions

Telaprevir-, boceprevir- or simeprevir-based triple therapy of treatment-naïve and treatment-experienced HCV genotype 1 patients results in substantially increased SVR rates compared to PEG-INF α plus ribavirin alone. The approval of these agents represents a major breakthrough in the treatment of chronic hepatitis C. However, successful use of these drugs requires a precise classification of response patterns to previous treatment, careful on-treatment monitoring of HCV viral load and emergence of antiviral resistance as well as of additional side effects and numerous possible drug-drug interactions. Triple therapies including some next-generation NS3/4A protease inhibitors, NS5A inhibitors, and especially the NI NS5B inhibitor sofosbuvir may have even more favorable properties than the currently approved DAAs in terms of HCV genotype coverage and safety profiles, less pronounced drug-drug interactions and shorter treatment durations. However, the triple therapy approach has several limitations. First of all, concomitant IFN α plus ribavirin are necessary to avoid the development of antiviral resistance. Consequently, the efficacy of triple therapy was lower in prior null responders to PEG-IFN α and ribavirin, and triple therapy cannot be administered to patients with contraindications to PEG-IFN α or ribavirin. Recent data indicate that DAA combinations in quadruple treatment regimens will likely be a very potent option for difficult-to-cure patient populations such as HCV gentoype 1a patients with prior null response. Yet, impressive data have clearly shown that numerous patients will likely have the chance to be cured by these new all-oral IFN-free treatment regimens. In such interferon-free combination regimens, the inclusion of drugs with a high genetic barrier to resistance such as nucleoside NS5B inhibitors as well as of drugs with a high antiviral efficacy such as NS3/4A or NS5A inhibitors appears to be important. Intensive research will be necessary to determine which treatment regimen is optimal in terms of safety and efficacy in individual patients.

References

Ahmed-Belkacem A, Ahnou N, Barbotte L, et al. Silibinin and related compounds are direct inhibitors of hepatitis C virus RNA-dependent RNA polymerase. Gastroenterology 2010;138:1112-22.

Ali S, Leveque V, Le Pogam S, et al. Selected replicon variants with low-level in vitro resistance to the hepatitis C virus NS5B polymerase inhibitor PSI-6130 lack cross-resistance with R1479. Antimicrobial agents and chemotherapy 2008;52:4356-69.

Barnard RJ, Zeuzem S, Vierling J, Sulkowski M, Manns M, Long J. Analysis of resistance-associated amino acid variants in non-SVR patients enrolled in a retrospective long-term follow-up analysis of boceprevir phase 3 clinical trials. Hepatology 2011;54:164.

Bartenschlager R, Frese M, Pietschmann T. Novel insights into hepatitis C virus replication and persistence. Adv Virus Res 2004;63:71-180.

Beaulieu PL. Non-nucleoside inhibitors of the HCV NS5B polymerase: progress in the discovery and development of novel agents for the treatment of HCV infections. Safety and antiviral activity of MK-5172, a novel HCV NS3/4A protease inhibitor with potent activity against known resistance mutants, in genotype 1 and 3 HCV-infected patients. Hepatology 2010;52:706.

Chayama K, Takahashi S, Toyota J, et al. Dual therapy with the nonstructural protein 5A inhibitor, daclatasvir, and the nonstructural protein 3 protease inhibitor, asunaprevir, in hepatitis C virus genotype 1b-infected null responders. Hepatology 2012;55:742-8.

Cooper C, Lawitz E, Ghali P, al. e. Antiviral activity of the non-nucleoside polymerase inhibitor, VCH-759, in chronic hepatitis C patients: Results from a randomized,double-blind, placebo-controlled, ascending multiple dose study. Hepatology 2007;46:864.

Cote-Martin A, Berger K, Cartier M, et al. HCV NS3 and NS5B variants that emerged in patients with virologic breakthrough and relapse from the phase II SOUND-C2 trial investigating interferon-free BI 201335 and BI 207127 therapy. Hepatology 2012;56:576.

Curry MP, Forns X, Chung R, et al. Pretransplant Sofosbuvir and Ribavirin to Prevent Recurrence of HCV Infection After Liver Transplantation. Hepatology 2013;58:314.

Davis GL, Nelson DR, Terrault N, et al. A randomized, open-label study to evaluate the safety and pharmacokinetics of human hepatitis C immune globulin (Civacir) in liver transplant recipients. Liver Transpl 2005;11:941-9.

Dufour JF, Buti M, Soriano V, et al. Interferon-free treatment with faldaprevir, deleobuvir, and ribavirin in SOUND-C3: 95% SVR12 in HCV gentoype 1-b. Hepatology 2013;58:744.

Dvory-Sobol H, Wong KA, Ku KS, et al. Characterization of resistance to the protease inhibitor GS-9451 in hepatitis C virus-infected patients. Antimicrobial agents and chemotherapy 2012;56:5289-95.

Erhardt A, Deterding K, Benhamou Y, et al. Safety, pharmacokinetics and antiviral effect of BILB 1941, a novel hepatitis C virus RNA polymerase inhibitor, after 5 days oral treatment. Antiviral therapy 2009;14:23-32.

Everson G, Sims KD, Thuluvath PJ, et al. Phase 2b Study of the Interferon-Free and Ribavirin-Free Combination of Daclatasvir, Asunaprevir, and BMS-791325 for 12 Weeks in Treatment-Naive Patients With Chronic HCV Genotype 1 Infection. Hepatology 2013;58:LB-1.

Feld JJ, Jacobson I, Jensen DM, et al. Up to 100% SVR4 rates with ritonavir-boosted danoprevir (DNVr), mericitabine (MCB) and ribavirin (R) +/- peginterferon alfa-2a (P) in HCV gentoype 1-infected partial and null responders: results from the Matterhorn study. Hepatology 2012;56:231.

Ferenci P, Asselah T, Foster G, et al. Faldaprevir plus pegylated interferon alfa-2a and ribavirin in chronic HCV genotype 1 treatment naive patients: final results from STARTVerso1, a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled phase III trial. J Hepatol 2013;58:569-70.

Ferenci P, Scherzer TM, Kerschner H, et al. Silibinin is a potent antiviral agent in patients with chronic hepatitis C not responding to pegylated interferon/ribavirin therapy. Gastroenterology 2008;135:1561-7.

Flisiak R, Feinman SV, Jablkowski M, et al. The cyclophilin inhibitor Debio 025 combined with PEG IFN alpha 2a significantly reduces viral load in treatment-naive hepatitis C patients. Hepatology 2009;49:1460-8.
Flisiak R, Horban A, Gallay P, et al. The cyclophilin inhibitor Debio-025 shows potent anti-hepatitis C effect in patients coinfected with hepatitis C and human immunodeficiency virus. Hepatology 2008;47:817-26.
Flisiak R, Pawlotsky JM, Crabbe R, Callistru PI, Kryczka W, Häussinger D. Once daily alisporivir (Debio025) plus pegIFNalfa2a/ribavirin results in superior sustained virologic response (SVR) in chronic hepatitis C genotype 1 treatment naive patients. J Hepatol 2011;54:24.
Forns X, Lawitz E, Zeuzem S, et al. Simeprevir (TMC435) with pegylated interferon-a-2a/ribavirin for treatment of chronic HCV genotype 1 infection in patients who relapsed after previous interferon-based therapy: efficacy and safety in patient sub-populations in the PROMISE Phase III trial. Hepatology 2013;58:737.
Fridell RA, Wang C, Sun JH, et al. Genotypic and phenotypic analysis of variants resistant to hepatitis C virus nonstructural protein 5A replication complex inhibitor BMS-790052 in Humans: In Vitro and In Vivo Correlations. Hepatology 2011;54:1924-35.
Gane E, Pockros P, Zeuzem S, et al. Interferon-free treatment with a combination of mericitabine and danoprevir with or without ribavirin in treatment-naive HCV genotype 1-infected patients. J Hepatol 2012;56:555-6.
Gane E, Stedman C, Hyland RH, et al. Nucleotide polymerase inhibitor sofosbuvir plus ribavirin for hepatitis C virus. The New England journal of medicine 2013;368:33-44.
Gane EJ, Roberts SK, Stedman CA, et al. Oral combination therapy with a nucleoside polymerase inhibitor (RG7128) and danoprevir for chronic hepatitis C genotype 1 infection (INFORM-1): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, dose-escalation trial. Lancet 2010;376:1467-75.
Gane EJ, Stedman CA, Hyland RH, et al. Efficacy of Nucleotide Polymerase Inhibitor Sofosbuvir plus the NS5A Inhibitor Ledipasvir or the NS5B Non-nucleoside Inhibitor GS-9669 Against HCV Genotype 1 Infection. Gastroenterology 2013, in press.
Gao M, Nettles RE, Belema M, et al. Chemical genetics strategy identifies an HCV NS5A inhibitor with a potent clinical effect. Nature 2010;465:96-100.
Gaudieri S, Rauch A, Pfafferott K, et al. Hepatitis C virus drug resistance and immune-driven adaptations: relevance to new antiviral therapy. Hepatology 2009;49:1069-82.
Hezode C, Hirschfield GM, Ghesquiere W, et al. Daclatasvir, an NS5A Replication Complex Inhibitor, Combined With Peginterferon Alfa-2a and Ribavirin in Treatment-Naive HCV-Genotype 1 or 4 Patients: Phase 2b COMMAND-1 SVR12 Results. Hepatology 2012;56:553.
Jacobson I, Asselah T, Ferenci P, et al. A randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled phase III trial of faldaprevir in combination with pegylated interferon a-2a and ribavirin in treatment-experienced patients with chronic HCV gentoype 1 infection. Hepatology 2013;58:742.
Jacobson I, Dore GJ, Foster G, et al. Simeprevir (TMC435) with peginterferon/ribavirin for treatment of chronic HCV genotype 1 infection in treatment-naïve patients: efficacy in difficult-to-treat patient sub-populations in the QUEST-1 and 2 Phase III trials. Hepatology 2013;58:756.
Jacobson I, Ghalib R, Rodriguez-Torres M, et al. SVR results of a once-daily regimen of simeprevir (SMV, TMC435) plus sofosbuvir (SOF, GS-7977) with or without ribavirin in cirrhotic and non-cirrhotic HCV genotype 1 treatment-naïve and prior null responder patients: The COSMOS study. Hepatology 2013;58:LB-3.
Jacobson I, Sulkowski MS, Gane E, et al. VX-222, telaprevir and ribavirin in treatment-naive gentoype 1 chronic hepatitis C: results of the ZENITH study interferon-free regimen. Hepatology 2012;56:308.
Jacobson IM, Gordon SC, Kowdley KV, et al. Sofosbuvir for hepatitis C genotype 2 or 3 in patients without treatment options. The New England journal of medicine 2013;368:1867-77.
Jacobson IM, Pockros PJ, Lalezari JP, et al. Virologic response rates following 4 weeks of filibuvir in combination with pegylated interferon-alpha-2a and ribavrin in chronically infected HCV genotype1 patients. J Hepatol 2010;52:465.

Janssen HL, Reesink HW, Lawitz EJ, et al. Treatment of HCV Infection by Targeting MicroRNA. The New England journal of medicine 2013;368:1685-94.
Jensen D, Asselah T, Dieterich DT, et al. A pooled analysis of two randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled phase III trials (STARTVerso1 and 2) of faldaprevir plus pegylated interferon a-2a and ribavirin in treatment-naive patients with chronic hepatitis C genotype 1 infection background. Hepatology 2103;58:734.
Kim JL, Morgenstern KA, Griffith JP, et al. Hepatitis C virus NS3 RNA helicase domain with a bound oligonucleotide: the crystal structure provides insights into the mode of unwinding. Structure 1998;6:89-100.
Kim JL, Morgenstern KA, Lin C, et al. Crystal structure of the hepatitis C virus NS3 protease domain complexed with a synthetic NS4A cofactor peptide. Cell 1996;87:343-55.
Kneteman NM, Howe AY, Gao T, et al. HCV796: A selective nonstructural protein 5B polymerase inhibitor with potent anti-hepatitis C virus activity in vitro, in mice with chimeric human livers, and in humans infected with hepatitis C virus. Hepatology 2009;49:745-52.
Koch U, Narjes F. Allosteric inhibition of the hepatitis C virus NS5B RNA dependent RNA polymerase. Infect Disord Drug Targets 2006;6:31-41.
Kohli A, Sims Z, Marti M, et al. Combination Oral, Ribavirin Free, Antiviral Therapy to Optimize Treatment Outcomes for Hepatitis C Treatment Naïve Patients: Interim Results from the NIAID SYNERGY Trial (6 & 12 weeks therapy). Hepatology 2013;54:LB-8.
Kowdley KV, Lawitz E, Crespo I, et al. Sofosbuvir with pegylated interferon alfa-2a and ribavirin for treatment-naive patients with hepatitis C genotype-1 infection (ATOMIC): an open-label, randomised, multicentre phase 2 trial. Lancet 2013;381:2100-7.
Kowdley KV, Lawitz E, Poordad F, et al. Safety and efficacy of interferon-free regimens of ABT-450/r, ABT-267, ABT-333 +/- ribavirin in patients with chronic HCV GT1 infection: results from the AVIATOR study. J Hepatol 2013;58:2.
Kowdley KV, Lawitz E, Poordad F, et al. A 12-week interferon-free treatment regimen with ABT-450/r, ABT-267, ABT-333 and ribavrin achieves SVR12 rates (observed data) of 99% in treatmetn-naive patients and in 93% in prior null responders with HCV genotype 1 infection. Hepatology 2012;56:LB-1.
Lalezari J, Holland L, Glutzer E, et al. Rapid and Consistent Virologic Responses in a Phase 2 Trial of a New All-Oral Combination of Faldaprevir, Deleobuvir and PPI-668, with and without Ribavirin, in Patients with HCV Genotype-1a Infection. Hepatology 2013;58:LB-20.
Landford RE, Hildebrandt-Eriksen ES, Petri A, et al. Therapeutic silencing of microRNA-122 in primates with chronic hepatitis C virus infection. Science 2010;327:198-201.
Lange CM, Zeuzem S. Perspectives and challenges of interferon-free therapy for chronic hepatitis C. J Hepatol 2013;58:583-92.
Larrey D, Lohse AW, de Ledinghen V, et al. Rapid and strong antiviral activity of the non-nucleosidic NS5B polymerase inhibitor BI 207127 in combination with peginterferon alfa 2a and ribavirin. J Hepatol 2012;57:39-46.
Lawitz E, Hezode C, Varunok P, et al. Interferon- and Ribavirin-free Regimen of ABT-450/r + ABT-267 in HCV Genotype 1b-infected Treatment-naïve Patients and Prior Null Responders. Hepatology 2013;58:244.
Lawitz E, Lalezari JP, Hassanein T, et al. Sofosbuvir in combination with peginterferon alfa-2a and ribavirin for non-cirrhotic, treatment-naive patients with genotypes 1, 2, and 3 hepatitis C infection: a randomised, double-blind, phase 2 trial. The Lancet infectious diseases 2013, in press.
Lawitz E, Mangia A, Wyles D, et al. Sofosbuvir for previously untreated chronic hepatitis C infection. The New England Journal of Medicine 2013;368:1878-87.
Lawitz E, Poordad F, Brainard D, et al. Sofosbuvir in Combination With PegIFN and Ribavirin for 12 Weeks Provides High SVR Rates in HCV-Infected Genotype 2 or 3 Treatment-Experienced Patients with and without Compensated Cirrhosis: Results from the LONESTAR-2 Study Hepatology 2013;58:LB-4.
Lawitz E, Poordad F, Kowdley KV, et al. 12-week interferon-free regimen of ABT-450/R, ABT-072, and ribavirin was well tolerated and achieved sustained virologic response in 91% treatment-naive HCVIL28B-CC genotype-1-infected subjects. J Hepatol 2012;56:7.

Lawitz E, Poordad FF, Pang PS, et al. Sofosbuvir and ledipasvir fixed-dose combination with and without ribavirin in treatment-naive and previously treated patients with genotype 1 hepatitis C virus infection (LONESTAR): an open-label, randomised, phase 2 trial. Lancet 2013, in press.

Lawitz E, Vierling JM, Murillo A, et al. High Efficacy and Safety of the All-Oral Combination Regimen, MK-5172 / MK-8742 ± RBV for 12 Weeks in HCV Genotype 1 Infected Patients: The C-WORTHY Study. Hepatology 2013;58:244.

Lawitz EJ, Hill JM, Marbury T, et al. A Phase 1, randomized, placebo-controlled, three-day, ascending-dose study of GS-9451, an NS3/4A protease inhibitor, in genotype 1 hepatitis C patients. Antiviral Therapy 2013;18:311-9.

Lenz O, de Bruijne J, Vijgen L, et al. Efficacy of re-treatment with TMC435 as combination therapy in hepatitis C virus-infected patients following TMC435 monotherapy. Gastroenterology 2012;143:1176-8 e1-6.

Lenz O, Fevery B, Vigen L, et al. TMC435 in combination with peginterferon alpha-2a/ribavirin in treatment-naive patients infected with HCV genotype 1: virology analysis of the Pillar study. Hepatology 2011;54:985.

Lesburg CA, Cable MB, Ferrari E, Hong Z, Mannarino AF, Weber PC. Crystal structure of the RNA-dependent RNA polymerase from hepatitis C virus reveals a fully encircled active site. Nat Struct Biol 1999;6:937-43.

Lin C, Gates CA, Rao BG, et al. In vitro studies of cross-resistance mutations against two hepatitis C virus serine protease inhibitors, VX-950 and BILN 2061. J Biol Chem 2005;280:36784-91.

Lok AS, Gardiner DF, Hezode C, et al. Sustained virologic response in chronic HCV genotype (GT) 1-infected null responders with combination of daclatasvir (DC; NS5A inhibitor) and asunaprevir (ASV; NS3 inhibitor) with or without peginterferon alfa-2a/ribavirin (PEG/RBV). Hepatology 2012;56:230.

Lok AS, Gardiner DF, Lawitz E, et al. Preliminary study of two antiviral agents for hepatitis C genotype 1. The New England journal of medicine 2012;366:216-24.

Lorenz IC, Marcotrigiano J, Dentzer TG, Rice CM. Structure of the catalytic domain of the hepatitis C virus NS2-3 protease. Nature 2006;442:831-5.

Manns M, Marcellin P, Poordad F, et al. Simeprevir (TMC435) with peginterferon/ribavirin for treatment of chronich HCV gentoype 1 infection in treatment-naive patients: results from QUEST-2, a phase III trial. J Hepatol 2013;58:568.

Manns M, Reesink H, Berg T, et al. Rapid viral response of once-daily TMC435 plus pegylated interferon/ribavirin in hepatitis C genotype-1 patients: a randomized trial. Antiviral therapy 2011;16:1021-33.

Manns MP, Bourliere M, Benhamou Y, et al. Potency, safety, and pharmacokinetics of the NS3/4A protease inhibitor BI201335 in patients with chronic HCV genotype-1 infection. J Hepatol 2011;54:1114-22.

McCown MF, Rajyaguru S, Kular S, Cammack N, Najera I. GT-1a or GT-1b subtype-specific resistance profiles for hepatitis C virus inhibitors telaprevir and HCV-796. Antimicrobial agents and chemotherapy 2009;53:2129-32.

McPhee F, Hernandez D, Yu F, et al. Resistance analysis of hepatitis C virus genotype 1 prior treatment null responders receiving daclatasvir and asunaprevir. Hepatology 2013;58:902-11.

Meylan E, Curran J, Hofmann K, et al. Cardif is an adaptor protein in the RIG-I antiviral pathway and is targeted by hepatitis C virus. Nature 2005;437:1167-72.

Moradpour D, Penin F. Hepatitis C virus proteins: from structure to function. Current topics in microbiology and immunology 2013;369:113-42.

Moradpour D, Penin F, Rice CM. Replication of hepatitis C virus. Nat Rev Microbiol 2007;5:453-63.

Muir AJ, Shiffman ML, Zaman A, et al. Phase 1b study of pegylated interferon lambda 1 with or without ribavirin in patients with chronic genotype 1 hepatitis C virus infection. Hepatology 2010;52:822-32.

Nelson DR, Gane EJ, Jacobson IM, Di Bisceglie AM, Alves K, Koziel MJ. VX-222/Telaprevir in combination with peginterferon-alfa-2a and ribavirin in treatment-naive genotype 1 HCV patients treated for 12 weeks: Zenith study, SVR 12 interim analyses. Hepatology 2011;54:1442.

Nettles RE, Gao M, Bifano M, et al. Multiple ascending dose study of BMS-790052, an NS5A replication complex inhibitor, in patients infected with hepatitis C virus genotype 1. Hepatology 2011;54:1956-65.
Neumann UP, Biermer M, Eurich D, Neuhaus P, Berg T. Successful prevention of hepatitis C virus (HCV) liver graft reinfection by silibinin mono-therapy. J Hepatol 2010;52:951-2.
Pawlotsky JM, Sarin SK, Foster G, Peng CY, Rasenack J, Flisiak R. Alisporivir plus ribavirin achieves high rates of sustained HCV clearance (SVR24) as interferon (IFN)-free or IFN-add-on regimen in treatment-naive patients with HCV GT2 or GT3: Final results from VITAL-1 study. Hepatology 2012;56:309.
Pockros P, Jensen DM, Tsai N. First SVR data with the nucleoside analogue polymerase inhibitor mericitabine (RG7128) combined with peginterferon/ribavirin in treatment-naive HCV G1/4 patients: interim analysis of the JUMP-C trial. J Hepatol 2011;54:538.
Pol S, Ghalib RH, Rustgi VK, et al. Daclatasvir for previously untreated chronic hepatitis C genotype-1 infection: a randomised, parallel-group, double-blind, placebo-controlled, dose-finding, phase 2a trial. The Lancet infectious diseases 2012;12:671-7.
Poordad F, Lawitz E, Kowdley KV, et al. Exploratory study of oral combination antiviral therapy for hepatitis C. The New England journal of medicine 2013;368:45-53.
Reesink HW, Fanning GC, Farha KA, et al. Rapid HCV-RNA decline with once daily TMC435: a phase I study in healthy volunteers and hepatitis C patients. Gastroenterology 2010;138:913-21.
Reesink HW, Zeuzem S, Weegink CJ, et al. Rapid decline of viral RNA in hepatitis C patients treated with VX-950: a phase Ib, placebo-controlled, randomized study. Gastroenterology 2006;131:997-1002.
Rockstroh J, Nelson M, Soriano V, et al. STARTVerso4 phase III trial of faldaprevir plus pegylated interferon a-2a and ribavirin in patients with HIV and HCV gentoype 1 co-infection. Hepatology 2013;58:741.
Romano KP, Ali A, Aydin C, et al. The molecular basis of drug resistance against hepatitis C virus NS3/4A protease inhibitors. PLoS pathogens 2012;8:e1002832.
Rossignol JF, Elfert A, El-Gohary Y, Keeffe EB. Improved virologic response in chronic hepatitis C genotype 4 treated with nitazoxanide, peginterferon, and ribavirin. Gastroenterology 2009;136:856-62.
Sarrazin C, Kieffer TL, Bartels D, et al. Dynamic hepatitis C virus genotypic and phenotypic changes in patients treated with the protease inhibitor telaprevir. Gastroenterology 2007;132:1767-77.
Sarrazin C, Zeuzem S. Resistance to direct antiviral agents in patients with hepatitis C virus infection. Gastroenterology 2010;138:447-62.
Schiano TD, Charlton M, Younossi Z, et al. Monoclonal antibody HCV-AbXTL68 in patients undergoing liver transplantation for HCV: results of a phase 2 randomized study. Liver Transpl 2006;12:1381-9.
Sherman KE, Sulkowski M, Zoulim F, Alberti A. Follow-up of SVR durability and viral resistance in patients with chronic hepatitis C treatetd with telaprevir-based regimens: interim analysis of the extend study. Hepatology 2011;54:1471.
Shi ST, Polyak SJ, Tu H, Taylor DR, Gretch DR, Lai MM. Hepatitis C virus NS5A colocalizes with the core protein on lipid droplets and interacts with apolipoproteins. Virology 2002;292:198-210.
Soriano A, Gane E, Angus PW, et al. Efficacy and safety of the interferon (IFN)-free combination of BI 201335 + BI 207127 +/- ribavirin (RBV) in treatment-naive patients with HCV genotype 1 infection and compensated liver cirrhosis: results from the SOUND-C2 study. Hepatology 2012;56:234.
Sulkowski MS, Gardiner DF, Rodriguez-Torres M, et al. Sustained virological response with daclatasvir plus sofosbuvir ± ribavirin (RBV) in chronic HCV genotype (GT) 1-infected patients who previously failed telaprevir (TVR) or boceprevir (BOC). J Hepatol 2013;58:570.
Sulkowski MS, Gardiner DF, Rodriguez-Torres M, et al. High rate of sustained virologic response with the all-oral combination of daclatasvir (NS5A inhibitor) plus sofosbuvir (nucleotide NS5B inhibitor), with or without ribavirin, in treatment-naive patients chronically infected with HCV genotype 1, 2 or 3. Hepatology 2012;56:LB-2.

Sulkowski MS, Rodriguez-Torres M, Lawitz E, et al. Complete SVR4 rates in treatment-naïve HCV genotype 1a and 1b patients who achieved vRVR with an interferon-free all-oral regimen. Hepatology 2012;56:298.
Summa V, Ludmerer SW, McCauley JA, et al. MK-5172, a Selective Inhibitor of Hepatitis C Virus NS3/4a Protease with Broad Activity across Genotypes and Resistant Variants. Antimicrobial agents and chemotherapy 2012;56:4161-7.
Susser S, Vermehren J, Forestier N, et al. Analysis of long-term persistence of resistance mutations within the hepatitis C virus NS3 protease after treatment with telaprevir or boceprevir. J Clin Virol 2011;52:321-7.
Suzuki Y, Ikeda K, Suzuki F, et al. Dual Oral Therapy with Daclatasvir and Asunaprevir for Patients with HCV Genotype 1b Infection and Limited Treatment Options. J Hepatol 2012;58:655-62.
Svaroyskaia E, Svory-Sobol H, Gontcharova V, et al. Comprehensive resistance testing in patients who experienced relapse after treatment with sofosbuvir (GS-7977)-containing regimens in phase 2 studies. Hepatology 2012;56:551.
Tellinghuisen TL, Marcotrigiano J, Rice CM. Structure of the zinc-binding domain of an essential component of the hepatitis C virus replicase. Nature 2005;435:374-9.
Wagoner J, Negash A, Kane OJ, et al. Multiple effects of silymarin on the hepatitis C virus lifecycle. Hepatology 2010;51:1912-21.
Welsch C, Domingues FS, Susser S, et al. Molecular basis of telaprevir resistance due to V36 and T54 mutations in the NS3-4A protease of the hepatitis C virus. Genome Biol 2008;9:R16.
Wohnsland A, Hofmann WP, Sarrazin C. Viral determinants of resistance to treatment in patients with hepatitis C. Clin Microbiol Rev 2007;20:23-38.
Zeuzem S, Andreone P, Pol S, et al. Telaprevir for retreatment of HCV infection. The New England journal of medicine 2011;364:2417-28.
Zeuzem S, Arora S, Bacon B, Box T, Charlton M. Pegylated interferon-lambda shows superior viral response with improved safety and tolerability versus pegIFN-alfa-2a in hCV patients (G1/2/3/4): merge phase IIB trhough week 12. J Hepatol 2011;54:538.
Zeuzem S, Asselah T, Angus P, et al. Efficacy of the Protease Inhibitor BI 201335, Polymerase Inhibitor BI 207127, and Ribavirin in Patients With Chronic HCV Infection. Gastroenterology 2011;141:2047-55.
Zeuzem S, Berg T, Gane E, et al. Simeprevir Increases Rate of Sustained Virologic Response Among Treatment-Experienced Patients with HCV Genotype-1 Infection: a Phase IIb Trial. Gastroenterology 2013, in press.
Zeuzem S, Berg T, Moeller B, et al. Expert opinion on the treatment of patients with chronic hepatitis C. J Viral Hepat 2009;16:75-90.
Zeuzem S, Buggisch P, Agarwal K, et al. The protease inhibitor GS-9256 and non-nucleoside polymerase inhibitor tegobuvir alone, with RBV or peginterferon plus RBV in hepatitis C. Hepatology 2012;55:749-58.
Zeuzem S, Dusheiko GM, Salupere R, et al. Sofosbuvir + ribavirin for 12 or 24 weeks for patients with HCV genotype 2 or 3: the Valence trial. Hepatology 2013;58:733.
Zeuzem S, Soriano V, Asselah T, et al. Faldaprevir and deleobuvir for HCV genotype 1 infection. The New England journal of medicine 2013;369:630-9.
Zeuzem S, Sulkowski MS, Lawitz EJ, et al. Albinterferon Alfa-2b was not inferior to pegylated interferon-alpha in a randomized trial of patients with chronic hepatitis C virus genotype 1. Gastroenterology 2010;139:1257-66.

14. Management of Adverse Drug Reactions

Martin Schaefer and Stefan Mauss

Introduction

Good adherence is a key factor in the successful treatment of chronic hepatitis C infection. In 2014, interferon-free therapy will become available by prescription in some parts in the world as dual therapy with sofosbuvir and ribavirin is approved in Europe and the US (see Chapter 12). The recently studied interferon-free regimens have a substantially improved tolerability compared to interferon-based therapies (see Chapter 13). However, in 2014, for most patients interferon-based therapies will remain the standard of care. Almost all patients on treatment with interferon plus ribavirin-based therapy will experience adverse events that can significantly influence their adherence. Therefore, proactive clinical management is crucial in order to avoid suboptimal therapy and/or unnecessary treatment discontinuations. In this chapter we will first discuss adverse events associated with dual therapy with interferon plus ribavirin and then address the adverse events associated with triple therapy with a third direct antiviral (boceprevir, telaprevir, simeprevir, faldaprevir or sofosbuvir).

Interferon-based therapies

The most common adverse events in patients on treatment with pegylated interferon plus ribavirin are flu-like symptoms, myalgia, sleep disturbances, asthenia, gastrointestinal disorders and depressive episodes (Table 1).

For most adverse events, clinical trials with dose adjustment have not been carried out, and due to this, recommendations in this review are necessarily partially based on clinical experience.

Table 1. Common adverse events during therapy with peg-interferon α-2b or -2a plus ribavirin (McHutchinson 2009)

Common adverse events (≥25% incidence)	Peg-interferon α-2b + ribavirin (n=1019)	Peg-interferon α-2a + ribavirin (n=1035)
Fatigue	66%	63%
Headache	50%	42%
Nausea	43%	36%
Insomnia	39%	41%
Pyrexia	35%	23%
Anemia (<10 g/dl)	34%	34%
Myalgia	27%	23%
Neutropenia (<1000 cells/µl)	26%	32%
Depression	26%	21%
Irritability	25%	25%
Rash	22%	28%

Flu-like symptoms, fever, arthralgia and myalgia

Flu-like symptoms, fever, arthralgia and myalgia appear a few hours after the injection of pegylated interferon (PEG-IFN) and may last for up to three days. One common approach is to use paracetamol or other NSAIDs immediately before or after the injection of interferon. Flu-like symptoms usually diminish spontaneously over the first weeks of treatment (Figure 1).

Low platelets are a contraindication for the use of acetylsalicylic acid, diclofenac or ibuprofen because of the inhibition of platelet aggregation. High doses of paracetamol may result in liver toxicity. Doses exceeding 2 g/day of paracetamol are not recommended.

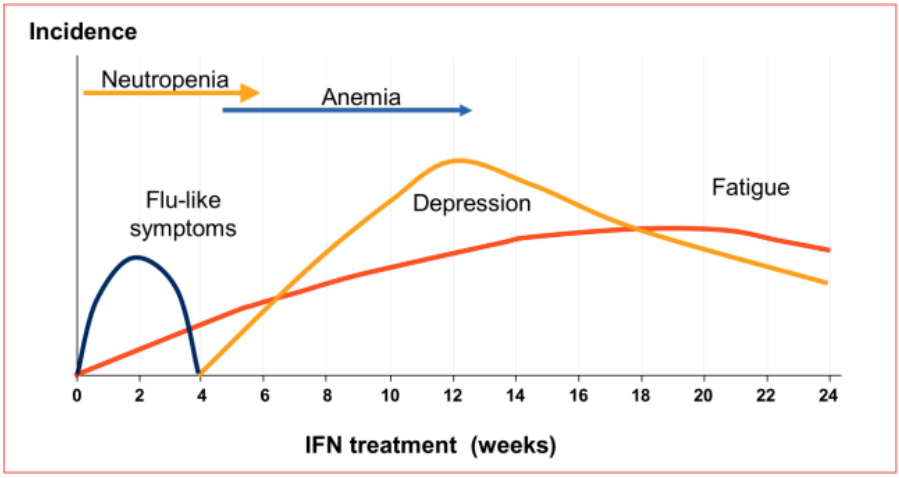


Figure 1. Time course of interferon-associated adverse events

Gastrointestinal disorders

Nausea can be mitigated by prokinetic agents such as metoclopramide or domperidone taken about 15 minutes before the intake of ribavirin, is the usual cause of nausea with dual therapy. This may also positively influence the frequently observed loss of appetite.

Dry mouth has been reported as a result of inhibition of saliva production, a frequent complication of ribavirin, which may continue for weeks after discontinuation of therapy.

Weight loss

The average weight loss in interferon-based controlled studies is around 6-10% for a treatment period of 48 weeks (Seyam 2004). This may be predominantly due to loss of appetite and reduction in calorie intake. Weight loss is rapidly reversible upon discontinuation of therapy.

Asthenia and fatigue

Asthenia and fatigue are frequent complaints of patients that usually increase slowly in intensity over the first couple weeks of therapy (Figure 1). In patients with marked anemia these symptoms can be improved by raising low hemoglobin via the use of erythropoietin, reduction of ribavirin or red blood cell transfusion (Pockros 2004). Asthenia is also reported by patients without marked anemia. In these patients hypothyroidism may be the explanation. Symptomatic treatment of asthenia and fatigue in patients without an underlying complication such as anemia, depression or hypothyroidism is difficult.

Chronic fatigue has been successfully treated in individual cases with antidepressants or tryptophan (Sammut 2002, Schaefer 2008). A first prospective randomised controlled trial showed superior effects of the 5-HT3 receptor antagonist ondansetron compared to placebo (Piche 2005). However, currently available data does not offer specific treatment recommendations.

Cough and dyspnea

Cough while on therapy is frequently reported and is most probably due to edema of the mucosa of the respiratory system. Therefore, advanced, not well-controlled asthma bronchiale may be a contraindication for hepatitis C therapy. Dyspnea is another frequent complaint with a more complex etiology involving mucosa swelling, anemia and asthenia.

Disorders of the thyroid gland

Hypothyroidism while on interferon-based therapy is reported with an incidence of 3-10% (Bini 2004, Tran 2005). Hyperthyroidism is less frequently observed with an incidence of 1-3% (Bini 2004, Tran 2005). The prevalence of thyroid dysfunction is higher in patients with the presence of liver/kidney microsomal antibodies (Manns 1999, Mauss 2012). Interferon-induced thyroiditis or the induction of thyroid

antibodies is reported as an underlying mechanism. Hypothyroidism is treated via substitution of thyroid hormone whereas clinically symptomatic hyperthyroidism may be treated with ß-blockers or carbimazole. Premature termination of interferon-based therapy is usually not necessary. About half of the cases of hypothyroidism are reversible upon discontinuation of interferon-based therapy, although some cases may need prolonged periods of thyroid hormone replacement therapy.

Psychiatric adverse events

Incidence and profile of psychiatric adverse events

The most commonly emerging IFN α-induced psychiatric adverse events are outlined in Table 2. However, data on the frequency of psychiatric side effects differs depending on the design of the trial.

Table 2. Incidence of most reported IFN α-induced psychiatric side effects (modified from Schaefer 2012)

Psychiatric side effects	Incidence
Fatigue	40-80%
Sleep disturbances	20-45%
Irritability	20-45%
Cognitive disturbances with impairments of concentration and memory	20-30%
Depressive episodes	20-70%
Mild	40-70%
Moderate	20-40%
Severe	5-20%
Delirium, psychosis, mania	1-3%
Suicidal thoughts	3-10%
Suicide attempts	0-0.02%

Most hepatological trials are only monitored for depression as a single symptom without using depression scales or diagnostic instruments, leading to an underreporting of mild to moderate depressive episodes. Most psychiatric trials used self-rating scales (e.g., SDS scale, BDI Scale) or monitor patients via expert rating scales (Hamilton Depression Scale [HAMDS] or Montgomery Asperg Depression Scale [MADRS]) to detect depressive syndromes and treatment-related mood changes. Thus, depressive mood changes were detected even if total scores did not fulfil DSM-IV criteria for a major depressive episode. Regarding these more sensitive psychiatric rating methods, over 50% of patients suffer from sleep disorders, chronic fatigue, irritability or cognitive disturbances (Schaefer 2012, Schaefer 2007, Schaefer 2002, Dieperink 2000, Renault 1987). Increased levels of anxiety may occur in up to 45% of patients, especially during the first 2-3 months of treatment. Mild depression with symptoms like reduced self-esteem, anhedonia, loss of interest, rumination, a diminished libido and spontaneous crying can be observed in 30-70% of the patients. 20-40% of treated patients develop moderate to severe depressive episodes (Schaefer 2012, Bonnaccorso 2002, Dieperink 2000, Renault 1987, Schaefer 2002, Malaguarnera 2002). Major depression has been reported in 15-55% (Schäfer 2007). Suicidal thoughts may occur in up to 10% of patients, while suicide attempts have been reported in single cases (Janssen 1994, Sockalingam

2010). Mania or psychosis has been reported as sporadically appearing side effects. Contrary to assumptions, patients with pre-existing psychiatric disturbances do not appear to have a greater risk for development of depression or attempting suicide (Schaefer 2012, Schaefer 2007, Schaefer 2003, Pariante 2002). However, patients with intravenous drug use not stabilized in a substitution treatment program (e.g., methadone) seem more likely to discontinue treatment in the first three months compared to controls (Schaefer 2003, Mauss 2004, Schaefer 2007).

Antidepressants frequently used in trials are selective serotonin re-uptake inhibitors (SSRIs) such as citalopram, escitalopram, paroxetine or sertraline. The introduction of SSRIs and other current antidepressants has markedly improved the adverse event profile of antidepressants. Depending on the major symptoms, current sedating or activating antidepressants, especially SSRIs, are treatment of choice for interferon-induced depressive mood disorders (Table 2). In patients with predominantly agitation and aggression, other strategies, eg, the newer antipsychotics, may be added.

The efficacy of antidepressants for the treatment of interferon α-induced depression has been shown in several open uncontrolled cohorts (Farah 2002, Gleason 2002, Kraus 2001, Schramm 2000, Hauser 2002, Gleason 2005). In the only prospective randomized controlled trial so far, an improvement of depressive symptoms after treatment of IFN-associated depression was shown with citalopram compared to placebo (Kraus 2008). In particular because of the favorable adverse event profile, SSRIs seem to be most appropriate for treatment of IFN α-associated depressive symptoms. However, antidepressants with different receptor profiles (ie, mirtazapine) and classic antidepressants (ie, nortriptyline) are also effective (Kraus 2001, Valentine 1995). Nevertheless, tricyclic antidepressants should be used as second choice because of pharmacological interactions, anticholinergic side effects, a higher risk for development of delirium, and liver or myocardial toxicity. To reduce early occurring adverse events of SSRIs (headache, nausea, agitation), treatment with antidepressants should be started at a low dose with subsequent dose increase depending on the effect and tolerability. In general, a therapeutically relevant antidepressive effect cannot be expected before day 8-14 of treatment. In case of non-response, the dose can be escalated. Treatment adherence should be assessed by monitoring serum levels before patients are switched to a different antidepressant.

Benzodiazepines can be given for a short period in cases of severe sleep disturbances, anxiety, agitation, irritability or severe depression. However, benzodiazepines should be avoided in patients with a history of IV drug or alcohol over-use because of their potential to induce addiction.

In the case of psychotic or manic symptoms, antipsychotics (eg, risperidone, olanzapine) can be used at low doses together with benzodiazepines, but patients should be monitored carefully by a psychiatrist. One important risk factor for the development of psychotic symptoms is a history of drug use.

Although history of major depression or suicide attempts is considered a contraindication for interferon-based therapy, treatment of patients with pre-existing psychiatric disorders can be initiated in close collaboration with an experienced psychiatrist in a well-controlled setting (Schaefer 2004, Schaefer 2007).

Preemptive therapy with antidepressants

One double-blind randomised study with patients with malignant melanoma demonstrated that 14 days of pre-treatment with 20 mg paroxetine per day reduced the incidence of depression during interferon therapy significantly (Musselmann 2001). Pre-treatment with paroxetine also had a positive effect on the development of fears, cognitive impairments and pain during interferon treatment, but not on symptoms such as fatigue, sleep disturbances, anhedonia and irritability (Capuron 2002). A recent prospective controlled trial with HCV-infected patients demonstrated that pre-treatment with citalopram significantly reduced depression during the first 6 months of antiviral therapy in patients with psychiatric illness compared to controls (Schaefer 2005). Furthermore, prophylactic treatment with SSRIs was shown to reduce the severity of depressive symptoms in patients who had suffered from severe depression during previous treatment of hepatitis C with interferon α (Kraus 2005). A first randomized controlled trial confirmed a protective effect of preemptive initiation of treatment with antidepressants before starting interferon-based therapy in cases of elevated depression scores (Raison 2007). Two recently published trials using escitalopram for antidepressant pre-treatment found a significant reduction of depression during antiviral treatment with IFN α plus ribavirin. In the largest trial so far, the overall incidence of depression, major depression and severe depression was significantly lower in patients who recieved a preemptive antidepressant therapy (Schaefer 2012). A second trial also showed less depressive symptoms in patients with escitalopram pre-treatment (De Knegt 2011). However, three other trials did not show significant effects on reduction of depressive symptoms or overall incidence of major depression, although these trials were either small in size or had short observation times (Morasco 2007, Morasco 2010, Diez-Quevedo 2010).

In summary, current data support the view that all patients with pre-existing depressive symptoms should receive a prophylactic treatment with antidepressants. However, in patients without psychiatric risk factors, antidepressants can be given before antiviral plus interferon-based therapy on case-by-case basis.

Sleep disturbances

Patients who have difficulties falling asleep can be treated with zopiclone or trimipramine. Zolpidem may be used for patients with interrupted or shortened sleep patterns. Although the risk of addiction is markedly reduced compared with other benzodiazepines, only small amounts of zoplicone or zolpidem should be prescribed at a time and therapy should be limited to the period of interferon-based therapy. All sedatives in particular when taken late at night or in higher dose can impair the awareness and ability to concentrate the next morning, which may affect the ability to drive or work. Moreover, drug-drug-interactions with the new antiviral drugs have to be taken into account. As sleeping disorders can be an early symptom of depression, it is also important to assess the possible presence of other depressive symptoms when considering the use of sleeping aids.

Hematological and immunologic effects

Interferon-based therapy is accompanied by a marked drop in white blood cells in general, neutrophils and absolute, although not relative, CD4+ cell count. This

change of the cellular immune system does not result in an increased number of serious infections even in HIV-coinfected patients (Fried 2002, Manns 2001, Torriani 2004). In general, the incidence of serious infections is low (<5%) in patients on interferon-based therapy.

G-CSF increases neutrophils in patients treated with interferon-based therapies. However G-CSF has not been proven to have a clinical benefit via clinical trials and its use is off-label.

Hemolytic anemia induced by ribavirin is further aggravated by the myelosuppressive effect of interferon inhibiting compensatory reticulocytosis (De Franceschi 2000). As a consequence, anemia (<10 g/dl) is reported in up to 20% of patients (Hadziyannis 2004). In severe cases of anemia dose reduction of ribavirin is required. In rare cases red blood cell transfusion may be necessary. Erythropoietin can be successfully used to correct the ribavirin-induced anemia at least partially and to avoid ribavirin dose reduction or red blood cell transfusions. In addition erythropoietin use was associated with an improved quality of life. However, prospective controlled trials have not shown a positive effect on the efficacy of hepatits C therapy in patients who take erythropoietin (Afdahl 2004, Pockros 2004, Shiffman 2007). At present, erythropoietin is not approved for correction of ribavirin-induced anemia in hepatitis C therapy and reimbursed only in a small number of countries.

Mild to moderate thrombocytopenia is frequently seen in patients with advanced liver fibrosis and may complicate interferon-based therapy. Reduction of interferon dosing may be indicated to reverse severe thrombocytopenia. In studies eltrombopag has been used successfully to increase platelet count in patients with hepatitis C associated thrombocytopenia (McHutchison 2007). In recent trials eltrombopag increased efficacy of hepatitis C treatment in cirrhotic patients, although the occurrence of portal vein thrombosis and thromboembolism was observed in about 5% of patients, which urges caution in widespread use (Afdhal 2011).

Skin disorders and hair loss

Some skin disorders such as lichen ruber planus, necrotising vasculitis or porphyrea cutanea tarda are associated with hepatitis C infection (see Chapter 15). The effects of hepatitis C therapy are often not well-studied and based only on information gathered through cohorts (Berk 2007).

Interferon and ribavirin therapy may have an effect on the skin itself including dry skin, itching, eczema and new or exacerbated psoriasis. Ointments with rehydrating components, urea or steroids can be used depending on the nature of the skin disorder. In severe cases a dermatologist should be involved. In particular, eczema and psoriasis may last substantially longer than the treatment period with interferon-based therapy.

Local skin reactions to the injection of pegylated interferon are common and usually present as red indurations lasting days to weeks. Repeated injections at the same site may cause ulcers and should be avoided. Hypersensitivity reactions to pegylated interferons are reported anecdotally.

Hair loss is frequent, usually appearing after the first months of therapy and continuing for some weeks after the cessation of therapy. Alopecia is very rare and

hair loss is usually fully reversible, although the structure of the hair may be different after therapy.

Adverse events associated with direct acting antiviral agents (DAAs)

Boceprevir and telaprevir

Triple combination therapy of pegylated-interferon, ribavirin plus one of the first generation HCV protease inhibitors telaprevir or boceprevir is suited for genotype 1 patients. This treatment provides better efficacy, while also offering new challenges for adherence and management of adverse events. In general all adverse events caused by interferon plus ribavirin remain, some may be accentuated and/or new adverse events may occur (Table 3).

Table 3. Adverse event profile associated with telaprevir (Jacobson 2011) and boceprevir (Poordad 2011) in therapy-naive patients in clinical studies

Telaprevir (ADVANCE study)	Telaprevir + Peg-interferon α-2a + ribavirin	Peg-interferon α-2a + ribavirin
Serious adverse event	11%	9%
Discontinuation due to adverse event	7%	4%
Anemia (<10g/dl)	45%	16%
Rash	37%	24%
Itching	50%	36%
Anal discomfort/pruritis	17%	4%

Boceprevir (SPRINT-2 study)	Telaprevir + Peg-interferon α-2b + ribavirin	Peg-interferon α-2b + ribavirin
Serious adverse event	11%	9%
Discontinuation due to adverse event	12%	16%
Anemia (<10 g/dl)	49%	29%
Dysgeusia	37%	18%

In addition, boceprevir and telaprevir are simultaneous inducers and inhibitors of multiple enzymes of the cytochrome P450 system. For this reason, drug-drug interactions are not easy to predict and involve frequently used drugs such as sedatives, antidepressants, antibiotics, immunosuppressants, oral corticosteroids, statins and calcium channel blockers. As this is an evolving area, for updated information, the website www.hep-druginteractions.org should be checked regularly.

Boceprevir is to be taken three times a day with food. Telaprevir is to be taken with a fat-containing meal two or three times a day. Pill burden is high with 12 pills for boceprevir and 6 for telaprevir. Dosing and taking the medication not fasting are crucial for efficacy. Boceprevir or telaprevir doses should never be reduced in case of toxicities, but rather discontinued or kept at the standard dose. Reducing the dose

of these HCV protease inhibitors will result in treatment failure due to lower drug exposure.

Frequent adverse events seen with telaprevir are itching and rash, with the first occurring in the majority of patients (Jacobson 2011, McHutchinson 2010). Itching can be orally treated with antihistamines, eg, cetirizine, but efficacy seems limited. Rash is usually mild to moderate while serious skin reactions (eg, DRESS syndrome, toxic epidermolysis) seem to be rare. Discontinuation is rarely necessary. Use of corticosteroid-based ointments, eg, prednicarbate 0.4% together with rehydrating and/or urea-containing creams is the treatment of choice for rash. For a serious case of new or reactivated psoriasis, consultation with an experienced dermatologist is advisable.

Anal symptoms ranging from discomfort to pain and bleeding are also common. Depending on the severity, local therapy with a zinc paste or corticosteroid ointments are used. Anal fissures can be treated with nitroglycerine ointment or diltiazem hydrochloride 2% ointment.

A more frequent and more pronounced anemia than what is seen with interferon plus ribavirin may require early dose adjustment of ribavirin or red blood cell transfusion. Importantly, early dose reduction of ribavirin in patients with anemia does not seem to reduce efficacy (pooled analysis of the ADVANCE and ILLUMINATE study, Janssen data on file). The use of erythropoietin for mitigation of anemia is not approved, but can be tried where reimbursement is possible.

Nausea and diarrhea are frequently seen in patients on telaprevir and may require symptomatic therapy (Hézode 2009, McHutchison 2009, McHutchison 2010, Marcellin 2010).

With boceprevir, anemia is the most important adverse event requiring dose adjustment of ribavirin or red blood cell transfusion in a considerable number of patients (Bacon 2011, Poordad 2011). As with telaprevir early ribavirin dose reduction in patients with a considerable decline in hemoglobin is possible without hurting efficacy. The use of erythropoietin does not seem to result in better antiviral efficacy versus a ribavirin dose reduction (Sulkowski 2013).

Dysgeusia is another frequent complaint that resolves upon discontinuation (Bacon 2011, Poordad 2011).

In a French cohort study including patients with compensated liver cirrhosis treated with telaprevir or boceprevir, an unexpected proportion of serious adverse events (in up to 50% of the patients) was observed including sepsis, hepatic decompensation and death (Hézode 2013). Preliminary data from other cohort studies presented at recent conferences suggest better safety outcomes in cirrhotic patients possibly due to a more cautious use of triple therapy.

Another unexpected adverse event seen in patients on triple therapy with telaprevir and bocepravir is clinically significant renal impairment (Mauss 2013, Karino 2013). The decline in renal function was seen mostly in patients with preexisting risk factors for renal insufficiency, associated with a more pronounced decline in hemoglobin and was reversible in most cases (Mauss 2013).

Simeprevir and faldaprevir

The approval of simeprevir and faldaprevir for combination with interferon and ribavirin is expected in 2014 (see Chapters 12 and 13). Both drugs are second generation HCV protease inhibitors administered as one pill with once daily dosing and no specific food requirements. This is a marked simplification. In addition, interactions with the cytochrome P450 system are lesser resulting in a smaller number of relevant drug-drug interactions (for details see www.hep-druginteractions.org). These drugs do not have an additive effect on the bone marrow. In particular, there was no increase in anemia compared to dual therapy with interferon and ribavirin (Fried 2013, Sulkowski 2013, Sulkowski 2013, Zeuzem 2013). However, skin toxicity remains an issue. Faldaprevir has shown considerable phototoxicity as a very common feature which was successfully managed with preemptive use of sunblocker in all patients, and patient education (no sunbathing, long-sleeved shirts, long trousers, hat, no tanning) (Sulkowski 2013, Sulkowski 2013). Other adverse events which are at least partially attributable to faldaprevir and are increased compared to dual therapy are rash (20%), jaundice due to inhibition of UDP-glucuronyltransferase (12%) and nausea (40%). The rash management is the same as for telaprevir. Jaundice has to be differentiated in an inhibition of the UDP-glucuronyltransferase which is charaterised by an exclusive increase in unconjugated bilirubin which is clinically innocuous and an increase of bilirubin, an element of liver toxicity. In trials simeprevir also showed photosensitivity although in a much smaller proportion of patients (3-4%). Other adverse events which were more frequently seen in combination with simeprevir are rash (25%), itching (20%) and jaundice due to inhibition of the UDP-glucuronyltransferase (Fried 2013, Zeuzem 2013). Management of these adverse events is as outlined above for telaprevir or faldaprevir.

Sofosbuvir

The main problem in assessing the adverse event profile of sofosbuvir is the almost complete lack of controlled trials. As PEG-IFN + ribavirin and ribavirin as monotherapy do cause adverse events and laboratory abnormalities, a comparator group is essential to show an increase in the proportion due to the addition of sofosbuvir. At present mostly historic controls are used to draw conclusions. Having said this, sofosbuvir has not shown a specific adverse event pattern if added to PEG-IFN and ribavirin (Lawitz 2013). However, most of these trials were carried out in rather healthy patients with no substantial co-morbidities or polypharmacy. Studies with sofosbuvir and ribavirin have no ribavirin monotherapy arm as comparator and meaningful historic controls are not available making it therefore difficult to draw conclusions on eventual adverse events specific for sofosbuvir (Jacobson 2013). However adverse events while on treatment with sofosbuvir and ribavirin are rather infrequent and usually not serious in nature (Jacobson 2013, Younossi 2013).

Sofosbuvir has no interaction with the cytochrome P450 system and is excreted mainly via the kidney as active metabolite. Potential interactions may involve the P-glycoprotein as sofosbuvir is a substrate of this enzyme.

Adherence and interferon-based therapies

Adherence data from retrospective analyses suggest that at least 80% of the cumulative doses of ribavirin and interferon should be taken by patients as a prerequisite for treatment success. Cumulative doses of less than 80% are associated with a steep drop in sustained virologic response (Camma 2005). Another surrogate of adherence is the premature treatment discontinuation rate, which usually ranges from 10–15% with pegylated interferon plus ribavirin (Fried 2002, Manns 2001).

The added mandatory intake of food as a complication of telaprevir and boceprevir has heightened the adherence concerns. In addition, twice-daily or three-times-daily required intake of the first generation HCV protease inhibitors is a challenge.

Despite these increased complications, discontinuation rates in the triple therapy arms were only slightly higher in the registration trials, leading to the approval of boceprevir and telaprevir, indicating a better management of drug-related toxicities (Bacon 2011, Jacobson 2011, McHutchinson 2010, Poordad 2011).

The second generation of direct acting antivirals, ie, faldaprevir, simeprevir and sofosbuvir, do have profoundly improved profiles concerning tolerability and adminstration.

Conclusion

In summary, the toxicity of interferon-based therapy plus ribavirin is considerable and requires active management and profound knowledge, particularly regarding the management of psychiatric adverse events.

The first generation of HCV protease and polymerase inhibitors do improve the efficacy of therapy, in particular in HCV genotype 1 patients, but at the cost of increased toxicities while on therapy. Early assessment and robust management of adverse events may help prevent premature treatment discontinuations and improve the efficacy of hepatitis C therapy.

Second generation protease inhibitors improve the adverse event profile, are easier to take and have less drug-drug interactions. At present the first approved polymerase inhibitor, sofosbuvir, seems to have an advantageous adverse event profile when added to interferon-based therapy and has very limited drug-drug interactions. Dual therapy with sofosbuvir and ribavirin has a clearly better tolerability compared to interferon-based triple therapy, but is limited in efficacy in some populations.

References

Afdhal NH, Dieterich DT, Pockros PJ, et al. Epoetin alfa maintains ribavirin dose in HCV-infected patients: a prospective, double-blind, randomized controlled study. Gastroenterology 2004;126:1302-11. (Abstract)

Afdhal NH, Dusheiko G, Giannini EG, et al. Final Results of ENABLE 1, a Phase 3, Multicenter Study of Eltrombopag as an Adjunct for Antiviral Treatment of Hepatitis C Virus-Related Chronic Liver Disease Associated With Thrombocytopenia. Hepatology 2011; 54:1427-8.

Bacon BR, Gordon SC, Lawitz E, et al. Boceprevir for previously treated chronic HCV genotype 1 infection. N Engl J Med 2011;364:1207-17. (Abstract)

Berk DR, Mallory SB, Keeffe EB, Ahmed A. Dermatologic disorders associated with chronic hepatitis C: effect of interferon therapy. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2007;5:142-51. (Abstract)

Bini EJ, Mehandru S. Incidence of thyroid dysfunction during interferon alfa-2b and ribavirin therapy in men with chronic hepatitis C: a prospective cohort study. Arch Intern Med 2004; 164:2371-76. (Abstract)

Bonaccorso S, Marino V, Puzella, et al. Increased depressive ratings in patients with hepatitis C receiving interferon-alpha-based immunotherapy are related to interferon-alpha-induced changes in the serotonergic system. J Clin Psychopharmacol 2002; 22:86-90. (Abstract)

Cammà C, Licata A, Cabibbo G, Latteri F, Craxì A. Treatment of hepatitis C: critical appraisal of the evidence. Expert Opin Pharmacother 2005;6:399-408. (Abstract)

Capuron L, Ravaud A, Neveu PJ, Miller AH, Maes M, Dantzer R. Association between decreased serum tryptophan concentrations and depressive symptoms in cancer patients undergoing cytokine therapy. Mol Psychiatry 2002;7:468-473. (Abstract)

De Franceschi L, Fattovich G, Turrini F, et al. Hemolytic anemia induced by ribavirin therapy in patients with chronic hepatitis C virus infection: role of membrane oxidative damage. Hepatology 2000; 31:997-1004. (Abstract)

De Knegt RJ, Bezemer G, Van Gool AR et al. Randomised clinical trial: escitalopram for the prevention of psychiatric adverse events during treatment with peginterferon-alfa-2a and ribavirin for chronic hepatitis C. Aliment Pharmacol Ther. 2011;34:1306-17.

Dieperink E, Willenbring M, Ho SB. Neuropsychiatric symptoms associated with hepatitis C and interferon alpha: A review. Am J Psychiatry 2000;157:867-76. (Abstract)

Diez-Quevedo C, Masnou H, Planas R, Castellvi P, Gimenez D, Morillas RM, et al. Prophylactic treatment with escitalopram of pegylated interferon alfa-2a-induced depression in hepatitis C: a 12-week, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. J Clin Psychiatry 2011;72:522-8. (Abstract)

Farah A. Interferon-induced depression treated with citalopram. J Clin Psychiatry 2002; 63:166-7. (Abstract)

Fried M, Shiffman M, Reddy R, et al. Peginterferon alfa-2a plus ribavirin for chronic hepatitis C virus infection. N Engl J Med 2002;347:975-82. (Abstract)

Fried MW, Buti M, Dore GJ, et al. Once-daily simeprevir (TMC435) with pegylated interferon and ribavirin in treatment-naïve genotype 1 hepatitis C: The randomized PILLAR study. Hepatology. 2013, 58(6):1918-29

Gleason OC, Yates WR, Isbell MD, Philipsen MA. An open-label trial of citalopram for major depression in patients with hepatitis C. J Clin Psychiatry 2002;63:194-8. (Abstract)

Gleason OC, Yates WR, Philipsen MA. Major depressive disorder in hepatitis C: an open-label trial of escitalopram. Prim Care Companion J Clin Psychiatry 2005;7:225-30. (Abstract)

Hadziyannis SJ, Sette H Jr, Morgan TR, et al. Peginterferon-alpha2a and ribavirin in combination therapy in chronic hepatitis C: a randomized study of treatment duration and ribavirin dose. Ann Intern Med 2004;140:346-55. (Abstract)

Hauser P, Khosla J, Aurora H, et al. A prospective study of the incidence and open-label treatment of interferon-induced major depressive disorder in patients with hepatitis C. Mol Psychiatry 2002;7:942-7. (Abstract)

Hézode C, Fontaine H, Dorival C, et al. Triple therapy in treatment-experienced patients with HCV-cirrhosis in a multicentre cohort of the French Early Access Programme (ANRS CO20-CUPIC) - NCT01514890. J Hepatol 2013;59:434-41.

Jacobson IM, McHutchison JG, Dusheiko G, et al. Telaprevir for previously untreated chronic hepatitis C virus infection. N Engl J Med 2011;364:2405-16.

Jacobson IM, Gordon SC, Kowdley KV, et al. Sofosbuvir for hepatitis C genotype 2 or 3 in patients without treatment options. N Engl J Med 2013;16;368:1867-77.

Janssen HL, Brouwer JT, van der Mast RC, Schalm SW. Suicide associated with alfa-interferon therapy for chronic viral hepatitis. J Hepatol 1994;21:241-3. (Abstract)

Karino Y, Ozeki I, Hige S, Kimura M, Arakawa T, Nakajima T, et al. Telaprevir impairs renal function and increases blood ribavirin concentration during telaprevir/pegylated interferon/ribavirin therapy for chronic hepatitis C. J Viral Hepat 2013 [Epub ahead of print].

Kraus MR, Schafer A, Scheurlen M. Paroxetine for the prevention of depression induced by interferon alfa. N Engl J Med 2001;345:375-6. (Abstract)
Kraus MR, Schafer A, Faller H, Csef H, Scheurlen M. Paroxetine for the treatment of interferon-alpha-induced depression in chronic hepatitis C. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2002;16:1091-9. (Abstract)
Kraus MR, Schafer A, Al-Taie O, Scheurlen M. Prophylactic SSRI during interferon alpha re-therapy in patients with chronic hepatitis C and a history of interferon-induced depression. J Viral Hepat 2005;12:96-100. (Abstract)
Kraus MR, Schafer A, Schottker K, et al. Therapy of interferon-induced depression in chronic hepatitis C with citalopram: A randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study. Gut 2008;57:531-6. (Abstract)
Lawitz E, Mangia A, Wyles D, et al. Sofosbuvir for previously untreated chronic hepatitis C infection. N Engl J Med 2013; 368:1878-87.
Malaguarnera M, Laurino A, Di F, et al. Neuropsychiatric effects and type of IFN-alpha in chronic hepatitis C. J Interferon Cytokine Res 2001;21:273-8. (Abstract)
Manns M, McHutchison J, Gordon S, et al. Peginterferon alfa-2b plus ribavirin compared with interferon alfa-2b plus ribavirin for initial treatment of chronic hepatitis C: a randomised trial. Lancet 2001;358:958-65. (Abstract)
Manns MP, Rambusch EG. Autoimmunity and extrahepatic manifestations in hepatitis C virus infection. J Hepatol. 1999;31 Suppl 1:39-42.
Mauss S, Berger F, Schober A, et al. Screening for autoantibodies in chronic hepatitis C patients has no effect on treatment initiation or outcome. J Viral Hepatitis 2013, 20(4):e72-7.
Mauss S, Berger F, Goelz J, Jacob B, Schmutz G. A prospective controlled study of interferon-based therapy of chronic hepatitis C in patients on methadone maintenance. Hepatology 2004;40:120-4. (Abstract)
Mauss S, Hueppe D, Alshuth U. Renal impairment is frequent in chronic hepatitis C patients under triple therapy with telaprevir or boceprevir. Hepatology. 2014,59(1):46-8.
McHutchison JG, Dusheiko G, Shiffman ML, et al. Eltrombopag for thrombocytopenia in patients with cirrhosis associated with hepatitis C. N Engl J Med 2007;357:2227-36. (Abstract)
McHutchison JG, Lawitz EJ, Shiffman ML, et al. Peginterferon Alfa-2b or Alfa-2a with Ribavirin for Treatment of Hepatitis C Infection. N Engl J Med 2009;361:580-593.
McHutchison JG, Manns MP, Muir AJ, et al. Telaprevir for previously treated chronic HCV infection. N Engl J Med 2010; 362: 1292-1303.
Morasco BJ, Rifai MA, Loftis JM, Indest DW, Moles JK, Hauser P. A randomized trial of paroxetine to prevent interferon-alpha-induced depression in patients with hepatitis C. J Affect Disord 2007;103:83-90. (Abstract)
Morasco BJ, Loftis JM, Indest DW, et al. Prophylactic antidepressant treatment in patients with hepatitis C on antiviral therapy: a double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Psychosomatics 2010;51:401-8. (Abstract)
Musselman DL, Lawson DH, Gumnick JF, et al. Paroxetine for the prevention of depression induced by high-dose interferon alfa. N Engl J Med 2001;344:961-6. (Abstract)
Pariante CM, Landau S, Carpiniello B. Interferon alfa-induced adverse effects in patients with a psychiatric diagnosis. N Engl J Med 2002;347:148-9. (Abstract)
Piche T, Vanbiervliet G, Cherikh F, et al. Effect of ondansetron, a 5-HT3 receptor antagonist, on fatigue in chronic hepatitis C: a randomised, double blind, placebo controlled study. Gut 2005;54:1169-73. (Abstract)
Pockros PJ, Shiffman ML, Schiff ER, et al. Epoetin alfa improves quality of life in anemic HCV-infected patients receiving combination therapy. Hepatology 2004; 40:1450-8. (Abstract)
Poordad F, McCone J Jr, Bacon BR, et al. Boceprevir for untreated chronic HCV genotype 1 infection. N Engl J Med 2011;364:1195-206. (Abstract)
Raison CL, Woolwine BJ, Demetrashvili MF, et al. Paroxetine for prevention of depressive symptoms induced by interferon-alpha and ribavirin for hepatitis C. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2007;25:1163-74. (Abstract)
Renault PF, Hoofnagle JH, Park Y, et al. Psychiatric complications of long-term interferon alfa therapy. Arch Intern Med 1987;147:1577-80. (Abstract)

Sammut S, Bethus I, Goodall G, Muscat R. Antidepressant reversal of interferon-alpha-induced anhedonia. Physiol Behav 2002;75:765-72. (Abstract)
Schaefer M, Engelbrecht MA, Gut O, et al. Interferon alpha [IFNalpha] and psychiatric syndromes: a review. Prog Neuropsychopharmacol Biol Psychiatry 2002;26:731-46. (Abstract)
Schaefer M, Schmidt F, Folwaczny C et al. Adherence and mental side effects during hepatitis C treatment with interferon alfa and ribavirin in psychiatric risk groups. Hepatology 2003;37:443-51. (Abstract)
Schaefer M, Heinz A, Backmund M. Treatment of chronic hepatitis C in patients with drug dependence: time to change the rules? Addiction 2004;99:1167-75. (Abstract)
Schafer A, Wittchen HU, Seufert J, Kraus MR. Methodological approaches in the assessment of interferon-alfa-induced depression in patients with chronic hepatitis C - a critical review. Int J Methods Psychiatr Res 2007;16:186-201. (Abstract)
Schaefer M, Hinzpeter A, Mohmand A, et al. Hepatitis C treatment in "difficult-to-treat" psychiatric patients with pegylated interferon-alpha and ribavirin: Response and psychiatric side effects. Hepatology 2007;46:991-8. (Abstract)
Schaefer M, Schwaiger M, Garkisch AS, et al. Prevention of interferon-alpha associated depression in psychiatric risk patients with chronic hepatitis C. J Hepatol 2005;42:793-8. (Abstract)
Schaefer M, Capuron L, Friebe A, et al. Hepatitis C infection, antiviral treatment and Mental Health: A European Expert Consensus Statement. J Hepatol, 2012; 57:1379-90.
Schaefer M, Sarkar S, Knop V, et al. Escitalopram for the Prevention of Peginterferon-α2a–Associated Depression in Hepatitis C Virus–Infected Patients Without Previous Psychiatric Disease. A Randomized Trial. Ann Intern Med, 2012; 157:94–103.
Schafer A, Wittchen HU, Seufert J, Kraus MR. Methodological approaches in the assessment of interferon-alfa-induced depression in patients with chronic hepatitis C - a critical review. Int J Methods Psychiatr Res 2007;16:186-201. (Abstract)
Schramm TM, Lawford BR, Macdonald GA, Cooksley WG. Sertraline treatment of interferon-alfa-induced depressive disorder. Med J Aust, 2000;173:359-61. (Abstract)
Seyam MS, Freshwater DA, O'Donnell K, Mutimer DJ. Weight loss during pegylated interferon and ribavirin treatment of chronic hepatitis C. J Viral Hepat 2005;12:531-5. (Abstract)
Shiffman ML, Salvatore J, Hubbard S, et al. Treatment of chronic hepatitis C virus genotype 1 with peginterferon, ribavirin, and epoetin alpha. Hepatology 2007;46:371-9. (Abstract)
Sulkowski MS, Poordad F, Manns MP, et al. Anemia during treatment with peginterferon alfa-2b/ribavirin and boceprevir: Analysis from the sprint-2 trial. Hepatology 2013 57(3):974-84.
Sulkowski MS, Asselah T, Lalezari J, et al. Faldaprevir combined with pegylated interferon alfa-2a and ribavirin in treatment-naïve patients with chronic genotype 1 HCV: SILEN-C1 trial. Hepatology 2013;57:2143-54.
Sulkowski MS, Bourlière M, Bronowicki JP, et al. Faldaprevir combined with peginterferon alfa-2a and ribavirin in chronic hepatitis C virus genotype-1 patients with prior nonresponse: SILEN-C2 trial. Hepatology. 2013, 57(6):2155-63.
Torriani FJ, Rodriguez-Torres M, Rockstroh JK, et al. Peginterferon Alfa-2a plus ribavirin for chronic hepatitis C virus infection in HIV-infected patients. N Engl J Med 2004;351:438-50. (Abstract)
Tran HA, Jones TL, Batey RG.The spectrum of thyroid dysfunction in an Australian hepatitis C population treated with combination Interferon-alpha 2-beta and Ribavirin. BMC Endocr Disord 2005;5:8. (Abstract)
Valentine AD, Meyers CA. Successful treatment of interferon-alpha-induced mood disorder with nortriptyline. Psychosomatics 1995;36:418-9. (Abstract)
Younossi ZM, Stepanova M, Henry L, et al. Minimal Impact of Sofosbuvir and Ribavirin on Health Related Quality of Life in Chronic Hepatitis C (CH-C). J Hepatol. 2013 Dec 10. pii: S0168-8278(13)00870-2. doi: 10.1016/j.jhep.2013.12.006. [Epub ahead of print
Zeuzem S, Berg T, Gane E, et al. Simeprevir Increases Rate of Sustained Virologic Response Among Treatment-Experienced Patients With HCV Genotype-1 Infection: A Phase IIb Trial. Gastroenterology 2014;146:430-441. (Abstract)

15. Extrahepatic Manifestations of Chronic HCV

Albrecht Böhlig, Karl-Philipp Puchner and Thomas Berg

Introduction

Patients with chronic hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection are at risk of a great number of extrahepatic manifestations (EHMs) (Table 1) – up to 40-76% of patients infected with HCV develop at least one EHM during the course of the disease (Cacoub 2000, Cacoub 1999). EHMs may often be the first and only clinical sign of chronic hepatitis C infection. Evidence of HCV infection should always be sought out in cases of non-specific chronic fatigue and/or rheumatic, hematological, endocrine or dermatological disorders. The pathogenesis of EHM is still not fully understood although most studies suggest that the presence of mixed cryoglobulinemia, particularly HCV lymphotropism, molecular mimicry and non-cryoglobulinemic autoimmune phenomena constitute the major pathogenic factors (Ferri 2007). Nevertheless, the pathogenesis and epidemiology of many EHMs require further investigation (Figure 1). Our aim is to give a brief insight into the epidemiology, pathogenesis, clinical relevance and therapeutic management of HCV-associated EHM (Zignego 2007a).

Mixed cryoglobulinemia

Cryoglobulinemia refers to the presence of abnormal immunoglobulins in the serum, which have the unusual property of precipitating at temperatures below 37°C and redissolving at higher temperatures. The phenomenon of cryoprecipitation was first described in 1933 (Wintrobe 1933). Cryoglobulins (CGs) are nowadays classified into three types (Table 2) based on their clonality. Type II CG and type III CG, consisting of monoclonal and/or polyclonal immunoglobulins, are prevalent in patients with chronic HCV infection, while type I CGs, consisting exclusively of monoclonal components, are mostly found in patients with lymphoproliferative disorders (multiple myeloma, B cell lymphoma, Waldenström macroglobulinemia). Type II or type III mixed cryoglobulinemia is found in 19%-50% of patients with

chronic HCV but leads to clinical manifestations through vascular precipitation of immunocomplexes in only 30% of them (Lunel 1994, Wong 1996). Asymptomatic mixed cryoglobulinemia during the course of chronic HCV infection may evolve into symptomatic disease. Patients with symptomatic mixed cryoglobulinemia exhibit higher cryoglobulin concentrations (cryocrit >3%) (Weiner 1998) and lower concentrations of complement factors C3 and C4. Thus CG-triggered complement activation may constitute a key incidence in cryoglobulinemia-derived pathogenesis. Factors that seem to favour the development of MC are female sex, age, alcohol intake (>50g/d), advanced liver fibrosis and steatosis (Lunel 1994, Wong 1996, Saadoun 2006).

Table 1. Extrahepatic manifestations of chronic hepatitis C infection

Organ/System involved	Manifestation
Endocrine	• Autoimmune thyroidopathies (in particular, Hashimoto thyroiditis) • Insulin resistance/diabetes mellitus* • GH insufficiency • Vitamin D deficiency
Rheumatic disorders	• Mixed cryoglobulinemia* • Cryoglobulinemic vasculitis* • Peripheral neuropathy* • Membrano-proliferative glomerulonephritis (GN)* • Membranous GN* • Rheumatoid arthralgias/oligopolyarthritis • Rheumatoid factor positivity* • Sicca syndrome
Hematologic disorders	• Lymphoproliferative disorders/Non-Hodgkin Lymphomas* • Immune thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP) • Monoclonal gammopathies* • Autoimmune hemolytic anemia
Dermatologic disorders	• Palpable purpura • Porphyria cutanea tarda (PCT) • Lichen planus • Pruritus
Central nervous system disorders	• Chronic fatigue*, subclinical cognitive impairment, psychomotoric deceleration, symptoms of depression* • Neurocognitive disorders
Miscellaneous	• Myopathy • Cardiomyopathy/Myocarditis • Idiopathic pulmonal fibrosis

*Associations based on strong epidemiological prevalence and/or clear pathogenetic mechanisms

Table 2. Types of cryoglobulinemia

Type	Clonality
Type I	Monoclonal immunoglobulins (IgG or IgM)
Type II	Polyclonal immunoglobulins (mainly IgG) and monoclonal IgM with rheumatoid factor activity (RF)
Type III	Polyclonal IgG and IgM

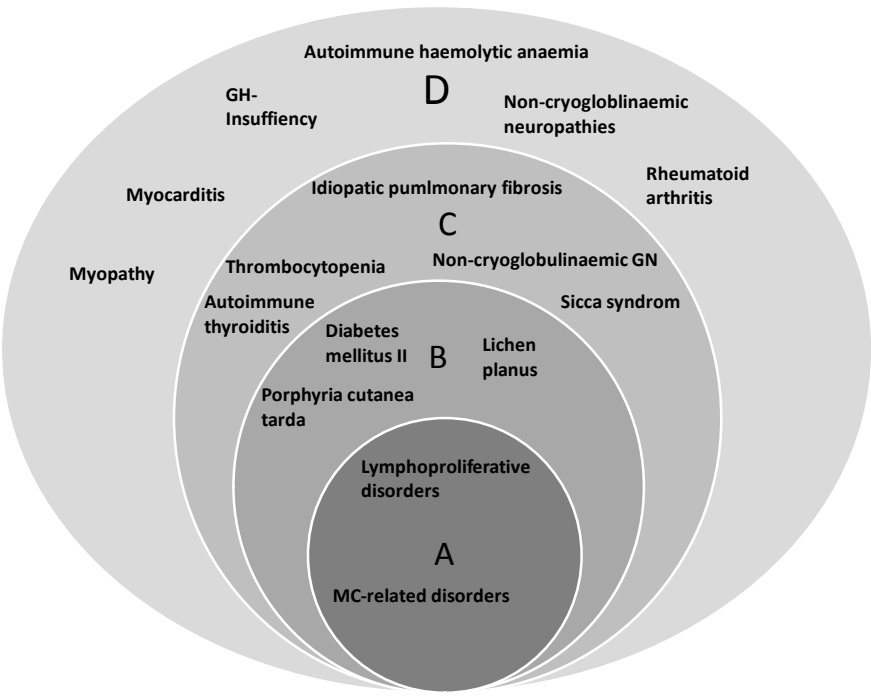


Figure 1. Schematic representation of EHM categories (modified after Zignego 2007a). A) Associations with strong epidemiological evidence and clear pathogenetic mechanisms; B) Associations with high prevalence, but unclear pathogenetic mechanisms; C) Associations for which the high prevalence in HCV collectives could be due to HCV infection and/or confounding factors; D) Anecdotal observations

Diagnosis

Detection of CG is carried out by keeping patient serum at 4°C for up to 7 days. When cryoprecipitate is visible, CG can be purified and characterized using immunofixation electrophoresis. In case of evidence of mixed cryoglobulinemia in HCV-positive patients, cryoglobulinemic syndrome needs to be looked for. Vigilant monitoring is required, as asymptomatic mixed cryoglobulinemia patients may develop MC-related disorders in the course of the disease. The diagnosis of the MC syndrome is based on serologic, pathologic and clinical criteria (Table 3).

Table 3. Diagnostic criteria of cryoglobulinemic syndrome

Serologic	Histopathologic	Clinical
• C4 reduction • Positive rheumatoid factor (RF) • CGs, type II or III • HCV antibodies	• Leukocytoclastic vasculitis • Monoclonal B cell infiltrates	• Purpura • Fatigue • Arthralgia • Membranoproliferative GN • Peripheral neuropathy

In the presence of mixed CG, low C4 counts, leucocytoclastic vasculitis and purpura, a definite symptomatic MC can be diagnosed. Rheumatoid factor (RF) determination constitutes a reliable surrogate marker for detection of CG. Finally, presence of CG may impair HCV RNA determination as viral RNA can accumulate in precipitated cryocrit (Colantoni 1997).

Clinical presentation

HCV-related MC proceeds mostly asymptomatically and has no significant influence on the course of chronic liver inflammation. On the other hand, symptomatic mixed cryoglobulinemia is associated with higher mortality (Ferri 2004).

Systemic vasculitis

HCV-related vasculitis relies on a deposition of immunocomplexes containing CGs, complement and large amounts of HCV antigens in the small- and medium-sized blood vessels. HCV accumulates in the CG immunoglobulins. Pathohistological findings reveal a leucocytoclastic vasculitis (Agnello 1997). The most common symptoms of mixed cryoglobulinemic vasculitis are weakness, arthralgia and purpura (the Meltzer and Franklin triad). Mixed cryoglobulinemic vasculitis may also lead to Raynaud's Syndrome and Sicca Syndrome, glomerulonephritis and peripheral neuropathy.

Renal impairment

The predominant renal impairment associated with mixed cryoglobulinemia is the membranous proliferative glomerulonephritis (MPGN), characterized in most cases by proteinuria, mild hematuria and mild renal insufficiency. The presence of kidney impairment is considered to be a negative prognostic factor in the course of the disease (Ferri 2004). In 15% of patients, MC-related nephropathy may progress to terminal chronic renal failure requiring dialysis (Tarantino 1995).

Peripheral neuropathy

Peripheral neuropathy, on the basis of endoneural microangiopathy, constitutes a further typical complication of mixed cryoglobulinemia. MC-related neuropathy, presenting clinically as mononeuropathy or polyneuropathy, is mostly sensory and is characterized by numbness, burning skin, a crawling sensation, and pruritus, predominantly in the hands and feet (Tembl 1999, Lidove 2001). Epidemiological data from Italy suggests that peripheral neuropathy is the second most common symptom after the Meltzer and Franklin triad in patients with symptomatic HCV-associated mixed cryoglobulinemia (Ferri 2004).

Cirrhosis

The causal association between CG and progression of liver fibrosis suggested by numerous authors was not confirmed in a published 10-year prospective study. The 10-year rates of progression to cirrhosis were similar in cryoglobulinemic and non-cryoglobulinemic HCV-infected patients (Vigano 2007). From this, it is unlikely that mixed cryoglobulinemia constitutes an independent risk factor for the progression of liver fibrosis.

Malignant lymphoproliferative disorders/NHL

The association between infectious agents and potentially reversible "antigen driven" lymphoproliferative disorders, such as *Helicobacter pylori*-related gastric marginal zone B cell lymphoma has been known for many decades. Recent data suggest a causative association between HCV and Non-Hodgkin Lymphoma (NHL) (Mele 2003, Duberg 2005, Giordano 2007). HCV infection leads *per se* to a two-fold higher risk of developing NHL (Mele 2003, Duberg 2005). The most prevalent HCV-associated lymphoproliferative disorders according to the REAL/WHO classification are: follicular lymphoma, B cell chronic lymphocytic leukemia/small lymphocyte lymphoma, diffuse large B cell lymphoma and marginal zone lymphoma, including the mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue lymphoma. Overall, marginal zone lymphoma appears to be the most frequently encountered low grade B cell lymphoma in HCV patients.

HCV-associated lymphoproliferative disorders (LPDs) are observed over the course of MC. 8-10% of mixed cryoglobulinemia type II evolve into B cell NHL after long-lasting infection. However, a remarkably high prevalence of B cell NHL was also found in HCV patients without mixed cryoglobulinemia (Silvestri 1997). Genetic predisposition and other factors seem to have a major impact on the development of LPDs in HCV-positive patients (Matsuo 2004).

Etiology and pathogenesis of LPDs in patients with HCV infection

In the development of LPDs direct and indirect pathogenic HCV-associated factors (Figure 2) are seen. Sustained B cell activation and proliferation, noticed during chronic HCV infection, is an indirect pathogenic mechanism.

Direct pathogenic mechanisms are based on lymphotropic properties of HCV, hence on HCV's entry into the B cells. HCV RNA sequences were first detected in mononuclear peripheral blood cells (Zignego 1992). Especially CD19+ cells seem to be permissive for certain HCV quasispecies (Roque Afonso 1999). Active replication of the HCV genome in B cells is associated with activation of anti-apoptotic gene BCL-2 and inhibition of p53 or c-Myc-induced apoptosis (Sakamuro 1995, Ray 1996). In this light, direct involvement of HCV in the immortalisation of B cells can be imagined (Zignego 2000, Machida 2004).

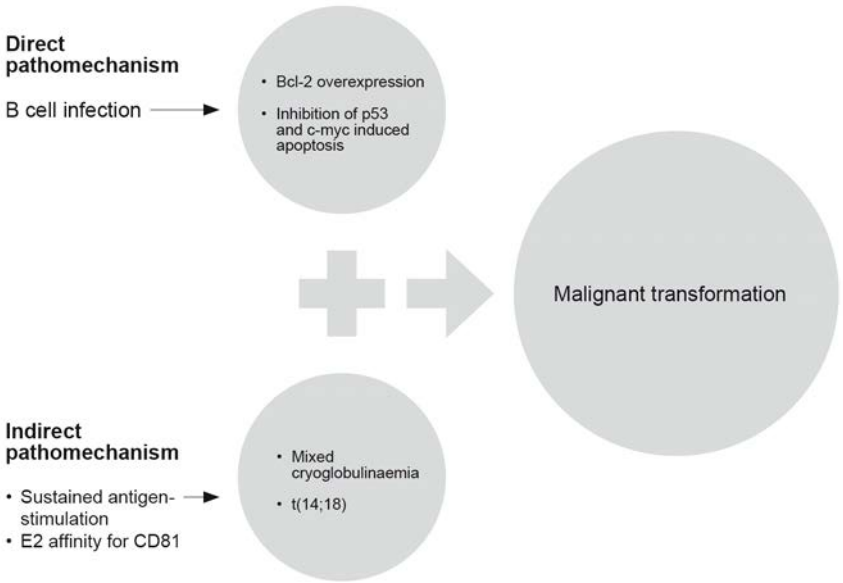


Fig 2. Pathomechanisms involved in the development of malignant lymphoproliferative disorders in patients with chronic HCV infection. Indirect pathomechanism: Sustained antigen stimulation, like the binding of the viral envelope protein to the CD81 receptor, leads to excessive B cell proliferation, which in turn favors development of mixed cryoglobulinemia and/or genetic aberrations, such as t(14;18) translocation. Direct pathomechanism: Viral infection of B cells, as viral replication may result in activation of proto-oncogenes (i.e., BCL-2) and/or inhibition of apoptotic factors (i.e., p53, c-Myc). One of the factors favoring this polyclonal B cell activation and proliferation is probably the HCV E2 protein, which binds specifically to CD81, a potent B cell activator (Cormier 2004)

Treatment of lymphoproliferative disorders

Because of the close correlation between the level of viral suppression and improvement of HCV-associated extrahepatic symptoms, the most effective antiviral strategy should be considered when dealing with HCV-related extrahepatic diseases. The protease inhibitors boceprevir and telaprevir have been shown to improve significantly a sustained virologic response in HCV type 1-infected patients when given in combination with PEG-IFN plus RBV as compared to PEG-IFN plus RBV alone, and can be therefore regarded as the treatment of choice in HCV type 1-infected patients with extrahepatic manifestations. However, certain protease inhibitor-associated contraindications, especially drug-drug interactions due to their CYP3A metabolism, have to be taken into account and all concomitant medications need to be assessed and adjusted. For further information, see the other HCV chapters.

Mixed cryoglobulinemia

While asymptomatic MC *per se* does not constitute an indication for treatment, symptomatic mixed cryoglobulinemia should always be treated. Because asymptomatic cryoglobulinemia may evolve into symptomatic CG in the course of

disease, vigilant monitoring is required and introduction of antiviral therapy in terms of prophylaxis should be considered.

Because a causal correlation between HCV infection and mixed cryoglobulinemia has been established, the therapeutic approach of symptomatic mixed cryoglobulinemia should primarily concentrate on the eradication of the virus. Indeed, clinical improvement of MC is reported in 50 to 70% of patients receiving antiviral therapy with IFN α plus RBV and mostly correlates with a drastic reduction of HCV RNA concentrations (Calleja 1999). However, cryoglobulinemic vasculitis following successful antiviral treatment persists in a small collective (Levine 2005). IFN α has been shown to be a promising therapeutic tool irrespective of virologic response. Due to its antiproliferative properties on IgM-RF-producing B cells and stimulation of macrophage-mediated clearance of immunocomplexes, IFN α may lead to clinical amelioration even in virological non-responders. Therefore, therapeutic success should be primarily evaluated on the basis of clinical response irrespective of virologic response. In case of treatment failure of antiviral therapy and/or fulminant manifestations, contraindications or severe side effects, alternative therapeutic strategies such as cytostatic immunosuppresive therapy and/or plasmapheresis should be considered (Craxi 2008) (Figure 3, Table 4). Recent data show rituximab as an effective and safe treatment option for MC even in advanced liver disease. Moreover, B cell depletion has been shown to improve cirrhotic syndrome by mechanisms that remain to be elucidated (Petrarca 2010).

Systemic vasculitis

In cases of severe systemic vasculitis, initial therapy with rituximab, a monoclonal chimeric antibody against CD20 B cell-specific antigen, is suggested. Its efficacy and safety have been demonstrated in patients with symptomatic MC resistant to IFN α therapy, even though HCV RNA increased approximately twice the baseline levels in responders (Sansonno 2003). In light of this, combined application of rituximab with PEG-IFN α plus ribavirin in cases of severe mixed cryoglobulinemia-related vasculitis resistant to antiviral therapy seems to be the optimal therapeutic strategy, achieving amelioration of MC-related symptoms and a complete eradication of HCV in responders (Saadoun 2008). In severe rituximab-refractory mixed cryoglobulinemia-related vasculitis or acute manifestations, cycles of plasma exchange plus corticosteroids and eventually cyclophosphamide are indicated. Further studies show that low dose interleukin-2 can lead to clinical improvement of vasculitis and has immunologic effects such as recovery of regulatory T cells (Saadoun 2011).

Peripheral neuropathy

Effectiveness of antiviral therapy on cryoglobulinemia-induced peripheral neuropathy is still debated. While HCV-related peripheral neuropathy responsive to antiviral therapy with IFN α plus ribavirin in 4 patients with chronic HCV has been reported (Koskinas 2007), several authors report on an aggravation of cryoglobulinemic neuropathy or even *de novo* occurance of demyelinating polyneuropathy during IFN α and PEG-IFN α treatment (Boonyapist 2002, Khiani 2008). Therefore, application of IFN α in the presence of HCV-related neuropathy requires a cautious risk-benefit assessment.

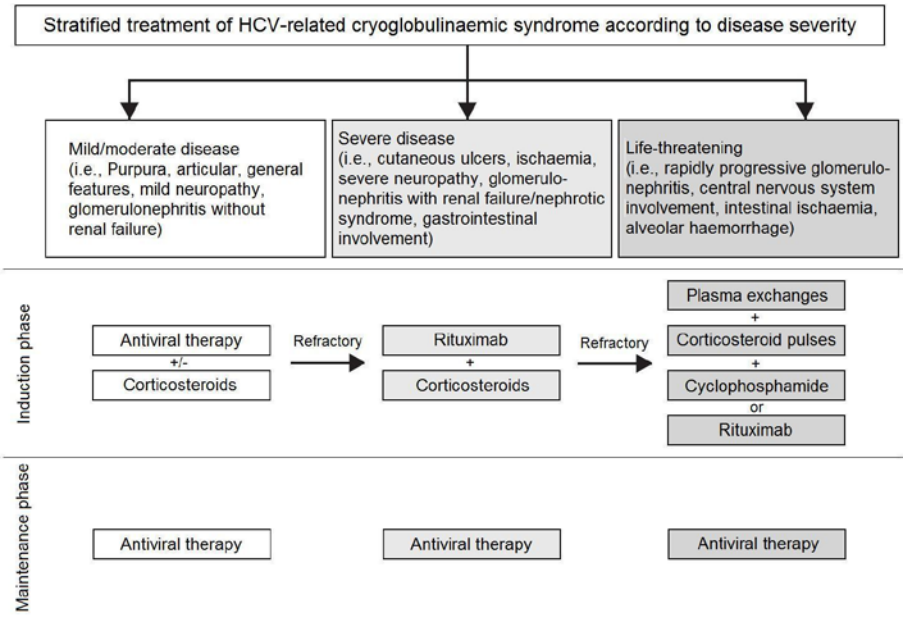


Figure 3. Therapy algorithm for symptomatic HCV-related mixed cryoglobulinemia (Ramos-Casals 2012). Antiviral therapy, i.e., PEG-IFN α plus RBV +/- protease inhibitors, is regarded as first-line therapy in cases of mild/moderate manifestations. In case of contraindications, patients should be treated primarily with corticosteroids. Non-response to antiviral therapy or drug-induced aggravation makes application of corticosteroids essential. Long-term therapy with corticosteroids may result in elevation of viral load and progression of hepatic disease. In light of this, rituximab represents an attractive alternative, because in this case, drug-induced viral load escalation is minor. In patients with severe manifestations, treatment should focus on immunosuppression (± plasmapheresis). Due to its excellent immunosuppressive properties and relatively mild side effect profile, use of rituximab should be favored. In case of good clinical response, consecutive antiviral treatment with PEG-IFN α plus ribavirin may serve as maintenance therapy. Therapy-refractory cases require individual treatment according to the particular center's experience. Supplementation of therapeutic strategy with antiviral therapy should be considered

As eradication of *Helicobacter pylori* may lead to complete remission of MALT lymphoma, antiviral therapy can lead to regression of low-grade NHL in patients with HCV-related malignant lymphoproliferative disorders. PEG-IFN α plus ribavirin (+/- protease inhibitors) should be regarded in such cases as first-line therapy (Giannelli 2003, Vallisa 2005). Remission of the hematologic disorders is closely associated with virologic response or rather achievement of sustained virologic response. Effectiveness of IFN α in this context should be ascribed primarily to the drug's antiviral properties and less to its anti-proliferative properties.

Table 4. Treatment of cryoglobulinemia-related disorders in patients with chronic HCV infection

Author	Patients	Treatment	Result
Zuckerman	N=9 Symptomatic MC non-responders to IFN α monotherapy	IFN α 3x/wk + ribavirin 15 mg/kg/d	CGs undetectable within 6 weeks in 7/9 patients; clinical improvement in 9/9 within 10 weeks
Sansonno	N=20 MC vasculitis and peripheral neuropathy resistant to IFN α montherapy	Rituximab 375 mg/m^2/ 4x/wk	16 patients with complete clinical response; 12 sustained response throughout follow-up. Viremia increases in responders
Saadoun	N=16 MC vasculitis in relapsers or non-responders to IFN α/PEG-IFN α + RBV	Rituximab 375 mg/m^2/ 4x/wk; PEG-INF α 1.5 ug/kg/wk + RBV (600-1200 mg/d) for 12 months	10/16 report complete clinical response; CGs and RNA HCV undetectable in responders
Bruchfeld	N=7 HCV-related renal manifestations (2/7 MC-related)	IFN α + low-dose ribavirin (200-600 mg) or PEG-INF α + low-dose ribavirin	Improvement of GRF and proteinuria in 4/7 patients and sustained viral response in 5/7
Roccatello	N=6 MC systematic manifestations predominantly renal (5/6)	Rituximab 375 mg/m^2/4x/wk + rituximab 375 mg/m^2 1 month and 2 months later	Decrease of cryocrit and proteinuria at months 2, 6, 12
Koskinas	N=4 MC patients with severe sensory-motor polyneuropathy	INF α-2b 1.5ug/kg/wk + ribavirin 10.6 mg/kg/d for 48 weeks	Significant improvement of neurological parameters in 4/4; undetectable HCV RNA and lower CG levels in 3/4 at the end of therapy

Treatment of HCV-infected patients with high-grade NHL should be based on cytostatic chemotherapy. HCV infection does not constitute a contraindication for cytostatic chemotherapy. Unlike HBV infection, antiviral prophylaxis before chemotherapy introduction is not obligatory. Chemotherapy may lead to a substantial increase in viremia. Consecutive exacerbation of the infection, making discontinuation of chemotherapy mandatory, is unlikely to occur. However, treatment-related liver toxicity is more frequent in HCV-positive NHL and is often associated with severe hepatic manifestations (Besson 2006, Arcaini 2009). Current data suggest that antiviral treatment may serve as maintenance therapy for achieving sustained remission of NHL after chemotherapy completion (Gianelli 2003).

Further hematological manifestations

HCV-associated thrombocytopenia

Thrombocytopenic conditions (platelet counts below 150 x 10^3/uL) are often observed in patients with chronic hepatitis C and result mainly from advanced liver fibrosis and manifest cirrhosis (Wang 2004). Lack of hepatic-derived thrombopoietin can *inter alia* be recognized as an important causal factor (Afdhal 2008). As HCV RNA can be abundant in platelets (Takehara 1994) and megakaryocytes of thrombocytopenic patients, direct cytopathic involvement of HCV can be hypothesized (Bordin 1995, De Almeida 2004). Furthermore, it has been suggested that exposure to HCV may be a causative factor for the production of platelet-associated immunoglobulins, inducing thrombocytopenia through a similar immunological mechanism to that operating in immune thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP) (Aref 2009). There is a high HCV prevalence in patients with ITP (García-Suaréz 2000), and these patients exhibit diverse characteristics to HCV-negative patients with ITP, which supports the hypothesis of direct viral involvement in the development of thrombocytopenia (Rajan 2005).

There is no consensus regarding the optimum treatment of HCV-related ITP. Along with classical therapeutic approaches such as corticosteroids, intravenous immunoglobulins and splenectomy, antiviral therapy constitutes another option. A substantial increase of platelets after application of antiviral therapy is registered in a significant percentage of patients with HCV-related ITP (Iga 2005), although evidence from further studies is required to confirm this hypothesis. However, caution is recommended in thrombocytopenic patients treated with PEG-IFN α plus ribavirin, as significant aggravation of HCV-related ITP may occur on this regimen (Fattovich 1996). On the other hand, long-term use of steroids or immunosuppressive drugs is limited by an increased risk of fibrosis progression or a substantial elevation of virus, respectively.

A new orally active thrombopoietin receptor agonist, eltrombopag, may be used in thrombocytopenic HCV patients in the future. Its efficacy has been documented in patients with HCV-related ITP (Bussel 2007) as well as in HCV-positive patients suffering from thrombocytopenia due to cirrhosis (McHutchison 2007), although, in a recent study treating patients with eltrombopag in combination with PEG-IFN α and ribavirin, portal vein thrombosis was observed in a number of patients as an unexpected complication (Afdhal 2011). FDA recently approved a new indication for eltrombopag for patients with thrombocytopenia with chronic hepatitis C to allow the initiation and maintenance of interferon-based therapy. FDA has also required a new PK study of the newly approved HCV protease inhibitors with eltrombopag (FDA website, accessed 22 January 2013). See FDA site for full indications. In case of refractory disease or aggravation during the course of antiviral therapy, rituximab should be considered (Weitz 2005).

HCV-related autoimmune hemolytic anemia

Interpretation of autoimmune hemolytic anemia (AHA) as a possible EHM is based mainly on a few well-documented case reports (Chao 2001, Fernandéz 2006, Srinivasan 2001). AHA has been frequently observed in HCV patients treated with IFN α with and without ribavirin and consequently recognized as a possible side

effect of antiviral treatment (De la Serna-Higuera 1999, Nomura 2004). Recently, a large-scale epidemiological study confirmed a high incidence of AHA in HCV patients undergoing antiviral treatment. However, the incidence rate of AHA in treatment-naïve HCV patients was statistically insignificant (Chiao 2009). In this light, there is, for the time being, little evidence for regarding AHA as a possible EHM of chronic HCV infection.

HCV-related glomerulonephritis

Glomerulonephritis (GN) constitutes a rare extrahepatic complication of chronic HCV. Predominant manifestations are cryoglobulinemic or non-cryoglobulinemic membranous proliferative GN and mesangioproliferative GN. Far less common is membranous nephropathy (Arase 1998). Other forms of GN do not correlate significantly with HCV infection (Daghestani 1999). Microhematuria and proteinuria are among the most frequent medical findings in patients with membranous proliferative GN. Approximately 50% of patients exhibit a mild renal insufficiency. 20-25% may present an acute nephritic syndrome (hematuria, hypertension and proteinuria), as in 25% of patients nephrotic syndrome represents the initial manifestation. In contrast, >80% of patients with HCV-related membranous nephropathy suffer primarily a nephrotic syndrome (Doutrelepont 1993, Rollino 1991). The mesangioproliferative form proceeds mostly asymptomatically, with typical findings such as hematuria and proteinuria often missing (McGuire 2006).

The pathomechanism of renal impairment is yet not fully understood. It can be hypothesized that glomerular injury is primarily caused by a deposition of circulating immunocomplexes containing anti-HCV antibodies, HCV antigens and complement factors. Formation and deposition of such immunocomplexes occurs also in the absence of CGs. HCV proteins in glomerular and tubulointerstitial structures are immunohistologically detectable in approximately 70% of patients with chronic HCV (Sansonno 1997). Further possible pathomechanisms of glomerular injury encompass formation of glomerular autoantibodies, glomerular impairment due to chronic hepatic injury, or IgM overproduction with consecutive glomerular IgM deposition as a result of HCV-triggered cryoglobulinemia type II. GN prevalence in HCV patients is estimated at 1.4% and is comparably high due to its prevalence among blood donors (Paydas 1996).

HCV-induced GN has mostly a benign prognosis (Daghestani 1999). 10-15% of patients with nephritic syndrome experience spontaneous complete or partial remission. Frequently persisting mild proteinuria exhibits no tendency to progression. It is estimated that only approximately 15% of the patients with HCV-related GN develop terminal renal failure requiring dialysis (Tarantino 1995). Nevertheless, presence of kidney impairment is considered to be a negative prognostic factor for long-term survival (Ferri 2004).

Patients with HCV-related GN should be primarily treated with antivirals. In cases of mild renal impairment, sustained viral response normally leads to amelioration of proteinuria or even full remission of GN. With high baseline viremia and advanced renal insufficiency, antiviral therapy is subject to certain limitations (Sabry 2002). Despite amelioration of proteinuria achieved after antiviral

therapy, significant improvement of renal function is often lacking (Alric 2004). PEG-IFN and ribavirin dosage must be cautiously adjusted to glomerular filtration rate (GFR), in order to mainly prevent ribavirin accumulation with consecutive hemolytic anemia (Fabrizi 2008). Even in advanced renal failure, use of ribavirin is recommended due to the superior efficacy of combination therapy vs. IFN monotherapy (Bruchfeld 2003, Baid-Agrawal 2008). In patients with GFR <30 ml/min, ribavirin dosage should not exceed 600 mg/week. Careful dosage augmentation may be undertaken in the absence of side effects. Ribavirin dosages up to 100-400 mg/day were administered under vigilant blood level monitoring in dialysis patients. RBV-induced hemolytic anemia was efficiently treated by administration of erythropoietin and erythrocyte concentrates (van Leusen 2008). As determination of RBV blood levels is not an established laboratory procedure, implementation of such a therapeutic approach in clinical routine remains arduous. No dose reduction is required with respect to renal impairment for the two licensed protease inhibitors boceprevir and telaprevir (see also Chapters 12, 13 & 14).

Fulminant manifestations with impending acute renal failure make administration of corticosteroids, immunosuppressive drugs such as cyclophosphamide and eventually plasmapheresis necessary (Garini 2007, Margin 1994). In case of simultaneous bone marrow B cell infiltration and/or resistance to conventional therapy, application of rituximab is indicated (Roccatello 2004). Rituximab may be used as an alternative first line therapy in severe renal manifestations (Roccatello 2008). Antiviral and immunosuppressive therapy should always be supplemented with ACE inhibitors or AT1 receptor antagonists (Kamar 2006).

Endocrine manifestations

Thyroid disease is found more commonly in patients with chronic HCV infection than in the general population. About 13% of HCV-infected patients have hypothyroidism and up to 25% have thyroid antibodies (Antonelli 2004). There is also evidence that IFN α may induce thyroid disease or unmask preexisting silent thyroidopathies (Graves disease, Hashimoto thyroiditis) (Prummel 2003). In addition, some studies suggest that thyroid autoimmune disorders were significantly present in patients with chronic hepatitis C during but not before IFN α therapy (Marazuela 1996, Vezali 2009). Therefore, the role of chronic hepatitis C infection *per se* in the development of thyroid disorders remains to be determined. The presence of autoantibodies against thyroid with or without clinical manifestations increases the risk of developing an overt thyroiditis significantly during antiviral therapy. Therefore, thyroid function should be monitored during treatment.

Association between chronic HCV infection and development of insulin resistance and diabetes mellitus has been discussed in the past (Knobler 2000, Mason 1999, Hui 2003, Mehta 2003). A recently published meta-analysis of retrospective and prospective studies confirms a higher risk for the development of diabetes mellitus type II in patients with chronic HCV infection (OR=1.68, 95%, CI 1.15-2.20) (White 2008). Viral induction of insulin resistance seems to be HCV-specific, as prevalence of diabetes mellitus in HBV-infected patients is significantly lower (White 2008, Imazeki 2008). The pathomechanism of HCV-induced insulin resistance is yet not fully understood. It has been suggested that the appearance of

insulin resistance could correlate with certain genotypes of HCV. Furthermore, HCV-dependent upregulation of cytokine suppressor SOC-3 may be responsible for the induction of cell desensitisation towards insulin. Peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-γ coactivator 1α is induced after HCV infection, thereby upregulating gluconeogenesis and providing a potential target for treatment (Shlomai 2012). Insulin resistance in turn represents an independent risk factor for progression of liver fibrosis and lower SVR in patients with chronic HCV infection (Moucari 2008, Kawaguchi 2004).

A causal association is backed up by studies demonstrating that antiviral therapy resulting in SVR correlates with improved diabetic metabolic status and resolution of insulin resistance (Kawaguchi 2007, Zhang 2012).

There is growing evidence that a majority of patients suffer from vitamin D deficiency. Recent clinical data show higher vitamin D levels as an independent predictive factor of SVR following antiviral therapy (Cholongitas 2012). Because of its anti-inflammatory and anti-fibrotic effects, vitamin D supplementation might therefore protect against progression of liver disease and have the potential to improve treatment response, although there is still a lack of sufficient clinical data to support this (Rahman 2013).

Finally, a link between HCV, growth hormone (GH) insufficiency and low insulin-like growth factor (IGF1) has been hypothesized. Reduced GH secretion could be the result of a direct inhibitory effect of HCV infection at the level of the pituitary or hypothalamus (Plöckinger 2007).

Central nervous manifestations

Numerous central nervous manifestations have been described in association with HCV infection. Cryoglobulinemic or non-cryoglobulinemic vasculitis of cerebral blood vessels may be responsible for the relatively high prevalence of both ischemic and hemorrhagic strokes in young HCV-positive patients (Cacoub 1998). Transverse myelopathies leading to symmetrical paraparesis and sensory deficiency have been observed (Aktipi 2007).

Furthermore, chronic HCV infection is associated with significant impairment of quality of life. 35-68% of HCV patients suffer from chronic fatigue, subclinical cognitive impairment and psychomotor deceleration. Symptoms of depression are evident in 2-30% of HCV patients examined (Perry 2008, Forton 2003, Carta 2007). Psychometric as well as functional magnetic resonance spectroscopy studies suggest altered neurotransmission in HCV-positive groups (Weissenborn 2006, Forton 2001). In addition, significant tryptophan deficiency is detectable in patients with chronic HCV infection. Deficiency of tryptophan-derived serotonin is likely to favor an occurrence of depressive disorders. There is evidence to suggest that antiviral therapy can lead to elevation of tryptophan blood levels and thus contribute to amelioration of depressive symptoms in HCV patients (Zignego 2007c).

While the etiology of cognitive dysfunction in HCV patients is not completely understood, it is hypothesized that on the one hand the virus has a direct neurotoxic effect by entering the CNS via the PBMCs and on the other hand has an indirect neurotoxic effect via cerebral and/or systemic inflammation, for example increased pro-inflammatory cytokines over many years of infection, crossing the blood-brain

barrier and so contributing to cognitive disorders (Senzolo 2011). More recent studies indicate that brain microvascular endothelial cells serve as a preferential site of HCV tropism and replication and that alterations of the blood-brain barrier could lead to activation of microglia and entry of inflammatory cytokines (Fletcher 2012).

Dermatologic and miscellaneous manifestations

A multitude of cutaneous disorders has been sporadically associated with chronic HCV infection (Hadziyannis 1998). Epidemiologic studies have confirmed the existence of a strong correlation between the sporadic form of porphyria cutanea tarda (PTC) and HCV, though the presence of HCV in PTC patients seems to be subject to strong regional factors. Indeed, HCV prevalence in PTC patients is above 50% in Italy, while only 8% in Germany (Fargion 1992, Stölzel 1995).

Strong evidence of a close association between HCV and lichen planus was provided by studies performed in Japan and southern Europe (Nagao 1995, Carrozzo 1996), yet these observations do not apply to all geographic regions (Ingafou 1998). HLA-DR6 has been recognized as a major predisposing factor for development of lichen planus in HCV-positive patients. One hypothesis suggests that geographical fluctuation of HLA-DR6 is responsible for the diverse prevalence among HCV patients (Gandolfo 2002).

Idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis (IPF) may potentially be an EHM, as prevalence of anti-HCV in patients with this disease is notably high (Ueda 1992). Interestingly, alveolar lavage in therapy-naïve HCV patients yielded frequent findings consistent with a chronic alveolitis. Alveolar lavage in the same patients after completion of antiviral therapy showed a remission of inflammatory activity (Yamaguchi 1997). Involvement of CGs in the genesis of IPF is also probable (Ferri 1997).

Occasionally, chronic HCV infection has been seen in association with cardiac pathologies such as chronic myocarditis and dilatative/hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. Pathogenesis seems to rely on genetic predisposition and is assumed to be immunologically triggered (Matsumori 2000).

References

Afdhal N, McHutchison J, Brown R, Jacobson I, Manns M, Poordad F, et al. Thrombocytopenia associated with chronic liver disease. J Hepatol 2008;48:1000-7. (Abstract)

Afdhal NH, Dusheiko G, Giannini EG, et al. Final Results of ENABLE 1, a Phase 3, Multicenter Study of Eltrombopag as an Adjunct for Antiviral Treatment of Hepatitis C Virus-Related Chronic Liver Disease Associated With Thrombocytopenia. Hepatology 2011;54:1427-8.

Agnello V, G. Ábel. Localization of hepatitis C virus in cutaneous vasculitic lesions in patients with type II cryoglobulinemia. Arthritis Rheumatism 1997;40:2007-2015. (Abstract)

Aktipi KM, Ravaglia S, Ceroni M. Severe recurrent myelitis in patients with hepatitis C virus infection. Neurology2007;68:468-9. (Abstract)

Alric L, Plaisier E, Thébault S, Péron JM, Rostaing L, Pourrat J, et al. Influence of antiviral therapy in hepatitis C virus-associated cryoglobulinemic MPGN. Am J Kidney Dis 2004;43:617-23. (Abstract)

Antonelli A, Ferri C, Pampana A, et al. Thyroid disorders in chronic hepatitis C. Am J Med 2004;117:10-3. (Abstract)

Arase Y, Ikeda K, Murashima N, Chayama K, Tsubota A, Koida I, et al. Glomerulonephritis in autopsy cases with hepatitis C virus infection. Intern Med 1998;37:836-40. (Abstract)

Arcaini L, Merli M, Passamonti F, Bruno R, Brusamolino E, Sacchi P, et al. Impact of treatment-related liver toxicity on the outcome of HCV-positive non-Hodgkin's lymphomas. 2010;85:45-50. (Abstract)

Aref S, Sleem T, El Menshawy N, Ebrahiem L, Abdella D, Fouda M, et al. Antiplatelet antibodies contribute to thrombocytopenia associated with chronic hepatitis C virus infection. Hematology 2009;14:277-81. (Abstract)

Baid-Agrawal S, Pascual M, Moradpour D, Frei U, Tolkoff-Rubin N. Hepatitis C virus infection in haemodialysis and kidney transplant patients. Rev Med Virol 2008;18(2):97-115. (Abstract)

Besson C, Canioni D, Lepage E, Pol S, Morel P, Lederlin P, et al. Characteristics and outcome of diffuse large B-cell lymphoma in hepatitis C virus-positive patients in LNH 93 and LNH 98 Groupe d'Etude des Lymphomes de l'Adulte programs. J Clin Oncol 2006;24:953-60. (Abstract)

Boonyapisit K, Katirji B. Severe exacerbation of hepatitis C-associated vasculitic neuropathy following treatment with interferon alpha: a case report and literature review. Muscle Nerve 2002;25:909-13. (Abstract)

Bordin G, Ballare M, Zigrossi P, Bertoncelli MC, Paccagnino L, et al. A laboratory and thrombokinetic study of HCV-associated thrombocytopenia: a direct role of HCV in bone marrow exhaustion? Clin Exp Rheumatol 1995;Suppl 13:S39-43. (Abstract)

Bruchfeld A, Lindahl K, Stahle L, Schvarcz R. Interferon and ribavirin treatment in patients with hepatitis C-associated renal disease and renal insufficiency. Nephrol Dial Transplant 2003;18:1573-80. (Abstract)

Bussel JB, Cheng G, Saleh MN, Psaila B, Kovaleva L, Meddeb B, et al. Eltrombopag for the treatment of chronic idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura. New Engl J M 2007;357:2237-47. (Abstract)

Cacoub P, Sbai A, Hausfater P, et al. Central nervous system involvement in hepatitis C virus infection. Gastroenterol Clin Biol 1998;22:631-33. (Abstract)

Cacoub P, Poynard T, Ghillani P, et al. Extrahepatic manifestations of chronic hepatitis C. MULTIVIRC group. Multidepartment Virus C. Athritis Rheum 1999;42:2204-12. (Abstract)

Cacoub P, Renou C, Rosenthal E, et al. Extrahepatic manifestations associated with hepatitis C virus infection. A prospective multicenter study of 321 patients. Groupe d' Etude et de Recherche en Medicine Interne et Maladies Infectieuses sur le Virus de l'Hepatite C. Medicine 2000;79:47-56. (Abstract)

Calleja JL, Albillos A, Moreno-Otero R, et al. Sustained response to interferon-alpha or to interferon-alpha plus ribavirin in hepatitis C virus-associated symptomatic mixed cryoglobulinaemia. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 1999;13:1179-86. (Abstract)

Carrozzo M, Gandolfo S, Carbone M, Colombatto P, Broccoletti R, Garzino-Demo P, et al. Hepatitis C virus infection in Italian patients with oral lichen planus: a prospective case-control study. J Oral Pathol Med 1996;25:527-33. (Abstract)

Carta MG, Hardoy MC, Garofalo A, Pisano E, Nonnoi V, Intilla G, et al. Association of chronic hepatitis C with major depressive disorders: irrespective of interferon-alpha therapy. Clin Pract Epidemol Ment Health 2007;3:22. (Abstract)

Chao TC, Chen CY, Yang YH, et al. Chronic hepatitis C virus infection associated with primary warm-type autoimmune hemolytic anemia. J Clin Gastroenterol 2001;33:232-33. (Abstract)

Chiao EY, Engels EA, Kramer JR, Pietz K, Henderson L, Giordano TP, Landgren O. Risk of immune thrombocytopenic purpura and autoimmune hemolytic anemia among 120 908 US veterans with hepatitis C virus infection. Arch Intern Med 2009;169:357-63. (Abstract)

Cholongitas E, Theocharidou E, Goulis J, Tsochatzis E, Akriviadis E, Burroughs AK. Review article: the extra-skeletal effects of vitamin D in chronic hepatitis C infection. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2012;35:634-46.

Colantoni A, De Maria N, Idilman R, Van Thiel DH. Polymerase chain reaction for the detection of HCV-RNA: cryoglobulinaemia as a cause for false negative results. Ital J Gastroenterol Hepatol 1997;29:273-77. (Abstract)

Cormier EG, Tsamis F, Kajumo F, Durso RJ, Gardner JP, Dragic T. CD81 is an entry coreceptor for hepatitis C virus. Proc Natl Acad Sci US 2004;101:7270-4. (Abstract)

Craxì A, Laffi G, Zignego AL. Hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection: a systemic disease. Mol Aspects Med 2008;29:85-95. (Abstract)
Daghestani L, Pomeroy C. Renal manifestations of hepatitis C infection. Am J Med 1999;106:347-54. (Abstract)
De Almeida AJ, Campos-de-Magalhaes M, Okawa MY, Vieira de Oliveira R, et al. Hepatitis C virus-associated thrombocytopenia: a controlled prospective, virological study. Ann Hematol 2004;83:434-40. (Abstract)
De la Serna-Higuera C, Bárcena-Marugán R, Sanz-de Villalobos E. Hemolytic anemia secondary to alpha-interferon treatment in a patient with chronic C hepatitis. J Clin Gastroenterol 1999;28:358-9. (Abstract)
Drugs at FDA. Eltrombopag olamine, NDA 022291. http://www.accessdata.fda.gov/scripts/cder/drugsatfda/index.cfm?fuseaction=Search.Label_ApprovalHistory#labelinfo
Doutrelepont J-M, Adler M, Willems M, Durez P, Yap SH. Hepatitis C virus infection and membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis. Lancet 1993;341:317. (Abstract)
Duberg AS, Nordström M, Törner A, Reichard O, Strauss R, Janzon R, et al. Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma and other nonhepatic malignancies in Swedish patients with hepatitis C virus infection. Hepatology 2005;41:652-59. (Abstract)
Fabrizi F, Lunghi G, Messa P, Martin P. Therapy of hepatitis C virus-associated glomerulonephritis: current approaches. J Nephrol 2008;21:813-25. (Abstract)
Fargion S, Piperno A, Cappellini MD, et al. Hepatitis C virus and porphyria cutanea tarda: evidence of a strong association. Hepatology 1992;16:1322-6. (Abstract)
Fattovich G, Giustina G, Favarato S, Ruol A. A survey of adverse events in 11,241 patients with chronic viral hepatitis treated with alfa interferon. J Hepatol 1996;24:38-47. (Abstract)
Fernandéz A. An unusual case of autoimmune hemolytic anemia in treatment naïve hepatitis C virus infection. Hematology 2006;11:385-87. (Abstract)
Ferri C, La Civita L, Fazzi P, Solfanelli S, Lombardini F, Begliomini E, et al. Intestinal lung fibrosis and rheumatic disorders in patients with hepatitis C virus infection. Br J Rheumatol 1997;36:360-65. (Abstract)
Ferri C, Sebastiani M, Guiggiolo D, Cazzato M, Longombardo G, Antonelli A, et al. Mixed cryoglobulinaemia: demographic, clinical, and serologic features and survival in 231 patients. Semin Arthritis Rheum 2004;33:355-74. (Abstract)
Ferri C, Antonelli A, Mascia M.T, et al. B cells and mixed cryoglobulinemia. Autoimmun Rev 2007;7:114-20. (Abstract)
Fletcher NF, Wilson GK, Murray J, Hu K, Lewis A, Reynolds GM, et al. Hepatitis C Virus Infects the Endothelial Cells of the Blood-Brain Barrier. Gastroenterol 2012;142:634-43.
Forton DM, Allsop JM, Main J, et al. Evidence for a cerebral effect of the hepatitis C virus. Lancet 2001;358:38-9. (Abstract)
Forton DM, Taylor-Robinson SD, Thomas HC. Cerebral dysfunction in chronic hepatitis C infection. J Viral Hepat 2003;10:81-6. (Abstract)
Gandolfo S, Carrozzo M. Lichen planus and hepatitis C virus infection. Minerva Gastroenterol Dietol 2002;48:89. (Abstract)
García-Suárez J, Burgaleta C, Hernanz N, Albarran F, Tobaruela P, Alvarez-Mon M. HCV-associated thrombocytopenia: clinical characteristics and platelet response after recombinant alpha2b-interferon therapy. Br J Haematol 2000;110:98-103 (Abstract)
Garini G, Allegri L, Lannuzzella F, Vaglio A, Buzio C. HCV-related cryoglobulinemic glomerulonephritis: implications of antiviral and immunosuppressive therapies. Acta Biomed 2007;78:51-9. (Abstract)
Giannelli F, Moscarella S, Giannini C, Caini P, Monti M, et al. Effect of antiviral treatment in patients with chronic HCV infection and t(14;18) translocation. Blood 2003;102:1196-201. (Abstract)
Giordano TP, Henderson L, Landgren O, Chiao EY, Kramer JR, El-Serag H, Engels EA. Risk of non-Hodgkin lymphoma and lymphoproliferative precursor diseases in US veterans with hepatitis C virus. JAMA 2007;297:2010-7. (Abstract)
Hadziyannis SJ. Skin diseases associated with hepatitis C virus infection. J Eur Acad Dermatol Venereol 1998;10:12-21. (Abstract)
Hui JM, Sud A, Farrell GC, Bandara P, et al. Insulin resistance is associated with chronic hepatitis C virus infection and fibrosis progression. Gastroenterology 2003;125 :1695-704. (Abstract)

Iga D, Tomimatsu M, Endo H, Ohkawa S-I, Yamada O. Improvement of thrombocytopenia with disappearance of HCV RNA in patients treated by interferon-a therapy: possible etiology of HCV-associated immune thrombocytopenia. Eur J Haematol 2005;75:417-23. (Abstract)

Imazeki F, Yokosuka O, Fukai K, Kanda T, Kojima H, Saisho H. Prevalence of diabetes mellitus and insulin resistance in patients with chronic hepatitis C: comparison with hepatitis B virus-infected and hepatitis C virus-cleared patients. Liver international 2008;28:355-62. (Abstract)

Ingafou M, Porter SR, Scully C, Teo CG. No evidence of HCV infection or liver disease in British patients with oral lichen planus. Int J Oral Maxillofac Surg 1998;27:65-6. (Abstract)

Kamar N, Rostaing L, Alric L. Treatment of hepatitis C-virus-related glomerulonephritis. Kidney Int 2006;69:436-9. (Abstract)

Kawaguchi T, Yoshida T, Harada M, Hisamoto T, Nagao Y, et al. Hepatitis C virus down-regulates insulin receptor substrates 1 and 2 through up-regulation of suppressor of cytokine signaling 3. Am J Pathol 2004;165:1499-508. (Abstract)

Kawaguchi T, Ide T, Taniguchi E, et al. Clearance of HCV improves insulin resistance, ß-cell function, and hepatic expression of insulin receptor substrates 1 and 2. Am J Gastroenterol 2007;102:1-7. (Abstract)

Khiani V, Kelly T, Adeel S, Jensen D, Mohanty SR. Acute inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy associated with pegylated interferon a 2a therapy for chronic hepatitis C virus infection. World J Gastroenterol 2008;14:318-21. (Abstract)

Knobler H, Schihmanter R, Zifroni A, Fenakel G, Schattner A. Increased risk of diabetes in noncirrhotic patients with chronic hepatitis C virus infection. Mayo Clin Proc 2000;75:355-9. (Abstract)

Koskinas J, Kilidireas C, Karandreas N, Kountouras D, Savvas S, et al. Severe hepatitis C virus-related cryoglobulinaemic sensory-motor polyneuropathy treated with pegylated interferon-a2b and ribavirin: clinical, laboratory and neurophysiological study. Liver Int 2007;27:414-20. (Abstract)

Levine JW, Gota C, Fessler BJ, et al. Persistent cryoglobulinemic vasculitis following successful treatment of hepatitis C virus. J Rheumatol 2005;32:1164-7. (Abstract)

Lidove O, Cacoub P, Maisonobe T, Servan J, Thibault V, Piette JC, et al. Hepatitis C virus infection with peripheral neuropathy is not always associated with cryoglobulinaemia. Ann Rheum Dis 2001;60:290-2. (Abstract)

Lunel F, Musset L, Cacoub P, Franguel L, Cresta P, Perri M, et al. Cryoglobulinemia in chronic liver diseases: role of hepatitis C virus and liver damage. Gastroenterology 1994;106:1291-300. (Abstract)

Machida K, Cheng KT, Sung VM, Shimodaira S, Lindsay KL, et al. Hepatitis C virus induces a mutator phenotype: enhanced mutations of immunoglobulin and protooncogenes. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2004;101:4262-7. (Abstract)

Mason AL, Lau JY, Hoang N, et al. Association of diabetes mellitus and chronic hepatitis C virus infection. Hepatology 1999;29:328-33. (Abstract)

Marazuela M, Garcia-Buey L, Gonzalez-Fernandez B, et al. Thyroid autoimmune disorders in patients with chronic hepatitis C before and during interferon-alpha therapy. Clinical Endocrinology 1996;44:635-42. (Abstract)

Margin S, Craxi A, Fabiano C, et al. Hepatitis C viraemia in chronic liver disease: relationship to interferon alpha or corticosteroid treatment. Hepatology 1994;19:273-9. (Abstract)

Matsumori A, Yutani C, Ikeda Y, Kawai S, Sasayama S. Hepatitis C virus from the hearts of patients with myocarditis and cardiomyopathy. Lab Invest 2000;80:1137-42. (Abstract)

Matsuo K, Kusano A, Sugumar A, Nakamura S, Tajima K, Mueller NE. Effect of hepatitis C virus infection on the risk of non-Hodgkin's lymphoma: a meta-analysis of epidemiological studies. Cancer Sci 2004;95:745-52. (Abstract)

McGuire BM, Julian BA, Bynon JS Jr, Cook WJ, King SJ, Curtis JJ, et al. Brief communication: Glomerulonephritis in patients with hepatitis C cirrhosis undergoing liver transplantation. Ann Intern Med 2006;144:735-41. (Abstract)

McHutchison JG, Dusheiko G, Shiffman ML, Rodriguez-Torres M, Sigal S, Bourliere M, et al. Eltrombopag for thrombocytopenia in patients with cirrhosis associated with hepatitis C. N Engl J Med 2007;357:2227-36. (Abstract)

Mele A, Pulsoni A, Bianco E, Musto P, Szklo A, Sanpaolo MG, et al. Hepatitis C virus and B-cell non-Hodgkin lymphomas: an Italian multicenter case-control study. Blood 2003;102:996-9. (Abstract)
Mehta SH, Brancati FL, Strathdee SA, Pankow JS, et al. Hepatitis C virus infection and incident type 2 diabetes. Hepatology 2003;38:50-6. (Abstract)
Moucari R, Asselah T, Cazals-Hatem D, Voitot H, et al. Insulin resistance in chronic hepatitis C: Association with genotypes 1 and 4, serum HCV RNA level, and liver fibrosis. Gastroenterology 2008;134:416-23. (Abstract)
Nagao Y, Sata M, Tanikawa K, Itoh K, Kameyama T. Lichen planus and hepatitis C virus in the northern Kyushu region of Japan. Eur J Clin Invest 1995;25:910-4. (Abstract)
Nomura H, Tanimoto H, Kajiwara E, Shimono J, Maruyama T, Yamashita N, et al. Factors contributing to ribavirin-induced anemia. J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2004;19:1312-7. (Abstract)
Paydas S, N. Seyrek, G. Gonlusen, Y. Sagliker. The frequencies of hepatitis B virus markers and hepatitis C virus antibody in patients with glomerulonephritis. Nephron 1996;74:617-9. (Abstract)
Perry W, Hilsabeck RC, Hassanein TI. Cognitive dysfunction in chronic hepatitis C: a review. Dig Dis Sci 2008;53:307-21. (Abstract)
Petrarca A, Rigacci L, Caini P, et al. Safety and efficacy of rituximab in patients with hepatitis C virus-related mixed cryoglobulinemia and severe liver disease. Blood 2010;116:335-42. (Abstract)
Plöckinger U, Krüger D, Bergk A, Weich V, Wiedenmann B, Berg T. Hepatitis-C patients have a reduced growth hormone (GH) secretion which improves during long-term therapy with pegylated interferon-a. Am J Gastroenterol 2007;102:2724-31. (Abstract)
Prummel MF, Laurberg P. Interferon-alpha and autoimmune thyroid disease. Thyroid 2003;13:547-51. (Abstract)
Rahman AH, Branch AD. Vitamin D for your patients with chronic hepatitis C? J Hepatol 2013;58:184-9.
Rajan SK, Espina BM, Liebman HA. Hepatitis C virus-related thrombocytopenia: clinical and laboratory characteristics compared with chronic immune thrombocytopenic purpura. Br J Haematol 2005;129:818-24. (Abstract)
Ramos-Casals M, Stone JH, Cid MC, Bosch X. The cryoglobulinaemias. Lancet 2012;379:348-60.
Ray RB, Meyer K, Ray R. Suppression of apoptotic cell death by hepatitis C virus core protein. Virology 1996;226:176-82. (Abstract)
Roccatello D, Baldovino S, Rossi D, Mansouri M, Naretto C, et al. Long-term effects of anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody treatment of cryoglobulinaemic glomerulonephritis. Nephrol Dial Transplant 2004;19:3054-61. (Abstract)
Roccatello D, Baldovino S, Rossi D, Giachino O, Mansouri M, et al. Rituximab as a Therapeutic Tool in Severe Mixed Cryoglobulinemia. Clin Rev Allergy Immunol 2008;34:111-7. (Abstract)
Rollino C., D. Roccatello, O Giachino, B. Basolo, G. Piccoli. Hepatitis C virus Infection and membranous glomerulonephritis. Nephron 1991;59:319-20. (Abstract)
Roque Afonso AM, Jiang J, Penin F, Tareau C, Samuel D, Petit MA, et al. Nonrandom distribution of hepatitis C virus quasispecies in plasma and peripheral blood mononuclear cell subsets.J Virol 1999;73:9213-21. (Abstract)
Saadoun D, Asselah T, Resche-Rigon M, Bedossa P, Valla D, et al. Cryoglobulinemia is associated with steatosis and fibrosis in chronic hepatitis C. Hepatology 2006;43:1337-45. (Abstract)
Saadoun D, Resche-Rigon M, Sene D, Perard L, Piette JC, Cacoub P. Rituximab combined with Peg-Interferon-Ribavirin in refractory HCV-associated cryoglobulinemia vasculitis. Ann Rheum Dis 2008;67:1431-36. (Abstract)
Saadoun D, Rosenzwajg M, Joly F, et al. Regulatory T-cell responses to low-dose interleukin-2 in HCV-induced vasculitis. N Engl J Med 2011;365:2067-77. (Abstract)
Sabry AA, Sobh MA, Sheaashaa HA, Kudesia G, Wild G, Fox S, et al. Effect of combination therapy (ribavirin and interferon) in HCV-related glomerulopathy. Nephrol Dial Transplant 2002;17:1924-30. (Abstract)
Sakamuro D, Furukawa T, Takegami T. Hepatitis C virus nonstructural protein NS3 transforms NIH 3T3 cells. J Virol 1995;69:3893-6. (Abstract)

Sansonno D, Gesualdo L, Manno C, Schena FP, Dammacco F. Hepatitis C virus-related proteins in kidney tissue from hepatitis C virus-infected patients with cryoglobulinemic membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis. Hepatology 1997;25, 1237-44. (Abstract)
Sansonno D, De Re V, Lauletta G, Tucci FA, Boiocchi M, Dammacco F. Monoclonal antibody treatment of mixed cryoglobulinemia resistant to interferon alpha with an anti-CD20. Blood 2003;101:3818-26. (Abstract)
Senzolo M, Schiff S, D'Aloiso CM, Crivellin C, Cholongitas E, Burra P, et al. Neuropsychological alterations in hepatitis C infection : The role of inflammation. World J Gastroenterol 2011;17:3369-74.
Shlomai A, Rechtman MM, Burdelova EO, Zilberberg A, Hoffman S, Solar I, et al. The metabolic regulator PGC-1α links hepatitis C virus infection to hepatic insulin resistance. J Hepatol 2012;57:867-73.
Silvestri F, Barillari G, Fanin R, Pipan C, Falasca E, Salmaso F, et al. Hepatitis C virus infection among cryoglobulinemic and non-cryoglobulinemic B-cell non-Hodgkin's lymphomas. Haematologica 1997;82:314-7. (Abstract)
Srinivasan R. Autoimmune hemolytic anemia in treatment naïve chronic hepatitis C infection. J Clin Gastroenterol 2001;32:245-7. (Abstract)
Stölzel U, Köstler E, Koszka C, Stöffler-Meilicke M, Schuppan D, Somasundaram R, et al. Low prevalence of hepatitis C virus infection in porphyria cutanea tarda in Germany. Hepatology 1995;21:1500-3. (Abstract)
Takehara K, Otsuka T, Arai T, Matsuzaki Y, et al. Detection of hepatitis C virus (HCV) in platelets of type C chronic liver diseases by polymerase chain reaction (PCR). Gastroenterology 1994;106:A995.
Tarantino A, Campise M, Banfi G, Confalonieri R, Bucci A, Montoli A, et al. Long-term predictors of survival in essential mixed cryoglobulinemic glomerulonephritis. Kidney Int 1995;47:618-23. (Abstract)
Tembl JI, Ferrer JM, Sevilla MT, Lago A, Mayordomo F, Vilchez JJ. Neurologic complications associated with hepatitis C virus infection. Neurology 1999;19:889-95. (Abstract)
Ueda T, Ohta K, Suzuki N, Yamaguchi M, Hirai K, et al. Idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis and high prevalence of serum antibodies to hepatitis C virus. Am Rev respire Dis 1992;146:266-8. (Abstract)
Vallisa D, Bernuzzi P, Arcaini L, Sacchi S, Callea V, Marasca R, et al. Role of anti-hepatitis C virus (HCV) treatment in HCV-related, low-grade, B-cell, non-Hodgkin's lymphoma: a multicenter Italian experience. J Clin Oncol 2005;23:468-73. (Abstract)
van Leusen R, Adang RP, de Vries RA, Cnossen TT, Konings CJ, Schalm SW, Tan AC. Pegylated interferon alfa-2a (40 kD) and ribavirin in haemodialysis patients with chronic hepatitis C. Nephrol Dial Transplant 2008;23:721-5 (Abstract)
Vezali E, Elefsiniotis I, Mihas C, Konstantinou E, Saroglou G. Thyroid dysfunction in patients with chronic hepatitis C: Virus-or therapy-related? J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2009;24:1024-9. (Abstract)
Vigano M, Lampertico P, Rumi MG, Folli C, Maggioni L, et al. Natural history and clinical impact of cryoglobulins in chronic Hepatitis C: 10-year prospective study of 343 patients. Gastroenterology 2007;133:835-42. (Abstract)
Wang CS, Yao WJ, Wang ST, Chang TT, Chou P. Strong association of Hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection and thrombocytopenia: implications from a survey of a community with hyperendemic HCV infection. Clin Infect Dis 2004;39:790-6. (Abstract)
Weiner SM, Berg T, Berthold C, Weber S, Peters T, Blum H, et al. A clinical and virological study of hepatitis C virus-related cryoglobulinemia in Germany. J Hepatol 1998;29:375-84 (Abstract)
Weissenborn K, Ennen JC, Bokemeyer M, Ahl B, Wurster U, Tillmann H, et al. Monoaminergic neurotransmission is altered in hepatitis C virus infected patients with chronic fatigue and cognitive impairment. Gut. 2006;55:1624-30. (Abstract)
Weitz IC. Treatment of immune thrombocytopenia associated with interferon therapy of hepatitis C with the anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody, rituximab. Am J Hematol 2005;78:138-41. (Abstract)
White DL, Ratziu V, El-Serag HB. Hepatitis C infection and risk of diabetes: A systematic review and meta-analysis. J Hepatol 2008;49:831-44. (Abstract)
Wintrobe M, Buell M. Hyperproteinemia associated with multiple myeloma. With report of a case in which extraordinary hyperproteinemia was associated with thrombosis of the

retinal veins and symptoms suggesting Raynoud's disease. Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 1933;52:156-65.
Wong VS, Egner W, Elsey T, Brown D, Alexander GJ. Incidence, character and clinical relevance of mixed cryoglobulinaemia in patients with chronic hepatitis C virus infection. Clin Exp Immunol 1996;104:25-31. (Abstract)
Yamaguchi S, Kubo K, Fujimoto K, Hanaoka M, Hayasaka M, et al. Bronchoalveolar lavage fluid findings in patients with chronic hepatitis C before and after treatment with interferon alpha. Thorax 1997;52:33-7. (Abstract)
Zhang W, Rao HY, Feng B, Liu F, Wei L. Effects of Interferon-Alpha Treatment on the Incidence of Hyperglycemia in Chronic Hepatitis C Patients: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. PloS One 2012;7:e39272.
Zignego AL, Macchia D, Monti M, Thiers V, Mazzetti M, Foschi M, et al. Infection of peripheral mononuclear blood cells by hepatitis C virus. J Hepatol 1992;382-6. (Abstract)
Zignego AL, Giannelli F, Marrocchi ME, Mazzocca A, Ferri C, Giannini C, et al. T(14;18) translocation in chronic hepatitis C virus infection. Hepatology 2000;31:474-9. (Abstract)
Zignego AL, Ferri C, Pileri SA, Caini P, Bianchi FB. Extrahepatic manifestations of the Hepatitis C Virus infection: a general overview and guidelines for clinical approach. Dig Liver Dis 2007a;39:2-17 (Abstract)
Zignego AL, Giannini C, Ferri C. Hepatitis C virus-related lymphoproliferative disorders: an overview. World J Gastroenterol 2007b;13:2467-78. (Abstract)
Zignego AL, Cozzi A, Carpenedo R, Giannini C, Rosselli M, Biagioli T, et al. HCV patients, psychopathology and tryptophan metabolism: analysis of the effects of pegylated interferon plus ribavirin treatment. Dig Liver Dis 2007c;39:107-11. (Abstract)

16. Management of HBV/HIV coinfection

Stefan Mauss and Jürgen Kurt Rockstroh

Introduction

The prevalence and transmission routes of HBV coinfection in the HIV+ population vary substantially by geographic region (Alter 2006, Konopnicki 2005). In the United States and Europe the majority of HIV+ homosexual men have evidence of past HBV infection, and 5-10% show persistence of HBs antigen with or without replicative hepatitis B as defined by the presence of HBV DNA (Konopnicki 2005). Overall, rates of HBV/HIV coinfection are slightly lower among intravenous drug users compared to homosexual men and much lower among people infected through heterosexual contact (Núñez 2005).

In endemic regions of Africa and Asia, the majority of HBV infections are transmitted vertically at birth or before the age of 5 through close contact within households, medical procedures and traditional scarification (Modi 2007). The prevalence among youth in some Asian countries has substantially decreased since the introduction of vaccination on nationwide scales (Shepard 2006). In Europe vaccination of children and members of risk groups is reimbursed by health care systems in most countries.

The natural history of hepatitis B is altered by simultaneous infection with HIV. Immune control of HBV is negatively affected leading to a reduction of HBs antigen seroconversion. If HBV persists, the HBV DNA levels are generally higher in HIV-infected patients not on antiretroviral therapy (Bodsworth 1989, Bodsworth 1991, Hadler 1991). In addition, with progression of cellular immune deficiency, reactivation of HBV replication despite previous HBs antigen seroconversion may occur (Soriano 2005). However after immune recovery due to antiretroviral therapy HBe antigen and HBs antigen seroconversion do occur in a higher proportion of patients compared to seroconversion rates in HBV monoinfected patients treated for chronic hepatitis B (Schmutz 2006, Piroth 2010, Kosi 2012).

In the untreated HIV+ population, faster progression to liver cirrhosis is reported for HBV/HIV-coinfected patients (Puoti 2006). Moreover, hepatocellular carcinoma may develop at an earlier age and is more aggressive in this population (Puoti 2004, Brau 2007).

Being HBV-coinfected results in increased mortality for HIV+ individuals, even after the introduction of highly active antiretroviral combination therapy (HAART),

as demonstrated by an analysis of the EuroSIDA Study, which shows a 3.6-fold higher risk of liver-related deaths among HBsAg-positive patients compared to HBsAg-negative individuals (Konopnicki 2005, Nikolopoulos 2009) (Figure 1). In the Multicentre AIDS Cohort Study (MACS), an 8-fold increased risk of liver-related mortality was seen among HBV/HIV-coinfected compared to HIV-monoinfected individuals, particularly among subjects with low nadir CD4+ cell counts (Thio 2002). An independent observation from a large cohort confirming this association is the reduction in mortality for HBV/HIV-coinfected patients treated with lamivudine compared to untreated patients (Puoti 2007). This result is even more remarkable because lamivudine is one of the least effective HBV polymerase inhibitors due to the rather rapid development of resistance. In general, because of its limited long-term efficacy, lamivudine monotherapy for HBV cannot be considered as appropriate therapy (Matthews 2011).

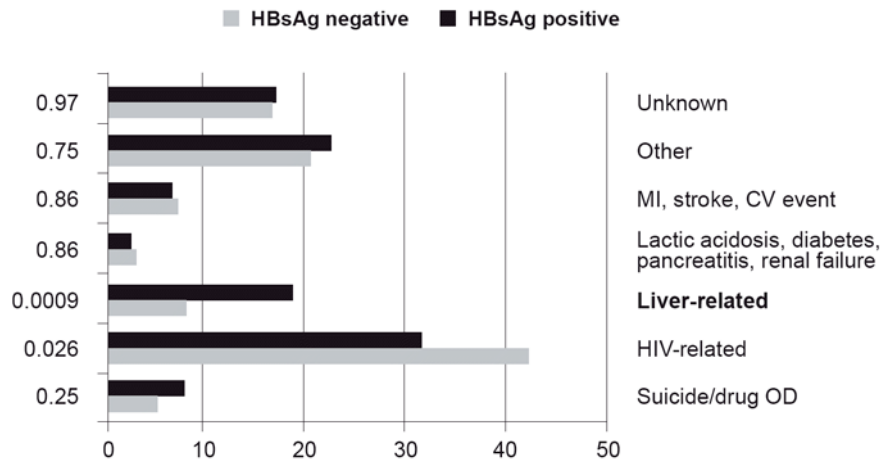


Figure 1. Association of HBV/HIV coinfection and mortality (Konopnicki 2005). More than one cause of death allowed per patient; p-values from chi-squared tests.

These two large cohort studies (EuroSIDA and MACS) plus data from HBV monoinfection studies showing a reduction in morbidity and mortality justify treatment of hepatitis B in HBV/HIV-coinfected patients. HBV is often treated simultaneously with HIV, as some nucleoside and nucleotide reverse transcriptase inhibitors are active as HBV polymerase inhibitors as well. Therefore, antiretroviral therapy should be adjusted according to HBV status wherever possible to avoid higher pill burden and additional toxicities. A rare but more challenging situation is the initiation of HBV therapy in HIV-coinfected individuals who are not on antiretroviral therapy. Treatment with interferon is one possible therapeutic option in this situation. Chances of a successful treatment outcome of an IFN-based therapy are low in HIV/HBV-coinfected patients and is only warranted if several positive predictive factors such as low HBV viral load, elevated transaminases and/or a genotype A or B infection are present. The alternative is to start with an

HBV polymerase inhibitor monotherapy, which may be limited by the appearance of HIV resistance due to its simultaneous action as an HIV reverse transcriptase inhibitor.

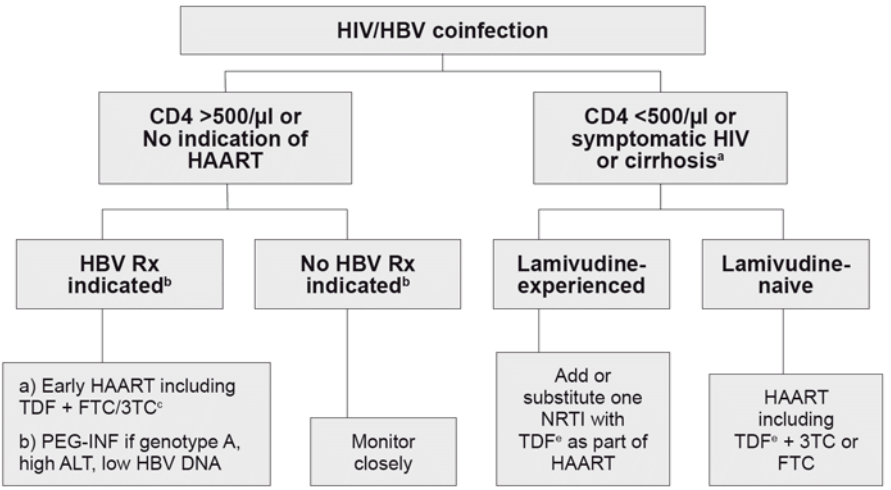


Figure 2. Treatment algorithm for HBV therapy in HIV-coinfected patients (EACS 2013)

a) Cirrhotic patients should be referred for variceal assessment, have regular HCC monitoring and be referred early for transplant assessment.

b) See Fig. 5 for assessment of HBV Rx indication. Some experts strongly think that any HBV-infected patient requiring HAART should receive TDF + 3TC or FTC unless history of TDF intolerance, particularly in HIV/HBV coinfected patients with advanced liver fibrosis (F3/F4).

c) If patient is unwilling to go on early HAART, adefovir or telbivudine may be used as an alternative to control HBV alone. *In vitro* data using an assay able to demonstrate anti-HIV activity of entecavir failed to detect an influence of telbivudine on the replicative capacity of HIV-1. Treatment duration: in patients not requiring HAART and on treatment with telbivudine +/– adefovir, or those on HAART where nucleoside backbone needs changing, anti-HBV therapy may be stopped cautiously in HBeAg+ patients who have achieved HBe seroconversion or preferably HBs loss or seroconversion.

d) Treatment length: 48 weeks for PEG-INF; on-treatment quantification of HBsAg in patients with HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B treated with PEG-INF may help identify those likely to reach HBs-antigen seroconversion with this therapy and optimize treatment strategies. Teatment may be stopped early in patients not showing a decline of quantitated HBsAg during the first 12 weeks.

e) In some cases of tenofovir intolerance (i.e., renal disease), entecavir or tenofovir in doses adjusted to renal clearance in combination with effective HAART may be advisable. NRTI substitution should only be performed if feasible and appropriate from the perspective of maintaining HIV suppression. Caution is warranted in switching from a tenofovir-based regimen to drugs with a lower genetic barrier, e.g., FTC/3TC, in particular in lamivudine-pretreated cirrhotic patients, as viral breakthrough due to archived YMDD mutations has been observed. This has also been described in individuals with previous 3TC HBV resistance who have been switched from tenofovir to entecavir

HBV therapy in HBV/HIV-coinfected patients without HIV therapy

The recommendations of the updated European AIDS Clinical Society (EACS) for the treatment of chronic hepatitis B in HIV-coinfected patients without antiretroviral therapy are shown in Figure 2 (EACS 2013). Starting hepatitis B therapy depends on the degree of liver fibrosis and the HBV DNA level. Using the level of HBV replication as the basis for treatment decisions is an important change of paradigm in HBV therapy. This decision is based on the results of the REVEAL study (Iloeje 2006). REVEAL followed the natural course of chronic hepatitis B monoinfection without liver cirrhosis in about 3700 Taiwanese patients for more than 10 years. In these HBV-monoinfected patients an HBV DNA of >10,000 copies/ml (i.e., 2000 IU/ml) had a markedly increased risk of developing liver cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma (Figure 3). This association was even observed in patients with normal ALT levels (Chen 2006) (Figure 4).

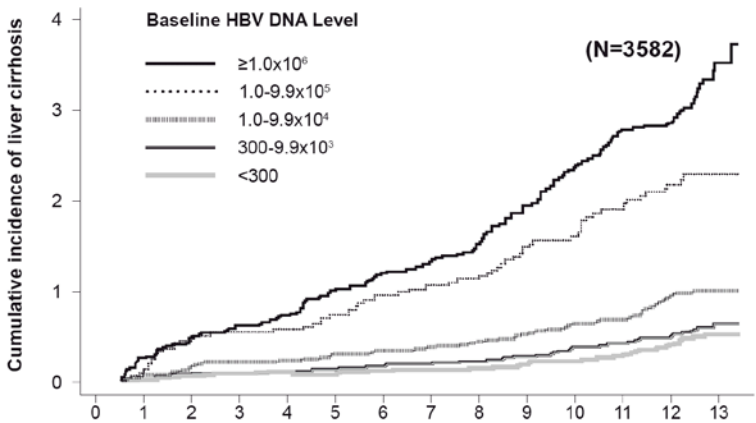


Figure 3. REVEAL Study: Association of HBV DNA levels and liver cirrhosis (Iloeje 2006)

Even though this cohort consisted of Asian patients without HIV coinfection predominantly infected at birth or in early childhood, the results were considered too important not to form part of the management of HIV-coinfected patients.

Usually patients with an HBV DNA of less than 2000 IU/ml have no substantial necroinflammatory activity in the liver and therefore a benign course of fibrosis progression and a low risk for the development of hepatocellular carcinoma. However, especially in patients harbouring HBV precore mutants, fluctuations in HBV DNA and ALT are not rare. Monitoring of the activity of the HBV DNA and ALT accompanied by an abdominal ultrasound every 6-12 months is recommended. In the case of HBV DNA <2000 IU/ml and elevated transaminases and/or signs of advanced liver fibrosis, alternative causes of hepatitis and liver toxicity should be excluded. But in the presence of advanced liver fibrosis antiviral treatment of HBV even in the presence of other concomitant liver disease is recommended to minimise the effect of HBV.

For patients with HBV DNA >2000 IU/ml the ALT level is the next decision criterion. Patients with normal ALT should be assessed for liver fibrosis by liver biopsy or elastometry. In case of lack of substantial liver fibrosis (METAVIR stage F0/1) monitoring of the activity of the HBV DNA and ALT accompanied by an ultrasound every 6 months is recommended. In the presence of liver fibrosis of METAVIR F2 or higher, hepatitis B treatment should be initiated.

For patients with HBV DNA >2000 IU/ml and increased ALT, treatment for HBV is an option, particularly in the presence of relevant liver fibrosis.

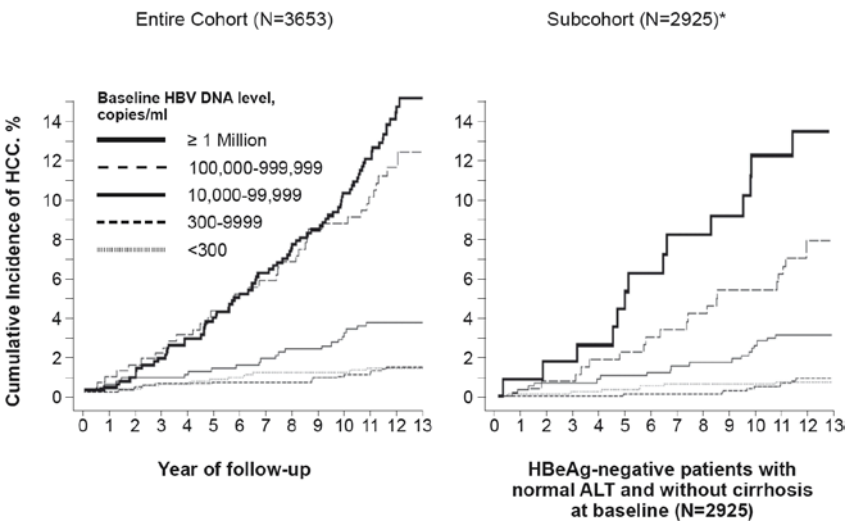


Figure 4. REVEAL Study: Association of HBV DNA with the development of hepatocellular carcinoma (Chen 2006)

In patients not taking antiretroviral therapy, pegylated interferon α-2a or -2b seems a suitable option. However, data in the literature for HIV-coinfected patients on interferon therapy for HBV infection are limited and not very encouraging (Núñez 2003). For pegylated interferons no data from larger cohorts exist and one study combining pegylated interferon with adefovir did not show encouraging results (Ingiliz 2008). Favourable factors for treatment success with interferon are low HBV DNA, increased ALT, HBV genotype A or infection with HBV wild type.

Alternatively patients can be treated with HBV polymerase inhibitors. However, due to their antiretroviral activity tenofovir, emtricitabine and lamivudine are contraindicated in the absence of effective HIV therapy. In contrast to *in vitro* data reported by the manufacturer, antiretroviral activity and induction of the HIV reverse transcriptase mutation M184V was reported for entecavir (MacMahon 2007). Currently only telbivudine and adefovir are considered reasonably safe treatment options. There is limited *in vivo* data for adefovir to support this recommendation (Delaugerre 2002, Sheldon 2005). For telbivudine *in vitro* data show a specific inhibitory activity on the HBV polymerase and no effect on HIV (Avilla 2009).

Because of its greater antiviral efficacy, telbivudine is preferred by most experts to adefovir (Chan 2007). Alternatively an add-on strategy of telbivudine to adefovir in the case of not fully suppressive antiviral therapy or primary combination therapy of both drugs can be considered although clinical data are not yet available for this strategy.

As both drugs have limitations in the setting of HBV-monoinfected patients due to considerable development of resistance to telbivudine and the limited antiviral efficacy of adefovir, the initiation of antiretroviral therapy using tenofovir plus lamivudine or emtricitabine may be the preferred choice, particularly in HIV-coinfected patients with advanced liver fibrosis.

Treatment duration is determined by HBe antigen or HBs antigen seroconversion, as in HBV-monoinfected patients. In case of infection with a precore mutant HBs antigen seroconversion is the only biological endpoint.

Treatment of chronic hepatitis B in HBV/HIV-coinfected patients on antiretroviral therapy

For patients on antiretroviral therapy a wider choice of HBV polymerase inhibitors is available. In principle, the treatment algorithm of Figure 5 is based on the same principles as outlined above (EACS 2013).

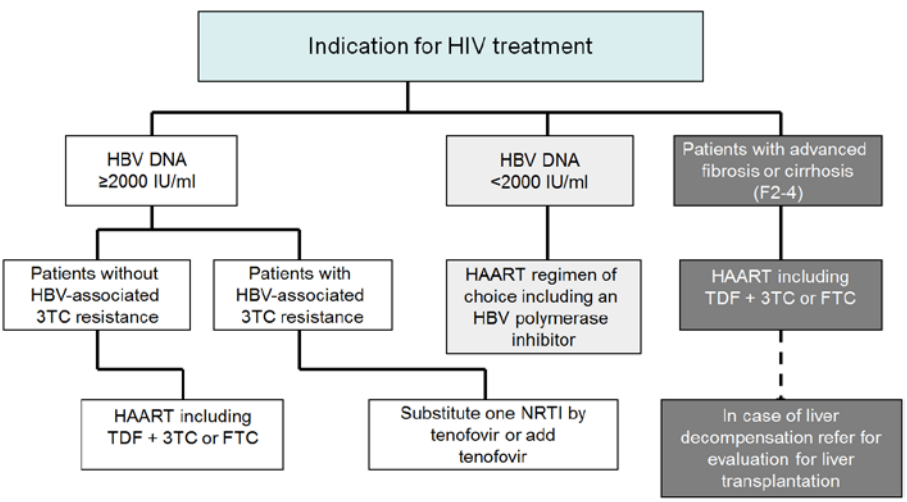


Figure 5. Treatment algorithm for HBV therapy in patients on antiretroviral therapy (EACS 2013)

For patients with HBV DNA <2000 IU/ml and no relevant liver fibrosis, no specific antiretroviral regimen is recommended. However due to the favourable resistance profile for HBV a reimen including tenofovir is the first choice. When choosing an HBV polymerase inhibitor, complete suppression of HBV DNA is important to avoid the development of HBV resistance mutations.

The activity of the HBV infection in these patients with low replicative activity of HBV should be assessed at least every six months as part of routine monitoring of the HIV infection including an ultrasound each six months due to the increased risk of the development of hepatocellular carcinoma.

When HBV DNA is above 2000 IU/ml in treatment naïve patients a combination of tenofovir plus lamivudine/emtricitabine to treat both infections is recommended. Even for patients who harbour lamivudine-, telbivudine or adefovir-resistant HBV due to previous therapies this strategy stands. The recommendation to continue lamivudine/emtricitabine is based on the delay of resistance to adefovir seen when doing so (Lampertico 2007), but has not been proven to have the same effect in combination with tenofovir.

Initiating antiretroviral therapy with tenofovir resulted in higher rates of HBe antigen loss and seroconversion as expected from HBV-monoinfected patients (Schmutz 2006, Piroth 2010, Kosi 2012). This may be due to the additional effect of immune reconstitution in HIV-coinfected patients adding another aspect to the immunological control of HBV replication.

For patients with advanced liver fibrosis or liver cirrhosis a maximally active continuous HBV polymerase inhibitor therapy is important to avoid further fibrosis progression, hepatic decompensation and to reduce the risk of developing hepatocellular carcinoma. Tenofovir plus lamivudine/emtricitabine is the treatment of choice. If the results are not fully suppressive, adding entecavir should be considered (Ratcliffe 2011). Recently a reduction in the incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma has been shown for patients on HBV polymerase inhibitors compared to untreated patients strengthening the antiproliferative effects of suppressive antiviral therapy (Hosaka 2012).

At least every six months, assessement of the liver by ultrasound for early detection of hepatocellular carcinoma is necessary. In patients with advanced cirrhosis esophagogastroscopy should be performed as screening for esophageal varices. For patients with hepatic decompensation and full treatment options for HBV and stable HIV infection, liver transplantation should be considered, as post transplant life expectancy seems to be the same as for HBV-monoinfected patients (Coffin 2007, Tateo 2009). Patients with hepatocellular carcinoma may be considered liver transplant candidates as well, although according to preliminary observations from small cohorts, the outcome may be worse than for HBV-monoinfected patients with hepatocellular carcinoma (Vibert 2008).

In general, tenofovir can be considererd the standard of care for HBV in HIV-coinfected patients, because of its strong HBV polymerase activity and antiretroviral efficacy. Tenofovir has been a long-acting and effective therapy in the vast majority of treated HBV/HIV-coinfected patients (van Bömmel 2004, Mathews 2009, Martin-Carbonero 2011, Thibaut 2011). Its antiviral efficacy is not impaired in HBV/HIV-coinfected compared to HBV-monoinfected patients (Plaza 2013). No conclusive pattern of resistance mutations has been identified in studies or cohorts (Snow-Lampart 2011), but in principle resistance may occur in patients on long-term therapy, as with any other antiviral. In prospective controlled studies tenofovir was clearly superior to adefovir for the treatment of HBe antigen-positive and HBe antigen-negative patients (Marcellin 2008).

The acquisition of adefovir resistance mutations and multiple lamivudine resistance mutations may impair the activity of tenofovir (Fung 2005, Lada 2012, van Bömmel 2010), although even in these situations tenofovir retains sufficient activity against HBV (Berg 2010, Paterson 2011, Petersen 2012).

In lamivudine-resistant HBV the antiviral efficacy of entecavir in HIV-coinfected patients is reduced, as it is in HBV monoinfection (Shermann 2008). Because of this and the property of tenofovir as an approved antiretroviral, tenofovir is the preferred choice in treatment-naïve HIV-coinfected patients who have an antiretroviral treatment indication. The use of entecavir, telbivudine or adefovir as an add-on to tenofovir or other drugs in the case of not fully suppressive antiviral therapy has not been studied in HIV-coinfected patients so far. The decision to do so is made on a case-by-case basis.

It was a general belief originating from the history of antiretroviral therapy that combination therapy of tenofovir plus lamivudine/emtricitabine would be superior to tenofovir monotherapy, in particular in patients with highly replicative HBV infection. However, to date no conclusive studies supporting this are available (Schmutz 2006, Mathews 2008, Mathews 2009, Price 2013).

In the case of development of HIV resistance to tenofovir it is important to remember its HBV activity before switching to another regimen without antiviral activity against HBV. Discontinuation of the HBV polymerase inhibitor without maintaining the antiviral pressure on HBV can lead to necroinflammatory flares that can result in acute liver decompensation, particularly in patients with liver cirrhosis.

A matter of concern is the potentially nephrotoxic effect of tenofovir. In patients treated with tenofovir monotherapy nephrotoxicity is rarely observed (Heathcote 2011, Mauss 2011). However in HIV-infected patients treated with tenofovir as part of an antiretroviral combination therapy renal impairment has been frequently reported and may be associated in particular with the combined use of tenofovir and HIV protease inhibitors (Mauss 2005, Fux 2007, Goicoecha 2008). Regular monitoring of renal function in HBV/HIV-coinfected patients including estimated glomerular filtration rate and assessment of proteinuria is necessary.

Conclusion

The number of available HBV polymerase inhibitors for chronic hepatitis B has increased substantially over the last few years. In general though, the choice is confined to two mostly non-cross-resistant classes, the nucleotide and nucleoside compounds. In HIV-coinfected patients where antiretroviral therapy is not indicated the choice is more limited with only adefovir and telbivudine as treatment options. Alternative options in these patients may be interferon therapy or the initiation of full antiretroviral therapy, which is currently preferred by most experts, although both toxicities and costs may increase.

For HBV/HIV-coinfected patients on antiretroviral therapy the treatment of choice is tenofovir in the majority of treatment-naïve or lamivudine-pretreated cases. Due to rapid development of resistance in not fully suppressive HBV therapy lamivudine or emtricitabine monotherapy should not be considered in the vast majority of cases. A combination of tenofovir plus lamivudine or emtricitabine as a

primary combination therapy has theoretical advantages, but studies supporting this concept have not been published to date.

In general, treatment of HBV as a viral disease follows the same rules as HIV therapy, aiming at full suppression of the replication of the virus to avoid the development of resistance. Successful viral suppression of hepatitis B results in inhibition of necroinflammatory activity, reversion of fibrosis and the ultimate goal of immune control of the infection.

References

Alter M. Epidemiology of viral hepatitis and HIV co-infection. J Hepatol 2006; 44:6-9. (Abstract)

Lin K, Karwowska S, Lam E, Limoli K, Evans TG, Avila C. Telbivudine exhibits no inhibitory activity against HIV-1 clinical isolates in vitro. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 2010;54:2670-3. (Abstract)

Berg T, Marcellin P, Zoulim F, et al. Tenofovir is effective alone or with emtricitabine in adefovir-treated patients with chronic-hepatitis B virus infection. Gastroenterology 2010;139:1207-17. (Abstract)

Bodsworth N, Donovan B, Nightingale BN. The effect of concurrent human immunodeficiency virus infection on chronic hepatitis B: a study of 150 homosexual men. J Infect Dis 1989;160:577-82. (Abstract)

Bodsworth NJ, Cooper DA, Donovan B. The influence of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 infection on the development of the hepatitis B virus carrier state. J Infect Dis 1991;163:1138-40. (Abstract)

Brau N, Fox R, Xiao P, et al. Presentation and outcome of hepatocellular carcinoma in HIV-infected patients: A US-Canadian multicenter study. J Hepatol 2007;47:527-37. (Abstract)

Chan HL, Heathcote EJ, Marcellin P, et al. Treatment of Hepatitis B e Antigen-Positive Chronic Hepatitis with Telbivudine or Adefovir: A Randomized Trial. Ann Intern Med 2007;147:2-11. (Abstract)

Chen CJ, Yang HI, Su J, Jen CL, et al. REVEAL-HBV Study Group. Risk of hepatocellular carcinoma across a biological gradient of serum hepatitis B virus DNA level. JAMA 2006;4;295:65-73. (Abstract)

Coffin CS, Stock PG, Dove LM, et al. Virologic and clinical outcomes of hepatitis B virus infection in HIV-HBV coinfected transplant recipients. Am J Transplant 2010;10:1268-75. (Abstract)

Delaugerre C, Marcelin AG, Thibault V, et al. Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) Type 1 reverse transcriptase resistance mutations in hepatitis B virus (HBV)-HIV-coinfected patients treated for HBV chronic infection once daily with 10 milligrams of adefovir dipivoxil combined with lamivudine. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 2002;46:1586-8. (Abstract)

EACS guidelines 2013 Version 7.0. http://www.eacsociety.org/Portals/0/Guidelines_Online_131014.pdf

Fung SK, Andreone P, Han SH, et al. Adefovir-resistant hepatitis B can be associated with viral rebound and hepatic decompensation. J Hepatol 2005;43:937-43. (Abstract)

Fux CA, Simcock M, Wolbers M, et al. Swiss HIV Cohort Study. Tenofovir use is associated with a reduction in calculated glomerular filtration rates in the Swiss HIV Cohort Study. Antivir Ther 2007;12:1165-73. (Abstract)

Goicoechea M, Liu S, Best B, et al. California Collaborative Treatment Group 578 Team. Greater tenofovir-associated renal function decline with protease inhibitor-based versus nonnucleoside reverse-transcriptase inhibitor-based therapy. J Infect Dis 2008;197:102-8. (Abstract)

Hadler SC, Judson FN, O'Malley PM, et al. Outcome of hepatitis B virus infection in homosexual men and its relation to prior human immunodeficiency virus infection. J Infect Dis 1991;163:454-9. (Abstract)

Heathcote EJ, Marcellin P, Buti M, et al. Three-year efficacy and safety of tenofovir disoproxil fumarate treatment for chronic hepatitis B. Gastroenterology 2011;140:132-43. (Abstract)

Hosaka T, Suzuki F, Kobayashi M, Seko Y, et al. Long-term entecavir treatment reduces hepatocellular carcinoma incidence in patients with hepatitis B virus infection. Hepatology. 2012. (Abstract)

Iloeje UH, Yang HI, Su J, Jen CL, You SL, Chen CJ. Risk Evaluation of Viral Load Elevation and Associated Liver Disease/Cancer-In HBV (the REVEAL-HBV) Study Group. Predicting cirrhosis risk based on the level of circulating hepatitis B viral load. Gastroenterology 2006;130:678-86. (Abstract)

Ingiliz P, Valantin MA, Thibault V, et al. Efficacy and safety of adefovir dipivoxil plus pegylated interferon-alpha2a for the treatment of lamivudine-resistant hepatitis B virus infection in HIV-infected patients. Antivir Ther 2008;13:895-900. (Abstract)

Konopnicki D, Mocroft A, de Wit S, et al. Hepatitis B and HIV: prevalence, AIDS progression, response to highly active antiretroviral therapy and increased mortality in the EuroSIDA cohort. AIDS 2005;19:593-601. (Abstract)

Kosi L, Reiberger T, Payer BA, et al. Five-year on-treatment efficacy of lamivudine-, tenofovir- and tenofovir + emtricitabine-based HAART in HBV-HIV-coinfected patients. J Viral Hepat. 2012,19(11):801-10.

Lada O, Gervais A, Branger M, et al. Quasispecies analysis and in vitro susceptibility of HBV strains isolated from HIV-HBV-coinfected patients with delayed response to tenofovir. Antivir Ther. 2012;17(1):61-70.

Lampertico P, Viganò M, Manenti E, Iavarone M, Sablon E, Colombo M. Low resistance to adefovir combined with Lamivudine: a 3-year study of 145 Lamivudine-resistant hepatitis B patients. Gastroenterology 2007;133:1445-51. (Abstract)

Marcellin P, Heathcote EJ, Buti M, et al. Tenofovir disoproxil fumarate versus adefovir dipivoxil for chronic hepatitis B. N Engl J, et al. Clinical and virological outcomes in HIV-infected patients with chronic hepatitis B on long-term nucleos(t)ide analogues. AIDS 2011;25:73-9.

Matthews GV, Avihingsanon A, Lewin SR, et al. A randomized trial of combination hepatitis B therapy in HIV/HBV coinfected antiretroviral naïve individuals in Thailand. Hepatology 2008;48:1062-9. (Abstract)

Matthews GV, Seaberg E, Dore GJ, Bowden S, Lewin SR, Sasadeusz J, et al. Combination HBV therapy is linked to greater HBV DNA suppression in a cohort of lamivudine-experienced HIV/HBV coinfected individuals. AIDS 2009;23:1707-15. (Abstract)

Matthews GV, Manzini P, Hu Z, et al. Impact of lamivudine on HIV and hepatitis B virus-related outcomes in HIV/hepatitis B virus individuals in a randomized clinical trial of antiretroviral therapy in southern Africa. AIDS 2011;25:1727-35. (Abstract)

Mauss S, Berger F, Schmutz G. Antiretroviral therapy with tenofovir is associated with mild renal dysfunction. AIDS 2005;19:93-5. (Abstract)

Mauss S, Berger F, Filmann N, et al. Effect of HBV polymerase inhibitors on renal function in patients with chronic hepatitis B. J Hepatol 2011;55:1235-40. (Abstract)

McMahon MA, Jilek BL, Brennan TP, et al. The HBV drug entecavir - effects on HIV-1 replication and resistance. N Engl J Med 2007;356:2614-21. (Abstract)

Modi A, Feld J. Viral hepatitis and HIV in Africa. AIDS Rev 2007;9:25-39. (Abstract)

Núñez M, Puoti M, Camino N, Soriano V. Treatment of chronic hepatitis B in the human immunodeficiency virus-infected patient: present and future. Clin Infect Dis 2003;37:1678-85. (Abstract)

Nikolopoulos GK, Paraskevis D, Hatzitheodorou E, et al. Impact of hepatitis B virus infection on the progression of AIDS and mortality in HIV-infected individuals: a cohort study and meta-analysis. Clin Infect Dis 2009;48:1763-71. (Abstract)

Núñez M, Soriano V. Management of patients co-infected with hepatitis B virus and HIV. Lancet Infect Dis 2005;5:374-82. (Abstract)

Patterson SJ, George J, Strasser SI, et al. Tenofovir disoproxil fumarate rescue therapy following failure of both lamivudine and adefovir dipivoxil in chronic hepatitis B. Gut. 2011;60:247-54. (Abstract)

Petersen J, Ratziu V, Buti M, et al. Entecavir plus tenofovir combination as rescue therapy in pre-treated chronic hepatitis B patients: An international multicenter cohort study. J Hepatol 2012;56(3):520-6. (Abstract)

Piroth L, Pol S, Lacombe K, Miailhes P, et al. Management and treatment of chronic hepatitis B virus infection in HIV positive and negative patients: the EPIB 2008 study. J Hepatol 2010;53:1006-12. (Abstract)

Plaza Z, Aguilera A, Mena A, et al. Influence of HIV infection on response to tenofovir in patients with chronic hepatitis B. AIDS. 2013;27(14):2219-24.
Price H, Dunn D, Pillay D, et al. Suppression of HBV by tenofovir in HBV/HIV coinfected patients: a systematic review and meta-analysis. PLoS One. 2013;8(7): e68152.
Puoti M, Bruno R, Soriano V, et al. Hepatocellular carcinoma in HIV-infected patients: epidemiological features, clinical presentation and outcome. AIDS 2004;18:2285-93. (Abstract)
Puoti M, Cozzi-Lepri A, Arici C, et al. Impact of lamivudine on the risk of liver-related death in 2,041 HBsAg- and HIV-positive individuals: results from an inter-cohort analysis. Antivir Ther 2006;11:567-74. (Abstract)
Puoti M, Torti C, Bruno R. Natural history of chronic hepatitis B in co-infected patients. J Hepatol 2006;44:65-70. (Abstract)
Ratcliffe L, Beadsworth MB, Pennell A, Phillips M, Vilar FJ. Managing hepatitis B/HIV co-infected: adding entecavir to truvada (tenofovir disoproxil/emtricitabine) experienced patients. AIDS 2011;25:1051-6. (Abstract)
Schmutz G, Nelson M, Lutz T, et al. Combination of tenofovir and lamivudine versus tenofovir after lamivudine failure for therapy of hepatitis B in HIV-coinfection. AIDS 2006;20:1951-4.
Sheldon JA, Corral A, Rodés B, et al. Risk of selecting K65R in antiretroviral-naive HIV-infected individuals with chronic hepatitis B treated with adefovir. AIDS 2005;19:2036-8. (Abstract)
Shepard CW, Simard EP, Finelli L, Fiore AE, Bell BP. Hepatitis B virus infection: epidemiology and vaccination. Epidemiol, et al. Entecavir therapy for lamivudine-refractory chronic hepatitis B: improved virologic, biochemical, and serology outcomes through 96 weeks. Hepatology 2008;48:99-108. (Abstract)
Snow-Lampart A, Chappell B, Curtis M, et al. No resistance to tenofovir disoproxil fumarate detected after up to 144 weeks of therapy in patients monoinfected with chronic hepatitis B virus. Hepatology 2011;53:763-73.
Soriano V, Puoti M, Bonacini M. Care of patients with chronic hepatitis B and HIV co-infection: recommendations from an HIV-HBV international panel. AIDS 2005;19:221-240.
Soriano V, Mocroft A, Peters L, et al. Predictors of hepatitis B virus genotype and viraemia in HIV-infected patients with chronic hepatitis B in Europe. J Antimicrob Chemother 2010;65:548-55. (Abstract)
Tateo M, Roque-Afonso AM, Antonini TM, et al. Long-term follow-up of liver transplanted HIV/hepatitis B virus coinfected patients: perfect control of hepatitis B virus replication and absence of mitochondrial toxicity. AIDS 2009;23:1069-76. (Abstract)
Thibault V, Stitou H, Desire N, Valantin MA, Tubiana R, Katlama C. Six-year follow-up of hepatitis B surface antigen concentrations in tenofovir disoproxil fumarate treated HIV-HBV-coinfected patients. Antivir Ther 2011;16:199-205. (Abstract)
Thio C, Seaberg E, Skolasky R. HIV-1, hepatitis B virus, and risk of liver-related mortality in the Multicenter AIDS Cohort Study (MACS). Lancet 2002;360:1921-6. (Abstract)
Van Bömmel F, Wünsche T, Mauss S, et al. Comparison of adefovir and tenofovir in the treatment of lamivudine-resistant hepatitis B virus infection. Hepatology 2004;40:1421-5. (Abstract)
Van Bömmel F, de Man RA, Wedemeyer H, et al. Long-term efficacy of tenofovir monotherapy for hepatitis B virus-monoinfected patients after failure of nucleoside/nucleotide analogues. Hepatology 2010;51:73-80. (Abstract)

17. Management of HCV/HIV Coinfection

Christoph Boesecke, Stefan Mauss, Jürgen Kurt Rockstroh

Epidemiology of HIV and HCV coinfection

HIV and HCV share transmission pathways, which explains the high rate of coinfection with both viruses. Of the 35.3 million HIV-infected persons worldwide in 2012 it is estimated that at least 5 million of them had concomitant hepatitis C virus infection. While both viruses are transmitted with high efficacy via blood-to-blood contact, HCV is less easily transmitted sexually. Thus, the prevalence of hepatitis C coinfection within different countries, regions and populations is closely related to the prevalence of blood-borne transmission (mainly intravenous drug use) of HIV.

Among HIV-infected patients in Europe, Australia and the US, at least one out of four is coinfected with hepatitis C (Rockstroh 2004). Hepatitis C coinfection rates as high as 70% can be found in Eastern European countries like Belarus and the Ukraine and in Middle Eastern countries such as Iran where intravenous drug use (IVDU) is the main route of HIV transmission (SeyedAlinaghi 2011). On the other hand, in Central European countries such as Belgium, Austria or Germany, where sexual intercourse dominates as mode of HIV transmission, hepatitis C coinfection rates are rather low, between 10 and 15% (Rockstroh 2005, CDC 2011). Similar rates can be found in HIV-positive patients in Australia (Jin 2009) and the UK (Turner 2009). Recent data from the US indicate that 25% to 35% of patients with HIV are coinfected with HCV (Singal 2009, CDC 2011) reflecting the contribution of at-risk populations such as prison inmates to the overall numbers. 65-70% of HIV+ prisoners in the US are coinfected with hepatitis C, in contrast to 18-25% of the overall US HIV-positive population (Weinbaum 2005, CDC 2011). In Asia, coinfection rates of up to 85% have been observed among Chinese plasma donors whereas in countries with predominantly heterosexual HIV transmission like Thailand coinfection rates are around 10% (Qian 2006). In sub-Saharan Africa, where again the primary route of transmission of HIV is sexual, HCV coinfection rates so far have been reported to be relatively low.

Although the traditional route of HCV transmission is blood-borne and includes IVDU, snorting drugs, sharing toothbrushes/razors, and tattooing (Bollepalli 2007), recent epidemic outbreaks among HIV+ men who have sex with men (MSM) from several major European cities such as London, Paris, Amsterdam, and Berlin as well

as more recent reports from the US, Canada, Australia and Taiwan document that HCV may well be sexually transmitted and should therefore also be taken into account at regular STD screenings (Gotz 2005, Danta 2007, Vogel 2009, Vogel 2010, Matthews 2011, Schmidt 2011, Rockstroh 2012).

HCV is detected in 4-8% of infants born to HCV-infected mothers (Bevilacqua 2009). Dual HCV/HIV infection increases the risk for transmission of both viruses and high levels of HCV viremia in the mother increases the risk of perinatal HCV transmission (Zanetti 1995). However, in HIV/HCV-coinfected mothers receiving cART and undergoing cesarean section the risk of HCV transmission is strikingly reduced to less than 1%.

In summary, the prevalence of hepatitis C within the HIV-infected population is far higher than in the general population where the global burden of hepatitis C is estimated to be roughly 2%. This highlights the importance of preventing further spread of hepatitis C infection as one of the major comorbidities in HIV+ individuals. The average estimated risk of transmission for hepatitis C in HIV is depicted in Table 1. Although they share common routes of infection, the viruses are transmitted with varying efficacy depending upon the mode of transmission.

Table 1. Average estimated risk of transmission for HIV, HCV and HCV/HIV simultaneously

Mode of transmission	HIV	HCV	HCV / HIV coinfection
Perinatal	7-50%	1-7%	1-20%
Sexual contact*	1-3%	<1%	<4%
Needle stick injury	0.3%	<1%	Unknown

* For sexual contact the risk refers to cumulative exposure

Diagnosis of HCV in HIV coinfection

The presence of HCV can be confirmed serologically by the detection of HCV antibodies via ELISA testing. Loss of HCV antibodies observed in rare cases in very advanced immune deficiency in HIV/HCV coinfection does not necessarily indicate viral clearance (Cribier 1999). Therefore, a single negative HCV antibody ELISA does not necessarily exclude HCV infection in HIV-positive patients, especially in severe immune deficiency. Additionally, a rise of liver transaminases has been proven to be more sensitive in the detection of acute HCV infection in HIV+ patients than repeated testing for the presence of antibodies against HCV (Thomson 2009). However, in more than 80% of HIV-positive individuals with positive HCV antibodies, HCV RNA is detected in the blood. Higher concentrations of HCV RNA are found in HIV+ individuals than in HIV-negative patients with hepatitis C (Perez-Olmeda 2002). Interestingly, data from a cross-trial comparison showed that HIV-positive patients were less likely to present with elevated serum ALT and clinical signs or symptoms of hepatitis than HIV-negative patients (Vogel 2009). In observations from hemophiliac patients, mean HCV RNA concentrations increased by 1 $\log_{10}$ over the first two years after HIV seroconversion (Eyster 1994). Levels of HCV viremia increase eight times faster in HIV+ individuals than in HIV-

negative patients with hepatitis C. The highest concentrations for HCV viremia have been reported in patients who subsequently developed liver failure.

Interestingly, spontaneous clearance of HCV RNA has been observed in some HIV/HCV-coinfected patients experiencing significant immune reconstitution following cART initiation (Fialaire 1999, Thomson 2009). In contrast, there are also patients with positive HCV antibodies and negative HCV RNA in which HCV RNA was noted to re-emerge frequently in combination with a flare of liver transaminases after initiation of cART. Therefore, regular monitoring of HCV RNA levels is warranted in HIV/HCV-coinfected patients (Rockstroh 2007).

The distribution of HCV genotypes in HIV+ patients reflects the route of transmission. Genotype (GT) 1b accounts for 2/3 of post-transfusion HCV infections and is the predominant genotype in hemophiliacs. In contrast, genotypes 1a and 3a are more common in intravenous drug users (Pol 1994, Soriano 2008).

Natural course of hepatitis C in HIV coinfection

Various studies have demonstrated that underlying HIV infection weakens the immune response to hepatitis C, thereby diminishing the chance of spontaneous viral clearance of HCV infection. Interestingly, data from the European epidemic of sexually transmitted acute hepatitis C infection in HIV+ individuals suggest that despite underlying HIV infection spontaneous resolution of HCV may occur in up to 20-30% of newly infected patients (Vogel 2010, Thomson 2010). Genome-wide association studies identified single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNP) near the IL28B gene encoding for interferon lambda that comprise a crucial part of the host's innate immune defence against HCV in HCV monoinfection (Thomas 2009). Individuals with the CC genotype were more than three times more likely to clear HCV RNA and to better respond to standard HCV therapy compared with individuals with CT and TT genotypes (Rauch 2010, Grebely 2010, Nattermann 2011, Rallón 2011). Similar observations have been made in HIV/HCV-coinfected individuals (Clausen 2010). Interestingly, these SNPs could explain differences in spontaneous clearance rates between different ethnicities as the frequency of the protective allele varies across ethnic groups at a much lower rate in those of African origin compared to Asian patients, with Europeans being in-between (Thomas 2009).

Numerous large cohort studies have demonstrated that once chronic hepatitis C is established the presence of HIV leads to a faster progression of liver fibrosis due to the lack of critical CD4+ T cell responses against HCV (Danta 2008). In the American multicenter Hemophiliac Cohort Study liver failure occurred in 9% of multitransfused HCV/HIV-coinfected adult hemophiliacs without an AIDS-defining opportunistic infection or malignancy (Eyster 1993). In the same time period, no case of liver failure was observed in HCV-positive HIV-negative hemophiliacs. Subsequently, several studies have confirmed the unfavorable course of hepatitis C in HIV-coinfected hemophiliacs, particularly in the setting of progressive immunodeficiency and lower CD4 counts (Rockstroh 1996, Puoti 2000).

In addition, the time interval between HCV exposition and development of cirrhosis was found to be shortened in coinfected subjects. Indeed, within 10-15 years of initial HCV infection, 15-25% of HIV-coinfected patients develop cirrhosis

compared with 2-6% of HIV-negative patients (Soto 1997). Importantly, mortality due to advanced liver disease occurs ten years earlier in coinfected hemophiliacs than in HIV-negative hemophiliacs with hepatitis C (Darby 1997). The incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma also seems to be higher in coinfected patients (Giordano 2004).

Effect of hepatitis C on HIV infection

As clear as HIV's influence on the accelerated disease progression for HCV-associated liver disease seems to be, HCV's influence on the course of HIV disease is slightly less straightforward. The Swiss Cohort first revealed a blunted CD4 cell response associated with a faster progression to AIDS after initiation of cART in HIV/HCV-coinfected patients (Greub 2000). Interestingly, four-year follow-up data from the same cohort study did not detect significant differences with regard to CD4 cell count recovery between HCV-positive and HCV-negative HIV+ patients (Kaufmann 2003). Subsequent studies have indeed found that after adjusting for use of cART, no difference in CD4 cell count recovery can be observed (Sulkowski 2002). Updated information from an analysis of the EuroSIDA cohort, after taking into account ongoing chronic (persistent HCV replication) and resolved (positive HCV antibodies but negative HCV RNA) hepatitis C infection, confirm that no difference in CD4 cell count recovery is observed in patients with chronic hepatitis C infection and detectable HCV RNA in comparison to HIV-monoinfected patients (Rockstroh 2005). In addition, data from the same cohort revealed that CD4+ T cell recovery in HIV-positive patients with maximal suppression of HIV replication is not influenced by HCV serostatus in general or HCV genotype or level of HCV in particular (Peters 2009).

Effect of cART on hepatitis C

In HIV/HCV-coinfected patients starting antiretroviral therapy a transient increase in HCV RNA levels may occur at week 4, but thereafter no significant changes in concentrations of HCV RNA happen over the first six months of treatment (Rockstroh 1998). However, a 1 $\log_{10}$ decrease of HCV RNA has been reported in HIV/HCV-coinfected individuals receiving more than 12 months of cART, with significant immune reconstitution (Rockstroh 2007). Moreover, eradication of HCV has been reported in individual patients receiving cART following CD4 count recovery (Jones 2011). Other investigators, however, have not observed this decrease in HCV RNA (Grint 2013).

There is increasing evidence that cART-induced immune reconstitution might reverse the unfavorable accelerated course for hepatitis C in patients with severe HIV-associated immune deficiency (Verma 2006, Vogel 2009). Taking into account that liver disease progresses especially in those whose CD4 count drops below 200/µl it is appealing to think that CD4 increases on cART may impact the further course of liver disease. In an early study of 162 individuals with HIV/HCV coinfection who underwent liver biopsy, the use of protease inhibitors as part of their cART regimen was associated with significantly lower rates of progression of liver fibrosis that could not be explained by other cofactors (Benhamou 2000).

These findings were then confirmed by several cohort analyses which showed that HIV/HCV-coinfected individuals on cART had significantly lower liver-related mortality than patients receiving either suboptimal (one or two nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors) or no antiretroviral therapy (Qurishi 2003).

One paper also addressed the amount of immune reconstitution achieved on cART and the subsequent risk for developing hepatic decompensation in HIV/HCV-coinfected individuals commencing cART (Pineda 2007). Those patients who experienced the highest CD4 cell count gain on cART were the least likely to develop further complications of liver disease, again highlighting a favourable impact of cART-induced immune reconstitution on the course of liver disease. As a consequence, the current antiretroviral treatment guidelines of the European AIDS Clinical Society recommend earlier initiation of antiretroviral therapy in HIV patients with HCV coinfection (CD4+ T cell count between 350-500/µl in asymptomatic patients) (EACS 2013).

Short-term and long-term virologic success rates of cART in HIV/HCV coinfection are, however, limited by an increased risk of hepatotoxicity. Various studies have shown that the presence of HCV is independently associated with an increased risk of rises in serum aminotransferases highlighting the need for close monitoring (Vispo 2013).

Treatment of hepatitis C in HIV coinfection

The most important reason to treat hepatitis C in HIV-coinfected individuals is the unfavourable course of hepatitis C in the setting of HIV coinfection particularly with the increased life expectancy gained by successful cART. An increased risk of hepatotoxicity after cART initiation in HIV/HCV-coinfected patients, possibly limiting the long-term benefit of cART in this particular group, further underlines the need for successful treatment of hepatitis C (Sulkowski 2000). Several studies have been able to demonstrate that successful treatment of hepatitis C dramatically reduces subsequent complications of preexisting liver disease (Erqou 2013, Mira 2013). This implies that once viral clearance is achieved with hepatitis C combination therapy the prognosis of liver disease dramatically improves (even in the presence of already developed liver cirrhosis) and once HCV infection is eradicated further liver complications in low grade fibrosis are very unlikely.

The goal of hepatitis C treatment is to achieve persistently negative HCV RNA levels. This is generally referred to as a sustained virologic response (SVR). It is defined as negative HCV RNA 3 months (SVR12) or six months (SVR24) after completion of HCV therapy. Negative HCV RNA at the end of the treatment period is described as an end-of-treatment response (EOT). Negative HCV RNA after four weeks of HCV treatment initiation is referred to as rapid treatment response (RVR). Failure to respond to treatment is referred to as non-response.

Treatment of hepatitis C will change dramatically with the licensing of further directly acting antivirals (DAA) in the very near future (See chapter 14 for further details). Subsequently, treatment guidelines and algorithms will need to be updated. However, as treatment with the new DAAs will be expensive, access to these drugs will be limited in most healthcare systems. Thus the current guidelines mostly dealing with dual therapy with interferon and ribavirin remain important for a

substantial proportion of the global HCV/HIV-coinfected patient population. First we will outline these current treatment recommendations. Thereafter we will comment on the management of coinfected patients in countries with access to DAAs.

The combination of pegylated interferon and ribavirin will still be regarded as standard therapy in patients with HCV GT 1, 2, 3 and 4 infections where no licensed DAAs are currently available. Table 2 summarizes the main results from randomized clinical trials investigating the efficacy of PEG-IFN/RBV in HIV/HCV-coinfected individuals. Data from the GESIDA study show similar efficacy and safety for both PEG-IFN α-2b and PEG-IFN α-2a in the treatment of chronic HCV infection in HIV-infected patients (Berenguer 2009).

Table 2. Results from randomized clinical trials investigating the efficacy of pegylated interferon plus ribavirin in HIV/HCV-coinfected individuals

Study	Regimen	SVR (%) GT 1 or 4	SVR (%) GT 2 or 3	Key Points of Study
RIBAVIC France (N=412)	PEG-IFN α-2b R 800 mg	17	44	Low-dose RBV Toxicity with ddI + RBV HCV RNA at week 4 >460,0000 IU/mL → 100% NPV
Laguno Spain (N=182)	PEG-IFN α-2b RBV 800 – 1200 mg	28	62	Weight-based RBV → higher SVR Short (24-week) therapy for genotype 2/3 not effective
ACTG A5071 USA (N=133)	PEG-IFN α-2a RBV 600 - 1000 mg	14	73	Low-dose RBV Failure to achieve week 12 EVR → 100% NPV ZDV + RBV → more anemia
APRICOT International (N=868)	PEG-IFN α-2a RBV 800 mg	29	62	Low-dose RBV Decompensation with advanced fibrosis Genotype 1/High HCV RNA – 18% SVR
PRESCO Spain (N=389)	PEG-IFN α-2a RBV 1000 – 1200 mg	35	72	Weight-based RBV → higher SVR No increase in anemia Extended (72-week) therapy not well tolerated

Overall, SVR rates of up to 50% can be achieved (Torriani 2004, Núñez 2007). The difference in rates of SVR in various studies can be explained mainly by differences in ribavirin dosages used, fibrosis stage and probably variations in the IL28B genotype. In the initial HCV treatment trials in HIV-coinfected individuals, due to the fear of interactions between ribavirin and commonly used NRTIs for HIV treatment, 800 mg daily dose of ribavirin was chosen for most patients independent of the prevailing genotype. This led to suboptimal SVR rates. However, in the PRESCO trial, where weight-adjusted daily ribavirin dosages of 1000-1200 mg were used independent of genotype, SVR rates almost doubled in comparison to some of the earlier studies such as APRICOT, most likely due to the higher ribavirin

levels. In spite of this, data from the PARADIGM trial, a double-blind, multicenter study comparing 800 vs 1000/1200 mg of ribavirin plus PEG-IFN conducted in HCV/HIV-coinfected patients from the US with a high proportion of African-Americans showed no significant differences in the rates of SVR (Rodriguez-Torres 2009), perhaps due to the prevalence of the cc subtype?.

In the current guidelines, daily administration of ribavirin 1000 mg (<75 kg body weight) and 1200 mg (>75 kg body weight) BID is recommended for HCV therapy in HIV coinfection for all genotypes in combination with pegylated interferon.

The standard dosage for PEG-IFN α-2a is 180 µg SC once weekly and for PEG-IFN α-2b 1.5 µg/kg body weight SC once weekly. Duration of therapy is individualized taking into account factors for HCV treatment response such as genotype, baseline viral load and virologic response (see Figure 1). Results from the PRESCO trial indicate that at least some patients may benefit from a longer duration of HCV combination therapy, of up to 72 weeks (Figure 1). This mainly refers to patients infected with HCV GT1 and 4 (Núñez 2007) for whom poorer response rates have been extensively shown when compared with GT2 and 3. If an early virologic response of at least 2 $\log_{10}$ reduction in HCV RNA compared with baseline is not achieved by week 12, treatment should be discontinued as an SVR is unlikely.

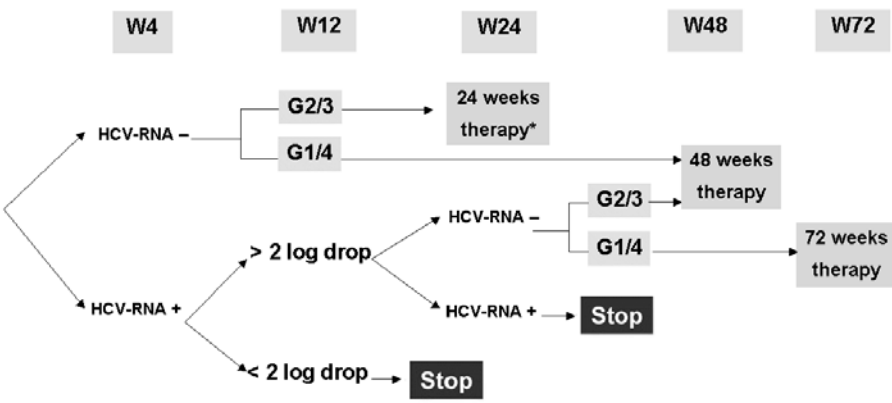


Figure 1. Proposed optimal duration of hepatitis C virus (HCV) therapy in HIV/HCV-coinfected patients treated with pegylated interferon and ribavirin, for GT1 infection only where HCV PIs are not available (w: week; G: genotype) (modified according to Rockstroh 2009). *In patients with low baseline viral load (<400,000 IU/l) and minimal liver fibrosis

Based on 4 baseline variables (serum HCV RNA, HCV genotype, liver fibrosis staging using elastometry, and IL28B genotyping), the Prometheus index has been recently developed and can be used as a risk calculator for predicting the likelihood of SVR using PEG-IFN/ribavirin therapy in HIV/HCV-coinfected patients. With the first pilot studies in HIV/HCV-coinfected subjects with HCV GT1 demonstrating significantly higher SVR12 rates with triple therapy compared to dual therapy, HCV protease inhibitor-based therapy with either boceprevir or telaprevir is the new standard of treatment in HCV GT1 infection in HIV-infected individuals, where available. Telaprevir is added to PEG-IFN/RBV standard treatment for 12 weeks at

1125 mg every 12 hours. In case of successful treatment response at week 4 (HCV RNA <1000 IU/mL), telaprevir is continued until week 12. If HCV RNA at week 12 is still <1000 IU/mL, dual therapy with PEG-IFN/RBV should be continued until week 24. If HCV RNA is undetectable at week 24, dual therapy with PEG-IFN/RBV should be continued for another 24 weeks resulting in a total treatment duration of 48 weeks.

Boceprevir can be added to PEG-IFN/RBV after a lead-in of 4 weeks of PEG-IFN/RBV dual therapy. In case of an HCV RNA >100 copies/mL at week 12 or a detectable HCV RNA at week 24, it is to be interpreted as lack of response with a high risk of boceprevir resistance selection and all HCV therapy needs to be discontinued. Overall treatment duration of a boceprevir-based HCV therapy is 48 weeks. The use of the new HCV PIs is associated with additional toxicities, in particular higher rates of anemia for both drugs, rash and anal itching for telaprevir and dysgeusia for boceprevir. Anemia management is therefore very important and requires more frequent monitoring of hemoglobin levels during the first weeks of HCV treatment. Early ribavirin reduction and EPO use have both been demonstrated to be effective in anemia management while not lowering overall SVR rates. Data from monoinfected subjects with cirrhosis suggest even higher anemia rates, and blood cell counts need to be determined in such patients at least every 2 weeks after starting HCV therapy. In addition, careful surveillance should be addressed toward severe infectious complications including deaths due to sepsis and liver decompensation, which have been observed in 3-8% of monoinfected cirrhotic patients on triple therapy in an observational study where a mortality rate greater than 1% was recorded. So far, similar severe complications have not been reported in the early results from the ANRS coinfection trials looking at either telaprevir- or boceprevir-containing triple therapy in coinfected patients with virologic failure on PEG-IFN and RBV (Cotte 2013, Poizot-Martin 2013).

In addition, due to the inhibition of the cytochrome P450 3A isoenzyme and the fact that telaprevir and boceprevir are substrates of the same enzyme complex, drug-drug interactions are the result and treatment with both PIs together should only be performed by experienced physicians as it is not recommended by either FDA or EMA.

Unlike cART, HCV treatment offers the possibility of eradicating HCV within defined treatment periods and this clearly appears potentially advantageous for the subsequent management of the patient's HIV infection. Every patient should be considered for HCV treatment when the benefits of therapy outweigh the risks. Benefits of therapy also need to be measured in the context of rapid liver fibrosis progression in HIV/HCV coinfection and improved HCV treatment outcomes under optimized management in these patients. Information on liver fibrosis staging is important for making treatment decisions in coinfected patients.

However, a liver biopsy is not mandatory for decisions on treatment of chronic HCV infection. Recently introduced noninvasive markers such as blood tests or transient elastography constitute new and exciting means of assessing liver disease in HIV and hepatitis-coinfected individuals (Rockstroh 2009, Resino 2011). When liver biopsy or non-invasive tests for assessing hepatic fibrosis (eg, elastometry by Fibroscan®) demonstrate lower grades of liver fibrosis (F0-F1) regardless of HCV genotype, treatment can be deferred. Assessment of fibrosis should be repeated

frequently to monitor progression. It is especially important to perform a liver disease stage assessment in patients with a low likelihood of achieving an SVR. In addition, insulin resistance (which can be determined using the homeostasis model assessment of insulin resistance [HOMA-IR] score) has been reported as a negative predictor of achieving SVR and therefore may also be considered during evaluation.

For coinfected patients in countries with access to the new DAAs HCV treatment will change dramatically. Three DAAs are expected to be licensed in 2014. The first one will be the once-daily nucleotide analog HCV polymerase inhibitor sofosbuvir. In the PHOTON trial assessing the combination of sofosbuvir and ribavirin without interferon in treatment-naïve GT1 and treatment-naïve and experienced GT2/3 coinfected patients over 12 and 24 weeks SVR12 rates of 76%, 88% and 67%, respectively, were observed (Sulkowski 2013). In treatment-naïve patients, this will clearly allow successful treatment of GT1 infection over 24 weeks and of GT2 infection over 12 weeks, while for GT3 infection 12 weeks of therapy appears to be too short. In treatment-experienced GT2 and all GT3 patients 24 weeks of therapy will be needed, and for GT1 a third DAA or interferon might be required. Sofosbuvir also has antiviral activity against GT4 (and 5/6) but data in the setting of coinfection are not available yet.

Approval of the following two second generation, once-daily HCV protease inhibitors simeprevir and faldaprevir is expected shortly thereafter. In the STARTVerso trial assessing faldaprevir plus PEG-IFN and RBV in HIV HCV GT1 infection over 24 or 48 weeks in treatment-naïve and relapser patients including cirrhotics, an overall SVR4 rate of 74% was observed (Rockstroh 2013). Interestingly, there was no statistically significant difference in patients with and without cirrhosis. In the C212 study assessing simeprevir plus PEG-IFN and RBV in HIV HCV GT1 infection over 24 or 48 weeks in treatment-naïve, relapsers, partial and null responder patients including cirrhotics, an overall SVR12 rate of 74% was observed (Dieterich 2013). SVR12 rates for treatment-naïve patients, relapsers, partial and null responders were 79, 87, 70 and 57%, respectively. Simeprevir also has antiviral activity against GT4 (and 5/6) but data in the setting of coinfection are not available yet.

These soon-to-be available, simplified DAA-based HCV therapy regimens are characterized by a smaller pill burden, better tolerability, mostly shorter treatment duration and an at least equal efficacy compared to the current triple therapy regimens. It can be assumed that once approved sofosbuvir and, depending on the local situation, simeprevir and faldaprevir will be widely used in the coinfected patient population as well. Further coinfection studies include studies with a combination of PEG-IFN lambda (a potentially better tolerated IFN) with ribavirin and the NS5A inhibitor daclatasvir also for G1, 2, 3 and 4 infections and ABT-450/r, a ritonavir-boosted protease inhibitor together with NS5A inhibitor ABT-267, non-nucleoside polymerase inhibitor ABT-333 plus ribavirin for G1 patients.

If chronic hepatitis C is detected early in the course of HIV infection (before the initiation of cART) treatment for chronic HCV may be started in the absence of antiretroviral therapy. However, if a coinfected patient has severe immune deficiency (CD4 count <200 cells/ml), the CD4 count should be improved with HAART before beginning HCV treatment. Patients with a CD4 relative percentage of >25% are more likely to achieve SVR than those with lower CD4 percentages

(Opravil 2008). At present most experts recommend the initiation of antiretroviral therapy to stabilise the immune system before starting interferon-based therapy for chronic hepatitis C. The procedures for diagnosis of hepatitis C, assessment of liver disease stage and control examinations before and during HCV therapy are summarized in Table 3.

Table 3. Diagnostic procedures for hepatitis C in HIV coinfection (adapted from Rockstroh 2008)

Diagnosis of hepatitis C
HCV Ab (positive 1-5 months after infection, may rarely be lost with immunosuppression)
HCV RNA levels (while not prognostic for progression, it is for response to treatment)
Status of liver damage
Grading of fibrosis (eg, Fibroscan, liver biopsy, serum fibromarkers)
Hepatic synthetic function (eg, coagulation, protein, albumin, CHE)
Ultrasound and AFP every 6 months in cirrhotics (gastroscopy upon diagnosis of cirrhosis and every 1-2 years thereafter)
Before HCV treatment
HCV genotype and serum HCV RNA

The choice of antiretrovirals while on HCV therapy

The choice of best-tolerated HIV drugs is crucial for completing the planned treatment duration of hepatitis C therapy (Vogel 2010). DdI use has been independently associated with increased adverse event rates including lactic acidosis and hepatic decompensation in patients who have liver cirrhosis prior to commencement of PEG-IFN/RBV therapy (Mauss 2004). Apparently, ribavirin enhances the phosphorylation of ddI and thereby leads to an increased risk of pancreatitis and mitochondrial toxicity in subjects receiving concomitant ribavirin and ddI therapy (Moreno 2004). DdI use is therefore contraindicated in combination with ribavirin, especially in patients who have already developed liver cirrhosis. The use of antiretrovirals such as AZT and d4T are also discouraged whenever possible, as increased toxicity can be expected. RBV + AZT is associated with enhanced anemia (Alvarez 2006) while RBV + d4T is associated with increased mitochondrial toxicity and weight loss and a high potential to worsen pre-existing lipoatrophy. Patients on atazanavir-containing HAART may develop jaundice due to an increase in total serum bilirubin levels following initiation of ribavirin (Rodriguez-Novoa 2008). As abacavir and ribavirin are both guanosine analogs it is speculated that there may be interference or competition in the phosphorylation pathway. Data from cohorts using lower dosages of ribavirin suggest lower SVR results in patients on abacavir-containing HAART (Bani-Sadr 2007). However, in the presence of therapeutic ribavirin levels no difference was observed between abacavir and other nucleosides in achieving SVR in HIV/HCV-coinfected patients receiving PEG-IFN/ribavirin therapy and concomitant HAART in other cohorts (Laufer 2008, Amorosa 2010, Berenguer 2011). Due to drug-drug interactions, telaprevir can currently only be safely combined with boosted atazanavir, raltegravir, rilpivirine, etravirine or efavirenz (with efavirenz telaprevir doses need to be increased to 1125 mg every 8 hours). Using tenofovir or abacavir in combination with emtricitabine or

lamivudine as NRTI backbone seems safe. Due to drug-drug interactions, boceprevir can currently only be safely combined with raltegravir or etravirine in combination with tenofovir or abacavir and emtricitabine or lamivudine. EMA has also suggested considering boceprevir in combination with boosted atazanavir on a case-by-case basis in patients with no previous HIV treatment failure and no drug resistance who have undetectable HIV RNA when starting HCV therapy. To date, there are no known significant drug-drug interactions between sofosbuvir and cART agents. Under efavirenz-based cART faldaprevir dosage must be 240 mg QD and 120mg QD when taken with darunavir- or atazanavir-based cART. It is not possible to co-administer simeprevir with HIV protease inhibitors except boosted darunavir.

Table 4. Classification of and interventions for HCV/HIV-coinfected patients who are non-responders/relapsers to prior IFN-based therapies with no access to new DAAs

Category	Subgroup	Recommended intervention
Suboptimal treatment	Suboptimal schedule • Interferon monotherapy • Low doses of ribavirin • Short length of therapy	Re-treatment using combination therapy of PEG-IFN α plus weight-based ribavirin
	Limiting toxicities & poor adherence	Optimal support (SSRI, paracetamol / NSAID*, adherence support, use of hematopoietic growth factors**)
Optimal treatment with virologic failure	Relapse (HCV RNA-negative at the end of treatment)	For GT1 patients, wait and monitor if low levels of fibrosis (F0/1) and no or little progression, otherwise re-treat with triple therapy
		For GT2, 3 and 4 for patients with mild fibrosis, wait and monitor. If rapid progression or more than moderate fibrosis,re-treatment using combination of PEG-IFN plus weight-based ribavirin (consider longer treatment duration)
	Non-response (no HCV RNA negativization during treatment)	For GT1 patients with F3/4 fibrosis or those with other stages of fibrosis and rapid progression, consider triple therapy with telaprevir or boceprevir
		In patients without a 2 $\log_{10}$ decrease of HCV RNA or without data on HCV RNA decrease in the previous treatment cycle, triple therapy is recommended if there is an HCV RNA decrease of 1 log after a 4-wk lead in with PEG-IFN/RBV

*NSAID, non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs; PEG, polyethylene glycol; SSRI, selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors

**Data on the use of hematopoietic growth factors in HIV/HCV coinfection so far is limited to an improvement in quality of life but not antiviral efficacy; treatment with growth factors is currently mostly off-label in Europe

Treatment of HCV for relapsers or non-responders

Patients with a history of previous HCV therapy who were either non-responders or who relapsed while on previous HCV therapy need to be reassessed with regard to new HVC treatment optimizing the dose and duration (Table 4) as well as potentially adding an HCV protease inhibitor or sofosbuvir in HCV GT1 patients. For coinfected patients in countries with access to the new DAAs HCV treatment with either a sofosbuvir-, faldaprevir- or simeprevir-based regimen can be considered based on HCV GT and concomitant cART. As data on hepatic decompensation and severe infections under the new DAAs in hard-to-treat cirrhotic non responders is still very sparse it is recommended that these patients are managed in centers with experience in managing HCV/HIV coinfected patients.

Treatment of acute HCV in HIV

As SVR rates following treatment of acute HCV infection are higher than for treatment of chronic HCV, HCV RNA should be measured at initial presentation and 4 weeks later in patients with acute HCV infection. Treatment should be offered to patients without a decrease of 2 $\log_{10}$ of HCV RNA at 4 weeks compared with initial HCV RNA and to patients with persistent serum HCV RNA 12 weeks after diagnosis of acute HCV. Current gold standard treatment still is PEG-IFN plus ribavirin or in case of ribavirin intolerance interferon monotherapy. Data from only one small cohort assessing telaprevir containing triple therapy in acute HCV in HIV are available to date (Fierer 2013). An increase in SVR of around 10-15% was seen when compared with data from cohorts on classic dual therapy. So far, no data exist on the new DAAs, especially sofosbuvir, in the setting of acute HCV. Duration of treatment should be based on rapid virologic response (RVR) regardless of genotype. Patients who do not achieve a $\geq$2 $\log_{10}$ decrease in HCV RNA level at week 12 should discontinue therapy (NEAT 2010). Uncontrolled pilot studies of treatment of acute HCV infection in HIV-coinfected patients demonstrate SVR rates of above 60% mostly with combination therapy of PEG-IFN/RBV for 24-48 weeks (Boesecke 2011). Furthermore, data from a large European cohort for the first time revealed the beneficial influence of GT2/3 infection on treatment outcomes in the setting of acute hepatitis C suggesting different cure rates depending on HCV genotype similar to the genotype effects seen in chronic HCV therapy. In this cohort, 94% of patients with GT2/3 infection achieved an SVR compared to 66% in patients with GT1/4 infection (Boesecke 2011). Unfortunately, clear guidance on treatment duration or the role of ribavirin is difficult at this point due to the lack of controlled data.

Liver transplantation in HIV/HCV-coinfected patients

In general, HIV/HCV-coinfected individuals develop more rapid HCV-related hepatic injuries such as liver fibrosis and cirrhosis. Additionally, HIV/HCV coinfection is associated with an increased rate of hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC). Typically HCC occurs in HIV/HCV-coinfected patients at an earlier age and the course is more aggressive with a shorter survival compared to HCV-monoinfected individuals. Therefore, the presence of esophageal varices using upper-

gastrointestinal endoscopy should be monitored in patients with liver cirrhosis every 1-2 years, and an ultrasound of the liver and a serum α-fetoprotein determination should be performed at least every 6 months in patients with F3/F4 fibrosis according to the recommendations of the European Consensus Guidelines (Alberti 2005).

Liver transplantation (oLTX) should be considered in patients with decompensated liver cirrhosis, as this is a contraindication for HCV treatment. To fulfill the selection criteria for a liver transplant in HIV/HCV-coinfected individuals the CD4+ count has to be at least 100 cells/ml. Additionally, the patient has to have either undetectable HIV viremia (<400 copies/ml) or at least rational treatment options to control HIV infection successfully after liver transplantation. Further contraindications for transplantation are opportunistic diseases, ongoing alcohol or drug abuse, HCC metastasis in other organs, a second malignant disease, cardiopulmonary disease or older age with an elevated risk of mortality related to the operation. Data from a large US cohort shed light on survival rates after liver transplantation (Mindikoglu 2008). The estimated 2-year survival rate was found to be somewhat lower in HIV+ patients (70%) compared to HIV-negative patients (81%). This was mostly attributable to HBV or HCV coinfection. Other studies have shown good outcome results in the setting of HBV/HIV coinfection when compared to HBV monoinfection (Vogel 2005, Baccarani 2011). This highlights the major problem in HCV/HIV-coinfected transplant recipients: HCV reinfection of the transplanted organ. Recurrence of chronic hepatitis C in the liver graft is frequently observed in HIV+ patients and a more rapid progression to graft cirrhosis and liver disease-related mortality compared to HCV-monoinfected patients has been reported (Anadol 2012). Therefore, combination therapy with pegylated interferon plus ribavirin seems to be the best management option 1-3 months after liver transplantation and after re-infection with hepatitis C virus is detected.

Data on the use of DAAs for the treatment of recurrent HCV after oLTX are still sparse. Triple therapy appears to be feasible and successful but in the context of post-transplant immunosuppression it is important to point out that there are crucial pharmacokinetic drug-drug interactions at the level of the cytochrome P450 metabolism and P-glycoprotein induction between the key immunosuppressive drugs tacrolimus or cyclosporin A and the antiretroviral agents used for HIV therapy. The HCV protease inhibitors telaprevir and boceprevir increase the drug levels of tacrolimus and cyclosporin A substantially. Determinations of the plasma levels of the antiretroviral drugs and tacrolimus or ciclosporin A are necessary. The doses of cyclosporin A or tacrolimus usually need to also be reduced when the patient is treated concomitantly with an HIV protease inhibitor, especially if boosted with ritonavir (Vogel 2004). On the other hand, NNRTIs can lower the concentrations of immunosuppressive drugs. The increase of drug levels of tacrolimus and to a lesser extent ciclosporin A by telaprevir may complicate the concomitant use of these drugs with telaprevir. A new and safer option is the use of sofosbuvir with ribavirin or a second DAA such as daclatasvir (see Chapter 22).

Conclusion

HIV has been shown to accelerate the progression of hepatitis C, resulting in higher liver disease-related mortality and morbidity in HIV/HCV-coinfected patients compared to HCV- or HIV-monoinfected individuals. Dual therapy comprising PEG-IFN plus ribavirin is still the current gold standard in countries with no access to the new DAAs allowing sustained virologic response rates of almost 50% in HIV/HCV-coinfected individuals under optimized management conditions (weight-based ribavirin and individualized treatment duration). For HCV GT1 infection triple therapy containing PEG-IFN, ribavirin and either telaprevir or boceprevir where available still is the standard of care allowing sustained virologic response rates of almost 70% in HIV/HCV-coinfected individuals. But with the licensing of three new DAAs in 2014 HCV treatment algorithms will change dramatically including treatment of patients with previously failed response to dual therapy and patients with cirrhosis. Drug-drug interactions between cART, ribavirin and especially the new HCV protease inhibitors require careful selection of both HIV and HCV drugs as well as close monitoring.

References

Alberti A, Clumeck N, Collins S, et al. ECC Jury. Short statement of the first European Consensus Conference on the treatment of chronic hepatitis B and C in HIV co-infected patients. J Hepatol. 2005;42:615-24. (Abstract)

Alvarez D, Dieterich DT, Brau N, Moorehead L, Ball L, Sulkowski MS. Zidovudine use but not weight-based ribavirin dosing impacts anaemia during HCV treatment in HIV-infected persons. J Viral Hepat. 2006;13:683-9. (Abstract)

Amorosa VK, Slim J, Mounzer K, et al. The influence of abacavir and other antiretroviral agents on virological response to HCV therapy among antiretroviral-treated HIV-infected patients. Antivir Ther. 2010;15:91-9. (Abstract)

Anadol E, Beckebaum S, Radecke K, et al. Orthotopic liver transplantation in human-immunodeficiency-virus-positive patients in Germany. AIDS Res Treat. 2012;2012:197501.

Baccarani U, Adani GL, Bragantini F, et al. Long-term outcomes of orthotopic liver transplantation in human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients and comparison with human immunodeficiency virus-negative cases. Transplant Proc. 2011;43:1119-22. (Abstract)

Bani-Sadr F, Denoeud L, Morand P, et al. Agence Nationale pour la Recherche contre le SIDA et les Hépatites Virales HC02-Ribavic Study Team. Early virologic failure in HIV-coinfected hepatitis C patients treated with the peginterferon-ribavirin combination: does abacavir play a role? J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr. 2007;45:123-5. (Abstract)

Benhamou Y, Demartinio V, Boche T et al: Factors effecting liver fibrosis in human immunodeficiency virus and hepatitis C virus coinfected patients. Impact of protease inhibitor therapy. Hepatology 2001;34:283-7. (Abstract)

Berenguer J, González-García J, López-Aldeguer J, Von-Wichmann MA, Quereda C, Hernando A, et al. Pegylated interferon ?-2a plus ribavirin versus pegylated interferon ?-2b plus ribavirin for the treatment of chronic hepatitis C in HIV-infected patients. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2009;63:1256-63. (Abstract)

Berenguer J, von Wichmann MA, Quereda C, et al. Effect of accompanying antiretroviral drugs on virological response to pegylated interferon and ribavirin in patients co-infected with HIV and hepatitis C virus. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2011;66:2843-9. (Abstract)

Bevilacqua E, Fabris A, Floreano P, Pembrey L, Newell ML, Tovo PA, Amoroso A; EPHN collaborators. Genetic factors in mother-to-child transmission of HCV infection. Virology 2009;390:64-70. (Abstract)

Boesecke C, Rockstroh JK. Treatment of acute hepatitis C infection in HIV-infected patients. Curr Opin HIV AIDS. 2011;6:278-84.

Boesecke C, Stellbrink HJ, Mauss S, et al. Does Baseline HCV Genotype Have an Impact upon Treatment Outcome of Acute HCV Infection in HIV Co-Infected Individuals? 18th Conference on Retroviruses and Opportunistic Infections, Boston, U.S.A. 2011, Abstract #Q-138.

Bollepalli S, Mathieson K, Bay C, Hillier A, Post J, Van Thiel DH, Nadir A. Prevalence of risk factors for hepatitis C virus in HIV-infected and HIV/hepatitis C virus-coinfected patients. Sex Transm Dis. 2007 Jun;34:367-70. (Abstract)

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). Sexual transmission of hepatitis C virus among HIV-infected men who have sex with men--New York City, 2005-2010. MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep. 2011;60:945-50. (Abstract)

Clausen LN, Weis N, Astvad K, et al. Interleukin-28B polymorphisms are associated with hepatitis C virus clearance and viral load in a HIV-1-infected cohort. J Viral Hepat. 2011;18:e66-74. (Abstract)

Cotte L. High end-of-treatment (EOT) response rate with telaprevir-pegIFN-RBV in treatment-experienced HIV co-infected patients with HCV genotype 1: ANRS HC26 telapreVIH study. *AASLD* 2013. Washington, DC, November 1-5, 2013. Abstract 1108.

Cribier B, Rey D, Schmitt C et al: High hepatitis C viremia and impaired antibody response in patients coinfected with HIV. AIDS 1995; 9: 1131-1136. (Abstract)

Danta M, Semmo N, Fabris P, Brown D, Pybus OG, Sabin CA, et al. Impact of HIV on host-virus interactions during early hepatitis C virus infection. J Infect Dis. 2008;197:1558-66. (Abstract)

Danta M, Brown D, Bhagani S, et al. and Acute HCV (HAAC) group. Recent epidemic of acute hepatitis C virus in HIV-positive men who have sex with men linked to high-risk sexual behaviours. AIDS. 2007;21:983-91. (Abstract)

Darby SC, Ewart DW, Giangrande PL, et al. Mortality from liver cancer and liver disease in haemophilic men and boys in UK given blood products contaminated with hepatitis C. UK Haemophilia Centre Directors' Organisation. Lancet 1997; 350: 1425-1431. (Abstract)

Dieterich D, Rockstroh JK, Orkin C, et al. Simeprevir (TMC435) plus peginterferon/ribavirin in patients co-infected with HCV genotype-1 andHIV-1: primary analysis of the C212 study. 14th European AIDs Conference (EACS 2013). Brussels. October 16-19, 2013. Abstract PS9/5.

Dore GJ, Matthews GV, Rockstroh J. Future of hepatitis C therapy: development of direct-acting antivirals. Curr Opin HIV AIDS. 2011;6:508-13. (Abstract)

European AIDS Clinical Society. EACS Guidelines. Version 7, October 2013. http:// http://www.eacsociety.org/Guidelines.aspx

Erqou S, Mohanty A, Butt AA. Predictors of Mortality among United States Veterans with Hepatitis C Virus Infection: 'almost double mortality rate in HCV+ vs HCV- HCV treatment reduced mortality by 50%'. 48th EASL; Amsterdam, Netherlands; April 24-28, 2013. Abst. 453.

Eyster ME, Diamondstone LS, Lien JM et al: Natural history of hepatitis C virus infection in multitransfused hemophiliacs: effect of coinfection with human immune deficiency virus - a multicenter hemophiliac cohort study. J Acquir Immune Def Syndr 1993; 6: 602-610. (Abstract)

Fialaire P, Payan C, Vitour D et al: Sustained disappearance of hepatitis C viremia in patients receiving protease inhibitor therapy for human immunodeficiency virus infection. J Infect Dis 1999; 180: 574-575. (Abstract)

Fierer DS, Dieterich DT, Mullen MP, et al. Telaprevir in the Treatment of Acute HCV Infection in HIV-infected Men: SVR 12 Results.64th Annual Meeting of the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases (AASLD 2013). Washington, DC, November 1-5, 2013. Abstract 40.

Giordano TP, Kramer JR, Souchek J, Richardson P, El-Serag HB. Cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma in HIV-infected veterans with and without the hepatitis C virus: a cohort study, 1992-2001. Arch Intern Med. 2004;164:2349-54. (Abstract)

Gotz HM, van Doormun G, Niesters HG et al: A cluster with acute hepatitis C virus infection among men who have sex with men - results from contact tracing and public health implications. AIDS 2005; 19: 969-974. (Abstract)

Grebely J, Petoumenos K, Hellard M, et al; ATAHC Study Group. Potential role for interleukin-28B genotype in treatment decision-making in recent hepatitis C virus infection. Hepatology. 2010;52:1216-24. (Abstract)Greub G, Ledergerber B, Battegay M et al: Clinical progression, survival and immune recovery during antiretroviral therapy in patients with HIV-1 and hepatitis C virus coinfection. Lancet 2003; 356: 1800-1805. (Abstract)

Grint D, Peters L, Reekie J et al. Stability of hepatitis C virus (HCV) RNA levels among interferon-naïve HIV/HCV-coinfected individuals treated with combination antiretroviral therapy. HIV Med. 2013 Jul;14(6):370-8.

Jin F, Prestage GP, Matthews GV, Zablotska I, Rawstorne P, Kippax SC, Kaldor J, Grulich AE. Prevalence, incidence and risk factors for hepatitis C in homosexual men:Data from two cohorts of HIV negative and HIV positive men in Sydney, Australia. Sex Transm Infect. 2010; 86:25-8.

Jones M, Núñez M. HIV and hepatitis C co-infection: the role of HAART in HIV/hepatitis C virus management. Curr Opin HIV AIDS. 2011 Nov;6(6):546-52.

Kaufmann GR, Perrin L, Pantaleo G, et al. CD4 T-lymphocyte recovery in individuals with advanced HIV-1 infection receiving potent antiretroviral therapy for 4 years: the Swiss HIV Cohort Study. Arch Intern Med 2003; 163: 2187-2195. (Abstract)

Laufer N, Laguno M, Perez I, Cifuentes C, Murillas J, Vidal F, et al. Abacavir does not influence the rate of virological response in HIV-HCV-coinfected patients treated with pegylated interferon and weight-adjusted ribavirin. Antivir Ther. 2008;13:953-7. (Abstract)

Matthews GV, Pham ST, Hellard M, et al. Patterns and characteristics of hepatitis C transmission clusters among HIV-positive and HIV-negative individuals in the Australian trial in acute hepatitis C. Clin Infect Dis. 2011;52:803-11. (Abstract)

Mauss S, Valenti W, DePamphilis J, et al. Risk factors for hepatic decompensation in patients with HIV/HCV coinfection and liver cirrhosis during interferon-based therapy. AIDS. 2004;18:F21-25. (Abstract)

Merck. Dear Healthcare Professional Important Healthcare Warning. Results of Pharmacokinetic Study in Healthy Volunteers Given VICTRELIS™ (boceprevir) and Ritonavir-Boosted HIV Protease Inhibitors May Indicate Clinically Significant Drug Interactions for Patients Coinfected with Chronic Hepatitis C and HIV. DHPP-letter-3-FEB.pdf. 2012.

Mindikoglu AL, Regev A, Magder LS. Impact of human immunodeficiency virus on survival after liver transplantation: analysis of United Network for Organ Sharing database. Transplantation 2008;85:359-68. (Abstract)

Mira JA, Rivero-Juárez A, López-Cortés LF et al. Benefits from sustained virologic response to pegylated interferon plus ribavirin in HIV/hepatitis C virus-coinfected patients with compensated cirrhosis. Clin Infect Dis. 2013 Jun;56(11):1646-53.

Moreno A, Quereda C, Moreno L, Perez-Elías MJ, Muriel A, Casado JL, et al. High rate of didanosine-related mitochondrial toxicity in HIV/HCV-coinfected patients receiving ribavirin. Antivir Ther. 2004;9:133-8. (Abstract)

Nattermann J, Vogel M, Nischalke HD, et al. Genetic Variation in IL28B and Treatment-Induced Clearance of Hepatitis C Virus in HIV-Positive Patients With Acute and Chronic Hepatitis C. J Infect Dis. 2011;203:595-601. (Abstract)

NEAT, The European AIDS Treatment Network. Acute Hepatitis C Infection Consensus Panel. Acute hepatitis C in HIV-infected individuals: recommendations from the European AIDS Treatment Network (NEAT) consensus conference. AIDS. 2011;25:399-409. (Abstract)

Nunez M, Miralles C, Berdun MA, et al for the PRESCO study group: Role of weight-based ribavirin dosing and extended duration of therapy in chronic hepatitis C in HIV-infected patients: The PRESCO trial. AIDS Res Hum Retrovir 2007, 23: 972-982. (Abstract)

Opravil M, Sasadeusz J, Cooper DA, et al: Effect of baseline CD4 cell count on the efficacy and safety of peg-interferon-a 2a (40 kd) + ribavirin in patients with HIV-HCV coinfection. J Acquir Immune Def Syndr 2008; 47: 36-49. (Abstract)

Perez-Olmeda M, Rios P, Nunez M, Garcia-Samaniego J, Romero M, Soriano V. Virological characteristics of hepatitis C virus infection in HIV-infected individuals with chronic hepatitis C: implications for treatment. AIDS 2002; 16: 493-495. (Abstract)

Peters L, Mocroft A, Soriano V, Rockstroh JK, Losso M, Valerio L, et al. Hepatitis C virus coinfection does not influence the CD4 cell recovery in HIV-1-infected patients with maximum virologic suppression. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr. 2009;50:457-63. (Abstract)

Pineda JA, García-García JA, Aguilar-Guisado M, et al. Grupo para el Estudio de las Hepatitis Víricas de la Sociedad Andaluza de Enfermedades Infecciosas (SAEI).Clinical progression of hepatitis C virus-related chronic liver disease in human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients undergoing highly active antiretroviral therapy. Hepatology. 2007;46:622-30.

Poizot-Martin I. W48 Response Rate of Boceprevir-PegIFN-RBV in Treatment-Experienced HIV Coinfected Patients with HCV genotype 1: ANRS-HC27 BocepreVIH Study. 64th Annual Meeting of the American Association for the Study of Liver diseases, November 1-5, 2013, Washington, USA; abstract 1105

Pol S, Thiers V, Nousbaum J, et al. Changing distribution of HCV genotypes in Europe in the last decades. J Hepatol 1994; 21: S13.

Puoti M, Bonacini M, Spinetti A, Putzolu V, Govindarajan S, Zaltron S, et al. Liver fibrosis progression is related to CD4 cell depletion in patients coinfected with hepatitis C virus and human immunodeficiency virus. J Infect Dis. 2001;183:134-7. (Abstract)

Qian HZ, Vermund SH, Kaslow RA, et al. Co-infection with HIV and hepatitis C virus in former plasma/blood donors: challenge for patient care in rural China. AIDS 2006; 20: 1429-1435. (Abstract)

Qurishi N, Kreuzberg C, Lüchters G et al. Effect of antiretroviral therapy on liver-related mortality in patients with HIV and hepatitis C coinfection. Lancet 2003; 362: 1708-1713. (Abstract)

Rauch A, Kutalik Z, Descombes P, et al. Genetic variation in IL28B is associated with chronic hepatitis C and treatment failure: a genome-wide association study. Gastroenterology 2010,138:1338-1345. (Abstract)

Rallón NI, Soriano V, Naggie S, et al. IL28B gene polymorphisms and viral kinetics in HIV/hepatitis C virus-coinfected patients treated with pegylated interferon and ribavirin. AIDS. 2011;25:1025-33. (Abstract)

Resino S, Asensio C, Bellón JM, et al. Diagnostic accuracy of the APRI, FIB-4, and the Forns index for predicting liver fibrosis in HIV/HCV-coinfected patients: A validation study. J Infect. 2011;63:402-5. (Abstract)

Rockstroh JK, Spengler U, Sudhop T, et al: Immunosuppression may lead to progression of hepatitis C virus associated liver disease in hemophiliacs coinfected with HIV. Am J Gastroenterol 1996; 91: 2563-2568. (Abstract)

Rockstroh JK, Theisen A, Kaiser R, et al: Antiretroviral triple therapy decreases the HIV viral load and does not alter hepatitis C virus serum levels in HIV/HCV-coinfected hemophiliacs. AIDS 1998; 12: 829-830. (Abstract)

Rockstroh JK, Spengler U. HIV and HCV coinfection. Lancet Infect Dis 2004; 4: 437-444. (Abstract)

Rockstroh JK, Mocroft A, Soriano V, et al: Influence of hepatitis C virus infection on HIV-1 disease progression and response to highly antiretroviral therapy. J Infect Dis 2005; 192: 992-1002. (Abstract)

Rockstroh J. Highly active antiretroviral therapy in HIV and hepatitis C coinfected individuals: friend or foe? Curr Opin HIV AIDS. 2007 Nov;2(6):449-53

Rockstroh JK. Hot topics in HIV and hepatitis coinfection: noninvasive diagnosis of liver disease, liver transplantation, and new drugs for treatment of hepatitis coinfection. HIV Clin Trials 2009;10:110-5. (Abstract)

Rockstroh J, Grint D, Boesecke C, et al. Increases in acute hepatitis C (HCV) incidence across Europe: which regions and patient groups are affected? J Int AIDS Soc. 2012 Nov 11;15(6).

Rodríguez-Nóvoa S, Morello J, González M, Vispo E, Barreiro P, González-Pardo G, et al. Increase in serum bilirubin in HIV/hepatitis-C virus-coinfected patients on atazanavir therapy following initiation of pegylated-interferon and ribavirin. AIDS. 2008;22:2535-7. (Abstract)

Rockstroh JK, Nelson M, Soriano V, et al. STARTVerso 4 phase III trial of faldaprevir once-daily plus peg interferon alfa-2a and ribavirin (PR) in patients with HIV and HCV genotype

1 coinfection. 14th European AIDS Conference. Brussels, October 16-19, 2013. Abstract 9/7.

Rodriguez-Torres M, Slim J, Bhatti L, Sterling RK, Sulkowski MS, Hassanein T, et al. Standard versus high dose ribavirin in combination with peginterferon alfa-2a (40KD) in genotype 1 (G1) HCV patients coinfected with HIV: Final results of the PARADIGM study. AASLD 2009, Abstract 1561.

Schmidt AJ, Rockstroh JK, Vogel M, et al. Trouble with bleeding: risk factors for acute hepatitis C among HIV-positive gay men from Germany--a case-control study. PLoS One 2011;6:e17781. (Abstract)

SeyedAlinaghi S, Jam S, Mehrkhani F, et al. Hepatitis-C and hepatitis-B co-infections in patients with human immunodeficiency virus in Tehran, Iran. Acta Med Iran 2011; 49:252-7. (Abstract)

Sherman KE, Rockstroh JK, Dieterich DT, et al. Telaprevir in Combination with Peginterferon Alfa-2a/Ribavirin in HCV/HIV Coinfected Patients: A 24-Week Treatment Interim Analysis. The 62nd Annual Meeting of the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases 2011, San Francisco, USA. Abstract LB-8.

Singal AK, Anand BS. Management of hepatitis C virus infection in HIV/HCV co-infected patients: clinical review. World J Gastroenterol. 2009;15:3713-24. (Abstract)

Soriano V, Mocroft A, Rockstroh J, et al. Spontaneous viral clearance, viral load, and genotype distribution of hepatitis C virus (HCV) in HIV-infected patients with anti-HCV antibodies in Europe. J Infect Dis 2008,198:1337-1344. (Abstract)

Soto B, Sanchez-Quijano A, Rodrigo L, et al. Human immunodeficiency virus infection modifies the natural history of chronic parenterally-acquired hepatitis C with an unusually rapid progression to cirrhosis. J Hepatol 1997; 26: 1-5. (Abstract)

Sulkowski NS, Thomas DL, Chaisson RE, Moore D. Hepatotoxicity associated with antiretroviral in adults infected with human immunodeficiency virus and the role of hepatitis C or B virus infection. JAMA 2000; 283: 74-80. (Abstract)

Sulkowski MS, Moore RD, Mehta SH, et al. Hepatitis C and progression of HIV disease. JAMA 2002;288:199-206. (Abstract)

Sulkowski M, Pol S, Cooper C, et al. Boceprevir Plus Peginterferon/Ribavirin for the Treatment of HCV/HIV Co.Infected Patients. Infectious Diseases Society of America, 49th Annual Meeting 2011, Boston, USA. Abstract LB-37.

Sulkowski M et al., All-Oral Therapy With Sofosbuvir Plus Ribavirin For the Treatment of HCV Genotype 1, 2, and 3 Infection in Patients Co-infected With HIV (PHOTON-1). 64th Annual Meeting of the American Association for the Study of Liver diseases, November 1-5, 2013, Washington, SA; abstract 212

Thomas DL, Thio CL, Martin MP, et al. Genetic variation in IL28B and spontaneous clearance of hepatitis C virus. Nature 2009,461:798-801. (Abstract)

Thomson EC, Nastouli E, Main J, Karayiannis P, Eliahoo J, Muir D, McClure MO. Delayed anti-HCV antibody response in HIV-positive men acutely infected with HCV. AIDS. 2009;23:89-93. (Abstract)

Thomson E, Fleming VM, Main J, et al. Predicting spontaneous clearance of acute hepatitis C virus in a large cohort of HIV-1-infected men. Gut. 2011;60:837-45. (Abstract)

Torriani FJ, Rodriguez-Torres M, Rockstroh JK et al: peg-interferon-a 2a + ribavirin for chronic hepatitis C virus infection in HIV-infected patients. New Engl J Med 2004; 358: 438-450. (Abstract)

Turner J, Bansi L, Gilson R, Gazzard B, Walsh J, Pillay D, et al. The prevalence of hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection in HIV-positive individuals in the UK - trends in HCV testing and the impact of HCV on HIV treatment outcomes. J Viral Hepat. 2010; 17:569-77. (Abstract)

Van Heeswijk R, Garg V, Boogaerts G, et al. The pharmacokinetic interaction between telaprevir and raltegravir in healthy volunteers. 51st ICAAC Chicago USA 2011, Abstract A1-1738a.

Verma S, Wang CH, Govindarajan S, Kanel G, Squires K, Bonacini M. Do type and duration of antiretroviral therapy attenuate liver fibrosis in HIV-hepatitis C virus-coinfected patients? Clin Infect Dis. 2006;42:262-70. (Abstract)

Vispo E, Fernández-Montero JV, Labarga P, Low risk of liver toxicity using the most recently approved antiretroviral agents but still increased in HIV-hepatitis C virus coinfected patients. AIDS. 2013 Apr 24;27(7):1187-8.

Vogel M, Voigt E, Michaelis HC, et al. Management of drug-to-drug interactions between cyclosporin A and the protease inhibitor saquinavir/ritonavir in liver transplanted HIV-infected patients. Liver Transplant 2004;10: 939-944. (Abstract)

Vogel M, Voigt E, Schäfer N, Goldmann G, Schwarz N, Kalff JC, et al. Orthotopic liver transplantation in human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)-positive patients: outcome of 7 patients from the Bonn cohort. Liver Transpl. 2005;11:1515-21. (Abstract)

Vogel M, Deterding K, Wiegand J, Grüner NH, Baumgarten A, Jung MC, et al. Hep-Net. Initial presentation of acute hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection among HIV-negative and HIV-positive individuals-experience from 2 large German networks on the study of acute HCV infection. Clin Infect Dis. 2009;49:317-9.

Vogel M, Rockstroh JK. Liver disease: the effects of HIV and antiretroviral therapy and the implications for early antiretroviral therapy initiation. Curr Opin HIV AIDS. 2009;4:171-5.

Vogel M, Rockstroh JK. Treatment of acute hepatitis C in HIV infection. J Antimicrob Chemother. 2010;65:4-9. (Abstract)

Vogel M, Ahlenstiel G, Hintsche B, et al. The influence of HAART on the efficacy and safety of pegylated interferon and ribavirin therapy for the treatment of chronic HCV infection in HIV-positive individuals. Eur J Med Res 2010; 15:102-111. (Abstract)

Weinbaum CM, Sabin KM, Santibanez SS. Hepatitis B, hepatitis C, and HIV in correctional populations: a review of epidemiology and prevention. AIDS 2005; 19 Suppl 3: S41-46. (Abstract)

Zanetti AR, Tanzi E, Paccagnini S, et al. Mother-to-infant transmission of hepatitis C virus. Lombard study group on vertical HCV transmission. Lancet 1995;345: 289-291. (Abstract)

18. HBV/HCV Coinfection

Carolynne Schwarze-Zander and Jürgen Kurt Rockstroh

Epidemiology of HBV/HCV coinfection

Hepatitis B (HBV) and hepatitis C (HCV) viruses are the most common causes of chronic liver disease worldwide. Due to shared routes of transmission, coinfection with HBV and HCV is not uncommon among individuals in HBV endemic areas who also have a high risk of parenteral infections, such as injection drug users (Pallas 1999), patients on hemodialysis (Reddy 2005), patients undergoing organ transplantation (Aroldi 2005) and HIV-positive individuals (Zhou 2007). Due to a lack of large-scale population-based studies the exact number of HBV/HCV-coinfected patients is unknown. Dual infection ranges from 9% to 30%, depending on the geographic region (Zarski 1998, Liaw 1995, Tyson 2013). These numbers may underestimate the true number of people with HBV/HCV coinfection as there is a well-known entity of occult HBV infection (patients with negative hepatitis B surface antigen [HBsAg] but detectable serum HBV DNA) in patients with chronic hepatitis C (Cacciola 1999).

Screening for HBV/HCV coinfection

Persons with a first episode of acute hepatitis should be screened for all viral causes including HBV and HCV (see Chapter 8 on diagnostic tests in acute and chronic hepatitis B and Chapter 11 for hepatitis C). Some patients may be inoculated with both viruses simultaneously and will present with acute hepatitis due to both viruses. In addition, HBV superinfection in patients with chronic hepatitis C, and HCV superinfection in patients with chronic hepatitis B have both been reported (Liaw 2004, Liaw 2000, Liaw 2002). Therefore, episodes of acute hepatitis in patients with known chronic HBV or HCV infection, especially those with ongoing risk behaviour for infection with the other virus such as injection drug users, should prompt screening for superinfection. In addition, in patients with chronic hepatitis C, ruling out occult HBV infection beyond HBsAg testing, i.e., by polymerase chain reaction (PCR), should be done when clinically indicated.

Viral interactions between HBV and HCV

Patients with both HBV and HCV infections may show a large spectrum of virologic profiles. HCV infection can suppress HBV replication and it has been shown that HBV/HCV-coinfected patients have lower HBV DNA levels, decreased activity of HBV DNA polymerase, and decreased expression of HBsAg and hepatitis B core antigen in the liver (Chu 1998). Moreover, patients with chronic HBV infection who become superinfected with HCV can undergo seroconversion of HBsAg (Liaw 1994, Liaw 1991). Several authors have reported that HBV can reciprocally inhibit HCV replication as well (Sato 1994). Specifically, HBV DNA replication has been shown to correlate with decreased HCV RNA levels in coinfected patients (Zarski 1998). Furthermore, coinfected patients have been shown to have lower levels of both HBV DNA and HCV RNA than corresponding monoinfected controls, indicating that simultaneous suppression of both viruses by the other can also occur (Jardi 2001). Thus, HBV or HCV can play the dominant role, HBV and HCV can inhibit each other simultaneously and they can alternate their dominance (Liaw 1995). Both viruses have the ability to induce seroconversion of the other. The chronology of infection may have a role in determining the dominant virus. The overall effect appears to be HCV suppression of HBV (Liaw 2001). Interestingly, recent *in vitro* studies found no evidence of direct interference between the two viruses, making interindividual differences in innate and/or adaptive host immune responses responsible for viral interference observed in coinfected patients (Bellecave 2009, Eyre 2009).

Clinical scenarios of HBV and HCV infection

Different scenarios of infection have been described with HBV/HCV coinfection including acute hepatitis with HBV and HCV (Alberti 1995), occult HBV coinfection of chronic hepatitis C (Sagnelli 2001), and superinfection by either virus in patients with preexisting chronic hepatitis due to the other virus (Figure 1). Frequently the sequence of infection cannot be defined.

Acute hepatitis by simultaneous infection of HBV and HCV

Simultaneous coinfection with HBV and HCV is rarely seen, but the interaction of HBV and HCV appears to be similar to chronic infection. In acute infection with HBV and HCV, patients showed delayed HBsAg appearance and a shorter hepatitis B surface antigenemia compared to those with acute HBV alone (Mimms 1993). Biphasic alanine aminotransferase (ALT) elevation was found in some patients, although rates of viral clearance were similar to those in HBV or HCV mono-infected patients (Alberti 1995).

HCV superinfection

HCV superinfection is frequent in endemic areas of HBV infection, such as Asia, South America and sub-Saharan Africa (Liaw 2002, Liaw 2004), which can result in the suppression of HBV replication and termination of HBsAg carriage. However, long-term follow-up analyses have described a higher rate of liver cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma (Liaw 2004). Fulminant hepatic failure was significantly

higher among patients with underlying HBV infection than those without (23% vs. 3%) (Chu 1999, Wu 1994, Chu 1994).

HBV superinfection

HBV superinfection is less common in HCV-infected patients and very limited data is available. In one report a patient became seronegative for HCV RNA after HBV superinfection, indicating that superinfection of HBV may lead to suppression of HCV (Liaw 2000, Wietzke 1999). Other reports have shown that HBV superinfection may be associated with acute deterioration of liver function among patients with chronic HCV infection, and the risk of fulminant hepatitis may be increased (Sagnelli 2002).

Occult HBV infection in patients with HCV infection

Occult HBV infection, defined as detectable HBV DNA in liver or serum and undetectable HBsAg (Ozaslan 2009, Torbenson 2002), has been identified in up to 50% of patients with chronic HCV. Importantly, a relation to HCV treatment outcomes has been described (Zignego 1997, Fukuda 2001, Sagnelli 2001). HCV infection with occult HBV infection has been associated with higher ALT levels, greater histological activity index and liver disease more often progressing to liver cirrhosis (Fukuda 1999, Cacciola 1999, Sagnelli 2001).

Chronic hepatitis in HBV/HCV coinfection

Patients with detectable serum HBV DNA and HCV RNA are at highest risk of progression to cirrhosis and liver decompensation and therefore should be considered for treatment. Active HCV infection (HCV RNA+) in the setting of inactive HBsAg (HBsAg+/HBV DNA-) behaves similarly to HCV monoinfection. Another possibility is active HBV infection in patients with inactive or prior HCV infection (HBV DNA+/HCV RNA-/anti-HCV+). This immune profile is less common, and may indicate HBV suppression of HCV. A longitudinal study of virologic monitoring of 103 HBV/HCV-coinfected patients revealed fluctuation of the virological pattern (Raimondo 2006). Asian ethnicity is a major independent predictor of HBV dominance, while HCV-dominant disease is more common in non-Asian individuals (Nguyen 2011). Thus, careful longitudinal follow-up of levels of serum HBV DNA and HCV RNA is needed for a correct diagnosis and decision on the most successful treatment strategy. Table 1 shows the immune profiles found in patients with chronic HBV/HCV infection.

Table 1. **Immune profiles in patients with chronic HBV/HCV hepatitis**

	HBV and HCV active	Occult HBV in chronic active HCV	HCV active in HBsAg carrier
HBsAg	+	–	+
HBV DNA	+	+	–
Anti-HCV	+	+	+
HCV RNA	+	+	+

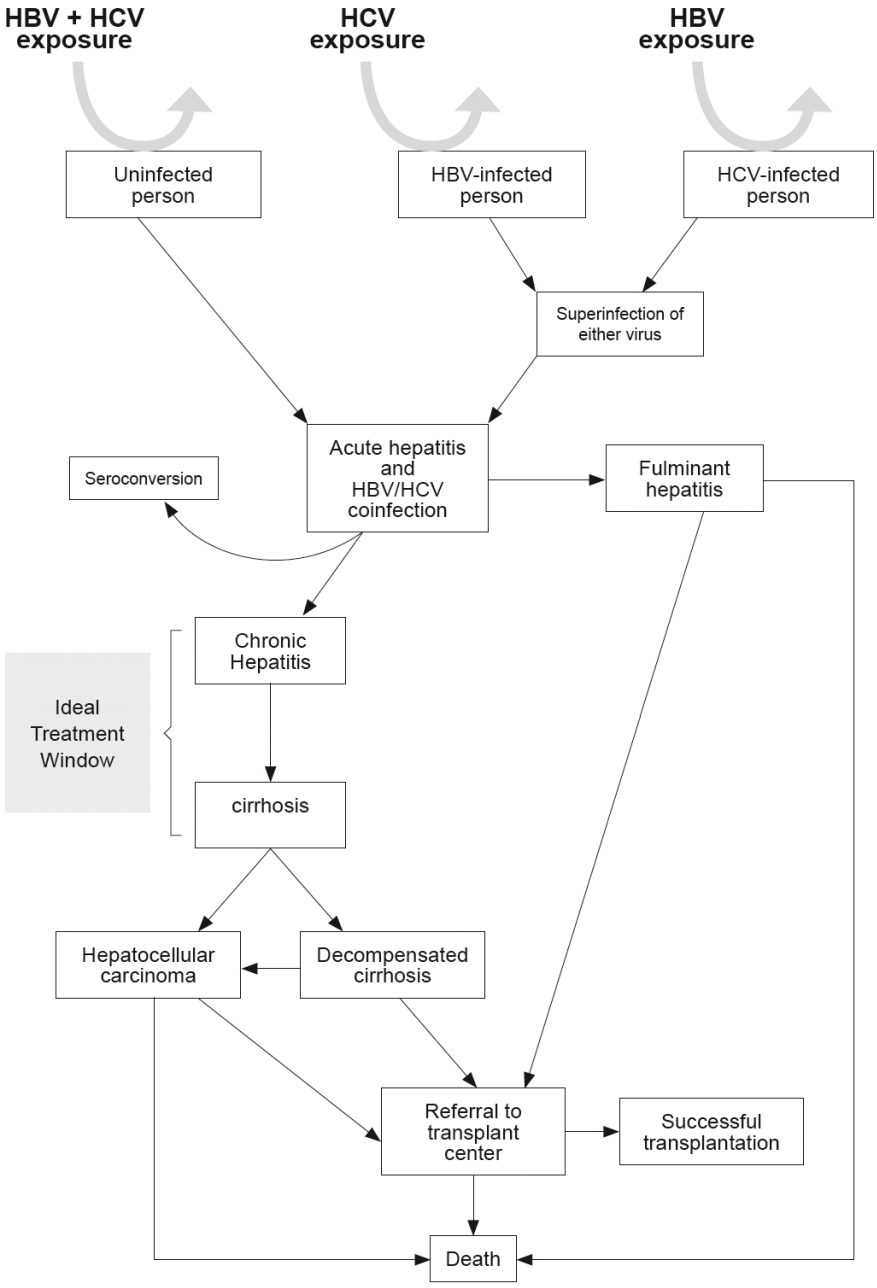


Figure 1. Clinical scenarios of HBV/HCV coinfection (modified after Crockett 2005)

Cirrhosis

Higher rates of cirrhosis have been shown in HBV/HCV-coinfected patients. In comparison to patients with HBV monoinfection, higher rates of cirrhosis (44% vs. 21%) and decompensated liver disease (24% vs. 6%) were demonstrated in coinfected patients (Fong 1991). Compared to HCV-monoinfected patients a higher rate of cirrhosis (95% vs. 49%) and more decompensated liver disease (Child-Pugh class C 37% vs. 0%) were found in HBV/HCV-coinfected patients (Mohamed Ael 1997).

Hepatocellular carcinoma

In many studies coinfection with HBV and HCV has been shown to be associated with an increased risk of HCC development, confirmed by three large meta-analyses (Cho 2011, Shi 2005, Donato 1998).

In one longitudinal study incidence, of HCC was 6.4 per 100 person years in HCV/HBV-coinfected patients compared to 2.0 in HBV and 3.7 in HCV monoinfection. The cumulative risk of developing HCC after 10 years was 45% in HBV/HCV-coinfected patients compared to 16% in HBV- and 28% in HCV-monoinfected patients (Chiaramonte 1999). HBV/HCV-coinfected patients should undergo a screening routine for HCC with liver ultrasound and α fetoprotein levels in serum at least every 6 months.

Treatment of HBV and HCV coinfection

Currently there are no well-established treatment guidelines for HBV/HCV-coinfected patients. Generally, treatment guidelines for monoinfected patients should be applied to coinfected patients. In patients with HBV/HCV coinfection treatment should be initiated when inclusion criteria for standard treatment guidelines of HBV and HCV monoinfection are met (see Chapter 9 on HBV treatment and Chapter 12 on HCV treatment). As with HBV and HCV monoinfection, treatment of coinfected patients should be started in patients with active chronic hepatitis or cirrhosis before liver decompensation occurs. Due to the variety of virological profiles in HBV/HCV coinfection it is important to assess the dominant virus prior to initiating therapy.

Due to loss of viral suppression from the successfully treated dominant virus, deterioration of liver disease has been reported (Yalcin 2003) and caution must be exercised upon initiation of therapy.

In coinfected patients with dominance of HCV infection, treatment with IFN (Weltman 1995, Villa 2001, Utili 1999) and IFN plus ribavirin (Chuang 2005, Hung 2005, Liu 2003) has been well studied and proven effective. However, more recent studies show that combination therapy with PEG-IFN plus ribavirin is even more efficient in inducing virological response (Table 2), and is supported by a recently published meta-analysis (Liu 2012).

HCV RNA response was similar to results seen in HCV monoinfection with up to 88% in HCV genotype 2/3 and 72% in HCV genotype 1 achieving sustained virological response (Liu 2009, Kim 2011). The durability of HCV SVR was maintained in 97% of patients in a recent five-year follow-up study (Yu 2013). In addition, risk reduction of HCC and improved survival was achieved by treatment

of HBV/HCV-coinfected patients after therapy with PEG-IFN plus ribavirin (Liu 2013). Importantly, HBV replication may become detectable in up to 36% of patients with undetectable pretreatment HBV DNA levels (Potthoff 2009, Liu 2009). HBV DNA reactivation was recently found to be independently associated with younger age, HCV SVR and baseline HBV DNA ≥2000 IU/ml (Hung 2012). Thus, close monitoring of both viruses is recommended during and after combination therapy.

Table 2. PEG-IFN plus ribavirin treatment trials in HBV/HCV-coinfected patients

Patients (n)	HCV SVR (%)	HBV DNA negative (%)	HBsAg loss (%)	HBV reactivation # (%)	Reference
19	70*, 78**	33	0	31	Potthoff 2008
161	72*, 83**	56	11	35	Liu 2009
17	6	Na	Na	Na	Senturk 2008
50	40*, 75**	100	0	24	Yu 2009
18	60*, 88**	12	Na	na	Kim 2011

*HCV GT 1, **HCV GT 2/3, na=not applicable, # HBV DNA negative pretreatment

The introduction of new direct acting antivirals (DAA) has opened up new pathways in treating HCV, which still need to be evaluated in HBV/HCV-coinfected patients. Currently no data exists for telaprevir, boceprevir, simeprevir and sofosbuvir, which have been approved for the treatment of HCV genotype 1 infection. Also, the role of IFN-free DAA-based therapy for treatment of HCV infection in HBV/HCV coinfected patients will need to be addressed, taking into account that an IFN-free regimen will not be able to clear HBsAg.

In patients with dominance of HBV disease IFN +/- HBV polymerase inhibitors are an upcoming option. Data exists from a small cohort of HBV/HCV-coinfected patients treated with lamivudine in combination with standard interferon for 12 months followed by lamivudine for an additional 6 months (Marrone 2004). In this study, clearance of HBeAg was found in 3/8, two patients showing HBeAg seroconversion, and clearance of HBV DNA was observed in 3/8 at the end of therapy. HBV DNA became detectable again in 2 patients at the end of follow-up. HCV clearance was achieved in 50%. In a recent study tolerability and efficacy of anti-HBV nucleos(t)ide analogs (lamivudine plus adefovir (n=10), entecavir (n=7), telbivudine (n=4), tenofovir disoproxil fumarate (n=3)) was investigated in a cohort of 24 HBV/HCV-coinfected cirrhotic patients (Coppola 2013). Clearance of HBV DNA was found in 96% of patients after 18 months, while HCV reactivation was low (12.5%). However, while the virological response was favorable in all patients and treatment was well tolerated, progression of liver cirrhosis was seen in as many as 33%. Patients who were HCV RNA positive at baseline deteriorated more frequently. Thus, a favourable clinical impact in HBV/HCV cirrhotic patients was seen only in patients who were HCV RNA negative at baseline.

Based on these observations nucleos(t)ide analogs (NA) such as tenofovir, adefovir, entecavir and telbivudine showing a higher genetic barrier in combination with PEG-IFN are a possible treatment option. In HBV/HCV cirrhotic patients with

detectable HCV RNA exclusive treatment with NA has a high risk of clinical deterioration. However, further studies are needed to estimate the treatment value of these newer drugs in different clinical scenarios.

Conclusion

Coinfection with HBV and HCV is not uncommon, especially within areas of high hepatitis B prevalence. HBV/HCV coinfection is a challenge for clinicians due to the complex interactions of HBV and HCV, and the propensity for developing severe liver disease. No treatment standard has been established for HBV/HCV-coinfected patients. Treatment decisions must be made based upon identification of the dominant virus. Combination therapy of PEG-IFN plus ribavirin has been shown to be highly effective in inducing virological response of HCV in patients with HBV/HCV coinfection. The availability of direct acting antivirals against HCV will open new pathways in treatment, which should be replicable in HBV/HCV coinfection. However, to date, in coinfection of HBV/HCV no treatment experience with these new agents has been reported. Finally, caution must be exercised in treating coinfected patients, as flares of the untreated virus may occur.

References

Alberti A, Pontisso P, Chemello L, et al. The interaction between hepatitis B virus and hepatitis C virus in acute and chronic liver disease. J Hepatol 1995;22(1 Suppl):38-41. (Abstract)

Aroldi A, Lampertico P, Montagnino G, et al. Natural history of hepatitis B and C in renal allograft recipients. Transplantation 2005;79:1132-6. (Abstract)

Bellecave P, Gouttenoire J, Gajer M et al. Hepatitis B and C virus coinfection: a novel model system reveals the absence of direct viral interference. Hepatology 2009;50:46-55. (Abstract)

Cacciola I, Pollicino T, Squadrito G, et al. Occult hepatitis B virus infection in patients with chronic hepatitis C liver disease. N Engl J Med 1999;341:22-6. (Abstract)

Chiaramonte M, Stroffolini T, Vian A, et al. Rate of incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with compensated viral cirrhosis. Cancer 1999;85:2132-7. (Abstract)

Cho LY, Yang JJ, Ko KP, et al. Coinfection of hepatitis B and C viruses and risk of hepatocellular carcinoma: systematic review and meta-analysis. Int J Cancer 2011;128:176-84.

Chu CJ, Lee SD. Hepatitis B virus/hepatitis C virus coinfection: epidemiology, clinical features, viral interactions and treatment. J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2008;23:512-20. (Abstract)

Chu CM, Sheen IS, Liaw YF. The role of hepatitis C virus in fulminant viral hepatitis in an area with endemic hepatitis A and B. Gastroenterology 1994;107:189-95. (Abstract)

Chu CM, Yeh CT, Liaw YF. Low-level viremia and intracellular expression of hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg) in HBsAg carriers with concurrent hepatitis C virus infection. J Clin Microbiol 1998;36:2084-6. (Abstract)

Chuang WL, Dai CY, Chang WY, et al. Viral interaction and responses in chronic hepatitis C and B coinfected patients with interferon-alpha plus ribavirin combination therapy. Antivir Ther 2005;10:125-33. (Abstract)

Coppola N, Stanzione M, Messina V, et al. Tolerability and efficacy of anti-HBV nucleos(t)ide analogues in HBV-DNA-positive cirrhotic patients with HBV/HCV dual infection. J Viral Hep 2012;19:890-6.

Crockett SD, Keeffe EB. Natural history and treatment of hepatitis B virus and hepatitis C virus coinfection. Ann Clin Microbiol Antimicrob 2005;4:13. (Abstract)

Donato F, Boffetta P, Puoti M. A meta-analysis of epidemiological studies on the combined effect of hepatitis B and C virus infections in causing hepatocellular carcinoma. Int J Cancer 1998;75:347-54.

Eyre NS, Phillips RJ, Bowden S, et al. Hepatitis B virus and hepatitis C virus interaction in Huh-7 cells. J Hepatol 2009;51:446-57. (Abstract)
Fong TL, Di Bisceglie AM, Waggoner JG, et al. The significance of antibody to hepatitis C virus in patients with chronic hepatitis B. Hepatology 1991;14:64-. (Abstract)
Fukuda R, Ishimura N, Hamamoto S, et al. Co-infection by serologically-silent hepatitis B virus may contribute to poor interferon response in patients with chronic hepatitis C by down-regulation of type-I interferon receptor gene expression in the liver. J Med Virol 2001;63:220-7. (Abstract)
Fukuda R, Ishimura N, Niigaki M, et al. Serologically silent hepatitis B virus coinfection in patients with hepatitis C virus-associated chronic liver disease: clinical and virological significance. J Med Virol 1999;58:201-7. (Abstract)
Hung CH, Lee CM, Lu SN, et al. Combination therapy with interferon-alpha and ribavirin in patients with dual hepatitis B and C virus infection. J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2005;20:727-32. (Abstract)
Hung CH, Chen CH, Lu SN, et al. Precore/core promoter mutations and hepatitis B virus genotype in hepatitis B and C dually infected patients treated with interferon-based therapy. Antiviral Res 2012; 93:55-63.
Jardi R, Rodriguez F, Buti M, et al. Role of hepatitis B, C, and D viruses in dual and triple infection: influence of viral genotypes and hepatitis B precore and basal core promoter mutations on viral replicative interference. Hepatology 2001;34:404-10. (Abstract)
Liaw YF. Role of hepatitis C virus in dual and triple hepatitis virus infection. Hepatology 1995;22:1101-8. (Abstract)
Liaw YF. Concurrent hepatitis B and C virus infection: Is hepatitis C virus stronger? J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2001;16:597-8. (Abstract)
Liaw YF. Hepatitis C virus superinfection in patients with chronic hepatitis B virus infection. J Gastroenterol 2002;37 Suppl 13:65-8. (Abstract)
Liaw YF, Chen YC, Sheen IS, et al. Impact of acute hepatitis C virus superinfection in patients with chronic hepatitis B virus infection. Gastroenterology 2004;126:1024-9. (Abstract)
Liaw YF, Lin SM, Sheen IS, et al. Acute hepatitis C virus superinfection followed by spontaneous HBeAg seroconversion and HBsAg elimination. Infection 1991;19:250-1. (Abstract)
Liaw YF, Yeh CT, Tsai SL. Impact of acute hepatitis B virus superinfection on chronic hepatitis C virus infection. Am J Gastroenterol 2000;95:2978-80. (Abstract)
Liu CJ, Chen PJ, Lai MY et al. Ribavirin and interferon is effective for hepatitis C virus clearance in hepatitis B and C dually infected patients. Hepatology 2003:37:568-76. (Abstract)
Liu CJ, Chuang WL, Lee CM, et al. Peginterferon alfa-2a plus ribavirin for the treatment of dual chronic infection with hepatitis B and C viruses. Gastroenterology 2009:136(2):496-504. (Abstract)
Liu CJ, Chu YT, Shau WY, et al. Treatment of patients with dual hepatitis C and B by peginterferon α and ribavirin reduced risk of hepatocellular carcinoma and mortality. Gut. 2013 May 15. [Epub ahead of print]
Liu JY, Sheng YJ, HU HD, et al. The influence of hepatitis B virus on antiviral treatment with interferon and ribavirin in Asian patients with hepatitis C virus/hepatitis B virus coinfectio: a meta-analysis. Virol J 2012;9:186-93.
Marrone A, Zampino R, D'Onofrio M, et al. Combined interferon plus lamivudine treatment in young patients with dual HBV (HBeAg positive) and HCV chronic infection. J Hepatol 2004;41:1064-5. (Abstract)
Mimms LT, Mosley JW, Hollinger FB, et al. Effect of concurrent acute infection with hepatitis C virus on acute hepatitis B virus infection. BMJ 1993;307:1095-7. (Abstract)
Nguyen LH, Ko S, Wong SS, et al. Ethnic differences in viral dominance patterns in patients with hepatitis B virus and hepatitis C virus dual infection. Hepatology 2011;53:1839-45. (Abstract)Ozaslan E, Purnak T. Controversies about occult hepatitis B virus infection. World J Gastroenterol 2009;15:4986-7. (Abstract)
Pallas JR, Farinas-Alvarez C, Prieto D, et al. Coinfections by HIV, hepatitis B and hepatitis C in imprisoned injecting drug users. Eur J Epidemiol 1999;15:699-704. (Abstract)
Potthoff A, Wedemeyer H, Boecher WO, et al. The HEP-NET B/C co-infection trial: A prospective multicenter study to investigate the efficacy of pegylated interferon-

alpha2b and ribavirin in patients with HBV/HCV co-infection. J Hepatol 2008;49:688-94. (Abstract)
Potthoff A, Berg T, Wedemeyer H, et al. Late hepatitis B virus relapse in patients co-infected with hepatitis B virus and hepatitis C virus after antiviral treatment with pegylated interferon-a2b and ribavirin. Scand J Gastroenterol 2009;44:1487-90. (Abstract)
Raimondo G, Brunetto MR, Pontisso P, et al. Longitudinal evaluation reveals a complex spectrum of virological profiles in hepatitis B virus/hepatitis C virus-coinfected patients. Hepatology 2006;43:100-7. (Abstract)
Reddy GA, Dakshinamurthy KV, Neelaprasad P, et al. Prevalence of HBV and HCV dual infection in patients on haemodialysis. Indian J Med Microbiol 2005;23:41-3. (Abstract)
Sagnelli E, Coppola N, Messina V, et al. HBV superinfection in hepatitis C virus chronic carriers, viral interaction, and clinical course. Hepatology 2002;36:1285-91. (Abstract)
Sagnelli E, Coppola N, Scolastico C, et al. HCV genotype and "silent" HBV coinfection: two main risk factors for a more severe liver disease. J Med Virol 2001;64:350-5. (Abstract)
Sato S, Fujiyama S, Tanaka M, et al. Coinfection of hepatitis C virus in patients with chronic hepatitis B infection. J Hepatol 1994;21:159-66. (Abstract)
Senturk H, Tahan V, Canbakan B, et al. Chronic hepatitis C responds poorly to combination therapy in chronic hepatitis B carriers. Neth J Med 2008;66:191-5. (Abstract)
Shi J, Zhu L, Liu S, et al. A meta-analysis of case-control studies on the combined effect of hepatitis B and C virus infections in causing hepatocellular carcinoma in China. Br J Cancer 2005;92:607-12.
Torbenson M, Thomas DL. Occult hepatitis B. Lancet Infect Dis 2002:2:479-86. (Abstract)
Tyson GL, Kramer JR, Duan Z, Davila JA, Richardson PA, El-Serag HB. Prevalence and predictors of hepatitis B virus coinfection in a United States cohort of hepatitis C virus-infected patients. Hepatology 2013;58:538-45. (Abstract)
Utili R, Zampino R, Bellopede P, et al. Dual or single hepatitis B and C virus infections in childhood cancer survivors: long-term follow-up and effect of interferon treatment. Blood 1999;94:4046-52. (Abstract)
Villa E, Grottola A, Buttafoco P, et al. High doses of alpha-interferon are required in chronic hepatitis due to coinfection with hepatitis B virus and hepatitis C virus: long term results of a prospective randomized trial. Am J Gastroenterol 2001;96:2973-7. (Abstract)
Wietzke P, Schott P, Braun F, et al. Clearance of HCV RNA in a chronic hepatitis C virus-infected patient during acute hepatitis B virus superinfection. Liver 1999;19:348-53. (Abstract)
Weltman MD, Brotodihardio A, Crewe EB, et al. Coinfection with hepatitis B and C or B, C and delta viruses results in severe chronic liver disease and responds poorly to interferon-alpha treatment. J Viral Hepat 1995;2:39-45. (Abstract)
Wu JC, Chen CL, Hou MC, et al. Multiple viral infection as the most common cause of fulminant and subfulminant viral hepatitis in an area endemic for hepatitis B: application and limitations oft he polymerase chain reaction. Hepatology 1994;19:836-40. (Abstract)
Yalcin K, Degertekin H, Yildiz F, et al. A severe hepatitis flare in an HBV-HCV coinfected patient during combination therapy with alpha-interferon and ribavirin. J Gastroenterol 2003;38:796-800. (Abstract)
Yu JW, Sun LJ, Zhao YH, Kang P, et al. Analysis of the efficacy of treatment with peginterferon ?-2a and ribavirin in patients coinfected with hepatitis B virus and hepatitis C virus. Liver Int 2009;29:1485-93. (Abstract)
Yu ML, Lee CM, Chen CL, et al. Sustained hepatitis C virus clearance and increased hepatitis B surface antigen seroclearance in patients with dual chronic hepatitis C and B during posttreatment follow-up. Hepatology. 2013;57:2135-42.
Zarski JP, Bohn B, Bastie A, et al. Characteristics of patients with dual infection by hepatitis B and C viruses. J Hepatol 1998;28:27-33. (Abstract)
Zhou J, Dore GJ, Zhang F, et al. Hepatitis B and C virus coinfection in The TREAT Asia HIV Observational Database. J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2007;22:1510-8. (Abstract)

19. Assessment of Hepatic Fibrosis and Steatosis

Frank Grünhage and Frank Lammert

Introduction

Non-invasive methods for the assessment of liver fibrosis are increasingly being used instead of invasive liver biopsy due to patient wariness and the low but ever-present morbidity of biopsies. Non-invasive tests should be able to discriminate between non-significant (stages F0-F1) and significant (stages ≥F2) fibrosis to help either delay or initiate antiviral treatment. In addition, non-invasive markers should be able to reliably predict liver cirrhosis in order to initiate further diagnostics to exlude portal hypertension and to start surveillance strategies with progressive fibrosis. Non-invasive strategies are also warranted for monitoring the disease while on therapy and ideally document a regression of fibrosis in the long term.

Yet, despite recent advances in the use of surrogate markers and the development of new technical developments such as elastography, liver histology remains the gold standard for fibrosis staging (Goodman 2007). Currently an intense debate regarding non-invasive tests is going on, and a number of participants in this discussion have suggested to not accept the claim of liver histology as the gold standard while others demand to better define the role of histology as the best available standard (Bedossa 2009). Up until today most experts agree that non-invasive techniques will not replace liver biopsies completely although they will help reduce the number of biopsies required (Leroy 2007, Pinzani 2005, Sebastiani 2006). While non-invasive fibrosis tests are suitable for the diagnosis of liver cirrhosis, they have been questioned for clinical practice as they lack the potential to discriminate between the stages of fibrosis. Entirely non-invasive algorithms have been developed that include a differentiation of the stages of fibrosis (Boursier 2011a, Boursier 2011b). It has even recently been shown that non-invasive tests carry the potential of outcome prediction, which may encourage clinicians to rely on these markers (Vergniol 2011).

Mechanisms of liver fibrosis in chronic viral hepatitis

Liver fibrosis is characterised by the loss of hepatocytes, destruction of hepatic (micro)architecture, proliferation of hepatic (myo)fibroblasts, and excess deposition of extracellular matrix components (Friedman 2008). Endstage liver fibrosis (cirrhosis) may include insufficient detoxification, hepatocellular carcinoma, portal hypertension, renal and pulmonary failure, and is associated with excess mortality. In chronic viral hepatitis, fibrosis develops as a consequence of the host immunological response. This immunological response activates antiviral defence mechanisms that aim to clear infected hepatocytes. The mechanisms underlying fibrogenesis in chronic HBV or HCV infection are complex (Friedman 2007).

A key feature of hepatic fibrosis is the activation and proliferation of fibroblasts and hepatic stellate cells. Quiescent hepatic stellate cells store vitamin A and reside in the subendothelial space of Disse. Chronic liver injury leads to activation of these cells, which become contractile, produce extracellular matrix components and secrete pro-inflammatory cytokines and chemokines like transforming growth factor ß. The activation of these cells is believed to represent the key event in hepatic fibrogenesis (Friedman 2008). Hepatic stellate cell activation depends on signalling by Kupffer cells, endothelial cells, hepatocytes, and platelets. The deposition of the extracellular matrix is constantly opposed by a degradation of these proteins. In progressive liver fibrosis, this balance is skewed in favour of excess extracellular matrix deposition. Matrix metalloproteinases and their regulators (tissue inhibitors of metalloproteinases, TIMPs) control matrix deposition and degradation. In liver fibrogenesis, TIMP-1 is also produced by activated hepatic stellate cells.

Liver histology, by helping visualise the fibrosis, has been considered the gold standard for assessment and measurement of progression of fibrosis. However, the disadvantages of this method have motivated researchers and clinicians to look into more non-invasive strategies. These strategies are based either on single serum surrogate markers, compositional scores derived from combinations of different surrogate markers, or modifications of imaging techniques.

Liver biopsy – the gold standard for staging of liver fibrosis

In the majority of liver centers worldwide, liver biopsy is performed as a “blind” or ultrasound-guided puncture, as either an out- or in-patient procedure. Liver punctures are considered to be relatively safe procedures with complication rates ranging from 0.75% up to 13.6% (Myers 2008, Piccinino 1986, van der Poorten 2006). The most frequent complications are minor bleeding or pain. After efficient substitution with clotting factors, percutaneous liver biopsy is also possible in patients with inherited bleeding disorders with no obvious increase in complication rates (DiMichele 2003, Schwarz 2008). However, many centers are reluctant to puncture hemophilic patients. In these cases non-invasive diagnostic options may improve diagnosis of unrecognized fibrosis or cirrhosis (Moessner 2011). Procedure-related mortality rates are reported to range from 0.001 to 0.003% (Piccinino 1986). Of note, excess rates with severe bleeding and biopsy-related

deaths have been reported after percutaneous biopsy in populations with advanced fibrosis, cirrhosis, or hepatic tumors (Terjung 2003). Thus, liver biopsies in these patients should always be performed as in-patient procedures, since >90% of complications are detected within the first 24 hours (Piccinino 1986).

Transjugular puncture of the liver via cannulation of a hepatic vein is an alternative, which can be performed in patients with severe coagulation deficiencies. It is resource intensive and carries a risk of intrahepatic hemorrhage or capsule perforation with intra-abdominal bleeding. Complication rates are lower than with percutaneous biopsies and range from 2.5% (Mammen 2008) to 6.5% with a reported mortality rate of up to 0.09% in high-risk groups (Kalambokis 2007). However, the quality of specimens from transjugular biopsies may be lower because of the higher fragmentation of specimens and the lower numbers of portal fields in transjugular biopsies (Cholongitas 2006).

Laparoscopy and mini-laparoscopy are even more invasive procedures for obtaining liver biopsy. A recent randomized trial showed a higher detection rate of liver cirrhosis as compared to percutaneous biopsies with lower complication rates for laparoscopy (Denzer 2007). No data is available for detection of lesser fibrosis stages. Thus, we recommend this procedure only in selected cases if the results will have an impact on the clinical management of the patient (Helmreich-Becker 2003).

The quality and reliability of fibrosis staging via histopathological assessment of liver biopsy specimens depends largely on the size of the specimen and the number of portal fields. The biopsy should be 20-25 mm long and more than 11 portal tracts should be visible (Bedossa 2003, Cholongitas 2006, Rousselet 2005). However, in daily practice these requirements may not be easy to achieve; and even if a large enough biopsy is acquired, the specimen only reflects about 1/50,000 of the whole liver. Thus, liver biopsies are particularly prone to sampling errors and may – like non-invasive markers – have difficulties in discriminating between adjacent stages of fibrosis (i.e., F1 vs. F2 or F2 vs. F3). Recent studies report up to one stage difference between specimens from the right and the left lobe in up to 38% of biopsies (Regev 2002, Siddique 2003). Discrepancies of more than one stage are rare (Regev 2002, Siddique 2003, Skripenova 2007). Intra- and inter-observer variability may be unaffected by specimen sizes but can lead to discrepancies in up to 20% of cases, even if one stage difference between estimates is accepted (Gronbaek 2002, Petz 2003). Standardized automatic staging via image analysis may improve inter-observer variability (Calvaruso 2009, Hui 2004). Assessment of collagen proportionate area (CPA) has been shown to correlate better with hepatic venous pressure gradient in cirrhotic patients and the risk of decompensation after liver transplantation in patients with chronic viral hepatitis (Calvaruso 2009). Interestingly, CPA shows a better correlation with liver stiffness than with the Ishak score in both cases (Isgro 2012, Calvaruso 2012).

While the METAVIR score is considered best in HCV fibrosis, there is a wide variability in the use of other staging systems in patients with chronic viral hepatitis. In Germany, current guidelines recommend the Desmet & Scheuer staging system (Table 1) (Batts 1995, Desmet 1994, Ishak 1995, Knodell 1981, Schirmacher 2004, TFMCSG 1994).

Table 1. Commonly used liver fibrosis staging scores

Staging System	Fibrosis stages	Remarks	
METAVIR	F0, F1, F2, F3, F4	Best evaluated in HCV fibrosis	The French METAVIR Cooperative Study Group 1994
Knodell	F0, F1, F3, F4	No intermediate stage	Knodell 1981
Desmet & Scheuer	Analogous to METAVIR	Recommended by the German guidelines for the assessment of liver fibrosis	Desmet 1994, Schirmacher 2004
Batts & Ludwig	Similar to METAVIR		Batts 1995
Ishak	F0, F1, F2, F3, F4, F5, F6		Ishak 1995

Surrogate markers of liver fibrosis in chronic viral hepatitis

Liver fibrosis develops as a continuous process rather than in a stepwise manner. Thus, so-called surrogate markers, which are also continuous variables, may provide more precise information. Surrogate makers can be subdivided into direct and indirect markers. Direct markers reflect changes in the content of extracellular matrix proteins (such as collagen) in the liver. In contrast, indirect markers reflect alterations in hepatic function, increase in portal hypertension with subsequent splenic enlargement, and/or grade of hepatic inflammation that may correlate with liver fibrosis stage (Table 2) (see http://hepatologytextbook.com/link.php?id=7). Direct and indirect markers may be used alone or, more commonly, in combination ("composite scores"). The calculation of such scores can be simple or based on complicated formulas (e.g., Fibrotest, Fibromax, Fibrosure) (Table 2).

Most studies of non-invasive markers were performed in HCV patients, while studies in HBV or coinfected cohorts are sparse (Pinzani 2008). Primary endpoints of the studies that evaluated surrogate markers vary from discrimination of no fibrosis and cirrhosis to the determination of the stages of fibrosis. However, for the clinical management of patients with chronic viral hepatitis both are needed. Whereas the former is needed to identify patients in need of urgent treatment, the latter may separate those patients with an indication for antiviral treatment due to significant fibrosis from those with no or minor fibrosis in whom treatment may - at the moment - be postponed. However, response rates of anti-HCV therapies are currently rising and cure rates >90% are expected in uncomplicated cases in the near future. In these patients treatment is probably always potent enough to eradicate the virus irrespective of the underlying fibrosis stage. Thus, the determination of lower fibrosis stages to decide for or against treatment might become obsolete for this subgroup of patients.

From the whole range of surrogate markers only a few are in clinical use. The simple APRI score has been widely studied in HCV and HBV as well as in coinfected patients (Cacoub 2008, Lebensztejn 2005, Vallet-Pichard 2008, Wai

2006). A recent comprehensive meta-analysis of the performance of the APRI test showed that its major strength is the exclusion of significant fibrosis, defined as F2-F4, or cirrhosis with cut-offs of 0.5 and 1.0, respectively. However, the authors conclude that using this marker alone, only about one third of all biopsies can be avoided. Importantly, the test performance varied with the quantity of advanced fibrosis in the different patient groups (Shaheen 2008, Shaheen 2007). Fibrotest has also achieved some clinical significance. However, this test may not be available for all patients. Recent meta-analyses of the predictive performance of Fibrotest summarize that the reliability for the detection of advanced fibrosis or cirrhosis is adequate for clinical practice, and a cut-off of 0.6 has been suggested (Poynard 2007, Shaheen 2008, Shaheen 2007). Of note, the reliability for the detection of earlier fibrosis stages appears to be relatively low (Poynard 2007, Shaheen 2008).

In summary, surrogate markers may support the clinical decision making process, but a single surrogate marker or score cannot replace the liver biopsy. On the other hand, attempts have been made to combine different surrogate markers and biopsy in clinical decision algorithms that aim to reduce the need for liver punctures (Table 2). Increasing efforts are being made to combine surrogate markers with transient elastography, and it seems that some progress can be expected in precise prediction of different fibrosis stages, which may eventually replace liver biopsy for fibrosis staging.

Transient elastography

Transient elastography (TE) is a non-invasive technique to assess liver fibrosis (Sandrin 1999). TE allows the assessment of liver fibrosis by calculating the velocity of a low-frequency transient shear wave produced by a mechanical probe that is placed directly on the skin of the patient. The velocity of the wave that penetrates the liver tissue depends on the stiffness of the liver, which in turn correlates with the extent of liver fibrosis. In practice, a probe is placed in an intercostal space at a position that is comparable to the position for standard liver biopsy. Ten successful measurements are usually necessary for the assessment of liver stiffness. This can be done in less than 5 minutes. At present TE machines are exclusively available from Echosens (FibroScan®). Liver stiffness is expressed in kilo Pascal (kPa). The method is easy to learn and quick, results are available immediately, and a technical assistant can perform the procedure. In most studies, TE displays robust intra- and inter-observer variability (Fraquelli 2007) and may be used in children as well as adults (de Ledinghen 2007). Recently a special S probe for testing children and patients with small intercostals spaces was introduced, and normal reference values for different ages were defined (Engelmann 2011).

However, more recent studies also question the initially reported results with excellent inter-observer variability. In addition, a debate on quality assessment of TE measurements is ongoing. Common quality criteria applied to certify an acceptable quality of TE measuerements were: ten successful measurements with >60% successful measurements and an interquartile range (IQR)/median (M) ratio <0.3. However, the relevance of these criteria has been questioned, and a three-category classification system of reliability has been suggested: (i) "very reliable" (IQR/M $\leq$0.10), "reliable" (0.10< IQR/M $\leq$0.30, or IQR/M >0.30 with LSE median <7.1 kPa), and "poorly reliable" (IQR/M >0.30 with LSE median $\geq$7.1 kPa).

Applying these categories to the clinical endpoint "cirrhosis" leads to the correct classification of 90.4%, 85.8%, and 69.5% patients, respectively (Boursier 2012).

Evaluation of liver stiffness in subjects without apparent liver disease shows that liver stiffness is influenced by gender and body mass index (BMI). In general, liver stiffness is higher in men than in women (5.81±1.54 vs. 5.23±1.59 kPa) (Roulot 2008). Interestingly, TE may be used as a screening tool for the general population to identify patients with unrecognized liver disease (Roulot 2011).

It is important to note that the applicability of TE is limited to relatively lean patients (BMI <28 kg/m^2), patients without ascites, and “cooperative” patients. A special probe ("XL probe") for obese patients has recently broadened the applicability of TE and is recommended for patients with a skin-caspular distance of >2.5 cm but below 3.5 cm (Myers 2011). Unfortunately, the liver stiffness cut-off values (Table 3) differ slightly between the normal and the XL probe. Unlike liver histology, no published data is available on the variability (“sampling error”) of TE results. TE correlates well with other surrogate markers of liver fibrosis such as APRI and FIB-4 (Vidovic 2010). In patients with chronic liver disease eligible for TE, liver stiffness values correlate well with the stage of fibrosis, irrespective of the underlying disease etiology. TE has been evaluated in patients with chronic viral hepatitis, PBC, PSC, and NASH. Due to high acceptance by patients, it can easily be used to monitor progression or regression of fibrosis in patients under observation or on therapy (Wilson 2006, Wong 2011). TE has been evaluated for the detection of liver fibrosis in patients with acute and chronic viral hepatitis and has also been positively evaluated for HIV/HCV-coinfected patients and in patients with HCV reccurrence post-transplantation (Carrion 2006, de Ledinghen 2006, Maida 2007). In chronic viral hepatitis, it is unknown whether there is a difference in TE results between patients with chronic HBV, HCV, and/or HIV/HCV coinfection.

Recent studies comparing TE with liver biopsy demonstrate both high sensitivity and specificity for the detection of advanced fibrosis and cirrhosis. However, TE performance is less reliable for the detection of fibrosis stages ≥2 as compared to more advanced stages of liver fibrosis (sensitivity 56-67%), resulting in moderate negative predictive values. Thus, assessment of liver fibrosis by TE alone may result in the underestimation of liver fibrosis in some patients. Vice versa, if TE predicts significant fibrosis, a biopsy will not be necessary. One drawback in clinical practice is that the different TE studies suggest slightly different cut-off values (Table 3). A recent meta-analysis that evaluated the predictive performance of TE in patients with chronic liver disease suggested that the optimal cut-off value for the diagnosis of significant fibrosis is 7.65 kPa and 13.01 kPa for cirrhosis (Friedrich-Rust 2008). This cut-off proved to be robust, especially in patients with chronic HCV infection.

Table 3. Cut-off values for transient elastography in different study populations (modified according to Castera L, Gastroenterology. 2012 May;142(6):1293-1302)

Study	Population	Cut-off (kPa)	
		F≥2	F=4
Castera 2005	HCV N=183	7.1 Se: 0.67 Sp: 0.95	12.5 Se: 0.87 Sp: 0.91
Ziol 2005	HCV N=327	8.8 Se: 0.56 Sp: 0.91	14.6 Se: 0.86 Sp: 0.96
Arena 2008	HCV N=150	7.8 Se: 0.83 Sp: 0.82	14.8 Se: 0.94 Sp: 0.9
Lupsor 2008	HCV N=324	7.4 Se: 0.76 Sp: 0.84	11.9 Se: 0.87 Sp: 0.94
Degos 2010	HCV N=913	5.2 Se: 0.9 Sp: 0.32	12.9 Se: 0.72 Sp: 0.89
Zarski 2012	HCV N=382	5.2 Se:0.97 Sp:0.35	12.9 Se: 0.77 Sp: 0.90
Coco 2007	HBV (HCV) N=228	8.3 Se: 0.85 Sp': 0.91	14.0 Se: 0.78 Sp: 0.98
Oliveri 2008	HBV 188	7.5 Se: 0.94 Sp: 0.88	11.8 Se: 0.86 Sp: 0.96
Marcellin 2009	HBV	7.2 Se: 0.70 Sp: 0.83	11.0 Se: 0.93 Sp: 0.87
Chan 2009	HBV	12-13.4 (adapted to ALT) Se: 0.98 Sp: 0.75	
Degos 2010	HBV N=284	5.2 Se: 0.89 Sp: 0.38	12.9 Se: 0.52 Sp: 0.93
Foucher 2006	HCV / HBV N=711	7.2 Se: 0.64 Sp: 0.85	17.6 Se: 0.77 Sp: 0.97
Ogawa 2007	HCV / HBV N=229	9.5 Se: 0.67 Sp: 0.95	15.4 Se: 0.67 Sp: 0.95
		9.1 Se: 0.67 Sp: 0.95	26.4 Se: 0.67 Sp: 0.95
de Ledinghen 2006	HIV/HCV N=72	4.5 Se: 0.93 Sp: 0.18	11.8 Se: 1.0 Sp: 0.93

Increasing knowledge from studies on transient elastography has revealed a number of conditions that may produce false positive results the user should be aware of. Acute liver injury such as acute viral or alcoholic hepatitis, or chronic viral hepatitis flares may lead to an overestimation of liver fibrosis (Arena 2008, Coco 2007, Sagir 2008). Other interfering conditions include acute and chronic cardiac failure, Valsalva maneuver, pulmonary hypertension, amyloidosis, cholestasis, pregnancy and steatosis, with the latter being more relevant for HCV- than for HBV-infected patients (Arena 2008, Fraquelli 2007). Another relevant artifact is the examination of a patient within 2 hours after a meal, which may increase resistance by up to 2 kPa (Mederacke 2009).

The spectrum of interpretation of elevated TE results has been broadened recently. In addition to the assessment of liver fibrosis stages, TE might be used to predict the presence of portal hypertension and thus the need to evaluate the patient for the presence of esophageal varices (Rockey 2008). Whether TE is reliable enough to predict the stage of cirrhosis is still debatable and needs further study (Foucher 2006). Of note, a cut-off value of >25 kPa has been associated with >45-fold increased risk of developing HCC in viral hepatitis. However, the risk seems to increase in a linear fashion starting from a cut-off of 10 kPa (Fung 2011, Masuzaki 2009). Furthermore, TE values >21.1 kPa are associated with portal hypertension as well as the risk of portal hypertension-related complications and suggest endoscopy to confirm or exclude esophageal varices and to initiate or negate the need for primary prophylaxis with propranolol (Castera 2011, Robic 2011).

Monitoring treatment with TE

TE may be used to monitor changes in liver stiffness following either the natural course or changes in stiffness while on treatment. Whereas in the first scenario prediction of disease progression rates may be useful, the latter may reflect the regression of inflammation and/or fibrosis without additional biopsies. The longitudinal montoring of patients with chronic HCV and HBV infections has documented reduction in liver stiffness in responders to treatment, possibly reflecting a lesser degree of fibrosis and/or inflammation (Hezode 2011, Andersen 2011, Andersen 2011, Fung 2011).

Other imaging techniques for the assessment of liver fibrosis

A number of different imaging techniques such as conventional ultrasound, real-time elastography, acoustic radiation force imaging (ARFI), shear wave imaging (SSI), portal venous transit time, NMR imaging and CT have been used for the assessment of liver fibrosis. None of these methods has yet achieved an overall clinical acceptance regarding the detection of early liver fibrosis, either due to low sensitivity and/or specificity, or high costs. The most promising candidate for everyday usability may be the ARFI technique that has been integrated in high-end ultrasound machines. This technique allows the measurement of liver fibrosis in a specific area of interest rather than a global assessment, as with transient elastography. This may be an advantage as different regions of the liver may be studied separately but may – like histology – also be a source of “sampling bias” and low reproducibility. Compared to transient elastography the available data from large populations is sparse but growing. A recent meta-analysis managed to

combine data from 518 individuals. In this analysis the overall accuracy for the prediction of fibrosis stage ≥F2, ≥F3 and cirrhosis as determined by ROC analysis were 0.87, 0.91. 0.93, respectively (Friedrich-Rust 2012). A recently published head-to-head analysis comparing TE with ARFI showed comparable results for both methods (Colombo 2012). However, ARFI was less prone to methodological failure than TE. Both methods seem reliable for the detection of advanced fibrosis as shown by various studies (Colombo 2012, Rizzo 2011, Sporea 2012). As with TE, many procedure- and patient-related factors are expected to influence test results, but these are not yet formally published apart from increased stiffness from hepatitis flares (Chen 2012, Karlas 2011).

Another shear wave-based technology has recently been introduced for the diagnosis of liver fibrosis (real-time SSI by Supersonic Imaging), combining TE stiffness calculations with the possibility of defining regions of interest (as in ARFI). While this method has not yet been widely used, early studies show a comparable if not superior diagnostic accuracy as compared to TE (Ferraioli 2012a, Ferraioli 2012b).

Clinical decision algorithms

Until now, no non-invasive marker for the staging of liver fibrosis has been able to replace liver histology as the gold standard. This is largely due to the fact that outcome studies with clear endpoints like mortality have not been performed and that a clear differentiation of fibrosis stage by non-invasive strategies has been unreliable. But the advantages of these non-invasive tests in comparison to liver biopsy are striking. In order to overcome test limitations and to benefit from their specific advantages, a frequent strategy is to combine different non-invasive tests, using liver biopsy only in case of doubt. However, algorithms vary greatly in performance and acceptance. Whereas some authors have calculated a reduction in liver biopsies of 30%, others have estimated reductions of up to 80% (Leroy 2007, Sebastiani 2004, Sebastiani 2006, Sebastiani 2007). New strategies with sophisticated algorithms may overcome these limitations and a combination of TE with FibroMeter give results that may be detailed and reliable on liver fibrosis stage without any need for histology. However, only one study from France has described this method, which needs to be cross-validated by independent groups (Boursier 2011a, Boursier 2011b).

Controlled Attenuation Parameter

Liver fat content has been historically assessed by ultrasound using a semi-quantitative estimate or by liver histology. Steatosis is a growing problem whether in the context of non-alcoholic steatohepatitis or as a co-factor in the metabolic syndrome. Until recently reliable quantitative measures of the degree of steatosis were missing. A novel tool to overcome this diagnostic gap may be the Controlled Attenuation Parameter (CAP). This analysis is available in TE machines from Echosens that measures the attenuation of the intensity of the echo from the ultrasound signal in the liver. The measurement is expressed in dB/m. Until now only a few studies have been published. However, a recent pilot study suggested cut-off values. The authors defined histological categories of liver steatosis (S) grades (S0: ≤10%, S1: 11 - 33%, S2: 34 - 66%, S3: ≥67%) and correlated these with

the CAP results. Using ROC analysis, the authors defined cut-offs with a sensitivity >90% for all grades of steatosis (215 dB/m for S ≥1, 252 dB/m for S ≥2, 296 dB/m for S3) (de Ledinghen 2012). Whether CAP is influenced by fibrosis or not is still unclear (de Ledinghen 2012, Myers 2012, Sasso 2012, Sasso 2012)

Summary

Non-invasive tests have not replaced liver biopsies today, but smart combinations of non-invasive tools can save many patients from the more invasive procedure. Whatever the current standard of care, the patient should be informed about the non-invasive tests, their applicability and their limitations. The decision to biopsy should ultimately be made together with the informed patient.

References

Andersen ES, Moessner BK, Christensen PB, et al. Lower liver stiffness in patients with sustained virological response 4 years after treatment for chronic hepatitis C. European journal of gastroenterology & hepatology 2011;23:41-44.

Andersen ES, Weiland O, Leutscher P, et al. Low liver stiffness among cirrhotic patients with hepatitis B after prolonged treatment with nucleoside analogs. Scandinavian journal of gastroenterology 2011;46:760-766.

Arena U, Vizzutti F, Abraldes J, et al. Reliability of transient elastography for the diagnosis of advanced fibrosis in chronic hepatitis C. Gut 2008.

Arena U, Vizzutti F, Corti G, et al. Acute viral hepatitis increases liver stiffness values measured by transient elastography. Hepatology 2008;47:380-384.

Batts KP, Ludwig J. Chronic hepatitis. An update on terminology and reporting. Am J Surg Pathol 1995;19:1409-1417.

Bedossa P, Dargere D, Paradis V. Sampling variability of liver fibrosis in chronic hepatitis C. Hepatology 2003;38:1449-1457.

Boursier J, de Ledinghen V, Zarski JP, et al. A new combination of blood test and fibroscan for accurate non-invasive diagnosis of liver fibrosis stages in chronic hepatitis C. Am J Gastroenterol 2011;106:1255-1263.

Boursier J, de Ledinghen V, Zarski JP, et al. A new combination of blood test and fibroscan for accurate non-invasive diagnosis of liver fibrosis stages in chronic hepatitis C. The American journal of gastroenterology 2011;106:1255-1263.

Boursier J, Zarski JP, de Ledinghen V, et al. Determination of reliability criteria of liver stiffness evaluation by transient elastography. Hepatology 2012.

Cacoub P, Carrat F, Bedossa P, et al. Comparison of non-invasive liver fibrosis biomarkers in HIV/HCV co-infected patients: The fibrovic study - ANRS HC02. J Hepatol 2008;48:765-773.

Calvaruso V, Burroughs AK, Standish R, et al. Computer-assisted image analysis of liver collagen: relationship to Ishak scoring and hepatic venous pressure gradient. Hepatology 2009;49:1236-1244.

Calvaruso V, Dhillon AP, Tsochatzis E, et al. Liver collagen proportionate area predicts decompensation in patients with recurrent hepatitis C virus cirrhosis after liver transplantation. Journal of gastroenterology and hepatology 2012;27:1227-1232.

Carrion JA, Navasa M, Bosch J, Bruguera M, Gilabert R, Forns X. Transient elastography for diagnosis of advanced fibrosis and portal hypertension in patients with hepatitis C recurrence after liver transplantation. Liver Transpl 2006;12:1791-1798.

Castera L. Prospective comparison of transient elastography, Fibrotest, APRI, and liver biopsy for the assessment of fibrosis in chronic hepatitis C. Gastroenterology 2005;128:343-350.

Castera L, Pinzani M, Bosch J. Non Invasive Evaluation of Portal Hypertension Using Transient Elastography. J Hepatol 2011.

Chan HL, Wong GL, Choi PC, et al. Alanine aminotransferase-based algorithms of liver stiffness measurement by transient elastography (Fibroscan) for liver fibrosis in chronic hepatitis B. Journal of viral hepatitis 2009;16:36-44.
Chen SH, Li YF, Lai HC, et al. Effects of patient factors on noninvasive liver stiffness measurement using acoustic radiation force impulse elastography in patients with chronic hepatitis C. BMC gastroenterology 2012;12:105.
Cholongitas E, Senzolo M, Standish R, et al. A systematic review of the quality of liver biopsy specimens. Am J Clin Pathol 2006;125:710-721.
Coco B, Oliveri F, Maina AM, et al. Transient elastography: a new surrogate marker of liver fibrosis influenced by major changes of transaminases. J Viral Hepat 2007;14:360-369.
Colombo S, Buonocore M, Del Poggio A, et al. Head-to-head comparison of transient elastography (TE), real-time tissue elastography (RTE), and acoustic radiation force impulse (ARFI) imaging in the diagnosis of liver fibrosis. Journal of gastroenterology 2012;47:461-469.
de Ledinghen V, Douvin C, Kettaneh A, et al. Diagnosis of hepatic fibrosis and cirrhosis by transient elastography in HIV/hepatitis C virus-coinfected patients. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr 2006;41:175-179.
de Ledinghen V, Le Bail B, Rebouissoux L, et al. Liver stiffness measurement in children using FibroScan: feasibility study and comparison with Fibrotest, aspartate transaminase to platelets ratio index, and liver biopsy. J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr 2007;45:443-450.
de Ledinghen V, Vergniol J, Foucher J, Merrouche W, le Bail B. Non-invasive diagnosis of liver steatosis using controlled attenuation parameter (CAP) and transient elastography. Liver international : official journal of the International Association for the Study of the Liver 2012;32:911-918.
Degos F, Perez P, Roche B, et al. Diagnostic accuracy of FibroScan and comparison to liver fibrosis biomarkers in chronic viral hepatitis: a multicenter prospective study (the FIBROSTIC study). Journal of hepatology 2010;53:1013-1021.
Denzer U, Arnoldy A, Kanzler S, Galle PR, Dienes HP, Lohse AW. Prospective randomized comparison of minilaparoscopy and percutaneous liver biopsy: diagnosis of cirrhosis and complications. J Clin Gastroenterol 2007;41:103-110.
Desmet VJ, Gerber M, Hoofnagle JH, Manns M, Scheuer PJ. Classification of chronic hepatitis: diagnosis, grading and staging. Hepatology 1994;19:1513-1520.
DiMichele DM, Mirani G, Wilfredo Canchis P, Trost DW, Talal AH. Transjugular liver biopsy is safe and diagnostic for patients with congenital bleeding disorders and hepatitis C infection. Haemophilia 2003;9:613-618.
Engelmann G, Gebhardt C, Wenning D, et al. Feasibility study and control values of transient elastography in healthy children. Eur J Pediatr 2011.
Ferraioli G, Tinelli C, Dal Bello B, Zicchetti M, Filice G, Filice C. Accuracy of real-time shear wave elastography for assessing liver fibrosis in chronic hepatitis C: A pilot study. Hepatology 2012;56:2125-2133.
Ferraioli G, Tinelli C, Zicchetti M, et al. Reproducibility of real-time shear wave elastography in the evaluation of liver elasticity. European journal of radiology 2012;81:3102-3106.
Foucher J, Chanteloup E, Vergniol J, et al. Diagnosis of cirrhosis by transient elastography (FibroScan): a prospective study. Gut 2006;55:403-408.
Fraquelli M. Reproducibility of transient elastography in the evaluation of liver fibrosis in patients with chronic liver disease. Gut 2007;56:968.
Fraquelli M, Rigamonti C. Diagnosis of cirrhosis by transient elastography: what is hidden behind misleading results. Hepatology 2007;46:282; author reply 282-283.
Friedman SL. Hepatic stellate cells: protean, multifunctional, and enigmatic cells of the liver. Physiol Rev 2008;88:125-172.
Friedman SL, Rockey DC, Bissell DM. Hepatic fibrosis 2006: report of the Third AASLD Single Topic Conference. Hepatology 2007;45:242-249.
Friedrich-Rust M, Nierhoff J, Lupsor M, et al. Performance of Acoustic Radiation Force Impulse imaging for the staging of liver fibrosis: a pooled meta-analysis. J Viral Hepat 2012;19:e212-e219.
Friedrich-Rust M, Ong MF, Martens S, et al. Performance of transient elastography for the staging of liver fibrosis: a meta-analysis. Gastroenterology 2008;134:960-974.

Fung J, Lai CL, Seto WK, Wong DK, Yuen MF. Prognostic significance of liver stiffness for hepatocellular carcinoma and mortality in HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B. J Viral Hepat 2011;18:738-744.
Fung J, Lai CL, Wong DK, Seto WK, Hung I, Yuen MF. Significant changes in liver stiffness measurements in patients with chronic hepatitis B: 3-year follow-up study. Journal of viral hepatitis 2011;18:e200-205.
Gronbaek K, Christensen PB, Hamilton-Dutoit S, et al. Interobserver variation in interpretation of serial liver biopsies from patients with chronic hepatitis C. J Viral Hepat 2002;9:443-449.
Helmreich-Becker I, Schirmacher P, Denzer U, Hensel A, Meyer zum Buschenfelde KH, Lohse AW. Minilaparoscopy in the diagnosis of cirrhosis: superiority in patients with Child-Pugh A and macronodular disease. Endoscopy 2003;35:55-60.
Hezode C, Castera L, Roudot-Thoraval F, et al. Liver stiffness diminishes with antiviral response in chronic hepatitis C. Alimentary pharmacology & therapeutics 2011;34:656-663.
Hui AY, Liew CT, Go MY, et al. Quantitative assessment of fibrosis in liver biopsies from patients with chronic hepatitis B. Liver Int 2004;24:611-618.
Isgro G, Calvaruso V, Andreana L, et al. The relationship between transient elastography and histological collagen proportionate area for assessing fibrosis in chronic viral hepatitis. Journal of gastroenterology 2012.
Ishak K, Baptista A, Bianchi L, et al. Histological grading and staging of chronic hepatitis. J Hepatol 1995;22:696-699.
Kalambokis G, Manousou P, Vibhakorn S, et al. Transjugular liver biopsy--indications, adequacy, quality of specimens, and complications--a systematic review. J Hepatol 2007;47:284-294.
Karlas T, Pfrepper C, Wiegand J, et al. Acoustic radiation force impulse imaging (ARFI) for non-invasive detection of liver fibrosis: examination standards and evaluation of interlobe differences in healthy subjects and chronic liver disease. Scandinavian journal of gastroenterology 2011;46:1458-1467.
Knodell RG, Ishak KG, Black WC, et al. Formulation and application of a numerical scoring system for assessing histological activity in asymptomatic chronic active hepatitis. Hepatology 1981;1:431-435.
Lebensztejn DM, Skiba E, Sobaniec-Lotowska M, Kaczmarski M. A simple noninvasive index (APRI) predicts advanced liver fibrosis in children with chronic hepatitis B. Hepatology 2005;41:1434-1435.
Leroy V. Prospective comparison of six non-invasive scores for the diagnosis of liver fibrosis in chronic hepatitis C. J Hepatol 2007;46:775-782.
Lupsor M, Badea R, Stefanescu H, et al. Analysis of histopathological changes that influence liver stiffness in chronic hepatitis C. Results from a cohort of 324 patients. Journal of gastrointestinal and liver diseases : JGLD 2008;17:155-163.
Maida I, Soriano V, Barreiro P, Rivas P, Labarga P, Nunez M. Liver fibrosis stage and HCV genotype distribution in HIV-HCV coinfected patients with persistently normal transaminases. AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses 2007;23:801-804.
Mammen T, Keshava SN, Eapen CE, et al. Transjugular liver biopsy: a retrospective analysis of 601 cases. J Vasc Interv Radiol 2008;19:351-358.
Marcellin P, Ziol M, Bedossa P, et al. Non-invasive assessment of liver fibrosis by stiffness measurement in patients with chronic hepatitis B. Liver international : official journal of the International Association for the Study of the Liver 2009;29:242-247.
Masuzaki R, Tateishi R, Yoshida H, et al. Prospective risk assessment for hepatocellular carcinoma development in patients with chronic hepatitis C by transient elastography. Hepatology 2009;49:1954-1961.
Mederacke I, Wursthorn K, Kirschner J, et al. Food intake increases liver stiffness in patients with chronic or resolved hepatitis C virus infection. Liver Int 2009;29:1500-1506.
Moessner BK, Andersen ES, Weis N, et al. Previously unrecognized advanced liver disease unveiled by transient elastography in patients with Haemophilia and chronic hepatitis C. Haemophilia : the official journal of the World Federation of Hemophilia 2011;17:938-943.

Myers RP, Fong A, Shaheen AA. Utilization rates, complications and costs of percutaneous liver biopsy: a population-based study including 4275 biopsies. Liver Int 2008;28:705-712.
Myers RP, Pollett A, Kirsch R, et al. Controlled Attenuation Parameter (CAP): a noninvasive method for the detection of hepatic steatosis based on transient elastography. Liver international : official journal of the International Association for the Study of the Liver 2012;32:902-910.
Myers RP, Pomier-Layrargues G, Kirsch R, et al. Feasibility and diagnostic performance of the fibroscan xl probe for liver stiffness measurement in overweight and obese patients. Hepatology 2011.
Ogawa E, Furusyo N, Toyoda K, et al. Transient elastography for patients with chronic hepatitis B and C virus infection: Non-invasive, quantitative assessment of liver fibrosis. Hepatol Res 2007;37:1002-1010.
Oliveri F, Coco B, Ciccorossi P, et al. Liver stiffness in the hepatitis B virus carrier: a non-invasive marker of liver disease influenced by the pattern of transaminases. World journal of gastroenterology : WJG 2008;14:6154-6162.
Petz D, Klauck S, Rohl FW, Malfertheiner P, Roessner A, Rocken C. Feasibility of histological grading and staging of chronic viral hepatitis using specimens obtained by thin-needle biopsy. Virchows Arch 2003;442:238-244.
Piccinino F, Sagnelli E, Pasquale G, Giusti G. Complications following percutaneous liver biopsy. A multicentre retrospective study on 68,276 biopsies. J Hepatol 1986;2:165-173.
Pinzani M, Vizzutti F, Arena U, Marra F. Technology Insight: noninvasive assessment of liver fibrosis by biochemical scores and elastography. Nat Clin Pract Gastroenterol Hepatol 2008;5:95-106.
Poynard T, Morra R, Halfon P, et al. Meta-analyses of FibroTest diagnostic value in chronic liver disease. BMC Gastroenterol 2007;7:40.
Regev A, Berho M, Jeffers LJ, et al. Sampling error and intraobserver variation in liver biopsy in patients with chronic HCV infection. Am J Gastroenterol 2002;97:2614-2618.
Rizzo L, Calvaruso V, Cacopardo B, et al. Comparison of transient elastography and acoustic radiation force impulse for non-invasive staging of liver fibrosis in patients with chronic hepatitis C. The American journal of gastroenterology 2011;106:2112-2120.
Robic MA, Procopet B, Metivier S, et al. Liver stiffness accurately predicts portal hypertension related complications in patients with chronic liver disease: A prospective study. J Hepatol 2011.
Rockey DC. Noninvasive assessment of liver fibrosis and portal hypertension with transient elastography. Gastroenterology 2008;134:8-14.
Roulot D, Costes JL, Buyck JF, et al. Transient elastography as a screening tool for liver fibrosis and cirrhosis in a community-based population aged over 45 years. Gut 2011;60:977-984.
Roulot D, Czernichow S, Le Clesiau H, Costes JL, Vergnaud AC, Beaugrand M. Liver stiffness values in apparently healthy subjects: Influence of gender and metabolic syndrome. J Hepatol 2008;48:606-613.
Rousselet MC, Michalak S, Dupre F, et al. Sources of variability in histological scoring of chronic viral hepatitis. Hepatology 2005;41:257-264.
Sagir A, Erhardt A, Schmitt M, Haussinger D. Transient elastography is unreliable for detection of cirrhosis in patients with acute liver damage. Hepatology 2008;47:592-595.
Sandrin L, Catheline S, Tanter M, Hennequin X, Fink M. Time-resolved pulsed elastography with ultrafast ultrasonic imaging. Ultrason Imaging 1999;21:259-272.
Sasso M, Miette V, Sandrin L, Beaugrand M. The controlled attenuation parameter (CAP): a novel tool for the non-invasive evaluation of steatosis using Fibroscan. Clinics and research in hepatology and gastroenterology 2012;36:13-20.
Sasso M, Tengher-Barna I, Ziol M, et al. Novel controlled attenuation parameter for noninvasive assessment of steatosis using Fibroscan((R)): validation in chronic hepatitis C. Journal of viral hepatitis 2012;19:244-253.
Schirmacher P, Fleig WE, Dienes HP. [Biopsy diagnosis of chronic hepatitis]. Z Gastroenterol 2004;42:175-185.
Schwarz KB, Zellos A, Stamato L, et al. Percutaneous liver biopsy in hemophiliac children with chronic hepatitis C virus infection. J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr 2008;46:423-428.

Sebastiani G. Stepwise combination of algorithms of non-invasive markers to diagnose significant fibrosis in chronic hepatitis C. J Hepatol 2004;44:686-693.
Sebastiani G, Alberti A. Non invasive fibrosis biomarkers reduce but not substitute the need for liver biopsy. World J Gastroenterol 2006;12:3682-3694.
Sebastiani G, Vario A, Guido M, Alberti A. Sequential algorithms combining non-invasive markers and biopsy for the assessment of liver fibrosis in chronic hepatitis B. World J Gastroenterol 2007;13:525-531.
Shaheen AA, Myers RP. Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis of the Diagnostic Accuracy of Fibrosis Marker Panels in Patients with HIV/Hepatitis C Coinfection. HIV Clin Trials 2008;9:43-51.
Shaheen AA, Wan AF, Myers RP. FibroTest and FibroScan for the prediction of hepatitis C-related fibrosis: a systematic review of diagnostic test accuracy. Am J Gastroenterol 2007;102:2589-2600.
Siddique I, El-Naga HA, Madda JP, Memon A, Hasan F. Sampling variability on percutaneous liver biopsy in patients with chronic hepatitis C virus infection. Scand J Gastroenterol 2003;38:427-432.
Skripenova S, Trainer TD, Krawitt EL, Blaszyk H. Variability of grade and stage in simultaneous paired liver biopsies in patients with hepatitis C. J Clin Pathol 2007;60:321-324.
Sporea I, Bota S, Peck-Radosavljevic M, et al. Acoustic Radiation Force Impulse Elastography for fibrosis evaluation in patients with chronic hepatitis C: An international multicenter study. European journal of radiology 2012;81:4112-4118.
Terjung B, Lemnitzer I, Dumoulin FL, et al. Bleeding complications after percutaneous liver biopsy. An analysis of risk factors. Digestion 2003;67:138-145.
TFMCSG. Intraobserver and interobserver variations in liver biopsy interpretation in patients with chronic hepatitis C. The French METAVIR Cooperative Study Group. Hepatology 1994;20:15-20.
Vallet-Pichard A, Mallet V, Pol S. Predictive value of FIB-4 versus fibrotest, APRI, FIBROINDEX and FORNS to noninvasively estimate fibrosis in hepatitis C. Hepatology 2008;47:762-763.
van der Poorten D, Kwok A, Lam T, et al. Twenty-year audit of percutaneous liver biopsy in a major Australian teaching hospital. Intern Med J 2006;36:692-699.
Vergniol J, Foucher J, Terrebonne E, et al. Noninvasive tests for fibrosis and liver stiffness predict 5-year outcomes of patients with chronic hepatitis C. Gastroenterology 2011;140:1970-1979, 1979 e1971-1973.
Vidovic N, Lochowsky RS, Goldmann G, et al. Correlation of transient elastography with APRI and FIB-4 in a cohort of patients with congenital bleeding disorders and HCV or HIV/HCV coinfection. Haemophilia 2010;16:778-785.
Wai CT, Cheng CL, Wee A, et al. Non-invasive models for predicting histology in patients with chronic hepatitis B. Liver Int 2006;26:666-672.
Wilson LE, Torbenson M, Astemborski J, et al. Progression of liver fibrosis among injection drug users with chronic hepatitis C. Hepatology 2006;43:788-795.
Wong GL, Wong VW, Choi PC, et al. On-treatment monitoring of liver fibrosis with transient elastography in chronic hepatitis B patients. Antivir Ther 2011;16:165-172.
Zarski JP, Sturm N, Guechot J, et al. Comparison of nine blood tests and transient elastography for liver fibrosis in chronic hepatitis C: the ANRS HCEP-23 study. Journal of hepatology 2012;56:55-62.
Ziol M, Handra-Luca A, Kettaneh A, et al. Noninvasive assessment of liver fibrosis by measurement of stiffness in patients with chronic hepatitis C. Hepatology 2005;41:48-54.

20. Diagnosis, Prognosis & Therapy of Hepatocellular Carcinoma

Ulrich Spengler

Classification of HCC

Tumors are classified in order to stratify patients concerning their survival prognosis, to select and offer optimised therapeutic options at any tumor stage. For Hepatocellular Carcinoma (HCC) the Barcelona Clinic Liver Cancer (BCLC) Classification has been adopted as the international standard, which is recommended by both the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases (AASLD) and the European Association for the Study of the Liver (EASL) (Table 1). The BCLC classification takes into account several aspects of the disease: the patient's general state of health, the severity of the liver disease as well as the extent of tumor spread (Llovet 1999). Patients in stages BCLC 0 and A have a considerably better prognosis than patients in advanced stages of liver cancer (Mazzaferro 1996). But roughly only 25% of patients with liver cancer are diagnosed at an early stage. Both EASL (EASL 2012) and AASLD guidelines provide recommendations regarding which therapy is best suited to treat patients at each stage of the BCLC classification. Unlike classification schemes in other types of malignancies, the BCLC classification is particularly helpful because it is entirely based on clinical parameters - molecular characteristics are not yet able to reliably assess individual prognosis of patients with HCC.

Table 1. Barcelona Clinic Liver Cancer (BCLC) Classification

Tumor stage	General state of health	Tumor characteristics	Child stage
0 Very early	Good	Single nodule <2 cm	A & B
A Early	Good	Single nodule <5 cm, 3 nodules <3 cm	A & B
B Intermediate	Good	Large, multiple nodules	A & B
C Advanced	Reduced	Vascular invasion, extrahepatic secondaries	A & B
D Terminal	Severely reduced	Any form	C

Epidemiology

HCC constitutes the fifth most frequent form of cancer worldwide, and it holds third place in malignancy-related mortality (Jemal 2011). Incidence rates of HCC are steadily rising both in Europe and the US.

Chronic hepatitis B is the major risk factor for developing HCC in Africa and Asia, while in the US, Europe and Japan chronic hepatitis C and non-alcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH) are leading causes of HCC. Eighty percent of liver cancers are found in cirrhotic livers, which themselves carry a high risk for HCC. Chronic carriers of hepatitis B virus (HBV) have a 100-fold increased risk as compared to a non-infected healthy reference population. Recent reports from Taiwan indicate a direct link between HBV viral loads and the risk of developing liver cancer within 10 years (Chen 2006, Iloeje 2006). The risk of HCC is significantly increased once HBV viral loads exceed 2000 IU/ml irrespective of the degree of hepatic inflammation. Quantitative HBsAg ≥1000 IU/ml is a further biomarker of increased HCC risk in patients with low or intermediate levels of HBV DNA (Tseng 2013). In developing countries exposure to aflatoxins further increases this risk of HCC.

Approximately 130-170 million people are infected with the hepatitis C virus worldwide, 20 to 30% of whom will develop liver cirrhosis, which carries a 3-5% annual risk of ultimately progressing to liver cancer. Unlike hepatitis B, a close relationship between HCV viral loads and the risk of developing HCC apparently does not exist (Bralet 2000). As a general rule patients will not develop liver cancer in chronic hepatitis C before their disease has progressed to advanced fibrosis and cirrhosis (Lok 2009).

Consumption of alcohol or tobacco enhances the risk of HCC (Donato 2002, Gelatti 2005). Beyond that, obesity (Calle 2003) and diabetes mellitus (Davila 2005) must be considered pivotal risk factors that can independently lead to liver cancer in Western countries and result in 4- to 40-fold increased HCC rates among patients with chronic viral hepatitis (Starley 2010). In patients with steatohepatitis, liver cancer can occur before cirrhosis has developed. Importantly, the risk of HCC is substantially reduced in diabetic patients who are treated with metformin (Lai 2012).

Finally, genetic polymorphisms in the adiponutrin gene (rs 738409 C>G), in the *KIF1B* gene (rs17401966), and the *MICA* gene (rs 2596542) seem to predispose patients with alcoholic and non-alcoholic fatty liver disease, chronic HBV and HCV infection, respectively, to develop cirrhosis and HCC (Fallet 2011, Nischalke 2011, Trepo 2013, Zhang 2010, Kumar 2011).

Surveillance of patients at high risk and early HCC diagnosis

Surveillance is cost effective if the expected HCC risk exceeds 1.5% per year in hepatitis C and 0.2% per year in hepatitis B. Surveillance has to be based on ultrasound examination at 6-month intervals. When 3- versus 6-month surveillance intervals were compared in a randomized study involving 1200 patients, there was no evidence that the shorter interval improved rates of early diagnosis and therapeutic outcomes. However, if patients with cirrhosis harbor nodular lesions, the

3-month control interval is preferred due to the high potential of malignancy and growth characteristics of such lesions (Yao 2006). Alpha-fetoprotein (AFP) has insufficient sensitivity and specificity, and thus is no longer recommended for HCC surveillance. Des-gamma-carboxy prothrombin (DCP), glycosylated AFP (AFP-L3), and glypican-3 have not been sufficiently evaluated with respect to HCC surveillance. The consistent use of ultrasound in patients with high risk for HCC enables us to diagnose carcinoma early in 30% of patients who then have a reasonable chance of curative therapy.

Diagnosis

The diagnosis of HCC can either be made by detecting malignantly transformed hepatocytes in a liver biopsy or by dynamic contrast-enhanced radiological imaging techniques demonstrating intense arterial uptake followed by wash-out of contrast in the delayed venous phases reflecting arterialised perfusion of the tumor. Contrast-enhanced ultrasound may falsely suggest HCC in some patients with cholangiocarcinoma, and it should not be used as the only diagnostic tool for HCC (Vilana 2010). Nevertheless, novel diagnostic algorithms enable the diagnosis of HCC in a cirrhotic liver without histopathology or reference to elevated tumor markers.

The distinction between a dysplastic nodule and early HCC poses a particular challenge for the pathologist. Staining for glypican-3, heat shock protein 70, and glutamine synthetase is advised in this situation, and positivity for any two of these three markers confirms the presence of HCC (International Working Party 2009). Differentiation of HCC from cholangiocarcinoma may also require cell-type specific markers such as keratin-7, keratin-19, or CA19-9.

Radiological diagnosis of HCC uses detection of hyper-vascularized nodular lesions. Contrast-enhanced computed tomography (CT) or nuclear magnetic spin resonance tomography (MRT) are considered to be equivalent diagnostic tools, and international consensus guidelines accept a diagnosis of HCC without histopathology if the patient with a nodular lesion in a cirrhotic liver exhibits the following sequence of events: in the arterial phase, HCC enhances more intensely than the surrounding liver, because arterial blood in the liver is diluted by venous blood from the portal venous circulation, whereas HCC contains only arterial blood. In the venous phase, HCC enhances less than the liver, reflecting the fact that HCC does not have a portal venous blood supply and that the arterial blood flowing into the lesion no longer contains contrast. This phenomenon is termed “washout”. In the delayed phase “washout” persists, and occasionally HCC can only be detected in this phase of a dynamic study. Thus, a four-phase dynamic study is needed to reliably make a diagnosis of HCC (unenhanced, arterial, venous and delayed venous phases). Contrast enhancement in the early arterial phase, which disappears in the late venous phase, is highly specific for HCC.

The current recommendations for diagnosis of HCC are summarized in Figure 1. For lesions smaller than 1 cm detailed investigation is not recommended because most lesions will represent regenerative nodules rather than HCC. However, close follow-up in 3-month intervals should be offered using the same imaging technique that detected the lesion in the first place.

For lesions larger than 1 cm, a guided biopsy of the lesion should be performed because diagnostic accuracy of radiological procedures declines with smaller liver tumors, while high (>90%) diagnostic sensitivity and specificity is maintained by histological analysis of biopsy specimens (Serste 2012). Alternatively, either dynamic MRI or multidetector CT scans can be performed. If radiological findings are characteristic for HCC as described above, a firm diagnosis of HCC can be made and no further steps are necessary.

Contrast-enhanced CT and MRI exhibit excellent diagnostic sensitivity and specificity if the rules regarding early hypervascularity and washout are strictly applied. The presence of arterial hypervascularisation alone is not sufficient for a diagnosis of HCC, which requires the presence of venous washout as an essential second diagnostic component. In equivocal situations the diagnosis must be clarified by biopsies, which may have to be repeated within a short period of time.

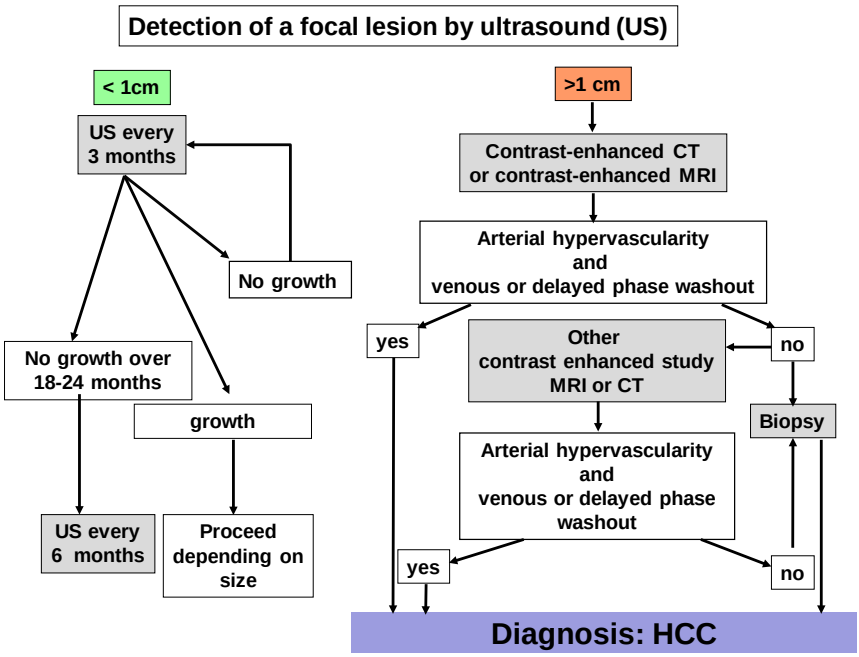


Figure 1. Diagnostic algorithm for the diagnosis of hepatocellular carcinoma depending on tumor size

Stage-adapted therapy for liver cancer

Patients with early HCC have excellent chances for curative cancer treatment. They can achieve 5-year survival rates of 50-70% by surgical resection, liver transplantation or percutaneous ablative procedures. With more advanced HCC, local transarterial embolisation and multikinase inhibitor therapy can still prolong life. Figure 2 gives a summary and concise overview of stage-adapted therapy for hepatocellular carcinoma.

Potentially curative therapy in BCLC stages 0-A

Surgical resection constitutes the backbone of curative treatment in patients with early HCC. It is the treatment of choice in patients with localised tumor spread and small-sized cancers and tumors in a non-cirrhotic liver (evidence grade IIIA). Prognosis after surgical resection is excellent, if the tumor is not larger than 2 cm in diameter (5-year survival rates 70-90% with rates of tumor recurrence below 10%). Excluding patients with poor liver function keeps perioperative mortality below 5%. Favourable criteria for surgical resection comprise single nodules less than 5 cm in size or a maximum of 3 nodules in a single liver lobe. Patients should be carefully selected to diminish the risk of postoperative liver failure. Patients should have only moderately impaired liver function (Child's stage A cirrhosis), should not have portal hypertension (hepatic-portal-vein pressure gradient >10 mm Hg, presence of esophageal varices or splenomegaly together with reduced platelet counts <100,000/µl) and should have a serum bilirubin in the normal range. Right hemi-hepatectomy in cirrhotic patients has a higher risk of inducing hepatic decompensation than left hemi-hepatectomy.

Liver transplantation is an alternative therapeutic option, if the liver cancer cannot be cured by local resection due to anatomical reasons, if residual liver function after resection is anticipated to be poor, or if there is multi-nodular tumor spread into both liver lobes (evidence grade IIIA). Commonly, patients with HCC are selected for liver transplantation according to the so-called Milan criteria, ie, the patient has a single nodule of less than 5 cm in diameter or at most 3 nodules, none of which exceeds 3 cm in diameter (Mazzaferro 1996). Patients who meet the Milan criteria usually achieve survival rates of 80% and 70% one and five years after liver transplantation. However, it has been demonstrated that selected patients with more extensive stages of liver cancer can be transplanted with reasonable long-term outcomes (Yao 2001). Selection of patients according to the San Francisco criteria comprises solitary large nodules up to 6.5 cm as well as multi-nodular HCC with a maximum of 3 nodules, each of which must be smaller than 4.5 cm with a total sum of all nodule diameters less than 8 cm. Patients who remain within these extended selection criteria can still reach 70-80% five-year survival rates after liver transplantation. However, there is very limited data to support extending selection criteria for liver transplantation any further (Pomfret 2010).

A central issue in liver transplantation is the process of fair organ allocation. Shortage of donor organs is particularly critical in patients with liver cancer, because the tumor will continue to expand while the patient is on the waiting list, and can ultimately reach a stage that makes liver transplantation a futile option. It has been estimated that after one year on the waiting list, approximately 40% of patients can no longer be cured by liver transplantation (Poon 2007). In the Eurotransplant registry donor livers are allocated to patients according to their MELD scores. To circumvent the problem that patients with early HCC who are eligible for liver transplantation have rather low MELD scores, Eurotransplant accepts the diagnosis of HCC within the Milan criteria as a so-called standard exemption, allocating additional points on top of the patient's lab MELD score in an incremental time-dependent fashion.

Most transplant centres treat liver cancers locally while the patient is on the waiting list, using transarterial chemoembolisation, radiofrequency ablation or

partial resection. This strategy probably also facilitates patient selection for liver transplantation, because those with stable disease after chemoembolisation achieve a greater than 90% five-year survival rate after liver transplantation, while only 35% of patients in the group with progressive tumor expansion survive five years post-liver transplantation (Otto 2006).

Radiofrequency ablation can also cure HCC that is limited to a distinct region of the liver and is especially applied in older patients or patients with significant co-morbidity. A cohort study on percutaneous radiofrequency ablation demonstrated that complete ablation of lesions smaller than 2 cm is possible in more than 90% of patients with local recurrence in less than 1% (Livraghi 2008). In larger tumors, five-year survival rates are somewhat lower, at 70-80% for nodules less than 3 cm in diameter, and 50% for tumors between 3 and 5 cm (Lopez 2006). A cumulative meta-analysis has suggested that survival is better after radio frequency ablation than after ethanol injection (Cho 2009).

Adjuvant therapy, in the context of resection, liver transplantation or local-ablative procedures, does seem to offer additional benefits. Thus far, antiviral treatment of hepatitis B with nucleos(t)ide analogs remains the single approved treatment after removal or local destruction of HCC.

Tumor recurrence is frequent after putatively curative treatment of HCC. The best predictors of HCC recurrence are microvascular invasion and/or additional tumor sites besides the primary lesion. There is no effective adjuvant therapy to reduce recurrence rates. However, it is noteworthy that even the most modern CT and MRT scanner still underestimate the extent of vascular invasion in 30% of patients with early HCC. Treatment of recurrence is a poorly studied area. Solitary nodules might be amenable to repeat resection, but HCC recurrence is frequently multifocal owing to intrahepatic dissemination of the tumor. Some patients with HCC recurrence after primary resection might benefit from salvage transplantation.

Palliative therapy in BCLC stages B and C

Palliative treatment remains the only therapeutic option for patients with advanced stages of liver cancer that cannot be controlled by local therapy.

Arterial chemoembolisation is the most frequent palliative intervention offered to patients with HCC and is considered for patients with non-surgical HCC who are also not suited for percutaneous ablation and do not have extrahepatic tumor spread. HCC exhibits intense neoangiogenic activity, so that even well-differentiated HCCs become highly dependent on arterial blood supply. Thus, hepatic arterial obstruction is performed either by angiographic transarterial embolisation or transarterial chemoembolisation. Usually lipiodol combined with an embolising agent such as gelatin or microspheres is mixed with cytostatic drugs and applied to the liver via an intra-arterial catheter. Suitable cytotoxic agents are doxorubicin, mitomycin and cis-platinum, but the optimal combination of drugs and treatment schedules has not been established. In randomised studies demonstrating a benefit of chemoembolisation, doxorubicin or cis-platinum were administered in 3-4 angiographic sessions per year. Chemoembolisation carries the risk of ischemic damage to the liver, potentially leading to fulminant liver failure. To minimize this risk chemoembolisation should be offered only to patients with good residual hepatic function, who have asymptomatic multi-nodular liver cancer without

vascular invasion or extrahepatic tumor spread. Vice versa patients with decompensated liver disease (liver cirrhosis, Child's B or C) or imminent hepatic failure should not undergo chemoembolisation. The side effects of interarterial chemoembolisation are the same as for systemic chemotherapy and consist of nausea, vomiting, bone marrow depression, alopecia and renal damage. As a complication of hepatic ischemia, more than 50% of patients also develop a so-called post-embolisation syndrome with fever, abdominal pain and a moderate degree of ileus. Fasting and fluid replacement is mandatory, but the post-embolisation syndrome is usually self-limited and patients can be discharged safely after 2 days.

Objective response rates vary between 16% and 60%, but less than 2% of patients achieve complete remission. Residual tumor cells recover their blood supply and the tumors continue to grow. Thus, repeated therapy is needed.

Chemoembolisation is currently the only palliative treatment demonstrated to significantly improve patient survival in controlled studies (Llovet 2002). However, its use is limited in patients with portal vein thrombosis or HCC-induced portal vein occlusion.

Radiotherapy applying Yttrium-90 microspheres has been developed as a novel alternative palliative treatment of liver cancer with unexpectedly impressive anti-tumoral activity in selected individual cases (Sangro 2006, Jacobs 2007, Salem 2006, Liu 2004). Of note, unlike chemoembolisation, some types of microspheres do not occlude the blood vessels and can also be applied in the presence of portal vein thrombosis. Radioembolisation has been shown to induce tumor necrosis. However, there are no data comparing its efficacy to other palliative treatment modalities.

Molecular-targeted therapeutic strategies offer new hope for effective palliative therapy in liver cancer. Sorafenib (Nexavar®) is an orally available multi-kinase inhibitor acting on several distinct tyrosine kinases (VEGFR2, PDGFR, c-kit receptor) as well as on serine/threonine kinases (b-Raf and p38). Thus, by inhibiting angiogenesis and cellular proliferation, sorafenib can block two of the major signalling pathways of HCC expansion. In a Phase III study (the SHARP trial) involving 602 patients, sorafenib 400 mg BID was moderately well-tolerated and associated with improved survival in 44% of patients resulting in 3 months extended survival in treated patients (10.7 months in the sorafenib arm versus 7.9 months in the control arm). Diarrhea, weight loss, hand-foot syndrome and hypophosphatemia were the most important side effects in patients on sorafenib. The efficacy of sorafenib has been confirmed in a second randomized placebo-controlled trial, mostly involving patients with HBV-associated HCC (Cheng 2009). Sorafenib has established itself as the first option in patients with HCC who can no longer be treated with potentially more effective local therapies. The SHARP trial largely included patients with preserved liver function. Although the pharmacologic profile is favourable, data in Child-Pugh class B patients are scarce (Abou Alfa 2011). Patients with liver cirrhosis Child class C, however, do not achieve a survival benefit from sorafenib and should only receive best supportive care. It has been demonstrated that sorafenib can be safely combined with chemoembolisation therapy (Pawlik 2011). However, thus far this combined treatment strategy has not been demonstrated to offer any clinical benefit to patients. Other antagonists

targeting VEGFR, EGFR, ERBB2, Akt-mTor or Wnt/β-catenin signal transmission pathways have been evaluated. However, none of the new candidates achieved outcomes surpassing sorafenib.

Systemic chemotherapy has been proven repeatedly not to offer survival benefits, whether given as a single agent or as part of combination chemotherapy (Llovet 2003). Likewise, anti-hormonal therapy with tamoxifen or octreotide has not provided improved patient survival when studied under controlled conditions (Gallo 2006, Yuen 2002).

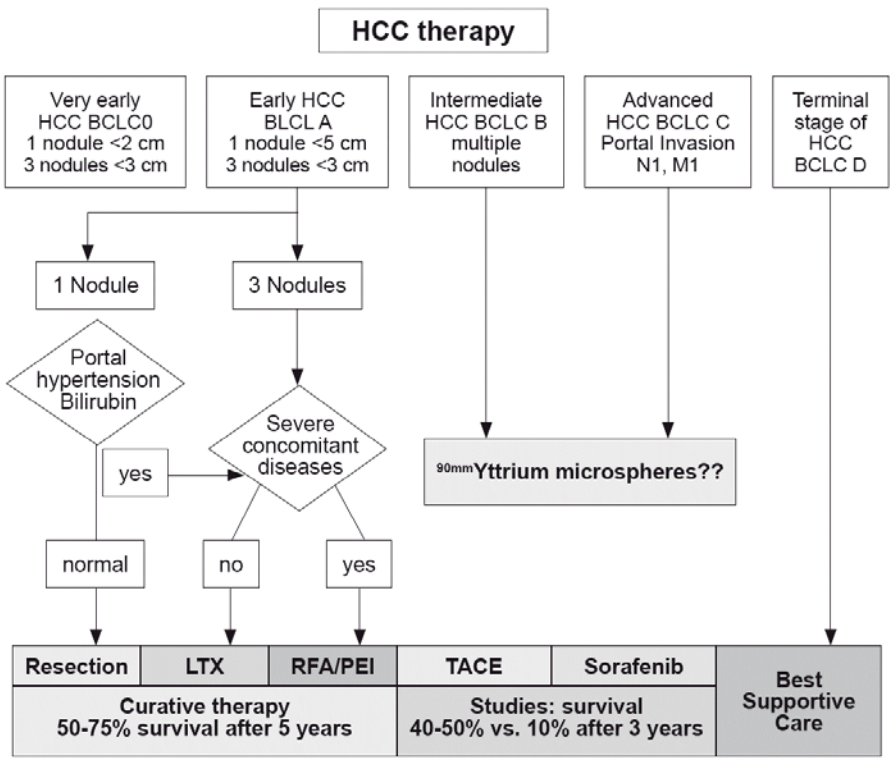


Figure 2. Overview of stage-adapted therapy of liver cancer relative to the BLCL criteria

Prophylaxis of liver cancer

Despite conspicuous progress in the diagnosis and therapy of HCC, its prognosis has not improved very much over time. Thus, prophylactic measures are of pivotal importance. HBV vaccination, now recommended by many national vaccination councils, has been proven in Taiwan to markedly reduce HBV infection rates along with the incidence of HCC as a complication of chronic hepatitis B in later life (Lok 2004).

Patients with chronic HBV and patients with chronic hepatitis C should be offered antiviral therapy as effective secondary prophylaxis of HCC. Although HBe

antigen-positive (van Zonneveld 2004) and HBe antigen-negative patients with chronic hepatitis B showed reduced incidence rates of HCC when successfully treated with interferon (Papatheoridis 2001, Brunetto 2002, Lampertico 2003), antiviral therapy with nucleos(t)side analogs seems to reduce the risk of HCC less convincingly (Papatheoridis 2010, Papatheoridis 2011). Newer, more potent nucleos(t)ide analogs such as entecavir seem to reduce the risk of HBV-associated liver cancer more potently, particularly in high risk patient groups (Hosaka 2012). Also, several meta-analyses suggest that successful interferon therapy will reduce the risk of HCC in chronic hepatitis C (Camma 2001, Paptheoridis 2001a, Veldt 2004). However, patients who have cirrhosis prior to starting antiviral therapy should be maintained on close HCC surveillance programs, since the risk of developing liver cancer remains high in these patients even after sustained virologic elimination is achieved (Yu 2006).

Therapeutic management of additional risk factors such as obesity and poorly controlled diabetes mellitus offers additional chances for prophylactic measures to reduce the risk of HCC development. In particular, weight reduction and exercise may improve the prognosis of steatohepatitis, while metformin should be favored over sulfonylurea drugs and insulin in the treatment of type 2 diabetes (Greten 2013). Finally, consumption of two or more cups of coffee per day seems to reduce the risk of liver cancer by 40-50% in patients with chronic viral hepatitis (Gelatti 2005, Bravi 2007, Larsson 2007, Wakai 2007).

References

Abou-Alfa GK, Amadori D, Santoro A, et al. Safety and Efficacy of Sorafenib in Patients with Hepatocellular Carcinoma (HCC) and Child-Pugh A versus B Cirrhosis. Gastrointest Cancer Res 2011;4:40-4. (Abstract)

Bralet MP, Regimbeau JM, Pineau P, et al. Hepatocellular carcinoma occurring in nonfibrotic liver: epidemiologic and histopathologic analysis of 80 French cases. Hepatology 2000;32:200-4. (Abstract)

Bravi F, Bosetti C, Tavani A, et al. Coffee drinking and hepatocellular carcinoma risk: a meta-analysis. Hepatology 2007;46:430-5. (Abstract)

Brunetto MR, Oliveri F, Coco B, Leandro G, Colombatto P, Gorin JM, Bonino F. Outcome of anti-HBe positive chronic hepatitis B in alpha-interferon treated and untreated patients: a long term cohort study. J Hepatol 2002;36:263-70. (Abstract)

Camma C, Giunta M, Andreone P, Craxi A. Interferon and prevention of hepatocellular carcinoma in viral cirrhosis: an evidence-based approach. J Hepatol 2001;34:593-602. (Abstract)

Calle EE, Rodriguez C, Walker-Thurmond K, Thun MJ. Overweight, obesity, and mortality from cancer in a prospectively studied cohort of U.S. adults. N Engl J Med 2003;348:1625-38. (Abstract)

Chen CJ, Yang HI, Su J, et al. REVEAL-HBV Study Group. Risk of hepatocellular carcinoma across a biological gradient of serum hepatitis B virus DNA level. JAMA 2006;295:65-73. (Abstract)

Cheng AL, Kang YK, Chen Z, et al. Efficacy and safety of sorafenib in patients in the Asia-Pacific region with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma: a phase III randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Lancet Oncol 2009;10:25-34. (Abstract)

Cho YK, Kim JK, Kim MY, Rhim H, Han JK. Systematic review of randomized trials for hepatocellular carcinoma treated with percutaneous ablation therapies. Hepatology. 2009;49:453-9. (Abstract)

Davila JA, Morgan RO, Shaib Y, McGlynn KA, El-Serag HB. Diabetes increases the risk of hepatocellular carcinoma in the United States: a population based case control study. Gut 2005;54:533-9. (Abstract)

Donato F, Tagger A, Gelatti U, et al. Alcohol and hepatocellular carcinoma: the effect of lifetime intake and hepatitis virus infections in men and women. Am J Epidemiol 2002;155: 323-31. (Abstract)

EASL-EORTC Clincical Practice Guidelines: Managament of hepatocellular carcinoma. J Hepatol 2012; 56: 908-943.

Falleti E, Fabris C, Cmet S, et al. PNPLA3 rs738409C/G polymorphism in cirrhosis: relationship with the aetiology of liver disease and hepatocellular carcinoma occurrence. Liver Int 2011;31:1137-43. (Abstract)

Gallo C, De Maio E, Di Maio M, et al, CLIP (Cancer of the Liver Italian Programme) Investigators. Tamoxifen is not effective in good prognosis patients with hepatocellular carcinoma. BMC Cancer 2006 24;6:196. (Abstract)

Gelatti U, Covolo L, Talamini R, et al. N-Acetyltransferase-2, glutathione S-transferase M1 and T1 genetic polymorphisms, cigarette smoking and hepatocellular carcinoma: a case-control study. Int J Cancer 2005;115:301-6. (Abstract)

Gelatti U, Covolo L, Franceschini M, et al. Brescia HCC Study Group. Coffee consumption reduces the risk of hepatocellular carcinoma independently of its aetiology: a case-control study. J Hepatol 2005;42:528-34. (Abstract)

Greten T.F, Malek NP, Schmidt S, et al. Diagnosis of and therapy for hepatocellular carcinoma. Z Gastroenterol 2013;51:1269-1326.

Hosaka T, Suzuki F, Kobayashi M, Seko Y, Kawamura Y, Sezaki H, Akuta N, Suzuki Y, Saitoh S, Arase Y, Ikeda K, Kobayashi M, Kumada H. Long-term entecavir treatment reduces hepatocellular carcinoma incidence in patients with hepatitis B virus infection. Hepatology 2012. (Abstract)

Iloeje UH, Yang HI, Su J, Jen CL, You SL, Chen CJ, Risk Evaluation of Viral Load Elevation and Associated Liver Disease/Cancer-In HBV (the REVEAL-HBV) Study Group. Predicting cirrhosis risk based on the level of circulating hepatitis B viral load. Gastroenterology 2006;130:678-86. (Abstract)

International Working Party. Pathologic diagnosis of early hepatocellular carcinoma: a report of the international consensus group for hepatocellular neoplasia. Hepatology 2009;49:658-64 (Abstract)

Jakobs TF, Hoffmann RT, Poepperl G, et al. Mid-term results in otherwise treatment refractory primary or secondary liver confined tumours treated with selective internal radiation therapy (SIRT) using (90)Yttrium resin-microspheres. Eur Radiol 2007;17:1320-30.

Jemal A, Bray F, Center MM, Ferlay J, Ward D, Forman D. Global Cancer Statistics. CA Cancer J Clin 2011;61:69-90.

Kumar V, Kato N, Urabe Y, et al. Genome-wide association study identifies a susceptibility locus for HCV-induced hepatocellular carcinoma. Nature Genetics 2011; 43: 455-459.

Lai SW, Chen PC, Liao KF, Muo CH, Lin CC, Sung FC. Risk of hepatocellular carcinoma in diabetic patients and risk reduction associated with anti-diabetic therapy: a population-based cohort study. Am J Gastroenterol 2012;107:46-52

Lampertico P, Del Ninno E, Vigano M, et al. Long-term suppression of hepatitis B e antigen-negative chronic hepatitis B by 24-month interferon therapy. Hepatology 2003;37:756-63. (Abstract)

Larsson SC, Wolk A. Coffee consumption and risk of liver cancer: a meta-analysis. Gastroenterology 2007;132:1740-5. (Abstract)

Liaw YF. Prevention and surveillance of hepatitis B virus-related hepatocellular carcinoma. Semin Liver Dis 2005;25 Suppl1:40-7. (Abstract)

Liu MD, Uaje MB, Al-Ghazi MS, et al. Use of Yttrium-90 TheraSphere for the treatment of unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma. Am Surg 2004;70:947-53. (Abstract)

Livraghi T, Meloni F, Di Stasi M, Rolle E, Solbiati L, Tinelli C, Rossi S. Sustained complete response and complications rates after radiofrequency ablation of very early hepatocellular carcinoma in cirrhosis: Is resection still the treatment of choice? Hepatology 2008;47:82-9. (Abstract)

Llovet JM, Bruix J. Systematic review of randomized trials for unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma: Chemoembolization improves survival. Hepatology 2003;37:429-42. (Abstract)

Llovet JM, Bustamante J, Castells A, et al. Natural history of untreated nonsurgical hepatocellular carcinoma: rationale for the design and evaluation of therapeutic trials. Hepatology 1999;29:62-7. (Abstract)
Llovet JM, Real MI, Montana X, et al. Barcelona Liver Cancer Group. Arterial embolisation or chemoembolisation versus symptomatic treatment in patients with unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma: a randomised controlled trial. Lancet 2002; 359:1734-9. (Abstract)
Lok AS. Prevention of hepatitis B virus-related hepatocellular carcinoma. Gastroenterology. 2004;127(Suppl 1):S303-9.
Lok AS, Seef LB, Morgan TR, et al. Incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma and associated risk factors in hepatitis C-related advanced liver disease. Gastroenterology 2009;136: 138-148 .
Lopez P, Villanueva A, Llovet JM. Updated systematic review of randomized controlled trials in hepatocellular carcinoma. 2002-2005. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2006; 23:1535-1547. (Abstract)
Mazzaferro V, Regalia E, Doci R, et al. Liver transplantation for the treatment of small hepatocellular carcinomas in patients with cirrhosis. N Engl J Med 1996;334:693-9. (Abstract)
Nischalke HD, Berger C, Luda C, et al. The PNPLA3 rs738409 148M/M Genotype Is a Risk Factor for Liver Cancer in Alcoholic Cirrhosis but Shows No or Weak Association in Hepatitis C Cirrhosis. PLoS One 2011;6:e27087. (Abstract)
Otto G, Herber S, Heise M, et al. Response to transarterial chemoembolization as a biological selection criterion for liver transplantation in hepatocellular carcinoma. Liver Transpl 2006;12:1260-7. (Abstract)
Papatheodoridis GV, Manesis E, Hadziyannis SJ. The long-term outcome of interferon-alpha treated and untreated patients with HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B. J Hepatol 2001;34:306-13. (Abstract)
Papatheodoridis GV, Papadimitropoulos VC, Hadziyannis SJ. Effect of interferon therapy on the development of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with hepatitis C virus-related cirrhosis: a meta-analysis. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2001;15:689-98. (Abstract)
Papatheodoridis GV, Manolakopoulos S, Touloumi G, et al.; HEPNET. Greece Cohort Study Group. Virological suppression does not prevent the development of hepatocellular carcinoma in HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B patients with cirrhosis receiving oral antiviral(s) starting with lamivudine monotherapy: results of the nationwide HEPNET. Greece cohort study. Gut 2011;60:1109-16.
Papatheodoridis GV, Lampertico P, Manolakopoulos S, Lok A. Incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma in chronic hepatitis B patients receiving nucleos(t)ide therapy: a systematic review. J Hepatol 2010;53:348-56. (Abstract)
Pawlik TM, Reyes DK, Cosgrove D, Kamel IR, Bhagat N, Geschwind JF. Phase II trial of sorafenib combined with concurrent transarterial chemoembolization with drug-eluting beads for hepatocellular carcinoma. J Clin Oncol 2011;29:3960-7. (Abstract)
Pomfret EA, Washburn K, Wald C, et al. Report of a national conference on liver allocation inpatients with hepatocellular carcinoma in the United States. Liver Transpl. 2010;16:262-78. (Abstract)
Poon RT, Fan ST, Lo CM, Liu CL, Wong J. Difference in tumor invasiveness in cirrhotic patients with hepatocellular carcinoma fulfilling the Milan criteria treated by resection and transplantation: impact on long-term survival. Ann Surg 2007;245:51-8. (Abstract)
Salem R, Hunter RD. Yttrium-90 microspheres for the treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma: a review. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2006;66(2 Suppl):S83-8. (Abstract)
Sangro B, Bilbao JI, Boan J, et al. Radioembolization using 90Y-resin microspheres for patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2006;66:792-800. (Abstract)
Starley BQ, Calcagno CJ, Harrison SA. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease and hepatocellular carcinoma: a weighty connection. Hepatology 2010;51:1820-1832.
Serste T, Barrau V, Ozenne V, et al. Accuracy and disagreement of computed tomography and magnetic resonance imaging for the diagnosis of small hepatocellular carcinoma and dysplastic nodules: role of biopsy. Hepatology 2012;55:800-806.

Trepo E, Nahon P, Bontempi G, et al. Association between the PNPLA3 (rs738409 C>G) variant and hepatocellular carcinoma: evidence from a meta-analysis of individual participant data. Hepatology 2013 (epub ahead of print).

TsengTC, Liu HC, Yang HC, et al. Serum hepatitis B surface antigen levels help predict disease progression in patients with low hepatitis B virus loads. Hepatology 2013;57:441-450.

van Zonneveld M, Honkoop P, Hansen BE, et al. Long-term follow-up of alpha-interferon treatment of patients with chronic hepatitis B. Hepatology 2004;39:804-10. (Abstract)

Veldt BJ, Saracco G, Boyer N, et al. Long term clinical outcome of chronic hepatitis C patients with sustained virological response to interferon monotherapy. Gut 2004;53:1504-8. (Abstract)

Wakai K, Kurozawa Y, Shibata A, et al. JACC Study Group. Liver cancer risk, coffee, and hepatitis C virus infection: a nested case-control study in Japan. Br J Cancer 2007;97:426-8. (Abstract)

Vilana R, Forner A, Bianchi L, et al. Intrahepatic peripheral cholangiocarcinoma in cirrhosis patients may display a vascular pattern similar to hepatocellular carcinoma on contrast-enhanced ultrasound. Hepatology 2010;51:2020-9. (Abstract)

Yao FY. Should surveillance for hepatocellular carcinoma be increased in patients with cirrhosis and small liver nodules? Nature Clin Pract Gastroenterol Hepatol 2006;3:544-5. (Abstract)

Yao FY, Ferrell L, Bass NM, et al. Liver transplantation for hepatocellular carcinoma: expansion of the tumor size limits does not adversely impact survival. Hepatology 2001;33:1394-403. (Abstract)

Yu ML, Lin SM, Lee CM, et al. A simple noninvasive index for predicting long-term outcome of chronic hepatitis C after interferon-based therapy. Hepatology 2006;44:1086-97. (Abstract)

Yuen MF, Poon RT, Lai CL, et al. A randomized placebo-controlled study of long-acting octreotide for the treatment of advanced hepatocellular carcinoma. Hepatology 2002;36:687-91. (Abstract)

Zhang BH, Yang BH, Tang ZY. Randomized controlled trial of screening for hepatocellular carcinoma. J Cancer Res Clin Oncol 2004;130:417-422. (Abstract)

Zhang H, Zhai Y, Hu Z, et al. Genome-wide association study identifies 1p36.22 as a new susceptibility locus for hepatocellular carcinoma in chronic hepatitis B virus carriers. Nature Genetics 2010;42:755-759.

21. Transplant Hepatology: A Comprehensive Update

S. Beckebaum, V. R. Cicinnati, A. Radtke

Introduction

Over the past 30 years major advances have been made in the field of organ transplantation due to improvements in surgical techniques and organ conservation as well as optimisation of intensive care and immunosuppressive management. This chapter focuses on important issues in the field of transplant hepatology and may provide helpful information to physicians involved in the care of adult liver transplantion (LT) recipients. It includes indications for LT, current organ allocation policy, pre-transplant evaluation, management while on the waiting list, living donor liver transplantation (LDLT), and management of early- and long-term complications post-LT.

Timing and indications for liver transplantation

Appropriate selection of candidates and timing of LT is crucial in reducing mortality and improving outcomes in LT recipients. A patient is considered too healthy to undergo LT if the expected survival is longer without surgery. Therefore, criteria are needed in order to select patients who can most benefit from transplantation. In 2002, the Organ Procurement and Transplantation Network along with the United Network of Organ Sharing (UNOS), developed a system based on the model for end-stage liver disease (MELD) (Table 1) to prioritize patients on the waiting list. In the Eurotransplant countries, the Child-Pugh Turcotte score was replaced by the MELD score in December 2006.

The lab MELD score is a numerical scale using the three laboratory parameters in Table 1 and ranging from 6 (less ill) to 40 (severely ill).

In a large study (Merion 2005) looking at the survival benefit of LT candidates, those transplanted with a MELD score <15 had a significantly higher mortality risk as compared to those remaining on the waiting list, while candidates with a MELD score of 18 or higher had a significant transplant benefit.

Table 1. Calculation of the MELD* Score

MELD Score =	0.957 x log (creatinine mg/dL)
	0.378 x log (bilirubin mg/dL)
	1.120 x log (INR**)
	+ 0.643

*Model of End-stage Liver Disease
**International Normalized Ratio

However, the MELD score does not accurately predict mortality in approximately 15-20% of patients. Therefore MELD-based allocation allows exceptions for patients whose score may not reflect the severity of their liver disease. These exceptions include hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC), non-metastatic hepatoblastoma, adult polycystic liver degeneration, primary hyperoxaluria type 1, small-for-size syndrome, cystic fibrosis, familial amyloid polyneuropathy, hepatopulmonary syndrome, portopulmonary hypertension, urea cycle disorders, hereditary hemorrhagic telangiectasia (Osler-Weber-Rendu disease), hemangioendothelioma of the liver, biliary sepsis, primary sclerosing cholangitis (PSC) and cholangiocarcinoma. Patients with standard exceptions will be assigned a higher MELD score (match MELD) than that assigned by the patient's laboratory test results (lab MELD). This results in an increasing proportion of patients transplanted for HCC and other exceptions over time (Massie 2011).

MELD has proved to be accurate as a predictor of waiting list mortality, but has shown to be less accurate in predicting post-transplant outcome. For instance, MELD allocation resulted in decreased waiting list mortality; whereas post-transplant morbidity has increased due to transplantation of a higher proportion of sicker recipients with MELD scores >30 (Dutkowski 2011). Moreover, since the introduction of MELD, the quality of donor organs has been impaired and the threshold for organ allocation has increased from a match MELD of 25 to 34 (Schlitt 2011).

The question has been raised whether additional candidate characteristics should be explicitly incorporated into the prioritization of waiting list candidates (Sharma 2012). It has also been suggested to take into account not only pretransplant mortality but also donor-related factors for estimation of the donor risk index (DRI) (Feng 2006) and post-transplant mortality. Furthermore, standardization of laboratory assays and variants of MELD including incorporation of parameters such as sodium or cholinesterase have been proposed to overcome the limitations of the current scoring system (Choi 2009, Weissmüller 2008, Vitale 2012).

Candidates for LT must have irreversible acute or chronic end-stage liver disease. Hepatitis C virus (HCV)- or alcohol-induced liver disease account for the most common disease indications in adults with liver cirrhosis (http://www.eltr.org) (Figure 1). Other indications include cholestatic liver disorders (primary biliary cirrhosis [PBC], PSC), hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection, autoimmune hepatitis (AIH), inherited metabolic diseases (Wilson's Disease, hemochromatosis, α-1-antitrypsin deficiency), nonalcoholic steatohepatitis, HCC, and acute or acute-on-chronic hepatic failure. In children, biliary atresia and metabolic liver diseases are the most common indications. Contraindications for LT include active alcohol and drug abuse, extrahepatic malignancies, sepsis, uncontrolled pulmonary

hypertension, and coexistent medical disorders such as severe cardiopulmonary condition, technical or anatomical barriers such as thrombosis of the entire portal and superior mesenteric venous system. Previous malignancy history must be carefully considered and likelihood of recurrence estimated.

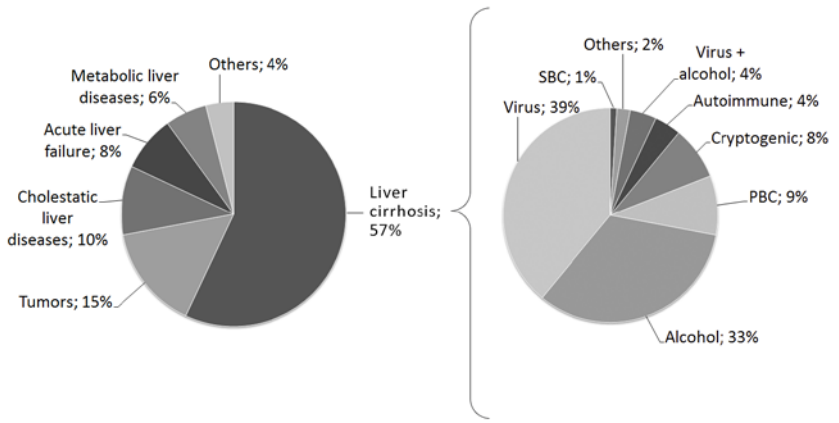


Figure 1. Indications for liver transplantation (LT). Primary diseases leading to LT in Europe, 1988 - 2011 (Data kindly provided from European Liver Transplant Registry, http://www.eltr.org)

Patient evaluation

Evaluation of a potential transplant candidate is a complex and time-consuming process that requires a multidisciplinary approach. Requirements for evaluation may differ slightly between transplant centers. The evaluation process must identify extrahepatic diseases that may exclude the patient from transplantation or require treatment before surgical intervention. The protocol we use for evaluation of potential transplant candidates is shown in Table 2.

Pre-transplant management issues

In cases of recurrent variceal hemorrhage despite prior interventional endoscopic therapy (and non-selective beta-blockade) or refractory ascites, transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunts (TIPS) have been used to lower portal pressure and as a bridging therapy for transplant candidates. The identification of predisposing factors and the application of lactulose, non-absorbed antibiotics and protein-restricted diets remain essential for prophylaxis and management of hepatic encephalopathy (HE).

Hepatorenal syndrome (HRS) represents a complication of end-stage liver disease and is a risk factor for acute kidney injury (AKI) in the early post-operative phase (Saner 2011). It is classified into type 1 HRS characterized by a rapid impairment of renal function with a poor prognosis; type 2 HRS is a moderate steady renal impairment. Vasoconstrictors including terlipressin in combination with volume expansion are commonly used and have been shown to be effective for restoration

of arterial blood flow and serve as a bridging therapy to LT (Hinz 2013). Extracorporeal liver support systems based on exchange or detoxification of albumin have been successfully employed in indicated cases. After wait-listing, laboratory values must be updated according to the recertification schedule shown in Table 3.

Table 2. Basic evaluation protocol for potential transplant candidates

- Physical examination
- Diagnostic tests (baseline laboratory testing; serologic, tumor/virologic, and microbiological screening; autoantibodies; thyroid function tests)
- Ultrasonography with Doppler
- Abdominal MRI or CT scan
- Chest X-rays
- Electrocardiogram (ECG), stress ECG, 2-dimensional echocardiography (if abnormal or risk factors are present: further cardiological screening)
- Upper and lower endoscopy
- Pulmonary function testing
- Mammography (in females >35 years)
- Physician consultations (anesthesiologist, gynecologist, urologist, cardiologist, neurologist, dentist, ear, nose, and throat specialist)
- A meticulous psychosocial case review (medical specialist in psychosomatic medicine, psychiatry or psychology)

Table 3. Recertification schedule of MELD data

Score	Recertification	Lab values
≥25	every 7 days	≤48 hours old
24-19	every 30 days	≤7 days old
18-11	every 90 days	≤14 days old
≤10	every year	≤30 days old

Special attention regarding specific, disease-related therapy prior to surgery should be given to transplant candidates undergoing LT for HCC or virally-related liver diseases.

Waiting list monitoring of hepatitis B liver transplant candidates

The goal of antiviral therapy in HBV patients on the waiting list is to achieve viral suppression to undetectable HBV DNA levels using sensitive tests (Figure 2) (Cornberg 2011, Beckebaum 2013a). Several studies have demonstrated clinical benefits in patients with decompensated cirrhosis with viral suppression as reflected by a decrease in CPT score, improvement of liver values and resolution of clinical complications (Kapoor 2000, Schiff 2007, Nikolaidis 2005).

A major concern of long-term lamivudine (LAM) therapy is the emergence of mutations in the YMDD motif of the DNA polymerase, which could result in clinical decompensation in patients with liver cirrhosis (Beckebaum 2008, Beckebaum 2009). Therefore potent nucleos(t)ide analogs (entecavir [ETV] or tenofovir [TDF]) with a high resistance barrier are preferred. Lactic acidosis has been reported to occur in nucleos(t)ide analog-treated patients (particularly ETV)

with highly impaired liver function (Lange 2009). However, more recent studies have found that nucleos(t)ide analogs have been associated with low rates of lactic acidosis and other serious adverse events such as impairment of renal function, osteopenia and osteoporosis (Ridruejo 2012).

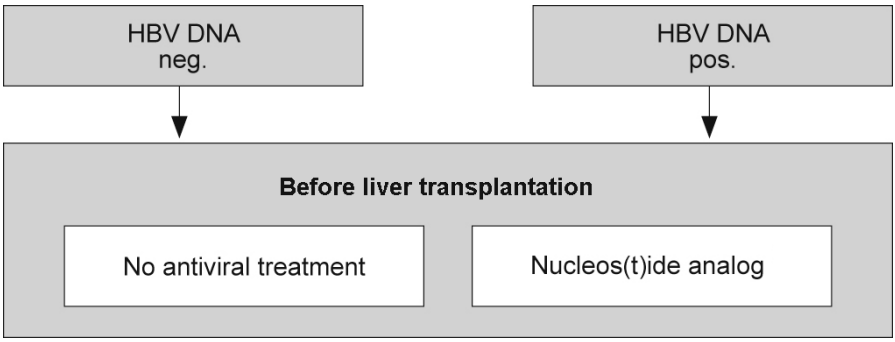


Figure 2. Management of HBV patients prior to liver transplantation (LT). In all viremic patients awaiting LT due to HBV-related liver damage, efficient antiviral therapy is required. Suppression of HBV DNA may lead to clinical stabilisation resulting in removal from the waiting list or in a delay in the need for LT (Beckebaum 2012). Neg., negative, pos., positive

Waiting list monitoring and treatment of hepatitis C liver transplant candidates

Wait-listed patients who have a viral response on antiviral therapy have a lower reinfection rate and better outcome after LT (Picciotto 2007). Thus, there is an indication for antiviral therapy in patients with compensated HCV cirrhosis on the waiting list. The number of clinical trials investigating the tolerability and efficacy of antiviral therapy in HCV patients before LT is limited. Sustained virological response (SVR) rates reported in these studies are strongly influenced by genotype. Overall, SVR is achieved in 20-50% of wait-listed patients on combined pegylated-interferon α (PEG-IFN α) plus ribavirin (RBV) (Crippin 2002, Iacobellis 2007, Everson 2005, Triantos 2005). Adverse effects are frequent including cytopenias, bacterial infections and hepatic decompensation requiring dose reduction or treatment withdrawal. Hematopoietic growth factors have shown to increase patient compliance and to avoid dose reductions, but it remains questionable whether they result in higher SVR rates in LT patients. Baseline factors associated with SVR are younger donor age, lack of cirrhosis or severe necroinflammation and the use of RBV at full dose at initiation, while on-treatment variables were adherence and viral kinetics (Berenguer 2012).

In genotype 1-infected patients on the waiting list, triple therapy with boceprevir or telaprevir has been considered as a new approach in compensated cirrhotics. However, tolerability of this new therapy is low, and side effects are frequent and potentially life-threatening. Moreover, there is not much published data on triple antiviral therapy in HCV patients who are on a LT waiting list. In a French multicenter single-arm Phase II trial, triple therapy patients (treatment-naive, responders, relapsers, MELD score ≤18) continue to be followed-up (ANRS HC 29

BOCEPRETRANSPLANT STUDY; http://clinical trials.gov/ NCT01463956).

At t the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases (AASLD) meeting, data was presented from a Phase II open-label study investigating up to 48 weeks of sofosbuvir and RBV to prevent recurrence of HCV infection of any genotype in waitlisted patients with HCV and HCC (Curry 2013). A total of 61 patients (n=24/21/8/7/1 with genotypes 1a/1b/2/3/4) were included and received study medication. Forty patients have undergone LT in the meantime. Of these, 37 were <25 IU/mL and the rest were >25 IU/mL at last HCV RNA measurement prior to LT. One of the 37 patients received an HCV-infected allograft and was not included in the efficacy analysis. The remaining 36 patients were treated for a mean of 17.1 weeks prior to LT. So far, 26 patients have reached at least 12 weeks post-transplant, of whom 18 had SVR12. Seven patients (27%) had viral recurrence, and one (4%) died. These results showed that sofosbuvir and RBV was safe and effective in well-compensated liver cirrhotic patients and prevented post-transplant HCV recurrence in 69% of patients who were HCV RNA negative prior to LT.

Adjunct treatment and staging of HCC transplant candidates

Under MELD allocation, patients must meet the Milan criteria (one tumor ≤5 cm in diameter or up to three tumors, all ≤3 cm) to qualify for exceptional HCC waiting list consideration. Diagnosis of HCC is confirmed if the following criteria are met according to the German Medical Association (Bundesärztekammer 2008): (1) liver biopsy-proven or (2) alpha-fetoprotein (AFP) >400 ng/mL and hypervascular liver lesion detectable in one imaging technique (magnetic resonance imaging [MRI], spiral computed tomography [CT], angiography) or (3) hypervascular liver lesion detectable in 2 different imaging techniques. Modifications of these guidelines will soon be available. Patients are registered at a MELD score equivalent to a 15% probability of pretransplant death within 3 months. Patients will receive additional MELD points equivalent to a 10% increase in pretransplant mortality to be assigned every 3 months until these patients receive a transplant or become unsuitable for LT due to progression of their HCC. The listing center must enter an updated MELD score exception application in order to receive additional MELD points. The US National Conference on Liver Allocation in Patients with HCC recommends the introduction of a calculated continuous HCC priority score that incorporates the MELD score, AFP level and rate of tumor growth, for identifying patients with a good vs. a poor outcome (Pomfret 2010). Further investigations are necessary to determine the survival benefit of HCC patients considering these features.

Pre-listing, the patient should undergo a thorough assessment to rule out extrahepatic spread and/or vascular invasion. The assessment should include CT scan or MRI of the abdomen, pelvis and chest. We perform tri-monthly routine follow-up examinations (MRI or CT scan) of wait-listed HCC patients for early detection of disease progression. It has been shown that waiting list drop-out rates can be reduced by the application of bridging therapies such as transarterial chemoembolisation or radiofrequency ablation (Roayie 2007). Recently, transarterial radionuclide therapies such as Yttrium-90 microsphere transarterial radioembolisation (TARE) have been tested for bridging therapy in selected cases

(Toso 2010, Memon 2013). Bridging therapy should be considered in particular in patients outside the Milan criteria, with a likely waiting time of longer than 6 months, and those within the Milan criteria with high-risk characteristics of HCC. Sorafenib has been administered in a few studies before LT to investigate the safety and efficacy of this oral multikinase inhibitor in the neoadjuvant setting (Fijiki 2011, Di Benedetto 2011).

Accurate discrimination of HCC patients with good and poor prognosis by specific criteria (genomic or molecular strategies) is highly warranted to select appropriate treatment options (Tournoux-Facon 2011, Marsh 2003, Lu 2012). In patients with alcohol-related liver disease and HCC, a multidisciplinary approach and thorough work up of both the alcoholic and oncologic problem is mandatory (Sotiropoulos 2008a).

Liver transplantation in autoimmune hepatitis and cholestatic liver diseases

Between 1988 and 2011, 4% of cirrhosis patients were transplanted due to AIH and 9% due to PBC, based on the data from the European Liver Transplant Registry (http://www.ELTR.org). PSC, accounting for approximately 5% of all transplant cases, is a rather small indication group on the waiting list. According to the Guidelines of the German Medical Association, patients with PSC who fulfill the standard exception criteria receive at listing a match MELD reflecting the sum of a 3-month mortality according to lab MELD and a 20% 3-month mortality. A modified version of these guidelines became effective in March 2012: patients will be listed initially according to a 3-month mortality of 15% (equivalent to a MELD score of 22) and then are upgraded every three months following every 10% increase of the 3-month mortality (Modified Guidelines of the German Medical Association; Deutsches Ärzteblatt 2012). The previous points increment applied within the match MELD standard criteria was inadequate, and these revised guidelines represent progress towards improved allocation guidelines for this group of patients.

Living donor liver transplantation: indications, donor evaluation, and outcome

LDLT was introduced in 1989 in a successful series of pediatric patients (Broelsch 1991). Adult-to-adult LDLT (ALDLT) was first performed in Asia where cadaveric organ donation is rarely practiced (Sugawara 1999, Kawasaki 1998). LDLT peaked in the US in 2001 (Qiu 2005) but therafter the numbers declined by 30% over the following years (Vagefi 2011, Carlisle 2012). A decline over time was also observed in Europe, although LDLT activity increased in Asia.

In selected cases, LDLT offers significant advantages over deceased donor LT (Quintini 2013). The evaluation of donors is a cost-effective although time-consuming process. Clinical examinations, imaging studies, special examinations, biochemical parameters, and psychosocial evaluation prior to donation varies from center to center and has been described elsewhere (Valentin-Gamazo 2004). Using Germany as an example, the expenses for evaluation, hospital admission, surgical

procedure, and follow-up examinations of donors are paid by the recipient's insurance. Due to the increasing number of potential candidates and more stringent selection criteria, rejection of potential donors has been reported in 69-86% of cases (Valentin-Gamazo 2004, Pascher 2002). The advantages of LDLT include the feasibilty of performing the operation when medically indicated and the short duration of cold ischemia time.

LDLT is associated with surgical risks for the donor and recipient. The surgical procedures for LDLT are more technically challenging than those for cadaver LT. In the recipient operation, bile duct reconstruction has proven to be the most challenging part of the procedure with biliary complications ranging from 15% to 60% (Sugawara 2005).

Regarding donor outcome, morbidity rates vary considerably in the literature (Patel 2007, Beavers 2002). Possible complications include wound infection, pulmonary problems, vascular thrombosis with biliary leaks, strictures, and incisional hernia. Biliary complications are the most common postoperative complication in LDLT and occur in up to 7% of donors (Perkins 2008, Sugawara 2005). Liver regeneration can be documented with imaging studies and confirmed by normalization of bilirubin, liver enzymes, and synthesis parameters. LDLT should be performed only by established transplant centres with appropriate medical expertise.

Perioperative complications

Cardiac decompensation, respiratory failure following reperfusion, and kidney failure in the perioperative LT setting constitute major challenges for the intensive care unit. Acute kidney injury (AKI) has a major impact on short- and long-term survival in LT patients. There is no currently accepted uniform definition of AKI, which would facilitate standardization of the care of patients with AKI and to improve and enhance collaborative research efforts. New promising biomarkers such as neutrophil gelatinase-associated lipocalin or kidney injury molecule-1 have been developed for the prevention of delayed AKI treatment (Saner 2012). Early dialysis has been shown to be beneficial in patients with severe AKI (stage III according to the classification of the Acute Kidney Injury Network) (Bellomo 2004), whereas treatment with dopamine or loop diuretics have shown to be associated with worse outcome. Preventative strategies of AKI include avoidance of volume depletion and maintenance of a mean arterial pressure >65 mm Hg (Saner 2011).

Despite advances in organ preservation and technical procedures, postoperative complications due to preservation/reperfusion injury have not markedly decreased over the past several years. Typical histological features of preservation and reperfusion injury include centrilobular pallor and ballooning degeneration of hepatocytes. Bile duct cells are more sensitive to reperfusion injury than hepatocytes (Washington 2005) resulting in increased levels of bilirubin, gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase (GGT) and alkaline phosphatase (AP). Vascular complications such as hepatic artery thrombosis (HAT) occur in 1.6-4% of patients. Thus, Doppler exams of the hepatic artery and portal vein are frequently performed in the early postoperative setting. HAT in the early postoperative period can be managed with thrombectomy. Late HAT with complication of bile duct strictures is

managed by interventional endoscopic retrograde cholangiography (ERC) but requires retransplantation in the majority of patients. Early portal vein thrombosis is rare (<1%) but may lead to graft loss if not revascularized.

Primary non-functioning graft (PNFG) may be clinically obvious immediately after revascularization of the allograft. Early signs of liver dysfunction include prolonged coagulation times, elevated liver enzymes (transaminases, cholestasis parameters) without a downward trend, rising lactate, and hypoglycemic episodes. PNFG is a critical situation and requires immediate retransplantation.

Death within the first year after LT is often associated with bacterial infections. Management of infections due to multidrug-resistant gram-positive pathogens represent a major therapeutic challenge in the transplant setting (Radunz 2011).

Overall incidence of fungal infections in LT recipients has declined due to early identification and treatment of high-risk patients. However, overall mortality rate for invasive candidiasis and aspergillosis remains high (Liu 2011).

The clinical symptoms of acute cellular rejection are non-specific, may not be apparent or may manifest as fever, right upper quadrant pain, and malaise. A liver biopsy is indispensable for confirming the diagnosis of acute rejection. High dose corticosteroids (3 days of 500-1000 mg methylprednisolone) is first-line treatment for acute rejection.

Long-term complications after liver transplantation

Management issues for the long term include opportunistic infections, chronic ductopenic rejection, side effects due to immunosuppression including cardiovascular complications and renal dysfunction, *de novo* malignancies, biliary complications, osteoporosis and disease recurrence.

Opportunistic infections

Opportunistic infections in the medium and long term after LT are primarily viral and fungal in origin. Opportunistic bacterial infections are uncommon after 6 months in patients receiving stable and reduced maintenance doses of immunosuppression with good graft function.

Cytomegalovirus (CMV) infection plays an important role in the LT setting (Andrews 2011) (Figure 3). Current guidelines recommend antiviral prophylaxis over pre-emptive therapy in preventing CMV disease in high-risk LT recipients (CMV-seronegative recipients of organs from CMV-seropositive donors [D+/R-] (Kotton 2013)). Delayed-onset CMV disease occurs in 15-38% of CMV D+/R- LT patients after prophylactic treatment for 3 months (Eid 2010). The recommendation of prophylactic therapy also applies to treatment with T cell-depleting antibodies. The period of prophylaxis should be no shorter than 3 months in D+/R- patients.

The procedure in the transplant centres is inconsistent for intermediate-risk (R+) patients. If a pre-emptive strategy is adopted, screening for CMV every 1-2 weeks in the first 3 months post-LT is not entirely achievable in routine clinical practice in most centres. If prophylaxis is carried out in D+/R+ or D-/R+ patients, this should last 3 months. D-/R- patients have the lowest risk of CMV infection and disease.

A controlled clinical trial demonstrated that valganciclovir, an oral prodrug of ganciclovir, is as effective and safe as intravenouos (IV) ganciclovir for the prophylaxis of CMV disease in solid organ (including liver) transplant recipients (Paya 2004). In kidney transplant patients, it was shown in the Impact Study (Humar 2010) that the incidence of CMV infections could be significantly reduced by lengthening the period of prophylaxis from 100 to 200 days in D+/R- patients (n= 316). However, side effects and financial burden of this prolonged approach need to be considered. No corresponding study data are available for LT patients.

In cases of ganciclovir-resistant CMV disease, alternative therapeutic options include CMV hyperimmune globulins, or in rare cases, antiviral medication (foscarnet, cidofovir or leflunomide) (Eid 2010).

Occurrence of post-transplant lymphoproliferative disease (PTLD) in the first year after solid-organ transplantation is typically related to Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) infection. EBV-seronegativity of the recipient before infection, high EB viral load, intensity of immunosuppression and young age have been reported as risk factors for PTLD (Smets 2002). Outcomes have improved since rituximab has been incorporated into treatment regimens (Kamdar 2011). Therapeutic management options include reduction of immunosuppression, rituximab, combination chemotherapy, and adoptive immunotherapy.

Oral reactivation of human herpes simplex virus-1 (HSV-1) after LT is common. Development of varicella-zoster virus (HHV-3) after LT is typically related to intense immunosuppressive therapy and its therapy does not differ from the non-transplant setting. There is a potential role of human herpes virus (HHV)-6 and HHV-7 as co-pathogens in the direct and indirect illnesses caused by CMV. To what extent HHV-6 and HHV-7 may be directly causing symptomatic disease is not clear (Razonable 2009).

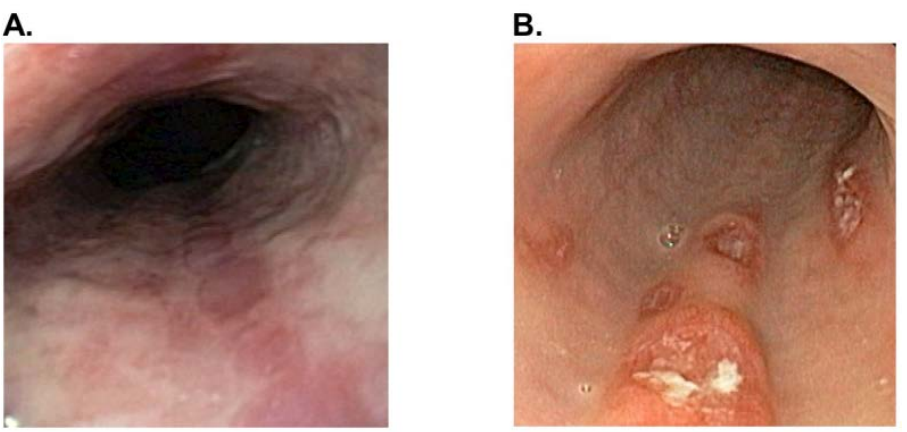


Figure 3. Cytomegalovirus (CMV) infection of the upper gastrointestinal tract. A. Liver-transplanted patient complaining of dysphagia and epigastric discomfort with multiple longitudinal esophageal ulcers seen at upper endoscopy. B. Endoscopic findings of deep esophageal ulcerations with fibrinoid necrosis in another immunocompromised patient. In both cases, lesions were caused by CMV infection. Diagnosis depends on a positive mucosal biopsy, which should include specimens from the ulcer margins and ulcer base. Hematoxylin and eosin staining typically reveals "owl's eye" cytoplasmic and intranuclear inclusion bodies

Hepatitis E

Chronic disease courses with newly acquired hepatitis E virus (HEV) infections as well as reactivation after apparent cure have been reported in organ transplant patients. The risk of HEV infection becoming chronic in such circumstances is high, at around 60-65% (Kamar 2010a 2011, Legrand-Abravanel 2010).

A group from the Hannover Transplant Center performed HEV serology tests in 226 LT patients, 129 non-transplanted patients with liver disease, and 108 healthy controls (Pischke 2010). HEV antibodies were detectable in 4% of the transplant group, 3% of the group with liver disease and 1% of the healthy control group. Three patients from the transplant group were HEV RNA-positive, two of whom developed HEV viral persistence. Anti-HEV seroconversion was observed no earlier than four months after detection of HEV RNA. The serum of a patient with chronic HEV infection was used to infect pigs so that the zoonotic potential of the HEV strain could be established experimentally.

There is often a multifactorial pathogenesis for allograft hepatitis in LT patients. It is advisable to incorporate HEV RNA determination into the differential diagnostic investigation where patients have unexplained elevated liver enzymes or histological signs of allograft hepatitis.

The outcome, progression and individual variables associated with HEV infection becoming chronic were analyzed in a retrospective study (Kamar 2011) including data from 17 transplant centres. In the largest cohort to date involving HEV-infected transplanted patients, 74/85 patients were recruited in French centres, three in Germany, five in the Netherlands and one patient each in the UK, Belgium and the US. The vast majority of the patients had received kidney (n=48) or liver (n=27) allografts. Chronification of HEV infection was defined as persistently elevated liver enzymes and positive detection of HEV replication in serum and/or feces over a minimum of six months. 65/85 patients (65.9%) developed a chronic disease. All 59 patients who underwent HEV genotyping had genotype 3. In contrast to the non-immunosuppressed patients, transaminases were usually only moderately elevated (~100-300 IU/l). Anti-HEV IgM was detectable in only 41% and IgG was detectable in 80.8%. 14.3% of the patients developed cirrhosis of the liver by the final follow-up (29.5 months, range 9-117 months). As it is possible that seroconversion may not occur until four months or more after detection of RNA in organ transplant patients, serological testing for HEV IgG and IgM in transplanted patients is of limited use and preference should be given to PCR diagnostics.

In the LT setting, so far there are no data available on the treatment of chronically HEV-infected patients with RBV. Initial results for seven kidney-transplanted, one pancreas-transplanted and one heart-transplanted patients suggest the efficacy of RBV monotherapy (Kamar 2010b, Mallet 2010, Chaillon 2011). The case of a 61-year-old, non-immunocompromised patient in whom RBV was used to treat an acute severe HEV infection (genotype 3) was reported with 4-digit transaminase elevation, hyperbilirubinaemia and markedly compromised clotting (Gerolami 2011). After 21 days of treatment, transaminases returned to normal and HEV replication was suppressed to almost below the limit of detection.

With regard to PEG-IFN α treatment of HEV infection, there are only case reports available for LT patients. Three LT patients who had a persistent HEV infection were treated with PEG-IFN α-2a (135 µg/week) for three months (Kamar 2010c). In

one patient transaminases decreased significantly and HEV RNA became negative within one week. By week 12 the patient developed acute humoral rejection and was treated with bolus corticosteroids, plasmapheresis, rituximab and an increased TAC dose. Despite the occasionally very intensive immunosuppression, SVR was achieved. The second and third patients received antiviral therapy, due to pre-existing cirrhosis of the liver before planned retransplantation. At week 12 the transaminases had returned to normal and HEV RNA detection was negative. During a five-month follow-up post-treatment, HEV RNA remained suppressed in the second patient, while it was detected in the third patient by week 2 after completion of the treatment.

A lower rate of side effects can be expected from RBV monotherapy of HEV infection in LT patients compared with PEG-IFN α therapy. Furthermore there is an increased risk of rejection on IFN α treatment. With regard to PEG-IFN α treatment of HEV infection in LT recipients, the optimum dosage and duration of treatment are not yet known. It also remains unclear what role the level of viral load before the start of treatment plays in treatment response.

Chronic ductopenic rejection

Advances in immunosuppressive regimens have greatly reduced the incidence of chronic ductopenic rejection and allograft failure. Chronic rejection begins within weeks to months or years after LT and affects about 4% to 8% of patients (Neuberger 1999). The most widely recognized manifestation of chronic rejection is obliterative arteriopathy and damage to or loss of small ducts (Demetris 1997). Chronic rejection may appear indolently and might only become apparent as liver test injury abnomalities (GGT, AP, bilirubin, transaminases). The diagnosis needs to be confirmed by histopathologic examination. Switching the baseline immunosuppression from cyclosporine A (CSA) to tacrolimus (TAC) and initiating mycophenolate mofetil (MMF) rescue therapy represents a treatment option in these patients (Daly 2002).

Calcineurin inhibitor-induced nephrotoxicity and alternative immunosuppressive protocols

Despite the introduction of new immunosuppressive agents (Table 4), calcineurin inhibitors (CNI) remain the key drugs in most immunosuppressive regimens. Both CSA and TAC inhibit the calcineurin-calmodulin complex and therefore IL-2 production. Renal failure, mainly due to CNI nephrotoxicity, is the most common complication following orthotopic LT. The incidence of chronic renal dysfunction characterized by arteriolar hyalinosis resulting in a variety of tubulointerstitial and glomerular lesions has been reported in up to 70% of patients in the long term after LT and varies widely depending on the length of follow-up, the definition of chronic kidney disease and the intensity of immunosuppressive therapy (Beckebaum 2013b). End stage renal disease has been described in 18% of patients during a post-transplant follow-up of 13 years (Gonwa 2001).

In LT patients with CNI-induced nephrotoxicity, a complete replacement of CNI with conversion to MMF has shown conflicting results with respect to the occurence of rejection, anywhere from 0% to 60% (Creput 2007, Schmeding 2011, Moreno 2004). MMF inhibits inosine monophosphate dehydrogenase, a critical enzyme in

the *de novo* pathway of purine synthesis. Results from previous studies with immunosuppressive regimens including MMF and minimal CNI treatment suggest a significant improvement in renal function in this patient group (Beckebaum 2011, Cicinnati 2007a, Beckebaum 2004a, Cantarovich 2003, Garcia 2003, Raimondo 2003).

De novo immunosuppression with MMF combined with induction therapy and delayed CNI introduction is another approach to reduce CNI-related nephrotoxicity especially in patients with higher MELD score or significant renal dysfunction. In a randomized clinical trial, a daclizumab/MMF/delayed low-dose TAC-based regimen was compared with a standard TAC/MMF regimen (Yoshida 2005). In both study arms, corticosteroids were tapered over time. Statistically significant higher median GFR was found in the delayed CNI group, although acute rejection episodes were not statistically significant different between the groups. Similar results were seen in two retrospective studies in LT patients receiving thymoglobulin induction therapy and a delayed initiation of CNI (Bajjoka 2008, Soliman 2007). A group from Regensburg initiated a single arm pilot study to determine the safety and efficacy of a CNI-free combination therapy (basiliximab induction/MPA and delayed [10 days post-transplant] sirolimus [SRL]) in patients with impaired renal function (GFR <50 ml/min and/or serum creatinine >1.5 mg/dL) at LT (Schnitzbauer 2010a). Overall safety assessments revealed an increased risk for acute rejections beyond day 30 after LT, and results suggest addition of CNI in particular in those patients who present with an acute rejection episode under mTOR-based regimen (personal communication with A. A. Schnitzbauer). Further results from this "bottom-up" immunosuppressive strategy will determine if this strategy works to prevent or avoid further renal dysfunction during follow-up after LT. One flaw of combined MMF and mTOR inhibitor therapy are agonistic side effects such as bone marrow suppression, which may limit their combined use in a substantial proportion of patients.

Another approach to maintain renal preservation is replacement of CNI by mTOR inhibitors such as SRL or everolimus (EVL) (Sanchez 2005, Harper 2011, Saliba 2011, Kawahara 2011).

In a recently published randomized controlled study, patients were treated with CSA for the first 10 days, then randomized to receive EVL plus CSA up to day 30, and then either continue on EVL monotherapy (EVL group) or maintaine CSA with or without MMF (control group) (Masetti 2010). One-year results showed that MDRD was significantly better in the EVL monotherapy group compared to the control group.

In the multicenter randomized (1:1) controlled PROTECT study (CRAD001HDE10) *de novo* patients were treated with CNI (CSA or TAC) + basiliximab ± steroids for 4-8 weeks after LT and were then randomized to an EVL-based treatment arm or a CNI-based control arm (Fischer 2012). In the EVL-based treatment arm (n=101), a 70% reduction of CNI (± steroids) was carried out over a period of 2 months, followed by treatment with EVL ± steroids. In the control arm (n=102) treatment with CNI (standard dose ± steroids) was continued. Using the MDRD equation, the endpoint could be achieved with a difference in calculated GFR of at least 8 mL/min between the two treatment arms (p=0.02). The incidence of graft rejection, graft loss and death was not significantly different between the

two treatment arms.

Efficacy and safety of a TAC-free and a TAC-reduced regimen were compared with a TAC standard dose (TAC-C) regimen in a multinational, randomized controlled licensing trial (CRAD001H2304) in *de novo* LT recipients (Saliba 2011b). After a 1-month run-in phase on TAC-based immunosuppression (+/- MMF), patients were randomized to an EVL/prednisone/TAC-free group (TAC-WD) including TAC withdrawal at 4 months post-LT, an EVL/prednisone/reduced TAC group (EVL+rTAC) or a standard TAC control group (TAC-C). The primary combined endpoint included biopsy-confirmed acute rejection, allograft loss or death, and the secondary endpoint was renal function at 1 year. The TAC-WD arm was stopped prematurely due to a significantly higher incidence of biopsy-confirmed acute rejections (19.9% [TAC-WD] vs. 4.1% [EVL+rTAC] vs. 10.7% [TAC-C]).

At 1 year, significantly more patients in the TAC-C group had reached the combined primary endpoint compared to the EVL+rTAC group (9.7% vs. 6.7%; $p<0.001$). Kidney function was significantly better ($p<0.001$) in the EVL+rTAC arm than in the TAC-C arm. The increased rejection rate in the TAC-WD group at month 4 may be caused by the immunosuppressive strategy used. Unlike the CRAD001HDE10 study, no induction therapy with an anti-IL-2 inhibitor was performed and there was no weaning of CNI over 2 months. Instead, CNI were stopped abruptly.

Table 4. Clinically used immunosuppressive agents in liver transplantation

Immunosuppressant Class	Immunosuppressive Agent
Corticosteroids	Prednisone, prednisolone, methylprednisolone
Calcineurin inhibitors	Cyclosporin A, tacrolimus
Antimetabolites	Mycophenolate mofetil, azathioprine
mTOR Inhibitors	Sirolimus, everolimus
Polyclonal antibodies	Antithymocyte globulin
Monoclonal anti-CD3 antibodies	Muromonab-CD3 (OKT3)
Chimeric monoclonal antibodies	Anti-IL-2 inhibitors (basiliximab)
Monoclonal anti-CD52 antibodies	Alemtuzumab (campath-1H)

Other side effects of CNI

Besides potential nephrotoxicity, CNI therapy is associated with side effects that include cardiovascular complications, tremor, headache, electrolyte abnormalities, hyperuricemia, hepatotoxicity, and gastrointestinal symptoms. Neurotoxicity, including tremor, paresthesia, muscle weakness, and seizures, more often occurs in TAC-treated patients; gingival hyperplasia, a rare event, and hirsutism are associated with CSA treatment.

Cardiovascular side effects due to CNI and steroids include hyperlipidemia, arterial hypertension, and diabetes (Beckebaum 2004b).

The prevalence of new-onset diabetes mellitus after LT has been reported to occur in 9-21% of patients (John 2002, Konrad 2000). The prevalence of post-transplant diabetes is even higher if cofactors such as hepatitis C are present. In various

studies, the diabetogenic potential has been reported to be higher in patients receiving TAC than in those receiving CSA. In contrast, CSA has a more pronounced effect on lipid levels. CSA can act by modulating the activity of the LDL receptor or by inhibiting the bile acid 26-hydroxylase that induces bile acid synthesis from cholesterol.

Numerous ongoing studies aim to determine the most effective immunosuppressive protocols while minimizing drug-related side effects. These protocols often combine several drugs with different mechanisms of action and toxicities allowing dose adjustment. There is also a trend towards tailored immunosuppressive regimens following the etiology of liver disease and comorbidities such as renal dysfunction and cardiovascular disease.

Corticosteroid minimization/avoidance protocols

There is ongoing discussion of steroid avoidance due to dyslipidemia, osteoporosis, development of cataracts, weight gain, hypertension, and a deleterious impact on glucose control. A recently published literature review (Lerut 2009) analyzed the actual status of corticosteroid minimization protocols in LT based on a detailed analysis of 51 peer-reviewed and 6 non-peer-reviewed studies. Results from the majority of studies showed that these protocols have clear metabolic benefits and are safe with respect to graft and patient survival. Other research groups have reported encouraging findings with steroid-free protocols including basiliximab induction therapy (Filipponi 2004, Llado 2008, Becker 2008). A steroid-free alemtuzumab induction regimen resulted in less hypertension and rejection but with more infectious complications. So far, the overall benefit of alemtuzumab induction in LT recipients remains questionable (Levitsky 2011).

De novo malignancies

Incidence of malignancies is higher in transplant patients and depends on the length of follow-up, characteristics of the transplant population, choice of immunosuppressive therapy and when the LT was performed (Buell 2005, Fung 2001). A cumulative risk has been reported of 10%, 24%, 32% and 42% at 5, 10, 15 and 20 years, respectively, for development of *de novo* cancers after LT (Finkenstedt 2009). The highest risks in the transplant setting are non-melanoma skin cancers, mainly squamous cell carcinoma and basal cell carcinoma (Figure 4).

Premaligant lesions such as actinic keratoses are mostly located on sun-exposed areas. Squamous cell carcinoma and basal cell carcinoma are increased by factors of ~65-200 and ~10, respectively, in organ transplant recipients as compared to the immunocompetent population (Ulrich 2008). An annual routine dermatologic follow-up exam, limitation of sun exposure and protective measures including sunscreens are highly recommended for transplant patients.

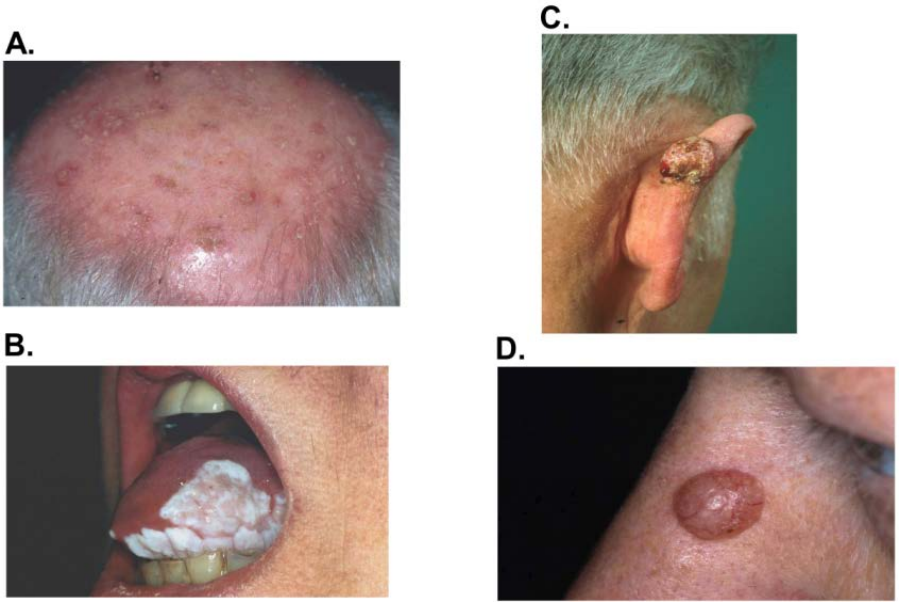


Figure 4. Non-melanoma skin scancers and liver transplantation (LT). Organ transplant recipients have an increased risk of development of non-melanoma skin cancers as compared to the non-transplant setting. Premalignant lesions such as actinic keratoses [A] are predominantly located on sun-exposed areas. Squamous cell carcinoma [B,C] is the most frequent skin cancer after LT followed by basal cell carcinoma [D] (Photographs kindly provided by PD Dr. Hillen, Transplant Dermatology Outpatient Unit, Department of Dermatology, University Hospital Essen, Germany)

Due to a higher incidence of colon cancer in patients transplanted for PSC and concomitant inflammatory bowel disease (Hanouneh 2011) an adequate colonoscopic surveillance is required at regular intervals even in the absence of active disease (Fevery 2011). A trend has recently been reported toward an increased incidence of advanced colon polyps and colon carcinoma in patients transplanted for diseases other than PSC after LT. However, larger studies are needed to determine whether post-transplant colon cancer surveillance should be performed more frequently than in the non-transplant setting (Rudraraju 2008).

Studies have reported a significantly higher incidence of aerodigestive cancer including lung cancer among patients who underwent LT for alcohol-related liver disease (Vallejo 2005, Jimenez 2005). A Spanish transplant group recommended annual screening for oropharyngeal tumors in patients with a history of alcohol overconsumption (Benlloch 2004). SRL exerts antiangiogenic activities that are linked to a decrease in production of vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) and to a markedly inhibited response of vascular endothelial cells to stimulation by vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) (Guba 2002). Furthermore, the ability of SRL to increase the expression of E-cadherin suggests a mechanism for blocking regional tumor growth and for inhibiting metastatic progression. Therefore, we give special consideration for mTOR inhibitor-based immunosuppressive regimens not only in patients transplanted for HCC but also those with *de novo* malignancies after

LT. There is evidence from meta-analyses and studies performed mainly in the kidney transplant setting that switching from CNI to mTOR-based immunosuppression (mostly SRL) is associated with a lower incidence of non-melanoma skin cancers (Euvrard 2012, Caroti 2012, Gu 2012). A multicentre study involving CNI-treated patients with a previous history of at least one squamous cell carcinoma randomly allocated patients to an arm in which CNI was replaced by SRL, or to an arm in which the CNI-based immunosuppression was continued (Euvrard 2012). The squamous cell carcinoma-free survival was significantly longer in the SRL group than in the CNI control group. The appearance of a new squamous cell carcinoma was observed in 14 patients (22%) in the SRL group versus 22 patients (39%) in the control group (p=0.02). The authors concluded that SRL obviously has an antitumor effect regarding the reappearance or the new appearance of non-melanoma skin cancers.

Biliary complications

Biliary leaks generally occur as an early post-transplant complication. In patients with biliary stones, endoscopic sphincterotomy and stone extraction are the treatment of choice.

Biliary strictures are one of the most common complications after LT, with a reported incidence of 5.8-34% (Graziadei 2006). Early anastomotic strictures (AS) usually have a technical origin, while strictures appearing later have a multifactorial origin. Non-anastomotic strictures (NAS) without underlying hepatic artery thrombosis are commonly referred to as ischemic-type biliary lesions (ITBL).

Risk factors for ITBL include preservation-induced injury, prolonged cold and warm ischemia times, altered bile composition, ABO blood incompatibility and immunologic injury (Verdonk 2007, Buis 2009). Our group found that specific chemokine receptor polymorphisms of the recipient are associated with the development of post-LT biliary strictures (Iacob 2012). Moreover, screening of anti-HLA antibodies might be useful for early identification of at-risk patients who could benefit from closer surveillance and tailored immunosuppressive regimen (Iacob 2012).

Endoscopic retrograde cholangiography (ERC) or percutaneous transhepatic cholangiography (PTC) have typically been used as the primary approach, leaving surgical intervention for those who are non-responsive to endoscopic interventions or who have diffuse intrahepatic bile duct damage. Novel radiological methods such as magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography (MRCP) have been introduced as an additional diagnostic tool for biliary complications.

The long-term efficacy and safety of endoscopic techniques have been evaluated in various transplant centers (Qin 2006, Zoepf 2012, Pascher 2005). Non-anastomotic strictures are commonly associated with a less favourable response to interventional endoscopic therapy in comparison to anastomosis stenosis (Figure 5). An Austrian group found anastomotic strictures in 12.6% of patients transplanted between October 1992 and December 2003 and non-anastomotic strictures in 3.7% during a mean follow-up of 53.7 months after LT (Graziadei 2006). Interventional endoscopic procedures were effective in 77% of patients with anastomosis stenosis,

while treatment of non-anastomotic strictures showed long-term effectiveness in 63% of patients. A surgical approach was required in 7.4% of transplant recipients.

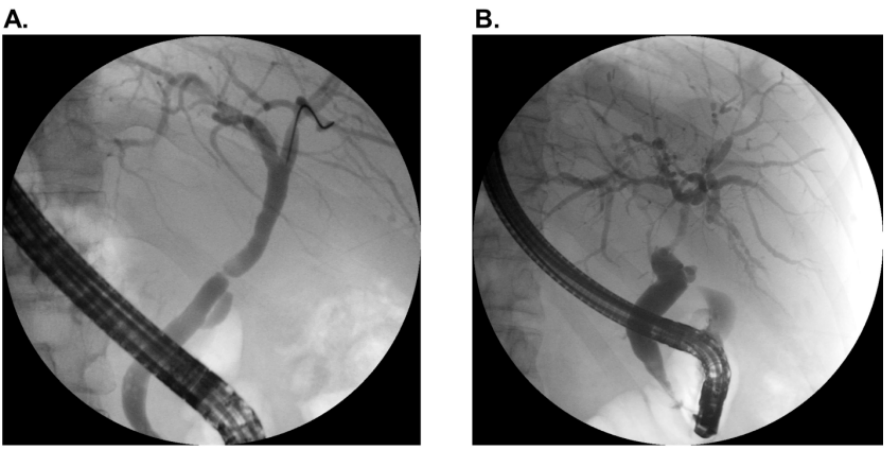


Figure 5. Biliary tract complications after liver transplantation. A. Endoscopic retrograde cholangiography (ERC) showing post-transplant short filiform anastomotic biliary stricture in a 46-year-old patient transplanted for HCV and alcohol-related cirrhosis 6 months earlier. Therapy sessions include dilatation and an increasing number of bile duct endoprostheses at short intervals of every 2-3 months. Prior to endoscopic therapy an endoscopic sphincterotomy is performed. B. ERC of a 41-year-old patient transplanted for HCV diagnosed with ischemic-type biliary lesions (type 3) with long non-anastomotic stricture extending proximally from the site of the anastomosis and strictures throughout the entire liver.

Results from 75 transplanted patients undergoing ERC for suspected anastomotic strictures were retrospectively analyzed (Zoepf 2006). Balloon dilatation alone and combined dilatation and endoprosthesis placement was efficacious in 89% and 87% of cases respectively, but recurrence occurred in 62% and 31% of cases respectively. However, results of these strategies are inconsistent in the literature. In our center, we use dilatation with or without stenting with endoscopic reassessment in anastomotic strictures. Repeated ERC sessions are commonly performed with increasing endoprosthesis diameter every three months and double or triple parallel stenting in selected cases. Up to 75% of patients are stent-free after 18 months of endoscopic intervention (Tung 1999).

In a prospective case series (n=13) we recently found an excellent safety and effectiveness of paclitaxel-coated balloons in the dilatation of symptomatic anastomotic stenoses (Kabar 2012). A sustained good clinical outcome of the intervention, defined as no further endoscopic intervention for at least 6 months, was achieved in 12/13 patients. Out of these 12 patients, one (n=9), two (n=1) or three (n=2) endoscopic interventions were necessary. The mean bilirubin level fell from 6.8 ± 4.1 mg/dl to 1.4 ± 0.9 mg/dl.

Medical treatment for bile duct strictures consists of UDCA and additional antibiotic treatment in stricture-induced cholangitis. Complications related to bilioenteric anastomosis require PTC or surgical intervention.

Metabolic bone disease

Liver cirrhosis and therapy with corticosteroids are risk factors for the development of osteoporosis. Screening with bone densitometry should therefore begin prior to LT (Wibaux 2011). A further increase in bone turnover has been described after LT and may be associated with resolution of cholestasis, increased parathormone secretion and/or CNI administration (Moreira Kulak 2010). Metabolic bone disease is therefore a common cause of morbidity after LT. Factors such as vitamin D deficiency, hypogonadism, secondary hyperparathyroidism and adverse lifestyle factors should be addressed and corrected. There are no specific therapies for post-transplant osteoporosis besides those for non-transplanted patients. General interventions to reduce fracture risk include adequate intake of calcium and vitamin D. Bisphosphonates are currently the most effective agents for treatment of post-transplant osteoporosis (Moreira Kulak 2010) (www.dv-osteologie.org). A meta-analysis and systematic review of randomised controlled trials demonstrated that bisphosphonate therapy in the first 12 months post-LT is associated with reduced accelerated bone loss and improved bone mineral density at the lumbar spine (Kasturi 2010).

Recurrent diseases after liver transplantation

Disease recurrence may occur in patients transplanted for viral hepatitis, tumor disease, autoimmune or cholestatic or alcohol-related liver diseases. With universal recurrence of HCV in all replicative patients, hepatitis C continues to pose one of the greatest challenges for preventing disease progression in the allograft.

Recurrence of hepatitis B in the allograft

Combined use of hepatitis B immunoglobulin (HBIG) and nucleos(t)ide analogs has emerged as treatment of choice in transplanted HBV recipients (Figure 6) (Yan 2006, Marzano 2005, Cai 2011) and its efficacy has been investigated extensively. HBV recurrence using combined prophylactic regimens is less than 5%. However, recurrence rates differ among various studies as most of them are small, with varying proportions of patients with active viral replication at LT and varying follow-up periods after LT. Furthermore there is a high variability (dose, duration and method of HBIG administration) in the prophylactic protocols. According to the German guidelines (Cornberg 2011) patients receive 10,000 IU HBIG intravenously (IV) in the anhepatic phase followed by 2000 IU during the first post-transplant week. For long-term HBIG prophylaxis, trough anti-HBs levels at or above 100 IU/L should be maintained. Subcutaneous (SC) HBIG application has advantages over intramuscular (IM) and IV administration (Yahyazadeh 2011, Beckebaum 2012, Beckebaum 2013c).

In an open, prospective Phase III registration trial (Yahyazadeh 2011), weekly SC injections of HBIG (BT088) were given for 18 weeks with the option of a six-week extension phase. The dosage was 500 IU/week for a bodyweight (BW) ≤75 kg or 1000 IU/week for BW >75 kg. Patients were included in the study who had so far received regular and sufficient IV HBIG reinfection prophylaxis and been transplanted for at least three months. A mean anti-HBs level of 350-400 IU/L (range 260-520 IU/L) was measured during the course of the study. No decrease in

the anti-HBs level below 100 IU/L was observed in any of the patients during the study period. Results have shown that SC administration, which can be performed by patients at home, is an important factor in improving patients' flexibility and mobility in daily life, lowering the frequency of physician consultations and avoiding adverse events attributable to high peak and low trough serum anti-HBs levels compared with IV administration. The European Commission granted a marketing authorisation valid throughout the European Union for SC HBIG in 2009 and it has been launched in the last years in many European countries.

Economic issues have led to a controversial discussion of whether indefinite passive immunisation is necessary and if nucleos(t)ide analog therapy is sufficient for antiviral prophylaxis (Naoumov 2001, Buti 2007, Neff 2007, Lo 2005, Wong 2007, Nath 2006, Yoshida 2007, Weber 2010, Karlas 2011, Angus 2007, Gane 2007, Table 5, see http://hepatologytextbook.com/link.php?id=9).

Detection of occult intrahepatic total and HBV CCC DNA has been suggested in order to enable clinicians to select a subgroup of patients in whom withdrawal of prophylaxis may be feasible. However, this method is an elaborate approach requiring sequential liver biopsies at regular intervals and is not applicable in daily practice.

Post-transplant studies have described unacceptable 2-4 year reinfection rates of approximately 25-50% with LAM monotherapy without the initial phase of HBIG therapy (Table 5) (see http://hepatologytextbook.com/link.php?id=9) (Marzano 2001, Jiao 2007, Zheng 2006).

Sixteen patients with LAM resistance who had treatment at LT with LAM plus ADV therapy were investigated (Lo 2005). Half of the patients were administered HBIG for a median of 24 months. None of them had detectable HBV DNA, 13 were HBsAg-negative, and 2 without the combined HBIG therapy maintained HBsAg-positive after a follow-up period of 7.7 and 9.5 months, respectively.

In a recently published study from Hong Kong, HBIG-free monoprophylaxis with ETV was evaluated. Only 26% of patients had undetectable HBV DNA at the time of LT. HBsAg loss occurred in 91% within 2 years post-transplant but 13% had reappearance of HBsAg and 22.5% were HBsAg-positive at the time of their last follow-up visit (Fung 2011).

The efficacy of a switch after at least 12 months of HBIG/LAM to combination therapy with an oral nucleoside and nucleotide analog was investigated (Saab 2011). Estimated HBV reinfection rate was 1.7% at 1 year after HBIG withdrawal.

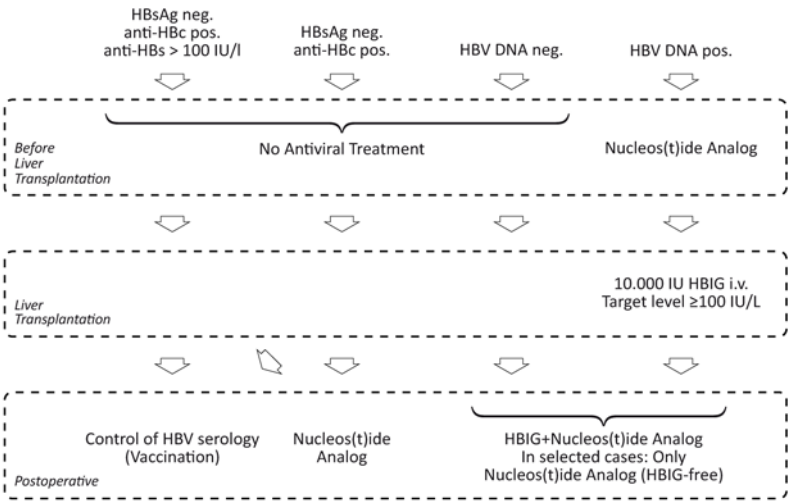


Figure 6. Prophylaxis of HBV recurrence after liver transplantation (LT). Combined use of nucleos(t)ide analog(s) and hepatitis B immunoglobulin (HBIG) is the current gold standard for prophylaxis of HBV reinfection after LT. HBIG therapy can be withdrawn in the long term after LT in selected low-risk (HbsAg-negative) cases. Those who are anti-hepatitis B core (anti-HBc)-positive and without detectable anti-hepatitis B surface (anti-HBs) titers or anti-HBs titers <100 IU/L should be vaccinated according to the German Guidelines (Cornberg 2011). In case of no or little response (anti-HBs <100 IU/L) to vaccination, lamivudine (LAM) monotherapy can be initiated. In patients who have protective anti-HBs titers of >100 IU/L, antiviral therapy is not necessary but long-term monitoring of HBV serology including anti-HBs titers is required. Neg., negative; pos., positive.

A prospective, multicentre study in which 20 HBV patients received 800 IU HBIG (IM) in the anhepatic phase and for another 7 days after transplant surgery was recently published (Gane 2013). Patients with genotypic detection of lamivudine resistance and creatinine levels $\geq$ 1.8 mg/dL were excluded. Adefovir was administered as add-on therapy to existing lamivudine treatment. Previously untreated patients received combined adefovir and lamivudine treatment, which was continued after transplantation. Serum HBsAg and anti-Hbs were measured monthly in the first 3 months, then every 3 months. HBV DNA determination was only performed annually and at the end of the follow-up observation period. HBV recurrence was defined as the reappearance of HBsAg or detection of HBV DNA. The median follow-up was 57 months (range 27–83 months). At transplantation 68% of patients had demonstrable virus replication and 26% had viral replication >4 $\log_{10}$ IU/ml. After the end of the study, another 28 HBV patients received a liver allograft. The patients (n=18) who had HBV DNA <3 $\log_{10}$ IU/ml at transplantation were given no post-transplant HBIG therapy at all. The median follow-up was 22 months (range 10–58 months). Looking at both cohorts it was shown that there was a loss of HBsAg in 47/48 patients within 8 weeks post-transplantation and in one patient within 6 months after transplantation. In one patient with recurrence of HCC, there was a transient reappearance of HBsAg in the follow-up period.

In a randomised, prospective, controlled Phase II trial, patients (n=40) received emtricitabine, TDF and HBIG for 24 weeks (Teperman 2013). Subsequently all patients who were negative for HBsAg and HBV DNA (<400 copies/ml) were randomly allocated to continue with all three drugs or to an arm with emtricitabine and TDF but without HBIG. The median period of time from LT was 3.4 years (range 1.9–5.6 years). During an observation period of 72 weeks, no HBV recurrence in terms of HBsAg or HBV DNA detection was observed in any of the patients.

HBV prophylactic post-transplant studies to date are limited, small and with short follow-up periods. Larger prospective studies are needed to see whether nucleos(t)ide analogs can be safely applied in the majority of HBV transplant patients with recurrent hepatitis B infection. Presently, withdrawal of HBIG prophylaxis and maintenanance of nuclesos(t)ide analog therapy can be considered in stable HBsAg-negative patients in the long term post-LT.

There is no rationale for continuing HBIG therapy in case of viral breakthrough with detectable HBV DNA. The choice of antiviral therapy in patients with HBV recurrence depends on the current antiviral medication, the viral load, and the resistance profile. Antiviral drug resistance can easily be established by genotypic assays that identify specific mutations known to be associated with decreased susceptibility to particular drugs.

Recurrence of hepatitis C in the allograft

The influence of HCV infection on allograft histology is highly variable. Liver injury can vary from absent or mild disease despite high viral burden to cirrhosis in the allograft (approximately 20-30% of recipients at 5-10 years of follow-up) (Rubin 2011). Patient and graft survival in HCV-infected transplant recipients is worse compared to those with other indications (Berenguer 2007, Forman 2002, Testa 2000). After a diagnosis of cirrhosis, the decompensation risk appears to be accelerated (17% and 42% at 6 and 12 months, respectively) (Berenguer 2000) and patient survival is significantly decreased (66% and 30% at 1 and 5 years, respectively) (Saab 2005). Female gender has been reported as a risk factor for advanced recurrent HCV disease and graft loss after LT (Lai 2011). Several other factors have been suggested that may accelerate HCV reinfection of the allograft (Belli 2007, Berenguer 2003, Iacob 2007, Saab 2005) (Table 6).

There are insufficient and somewhat controversial data regarding the relationship between immunosuppressive agents and clinical expression of HCV recurrence (Table 7) (Berenguer 2011). TAC and CSA do not seem to be significantly different (Berenguer 2006a, Lake 2003, Martin 2004, Berenguer 2011) with respect to their impact on the course of hepatitis C recurrence. Results from the multicenter ReViS-TC cohort study, conducted in 14 Spanish liver centres, revealed that CSA-based immunosuppression regimens may be advantageous against viral relapse after antiviral therapy as compared to TAC-based immunosuppression (ReViS-TC Study Group 2011).

Various studies have demonstrated that slowly tapering corticosteroids over time may prevent progression to severe forms of recurrent disease (Brillanti 2002, McCaughan 2003).

Table 6. Factors that may accelerate histological progression in HCV patients after liver transplantation

Donor factors	Recipient factors
Age	Surgical factors (cold/warm ischemia time)
Liver graft steatosis	Age
	Gender
	Non-caucasian race
	High viral load pre-transplant/early post-transplant
	Genotype 1b
	Muromonab-CD3
	Bolus corticosteroids
	Rapid tapering of corticosteroids

Table 7. Factors that may accelerate histological progression in HCV patients after liver transplantation

Immunosuppressive agent	Severity of HCV recurrance
Calcineurin inhibitors	No difference between cyclosporin A and tacrolimus
Bolus corticosteroids	Higher risk of fibrosis progression, increase in viral load
Azathioprine	Controversial debate
Mycophenolate mofetil	Controversial debate
Monoclonal CD3 antibodies (OKT3)	Increased risk of graft failure
Interleukin-2 receptor antibodies	No disadvantage on graft survival
mTOR inhibitors	Controversial (reduction of vs. no impact on fibrosis progression)

Induction with MMF has been associated with more severe recurrence of HCV (Berenguer 2003). Other investigators have found that MMF has no impact on patient survival, rejection, or rate of viral recurrence in HCV-infected transplant recipients based on biochemical changes and histological findings (Jain 2002). In a recent systematic review, recurrent HCV was less severe in 5/9 studies with AZA compared with 2/17 with MMF (Germani 2009). Significantly better patient survival and graft survival was shown for HCV-infected patients treated with MMF, TAC, and steroids than for patients treated only with TAC and steroids, with 4-year patient survival rates of 79.5% vs. 73.8% and 4-year graft survival rates of 74.9% vs. 69.5% (Wiesner 2005). MMF in combination with a CNI taper for 24 months had a positive effect on fibrosis progression, graft inflammation, and alanine aminotransferase levels (Bahra 2005). This may be due to the antifibrotic effects of MMF through an antiproliferative effect on myofibroblast-like cells.

Interleukin-2 receptor inhibition can be safely used in HCV transplanted patients (Togashi 2011, Klintmalm 2007, Calmus 2002) while OKT3 has shown to increase severity of HCV recurrence resulting in impaired patient and allograft survival (Rosen 1997).

Sufficient data from randomised controlled studies in HCV patients are lacking with respect to the role of mTOR inhibitors in patients and graft outcome (Samonakis 2005, Schacherer 2007, Asthana 2011). Results of one study suggest

that *de novo* SRL-based immunosuppression does not significantly affect the severity of HCV recurrence (Asthana 2011). A lower fibrosis extent and rate of progression was found among HCV transplant recipients with SRL as primary immunosuppression compared to controls with an SRL-free immunsosuppressive regimen (McKenna 2011).

Regular histological evaluation of post-transplant chronic hepatitis C in 1-year (maximum 2-year) intervals is recommendable to determine the grade of inflammation and stage of fibrosis. In particular, the biopsy result is important for therapy decision, to exclude signs of rejection prior to antiviral therapy and to determine the efficacy of antiviral therapy. In addition, there are some published as well as ongoing studies evaluating the role of non-invasive measurement of fibrosis in HCV and non-HCV transplant recipients (Cross 2011, Beckebaum 2010).

IFN α and RBV therapy may prevent the development of HCV graft cirrhosis (Hashemi 2011, Gordon 2009, Cicinnati 2007b). This treatment is however associated with more side effects and is far less effective than in the non-transplant setting. The most frequent therapeutic strategy over the last few years has been the treatment of established HCV recurrence with PEG-IFN α and ribavirin, which results in an SVR of 20-30% (Gordon 2009). Preemptive antiviral therapy (Shergill 2005, Sugawara 2004, Chalasani 2005, Bzowej 2011) has not shown superior effects compared to established HCV therapy (Berenguer 2008, Chalasani 2005, Bizollon 2005, Castells 2005, Toniutto 2005) and should only be considered in cases of rapid progression of HCV infection in the early post-transplant period. Most published studies in the transplant setting are not controlled, monocentric and/or comprise a small patient cohort (Shergill 2005, Sugawara 2004, Gane 1998, Ghalib 2000, Berenguer 2006b).

Recently published results indicate that RBV pre-treatment increased the tolerability of the antiviral treatment, and improved its efficacy in LT patients (Merli 2011).

The NS3/4 protease inhibitors telaprevir and boceprevir as components of antiviral triple therapy are metabolized primarily by cytochrome P450 CYP3A4. Coadministration with CNI, also primarily metabolised by CYP3A4, has been shown to result in increased dose-normalized CSA and TAC exposure by ~4.6-fold and ~70-fold (Garg 2011). The results of a multicenter trial including 37 LT recipients who were treated with PEG-IFN α, RBV and boceprevir (n=18) or telaprevir (n=19) for recurrent HCV infection after LT were recently published (Coilly 2014). Indication for therapy was fibrosis stage ≥F2 (83%) or fibrosing cholestatic hepatitis (16%). Eighteen patients were treatment-naive, five were relapsers; whereas 14 were non-responders to prior post-transplant dual therapy. SVR at 12 weeks after treatment discontinuation was observed in 20% and 71% of patients in the telaprevir and boceprevir groups, respectively. The overall SVR rate was 50%, and the frequency of SAEs greatly limited the efficacy of antiviral treatment.

Sofosbuvir is a new antiviral agent against HCV genotypes 1–6. It has achieved high SVR rates, has no drug-drug interactions, a high resistance barrier and a convenient once-a-day dosing schedule (Rodrıguez-Torres 2013). At the 2013 AASLD meeting, interim results were presented of an IRB-approved compassionate use protocol (eIND or expanded access protocol) with sofosbuvir (Forns 2013).

Post-transplant patients with a severe course of recurrent HCV infection including patients with fibrosing cholestatic hepatitis were treated with sofosbuvir 400 mg/day for up to 48 weeks. A total of 45 patients received ≥4 weeks of a sofosbuvir-containing regimen (36 sofosbuvir+RBV, 9 sofosbuvir+PEG-IFN/RBV; n=33, 5, 7 with genotypes 1, 3, others; mean bilirubin 6.0 mg/dL (range 0.4-25.8)). At week 4 of treatment, 78% who had reported undetectable HCV RNA levels and 2 patients who had only 12 weeks of treatment achieved SVR 12. The clinical condition of 71% of patients dramatically improved. Seven patients (16%) died after inclusion. In conclusion, this compassionate use regimen with sofosbuvir and RBV (with or without PEG-IFN) in patients with severe HCV recurrence was well-tolerated and demonstrated strong antiviral activity.

Recurrence of cholestatic liver disease and autoimmune hepatitis

Data on the frequency of recurrent cholestatic and AIH-related liver disease vary in the literature depending on the follow-up period and criteria chosen for definition of disease recurrence.

The post-transplant prognosis for PBC patients is excellent, with an approximately 80% 5-year survival reported by most large centres (Carbone 2011, Silveira 2010). It has been reported that HLA-A, -B, and -DR mismatches between the donor and the recipient decrease the risk of disease recurrence in PBC patients (Morioka 2007a, Hashimoto 2001). A recently published study reported recurrent PBC in one-third of patients at 11-13 years post-transplant (Charatcharoenwitthaya 2007). Various other studies reporting recurrent PBC are depicted in Table 8 (Jakob 2006, Liermann-Garcia 2001, Montano-Loza 2010, Hytiroglou 2008).

Diagnosis of PBC in the transplanted liver is usually more challenging than diagnosis in the native liver. Immunoglobulin M and anti-mitochondrial antibodies (AMA) often persist, and elevated cholestatic enzymes may be due to other causes of bile duct damage such as ischemic cholangiopathy or chronic ductopenic rejection. Recurrent PBC is a histological diagnosis, typically appearing as granulomatous cholangitis or duct lesions. The frequency of recurrence will be considerably underestimated if a liver biopsy is carried out only when clinical features are apparent.

Some investigators have found that CSA-based immunosuppressive therapy is associated with lower PBC recurrence rates as compared to TAC-based immunosuppression (Wong 1993, Montano-Loza 2010). However, long-term survival has been shown to be not significantly different between CSA- and TAC-treated patients (Silveira 2010). The impact of UDCA on the natural history of recurrent disease remains unknown. In the Mayo Clinic transplant cohort, 50% of recurrent PBC patients receiving UDCA showed normalization of serum alkaline phosphatase and alanine aminotransferase levels over a 36-month period compared to 22% of untreated patients (Charatcharoenwitthaya 2007). Although no significant differences in the rate of histological progression was detected between the treated and untreated subgroups, the proportion of individuals with histological progression was significantly lower in those that showed improvement of biochemical parameters regardless of treatment.

Table 8. Recurrence rates in patients transplanted for autoimmune-related or cholestatic liver disease

	Reference	Patients, n	Follow-up after liver transplantation	Recurrence rate
AIH	Duclos-Vallée 2003	17	>120 months	41%
AIH	Prados 1998	27	mean 44 months	33%
AIH	Molmenti 2002	55	median 29 months	20%
AIH	Campsen 2008	66	median 81 months	36%
AIH	Vogel 2004	28	mean 100 months	32%
PBC	Charatcharoenwitthaya 2007	154	mean 130 months	34%
PBC	Jakob 2006	100	up to 17 years	16%
PBC	Liermann-Garcia 2001	400	mean 56 months	17%
PBC	Montano-Loza 2010	108	mean 88 months	26%
PBC	Hytiroglou 2008	100	mean 44 months	16%
PSC	Cholongitas 2008	69	median 110 months	13%
PSC	Alabraba 2009	230	median 55 months	24%
PSC	Vera 2002	152	median 36 months	37%
PSC	Graziadei 1999	150	mean 54 months	20%
PSC	Goss 1997	127	mean 36 months	9%

The reported recurrence rates for PSC after LT range between 9% and 37% (Cholongitas 2008, Alabraba 2009, Vera 2002, Graziadei 1999, Goss 1997). A British LT group found significantly better recurrence-free survival rates in patients who underwent colectomy before or during LT and in those with with non-extended donor criteria allografts (Alabraba 2009).

Recurrent PSC is diagnosed by histology and/or imaging of the biliary tree and exclusion of other causes of non-anastomotic biliary strictures. Histopathological findings in PSC include fibrous cholangitis, fibro-obliterative lesions, ductopenia, and biliary fibrosis. In a study conducted by the Mayo Clinic, recurrence of PSC was defined by strict cholangiographic and histological criteria in patients with PSC, in whom other causes of bile duct strictures were absent (Graziadei 2002). However, due to the lack of a histological gold standard, the diagnosis of PSC recurrence is based primarily on cholangiographic features. Due to its responsiveness to steroid therapy, IgG4-associated cholangitis instead of suspected or recurrent PSC should be considered in patients with atypical features including history of pancreatitis.

Interestingly, despite immunosuppression, a significantly higher corticosteroid requirement was reported in the transplant compared to the non-transplant setting, with 20% of PSC patients becoming corticosteroid dependent after LT (Ho 2005). A recent study reported that maintenance steroids (>3 months) for ulcerative colitis post-LT were a risk factor for recurrent PSC (Cholongitas 2008). A Scandinavian group studied the risk of colorectal neoplasia among 439 PSC patients, 80% of whom had chronic inflammatory bowel disease prior to LT and 3% of whom had developed CIBD *de novo* (Jørgensen 2012). The median history of chronic inflammatory bowel disease was 15 years (range 0–50 years) and the follow-up period post-transplantation was 5 years (range 0–20 years). A fourth of the PSC

patients who additionally had bowel involvement developed colorectal neoplasias. This frequency was twice as high postoperatively than before LT. Patients receiving TAC and MMF had a significantly higher risk of chronic inflammatory bowel disease-associated active inflammation than patients taking CSA and azathioprine (Jørgensen 2013).

AIH recurrence has been reported in about one-third of patients within a post-transplant follow-up period of ≥5 years (Mendes 2011, Tripathi 2009, Duclos-Vallee 2003, Campsen 2008, Vogel 2004). Incidence increases over time as immunosuppression is reduced (Prados 1998). A long-term follow-up study (>10 years) by a French group found AIH recurrence in 41% of the patients. The authors recommended regular liver biopsies, because histological signs precede abnormal biochemical liver values in about one-fourth of patients (Duclos-Vallee 2003). The diagnosis of recurrent AIH may include histological features, the presence of autoantibodies, and increased gamma globulins. The majority of published studies did not confirm a post-transplant prognostic role of antibodies in patients undergoing LT for AIH. Conflicting data exist regarding the presence of specific HLA antigens that predispose patients to AIH recurrence after LT (Gonzalez-Koch 2001, Molmenti 2002). Histological signs of recurrence include interface hepatitis, lymphoplasmacytic infiltration, and/or lobular involvement. In an analysis of data from 28 patients with AIH, 5-year survival rate was not significantly different from controls with genetic liver diseases (Vogel 2004). Patients had more episodes of acute rejection though, compared to the control group.

Patients with AIH typically receive low-dose steroid therapy after LT. One transplant centre in Colorado that found that recurrence was not strongly influenced by steroid withdrawal in their cohort attempts to minimise or stop steroid therapy in AIH transplant patients (Campsen 2008).

Outcome in patients transplanted for hepatic malignancies

The results of early studies of LT for HCC were disappointing. More than 60% of patients developed tumor recurrence within the first two years post-transplant (Ringe 1989). Currently, there are recurrence rates of 10-15% in patients fulfilling the Milan criteria (Zavaglia 2005). In an analysis of predictors of survival and tumor-free survival in a cohort of 155 HCC LT recipients, histological grade of differentiation and macroscopic vascular invasion were identified as independent predictors of survival and tumor recurrence (Zavaglia 2005). Others identified MELD score >22, AFP >400 ng/mL and age >60 years as negative predictors for survival in HCC (Sotiropoulos 2008b, Jelic 2010). For patients having an indication for LT despite exceeding the Milan criteria, the use of marginal grafts or performance of LDLT has been considered as a reasonable option.

Expansion beyond the Milan criteria to University of California San Francisco (UCSF) criteria (single tumor <6.5 cm; two to three tumors, none >4.5 cm or total diameter <8 cm, no vascular invasion) or even more liberal criteria (no portal invasion, no extrahepatic disease) have been discussed widely (Sotiropoulos 2007, Silva 2011, Jelic 2010). Centers such as the San Francisco Transplant Group as well as the UCLA Transplant Group have demonstrated 5-year survival rates of 50-80% after LT for tumors beyond the Milan criteria but within UCSF criteria (Duffy 2007, Yao 2007).

Recently, the 'up to seven' criteria (7 being the sum of the size and number of tumors for any given HCC) was suggested as an approach to include additional HCC patients as transplant candidates. However, acceptance of a more liberal organ allocation policy would result in a further increase of HCC patients on the waiting list and in denying the use of these organs to other non-HCC patients.

The existence of several scoring systems in this era of LT shows on the one hand the widely held conviction of the transplant community that the well-established Milan criteria are too restrictive, not allowing many HCC patients the LT opportunity; on the other hand, this situation reflects some limitations of the existing pre-transplant radiological evaluation (Sotiropoulos 2009). Multiple reports in the radiology literature address nodule detection in cirrhotic livers by means of CT, MRI, or ultrasonography. Many of them conclude that contrast-enhanced MRI is the most sensitive technique for detecting liver nodules (Teefey 2003, Tokunaga 2012). MRI has been shown to depict only 39 of 118 HCC in cirrhosis, for an overall sensitivity of 33% (Krinsky 2002). Detection of small tumors was inadequate, with only 11 of 21 lesions (52%) between 1 and 2 cm and 3 of 72 lesions (4%) <1 cm correctly classified. The sensitivity in the series from Essen was similarly poor, 0% for tumors <1 cm and 21% for tumors between 1 and 2 cm (Sotiropoulos 2005). Similar findings have been reported (Bhartia 2003) with the conclusion that the identification rate of tumors <1 cm is still limited. The presence of microvascular invasion and, in some cases, macrovascular invasion of segmental branches can usually be determined by pathologic inspection of the explanted liver. This, together with inaccurate tumor detection, leads to upgrading of the tumor stage or the classification according to the different sorts of criteria in the post-transplant period, compared to assumed stages by radiological evaluation. More important, however, is the fact that some patients might not be given the opportunity to undergo LT on the basis of inaccurate radiological and clinical preoperative staging.

Expansion of criteria in the LDLT setting is even more challenging due to the donor risk and the risk of selection of tumors with unfavorable biology following the concept of fast-tracking (Hiatt 2005). Novel molecular biology techniques, such as genotyping for HCC, may become relevant for determining recurrence-free survival and improving patient selection, but these biomarkers can not yet be used for clinical decision making.

Recently, a satisfactory outcome and potential survival benefit were reported in studies and a meta-analysis of controlled clinical trials with SRL-based immunosuppression in patients transplanted for HCC (Kneteman 2004, Zimmerman 2008, Toso 2007, Liang 2011). These results are in line with a retrospective analysis based on the Scientific Registry of US Transplant Recipients, which included 2491 HCC LT recipients and 12,167 recipients with non-HCC diagnoses. Moreover, the SILVER Study, a large prospective randomized controlled trial, comparing SRL-containing versus SRL-free immunosuppression will provide further results and details with respect to the impact of SRL on HCC tumor recurrence (Schnitzbauer 2010b).

Neoadjuvant chemoradiation and subsequent LT has shown promising results for patients with localized, unresectable hilar cholangiocellular carcinoma (CCC) (Rea 2005, Masuoka 2011). In a recently published US study, the outcome of 38 patients who underwent LT was compared to that of 19 patients who underwent combined

radical bile duct resection with partial hepatectomy (Hong 2011). The tumor was located in the intrahepatic bile duct in 37 patients and in the hilar bile duct in 20 patients. Results demonstrated that LT combined with neoadjuvant and adjuvant therapies is superior to partial hepatectomy with adjuvant therapy. Challenges of LT attributable to neoadjuvant therapy include tissue injury from radiation therapy and vascular complications including hepatic artery thrombosis. Predictors of response to the neoadjuvant protocol prior to LT need to be determined (Heimbach 2008). Increasing age, high pre-transplant tumor marker, residual tumor size in the explant >2 cm, tumor grade, previous cholecystectomy and perineural invasion were identified as predictors of recurrence following LT (Knight 2007).

Metastatic lesions originating from neuroendocrine tumors (NET) may be hormone-producing (peptide hormones or amines) or may present as nonfunctional tumors (Frilling 2006, Lehnert 1998). They are characterized by slow growth and frequent metastasis to the liver, and their spread may be limited to the liver for protracted periods of time. Most studies in patients transplanted for NET are limited and usually restricted to small numbers of patients. A recently published analysis based on the UNOS database including patients transplanted for NET between October 1988 and January 2008 showed that long-term survival of NET patients was similar to that of patients with HCC. Excellent results can be obtained in highly selected patients and a waiting time for LT longer than 2 months (Gedaly 2011). Long-term results from prospective studies are needed to further define selection criteria for patients with NET for LT, to identify predictors for disease recurrence, and to determine the influence of the primary tumor site on patient post-transplant survival.

Recurrent alcohol abuse after liver transplantation for alcoholic liver disease

Alcoholic liver disease has become a leading indication of LT in Europe and the US. A period of abstinence from drinking alcohol of at least 6 months is widely recommended pre-transplant. A study group from France (Mathurin 2011) favoured early transplantation in severe alcoholic hepatitis as a reasonable rescue option for patients who failed to respond to conservative therapy. A lively international debate about the selection criteria in patients with alcohol-induced liver disease was sparked in 2012. It is to be hoped that standardised and validated methods for encouraging compliance prior to LT will be available in the future and more reliable prognostic factors regarding alcohol relapse can be identified. Recommendations on the management of alcohol-associated liver diseases before and after LT for clinical practice are available on the EASL website (http://www.easl.eu/clinical-practice-guideline).

Patient and graft survival is excellent in those maintaining alcohol abstinence after LT. Severe chronic alcohol consumption after LT significantly decreases the medium- and long-term survival (Pfitzmann 2007). A recent study has shown that urine ethyl glucuronide is a reliable marker for detection of alcohol relapse after LT (Staufer 2011). Studies evaluating recurrent alcohol use have reported a mean incidence of relapse in one-third of patients ranging from 10% to 50% in up to 5 years of follow-up (EASL Clinical Practical Guidelines 2012: Management of Alcoholic Liver Disease).

According to results from the European Liver Transplant Registry (ELTR), mortality and graft failure were more often related to *de novo* tumors, cardiovascular and social factors in alcoholic LT patients as compared to patients transplanted for other etiologies (Burra 2010). Many studies have assessed possible risk factors for alcoholic relapse after LT. The following factors have been identified as risks for recurrent alcohol abuse: a shorter length of abstinence before LT, more than one pre-transplant alcohol withdrawal, alcohol over-use in close relatives, younger age, and alcohol dependence (Perney 2005). Accordingly, the results from the Pittsburgh Transplant Center revealed that the prognosis regarding continued abstinence post-transplant is much more favourable for individuals with a diagnosis of abuse than for those who meet criteria for alcohol dependence (DiMartini 2008).

An Australian study identified the presence of psychiatric comorbidities, or a score higher than 3 on the High-Risk Alcoholism Relapse (HRAR) scale as factors predictive of relapse into harmful drinking (Haber 2007). A recently published study reported that poorer social support, family alcohol history, and pretransplant abstinence of ≤6 months showed significant associations with relapse (Dew 2008). However, the role of the length of pre-transplantation abstinence, the so-called "6-month rule", as predictor of post-LT abstinence is still questionable (EASL Clinical Practical Guidelines 2012: Management of Alcoholic Liver Disease). An advantage of the 6-month period of abstinence before listing is avoidance of unnecessary LT in patients who will spontaneously improve.

Experiences with liver transplantation in inherited metabolic liver diseases in adult patients

LT is regarded as an effective treatment strategy for patients with Wilson's Disease, which presents as deterioration of cirrhosis not responsive to treatment, as acute-on-chronic disease or fulminant hepatic failure (Moini 2010). LT reverses the abnormalities of copper metabolism by converting the copper kinetics from a homozygous to a heterozygous phenotype, thus providing an adequate increase of ceruloplasmin levels and a decrease of urinary copper excretion post-transplant. The King's College Hospital reported excellent long-term results after LT in patients who have undergone LT for Wilson's Disease since 1994 with 5-year patient and graft survival rates of 87.5% (Sutcliffe 2003). There are several reports in the literature indicating a reversal of neurological symptoms after LT (Martin 2008). However, the course of neurological symptoms remains unpredictable and it is still a matter of debate if LT should be considered in patients with severe neurological impairment (Pabón 2008).

Alpha-1-antitrypsin (AAT) deficiency is a common genetic reason for pediatric LT, but a rare indication in adults. The Z allele is most commonly responsible for severe deficiency and disease. LT corrects the liver disease and provides complete replacement of serum AAT activity. 567 AAT recipients who underwent LT between 1995 and 2004 were retrospectively investigated (Kemmer 2008). Results based on UNOS data revealed 1-, 3-, and 5-year patient survival rates of 89%, 85%, and 83%, respectively.

In hemochromatosis, iron depletion therapy prior to LT may be associated with a better outcome after LT and is strongly recommended (Weiss 2007). It has been reported that the survival of patients who undergo LT for hereditary hemochromatosis is markedly lower in comparison to other indications (Dar 2009, Brandhagen 2001). Reduced post-transplant survival in patients with hemochromatosis has been attributed to cardiac problems and increased infectious complications. Findings derived from the UNOS database revealed 1- and 5-year survival rates of 75% and 64% in patients with iron overload, as compared to 83% and 70% in those without iron overload (Brandhagen 2001). More recent results from patients with hemochromatosis (n=217) transplanted between 1997 and 2006 revealed excellent 1- (86.1%), 3- (80.8%), and 5-year (77.3%) patient survival rates, which were not different from those transplanted for other liver diseases (Yu 2007).

Outcome after liver transplantation for acute hepatic failure

Acute hepatic failure (AHF) accounts for 5-12% of LT activity worldwide. Drug-induced liver injury due to acetaminophen overdose is the most common cause of LT for acute liver failure in developed countries (Craig 2010, Au 2011). Other etiologies comprise idiosyncratic drugs (such as isoniazid/rifampicin, cumarins, acetaminophen, ectasy, tricyclic antidepressants), Budd-Chiari syndrome, Wilson's Disease, hepatitis A, B and E infection or autoimmune disease.

Patients with acute fulminant liver disease should be transferred to an ICU at a medical centre experienced in managing AHF, with LT capabilities. Bioartificial hepatic devices may serve as bridging therapy to native liver recovery or to LT.

Early postoperative complications in patients transplanted for AHF include sepsis, multisystem organ failure, and primary graft failure. Serum creatinine concentrations above 200 µmol/L pre-transplant, non-white race of the recipient, donor body mass index >35 kg/m^2 and recipient age >50 years have been suggested as risk factors for post-transplant mortality (Wigg 2005). Others reported that extended donor criteria rates and severe cerebral edema were associated with worse outcome (Chan 2009). The Edinburgh LT centre investigated the impact of perioperative renal dysfunction on post-transplant renal outcomes in AHF patients. They found that older age, female gender, hypertension, CSA and non-acetaminophen-induced AHF but not the severity of perioperative renal injury were predictive for the development of chronic kidney injury (Leithead 2011).

The results in patients transplanted for AHF have improved within the last decade due to the establishment of prognostic models, improved intensive care management and the option for LDLT which has a limited role in the US and Europe but plays a major role in Asia (Lo 2008). AHF was the indication for LDLT in more than 10% of the cohort reported by two Asian groups (Morioka 2007b, Lo 2004).

Available data document that survival in patients with AHF is inferior to that of recipients with non-acute indications for LT in the first year but comparable in the long-term (Chan 2009, Wigg 2005).

Conclusion

LT is challenging due to a shortage of organs and a prolonged waiting-list time. The large disparity between the number of available cadaver donor organs and recipients awaiting LT has created an ongoing debate regarding the appropriate selection criteria. The rationale of allocation systems utilizing the MELD score is to prioritize patients with severe liver dysfunction ("the sickest first"). This results in decreased waiting list mortality from 20 to 10% in the Eurotransplant region but also in a reduction of 1-year post-transplant survival by approximately 10%. A potential modification of the MELD allocation system or development of an improved prognostic scoring system incorporating donor-related factors, pre-transplant mortality and post-transplant outcome is urgently warranted to optimize organ allocation in the future.

Due to the availability of antiviral drugs, the survival of patients undergoing LT for HBV infection has dramatically improved and has become comparable to or even better than the survival of patients with non-virus-related liver diseases. HBIG-free therapeutic regimens with new promising nucleos(t)ide analog combinations are currently being investigated for their efficacy and safety as first-line therapy in clinical studies.

HCV has become a leading indication for LT in Europe and the US. There is ongoing research aiming to define host or viral factors that predict recurrence, the impact of immunosuppressive regimens, and the appropriate timepoint and dosing for antiviral therapy. The overall risk and benefit of new antiviral treatment strategies including protease inhibitors are currently being investigated in clinical studies. Preliminary results have shown drug interactions of combined CNI and protease inhibitor therapy requiring close monitoring of CNI levels. Various IFN-free regimens have shown a high antiviral effect with an excellent safety profile in immunocompetent patients and will probably replace the current IFN-based treatments also in transplanted patients in the future. Sofosbuvir, a direct-acting nucleotide polymerase inhibitor, has already shown promising results in the liver transplant setting and may become an integral part of HCV therapy, either in combination with RBV or RBV/PEG-IFN α or in interferon-free combinations. Study results have shown that CSA and TAC can be safely co-administered with sofosbuvir in transplanted patients without dose adjustment of sofosbuvir or CNI.

Data about the frequency of disease recurrence in cholestatic and autoimmune liver diseases vary in the literature. Diagnosis of disease relapse in cholestatic and autoimmune liver disease is more challenging than in the non-transplant setting. Most studies report excellent medium-term and long-term results despite limited therapeutic options for disease recurrence.

LT in HCC patients provides excellent outcomes and low recurrence rates following the Milan criteria. Expansion of transplantation criteria beyond the Milan criteria has been discussed at length. The acceptance of a more liberal organ allocation policy may result in a further increase of the proportion of patients transplanted for HCC and denying the use of these organs to other patients for whom better results may be achieved. Recent developments in genomic and proteomic approaches may allow the identification of new biomarkers for prediction of HCC recurrence.

Non-use of alcohol for ≥6 months pretransplant is widely considered the prerequisite time for listing for LT. There are few reliable predictors of relapse in alcoholic patients after LT. Survival rates in patients with alcohol-related liver disease are similar or even better when compared to the outcomes of patients who undergo transplant for other types of chronic liver disease. In contrast, survival is worse in patients with heavy alcohol consumption after LT.

The management of cardiovascular, renal, coagulopathic, cerebral and infectious complications in patients with AHF is clinically challenging. Prognostic models are helpful but not entirely accurate in predicting those who will require LT. Due to advances in intensive care medicine and surgical techniques, outcomes for patients with AHF have progressively improved over the last 2 decades.

CNI, at least at low doses, with or without other immunosuppressive drugs, have been so far the cornerstone of immunosuppressive regimens in a substantial proportion of LT patients. Much attention has been directed to reducing CNI-associated long-term complications. Cardiovascular comorbidities due to metabolic complications such as diabetes mellitus, dyslipidemia, obesity, and arterial hypertension account for 30-70% of long-term morbidity. Current trends of immunosuppressive strategies include CNI-sparing or CNI-free protocols including MMF- and/or mTOR-based immunosuppressive regimens and corticosteroid-avoidance protocols. CNI delay with induction therapy for bridging the early postoperative phase should be considered especially in patients with high MELD scores. Finally, "individually tailored immunosuppressive" protocols may optimize drug efficacy, minimise drug toxicity and improve transplant outcome.

References

Alabraba E, Nightingale P, Gunson B, et al. A re-evaluation of the risk factors for the recurrence of primary sclerosing cholangitis in liver allografts. Liver Transpl 2009;15:330-40.

Andrews PA, Emery VC, Newstead C. Summary of the British Transplantation Society Guidelines for the Prevention and Management of CMV Disease After Solid Organ Transplantation. Transplantation 2011; 92(11):1181-7

Angus PW, Strasser SI, Patterson S, et al. A randomized study to assess the safety and efficacy of adefovir dipivoxil substitution for hepatitis B immune globulin in liver transplantation patients receiving long-term low dose IM HBIG and lamivudine prophylaxis. Hepatology 2007;46:238A.

Asthana S, Toso C, Meeberg G, et al. The impact of sirolimus on hepatitis C recurrence after liver transplantation. Can J Gastroenterol 2011;25:28-34.

Au JS, Navarro VJ, Rossi S. Drug-induced liver injury - its pathophysiology and evolving diagnostic tools. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2011;34:11-20.

Bahra M, Neumann UI, Jacob D, et al. MMF and calcineurin taper in recurrent hepatitis C after liver transplantation: impact on histological course. Am J Transplant 2005;5:406-11.

Bajjoka I, Hsaiky L, Brown K, Abouljoud M. Preserving renal function in liver transplant recipients with rabbit anti-thymocyte globulin and delayed initiation of calcineurin inhibitors. Liver Transpl 2008;14:66-72.

Beavers KL, Sandler RS, Shrestha R. Donor morbidity associated with right lobectomy for living donor liver transplantation to adult recipients. Liver Transpl 2002;8:110-7.

Beckebaum S (a), Cicinnati V, Brokalaki E, Frilling A, Gerken G, Broelsch CE. CNI-sparing regimens within the liver transplant setting: experiences of a single center. Clin Transpl 2004;215-20.

Beckebaum S (b), Cicinnati VR, Broelsch CE. Future directions in immunosuppression. Transplant Proc 2004; 36:574S-6S.

Beckebaum S, Cicinnati V, Gerken G. Current concepts for prophylaxis and treatment of hepatitis B reinfection after liver transplantation. Med Klin (Munich) 2008; 103:190-7.

Beckebaum S, Sotiropoulos G, Gerken G, Cicinnati V. Hepatitis B and liver transplantation: 2008 update. Rev Med Virol 2009;19:7-29.
Beckebaum S, Iacob S, Klein CG, et al. Assessment of allograft fibrosis by transient elastography and noninvasive biomarker scoring systems in liver transplant patients. Transplantation 2010;89:983-93.
Beckebaum S, Cicinnati VR. Conversion to combined mycophenolate mofetil and low-dose calcineurin inhibitor therapy for renal dysfunction in liver transplant patients: never too late? Dig Dis Sci 2011;56:4-6.
Beckebaum S (a), Kabar I, Cicinnati VR. Hepatitis B and C in liver transplantation: new strategies to combat the enemies. Rev Med Virol 2013; 23(3):172-93.
Beckebaum S (b), Cicinnati VR, Radtke A, Kabar I. Calcineurin inhibitors in liver transplantation – still champions or threatened by serious competitors? Liver Int 2013;33(5):656-65.
Beckebaum S (c), Iacob S, Radtke A, Kabar I, Cicinnati VR. Body weight may not be sufficient for reliable estimation of subcutaneous hepatitis B immunoglobulin dose requirement. American Journal of Transplantation 2013;13:1615-16
Becker T, Foltys D, Bilbao I, et al. Patient outcomes in two steroid-free regimens using tacrolimus monotherapy after daclizumab induction and tacrolimus with mycophenolate mofetil in liver transplantation. Transplantation 2008;86:1689-94.
Belli LS, Burroughs AK, Burra P, et al. Liver Transplantation for HCV cirrhosis: improved survival in recent years and increased severity of recurrent disease in female recipients: results of a long term retrospective study. Liver Transpl 2007;13:737-40.
Bellomo R, Ronco C, Kellum JA, Mehta RL, Palevsky P. Acute renal failure - definition, outcome measures, animal models, fluid therapy and information technology needs: the Second International Consensus Conference of the Acute Dialysis Quality Initiative (ADQI) Group. Crit Care 2004;8 R204-2.
Benlloch S, Berenguer M, Prieto M, et al. De novo internal neoplasms after liver transplantation: increased risk and aggressive behavior in recent years? Am J Transplant 2004;4:596-604.
Berenguer M, Prieto M, Rayon JM, et al. Natural history of clinically compensated HCV-related graft cirrhosis after liver transplantation. Hepatology 2000;32:852-8.
Berenguer M, Crippin J, Gish R, et al. A model to predict severe HCV-related disease following liver transplantation. Hepatology 2003;38:34-41.
Berenguer M (a), Aguilera V, Prieto M, et al. Effect of calcineurin inhibitors on survival and histologic disease severity in HCV-infected liver transplant recipients. Liver Transpl 2006;12:762-7.
Berenguer M (b), Palau A, Fernandez A, et al. Efficacy, predictors of response, and potential risks associated with antiviral therapy in liver transplant recipients with recurrent hepatitis C. Liver Transpl 2006;12:1067-76.
Berenguer M. Recurrent hepatitis C: worse outcomes established, interventions still inadequate. Liver Transplantation 2007;13:641-3.
Berenguer M, Palau A, Aquilera V, Rayón JM, Juan FS, Prieto M. Clinical benefits of antiviral therapy in patients with recurrent hepatitis C following liver transplantation. Am J Transplant 2008;8:679-87.
Berenguer M. Hot topic in hepatitis C virus research: The type of immunosuppression does not matter. Liver Transplant 2011;17:S24-S28.
Berenguer M, Aguilera V, Rubin A, et al. Comparison of two non-contemporaneous HCV-liver transplant cohorts: Strategies to improve the efficacy of antiviral therapy. J Hepatol 2012; 56: 1310-6.
Bhartia B, Ward J, Guthrie JA, Robinson PJ. Hepatocellular carcinoma in cirrhotic livers: double-contrast thin-section MR imaging with pathologic correlation of explanted tissue. AJR Am J Roentgenol 2003;180:577-84.
Bizollon T, Ahmed SN, Radenne S, et al. Long term histological improvement and clearance of intrahepatic hepatitis C virus RNA following sustained viral response to interferon-ribavirin combination therapy in liver transplant patients with hepatitis C virus recurrence. Gut 2005;52:283-7.
Brandhagen DJ. Liver transplantation for hereditary hemochromatosis. Liver Transpl 2001;7:663-7.
Brillanti S, Vivarelli M, De Ruvo N, et al. Slowly tapering off steroids protects the graft against hepatitis C recurrence after liver transplantation. Liver Transpl 2002;8:884-8.

Broelsch CE, Whitington PF, Emond JC, et al. Liver transplantation in children from living related donors. Surgical techniques and results. Ann Surg 1991;214:428-37.
Buell JF, Gross TG, Woodle ES. Malignancy after transplantation.Transplantation 2005;15:S254-64.
Buis CI, Geuken E, Visser DS, Kuipers F, Haagsma EB, Verkade HJ, et al. Altered bile composition after liver transplantation is associated with the development of nonanastomotic biliary strictures. J Hepatol 2009;50:69-79.
Bundesärztekammer. Richtlinien zur Organtransplantation gem. §16 TPG. Deutsches Ärzteblatt 2008;105:A1461-4.
Burra P, Lucey MR. Liver transplantation in alcoholic patients. Transpl Int 2005;18:491-8.
Burra P, Senzolo M, Adam R, et al. Liver transplantation for alcoholic liver disease in Europe: a study from the ELTR (European Liver Transplant Registry). Am J Transplant 2010;10:138-48.
Buti M, Mas A, Prieto M, et al. Adherence to lamivudine after an early withdrawal of hepatitis B immune globulin plays an important role in the long-term prevention of hepatitis B virus recurrence. Transplantation 2007;84:650-4.
Bzowej N, Nelson DR, Terrault NA, et al. PHOENIX: A randomized controlled trial of peginterferon alfa-2a plus ribavirin as a prophylactic treatment after liver transplantation for hepatitis C virus. Liver Transpl 2011;17:528-38.
Cai CJ, Lu MQ, Chen YH, Zhao H, Li MR, Chen GH. Clinical study on prevention of HBV re-infection by entecavir after liver transplantation. Clin Transplant. Clin Transplant. 2012;26(2):208-15
Calmus Y, Scheele JR, Gonzalez-Pinto I, et al. Immunoprophylaxis with basiliximab, a chimeric anti-interleukin-2 receptor monoclonal antibody, in combination with azathioprine-containing triple therapy in liver transplant recipients. Liver Transpl 2002;8:123-31.
Campsen J , Zimmerman MA, Trotter JF, et al. Liver transplantation for autoimmune hepatitis and the success of aggressive corticosteroid withdrawal. Liver Transpl 2008;14:1281-6.
Cantarovich M, Tzimas GN, Barkun J, Deschênes M, Alpert E, Tchervenkov J. Efficacy of mycophenolate mofetil combined with very low-dose cyclosporine microemulsion in long-term liver-transplant patients with renal dysfunction. Transplantation 2003;76:98-102.
Carbone M, Neuberger J. Liver transplantation in PBC and PSC: indications and disease recurrence. Clin Res Hepatol Gastroenterol 2011;35:446-54.
Carlisle EM, Testa G. Adult to adult living related liver transplantation: Where do we currently stand? World J Gastroenterol. 2012 Dec 14;18(46):6729-36.
Caroti L, Zanazzi M, Paudice N, et al. Conversion from calcineurin inhibitors to everolimus with low-dose cyclosporine in renal transplant recipients with squamous cell carcinoma of the skin. Transplant Proc 2012;44(7):1926-27.
Castells L, Vargas V, Aleende H, et al. Combined treatment with pegylated interferon (alpha-2b) and ribavirin in the acute phase of hepatitis C virus recurrence after liver transplantation. J Hepatol 2005;43:53-9.
Chaillon A, Sirinelli A, De MA, Nicand E, d'Alteroche L, Goudeau A. Sustained virologic response with ribavirin in chronic hepatitis E virus infection in heart transplantation. J Heart Lung Transplant 2011 July;30(7):841-3.
Chalasani N, Manzarbeitia C, Ferenci P, et al. Peginterferon alfa-2a for hepatitis C after liver transplantation: two randomized, controlled trials. Hepatology 2005;41:289-98.
Chan G, Taqi A, Marotta P, et al. Long-term outcomes of emergency liver transplantation for acute liver failure. Liver Transpl. 2009 Dec;15:1696-702.
Charatcharoenwitthaya P, Pimentel S, Talwalkar, et al. Long-term survival and impact of ursodeoxycholic acid treatment for recurrent primary biliary cirrhosis after liver transplantation. Liver Transpl 2007;13:1236-45.
Choi PC, Kim HJ, Choi WH, et al. Model for end-stage liver disease, model for end-stage liver disease-sodium and Child-Turcotte-Pugh scores over time for the prediction of complications of liver cirrhosis. Liver Int 2009;29:221-6.
Cholongitas E, Shusang V, Papatheodoridis GV, et al. Risk factors for recurrence of primary sclerosing cholangitis after liver transplantation. Liver Transpl 2008;14:138-43.
Cicinnati VR (a), Yu Z, Klein CG, et al. Clinical trial: switch to combined mycophenolate mofetil and minimal dose calcineurin inhibitor in stable liver transplant patients-assessment

of renal and allograft function, cardiovascular risk factors and immune monitoring. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2007;26:1195-208.
Cicinnati V (b), Iacob S, Klein C, et al. Ribavirin with either standard or pegylated interferon to treat recurrent hepatitis C after liver transplantation. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2007;26:291-303.
Coilly A, Roche B, Botta-Fridlund D, et al. Efficacy and safety of protease inhibitors for severe hepatitis C recurrence after liver transplantation: a first multicentric experience. J Hepatol 2012; 56 Suppl.2: S21.
Coilly A, Dumortier J, Botta-Fridlund D, et al. Sustained virological response after protease inhibitor-based therapy for hepatitis C recurrence after liver transplantation: A multicentric European experience. Hepatology 2013; 58, Suppl 1: 316A.
Coilly A, Roche B, Dumortier J, et al. Safety and efficacy of protease inhibitors to treat hepatitis C after liver transplantation: A multicenter experience Journal of Hepatology 2014, 60 (1):78-86.
Cornberg M, Protzer U, Petersen J, et al. Prophyl axis, diagnosis and therapy of hepatitis B virus infection - the German guideline. Z Gastroenterol. 2011;49:871-930.
Craig DG, Ford AC, Hayes PC, Simpson KJ. Systematic review: prognostic tests of paracetamol-induced acute liver failure. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2010;31:1064-76.
Créput C, Blandin F, Deroure B, et al. Long-term effects of calcineurin inhibitor conversion to mycophenolate mofetil on renal function after liver transplantation. Liver Transpl 2007;13:1004-10.
Crippin JS, McCashland T, Terrault N, Sheiner P, Charlton MR. A pilot study of the tolerability and efficacy of antiviral therapy in hepatitis C virus-infected patients awaiting liver transplantation. Liver Transpl 2002;8:350-5.
Cross T, Jothimani D, Heneghan MA, Harrison PM. Non-invasive assessment of fibrosis in liver grafts due to hepatitis C virus recurrence. Clin Transplant 2011;25:345-51.
Curry MP, Forns X, Chung RT, et al. Pretransplant sofosbuvir and ribavirin to prevent recurrence of HCV infection after liver transplantation. Hepatology 2013;58,Suppl. 1:314A
Daly I, Jain A, Reyes J, Fung J. Mycophenolate mofetil for treatment of chronic rejection in liver allograft under tacrolimus. Transplant Proc 2002;34:1503.
Dar FS, Faraj W, Zaman MB, Bartlett A, et al. Outcome of liver transplantation in hereditary hemochromatosis. Transpl Int 2009;22:717-24.
Demetris AJ, Murase N, Lee RG, et al. Chronic rejection. A general overview of histopathology and pathophysiology with emphasis on liver, heart and intestinal allografts. Ann Transplant 1997;2:27-44.
Dew MA, DiMartini AF, Steel J, et al. Meta-analysis of risk for relapse to substance use after transplantation of the liver or other solid organs. Liver Transpl 2008;14:159-72.
Di Benedetto F, Tarantino G, Montalti R, et al. Sorafenib before liver transplantation for hepatocellular carcinoma: risk or give up. Transpl Int 2011; 24(11):e97.
DiMartini A, Dew MA, Fitzgerald MG, Fontes P. Clusters of alcohol use disorders diagnostic criteria and predictors of alcohol use after liver transplantation for alcoholic liver disease. Psychosomatics 2008;49:332-40.
Duclos-Vallée JC, Sebagh M, Rifai K, et al. A 10 year follow up study of patients transplanted for autoimmune hepatitis: histological recurrence precedes clinical and biochemical recurrence. Gut. 2003 Jun;52:893-7.
Duffy JP, Vardanian A, Benjamin E, et al. Liver transplantation criteria for hepatocellular carcinoma should be expanded: a 22-year experience with 467 patients at UCLA. Ann Surg 2007;246:502-9.
Dutkowski P, Oberkofler CE, Béchir M, et al. The model for end-stage liver disease allocation system for liver transplantation saves lives, but increases morbidity and cost: a prospective outcome analysis. Liver Transpl 2011;17:674-84.
EASL clinical practical guidelines: management of alcoholic liver disease. European Association for the Study of Liver. J Hepatol. 2012 Aug;57(2):399-420.
Eid AJ, Razonable RR. New developments in the management of cytomegalovirus infection after solid organ transplantation. Drugs 2010; 70:965-81.
Erim Y, Böttcher M, Dahmen U, Beck O, Broelsch CE, Helander A. Urinary ethyl glucuronide testing detects alcohol consumption in alcoholic liver disease patients awaiting liver transplantation. Liver Transpl 2007;13:757-61.

Euvrard S, Morelon E, Rostaing L, et al. Sirolimus and secondary skin-cancer prevention in kidney transplantation. N Engl J Med 2012;367(4):329-9.
Everson GT, Trotter J, Forman L, et al. Treatment of advanced hepatitis C with a low accelerating dosage regimen of antiviral therapy. Hepatology 2005;42:255-62.
Feng S, Goodrich NP, Bragg-Gresham JL, et al. Characteristics associated with liver graft failure: the concept of a donor risk index. Am J Transplant 2006;6:783-90.
Fevery J, Henckaerts L, Van Oirbeek R, et al. Malignancies and mortality in 200 patients with primary sclerosering cholangitis: a long-term single-centre study. Liver Int 2012 32:214-22.
Filipponi F, Callea F, Salizzoni M, et al. Double-blind comparison of hepatitis C histological recurrence rate in HCV+ liver transplant recipients given basiliximab + steroids or basiliximab + placebo, in addition to cyclosporine and azathioprine. Transplantation 2004;78:1488-95.
Finkenstedt A, Graziadei IW, Oberaigner W, et al. Extensive surveillance promotes early diagnosis and improved survival of de novo malignancies in liver transplant recipients. Am J Transplant 2009; 9:2355-61.
Fischer L, Klempnauer J, Beckebaum S et al. A randomized, controlled study to assess the conversion from calcineurin-inhibitors to everolimus after liver transplantation-PROTECT. Am J Transplant 2012;12:1855-65.
Forman LM, Lewis DJ, Berlin JA, et al. The association between hepatitis C infection and survival after orthotopic liver transplantation. Gastroenterology 2002;122:889-96.
Forns X, Fontana RJ, Moonka D, et al. Initial evaluation of the sofosbuvir compassionate use program for patients with severe recurrent HCV follow-
ing liver transplantation. Hepatology 2013; 58, Suppl.1: 732A.
Frilling A, Malago M, Weber F, et al. Liver transplantation for patients with metastatic endocrine tumors. Liver Transpl 2006;12:1089-96.
Fujiki M, Aucejo F, Kim R. General overview of neo-adjuvant therapy for hepatocellular carcinoma before liver transplantation: necessity or option? Liver Int 2011;31:1081-9.
Fung JJ, Jain A, Kwak EJ, Kusne S, Dvorchik I, Eghtesad B. De novo malignancies after liver transplantation: a major cause of late death. Liver Transpl 2001;7:S109-18.
Fung J, Cheung C, Chan SC, Yuen MF. Entecavir monotherapy is effective in suppressing hepatitis B virus after liver transplantation. Gastroenterology 2011;141:1212-9.
Gane EJ, Lo SK, Riordan SM, et al. A randomized study comparing ribavirin and interferon alfa monotherapy for hepatitis C recurrence after liver transplantation. Hepatology 1998;27:1403-7.
Gane E, Strasser SI, Patterson S, et al. A prospective study on the safety and efficacy of lamivudine and adefovir dipivoxil prophylaxis in HBsAg positive liver transplantation candidates. Hepatology 2007;46:479A.
Gane EJ, Patterson S, Strasser SI, McCaughan GW, Angus PW. Combination of lamivudine and adefovir without hepatitis B immune globulin is safe and effective prophylaxis against hepatitis B virus recurrence in hepatitis B surface antigen-positive liver transplant candidates. Liver Transpl 2013;19(3):268-74
Garcia CE, Ribeiro HB, Garcia RL, et al. Mycophenolate mofetil in stable liver transplant patients with calcineurin inhibitor-induced renal impairment: single-center experience. Transplant Proc 2003;35:1131-2.
Garg V, van Heeswijk R, Lee JE, Alves K, Nadkarni P, Luo X. Effect of telaprevir on the pharmacokinetics of cyclosporine and tacrolimus. Hepatology 2011;54:20-7.
Gedaly R, Daily MF, Davenport D, et al. Liver transplantation for the treatment of liver metastases from neuroendocrine tumors: an analysis of the UNOS database. Arch Surg 2011;146:953-8.
Germani G, Pleguezuelo M, Villamil F, et al. Azathioprine in liver transplantation: a reevaluation of its use and a comparison with mycophenolate mofetil. Am J Transplant 2009;9:1725-31.
Gerolami R, Borentain P, Raissouni F, Motte A, Solas C, Colson P. Treatment of severe acute hepatitis E by ribavirin. J Clin Virol 2011 Sept.;52(1):60-2
Ghalib R, Pandula R, Kadhim T, et al. Treatment of recurrent hepatitis C after liver transplantation with alpha-2b interferon plus ribavirin. Hepatology 2000;32:291A.

Gonwa TA, Mai ML, Melton LB, Hays SR, et al. End-stage renal disease (ESRD) after orthotopic liver transplantation (OLTX) using calcineurin-based immunotherapy: risk of development and treatment. Transplantation 2001;72:1934-9.
Gonzalez-Koch A, Czaja AJ, Carpenter HA, et al. Recurrent autoimmune hepatitis after orthotopic liver transplantation. Liver Transpl 2001;7:302-10.
Gordon FD, Kwo P, Vargas HE. Treatment of hepatitis C in liver transplant recipients. Liver Transpl 2009;15:126-35.
Goss JA, Shackleton CR, Farmer DG, et al. Orthotopic liver transplantation for primary sclerosing cholangitis. A 12-year single center experience. Ann Surg 1997;225:472-81.
Graziadei IW, Wiesner RH, Marotta PJ, et al. Long-term results of patients undergoing liver transplantation for primary sclerosing cholangitis. Hepatology 1999;30:1121-7.
Graziadei IW. Recurrence of primary sclerosing cholangitis after liver transplantation. Liver Transpl 2002;8:575-81.
Graziadei IW, Schwaighofer H, Koch R, et al. Long-term outcome of endoscopic treatment of biliary strictures after liver transplantation. Liver Transpl 2006;12:718-25.
Gu YH, Du JX, Ma ML. Sirolimus and non-melanoma skin cancer prevention after kidney transplantation: A meta-analysis. Asian Pac J Cancer Prev 2012;13(9):4335-9.
Guba M, von Breitenbuch P, Steinbauer M, et al. Rapamycin inhibits primary and metastatic tumor growth by antiangiogenesis: involvement of vascular endothelial growth factor. Nat Med 2002;8:128-35.
Haber PS, McCaughan GW. "I'll never touch it again, doctor!"-harmful drinking after liver transplantation. Hepatology 2007;46:1302-4.
Hanouneh IA, Macaron C, Lopez R. Risk of colonic neoplasia after liver transplantation for primary sclerosing cholangitis. Inflamm Bowel Dis 2012;18:269-74.
Harper SJ, Gelson W, Harper IG, Alexander GJ, Gibbs P. Switching to sirolimus-based immune suppression after liver transplantation is safe and effective: a single-center experience. Transplantation 2011;91:128-32.
Hashemi N, Araya V, Tufail K, et al. An extended treatment protocol with pegylated interferon and ribavirin for hepatitis C recurrence after liver transplantation. World J Hepatol 2011;3:198-204.
Hashimoto E, Shimada M, Noguchi S, et al. Disease recurrence after living liver transplantation for primary biliary cirrhosis: a clinical and histological follow-up study. Liver Transpl 2001;7:588-95.
Heimbach JK. Successful liver transplantation for hilar cholangiocarcinoma. Curr Opin Gastroenterol. 2008;24:384-8.
Hiatt JR, Carmody IC, Busuttil RW. Should we expand the criteria for hepatocellular carcinoma with living-donor liver transplantation?-no, never. J Hepatol 2005;43:573-7.
Hinz M, Wree A, Jochum C et al High age and low sodium urine concentration are associated with poor survival in patients with hepatorenal syndrome. Ann Hepatol 2013;12(1):92-9.
Ho GT, Seddon AJ, Therapondos G, Satsangi J,Hayes PC. The clinical course of ulcerative colitis after orthotopic liver transplantation for primary sclerosing cholangitis: further appraisal of immunosuppression post transplantation. Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2005;17:1379-85.
Hong JC, Jones CM, Duffy JP, et al. Comparative analysis of resection and liver transplantation for intrahepatic and hilar cholangiocarcinoma: a 24-year experience in a single center. Arch Surg 2011;146:683-9.
Humar A, Limaye AP, Blumberg EA, et al. Extended valganciclovir prophylaxis in D+/R- kidney transplant recipients is associated with long-term reduction in cytomegalovirus disease: two-year results of the IMPACT study Transplantation 2010; 27;90:1427-31.
Hytiroglou P, Gutierrez JA, Freni M, et al. Recurrence of primary biliary cirrhosis and development of autoimmune hepatitis after liver transplant: A blind histologic study. Hepatol Res 2009;39:577-84.
Iacob S, Cicinnati V, Hilgard P, et al. Predictors of graft and patient survival in hepatitis C virus (HCV) recipients: model to predict HCV cirrhosis after liver transplantation. Transplantation 2007;84:56-63.
Iacob S, Cicinnati VR, Dechêne A, et al. Genetic, immunological and clinical risk factors for biliary strictures following liver transplantation. Liver Int 2012;32(8):1253-61.

Iacobellis A, Siciliano M, Perri F, et al. Peginterferon alfa-2b and ribavirin in patients with hepatitis C virus and decompensated cirrhosis: a controlled study. J Hepatol 2007;46:185-8.
Jacob DA, Neumann UP, Bahra M, et al. Long-term follow-up after recurrence of primary biliary cirrhosis after liver transplantation in 100 patients. Clin Transplant 2006;20:211-20.
Jain A, Kashyap R, Demetris AJ, Eghstesad B, Pokharna R, Fung JJ. A prospective randomized trial of mycophenolate mofetil in liver transplant recipients with hepatitis C. Liver Tranpl 2002;8:47-9.
Jelic S, Sotiropoulos GC; ESMO Guidelines Working Group. Hepatocellular carcinoma: ESMO Clinical Practice Guidelines for diagnosis, treatment and follow-up. Ann Oncol 2010;21:59-64.
Jiao ZY, Jiao Z. Prophylaxis of recurrent hepatitis B in Chinese patients after liver transplantation using lamivudine combined with hepatitis B immune globulin according to the titer of antibody to hepatitis B surface antigen. Transplant Proc 2007;39:1533-6.
Jimenez C, Marques E, Manrique A, al. Incidence and risk factors of development of lung tumors after liver transplantation. Transplant Proc 2005;37:3970-2.
Jørgensen KK, Lindström L, Cvancarova M, et al. Colorectal neoplasia in patients with primary sclerosing cholangitis undergoing liver transplantation: a Nordic multicenter study. Scand J Gastroenterol 2012;47(8-9):1021-9.
Jørgensen KK, Lindström L, Cvancarova M et al. Immunosuppression after liver transplantation for primary sclerosing cholangitis influences activity of inflammatory bowel disease. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2013;11(5):517-23.
John PR, Thuluvath PJ. Outcome of patients with new-onset diabetes mellitus after liver transplantation compared with those without diabetes mellitus. Liver Transpl 2002;8:708-13.
Kabar I, Cicinnati VR, Beckebaum S, et al. Use of paclitaxel-eluting balloons for endotherapy of anastomotic strictures following liver transplantation.
Endoscopy 2012;44(12):1158-60.
Kamar N (a), Abravanel F, Selves J, et al. Influence of immunosuppressive therapy on the natural history of genotype 3 hepatitis-E virus infection after organ transplantation. Transplantation 2010.;89(3):353-60.
Kamar N (b), Rostaing L, Abravanel F,et al. Ribavirin therapy inhibits viral replication on patients with chronic hepatitis e virus infection. Gastroenterology 2010.;139(5):1612-8.
Kamar N (c) Rostaing L, Abravanel F,et al. Pegylated interferon-alpha for treating chronic hepatitis E virus infection after liver transplantation. Clin Infect Dis 2010;50(5):e30-e3.
Kamar N, Garrouste C, Haagsma EB, et al. Factors associated with chronic hepatitis in patients with hepatitis E virus infection who have received solid organ transplants. Gastroenterology 2011 May;140(5):1481-9.
Kamdar KY, Rooney CM, Heslop HE. Posttransplant lymphoproliferative disease following liver transplantation. Curr Opin Organ Transplant 2011;16:274-80.
Kapoor D, Guptan RC, Wakil SM, et al. Beneficial effects of lamivudine in hepatitis B virus-related decompensated cirrhosis. J Hepatol 2000;33:308-12.
Karlas T, Hartmann J, Weimann A, et al. Prevention of lamivudine-resistant hepatitis B recurrence after liver transplantation with entecavir plus tenofovir combination therapy and perioperative hepatitis B immunoglobulin only. Transpl Infect Dis 2011;13:299-302.
Kasturi KS, Chennareddygari S, Mummadi RR. Effect of bisphosphonates on bone mineral density in liver transplant patients: a meta-analysis and systematic review of randomized controlled trials. Transpl Int 2010;23(2):200-7.
Kawahara T, Asthana S, Kneteman NM. m-TOR inhibitors: What role in liver transplantation? J Hepatol 2011; Jul 23. [Epub ahead of print].
Kawasaki S, Makuuchi M, Matsunami H, et al. Living related liver transplantation in adults. Ann Surg 1998;227:269-74.
Kemmer N, Kaiser T, Zacharias V, Neff GW. Alpha-1-antitrypsin deficiency: outcomes after liver transplantation. Transplant Proc 2008;40:1492-4.

Khalaf H, Alsuhaibani H, Al-Sugair A et al. Use of yttrium-90 microsphere radioembolization of hepatocellular carcinoma as downstaging and bridge before liver transplantation: a case report. Transplant Proc 2010;42:994-8.
Klintmalm GB, Washburn WK, Rudich SM, et al. Corticosteroid-free immunosuppression with daclizumab in HCV(+) liver transplant recipients: 1-year interim results of the HCV-3 study. Liver Transpl 2007;13:1521-31.
Kneteman NM, Oberholzer J, Al Saghier M, et al. Sirolimus-based immunosuppression for liver transplantation in the presence of extended criteria for hepatocellular carcinoma. Liver Transpl 2004;10:1301-11.
Knight SR, Friend PJ, Morris PJ. Role of transplantation in the management of hepatic malignancy. Br J Surg 2007;94:1319-30.
Konrad T, Steinmüller T, Vicini P, et al. Regulation of glucose tolerance in patients after liver transplantation: impact of cyclosporin versus tacrolimus therapy. Transplantation 2000;69: 2072-8.
Kotton CN, Kumar D, Caliendo AM, et al. Updated international consensus guidelines on the management of cytomegalovirus in solid-organ transplantation. Transplantation Society International CMV Consensus Group. Transplantation 2013;96(4):333-60.
Krinsky GA, Lee VS, Theise ND, et al. Transplantation for hepatocellular carcinoma and cirrhosis: sensitivity of magnetic resonance imaging. Liver Transpl 2002;8:1156-64.
Kwo P, Ghabril M, Lacerda M, et al. Use of telaprevir plus PEG interferon/ribavirin for null responders post OLT with advanced fibrosis/cholestatic hepatitis C. J Hepatol 2012; 56 Suppl.2: S86.
Lai JC, Verna EC, Brown RS Jr, et al. Hepatitis C virus-infected women have a higher risk of advanced fibrosis and graft loss after liver transplantation than men. Hepatology 2011;54:418-24.
Lake JR. The role of immunosuppression in recurrence of hepatitis C. Liver Transpl 2003;9:S63-6.
Lange CM, Bojunga J, Hofmann WP, et al. Severe lactic acidosis during treatment of chronic hepatitis B with entecavir in patients with impaired liver function. Hepatology 2009; 50:2001-6.
Legrand-Abravanel F, Kamar N, Sandres-Saune K, Garrouste C, Dubois M, Mansuy JM, Muscari F, Sallusto F, Rostaing L, Izopet J. Characteristics of autochthonous hepatitis E virus infection in solid-organ transplant recipients in France. J Infect Dis 2010;202(6):835-44.
Lehnert T. Liver transplantation for metastatic neuroendocrine carcinoma: an analysis of 103 patients. Transplantation 1998;66:1307-12.
Leithead JA, Ferguson JW, Bates CM, Davidson JS, Simpson KJ, Hayes PC. Chronic kidney disease after liver transplantation for acute liver failure is not associated with perioperative renal dysfunction. Am J Transplant 2011;11:1905-15.
Lerut J, Bonaccorsi-Riani E, Finet P, Gianello P. Minimization of steroids in liver transplantation. Transpl Int 2009; 22:2-19.
Levitsky J, Thudi K, Ison MG, Wang E, Abecassis M. Alemtuzumab induction in non-hepatitis C positive liver transplant recipients. Liver Transpl 2011;17:32-7.
Liang W, Wang D, Ling X, et al. Sirolimus-based immunosuppression in liver transplantation for hepatocellular carcinoma: A meta-analysis. Liver Transpl 2012;18(1):62-9.
Liermann Garcia RF, Evangelista Garcia C, McMaster P, Neuberger J. Transplantation for primary biliary cirrhosis: retrospective analysis of 400 patients in a single center. Hepatology 2001;33:22-7.
Liu X, Ling Z, Li L, Ruan B. Invasive fungal infections in liver transplantation. Int J Infect Dis 2011;15:e298-304.
Llado L, Fabregat J, Castellote J, et al. Impact of immunosuppression without steroids on rejection and hepatitis C virus evolution after liver transplantation: results of a prospective randomized study. Liver Transpl 2008;14:1752-60.
Lo CM, Fan ST, Liu CL, et al. Lessons learned from one hundred right lobe living donor liver transplants. Ann Surg 2004;240:151-8.
Lo CM, Liu CL, Lau GK, Chan SC, Ng IO, Fan ST. Liver transplantation for chronic hepatitis B with lamivudine-resistant YMDD mutant using add-on adefovir dipivoxil plus lamivudine. Liver Transpl 2005;11:807-13.

Lo CM. Liver transplantation for acute liver failure: not too early but never too late. Liver Transpl 2008 Sep;14:1243-4.
Lu DS, Siripongsakun S, Lee JK et al. Complete tumor encapsulation on MRI: A potentially useful imaging biomarker for better survival in solitary large hepatocellular carcinoma. Liver Transpl 2012; Dec 24. doi: 10.1002/lt.23597.
Mallet V, Nicand E, Sultanik P, Chakvetadze C, Tesse S, Thervet E, Mouthon L, Sogni P, Pol S. Brief communication: case reports of ribavirin treatment for chronic hepatitis E. Ann Intern Med 2010;153(2):85-9.
Marsh JW, Finkelstein SD, Demetris AJ, et al. Genotyping of hepatocellular carcinoma in liver transplant recipients adds predictive power for determining recurrence-free survival. Liver Transpl 2003:9:664-71.
Martin AP, Bartels M, Redlich J, Hauss J, Fangmann J. A single center experience with liver transplantation for Wilson's disease. Clin Transplant 2008;22:216-21.
Martin P, Busuttil RW, Goldstein RM, et al. Impact of tacrolimus versus cyclosporine in hepatitis C virus-infected liver transplant recipients on recurrent hepatitis: a prospective, randomized trial. Liver Transpl 2004;10:1258-62.
Marzano A, Salizzoni M, Debernardi-Venon W, et al. Prevention of hepatitis B virus recurrence after liver transplantation in cirrhotic patients treated with lamivudine and passive immunoprophylaxis. J Hepatol 2001;34:903-10.
Marzano A, Lampertico P, Mazzaferro V, et al. Prophylaxis of hepatitis B virus recurrence after liver transplantation in carriers of lamivudine-resistant mutants. Liver Transpl 2005; 11:532-8.
Masetti M, Montalti R, Rompianesi G, et al. Early withdrawal of calcineurin inhibitors and everolimus monotherapy in de novo liver transplant recipients preserves renal function. Am J Transplant 2010;10:2252-62.
Massie AB, Caffo B, Gentry SE, Hall EC. MELD Exceptions and Rates of Waiting List Outcomes. Am J Transplant 2011;11:2362-71.
Masuoka HC, Rosen CB. Transplantation for cholangiocarcinoma. Clin Liver Dis 2011;15:699-715.
Mathurin P, Moreno C, Samuel D, et al. Early liver transplantation for severe alcoholic hepatitis. N Engl J Med 2011;365(19):1790-1800.
McCaughan GW, Zekry A. Impact of immunosuppression on immunopathogenesis of liver damage in hepatitis C virus-infected recipients following liver transplantation. Liver Transpl 2003;9:S21-7.
McKenna GJ, Trotter JF, Klintmalm E. Limiting hepatitis C virus progression in liver transplant recipients using sirolimus-based immunosuppression. Am J Transplant 2011;11:2379-87.
Memon K, Lewandowski RJ, Riaz A, Salem R. Yttrium 90 microspheres for the treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma. Recent Results Cancer Res 2013;190:207-24.
Mendes F, Couto CA, Levy C. Recurrent and de novo autoimmune liver diseases. Clin Liver Dis. 2011;15:859-78.
Merion RM, Schaubel DE, Dykstra DM, et al. The survival benefit of liver transplantation. Am J Transplant 2005;5:307-13.
Merli M, Giannelli V, Gentili F, et al. Ribavirin priming improves the virological response to antiviral treatment in transplanted patients with recurrent hepatitis C: a pilot study. Antivir Ther 2011;16:879-85.
Modified Guidelines of the German Medical Association for organ transplantation 2012 available in: Richtlinien der Bundesärztekammer zur Organtransplantation gemäß §16 Abs.1 S.1 Nrn. 2 und 5 TPG. Deutsches Ärzteblatt 2012;109 (Heft 1-2):A60 (51).
Moini M, Mistry P, Schilsky ML. Liver transplantation for inherited metabolic disorders of the liver. Curr Opin Organ Transplant 2010;15:269-76.
Molmenti EP, Netto GJ, Murray NG, et al. Incidence and recurrence of autoimmune/alloimmune hepatitis in liver transplant recipients. Liver Transpl 2002;8:519-26.
Montano-Loza AJ, Wasilenko S, Bintner J, Mason AL. Cyclosporine A protects against primary biliary cirrhosis recurrence after liver transplantation. Am J Transplant 2010;10:852-8.
Moreira Kulak CA, Cochenski B, Borba VZ, Kulak J, et al. Post-transplantation osteoporosis. Arq Bras Endocrinol Metab 2010;54:143-9.

Moreno Planas JM, Cuervas-Mons Martinez V, Rubio Gonzalez E, et al. Mycophenolate mofetil can be used as monotherapy late after liver transplantation. Am J Transplant 2004;4:1650-5.
Morioka D (a), Egawa H, Kasahara M, et al. Impact of human leukocyte antigen mismatching on outcomes of living donor liver transplantation for primary biliary cirrhosis. Liver Transpl 2007;13:80-90.
Morioka D (b), Egawa H, Kasahara M, et al. Outcomes of adult-to-adult living donor liver transplantation. A single institution`s experience with 335 consecutive cases. Ann Surg 2007;245:315-25.
Naoumov NV, Lopes AR, Burra P, et al. Randomized trial of lamivudine versus hepatitis B immunoglobulin for long-term prophylaxis of hepatitis B recurrence after liver transplantation. J Hepatol 2001;34:888-94.
Nath DS, Kalis A, Nelson S, Payne WD, Lake JR, Humar A. Hepatitis B prophylaxis post-liver transplant without maintenance hepatitis B immunoglobulin therapy. Clin Transplant 2006;20:206-10.
Neff GW, Kemmer N, Kaiser TE, et al. Combination therapy in liver transplant recipients with hepatitis B virus without hepatitis B immune globulin. Dig Dis Sci 2007;52:2497-500.
Neuberger J. Incidence, timing, and risk factors for acute and chronic rejection. Liver Transpl Surg 1999;5:S30-6.
Nikolaidis N, Vassiliadis T, Giouleme O, et al. Effect of lamivudine treatment in patients with decompensated cirrhosis due to anti-HBe positive/HBeAg-negative chronic hepatitis B. Clin Transplant 2005;19:321-6.
Pabón V, Dumortier J, Gincul R, et al. Long-term results of liver transplantation for Wilson's disease. Gastroenterol Clin Biol 2008;32:378-81.
Pascher A, Sauer IM, Walter M, et al. Donor evaluation, donor risks, donor outcome, and donor quality of life in adult-to-adult living donor liver transplantation. Liver Transpl 2002;8:829-37.
Pascher A, Neuhaus P. Bile duct complications after liver transplantation. Transpl Int 2005;18:627-42.
Patel S, Orlaoff M, Tsoulfas G, et al. Living donor liver transplantation in the United States: identifying donors at risk for perioperative complications. Am J Transplant 2007;7:2344-9.
Paya C, Humar A, Dominguez E, et al. Efficacy and safety of valganciclovir vs. oral ganciclovir for prevention of cytomegalovirus disease in solid organ transplant recipients. Am J Transplant 2004;4:611-20.
Perkins JD. Biliary tract complications: The most common postoperative complication in living liver donors. Liver Transpl 2008:14:1372-7.
Perney P, Bismuth M, Sigaud H, et al. Are preoperative patterns of alcohol consumption predictive of relapse after liver transplantation for alcoholic liver disease? Transpl Int 2005;18:1292-7.
Pfitzmann R, Schwenzer J, Rayes N, Seehofer D, Neuhaus R, Nüssler NC. Long-term survival and predictors of relapse after orthotopic liver transplantation for alcoholic liver disease. Liver Transpl 2007;13:197-205.
Picciotto FP, Tritto G, Lanza AG, et al. Sustained virological response to antiviral therapy reduces mortality in HCV reinfection after liver transplantation. J Hepatol 2007:46:459-65.
Pischke S, Suneetha PV, Baechlein C, et al. Hepatitis E virus infection as a cause of graft hepatitis in liver transplant recipients. Liver Transpl 2010 Jan.;16(1):74-82.
Pomfret EA, Washburn K, Wald C et al. Report of a national conference on liver allocation in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma in the United States. Liver Transpl. 2010;16:262-78.
Prados E, Cuervas-Mons V, de la Mata M, et al. Outcome of autoimmune hepatitis after liver transplantation. Transplantation 1998;66:1645-50.
Qin YS, Li ZS, Sun ZX, Wu RP, Wang N, Yao YZ. Endoscopic management of biliary complications after orthotopic liver transplantation. Hepatobiliary Pancreat Dis Int 2006;5:39-42.
Qiu J, Ozawa M, Terasaki PI. Liver transplantation in the United States. Clin Transpl 2005:17-28.

Quintini C, Hashimoto K, Uso TD, Miller C. Is there an advantage of living over deceased donation in liver transplantation? Transpl Int 2013;26:11-9.
Radunz S, Juntermanns B, Kaiser GM et al. Efficacy and safety of linezolid in liver transplant patients. Transpl Infect Dis 2011;13:353-8.
Raimondo ML, Dagher L, Papatheodoridis GV, et al. Long-term mycophenolate mofetil monotherapy in combination with calcineurin inhibitors for chronic renal dysfunction after liver transplantation. Transplantation 2003;75:186-90.
Razonable RR, Zerr DM and the AST Infectious Diseases Community of Practice. HHV-6, HHV-7 and HHV-8 in Solid Organ Transplant Recipients. Am J Transplant 2009; 9 S97-S103.
Rea DJ, Heimbach JK, Rosen CB. Liver transplantation with neoadjuvant chemoradiation is more effective than resection for hilar cholangiocarcinoma. Ann Surg 2005;242:451-8.
ReViS-TC Study Group. Cyclosporine a-based immunosuppression reduces relapse rate after antiviral therapy in transplanted patients with hepatitis C virus infection: a large multicenter cohort study. Transplantation 2011;92:334-40.
Ringe B, Wittekind C, Bechstein WO, et al. The role of liver transplantation in hepatobiliary malignancy. A retrospective analysis of 95 patients with particular regard to tumor stage and recurrence. Ann Surg 1989;209:88-98.
Roayie K, Feng S. Allocation policy for hepatocellular carcinoma in the MELD era: room for improvement? Liver Transpl 2007;13:S36-43.
Ridruejo E, Silva MO. Safety of long-term nucleos(t)ide treatment in chronic hepatitis B. Expert Opin Drug Saf 2012; 11: 357-60.
Rodriguez-Torres M. Sofosbuvir (GS-7977), a pan-genotype, direct-acting antiviral for hepatitis C virus infection. Expert Rev Anti Infect Ther 2013; 11(12): 1269-79.
Rosen HR, Shackleton CR, Higa L, et al. Use of OKT3 is associated with early and severe recurrence of hepatitis C after liver transplantation. Am J Gastroenterol 1997;92:1453-7.
Rubín A, Aguilera V, Berenguer M. Liver transplantation and hepatitis C. Clin Res Hepatol Gastroenterol 2011 [Epub ahead of print].
Rudraraju M, Osowo AT, Singh V, Carey EJ. Do patients need more frequent colonoscopic surveillance after liver transplantation? Transplant Proc 2008;40:1522-4.
Saab S, Niho H, Comulada S, et al. Mortality predictors in liver transplant recipients with recurrent hepatitis C cirrhosis. Liver Int 2005;25:940-5.
Saab S, Desai S, Tsaoi D, et al. Posttransplantation hepatitis B prophylaxis with combination oral nucleoside and nucleotide analog therapy. Am J Transplant 2011;11:511-7.
Saliba F (a), Dharancy S, Lorho R, et al. Conversion to everolimus in maintenance liver transplant patients: a multicenter, retrospective analysis. Liver Transpl 2011;17:905-13.
Saliba F (b), De Simone P, Nevens F et al. Efficacy and safety of everolimus with early reduction or elimination of tacrolimus in 719 de novo liver transplant recipients: 12 month results of a randomized, controlled study. Am J Transplant. 2012;12(11):3008-20.
Samonakis DN, Cholongitas E, Triantos CK, et al. Sustained, spontaneous disappearance of serum-HCV under immunosuppression after liver transplantation for hepatitis C cirrhosis. J Hepatol 2005;43:1091-3.
Sanchez EQ, Martin AP, Ikegami T, et al. Sirolimus conversion after liver transplantation: improvement in measured glomerular filtration rate after 2 years. Transplant Proc 2005;37:4416-23.
Saner FH, Cicinnati VR, Sotiropoulos G, Beckebaum S. Strategies to prevent or reduce acute and chronic kidney injury in liver transplantation. Liver Int 2011;. [Epub ahead of print].
Schacherer D, Zeitoun M, Buttner R, et al. Sirolimus-induced drug fever and ciclosporin-induced leukencephalopathia with seizures in one liver transplant recipient. World J Gastroenterol 2007;13:6090-3.
Schiff E, Lai CL, Hadziyannis S, et al. Adefovir dipivoxil for wait-listed and post-liver transplantation patients with lamivudine-resistant hepatitis B: final long-term results. Liver Transpl 2007;13:349-60.

Schlitt HJ, Loss M, Scherer M, et al. Current developments in liver transplantation in Germany: MELD-based organ allocation and incentives for transplant centres. Z Gastroenterol 2011;49: 30-8. PMID 21225535.

Schmeding M, Kiessling A, Neuhaus R et al. Mycophenolate mofetil monotherapy in liver transplantation: 5-year follow-up of a prospective randomized trial. Transplantation 2011;92:923-9.

Schnitzbauer AA (a), Scherer MN, Rochon J, et al. Study protocol: a pilot study to determine the safety and efficacy of induction-therapy, de novo MPA and delayed mTOR-inhibition in liver transplant recipients with impaired renal function. PATRON-study. BMC Nephrol 2010;11:24.

Schnitzbauer AA (b), Zuelke C, Graeb C, et al. A prospective randomised, open-labeled, trial comparing sirolimus-containing versus mTOR-inhibitor-free immunosuppression in patients undergoing liver transplantation for hepatocellular carcinoma. BMC Cancer 2010;10:190.

Sharma P, Schaubel DE, Messersmith EE, Guidinger MK, Merion RM. Factors that affect deceased donor liver transplantation rates in the United States in addition to the model for end-stage liver disease score. Liver Transpl. 2012;18:1456-63.

Shergill AK, Khalili M, Straley S, et al. Applicability, tolerability, and efficacy of preemptive antiviral therapy in hepatitis C infected patients undergoing liver transplantation. Am J Transplant 2005;5:118-24.

Silva MF, Sherman M. Criteria for liver transplantation for HCC: What should the limits be? J Hepatol 2011;55:1137-47.

Silveira MG, Talwalkar JA, Lindor KD, Wiesner RH. Recurrent primary biliary cirrhosis after liver transplantation. Am J Transplant 2010;10:720-6.

Smets F, Sokal EM. Epstein-Barr virus-related lymphoproliferation in children after liver transplant: role of immunity, diagnosis, and management. Pediatr Transplant 2002;6:280-7.

Soliman T, Hetz H, Burghuber C. Short-term induction therapy with anti-thymocyte globulin and delayed use of calcineurin inhibitors in orthotopic liver transplantation. Liver Transpl 2007;13:1039-44.

Sotiropoulos GC, Malago M, Molmenti E, et al. Liver transplantation for hepatocellular carcinoma in cirrhosis: is clinical tumor classification before transplantation realistic? Transplantation 2005;79:483-7.

Sotiropoulos GC, Molmanti EP, Lösch C, Beckebaum S, Brolesch CE, Lang H. Meta-analysis of tumor recurrence after liver transplantation for hepatocellular carcinoma based on 1,198 cases. Eur J Med Res 2007;12:527-34.

Sotiropoulos CG (a), Beckebaum S, Lang H, et al. Single-center experience on liver transplantation for hepatocellular carcinoma arising in alcoholic cirrhosis: results and ethical issues. Eur Surg Res 2008;40:7-13.

Sotiropoulos GC (b), Lang H, Sgourakis G, et al. Liberal policy in living donor liver transplantation for hepatocellular carcinoma: Lessons learned. Dig Dis Sci 2008. [Epub ahead of print].

Sotiropoulos GC, Molmenti EP, Lang H. Milan criteria, up-to-seven criteria, and the illusion of a rescue package for patients with liver cancer. Lancet Oncol 2009;10:207-8.

Staufer K, Andresen H, Vettorazzi E, et al. Urinary ethyl glucuronide as a novel screening tool in patients pre and post liver transplantation improves detection of alcohol consumption. Hepatology 2011;54(5):1640-9 .

Sugawara Y, Makuuchi M. Technical advances in living-related liver transplantation. J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Surg 1999;6:245-53.

Sugawara Y, Makuuchi M, Matsui Y, et al. Preemptive therapy for hepatitis C virus after living-donor liver transplantation. Transplantation 2004;78:1308-11.

Sugawara Y, Makuuchi M. Living donor liver transplantation: present status and recent advances. Br Med Bull 2005;75-76:15-28.

Sutcliffe RP, Maguire DD, Muiesan P, et al. Liver transplantation for Wilson's disease: long-term results and quality-of-life assessment. Transplantation 2003;75:1003-6.

Sylvestre PB, Batts KP, Burgart LJ, Poterucha JJ, Wiesner RH. Recurrence of primary biliary cirrhosis after liver transplantation: Histologic estimate of incidence and natural history. Liver Transpl 2003;9:1086-93.

Teefey SA, Hildeboldt CC, Dehdashti F, et al. Detection of primary hepatic malignancy in liver transplant candidates: prospective comparison of CT, MR imaging, US, and PET. Radiology 2003;226:533-42.
Teperman LW, Poordad F, Bzowej N, et al. Randomized trial of emtricitabine/tenofovir disoproxil fumarate after hepatitis B immunoglobulin withdrawal after liver transplantation. Liver Transpl. 2013;19(6):594-601.
Testa G, Crippin JS, Netto GJ, et al. Liver transplantation for hepatitis C: recurrence and disease progression in 300 patients. Liver Transpl 2000;6:553-61.
Togashi J, Sugawara Y, Tamura S, et al. Basiliximab as therapy for acute rejection after liver transplantation for hepatitis C virus cirrhosis. Biosci Trends 2011;5:57-60.
Tokunaga S, Koda M, Matono T, Assessment of ablative margin by MRI with ferucarbotran in radiofrequency ablation for liver cancer: comparison with enhanced CT. Br J Radiol 2012;85:745-52.
Toniutto P, Fabris C, Fumo E, et al. Pegylated versus standard interferon-alpha in antiviral regimens for post-transplant recurrent hepatitis C: comparison of tolerability and efficacy. J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2005;20:577-82.
Toso C, Meeberg GA, Bigam DL, et al. De novo sirolimus-based immunosuppression after liver transplantation for hepatocellular carcinoma: long-term outcomes and side effects. Transplantation 2007;83:1162-8.
Toso C, Mentha G, Kneteman NM, Majno P. The place of downstaging for hepatocellular carcinoma. J Hepatol 2010;52:930-6.
Tournoux-Facon C, Paoletti X, Barbare JC, et al. Development and validation of a new prognostic score of death for patients with hepatocellular carcinoma in palliative setting. J Hepatol 2011;54:108-14.
Triantos C, Samonakis D, Stigliano R, Thalheimer U, Patch D, Burroughs A. Liver transplantation and hepatitis C virus: systematic review of antiviral therapy. Transplantation 2005;79:261-8.
Tripathi D, Neuberger J. Autoimmune hepatitis and liver transplantation: indications, results, and management of recurrent disease. Semin Liver Dis 2009;29:286-96.
Tung BY, Kimmey MB. Biliary complications of orthotopic liver transplantation. Dig Dis 1999;17:133-44.
Ulrich C, Degen A, Patel MJ, Stockfleth. Sunscreens in organ transplant patients. Nephrol Dial Transplant 2008;23:1805-8.
Vagefi PA, Ascher NL, Freise CE, Dodge JL, Roberts JP. The use of living donor liver transplantation varies with the availability of deceased donor liver transplantation. Liver Transpl 2012;18(2):160-5 .
Valentin-Gamazo C, Malago M, Karliova M, et al. Experience after the evaluation of 700 potential donors for living donor liver transplantation in a single center. Liver Transpl 2004; 10: 1087-96.
Vallejo GH, Romero CJ, de Vicente JC. Incidence and risk factors for cancer after liver transplantation.Crit Rev Oncol Hematol 2005;56:87-99.
Vera A, Moledina S, Gunson B, et al. Risk factors for recurrence of primary sclerosing cholangitis of liver allograft. Lancet 2002;360:1943-4.
Verdonk RC, Buis CI, van der Jagt EJ, et al. Nonanastomotic biliary strictures after liver transplantation, part 2: Management, outcome, and risk factors for disease progression. Liver Transpl 2007;13:725-32.
Vitale A, Bertacco A, Gambato M et al. Model for end-stage liver disease-sodium and survival benefit in liver transplantation. Transpl Int 2012.
Vogel A, Heinrich E, Bahr MJ, et al. Long-term outcome of liver transplantation for autoimmune hepatitis. Clin Transplant 2004;18:62-9.
Washington K. Update on post-liver transplantation infections, malignancies, and surgical complications. Adv Anat Pathol 2005;12:221-6.
Weber NK, Forman LM, Trotter JF. HBIg discontinuation with maintenance oral anti-viral herapy and HBV vaccination in liver transplant recipients. Dig Dis Sci 2010;55:505-9.
Weiss KH, Gotthardt D, Schmidt J, et al. Liver transplantation for metabolic liver diseases in adults: indications and outcome. Nephrol Dial Transplant 2007;22, Suppl 8:viii9-12.
Weismüller TJ, Prokein J, Becker T, et al. Prediction of survival after liver transplantation by pre-transplant parameters. Scand J Gastroenterol 2008;43:736-46.

Wibaux C, Legroux-Gerot I, Dharancy S, et al. Assessing bone status in patients awaiting liver transplantation. Joint Bone Spine 2011; 78:387-91.
Wiesner RH, Shorr JS, Steffen BJ, Chu AH, Gordon RD, Lake JR. Mycophenolate mofetil combination therapy improves long-term outcomes after liver transplantation in patients with and without hepatitis C. Liver Transpl 2005;11:750-9.
Wigg AJ, Gunson BK, Mutimer DJ. Outcomes following liver transplantation for seronegative acute liver failure: experience during a 12-year period with more than 100 patients. Liver Transpl 2005;11:27-34.
Wong PY, Portmann B, O'Grady JG, et al. Recurrence of primary biliary cirrhosis after liver transplantation following FK506-based immunosuppression. J Hepatol 1993;17:284-7.
Wong SN, Chu CJ, Wai CT, et al. Low risk of hepatitis B virus recurrence after withdrawal of long-term hepatitis B immunoglobulin patients receiving maintenance nucleos(t)ide analogue therapy. Liver Transpl 2007;13:374-81.
Yahyazadeh A, Beckebaum S, Cicinnati V, et al. Efficacy and safety of subcutaneous human HBV-immunoglobulin (Zutectra) in liver transplantation: an open, prospective, single-arm phase III study. Transpl Int 2011;24:441-50.
Yan ML, Yan LN, Li B, et al. Intramuscular hepatitis B immune globulin combined with lamivudine in prevention of hepatitis B recurrence after liver transplantation. Hepatobiliary Pancreat Dis Int 2006;5:360-3.
Yao FY, Xiao L, Bass NM, Kerlan R, Ascher NL, Roberts JP. Liver transplantation for hepatocellular carcinoma: validation of the UCSF-expanded criteria based on preoperative imaging. Am J Transpl 2007;7:2587-96.
Yoshida H, Kato T, Levi DM, et al. Lamivudine monoprophylaxis for liver transplant recipients with non-replicating hepatitis B virus infection. Clin Transplant 2007;21:166-71.
Yoshida EM, Marotta PJ, Greig PD, et al. Evaluation of renal function in liver transplant recipients receiving daclizumab (Zenapax), mycophenolate mofetil, and a delayed, low-dose tacrolimus regimen vs. a standard-dose tacrolimus and mycophenolate mofetil regimen: a multicenter randomized clinical trial. Liver Transpl 2005;11:1064-72.
Yu L, Ioannou GN. Survival of liver transplant recipients with hemochromatosis in the United States. Gastroenterology 2007;133:489-95.
Zavaglia C, De Carlis L, Alberti AB, et al. Predictors of long term survival after liver transplantation for hepatocellular carcinoma. Am J Gastroenterol 2005;100:2708-16.
Zheng S, Chen Y, Liang T, et al. Prevention of hepatitis B recurrence after liver transplantation using lamivudine or lamivudine combined with hepatitis B immunoglobulin prophylaxis. Liver Transpl 2006;12:253-8.
Zimmerman MA, Trotter JF, Wachs M, et al. Sirolimus-based immunosuppression following liver transplantation for hepatocellular carcinoma. Liver Transpl 2008;14:633-8.
Zoepf T, Maldonado-Lopez EJ, Hilgard P, et al. Balloon dilatation vs. balloon dilatation plus bile duct endoprostheses for treatment of anastomotic biliary strictures after liver transplantation. Liver Transpl 2006;12:88-94.
Zoepf T, Maldonado de Dechêne EJ, Dechêne A, et al. Optimized endoscopic treatment of ischemic-type biliary lesions after liver transplantation. Gastrointest Endosc 2012;76:556-63.

22. End-stage Liver Disease, HIV Infection and Liver Transplantation

José M. Miró, Fernando Agüero, Alejandro Forner, Christian Manzardo, Montserrat Laguno, Montserrat Tuset, Carlos Cervera, Anna Lligoña, Asuncion Moreno, Juan-Carlos García-Valdecasas, Antonio Rimola, and the Hospital Clinic OLT in HIV Working Group

Introduction

The introduction of effective combined antiretroviral therapy (cART) has converted HIV infection into a chronic illness with a significant reduction in the number of AIDS-related deaths. This has, however, been accompanied by a steady increase in liver-related morbidity and mortality due to coinfection with chronic hepatitis B and C viruses (Joshi 2011). As a consequence, end-stage liver disease (ESLD) has become one of the principal causes of death among HIV+ patients coinfected with hepatitis C (HCV) or hepatitis B (HBV) viruses (Weber 2006, Weber 2013) and death rates in HIV/HCV coinfected subjects are eleven times higher than in the general population (Hernando 2012). The overall and cause-specific mortality in HIV/HCV-coinfected individuals did not improve, but kept stable over the last years in contrast to a decrease in mortality in HIV-monoinfected patients (Berenguer 2012). It is well known that HIV has a deleterious effect on the natural history of HCV infection. Co-existent HIV infection leads to worsened HCV viremia, decreased responsiveness to HCV therapy, accelerated rates of fibrosis, increased risk of developing decompensated disease, and a significant risk of developing hepatocellular carcinoma (Garcia-Samaniego 2001, Graham 2001, Mohsen 2003, Poynard 2003). The mechanisms associated with accelerated fibrosis progression rates among HIV/HCV-coinfected patients are not well understood, but multiple hypotheses have been proposed. These include a direct viral effect on hepatocytes and/or the stellate cells, and many immunologic alterations such as diminished HCV-specific T cell responses, immune activation, increased hepatocyte apoptosis and immunologic dysregulation, that promote hepatic fibrosis (Hernandez 2011). Hopefully, the burden of morbidity and mortality due to HCV coinfection will decrease with the introduction of the direct acting antivirals (DAAs) in the near future. Meanwhile, medical management of liver-related complications in the population with HIV infection is essential and liver transplantation (LT) should be

considered an important therapeutic tool in this subset of patients. In this chapter, we will summarize the most important issues in the management of ESLD in HIV+ patients. Nevertheless, this is an evolving field and many issues remain unclear.

Epidemiology

Of the approximately 35 million persons infected with HIV globally, 2 to 4 million are chronically infected with HBV (Alter 2006) and around 7 million have chronic HCV (Soriano 2009).

The prevalence of HCV and/or HBV coinfection is high in developed countries: European studies have shown a prevalence of HCV and HBV coinfection of 33% and 9%, respectively (Rockstroh 2005, Konopnicki 2005), and US registries have shown very similar figures (Fung 2004). However, recent reports have revealed changes in the epidemiological pattern (Esteban 2008). In Spain (Pérez-Cachafeiro 2009) there was a decrease in the prevalence of HIV/HCV coinfection, from 74% in 1997 to 20% in 2006, due to a significant reduction of IV drug use as transmission route of HIV infection. Conversely, a rising incidence of acute hepatitis C virus (HCV) in homosexual HIV-infected patients has been observed since 2000 in Europe, Australia, the US and Asia (Bradshaw 2013).

As previously pointed out, coinfection with chronic hepatitis B and C viruses has led to an increase in non–AIDS-related mortality (Palella 2006, Crum 2006, Lewden 2005). In a French prospective multicenter study (Rosenthal 2007), the authors followed 21,000 HIV-positive patients, 4000 (19.9%) of whom were coinfected, and observed that mortality due to ESLD represented 23.7% of non–AIDS-related deaths. In this population, ESLD was fatal in 1.5% of patients in 1995, 6.6% in 1997, 14.3% in 2001, and 12.6% in 2003. In addition, 92.6% of patients who died from ESLD had chronic HCV infection. Another prospective study of 11 cohorts carried out in Europe, the United States and Australia (Weber 2006) included 23,500 HIV-1–infected patients (22.5% were HCV-positive) and recorded 1250 deaths. Deaths related to AIDS were the most frequent (31.1%), while liver disease was the most frequent non–AIDS-related cause (14.5%). Moreover, HCV infection was shown to be an independent predictor of liver-related death. These findings were confirmed by another study, which found that liver-related deaths were one of the most frequent non-AIDS causes of death (113/835, 13.5%) (ART-CC 2010). Finally, the development of hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) is rising in this population and is an increasing cause of liver-related mortality in HIV+ patients (Salmon-Ceron 2009, Sahasrabuddhe 2012).

Clinical features of coinfected patients with ESLD

There is a body of knowledge related to the natural history of liver disease in patients with HIV infection. As previously discussed, HIV has a deleterious effect on the natural history of liver disease particularly in light of coinfection, with an increased risk of developing decompesation, reported as 33% at 5 years (Pineda 2009). The severity of HIV infection evaluated as baseline CD4 cell count below 300 cells/mm^3 has been found as one of the factors independently associated with the emergence of an episode of hepatic decompensation at 5 years. More

worrisomely, survival after the first liver decompensation is significantly shorter in coinfected patients compared to HCV-monoinfected alone (Pineda 2005). This must be taken into account to establish an adequate timing of liver transplantation in HIV-coinfected subjects.

The clinical pattern of the different complications related to cirrhosis do not differ in HIV/HCV-coinfected compared to HCV-monoinfection. Among HIV/HCV-coinfected patients with decompensated cirrhosis, 36% had ascites, the most frequent event (Ioannou 2013). Regarding spontaneous bacterial peritonitis (SBP), a higher rate of etiological diagnosis and bacteremia has been reported than in HIV-negative patients, with a high incidence of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* among HIV+ patients, exceeded only by *Escherichia coli* (Shaw 2006).

Hepatocellular carcinoma in HIV-positive patients

Some prospective studies have observed that nearly 25% of liver-related mortality in patients with HIV infection is due to the development of hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) (Rosenthal 2009, Salmon-Ceron 2009) and this is expected to rise significantly in patients with HIV infection and chronic HCV/HBV hepatitis. A recent population-based study demonstrated that HCC incidence has steadily increased among individuals with AIDS in the United States over the past 3 decades (Sahasrabuddhe 2013).

Many studies have suggested that HCC might have a faster and worse outcome in HIV/HCV-coinfected patients than in HCV-monoinfected patients (Puoti 2004, Bruno 2006, Berretta 2011, Vibert 2011). The outcome of HCC in 41 HIV+ and 2384 HIV-negative patients was evaluated in an Italian study (Puoti 2004). Multivariate analysis adjusted for age and sex identified an association between HIV infection, HCV infection and more advanced stage at presentation defined as infiltrating tumors and/or extranodal metastasis. Likewise, HIV infection was independently associated with shorter survival, suggesting a more aggressive course of HCC in HIV-positive patients. Recently, these findings were confirmed in a case-control study, which enrolled patients with HCC: 104 HIV-infected patients and 484 HIV-uninfected patients (Berretta 2011). The group of patients with HIV infection was younger and despite the fact that they had less advanced HCC at diagnosis, the survival rate was significantly poorer, 81.5% versus 85.8% at 1 year and 34% versus 49.1% at 5 years (p=0.48).

Some authors have found that survival can be improved if HCC is diagnosed in the setting of screening programs (Berretta 2011), but there are no specific data available on the cost-effectiveness of screening for HCC in cirrhotic patients with HIV infection (Joshi 2011). Recently, a Canadian study found that in a cohort of HIV/HCV-coinfected patients, more than one third of patients with documented or possible cirrhosis did not undergo regular screening for HCC with ultrasonography (Beauchamp 2013).

Prognosis after decompensation

Survival after the first liver decompensation is significantly shorter in HIV/HCV-coinfected patients compared to those HCV-monoinfected (Pineda 2005, Merchante

2006, Murillas 2009). In a multicentre case-control study (Pineda 2005), the outcome of cirrhosis after the first decompensation in coinfected patients was much more severe than in the monoinfected population. Survival at 1, 2, and 5 years for the coinfected/monoinfected population was 54%/74%, 40%/61%, and 25%/44%, respectively. In another study (Merchante 2006), severity of liver disease (Child-Turcotte-Pugh score or HE as the first hepatic decompensation) and the level of cellular immunosuppression (<100 CD4 cells) were identified as independent predictors of poor outcome in coinfected patients. Contrarily, cART was associated with a reduced mortality rate.

104 HIV-positive patients with HCC or cirrhosis were followed after their first hepatic decompensation (Murillas 2009). The median survival time of this cohort was 14 months, similar to that observed in a previous report (13 months) (Merchante 2006). This study included HCV and non–HCV-infected patients, and the authors did not find significant differences in survival based on the etiology of cirrhosis, suggesting that HIV-positive patients have an overall poor outcome regardless of the nature of their liver disease. Furthermore, the MELD score and the inability to reach an undetectable plasma HIV-1 viral load at any time during follow-up were the only variables independently associated with the risk of death ($p<0.001$). This is particularly relevant because the MELD score has been increasingly used to establish the prognosis of patients with cirrhosis and, consequently, to indicate LT.

In addition, a Spanish study (Lopez-Diéguez 2011) showed that the mortality rate for patients with decompensated cirrhosis was 27.1 deaths/100 person-years and 4.0 deaths/100 person-years for patients with compensated cirrhosis. The risk of first hepatic decompensation was relatively low but the time from the first liver decompensation to the next decompensation was critically reduced. Like HIV-negative patients, HIV+ patients with cirrhosis have a poor prognosis after the development of SBP (Shaw 2006). HIV infection was associated with a more than 6-fold increase in the probability of dying within a month of the first episode of SBP. Impaired renal function at diagnosis and severity of liver disease were identified as predictors of death. HIV-positive patients also had a dramatically shorter survival time than HIV-negative patients: only 50% of patients were still alive 3 months after the first episode of SBP and only 23% were alive after 1 year. Death was mostly related to complications of advanced liver disease rather than to AIDS-related conditions.

Recently, two reports have described the relationship of liver fibrosis stage with liver decompensation and death in HIV/HCV-coinfected patients (Limketkai 2012, Macías 2013). The hepatic fibrosis stage was independently associated with liver related events or death. Being on cART, higher CD4 cell count, and effective HCV treatment were associated with significantly lower risk of clinical outcomes (Limketkai 2012).

High mortality rates among coinfected patients with ESLD waiting for OLT have also been reported in observational studies. Four out of 16 (25%) patients died while were being evaluated for LT (Maida 2005) whereas 10 out of 15 patients (67%) on the transplant waiting list died after a median follow-up of 5 months (Murillas 2009). In the same cohort, 5 (33%) patients underwent OLT. Three case-control studies have analyzed mortality rates among coinfected patients with ESLD while

waiting for OLT. In the first published study (Ragni 2005), mortality rates during the pre-transplant evaluation in HIV-positive (n=58) and HIV-negative (n=1359) patients were 36% and 15%, respectively (p<0.001). These results were not confirmed by the next study: waiting list mortality was 14.4% in patients with HIV infection (n=167) and 11.1% in the control group (n=792) (p=0.30), with MELD score higher than 25 the only variable independently associated with death on the waiting list (Subramanian 2009). More recently, in patients with HCC, the survival rate at 1 and 3 years from the time of wait-listing for OLT was 81% and 55% in HIV-infected vs. 91% and 82% in patients without HIV infection, respectively (p=0.005) (Vibert 2011).

For these reasons, physicians attending HIV+ patients with cirrhosis should closely follow the patients and evaluate them early for OLT after the first clinical decompensation or upon development of HCC (Llovet 2004). Both prevention and effective treatment of these complications may improve the likelihood of survival until LT (Agüero 2007, Spengler 2011, Tsochatzis 2012).

Management of cirrhosis complications

Management of the complications of cirrhosis (portal hypertension, ascites, gastrointestinal bleeding, encephalopathy, SBP, HCC, and hepatorenal syndrome) is basically the same as in the HIV-negative population and is reviewed elsewhere (de Francis 2010, EASL 2010, Spengler 2011, Bruix 2011, EASL/EORTC 2012, Gines 2012, Wilkins 2013, EASL 2013).

It has been observed that transient elastometry could be used to select HIV/HCV-coinfected patients undergoing screening with upper gastrointestinal endoscopy for esophageal varices. One study found that HIV/HCV-coinfected patients with cirrhosis who harbour esophageal varices requiring preventive therapy for bleeding had liver stiffness values higher than those who did not require treatment (Pineda 2009). Liver stiffness values below 21 kPa were highly predictive of varices not at risk for bleeding. Recently, patients with baseline liver stiffness above 39 kPa were found more likely to present clinical complications and death (Merchante 2012).

Avoidance of factors that could accelerate the progression of liver disease, such as hepatotoxic drugs (eg, didanosine), alcohol intake, tobacco, cannabis, etc, is recommended. In that regard, smoking has been linked to more severe fibrosis in patients with chronic HCV (Tsochatzis 2009) and may also increase histological activity in chronic HCV patients irrespective of alcohol consumption (Hezode 2003). Alcohol consumption was more frequent among coinfected patients who died from ESLD (92%) (Rosenthal 2007), and the deleterious effects of the combination of alcohol and HCV are very well known (Cooper 2005). Finally, daily cannabis smoking is significantly associated with the presence of moderate to severe fibrosis in patients with chronic HCV infection, and thus it should be avoided in coinfected patients (Ishida 2008).

HCV/HBV management

Several treatments for HBV and HCV infection are currently available. Indications for HCV treatment are identical to those in patients with HCV monoinfection

(EASL 2013). Regrettably, in the case of HCV infection, the efficacy and tolerability of pegylated-interferon and ribavirin dramatically drop in patients with advanced cirrhosis (Rockstroh 2008, GESIDA 2010).

In the setting of ESLD in the HCV-monoinfected population, the main objective of HCV antiviral treatment is to obtain undetectable plasma HCV RNA levels at the time of LT in order to reduce the risk of HCV recurrence post-LT. However, a considerable proportion of patients have contraindications to the use of pegylated-interferon and ribavirin treament and pre-emptive strategy is not recommended due to lack of efficacy. SVR was achieved in less than 20% in HCV-monoinfected liver transplant candidates (Xirouchakis 2008). Safety of this regime is also a concern. Therefore, antiviral therapy is indicated in patients with conserved liver function (Child-Pugh A) in whom the indication for transplantation is HCC. It may also be offered to selected patients with Child-Pugh B cirrhosis, on an individual basis (HCV genotypes 2 or 3, or patients with a low baseline HCV RNA level) in experienced centres, whereas patients with Child-Pugh C cirrhosis should not be treated (EASL 2013, Ghany 2009). Safety data regarding HIV/HCV-coinfected patients is also available from the APRICOT substudy (Mauss 2004). Hepatic decompensation was observed only in HIV/HCV-coinfected patients with advanced cirrhosis, and its incidence was 10.4% (14/134). However, 6 (43%) of these 14 patients died as a result of hepatic decompensation. Antiretroviral treatment with didanosine was an associated risk factor. In contrast, no hepatic decompensation was noted in HIV/HCV-coinfected patients without cirrhosis.

Promising results are becoming available regarding the first HCV protease inhibitors (PI) for HCV genotype 1-coinfected patients, boceprevir and telaprevir. These new drugs have changed the standard of care for HCV genotype 1 infection and allowed a substantial improvement in HCV cure rates (Martel-Laferriere 2013, Rockstroh 2013). In addition, a number of other new HCV DAAs are currently being studied in coinfected patient populations, including shorter treatment durations and interferon-free regimens with fewer side effects, allowing novel treatment opportunities for difficult-to-treat patients (see Chapters 17 and 21). Hopefully, these new DAA agents will promptly change the current state of the art of HCV treatment in coinfected HIV/HCV patients. A preemptive strategy should also be reassessed with the introduction of these new drugs. Nevertheless, data on safety, tolerability and efficacy of these agents in the setting of ESLD are lacking.

Also, they should be used with caution due to the drug interactions between these agents and many antiretroviral drugs (Table 1) (Kiser 2013, Karageorgopoulos 2014, Toronto General Hospital Hepatitis C Drug Information website 2014).

Since HBV replication is a contraindication for OLT and only patients without HBV viremia are accepted for OLT, treatment of this infection should be a priority. HIV-positive patients who require antiretroviral therapy and have chronic HBV infection can be treated with lamivudine (or emtricitabine) and tenofovir as part of their triple antiretroviral therapy (Rockstroh 2008, Soriano 2008, GESIDA 2010, Wilkins 2013). Adefovir and tenofovir have proven useful against HBV and could be used in cases of resistance to lamivudine (Rockstroh 2008, Soriano 2008, GESIDA 2010). Recently, one study showed that after 5 years of continuous treatment, HBeAg seroconversion was achieved in 21% of HIV/HBV-coinfected patients treated with lamivudine, 50% in the group on tenofovir disoproxil fumarate

(TDF) and in 57% in those receiving TDF + emtricitabine (FTC) (Kosi 2012). Moreover, most HBV/HIV-coinfected patients achieved complete suppression of HBV replication despite high baseline viremia.

Table 1. Metabolism and PK interactions between anti-HCV direct-acting antivirals (DAA) and antiretroviral drugs and calcineurin inhibitors

	HCV NS34 protease inhibitors			
	Boceprevir 800 mg TID	**Telaprevir** 750 mg TID	**Simeprevir** 150 mg QD	**Faldaprevir** 240 mg QD
Route of metabolism/ or excretion	CYP3A4, CYP3A5, AKR	CYP3A4	CYP3A4	CYP3A4
HIV PIs				
- Lopinavir/r	Not recommended	Not recommended	Not recommended	No data
- Darunavir/r	Not recommended	Not recommended	Not recommended	Recommended at 120 mg QD
- Atazanavir/r	Consider on an individual basis	Recommended	Not recommended	Recommended at 120 mg QD
HIV NNRTIs				
- Efavirenz	Not recommended	Recommeded at 1125 mg TID	Not recommended	Recommended at 240 mg QD
- Rilpivirine	Recommended	Caution for QT prolongation	Recommended	No data
- Etravirine	Consider on an individual basis	Recommended	No data	No data
HIV InSTIs				
- Dolutegravir	Recommended	Recommended	No data	No data
- Raltegravir	Recommended	Recommended	Recommended	Recommended
- Elvitegravir/cobicistat	No data	Recommended	Not recommended	No data
HIV NtRTI				
- Tenofovir	Recommended	Recommended	Recommended	Recommended
CCR5 inhibitor				
- Maraviroc	Reduce maraviroc to 150 mg BID	Reduce maraviroc to 150 mg BID	No data	No data
Immunosuppressants				
Calcineurin inhibitors				
- Ciclosporin	↓Ciclosporin dose	↓↓Ciclosporin dose	No dose adjustmet. Close monitoring	No data
- Tacrolimus (FK)	↓FK dose	↓↓↓FK dose	No dose adjustmet. Close monitoring	No data

Table 1 (cont.). Metabolism and PK interactions between anti-HCV direct-acting antivirals (DAA) and antiretroviral drugs and calcineurin inhibitors

	HCV NS5A inhibitor	HCV NS5B polymerase inhibitor
	Daclatasvir 60 mg QD	**Sofosbuvir** 400 mg QD
Route of metabolism/ or excretion	CYP3A4	Not substrate of CYP450/UGT. Renal excretion
HIV PIs		
- Lopinavir/r	No data	Recommended
- Darunavir/r	No data	Recommended
- Atazanavir/r	Recommended at 30 mg QD	Recommended
HIV NNRTIs		
- Efavirenz	Recommended at 90 mg QD	Recommended
- Rilpivirine	No data	Recommended
- Etravirine	No data	No data
HIV InSTIs		
- Dolutegravir	No data	No data
- Raltegravir	No data	Recommended
- Elvitegravir/cobicistat	No data	No data
HIV NtRTI		
- Tenofovir	Recommended	Recommended
CCR5 inhibitor		
- Maraviroc	No data	No data
Immunosuppressants		
Calcineurin inhibitors		
- Ciclosporin	No data	No dose adjustment
- Tacrolimus (FK)	No data	No dose adjustment

Modified from Karageorgopoulos 2014, Kiser 2013 and Antiretroviral Treatment Options for Patients on DAAs - Summary available at http://www.hcvdruginfo.ca [accessed January 5, 2014)

HIV=Human immunodeficieny virus; HCV=Hepatitis C Virus; PIs=Protease inhibitors; NNRTIs=Non-nucleoside reverse-transcriptase inhibitors; InSTIs= Integrase Strand Transfer inhibitors; ARV=antiretroviral; TID=three times a day; BID=twice daily; QD=once daily; AKR=aldo-keto reductase; UGT=uridine glucuronyltransferase

Combination antiretroviral therapy (cART)

The role of cART in the progression of liver disease and in overall mortality in HCV/HIV-coinfected patients remains controversial (Tedaldi 2003, Qurishi 2003) although a growing body of knowledge is becoming available regarding the benefit of cART in this clinical scenario. Effective cART has been associated with improved clinical outcomes (Pineda 2007, Limketkai 2012, Anderson 2013), while permanent discontinuation of cART was associated with risk of first hepatic decompensation and a poorer survival rate (Lopez-Diéguez 2011) and increased risk of fibrosis progression (Thorpe 2011). Antiretroviral drug regimens should be carefully planned in persons with HIV and ESLD. These patients should follow general cART recommendations (GESIDA 2013, Thompson 2012, Panel on Antiretroviral Guidelines for Adults and Adolescents 2013) and their liver function must be closely monitored for signs of hepatotoxicity. Careful consideration of drug

prescriptions and possible interactions is essential. Furthermore, some antiretroviral drugs may be contraindicated in cirrhotic patients (eg, didanosine, nevirapine) and their dosing should be adjusted according to the degree of hepatic impairment (Wyles 2005, van Maarseveen 2012, Back 2014, Tuset 2014).

Therapeutic drug monitoring (TDM) may be useful for efavirenz and protease inhibitors. Indinavir and atazanavir can increase unconjugated bilirubin levels by inhibiting UDP-glucuronosyltransferase. As total bilirubin is a component of both the Child-Turcotte-Pugh and MELD scores, results in patients taking these drugs should be interpreted with caution.

Other important pharmacokinetic/pharmacodynamic interactions are found between antiretroviral and anti-HCV drugs (PEG-IFN, RBV and new DAAs) (Table 1). Fatal lactic acidosis and acute pancreatitis has been described with ribavirin together with didanosine therapy and this combination is contraindicated. Zidovudine and stavudine must also be avoided with ribavirin due to an increased risk of hematological and neurological toxicities, respectively. The recently released *British guidelines for the management of hepatitis viruses in adults infected with HIV* recommend raltegravir (RAL) with tenofovir plus emtricitabine as the treatment of choice for those with wild-type HIV when boceprevir is used, while etravirine, rilpivirine and maraviroc could be alternatives (Wilkins 2013). When telaprevir is used, either RAL or standard-dose ritonavir-boosted atazanavir should be used. Efavirenz may be used but the telaprevir dose needs to be increased to 1125 mg TID. Etravirine, rilpivirine, and maraviroc, as well as the combination of elvitegravir with cobicistat and dolutegravir may be used with telaprevir (Table 1). These guidelines also recommend that didanosine, stavudine (d4T) and zidovudine (ZDV) should be avoided (Wilkins 2013).

Finally, given the speed with which new antiretroviral and anti-HCV drugs will debut new interactions may be relevant and physicians should consult regularly updated databases on drug-drug interactions (Back 2014, Tuset 2014).

Liver transplant (LT)

HIV infection is not a contraindication for liver transplantation (Miró 2007, Stock 2007, Samuel 2008). LT is the only therapeutic option for appropriate candidates with ESLD. The evaluation of HIV+ patients on the LT waiting list should be based on three main criteria: the degree of liver disease impairment that triggers the evaluation, the status of the HIV infection, and other criteria.

Liver disease criteria

The criteria are basically the same as for the non–HIV-infected population. Briefly, the main criteria are acute liver failure, ascites with other factors associated with poor outcome such as Child Pugh >7 points or MELD score >12 points, refractory ascites, hepatorenal syndrome, malnourishment or history of SBP, encephalopathy in patients with poor liver function (Child-Pugh >7 points), variceal bleeding that is difficult to manage with standard therapy and/or associated with poor liver function, hepatopulmonary syndrome and the development of an HCC fitting into the Milan

criteria (one lesion smaller than 5 cm or no more than 3 tumour nodules smaller than 3 cm, in the absence of macroscopic vascular invasion or extrahepatic disease).

A new indication for liver transplant in HIV+ patients has been described in a recent French study (Tateo 2009). Three patients underwent liver transplantation due to nodular regenerative hyperplasia (NRH). OLT is the only therapeutic option in cases of severe portal hypertension caused by nodular regenerative hyperplasia.

HIV infection criteria

Most liver transplant groups from Europe and North America use similar HIV criteria. These are summarized in Table 2 (O'Grady 2005, Grossi 2005, Miró 2005, Fox 2012).

Table 2. HIV criteria for LT in some European countries and the US

	Spain (Miró 2005)	**Italy** (Grossi 2005)	**UK** (O'Grady 2005)	**US** (Fox 2012)
Previous C events				
Opportunistic infections	Some*	None in the previous year	None after ART-induced	Some**
Neoplasms	No	No	immunological reconstitution	No**
CD4 cell count /mm^3	>100***	>200 or >100 if decompensated cirrhosis	>200 or >100 if portal hypertension	>100***
Plasma HIV-1 RNA viral load BLD on cART**	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

* Patients with previous tuberculosis, *Pneumocystis jirovecii pneumonia* (PCP) or esophageal candidiasis can be evaluated for LT; ** Only PML, cryptosporidiosis, MDR systemic fungal infections, lymphoma and visceral KS are exclusion criteria; ***Patients with previous OIs should have >200 CD4 cells/mm^3; **** If PVL was detectable, post-LT supression with cART should be predicted in all patients. BLD, below the level of detection

Clinical criteria

Some authors are in favour of withdrawing exclusion criteria for some opportunistic infections that can be effectively treated and prevented, such as tuberculosis, candidiasis, and *Pneumocystis jirovecii pneumonia* (Roland 2003, Neff 2004, Radecke 2005). In fact, the NIH has updated the inclusion criteria and only untreatable diseases continue to be an exclusion criteria for liver transplantation (eg, progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy (PML), chronic cryptosporidiosis, multidrug-resistant (MDR) systemic fungal infections, primary CNS lymphoma, and visceral Kaposi's sarcoma) (Roland 2006, Fox 2012).

Immunological criteria

All groups agree that the CD4+ lymphocyte count should be above 100 cells/mm^3 for LT (Roland 2003, Neff 2004). This figure is lower than that for kidney transplantation (CD4 >200 cells/mm^3), because patients with cirrhosis often have lymphopenia due to hypersplenism, which leads to a lower absolute CD4+ count, despite high CD4 percentages and good virologic control of HIV. In Spain and the

US, the CD4+ count must be greater than 200 cells/mm^3 in patients with previous opportunistic infections (Miró 2005, Fox 2012).

In Italy (Grossi 2005) and the UK (O'Grady 2005) the CD4+ cut-off is 200 cells/mm^3, unless patients have decompensated cirrhosis or portal hypertension. In these scenarios, they use the same CD4+ cell threshold as in Spain and the US (100 cells/mm^3).

Virologic criteria

The essential criterion for LT is that the patient must be able to have effective, safe and long-lasting cART during the post-transplant period (Neff 2004, Fung 2003). The ideal situation is when the patient tolerates cART before transplant and is ready for the transplant with undetectable HIV viral load by ultra-sensitive techniques (<50 copies/ml). Some patients do not have an indication for cART, due to being elite controllers, long-term non-progressors or asymptomatic patients with no immunological criteria (CD4+ lymphocyte count above 500 cells/mm^3) for starting cART. In this setting, it is unknown whether and when (pre-transplant or post-transplant) it would be beneficial to initiate cART in order to reach an undetectable plasma viral load.

Other criteria

To be included on the LT waiting list, an HIV-infected patient must have a favourable psychiatric evaluation.

Patients who actively consume drugs should not be placed on the waiting list. In Spain, patients must undergo a 2-year consumption-free period for heroin and cocaine (Miró 2005), and 6 months with no consumption of other agents (eg, alcohol). Patients who are on stable methadone maintenance programs can be included and can continue on the maintenance programme after the procedure (Liu 2003). Finally, as is the case with any transplant candidate, HIV-positive patients must show an appropriate degree of social stability in order to ensure adequate care in the post-transplant period.

Outcome of LT in patients with HIV infection

Overall mid- and long-term survival rates of HIV+ patients who undergo LT have been reported to be similar to those of HIV-negative patients when there is no HCV coinfection, while the survival rate in patients with HIV/HCV coinfection is lower than in HIV-negative, HCV-positive recipients (Ragni 2003, Norris 2004, Vennarecci 2007, Duclos-Vallee 2008, Tateo 2009, Antonini 2011, Di Benedetto 2011, Baccarani 2011, Cherian 2011, Anadol 2012, Terrault 2012, Miró 2014) (Table 3) (see below).

HIV-positive patients have not shown an increased risk of post-operative complications or a higher incidence of opportunistic infections (OI) or tumours than HIV-negative patients (Samuel 2008, Harbell 2012). Findings from two major LT cohorts (Terrault 2012, Miró 2012) seem to confirm that coinfected individuals are more likely to have acute rejection than HCV-monoinfected patients. A 38% acute rejection rate was reported in coinfected patients *vs.* 20% in patients without HIV infection (p>0.001) (Miro 2012), with similar results elsewhere (Terrault 2012). A 12% (3/24) incidence of post-transplant hepatic artery thrombosis (HAT) has been

observed (Cherian 2011), while in people without HIV infection, HAT is reported at around 4.4% (Bekker 2009), suggesting that the prothrombotic state of the association of HIV and liver disease could be the involved underlying factor. Notwithstanding, this finding was not confirmed either in a cohort of 32 patients who underwent LT (none of whom presented with HAT) (Gastaca 2012) or in a study including 125 liver recipients with HIV infection which reported 6 (5%) cases of HAT (Harbell 2012). Further and larger studies are needed in order to obtain more robust conclusions related to this finding.

Table 3. Liver transplantation in HIV-infected patients: cohorts with ≥10 cases in the late cART era (2003-2014)

Author	Year	Country	Nº cases	Virus (%)	Follow-up (months)	Mortality
Ragni	2003	Inter-national	24	HCV (62); HBV (29)	17	6 (25%)
Norris	2004	UK	14	HCV (50); HBV/OH (50)	12 19	5 (71%) 0
Vennarecci	2007	Italy	12	HCV (91)	26	6 (50%)
Duclos-Vallée	2008	France	35	HCV (100)	44	13 (37%)
Tateo	2009	France	13	HBV (100)	32	0
Antonini	2011	France	59	HCV (100)	Not reported	25 (42%)
Di Benedetto	2011	Italy	23	HCV (87)	24	10 (43%)
Baccarani	2011	Italy	27	HCV (78)	26	4 (15%)
Cherian	2011	UK	24	HCV (50); HBV (33)	88	8 (33%)
Anadol	2012	Germay	32	HCV (59); VBV (31)	61	13 (41%)
Terrault	2012	US	89	HCV (80); HBV (6)	20	38 (43%)
Fipse Study	2014	Spain	215	HCV (100)	36	90 (42%)

The risk of recurrent or *de novo* malignancy after solid organ transplantation in HIV+ patients is low (Nissen 2012). After a median follow-up of 2.8 years post-transplant, twelve out of 125 (9.6%) liver recipients developed 14 malignancies: 11 *de novo* malignancies (9 skin cancer, 1 Kaposi's sarcoma and 1 lymphoma) and 3 recurrences of pre-LT malignacy: 2 HCC and 1 cholangiocarcinoma (Nissen 2012). Recently, the ocurrence of aseptic osteonecrosis in 3 (12.5%) out of 24 patients who underwent LT has been reported (Cocchi 2012). The impact of this condition should be analyzed in future research.

Regarding infections, it has been observed that bacterial infections are common in liver (43%) and kidney recipients (35%), whereas HCV infection was the only factor associated with an increased risk of bacterial infection (liver recipients only) (Blumberg 2008). A high rate of severe (43%) and opportunistic (11%) infections in a cohort of 84 HIV/HCV-coinfected patients who underwent liver transplantation has also been reported (Moreno 2012). Bacterial infections occurred in 38 patients (45%), CMV infection in 21 (25%), uncomplicated herpes virus infection in 13 (15%), and fungal infections in 16 patients (19%, 7 invasive cases). A pretransplant MELD score >15, history of category C AIDS-defining event and non-tacrolimus-based immunosupression regimes were factors independently associated with severe

infections. Nevertheless, a French study (Teicher 2012) observed 5 (4.8%) episodes of OI in a cohort of 105 patients with HIV who underwent transplant. Differences could be due to different incidence rates of tuberculosis or the center variability within the Spanish cohort. Table 4 describes the characteristics of the infections in the three major cohorts of patients with HIV infection who underwent LT.

Table 4. Post-transplant opportunistic infections (OI) in patients with HIV-1 infection who underwent liver transplantation

	Spain (Moreno 2012)	France (Teicher 2012)	US (Terrault 2012)
Number of patients	84	105	125
Follow-up (months)	24	36	32
Number (%) of patients with at least one OI	9 (11)	5 (5)	6 (5)
Type of OI			
Tuberculosis	2	1	0
Pneumocystis jirovecii pneumonia	1	0	1
Esophageal candidiasis	2	2	3
Other invasive fungal infections*	3	0	0
CMV disease	2	1	0
Other OI	0	1†	1‡
Neoplasms			
Kaposi's sarcoma	0	NR	1
Non-Hodgkin lymphoma	0	NR	0

NR: Not reported; *mucormycosis (2) and aspergillosis (1); †atypical mycobacterium; ‡ bronchial candidiasis. Adapted from Miró (Miró 2012)

Pharmacokinetic interactions in the post-transplant period

Clinical management in the post-transplant period is complex and handling pharmacokinetic interactions is challenging (Primeggia 2013).

Efavirenz is an inducer of CYP3A4 while ritonavir-boosted HIV protease inhibitors (PI) are inhibitors. Especially, ritonavir and a new selective CYP3A inhibitor without intrinsic anti-HIV activity, cobicistat, have a potent inhibitory effect (Deeks 2013,Perry 2014). This fact has a considerable impact in the management of these patients (Frassetto 2013). Subjects taking concomitant ritonavir- or cobicistat-boosted antiretroviral drugs (i.e., PIs, elvitegravir) will require rapid and significant dose adjustments of both calcineurin inhibitors and mTOR inhibitors (Frassetto 2013, Deeks 2013, Perry 2014). HIV protease inhibitors increase ciclosporin and tacrolimus exposure due to inhibition of the cytochrome 3A4 isoenzyme. In the presence of HIV PIs, the increase in the cyclosporin A exposure could be 2–4-fold (AUC) and for tactrolimus more than 10-fold. With a combination of an HIV protease inhibitor plus efavirenz, the interaction is complex and needs to be closely monitored. Nevirapine has no significant effect on calcineurin inhibitor pharmacokinetics (Frassetto 2013).

Raltegravir (RAL), mainly metabolized by uridine diphosphate glucuronosyltransferase and it is not a substrate of CYP450 and can safely be used in HIV-1 LT recipients. In a study with 13 patients with solid organ transplantation (8 liver and 5 kidney) on RAL, a lack of significant interaction between RAL and

calcineurin inhibitors was reported (Tricot 2009). These findings were later confirmed in a cohort of 16 solid organ transplant recipients with HIV infection (Miro 2011). Therefore, the combination of two nucleos(t)ide reverse transcriptase inhibitors (tenofovir/emtricitabine or abacavir/lamivudine) plus RAL is probably the antiretroviral regimen of choice in HIV-infected transplant recipients. The introduction of dolutegravir, which shares the same metabolic pathway and has shown superior virological efficacy over RAL, will be another option to safely treat patients with liver transplant (Castellino 2013, Cahn 2013,Waki 2011).

In addition, telaprevir and boceprevir (HCV PIs) increase the drug levels of cyclosporin and tacrolimus to a similar magnitude to what is seen with HIV protease inhibitors (Table 1). As this is an extremely fast evolving area, consultation with updated databases on drug interactions is mandatory (Back 2014, Tuset 2014, Toronto General Hospital Hepatitis C Drug Information website 2014).

Finally, previous reports have mentioned the hypothetical anti-rejection and antifibrotic properties of CCR5 inhibitor maraviroc (Macias 2013, Haim-Boukobza 2013). These findings remain preliminary and the results of larger studies in humans are necessary.

HIV/HCV coinfection

Mid-term survival is affected by recurrent hepatitis C (de Vera 2006). After LT, recurrence of HCV infection is universal, regardless of whether the patient is infected with HIV or not. In fact, it is currently the leading cause of death in LT patients. Some studies have suggested that recurrence of HCV in coinfected patients tends to be more severe and occurs earlier (de Vera 2006, Castells 2006, Antonini 2011). The outcome of 27 coinfected patients was compared to 54 HCV-monoinfected patients who underwent LT (de Vera 2006). The researchers found that HIV+ patients had a higher likelihood of developing cirrhosis or dying of an HCV-related complication than HIV-negative patients (RR=2.6; 95% CI, 1.06-6.35). Cumulative 1-, 3- and 5-year survival for coinfected and monoinfected patients was 67% vs. 76%, 56% vs. 72%, and 33% vs. 72%, respectively (p=0.07).

In a retrospective study in the US that enrolled 138 HIV+ patients who underwent liver transplant during the cART era (1996-2006), the rate of survival at 2 and 3 years was significantly lower in HIV-positive patients (70% and 60%) than in the general population (n=30,520) (81% and 77%), although this difference was observed only in the HCV/HIV- and HBV/HIV-coinfected groups (Mindikoglu 2008). None of the 24 HIV-monoinfected recipients died.

Therefore, liver transplant in HIV+ patients does not have higher short-term mortality (1-2 years). Nevertheless, the management and outcome of HCV reinfection could affect survival in the medium term (3-5 years) and long term (5-7 years).

In France, data from 35 HIV/HCV-coinfected patients were analyzed and compared with those of 44 HCV-monoinfected patients. Survival rates at 2 and 5 years were 81%/91% and 51%/73% in HIV/HCV-coinfected patients/HCV-monoinfected patients, respectively (p=0.004) (Duclos-Vallée 2008).

A recent case-control study performed in the US enrolling 89 HCV/HIV-coinfected and 235 HCV-monoinfected patients who underwent LT observed a 76%

and 60% survival rate at 1 and 3 years, respectively, in coinfected patients, while in monoinfected people these rates were significantly higher (92% and 79%, respectively, p<0.001) (Terrault 2012). HIV infection was the only factor independently associated with death whereas in the HCV/HIV-coinfected cohort, four factors were independent predictors of graft loss (older donor age, combined kidney-liver transplantation, HCV-positive donor and a body mass index <21 kg/m^2).

In Spain, data from a multicentre case-control study show that survival of HIV/HCV-coinfected patients (n=84) at 1 year was similar to that of HCV-monoinfected patients (n=252) - 88% *vs.* 90% (NS) - but it was significantly lower at 3 and 5 years: 62% *vs.* 76% and 54% *vs.* 71%, respectively (p<0.01). The variables independently associated with mortality were HIV infection, HCV genotype 1 infection and the donor risk index (Miró 2012). The authors proposed a score including three pre-transplant variables (HCV genotype 1, MELD and number of LTs performed in the centre) in order to optimize the selection of patients to ensure an acceptable survival rate (69%). In order to definitively answer the survival question, additional cohort studies analysing donor and recipient characteristics, issues related to the activity of both viruses and the efficacy and safety of antiviral therapies are necessary for determining the long-term prognosis of this procedure.

Recently, the vital importance of achieving SVR in the post-transplant period was confirmed. Sixteen out of 78 (22%) patients reached an SVR, and 5-year survival in this group of patients was quite good at 84%, while in HCV-monoinfected it was 97% (p=0.139) (Miró 2014).

Rapid progression of HCV-related liver disease in HIV+ recipients would represent a major drawback and would shorten life expectancy in this group of patients. In fact, it is currently the primary cause of death. A French study observed that progression to fibrosis (≥F2) was significantly higher in HIV-positive patients (p<0.0001) (Duclos-Vallée 2008) and MELD was the only significant predictor of mortality, although donor age was of borderline significance (p=0.06). Eleven (19%) out of 59 patients who underwent LT developed fibrosing cholestatic hepatitis (FCH) (Antonini 2011). Nine of them (82%) died of liver failure after developing FCH. The survival rate was significantly lower in the FCH group when compared to non-FCH patients: 26 vs 76 months (p=0.004).

There is insufficient experience on the efficacy and safety of therapy with PEG-IFN/RBV in coinfected transplant patients. Several studies have explored the effectiveness of treatment of HCV reinfection in LT with PEG-IFN + RBV (Miró 2007, Vennarecci 2007, Duclos-Vallée 2008, Di Benedetto 2011, Terrault 2012, Miró 2014). The main results are summarized in Table 5.

With first-generation HCV protease inhibitors boceprevir and telaprevir, experiences of treatment of HCV recurrence are becoming available (Antonini 2013, Antonini 2013). Four of 7 (57%) HIV/HCV coinfected patients who underwent LT and had HCV recurrence achieved rapid virological response after 4 weeks of HCV PI, (boceprevir n=0, telaprevir n=4). All patients had anemia requiring erithropoietin and rivabirin reduction and tacrolimus dose was reduced by 19-fold with telaprevir. In HCV-monoinfection promising data have been reported for the HCV polymerase inhibitor sofosbuvir plus ribavirin (Charlton 2013) (see Chapter 21).

Table 5. Summary of studies evaluating the efficacy of treatment of HCV reinfection in LT with PEG-IFN + RBV

Author + Year of Publication	HIV/HCV-coinfected patients		HCV-monoinfected patients (Control Group)	
	n	SVR n (%)	N	SVR n (%)
Vennarecci 2007*	9	1 (11)	-	-
Duclos-Vallée 2008	19	3 (16)	20	15 (75)
Di Benedetto 2011	9	4 (44)	-	-
Terrault 2012	37	5 (14)	-	-
Spanish study 2014	78	16 (21)	176	63 (36%)
Total	**152**	**29 (19)**	**-**	**-**

*The authors did not specify the type of interferon used; SVR: sustained virological response (modified from Miró 2007)

Finally, IL28B polymorphisms predicted treatment response in some subgroups of HIV/HCV-coinfected patients but the role of IL28B polymorphysms of the donor and their impact on the natural history of HCV recurrence and on the response to antiviral therapy in LT recipients is not yet known (Labarga 2011).

HIV/HVB coinfection

Cohorts of HIV/HBV-coinfected patients are not as large as those of HIV/HCV-infected patients. The outcome of HBV infection after LT is much better, as effective control of HBV replication with tenofovir is almost always possible (Tateo 2009, Coffin 2010). The survival rate in the short and medium term in HBV/HIV-coinfected patients is high and similar to that observed in HBV-monoinfected patients, probably due to the low incidence of HBV reinfection. A French study that included 13 HIV/HBV-coinfected patients revealed 100% graft and patient survival after a mean follow-up of 32 months (Tateo 2009). In the US a study with 22 HBV/HIV+ patients and 20 HBV-monoinfected patients reported a cumulative patient and graft survival at one and three years of 85% in the coinfected patients and 100% in the monoinfected group (p=0.08).

Hepatocellular carcinoma

Several authors have reported the outcome of HIV+ patients with HCC after LT. Preliminary data from Italy showed optimistic results, but the small number of patients included and the short follow-up did not allow any reliable conclusion (Di Benedetto 2006, Di Benedetto 2008). More recently, the outcome from the time of enlisting in a case-control study of patients with HCC who underwent LT was reported (Vibert 2011). Sixteen out of 21 HIV-infected patients underwent LT vs. 58 out of 65 in the control group. There were no statistical differences regarding the proportion of patients exceeding the Milan criteria, 4/21 (19%) *vs.* 17/65 (26%), number of nodules, maximum diameter, microvascular invasion grade and time on waiting list (6.4 vs. 4.1 months, p=0.2). A trend towards a higher drop-out rate was observed among HIV+ listed patients, with 5/21 (23%) compared to 7/64 (10%) HIV- listed patients (p=0.08). From the time of enlisting, the survival rate at 1 and 3 years was 81% and 55% in the HIV-infected group vs. 91% and 82% in those HIV-

negative (p=0.005). Moreover, the rate of HCC recurrence was higher in the HIV-infected group (30%) than in the control group (15%).

More recently, Italian researchers analyzed data from 30 HIV+ cases and 125 HIV-uninfected controls with HCC who underwent OLT (Di Benedetto 2013). Conversely, they observed that time on the waiting list was shorter for HIV-infected patients (8 vs. 19 months, p<0.001) and they did not find differences in the proportion of HCC recurrence (2/30, 7% vs 18/125, 14%, respectively, p=0.15). Moreover, survival rate from transplant at 1 and 3 years were similar (77% and 65% *vs.* 86% and 70%, respectively (p=0.32). Further studies with larger sample size and longer follow-up are needed to precisely define the recurrence rate in this setting.

Liver retransplantation

Currently, in people without HIV infection, re-LT accounts for approximately 10% of all liver transplants (Pfitzmann 2007, Reese 2009). Overall post-retransplant patient survival rate is between 15 and 20% lower than the primary LT survival rate (Carrión 2010). This lower survival is of concern due to the significant shortage of available organs.

The experience of liver retransplantation (re-LT) in the HIV-infected population is scarce and most of the articles published with patients are from single centers (de Vera 2006, Vogel 2005, Polard 2005, Cherian 2012). 6.2 % (14/227) of re-LT in the Spanish cohort of patients with HIV infection has recently been reported (Gastaca 2012). Overall survival rate at 1 year and 3 years after re-LT for HIV-positive and HIV-negative patients were 50% vs. 72% and 42% vs. 64%, respectively (p=0.16).

A recent prospective international study which enrolled 37 patients with HIV infection who underwent re-LT found similar results (Gastaca 2013). Three-year survival probability in patients with a positive HCV RNA (n=22) at re-LT was 30% compared to 80% in patients with negative HCV RNA (n=15) (p=0.008). HCV recurrence was the main cause of death (7/22 cases, 32%). Therefore, the indication for re-transplantation in patients with active HCV replication at time of re-LT is questionable although the new DAAs may change the prognosis substantially.

Conclusions

ESLD is an increasingly frequent clinical scenario in the setting of HIV/HCV-HBV coinfection.

Early diagnosis of ESLD complications is particularly important and should be actively monitored and treated. In general terms, the management of ESLD in patients with HIV infection should be the same as in those without HIV infection.

Physicians taking care of ESLD patients should follow them prospectively and promptly evaluate them for LT after the first clinical decompensation of liver disease.

LT is a life-saving procedure in this population, and is safe and effective in patients with HBV infection. However, recurrence of HCV infection in coinfected patients can affect both graft and patient survival in the medium- and long-term.

The introduction of the new HCV DAAs could have a substancial impact in the prognosis of these patients. Prospective and larger studies with longer follow-up times must be carried out in order to determine the benefit of LT in this setting.

The members of the **Hospital Clinic OLT in HIV Working Group** are: JM Miró, A Moreno, C Manzardo, M Laguno, JL Blanco, J Mallolas, C Cervera, M Tuset, M Monras, A Ligoña, J Blanch, I Perez, D Paredes, J Fuster, C Fontdevila, JC García-Valdecasas, JM Gatell, A Forner, A Rimola, (Hospital Clinic – IDIBAPS, University of Barcelona, Barcelona); C Tural and A Jou (Hospital Germans Trías i Pujol, Badalona, Barcelona, Spain); and J Murillas and M Peñaranda (Hospital Son Dureta, Palma de Mallorca, Spain)

References

Agüero F, Laguno M, Moreno A, et al. Management of end-stage liver disease in HIV-infected patients. Curr Op HIV/AIDS 2007;2:474-81. (Abstract)

Alter M. Epidemiology of viral hepatitis and HIV co-infection. J Hepatol 2006;44:S6-S9. (Abstract)

Anderson JP, Tchetgen Tchetgen EJ, Lo Re V 3rd, et al. Antiretroviral Therapy Reduces the Rate of Hepatic Decompensation Among HIV- and Hepatitis C Virus-Coinfected Veterans. Clin Infect Dis 2013 Dec 20. [Epub ahead of print];

Antonini TM, Furlan V, Teicher E, et al. Successful anti-hepatitis C virus therapy with telaprevir in an HIV/hepatitis C virus co-infected patient with a severe recurrence of hepatitis C virus infection on the liver graft. AIDS 2013;27:2655-7.

Antonini TM, Sebagh M, Roque-Afonso AM, et al. Fibrosing cholestatic hepatitis in HIV/HCV co-infected transplant patients-usefulness of early markers after liver transplantation. Am J Transplant 2011;11:1686-95. (Abstract)

Antonini T, Coilly A, Samuel D, Haim-Boukobza S, Duclos-Vallee JC, Sebagh M. Triple anti-viral C therapy with Boceprevir or Telaprevir in HIV/HCV coinfected patients after liver transplantation. Boston, Massachusetts
November 7 – 8. Abstract 1959. Hepatology, 58, Issue S1:1156A

ART-CC (The Antiretroviral Therapy Cohort Collaboration). Causes of death in HIV-1-infected patients treated with antiretroviral therapy, 1996-2006: collaborative analysis of 13 HIV cohort studies. Clin Infect Dis 2010;50:1387-96.

Baccarani U, Adani GL, Bragantini F, et al. Long-term outcomes of orthotopic liver transplantation in human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients and comparison with human immunodeficiency virus-negative cases. Transplant Proc 2011;43:1119-22. (Abstract)

Back D, Gibbons S. The University of Liverpool HIV drug interactions website. (Accessed January 02, 2014 at http://www.hiv-druginteractions.org.)

Beauchamp E, Rollet K, Walmsley S, Wong DK, Cooper C, Klein MB. Missed opportunities for hepatocellular carcinoma screening in an HIV/hepatitis C virus-coinfected cohort. Clin Infect Dis 2013;57:1339-42

Bekker J, Ploem S, de Jong KP. Early hepatic artery thrombosis after liver transplantation: a systematic review of the incidence, outcome and risk factors. Am J Transplant 2009;9:746-57. (Abstract)

Berenguer J, Alejos B, Hernando V, et al. Trends in mortality according to hepatitis C virus serostatus in the era of combination antiretroviral therapy. AIDS 2012;26:2241-6.

Berretta M, Garlassi E, Cacopardo B, et al. Hepatocellular carcinoma in HIV-infected patients: check early, treat hard. Oncologist 2011;16:1258-69. (Abstract)

Blumberg E, Barin B, Olthoff K, et al. Bacterial Infections in HIV Positive Transplant Recipients. American Transplant Congress. May 31- June 4 2008. Toronto Canada. Abstract# 17.

Blumberg EA, Stock P. Solid organ transplantation in the HIV-infected patient. Am J Transplant 2009;9:Suppl 4: S131-5

Bradshaw D, Matthews G, Danta M. Sexually transmitted hepatitis C infection: the new epidemic in MSM? Curr Opin Infect Dis 2013;26:66-72.

Brau N, Fox RK, Xiao P, et al. Presentation and outcome of hepatocellular carcinoma in HIV-infected patients: a U.S.-Canadian multicenter study. J Hepatol 2007;47:527-37 (Abstract)

Bruix J, Sherman M; American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases. Management of hepatocellular carcinoma: an update. Hepatology 2011;53:1020-2. (Abstract)

Bruno R, Puoti M, Sacchi P, et al. Management of hepatocellular carcinoma in human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients. J Hepatol 2006;44:S146-S150. (Abstract)

Cahn P, Pozniak AL, Mingrone H, et al. Dolutegravir versus raltegravir in antiretroviral-experienced, integrase-inhibitor-naive adults with HIV: week 48 results from the randomised, double-blind, non-inferiority SAILING study. Lancet 2013;382:700-8

Carrión JA, Navasa M, Forns X. Retransplantation in patients with hepatitis C recurrence after liver transplantation. J Hepatol 2010;53:962-70. (Abstract)

Castellino S, Moss L, Wagner D, et al. Metabolism, excretion, and mass balance of the HIV-1 integrase inhibitor dolutegravir in humans. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 2013;57:3536-46

Castells L, Esteban J, Bilbao I, et al. Early antiviral treatment of hepatitis C virus recurrence after liver transplantation in HIV-infected patients. Antiviral Therapy 2006;11:1061-70. (Abstract)

Charlton M, Gane E, Manss MP, et al. Sofosbuvir and Ribavirin for the Treatment of Established Recurrent Hepatitis C Infection After Liver Transplantation: Preliminary Results of a Prospective, Multicenter Study. Hepatology 2013;58: LB-2.

Cherian PT, Alrabih W, Douiri A, et al. Liver transplantation in human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients: Procoagulant, but is antithrombotic prophylaxis required? Liver Transpl 2012;18:82-8. (Abstract)

Cocchi S, Franceschini E, Meschiari M, et al. Aseptic osteonecrosis: a newly diagnosed complication in HIV-infected patients undergoing liver transplantation. Transplantation 2012;94(3):e20-1.

Coffin CS, Stock PG, Dove LM, et al. Virologic and clinical outcomes of hepatitis B virus infection in HIV-HBV coinfected transplant recipients. Am J Transplant 2010;10:1268-75. (Abstract)

Cooper C, Cameron DW: Effect of alcohol use on the impact of effective antiretroviral therapy for HIV coinfection on plasma HCV levels. Clin Infect Dis 2005;41:S105-9. (Abstract)

Crum NF, Riffenburgh RH, Wegner S, et al. Comparisons of causes of death and mortality rates among HIV-infected persons: analysis of the pre, early, and late HAART (highly active antiretroviral therapy) eras. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr 2006;41:194-200.

D:A:D, The Data Collection on Adverse Events of Anti-HIV Drugs Study group. Liver-related deaths in persons infected with the human immunodeficiency virus, The D:A:D Study. Arch Intern Med 2006;166:1632-41. (Abstract)

de Franchis R; Baveno V Faculty. Revising consensus in portal hypertension: report of the Baveno V consensus workshop on methodology of diagnosis and therapy in portal hypertension. J Hepatol. 2010 Oct;53(4):762-8.

de Vera ME, Dvorchik I, Tom K, et al. Survival of liver trasplant patients coinfected with HIV and HCV is adversely impacted by recurrent Hepatitis C. Am J Transplant 2006;6:2983-93. (Abstract)

Deeks ED. Cobicistat: A Review of Its Use as a Pharmacokinetic Enhancer of Atazanavir and Darunavir in Patients with HIV-1 Infection. Drugs 2013 Dec 17. [Epub ahead of print]

Di Benedetto F, De Ruvo N, Berretta M, et al. Don´t deny liver transplantation to HIV patients with hepatocellular carcinoma in the highly active antiretroviral therapy era. J Clin Oncol 2006;24:26-7. (Abstract)

Di Benedetto F, De Ruvo N, Berretta N, et al. Hepatocellular carcinoma in HIV patients treated by liver transplantation. EJSO 2008;34: 422-7. (Abstract)

Di Benedetto F, Tarantino G, De Ruvo N, et al. University of Modena experience in HIV-positive patients undergoing liver transplantation. Transplant Proc 2011;43:1114-8. (Abstract)

Di Benedetto F, Tarantino G, Ercolani G, et al. Multicenter italian experience in liver transplantation for hepatocellular carcinoma in HIV-infected patients. Oncologist 2013;18:592-9.

Duclos-Vallée J, Féray C, Sebagh M, et al. Survival and recurrence of hepatitis C after liver transplantation in patients coinfected with human immunodeficiency virus and hepatitis C virus. Hepatology 2008;47:407-17. (Abstract)

Esteban JI, Sauleda S, Quer J. The changing epidemiology of hepatitis C virus infection in Europe. J Hepatol 2008;48:148-62.

European Association For The Study Of The Liver. EASL Clinical Practice Guidelines: Management of hepatitis C virus infection. J Hepatol 2013. Dec 4. doi: 10.1016/j.jhep.2013.11.003. [Epub ahead of print]

European Association for the Study of the Liver. EASL clinical practice guidelines on the management of ascites, spontaneous bacterial peritonitis, and hepatorenal syndrome. J Hepatol 2010;53:397-417. (Abstract)

European Association For The Study Of The Liver; European Organisation For Research And Treatment Of Cancer. EASL-EORTC clinical practice guidelines: management of hepatocellular carcinoma. J Hepatol. 2012 Apr;56(4):908-43.

Executive summary of the Consensus Document of GeSIDA and Spanish Secretariat for the National Plan on AIDS on combined antiretroviral treatment in adults infected by the human immunodeficiency virus (January 2013). Enferm Infecc Microbiol Clin 2013;31:604-13.

Fox AN, Vagefi PA, Stock PG. Liver transplantation in HIV patients. Semin Liver Dis 2012;32:177-85

Frassetto L, Floren L, Barin B, et al. Changes in clearance, volume and bioavailability of immunosuppressants when given with HAART in HIV-1 infected liver and kidney transplant recipients. Biopharm Drug Dispos 2013;34:442-51.

Fung J, Eghtesad B, Patel-Tom K, DeVera M, Chapman H, Ragni M. Liver transplantation in patients with HIV infection. Liver Transpl 2004;10:Suppl 2:S39-S53. (Abstract)

Fung LT, Roland ME, Stock PG. Review of solid-organ transplantation in HIV-infected patients. Transplantation 2003;75:425-9. (Abstract)

García-Samaniego J, Rodríguez M, Berenguer J, et al. Hepatocellular carcinoma in HIV-infected patients with chronic hepatitis C. Am J Gastroenterol 2001;96(1):179–183.

Gastaca M, Agüero F, Rimola A et al. Liver retransplantation in HIV-infected patients: a prospective cohort study. Am J Transplant. 2012;30 Suppl 2:76-85; 1.

Gastaca M, Valdivieso A, Montejo M, Bustamante J, de Urbina JO. Is antithrombotic prophylaxis required after liver transplantation in HIV-infected recipients? Am J Transplant 2012;12:2258. doi: 10.1111/j.1600-6143.2012.04132.x. Epub.

Gastaca, M, Agüero F, Peter S, Grossi P, Rockstroh J, Agarwal K, Garzoni C, Barcan L, Maltez F, Rimola A, Miro JM. Liver Retransplantation in HIV-Infected Patients: A Multicenter and Multinational Cohort Study. 13th American Transplant Congress (ATC) Seattle, WA. May 18-22, 2013. Am J transplant; 13 Supplement: 5 Pages: 146-146.

GESIDA, Panel de expertos, Secretaría del Plan Nacional sobre el Sida (SPNS) y Asociación Española para el Estudio del Hígado (AEEH). [Recommendations of Gesida/PNS/AEEH for the management and treatment of the adult patient co-infected with HIV and hepatitis A, B and C virus]. Enferm Infecc Microbiol Clin 2010;28:31.e1-31.

Ghany M, Strader D, Thomas D, Seeff LB, American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases. Diagnosis, Management, and Treatment of Hepatitis C: An Update. Hepatology 2009;49:1335-74.

Ginès P, Fernández J, Durand F, Saliba F. Management of critically-ill cirrhotic patients. J Hepatol 2012:56(Suppl1):S13-S24.

Graham CS, Baden LR, Yu E, et al. Influence of human immunodeficiency virus infection on the course of hepatitis C virus infection: a meta-analysis. Clin Infect Dis 2001;33:562-9. (Abstract)

Grossi PA, Tumietto F, Costigliola P, et al. Liver Transplantation In HIV-Infected Individuals: Results Of The Italian National Program. Transplant International 2005;18:S11.

Haim-Boukobza S, Balabanian K, Teicher E, et al. Blockade of CCR5 to protect the liver graft in HIV/HCV co-infected patients. J Hepatol 2013;59:613-5.

Harbell J, Fung J, Nissen N, et al. Surgical complications in 275 HIV-infected liver and/or kidney transplantation recipients. Surgery 2012;152:376-81. doi: 10.1016/j.surg.2012.06.012.

Hernandez MD, Sherman KE. HIV/hepatitis C coinfection natural history and disease progression. Curr Opin HIV AIDS. 2011;6(6):478-82.

Hernando V, Perez-Cachafeiro S, Lewden C, et al. All-cause and liver-related mortality in HIV positive subjects compared to the general population: differences by HCV co-infection. J Hepatol 2012;57:743-51.

Hezode C, Lonjon I, Roudot-Thoraval F, et al. Impact of smoking on histological liver lesions in chronic hepatitis C. Gut 2003;52:126-9. (Abstract)

Ioannou GN, Bryson CL, Weiss NS, Miller R, Scott JD, Boyko EJ. The prevalence of cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with human immunodeficiency virus infection. Hepatology 2013;57:249-57

Ishida JH, Peters MG, Jin C, et al. Influence of cannabis use on severity of hepatitis C disease. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2008;6:69-75. (Abstract)

Joshi D, O´Grady J, Dieterich D, Gazzard B, Agarwal K. Increasing burden of liver disease in patients with HIV infection. Lancet 2011;377:1198-209. (Abstract)

Karageorgopoulos DE, El-Sherif O, Bhagani S, Khoo SH. Drug interactions between antiretrovirals and new or emerging direct-acting antivirals in HIV/hepatitis C virus coinfection. Curr Opin Infect Dis 2014;27:36-45.

Kiser JJ, Burton JR Jr, Everson GT. Drug-drug interactions during antiviral therapy for chronic hepatitis C. Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol 2013;10:596-606

Konopnicki D, Mocroft A, de Wit S, et al. Hepatitis B and HIV: prevalence, AIDS progression, response to highly active antiretroviral therapy and increased mortality in the EuroSIDA cohort. AIDS 2005;19:593-601. (Abstract)

Kosi L, Reiberger T, Payer BA, et al. Five-year on-treatment efficacy of lamivudine-, tenofovir- and tenofovir + emtricitabine-based HAART in HBV-HIV-coinfected patients. J Viral Hepat 2012;19:801-10.

Krishnan K, Poordad F, Reddy R, et al. Safety and Efficacy of Antiviral Therapy in Hepatitis C Virus (HCV)-Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV) Coinfected Liver Transplant Recipients: Preliminary HIVTR Results. American Transplant Congress 2008. May 31- June 4 2008. Toronto Canada. Abstract #1618.

Labarga P, Barreiro P, Mira JA, et al. Impact of IL28B polymorphisms on response to peginterferon and ribavirin in HIV-hepatitis C virus-coinfected patients with prior nonresponse or relapse. AIDS 2011;25:1131-3. (Abstract)

Lewden C, Salmon D, Morlat P, et al. Causes of death among human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)-infected adults in the era of potent antiretroviral therapy: emerging role of hepatitis and cancers, persistent role of AIDS. Int J Epidemiol 2005;34:121-30. (Abstract)

Limketkai BN, Mehta SH, Sutcliffe CG, et al. Relationship of liver disease stage and antiviral therapy with liver-related events and death in adults coinfected with HIV/HCV. JAMA 2012;308:370-8.

Liu LU, Schiano TD, Lau N, et al. Survival and risk of recidivism in methadone-dependent patients undergoing liver transplantation. Am J Transplant 2003;3:1273-7. (Abstract)

Llovet JM, Fuster J, Bruix J. The Barcelona approach: diagnosis, staging, and treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma. Liver Transpl 2004;10:Suppl 1: S115-S120. (Abstract)

Lopez-Dieguez M, Montes ML, Pascual-Pareja JF, et al. The natural history of liver cirrhosis in HIV-hepatitis C virus-coinfected patients. AIDS 2011;25:899-904. (Abstract)

Macias J, Marquez M, Tellez F, et al. Risk of liver decompensation among HIV/hepatitis C virus-coinfected individuals with advanced fibrosis: implications for the timing of therapy. Clin Infect Dis 2013;57:1401-8

Macias J, Viloria MM, Rivero A, et al. Lack of short-term increase in serum mediators of fibrogenesis and in non-invasive markers of liver fibrosis in HIV/hepatitis C virus-coinfected patients starting maraviroc-based antiretroviral therapy. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis 2012;31:2083-8

Maida I, Nunez M, Gonzalez-Lahoz J, Soriano V. Liver transplantation in HIV-HCV coinfected candidates: what is the most appropriate time for evaluation? AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses 2005;21:599-601. (Abstract)

Martel-Laferriere V, Bichoupan K, Dieterich DT. Hepatitis C Direct-acting Antiviral Agents: Changing the Paradigm of Hepatitis C Treatment in HIV-infected Patients. J Clin Gastroenterol 2013 Oct 28. [Epub ahead of print]

Mauss S, Valenti W, DePhamphilis J. Risk factors for hepatic decompensation in patients with HIV/HCV coinfection and liver cirrhosis during interferon-based therapy. AIDS 2004; 18:F21-F25. (Abstract)

Merchante N, Giron-Gonzalez JA, Gonzalez-Serrano M, et al. Survival and prognostic factors of HIV-infected patients with HCV-related end-stage liver disease. AIDS 2006;20:49-57. (Abstract)

Merchante N, Rivero-Juarez A, Tellez F, et al. Liver stiffness predicts clinical outcome in human immunodeficiency virus/hepatitis C virus-coinfected patients with compensated liver cirrhosis. Hepatology 2012;56:228-38.

Mindikoglu A, Regev A, Magder L. Impact of human immunodeficiency virus on survival after liver transplantation: analysis of United Network for Organ Sharing database. Transplantation 2008;85:359-68. (Abstract)

Miró JM, Aguero F, Laguno M, et al. Liver trasplantation in HIV/Hepatitis coinfection. J HIV ther 2007;12:24-35. (Abstract)

Miró JM, Blanes M, Norman F, Martin-Davila P. Infections in solid organ transplantation in special situations: HIV-infection and immigration. Enferm Infecc Microbiol Clin 2012;30:Suppl 2:76-85

Miró JM, Manzardo C, Brunet M et al. Combination of Raltegravir Plus Lamivudine or Emtricitabine Plus Abacavir or Tenofovir is Safe, Effective and Prevents Pharmacokinetic Interactions With Immunosuppressive Drugs in HIV-infected Solid Organ Transplant Recipients. CROI 2011, Boston, Feb 27- Mar 2, 2011.Abstract N-131.

Miró JM, Montejo M, Blanes M, Abradelo M, del S, Castells L, Rafecas A, Manzardo C, Perez I, Rimola A. Outcome of 215 HCV/HIV-Coinfected Liver Transplant Recipients: A Prospective Multicenter Study. CROI 2014, Boston, March 3 to March 6, 2014**.** Abstract (accepted)

Miró JM, Montejo M, Castells L, et al. Outcome of HCV/HIV-coinfected liver transplant recipients: a prospective and multicenter cohort study. Am J Transplant 2012;12:1866-76.

Miró JM, Torre-Cisnero J, Moreno A, et al. [GESIDA/GESITRA-SEIMC, PNS and ONT consensus document on solid organ transplant (SOT) in HIV-infected patients in Spain (March, 2005)]. Enferm Infecc Microbiol Clin 2005;23:353-62. (Abstract)

Mohsen AH, Easterbook PJ, Taylar C, et al. Impact of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) on the progression of liver fibrosis in Hepatitis C virus infected patients. Gut 2003; 52:1035-40. (Abstract)

Moreno A, Cervera C, Fortun J, et al. Epidemiology and outcome of infections in human immunodeficiency virus/hepatitis c virus-coinfected liver transplant recipients: A FIPSE/GESIDA Prospective Cohort Study. Liver Transpl 2012;18:70-81. (Abstract)

Neff GW, Sherman KE, Eghtesad B, Fung J. Review article: current status of liver transplantation in HIV-infected patients. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2004;20:993-1000. (Abstract)

Nissen NN, Barin B, Stock PG. Malignancy in the HIV-infected patients undergoing liver and kidney transplantation. Curr Opin Oncol 2012;24:517-21. doi: 10.1097/CCO.0b013e328355e0d7.

Norris S, Taylor C, Muiesan P, et al. Outcomes of liver transplantation in HIV-infected individuals: the impact of HCV and HBV infection. Liver Transpl 2004;10:1271-8. (Abstract)

O'Grady J, Taylor C, Brook G. Guidelines for liver transplantation in patients with HIV infection (2005). HIV Med 2005;6:Suppl 2:149-53. (Abstract)

Palella FJ Jr, Baker RK, Moorman AC, et al. Mortality in the highly active antiretroviral therapy era: changing causes of death and disease in the HIV outpatient study. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr 2006;43:27-34. (Abstract)

Panel on Antiretroviral Guidelines for Adults and Adolescents. Guidelines for the use of antiretroviral agents in HIV-1-infected adults and adolescents. Department of Health and Human Services. Available at http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/ContentFiles/AdultandAdolescentGL.pdf. [Accessed 03 January 2014]

Perez Cachafeiro S, Del Amo J, Iribarren JA, et al. Decrease in serial prevalence of coinfection with hepatitis C virus among HIV-infected patients in Spain, 1997-2006. Clin Infect Dis 2009;48:1467-70. doi: 10.1086/598333.

Perry CM. Elvitegravir/Cobicistat/Emtricitabine/Tenofovir Disoproxil Fumarate Single-Tablet Regimen (Stribild((R)): A Review of Its Use in the Management of HIV-1 Infection in Adults. Drugs 2014;74:75-97. doi: 10.1007/s40265-013-0158-4

Pfitzmann R, Benscheidt B, Langrehr JM, et al. Trends and experiences in liver retransplantation over 15 years. Liver Transpl 2007;13:248-57. (Abstract)

Pineda JA, Aguilar-Guisado M, Rivero A, et al. Natural history of compensated hepatitis C virus-related cirrhosis in HIV-infected patients. Clin Infect Dis 2009;49:1274-82. (Abstract)

Pineda JA, Garcia-Garcia JA, Aguilar-Guisado M, et al. Clinical progression of hepatitis C virus-related chronic liver disease in human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients undergoing highly active antiretroviral therapy. Hepatology 2007;46:622-30.

Pineda JA, Recio E, Camacho A, et al. Liver stiffness as a predictor of esophageal varices requiring therapy in HIV/hepatitis C virus-coinfected patients with cirrhosis. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr 2009;51:445-9. (Abstract)

Pineda JA, Romero-Gomez M, Diaz-Garcia F, et al. HIV coinfection shortens the survival of patients with hepatitis C virus-related decompensated cirrhosis. Hepatology 2005; 41:779-89. (Abstract)

Polard E, Camus C, Abault AY, et al. Retransplantation for acute liver failure due to combined antiviral agents in an HIV-HCV coinfected liver transplant recipient. Transplantation 2005;80:1136-8. (Abstract)

Poynard T, Mathurin P, Lai CL, et al. A comparison of fibrosis progression in chronic liver diseases. J Hepatol 2003;38:257-65. (Abstract)

Primeggia J, Timpone JG Jr, Kumar PN. Pharmacologic issues of antiretroviral agents and immunosuppressive regimens in HIV-infected solid organ transplant recipients. Infect Dis Clin North Am 2013;27:473-86

Puoti M, Bruno R, Soriano V, et al. Hepatocellular carcinoma in HIV-infected patients: epidemiological features, clinical presentation and outcome. AIDS 2004;18:2285-93. (Abstract)

Qurishi N, Kreuzberg C, Luchters G, et al. Effect of antiretroviral therapy on liver-related mortality in patients with HIV and hepatitis C virus coinfection. Lancet 2003;362: 1708-13. (Abstract)

Radecke K, Fruhauf NR, Miller M, et al. Outcome after orthotopic liver transplantation in five HIV-infected patients with virus hepatitis-induced cirrhosis. Liver Int 2005;25:101-8. (Abstract)

Ragni MV, Belle SH, Im K, et al. Survival of human immunodeficiency virus-infected liver transplant recipients. J Infect Dis 2003;188:1412-20. (Abstract)

Ragni MV, Eghtesad B, Schlesinger KW, et al. Pretransplant survival is shorter in HIV-positive than HIV-negative subjects with end-stage liver disease. Liver Transpl 2005;11:1425-30. (Abstract)

Reese PP, Yeh H, Thomasson AM, et al. Transplant center volume and outcomes after liver retransplantation. Am J Transplant 2009;9:309-17. (Abstract)

Rockstroh J, Bhagani S, Benhamo Y, et al. EACS Executive Committee European AIDS Clinical Society (EACS) guidelines for the clinical management and treatment of chronic hepatitis B and C coinfection in HIV-infected adults. HIV Med 2008;9:82-8. (Abstract)

Rockstroh JK, Bhagani S. Managing HIV/hepatitis C co-infection in the era of direct acting antivirals. BMC Med 2013;11:234.

Rockstroh JK, Mocroft A, Soriano V, et al. Influence of hepatitis C virus infection on HIV-1 disease progression and response to highly active antiretroviral therapy. J Infect Dis 2005;192:992-1002. (Abstract)

Roland M, Stock PG. Liver Transplantation in HIV-Infected Recipients. Seminar in Liver Disease 2006;26:273-84. (Abstract)

Roland ME, Barin B, Carlson L, et al. HIV-infected liver and kidney transplant recipients: 1- and 3-year outcomes. Am J Transplant 2008;8:355-65. (Abstract)

Roland ME, Stock PG. Review of solid-organ transplantation in HIV-infected patients. Transplantation 2003;75:425-9. (Abstract)

Rosenthal E, Pialoux G, Bernard N, et al. Liver-related mortality in human-immunodeficiency-virus-infected patients between 1995 and 2003 in the French GERMIVIC Joint Study Group Network (MORTAVIC 2003 Study). J Viral Hepat 2007; 14:183-88. (Abstract)

Rosenthal E, Salmon-Ceron D, Lewden C, et al. Liver-related deaths in HIV-infected patients between 1995 and 2005 in the French GERMIVIC Joint Study Group Network (Mortavic 2005 study in collaboration with the Mortalite 2005 survey, ANRS EN19). HIV Med 2009;10:282-289.

Sahasrabuddhe VV, Shiels MS, McGlynn KA, Engels EA. The risk of hepatocellular carcinoma among individuals with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome in the United States. Cancer 2012;118:6226-33.
Salmon-Ceron D, Rosenthal E, Lewden C, et al. Emerging role of hepatocellular carcinoma among liver-related causes of deaths in HIV-infected patients: The French national Mortalité 2005 study. J Hepatol 2009;50:736-45. (Abstract)
Samuel D, Weber R, Stock P, et al. Are HIV-infected patients candidates for liver transplantation? J Hepatol 2008;48:697-707. (Abstract)
Shaw E, Castellote J, Santín M, et al. Clinical features and outcome of spontaneous bacterial peritonitis in HIV-infected cirrhotic patients: a case-control study. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis 2006;25:291-8. (Abstract)
Soriano V, Puoti M, Peters M, et al. Care of HIV patients with chronic hepatitis B: updated recommendations from the HIV-Hepatitis B Virus International Panel. AIDS 2008;22:1399-410. (Abstract)
Soriano V, Vispo E, Labarga P, Medrano J, Barreiro P. Viral hepatitis and HIV co-infection. Antiviral Res 2010;85:303-15. doi: 10.1016/j.antiviral.2009.10.021. Epub.
Spengler U. Management of end-stage liver disease in HIV/hepatitis C virus co-infection. Curr Opin HIV AIDS 2011;6:527-33. (Abstract)
Stock P, Roland M. Evolving clinical strategies for transplantation in the HIV-positive recipient. Transplantation 2007;84:563-71. (Abstract)
Subramanian A, Sulkowski M, Barin B, et al. MELD score is an important predictor of pretransplantation mortality in HIV-infected liver transplant candidates. Gastroenterology 2010;138:159-64. (Abstract)
Sulkowski MS. HCV therapy in HIV-infected patients. Liver Int 2013;33:Suppl 1:63-7.
Tateo M, Roque-Afonso AM, Antonini TM, et al. Long-term follow-up of liver transplanted HIV/hepatitis B virus coinfected patients: perfect control of hepatitis B virus replication and absence of mitochondrial toxicity. AIDS 2009;23:1069-76. (Abstract)
Tateo M, Sebagh M, Bralet MP, et al. A new indication for liver transplantation: nodular regenerative hyperplasia in human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients. Liver Transpl 2008;14:1194-8. (Abstract)
Tedaldi EM, Baker RK, Moorman AC, et al. Influence of coinfection with hepatitis C virus on morbidity and mortality due to human immunodeficiency virus infection in the era of highly active antiretroviral therapy. Clin Infect Dis 2003;36:363-7. (Abstract)
Teicher E, Duclos-Vallee JC. Opportunistic infections after liver transplantation in patients infected with human immunodeficiency virus. Liver Transpl 2012;18:376-7.
Terrault NA, Roland ME, Schiano T, et al. Outcomes of liver transplant recipients with hepatitis C and human immunodeficiency virus coinfection. Liver Transpl 2012;18:716-26. doi: 10.1002/lt.23411.
Thompson MA, Aberg JA, Hoy JF, et al. Antiretroviral treatment of adult HIV infection: 2012 recommendations of the International Antiviral Society-USA panel. JAMA 2012;308:387-402. doi: 10.1001/jama.2012.7961.
Thorpe J, Saeed S, Moodie EE, Klein MB. Antiretroviral treatment interruption leads to progression of liver fibrosis in HIV-hepatitis C virus co-infection. AIDS 2011;25:967-75. (Abstract)
Toronto General Hospital's Hepatitis C Drug Information Web site. Antiretroviral Treatment Options for Patients on DAAs - Summary..http://www.hcvdruginfo.ca [accessed january 15, 2014)
Tricot, L, Teicher E, Peytavin G, Zucman D, Conti F and Calmus Y. Safety and efficacy of Raltegravir in HIV-infected transplant patients cotreated with immunosuppressive drugs. Am J Transplant 2009;9:1-7. (Abstract)
Tsochatzis E, Papatheodoridis GV, Manolakopoulos S, Tiniakos DG, Manesis EK, Archimandritis AJ. Smoking is associated with steatosis and severe fibrosis in chronic hepatitis C but not B. Scand J Gastroenterol 2009;44:752-9. doi: 10.1080/00365520902803515
Tsochatzis EA, Bosch J, Burroughs AK. New therapeutic paradigm for patients with cirrhosis. Hepatology 2012;56:1983-92. doi: 10.1002/hep.25915.
Tuset M, Miró JM, Codina C, Ribas J, Ed. Guía de interacciones en HIV. (Accessed January 02, 2014 at http://www.interaccionesHIV.com.)

van Maarseveen EM, Rogers CC, Trofe-Clark J, van Zuilen AD, Mudrikova T. Drug-drug interactions between antiretroviral and immunosuppressive agents in HIV-infected patients after solid organ transplantation: a review. AIDS Patient Care STDS 2012;26:568-81. doi: 10.1089/apc.2012.0169.

Vennarecci G, Ettorre GM, Antonini M, et al. Liver transplantation in HIV-positive patients. Transplant Proc 2007;39:1936-8. (Abstract)

Vibert E, Duclos-Vallée JC, Ghigna MR, et al. Liver transplantation for hepatocellular carcinoma: The impact of human immunodeficiency virus infection. Hepatology 2011;53:475-82.

Vogel M, Voigt E, Schäfer N, et al. Orthotopic liver transplantation in human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)-positive patients: outcome of 7 patients from the Bonn cohort. Liver Transpl 2005;11:1515-21. (Abstract)

Waki K, Sugawara Y. Implications of integrase inhibitors for HIV-infected transplantation recipients: raltegravir and dolutegravir (S/GSK 1349572). Biosci Trends 2011;5:189-91.

Weber R, Ruppik M, Rickenbach M, et al. Decreasing mortality and changing patterns of causes of death in the Swiss HIV Cohort Study. HIV Med 2013;14:195-207.

Weber R, Sabin CA, Friis-Moller N, et al. Liver-related deaths in persons infected with the human immunodeficiency virus: the D:A:D study. Arch Intern Med 2006;166:1632-1641.

Wilkins E, Nelson M, British HIV Association guidelines for the management of hepatitis viruses in adults infected with HIV 2013. HIV Medicine (2013), 14 (Suppl. 4), 1–71. Available from: http://www.bhiva.org/hepatitis-2013.aspx [Accessed 03 January 2014]

Wyles DL, Gerber J. Antiretroviral drug pharmacokinetics in hepatitis with hepatic dysfunction. Clin Infect Dis 2005;40:174-81. (Abstract)

Xirouchakis E, Triantos C, Manousou P, et al. Pegylated-interferon and ribavirin in liver transplant candidates and recipients with HCV cirrhosis: systematic review and meta-analysis of prospective controlled studies. J Viral Hepat 2008;15:699-709.

23. Metabolic Liver Diseases: Hemochromatosis

Claus Niederau

Definition and classification of iron overload diseases

Hereditary hemochromatosis is classified into 4 subtypes (Table 1). Type 1 is the well known form of iron overload due to an autosomal-recessive genetic metabolic malfunction; the homozygous C282Y mutation of the HFE gene on chromosome 6 accounts for more than 90% of clinical phenotypes in populations of Caucasian origin (Feder 1996). The mutation leads to an inadequately high intestinal iron absorption that after decades may cause iron overload and damage to various organs (Figure 1). Types 2a and 2b of genetic hemochromatosis are juvenile forms of iron overload that lead to a severe outcome prior to age 30, with cardiomyopathy and hypogonadism. The corresponding mutations are located in the hemojuvelin and hepcidin genes, respectively (Roetto 1999). Type 3 has mainly been described in Italian families and refers to a mutation in the transferrin receptor 2 gene (Girelli 2002). Clinical consequences of type 3 hemochromatosis are similar to type 1. Types 2 and 3 are autosomal-recessive traits. The mutations of the autosomal-dominant type 4 hemochromatosis are located in the gene coding for the basolateral iron transporter ferroportin 1 (Njajou 2001). In contrast to the other types, iron is accumulated in type 4 mainly in macrophages; ferritin values are markedly elevated although transferrin saturation is only slightly higher.

Secondary hemochromatosis is usually caused by multiple blood transfusions in hemolytic anemias such as thalassemia, sickle cell anemia and myelodysplasia syndrome. Iron first accumulates in RES macrophages and is later transferred to parenchymal cells. With frequent blood transfusions, iron may accumulate faster than with genetic hemochromatosis; iron overload often leads to severe cardiomyopathy and liver cirrhosis, limiting effective prognosis. Therapy consists of iron chelators because phlebotomies cannot be done due to the underlying anemia. This review will focus on type 1 HFE hemochromatosis, the most prevalent genetic form in Germany. Most consequences of iron overload are similar, whatever the

cause. Thus, the pathophysiology of tissue and organ damage by iron excess is discussed in detail only for HFE hemochromatosis.

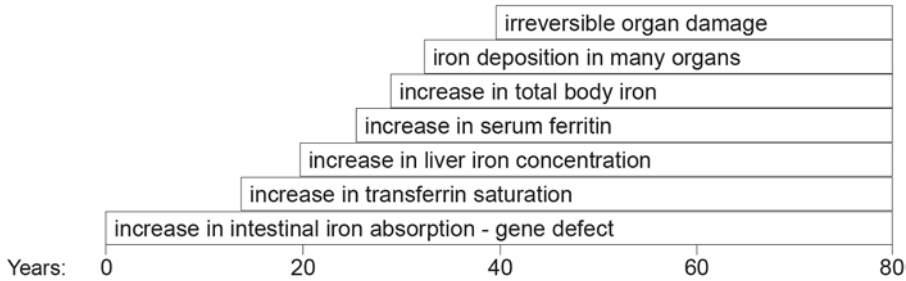


Figure 1. Scheme of natural history of type 1 genetic hemochromatosis

Table 1. Classification of hemochromatosis

I) Genetic hemochromatosis				
Types	**Gene defect on**	**Affected gene**	**Inheritance**	**High prevalence**
Type 2a	Chromosome 1	Hemojuvelin	Autosomal-recessive	Juvenile form
Type 2b	Chromosome 19	Hepcidin	Autosomal-recessive	Juvenile form
Type 3	Chromosome 7	Transferrin receptor 2	Autosomal-recessive	Italy
Type 4	Chromosome 2	Ferroportin 1	Autosomal-dominant	Italy
Neonatal	Unknown	Unknown	Unknown	Very rare
Others	Unknown	Unknown	Unknown	Of non-Caucasian origin
II) Secondary hemochromatosis				
a) Chronic anemias (thalassemia, sickle cell disease, MDS, other rare hemolytic anemias)				
b) Multiple blood transfusions in general				
c) Long-term oral intake of high amounts of iron (diet-related or IV)				
III) Non-classified, ill-defined iron overload syndromes				
a) iron overload in Bantu Africans				
b) iron overload in aceruloplasminemia				

Type 1 HFE hemochromatosis

History

The association between liver cirrhosis, pigment deposits in the liver, and diabetes mellitus was recognized over a century ago (Trosseau 1865, Troisier 1871, Hanot and Schachmann 1886). The term hemochromatosis was first introduced in the 19th

century (Recklinghausen 1889), but was not generally accepted until used as the title of a classic monograph (Sheldon 1935). The controversy over whether hemochromatosis was merely a form of alcoholic liver cirrhosis (MacDonald 1960) or a genetic error of iron metabolism (Sheldon 1935, Crosby 1966) lasted almost a century until the association between special HLA haplotypes and hemochromatosis which recognized the genetic nature of the disease was described (Simon 1975). The mode of inheritance was identified as an autosomal recessive disorder (Simon 1977). Finally, the major mutation on the HFE gene associated with clinical manifestations was identified (Feder 1996).

Epidemiology

Type 1 hemochromatosis is probably the most prevalent genetic metabolic error in Caucasian populations (Adams 2005). The prevalence of C282Y homozygotes is approximately 0.5% in central Europe and in the Caucasian population of North America; the prevalence of C282Y and H63D heterozygotes approaches 40% in similar populations (Adams 2005). Phenotypic expression also depends on several non-genetic factors such the amount of dietary iron and blood loss (Figure 2). For example, females develop clinical consequences of iron overload 5-8 times less frequently and 10-20 years later than males due to menses. It is now widely accepted that not all C282Y homozygous men will develop the full clinical manifestation of hemochromatosis. It is unknown, however, whether 5% or 50% will show clinical disease during their lifetime and what factors determine that phenotype.

As mentioned previously, the homozygous C282Y mutation accounts for more than 90% of the clinical phenotype in Caucasian populations (Feder 1996, Adams 2005) (Table 2). A point mutation at H63D is also frequently identified in the HFE gene as well as other less frequent mutations. None of these gene alterations or polymorphisms, found in up to 40% of Caucasians, correlates with the phenotype. A subject with a C282Y variation on one allele and a H63D variation on the other is called a "compound heterozygote" (Table 2). Only a small percentage of such compound heterozygotes are at risk for clinical consequences of iron overload. C282Y and H63D heterozygotes are at no risk of iron overload (Table 2). In non-Caucasian populations other genes may be involved in causing iron overload.

Etiology and pathogenesis

Intestinal iron absorption and iron losses are finely balanced under physiological conditions. Approximately 10% of the total daily intake (10-20 mg) is absorbed by the small intestine (1-2 mg). However, subjects with the homozygous C282Y mutation may absorb up to 20% of iron intake; i.e., up to 2-4 mg/day. Thus, homozygotes have an excessive iron intake of approximately 1 mg/day. It may therefore take several decades until iron stores approach 10 g above which organ damage is considered to start to occur. Many patients at the clinical end stage of hemochromatosis, including liver cirrhosis and diabetes mellitus, have total body iron stores of 20-30 g. Their intestinal iron absorption is downregulated when iron stores increase, as it is in patients with genetic hemochromatosis. This downregulation, however, occurs on an increased level when compared to subjects without the HFE gene mutation. Correspondingly, intestinal iron absorption is

massively increased in patients with hemochromatosis when iron stores have been depleted by phlebotomy. Phlebotomies should be continued after iron depletion in order to prevent reaccumulation. These regulatory processes however do not explain how HFE gene mutations cause the increase in intestinal iron absorption since the HFE gene product is neither an iron transporter nor an iron reductase or oxidase. Only recently have carriers and regulators of cellular iron uptake and release been identified (Pietrangelo 2002, Fleming 2002, Townsend 2002, Fletcher 2002).

It has also become increasingly evident that some of them interact with the HFE gene product in the regulation of intestinal iron absorption (Pietrangelo 2002, Fleming 2002, Townsend 2002, Fletcher 2002). Recent studies have shown that the Nramp2 protein is the luminal iron carrier. Shortly thereafter, the luminal iron reductase was identified as the Dcytb protein (duodenal cytochrome B) (Pietrangelo 2002, Fleming 2002, Townsend 2002, Fletcher 2002). At the same time, the basolateral iron transporter ferroportin 1 (also named Ireg1 or MTP1) was identified (Donovan 2000, Abboud 2000) as well as the basolateral iron oxidase hephestin (Vulpe 1999). Mutations in some of these proteins are responsible for the more rare types 2-4 of genetic hemochromatosis, although none of these genes is altered in type 1 hemochromatosis. Recently, two other proteins have been shown to act as important iron regulating proteins, transferrin receptor 2 and hepcidin (Pietrangelo 2002, Fletcher 2002, Fleming 2005). Mutations in the transferrin receptor 2 gene may lead to the rare type 3 hemochromatosis, and mutations in the ferroportin 1 gene to type 4 hemochromatosis. More recent studies also indicate that hepcidin may be the most important regulator of iron metabolism, involved in iron deficiency and overload. Hepcidin has been shown to down regulate the basolateral iron carrier ferroportin. It has also been demonstrated that hepcidin itself is up regulated by HFE. Thus, an HFE mutation may reduce the upregulation of hepcidin that then does not down regulate ferroportin; the corresponding increase in ferroportin expression finally causes the increase in intestinal iron uptake (DeDomenico 2007). There may be further interactions between HFE, transferrin receptor 2, NRAMP2, Dcytb, ferroportin, hephaestin and hepcidin, all of which are currently being studied.

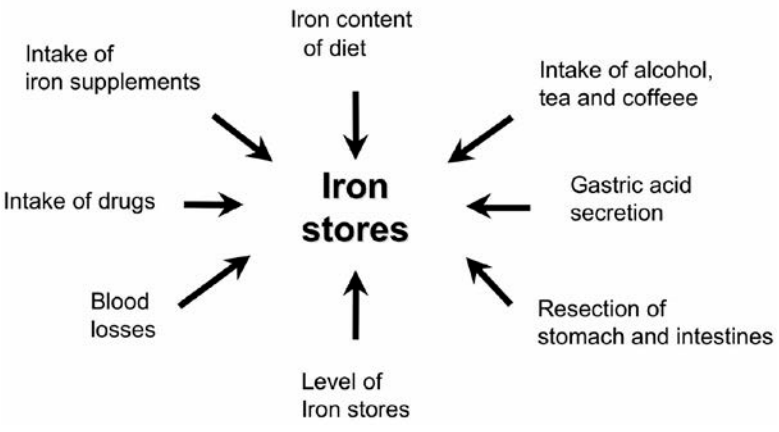


Figure 2. Non-genetic factors that may influence iron absorption

Table 2. Genotype/phenotype correlation in hemochromatosis

Mutations/ polymorphisms	Prevalence in Caucasian populations	Risk of advanced clinical phenotype
C282Y/C282Y	85-95%	low if ferritin is <1000 ng/ml
H63D/C282Y	3-8%	very low
C282Y/wild type	-	none
H63D/wild type	-	none
Others	1%	unknown

Diagnosis

Laboratory tests. Any increase in serum iron should start with the exclusion of hemochromatosis so as not to overlook early disease. Normal serum iron, however, does not exclude hemochromatosis, and increased serum iron often occurs in the absence of hemochromatosis. Serum iron values are highly variable and should not be used either for diagnosis or for screening of hemochromatosis. The determination of transferrin saturation is a better indicator of iron overload than serum iron. The increase in transferrin saturation usually precedes the ferritin increase (Figure 1). Transferrin saturation is more sensitive and specific for detection of hemochromatosis when compared to serum ferritin. For screening, a threshold of 50% for transferrin saturation may be optimal under fasting conditions. Ferritin on the other hand is a good indicator of largely increased iron stores and reliably indicates iron deficiency. It has less value for early detection of hemochromatosis.

In hemochromatosis a slightly increased serum ferritin (300-500 ng/ml) is usually accompanied by transferrin saturations exceeding 80-90%. Unfortunately, serum ferritin is also increased, often in the presence of infections and malignancies, and thus has a low specificity for indicating hemochromatosis (Niederau 1998). Ferritin increases not due to genetic hemochromatosis are usually associated with normal or only slightly elevated transferrin saturation. Therefore, transferrin saturation should be measured in order to correctly interpret ferritin increases.

Liver biopsy and determination of liver iron concentration. Although simultaneous increases of both serum ferritin and transferrin saturation strongly indicate a risk for hemochromatosis, diagnosis needs to be confirmed by genetic testing or by liver biopsy with a determination of iron content in the liver. Hepatic iron concentration also increases with time in subjects with an HFE gene mutation. It is recommended to divide the liver iron concentrations by the patient's age in order to obtain the "hepatic iron index" (Summers 1990). The semi-quantitative estimation of liver iron stores by the Berlin blue colour is less sensitive and specific than the chemical quantification of liver iron concentration. In case of a homozygous C282Y gene test, liver biopsy is not required for the diagnosis of genetic hemochromatosis (Figure 3).

There may, however, be other reasons to perform a liver biopsy in iron overload: (1) subjects with biochemical or clinical evidence of iron overload in the absence of the homozygous C282Y mutation should have a liver biopsy to substantiate iron overload; (2) in C282Y homozygotes the risk for liver fibrosis and cirrhosis increases at ferritin values >1000 ng/ml (Loreal 1992); in those patients liver biopsy

is recommended because the presence of liver cirrhosis markedly increases later HCC risk and thus warrants HCC screening.

Deferoxamine testing and ferrokinetic measurements. Determination of urinary excretion of iron after administration of deferoxamine allows some estimation of total body iron stores. The deferoxamine test, however, often only shows pathological results when serum ferritin and transferrin saturation are markedly increased and does not allow diagnosis of early disease. Ferrokinetic measurements today are only done for scientific research or in difficult diagnostic situations.

Computed tomography (CT), magnetic resonance tomography (MRT) and biomagnetometry. CT density measurements of the liver allow a semi-quantitative estimation of iron concentration in the liver. This method however is associated with radiation and therefore not allowed in many countries where alternative methods are available. MRT, on the other hand, allows a reliable measurement of liver iron content, provided that special software is used and the equipment is calibrated for such measurement. In clinical practice most MRT do not fulfil these criteria. Biomagnetometry allows the most accurate non-invasive measurement of liver iron concentration. However, this equipment is expensive and only allows measurement of iron concentration. Consequently, biomagnetometry is done only at a few centres worldwide and is primarily used for scientific studies and not in daily clinical practice. With the availability of reliable and inexpensive genetic testing, CT, MRT, and biomagnetometry do not need to be done for most patients.

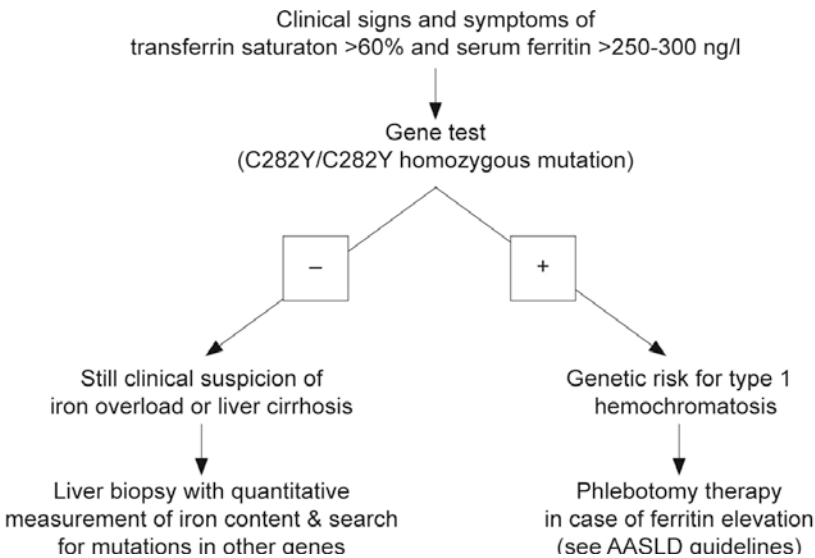


Figure 3. Diagnosis and treatment algorithm for type 1 hemochromatosis

Genetic tests. As outlined previously, in Caucasian populations the homozygous C282Y mutation accounts for more than 90% of patients with the clinical phenotype of type 1 hemochromatosis (Adams 2005, Erhardt 1999). Approximately 5% of patients with the clinical phenotype are C282Y/H63D compound heterozygotes; the prevalence of C282Y or H63D heterozygosity in patients with the clinical phenotype of hemochromatosis is considerably lower than in the general population. Thus, a subject who is heterozygous for C282Y or H63D *per se* has no risk of iron overload. In subjects homozygous for C282Y, both serum ferritin and transferrin saturation are frequently increased; however, only male subjects have an increased risk for liver disease when compared to subjects without HFE gene alterations in a recent large screening study. It is unknown how many C282Y homozygotes will later develop clinical signs and symptoms due to iron overload. It is increasingly evident that only a minority of C282Y homozygotes progress to end stage iron overload with liver cirrhosis and diabetes mellitus. In subjects who are not C282Y homozygotes but have laboratory, histological or clinical evidence of iron overload, further genes may be analysed for mutations such as hemojuvelin, transferrin receptor 2, ferroportin 1 and hepcidin.

Early diagnosis and screening

The prevalence of C282Y homozygotes is 0.5% in Caucasians (Adams 2005, Erhardt 1999). Clinical manifestations however are variable and depend on non-genetic factors such as dietary iron intake and blood loss. Until 1980 most patients with hemochromatosis were detected with late irreversible complications such as liver cirrhosis and diabetes mellitus. With a better understanding of the disease, the broad use of ferritin and transferrin saturation measurements and the availability of a reliable genetic test, diagnostic efforts have concentrated on the detection of early disease before liver cirrhosis and diabetes mellitus. Several studies have shown that iron removal by phlebotomy is associated with normal life expectancy in patients diagnosed early (Niederau 1985, Niederau 1996, Fargion 1992) (Figure 4). Several other studies have focused on screening procedures in order to diagnose more subjects with early disease (Edwards 1988). These studies include populations with special risks, family members, as well as the general population (Table 3) (see Niederau 2002). It has been shown that an increasing number of patients are now diagnosed early and that this trend increases survival (Figure 5).

A large number of studies have shown that screening is useful for detection of asymptomatic C282Y homozygotes by using transferrin saturation and serum ferritin as well a genetic test for the C282Y mutation (Edwards 1988, Phatak 1998, Niederau 1998). A broad screening of the general population however is as yet not recommended by WHO and CDC mainly because its is unknown how many of the asymptomatic C282Y homozygotes will later develop clinical disease (see US Preventive Services Task Force 2007). The largest screening study analyzed HFE gene mutations in almost 100,000 subjects in North America. In Caucasians, C282Y homozygosity was found in 0.44%, a value similar to many previous studies in other populations with a similar background. Asian or Black people in contrast almost never have an HFE gene mutation (Adams 2005). Among the Caucasian C282Y homozygotes only males had a significant increase in liver disease when compared to subjects without an HFE gene variation (Adams 2005). Only further prospective

follow-up studies will determine how many asymptomatic C282Y homozygotes will develop clinical consequences of iron overload.

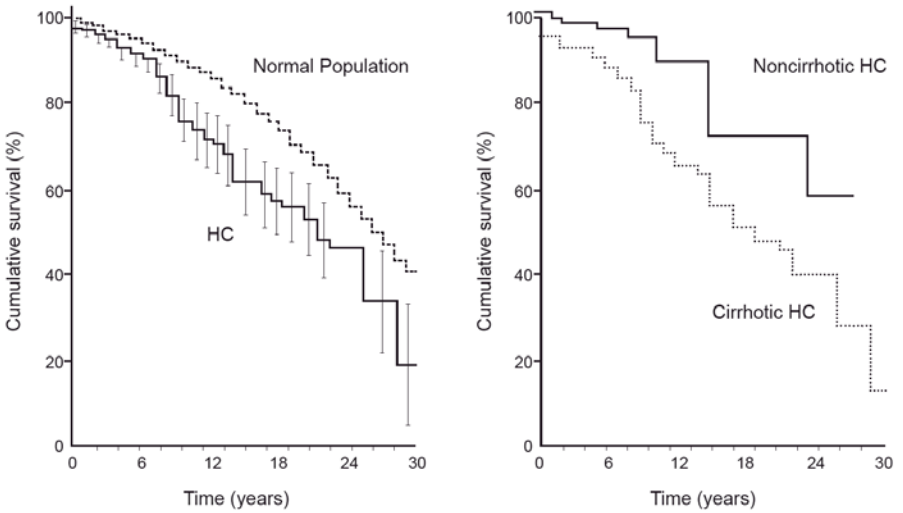


Figure 4. Survival of 251 patients with genetic hemochromatosis (with and without cirrhosis) in comparison with a matched general population. Modified from Niederau 1996

Table 3. Methods for early diagnosis of hemochromatosis

1. Screening in the general population not recommended
Screening of HFE gene alterations is not recommended in the general population because it remains unknown how many of the C282Y homozygotes will develop clinical manifestations. Such screening would be meaningful only in Caucasian populations.

2. Family screening
Genetic testing can reliably determine who, among the first-degree relatives of a hemochromatotic patient, is a heterozygote or homozygote. Heterozygotes are healthy and do not need follow-up. C282Y homozygotes should be followed and treated by phlebotomy if ferritin increases >300 ng/ml in men and >200 ng/ml in women.

3. Hemochromatosis should be excluded in patients with
- newly diagnosed diabetes mellitus
- chronic liver disease of unknown etiology
- elevation of iron, transferrin saturation or serum ferritin
- cardiomyopathy of unknown etiology
- arthropathy of unknown etiology
- loss of potency/libido and amennorhea of unknown etiology

4. Every liver biopsy needs to be checked for iron deposits

It is also unknown at which ferritin values phlebotomy treatment should be initiated in asymptomatic C282Y homozygotes (Table 4). The values recommended by the AASLD are based more on the judgment of experts than on solid data. The only solid data shows that the risk for liver fibrosis and cirrhosis increases above the threshold of 1000 ng/ml for serum ferritin (Loreal 1996). The value of screening family members is obvious when a first-degree relative has clinical hemochromatosis. Such family screening is easy to do with the genetic test. Heterozygous family members are not at risk for hemochromatosis unless they have other risk factors.

The clinical phenotype of hemochromatosis is seen in 1-2% of patients with newly diagnosed diabetes mellitus and in 3-15% of patients with liver cirrhosis (Niederau 1999). These latter patients should be screened for iron overload although such screening obviously does not aim at a very early diagnosis. Nevertheless, cirrhotic and diabetic patients with hemochromatosis can benefit significantly from phlebotomy therapy. Little is known about the prevalence of hemochromatosis in patients with arthropathy or cardiomyopathy of unclear etiology. Several smaller studies indicate that arthropathy may be a rather early clinical sign of iron overload, whereas cardiomyopathy usually occurs in severe iron overload.

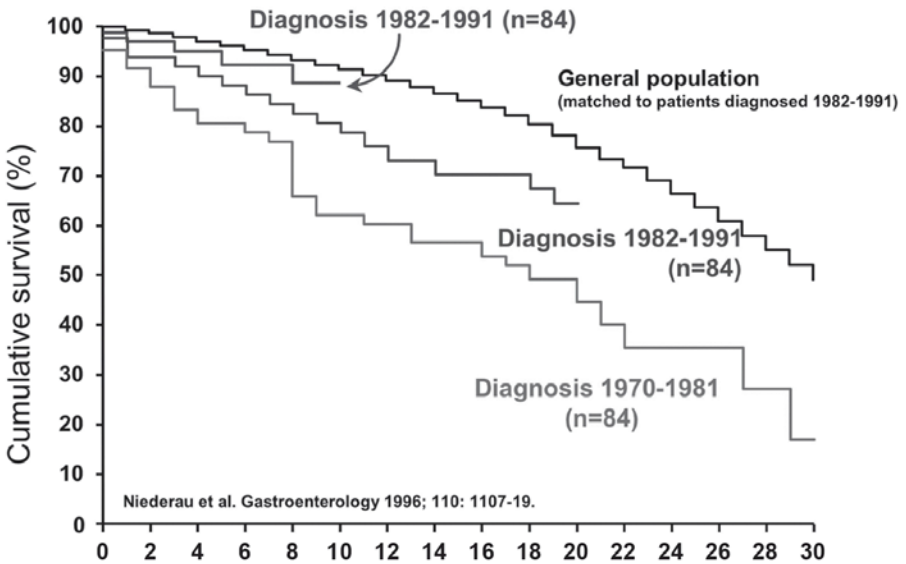


Figure 5. Cumulative survival in 251 patients with genetic hemochromatosis according to the time of diagnosis. Modified from Niederau 1996

Table 4. Iron overload therapy

1. Phlebotomy

a) In symptomatic genetic hemochromatosis

- Aims: complete iron depletion in 12-24 months;
- Treatment: 1-2 phlebotomies of 500 ml each week until serum ferritin is in the range of 20-50 ng/ml;
- Long-term therapy with 4-8 phlebotomies per year to keep ferritin between 20-50 ng/ml and thus prevent reaccumulation of iron

b) In asymptomatic C282Y homozygotes therapy should be initiated above these ferritin values:

- Subjects <18 years >200 ng/ml
- Men >300 ng/ml
- Women (not pregnant) >200 ng/ml
- Women (pregnant) >500 ng/ml

2. Therapy with iron chelators in secondary hemochromatosis and anemia

- Aims: removal of iron overload by increase of iron excretion in feces and urine
- In case of further blood transfusions at high frequency at stabilisation of iron balance and reduction of further iron accumulation
- Treatment: until recently, 25-50 mg deferoxamine/kg as SC infusion for 10-12 h daily; today, deferoxamine is largely replaced by the oral chelator deferasirox - 20 mg/kg deferasirox once daily to prevent iron accumulation up to 800 ml erythrocytes concentrates/month
- Long-term treatment necessary
- Normalisation of ferritin and liver iron concentration is often not possible

3. Diet

- Recommended: avoidance of food with very high iron content (e.g., liver) and iron-supplemented food;
- A further strict iron-depleted diet is very difficult to adhere to and not recommended
- A single phlebotomy of 500 ml blood is as effective for iron removal as a very rigid iron-restricted diet for a full year

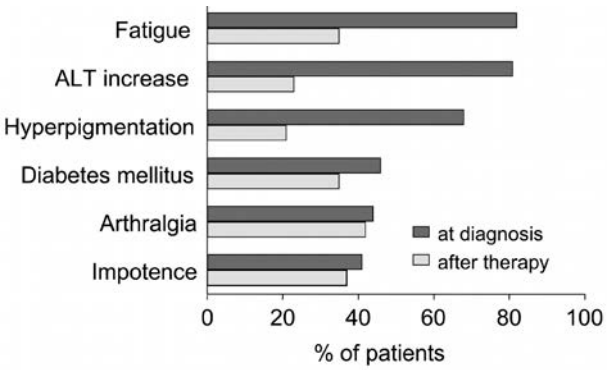


Figure 6. Signs and symptoms in 185 patients with genetic hemochromatosis prior to and after iron removal. Modified from Niederau 1996

Complications of iron overload

Liver cirrhosis, diabetes mellitus, and increased skin pigmentation are the classical trio of genetic hemochromatosis. Cardiomyopathy, cardiac arrhythmias, and impotence are also typical complications of advanced iron overload. Arthropathy in contrast may be an early sign of hemochromatosis, which may help with diagnosis in the precirrhotic stage (Niederau 1996).

Liver disease. The liver is the organ that is affected by genetic iron overload most early and heavily. At early stages excess iron stores are mainly found in periportal parenchymal cells as ferritin and hemosiderin. When iron excess further increases, there is development of perilobular fibrosis and iron stores are also found in bile ducts and Kupffer cells. Septal fibrosis eventually progresses towards complete cirrhosis. The stage of fibrosis is closely associated with the degree of excess of iron. In many affected symptomatic patients with type 1 hemochromatosis there are some signs of liver disease at the time of diagnosis (Niederau 1985, Niederau 1996). Many nonspecific symptoms such as abdominal discomfort and fatigue may also be due to liver involvement. In asymptomatic patients diagnosed by a screening procedure, signs of liver disease are infrequent. Complications due to cirrhosis such as ascites, jaundice and portal hypertension are seen only rarely and only in cases of advanced severe iron overload (Niederau 1985, Niederau 1996). The risk for liver cirrhosis increases at ferritin values >1000 ng/ml (Loreal 1996). Similar to insulin-dependent diabetes, liver cirrhosis cannot be reversed by removal of iron (Niederau 1996). However, less advanced stages like hepatic fibrosis and abnormalities in liver enzymes and function respond well to iron removal (Niederau 1996) (Figure 5). Survival is significantly reduced in the presence of liver cirrhosis whereas patients diagnosed in the precirrhotic stage have a normal life expectancy when treated by phlebotomy (Niederau 1996) (Figure 4).

Association of hemochromatosis with other liver diseases. Some studies indicate that C282Y heterozygosity may aggravate the progression of concomitant liver diseases such as porphyria cutanea tarda, chronic hepatitis C, alcoholic hepatitis and non-alcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH). In these latter patients one might find slightly elevated liver iron concentrations and serum ferritin levels when they are C282Y

heterozygotes (for review see Erhardt 2003). Most studies however have shown that these associations are of only minor importance in the clinical course of the disease. Phlebotomy as yet has only been proven meaningful in porphyria cutanea tarda because it can ameliorate the cutaneous manifestations.

Liver carcinoma. Liver carcinoma develops in approximately 30% of patients with hemochromatosis and cirrhosis independent of iron depletion (Niederau 1996). The interval between complete iron depletion and reported diagnosis of liver cancer is approximately 9 years in large cohorts in German patients (Niederau 1985 Niederau 1996). The risk of liver cancer is increased in patients with hemochromatosis 100-200-fold when compared to the general population (Figure 6). Among liver cancers there are hepatocellular carcinomas (HCC) as well as cholangiocellular carcinomas. Most liver cancers develop in patients with cirrhosis. Thus, cancer screening by ultrasound and AFP (twice a year) is only recommended for cirrhotic patients. Patients who develop liver cancer usually have the largest amount of mobilisable iron among various subgroups (Niederau 1996, Niederau 1999).

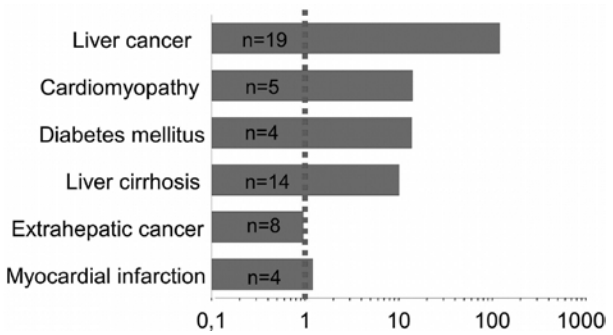


Figure 7. Relative mortality risk of 251 patients with genetic hemochromatosis in comparison to the general population. Modified from Niederau 1996

Diabetes mellitus. In studies the prevalence of diabetes in hereditary hemochromatosis ranges from 20-50% (Niederau 1996, Adams 1991). The prevalence and stage of diabetes is related to the degree of iron deposition in the pancreas. Patients with diabetes have a twofold higher mobilisable iron content than non-diabetics (Yaouanq 1995). Investigations into the prevalence of unrecognized genetic hemochromatosis in diabetic patients show some variation in Europe vs. elsewhere; i.e., screening revealed a prevalence of 5-8 per 1000 unrecognized cases in Europe (Singh 1992) and 9.6 per 1000 in Australia (Phelps 1989). Diabetes mellitus and impaired glucose tolerance are frequent features in several chronic liver diseases (Creutzfeldt 1970, Blei 1982). This author's study (Niederau 1984) showed hyperinsulinemia and hence insulin resistance without impaired glucose tolerance in noncirrhotic hemochromatosis. The increase in circulating insulin concentrations is likely to be due to a decrease in diminished hepatic extraction of insulin. With the progression of iron overload and destruction of beta cells, insulin secretion becomes impaired (Dymock 1972, Bierens de Haan 1973). In end-stage hemochromatosis, insulin deficiency is associated with severe reduction in the mass of beta cells

(Rahier 1987). Insulin resistance observed in early iron overload may be partially reversible after phlebotomy therapy (Niederau 1985, Niederau 1996) whereas insulin-dependent diabetes is irreversible (Niederau 1996). Survival is significantly reduced in patients with diabetes mellitus at diagnosis compared to patients without diabetes (Niederau 1996). Survival of non-diabetic patients is virtually identical to that of a matched normal population.

Heart disease. Cardiomyopathy and cardiac arrhythmias are specific complications of hemochromatosis caused by iron deposition in the heart (Buja and Roberts 1971, Short 1981). Clinical or electrocardiographic signs of heart disease can be found in 20-35% of patients with HFE hemochromatosis (Niederau 1985). Arrhythmias usually respond well to iron removal (Short 1981, Niederau 1996). In type 1 hemochromatosis cardiomyopathy is rare and usually associated with advanced iron overload and an older patient population. However, particularly in young patients who present with cardiac disease due to hemochromatosis, cardiomyopathy is a frequent cause of death (Finch 1966, Short 1981). Only recently has it become clear that young patients with severe cardiomyopathy may be affected by juvenile type 2 hemochromatosis; these patients may show severe iron overload, hypogonadism, cardiomyopathy, liver cirrhosis, and amennorrhea by ages 15-24. The type 2-associated cardiomyopathy is often irreversible despite initiation of phlebotomy or chelation therapy and may require an immediate transplant of the heart and potentially of the liver as well (von Herbay 1996, Jensen 1993).

Arthropathy. Joint changes in genetic hemochromatosis may occur in two different ways (Schuhmacher 1964, Dymock 1970, Niederau 1985, Niederau 1996). The most prevalent changes are seen in the metacarpophalangeal joints II and III, in the form of cystic and sclerotic changes, cartilage damage and a narrowing of the intraarticular space. Sometimes other joints of the hands and the feet are affected. Large joints, i.e., of the knees and hips, may be affected in the form of chondrocalcinosis. The pathogenesis of joint changes in hemochromatosis remains unclear. Arthropathy is one of the few complications not associated with the degree of iron overload. It has been speculated that iron may inhibit pyrophosphatase and may thereby lead to a crystallisation of calcium pyrophosphates. Alternatively, iron may have direct toxic effects on the joints. Arthropathy may be an early sign of hemochromatosis and may help to make the diagnosis at a precirrhotic stage (Niederau 1996). Hemochromatosis should therefore been considered in all patients with an arthropathy of unknown etiology.

Endocrine abnormalities. In contrast to the early onset of arthropathic changes, endocrine abnormalities are a late consequence of iron overload. Sexual impotence and loss of libido may occur in up to 40% of male patients (Niederau 1985). The endocrine abnormalities in hemochromatosis are mainly, if not exclusively, due to pituitary failure. This is in contrast to alcoholic cirrhosis where testicular failure is predominant (Kley 1985a, Kley 1985b). In contrast to alcoholic cirrhosis, where estrogen levels are usually increased, estrogen levels were found decreased in hemochromatosis (Kley 1985a). Most endocrine changes are late and irreversible complications of genetic hemochromatosis and do not respond well to phlebotomy treatment (Niederau 1996). Iron overload only infrequently affects other endocrine organs such as the thyroid and adrenal glands. Severe hypogonadism with

amennorrhea in young women and impotence in young men is today thought to be due to type 2 hemochromatosis.

Skin. Increased skin pigmentation is mainly seen in areas exposed to sunlight. A large part of the darkening of pigmentation is thought to be due to an increase in melanin and not due to iron excess itself. The increase in skin pigmentation is reversible on iron removal (i.e., phlebotomy).

Other potential complications. Iron overload has been speculated to aggravate atherosclerosis; however, the evidence for that is rather weak (for review see Niederau 2000). There have also been reports that extrahepatic malignancies may be increased in HFE hemochromatosis (Amman 1980, Fracanzani 2001) while other studies have not found extrahepatic associations (Bain 1984, Niederau 1996, Elmberg 2003). It is not clear whether HFE gene mutations are involved in the pathogenesis of porphyria cutanea tarda since the prevalence of both risk factors vary greatly in different parts of the world; associations between HFE gene mutations and porphyria have often been described in southern Europe but not in northern Europe (Toll 2006).

Therapy

Phlebotomy treatment. Phlebotomy treatment is the standard of care to remove iron in genetic hemochromatosis. One phlebotomy session removes approximately 250 mg iron from the body. Since patients with the classical clinical phenotype may have an excess of 10-30 g iron, it may take 12-24 months to remove the iron overload when phlebotomies of 500 ml blood are done weekly (Table 4). Phlebotomy treatment is generally well tolerated and hemoglobin usually does not drop below 12 g/dl. Several studies have shown that liver iron is completely removed at such low ferritin values; thus the effect of therapy can be checked by ferritin measurements and a control liver biopsy is not necessary. After complete removal of excess iron the intervals of phlebotomies may be increased to once every 2-3 months; serum ferritin should be kept in the lower normal range, between 20-50 ng/ml. Phlebotomy should not be interrupted for longer intervals; there is a risk of reaccumulation of iron due to the genetic autosomal recessive metabolic malfunction.

Iron removal by chelators. Deferoxamine therapy for genetic hemochromatosis is not recommended because phlebotomy is more effective with less side effects and lower cost. Recently, a Phase II study has started, looking for safety and effectiveness of the new oral iron chelator deferasirox in genetic hemochromatosis. As yet, deferasirox is only approved for secondary hemochromatosis.

Diet. An diet low in iron is not recommended for patients with genetic hemochromatosis. One phlebotomy of 500 ml blood removes approximately 250 mg iron. A difficult-to-follow iron-restricted diet for a complete year would have the effect of a single phlebotomy. It is thus recommended that patients simply do not eat excessive amounts of food with very high iron content (such as liver) and that they do not eat food to which iron has been added (Table 4).

Liver transplantation. Advanced liver cirrhosis and carcinoma may be indications for a liver transplant in hemochromatosis (Kowdley 1995, Brandhagen 2000). The prognosis of patients who have a liver transplant for hemochromatosis is markedly worse than that for patients with other liver diseases; a considerable number of

patients with hemochromatosis die after transplant from infectious complications or heart failure (Brandhagen 2000). Liver transplantation does not heal the original genetic defect.

Prognosis

Untreated hemochromatosis often has a bad prognosis in the presence of liver cirrhosis and diabetes mellitus. The prognosis is markedly worse in patients with cirrhosis than in those without cirrhosis at diagnosis (Figure 3); the same is true for diabetes mellitus. It is generally accepted that phlebotomy therapy improves the prognosis. Patients diagnosed and treated in the early non-cirrhotic stage have a normal life expectancy (Figure 3) (Niederau 1985, Niederau 1996). Thus, early diagnosis markedly improves the prognosis (Figure 4). Iron removal by phlebotomy also improves the outcome in patients with liver cirrhosis. The prognosis of liver cirrhosis due to hemochromatosis is markedly better than those with other types of cirrhosis (Powell 1971). Hepatomegaly and elevation of aminotransferases often regress after iron removal (Niederau 1985, Niederau 1996) (Figure 5). Insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus and hypogondism are irreversible complications despite complete iron removal (Niederau 1996) (Figure 5). Earlier changes in glucose and insulin metabolism, however, may be ameliorated after iron removal. For unknown reasons arthropathy does not respond well to phlebotomy treatment although it may be an early sign of iron overload (Figure 5). The AASLD consensus guidelines recommend to start phlebotomy treatment at ferritin values >300 ng/ml in men and >200 ng/ml in women. The risk for liver fibrosis and cirrhosis is increased only at ferritin levels >1000 ng/ml. Further studies need to determine whether asymptomatic C282Y homozygotes with ferritin values between 300 and 1000 ng/ml need to be treated or whether one might wait and monitor ferritin at that stage.

Juvenile hereditary hemochromatosis

Two genes have been shown to be associated with juvenile hemochromatosis: 90% of cases are associated with mutations in hemojuvelin (HJV) (locus name HFE2A, which encodes HJV), while 10% of cases are associated with HAMP (locus name HFE2B, which encodes hepcidin). Despite the nomenclature of HFE2A and HFE2B, juvenile hemochromatosis is not associated with HFE mutations. In order to avoid confusion most physicians use the terms type 2A (hemojuvelin mutations) and type 2B (HAMP mutations). Mutations in hemojuvelin are associated with low levels of hepcidin in urine suggesting that hemojuvelin regulates hepcidin. Hepcidin is the key regulator of intestinal iron absorption and iron release from macrophages. Hepcidin facilitates ferroportin internalisation and degradation. Hepcidin mutations may thereby lead to an increase in ferroportin and thus iron uptake from the intestine. Juvenile hemochromatosis is very rare. A clustering of HJV mutations is seen in Italy and Greece although few families account for this phenomenon. Mutations in HJV represent the majority of worldwide cases of juvenile hemochromatosis.

Only a small number of patients have been identified with HAMP-related juvenile hemochromatosis. Juvenile hemochromatosis is characterized by an onset of severe iron overload in the first to third decades of life. Clinical features include

hypogonadism, cardiomyopathy, and liver cirrhosis (Diamond 1989, Vaiopoulos 2003). The main cause of death is cardiomyopathy (De Gobbi 2002, Filali 2004). In contrast to HFE type 1 hemochromatosis, both sexes are equally affected. Mortality can be reduced in juvenile hemochromatosis when it is diagnosed early and treated properly. Phlebotomy is the standard therapy in juvenile hemochromatosis as well and is treated similarly to HFE hemochromatosis (Tavill 2001). In patients with juvenile hemochromatosis and anemia or severe cardiac failure, administration of chelators such as deferoxamine have been tried to reduce mortality; some case reports suggest that this might improve left ventricular ejection fraction (Kelly 1998).

Transferrin receptor 2 (TFR2)-related type 3 hemochromatosis

TFR2-related hemochromatosis is defined as type 3 and is also known as HFE3; however, the term HFE3 should not be used because the HFE gene is not affected in type 3 hemochromatosis. TFR2-related hemochromatosis is inherited in an autosomal recessive manner. TFR2 is a type II 801-amino acid transmembrane glycoprotein expressed in hepatocytes and at lower levels in Kupffer cells (Zhang 2004). A finely regulated interaction between TFR2, TFR1 and HFE is now thought to affect the hepcidin pathway, and, consequently, iron homeostasis (Fleming 2005). Patients with homozygous TFR2 mutations have increased intestinal iron absorption that leads to iron overload. Hepcidin concentrations in urine are low in TFR2 hemochromatosis (Nemeth 2005). TFR2-related hemochromatosis is very rare with only about 20 patients reported worldwide (Mattman 2002). Age of onset in TFR2-related type 3 hemochromatosis is earlier than in HFE-associated type 1 (Piperno 2004, Girelli 2002, Hattori 2003). Progression is, however, slower than in juvenile type 2 (De Gobbi 2002, Roetto 2001, Girelli 2002). The phenotype is similar to type 1. Many patients present with fatigue, arthralgia, abdominal pain, decreased libido, or with biochemical signs of iron overload (Roetto 2001, Girelli 2002, Hattori 2003). Complications of type 3 hemochromatosis include cirrhosis, hypogonadism, and arthropathy. Cardiomyopathy and diabetes mellitus appear to be rather rare. Hepatocellular carcinoma has not been observed in the small number of cases diagnosed. Most individuals with type 3 hemochromatosis have an Italian or Japanese genetic background. Some of the Japanese males have had liver cirrhosis at diagnosis (Hattori 2003). Similar to type 1 hemochromatosis, the penetration of type 3 hemochromatosis is also considerably less than 100% (Roetto 2001). Standard therapy is iron removal by weekly phlebotomy similar to the management of type 1 disease. Individuals with increased ferritin should be treated similar to those with HFE hemochromatosis.

Type 4 hemochromatosis – Ferroportin Disease

Ferroportin-associated iron overload (also called Ferroportin Disease) was first recognised by Pietrangelo (1999) who described an Italian family with an autosomal dominant non-HFE hemochromatosis. Many family members had iron overload resulting in liver fibrosis, diabetes, impotence, and cardiac arrhythmias. In addition to autosomal dominant inheritance, features distinguishing this from HFE hemochromatosis included early iron accumulation in reticuloendothelial cells and a

marked increase in ferritin earlier than what is seen in transferrin saturation (Pietrangelo 1999, Rivard 2003, Montosi 2001, Wallace 2004, Fleming 2001). Several patients showed a reduced tolerance to phlebotomy and became anemic despite elevated ferritin (Pietrangelo 1999, Jouanolle 2003).

In 2001 this form of non-HFE hemochromatosis was linked to mutations of ferroportin (Montosi 2001) that had just been identified as the basolateral iron transporter (Abboud 2000, Donovan 2000). Since that time, numerous mutations in the gene have been implicated in patients from diverse ethnic origins with previously unexplained hemochromatosis. Iron overload disease due to ferroportin mutations has been defined as type 4 hemochromatosis or Ferroportin Disease (for review see Pietrangelo 2004). The iron export is tightly regulated because both iron deficiency and iron excess are harmful. The main regulator of this mechanism is the peptide hepcidin which binds to ferroportin, induces its internalization and degradation, thereby reducing iron efflux (Nemeth 2004). Increase in iron absorption may be caused either by hepcidin deficiency or its ineffective interaction with ferroportin. All recent studies have shown that hepcidin deficiency appears to be the common characteristic of most types of genetic hemochromatosis (mutations in HFE, transferrin receptor 2, hemojuvelin, or hepcidin itself). The remaining cases of genetic iron overload are due to heterozygous mutations in the hepcidin target, ferroportin. Because of the mild clinical penetrance of the genetic defect there were doubts about the rationale for iron removal therapy. However, a recent study shows that there may be clinically relevant iron overload with organ damage and liver cancer in patients carrying the A77D mutation of ferroportin (Corradini 2007). Treatment schemes are similar to those described for other types of genetic hemochromatosis.

Secondary hemochromatosis

Pathophysiology

Most forms of secondary hemochromatosis are due to hemolytic anemia associated with polytransfusions such as thalassemia, sickle cell disease, and MDS. Most of these patients need blood transfusions on a regular basis for survival. However, in the long run, multiple blood transfusions often lead to iron overload if patients are not treated with iron chelators. In general, iron overload due to blood transfusions is similar to genetic hemochromatosis; however, secondary iron overload develops much faster than the genetic forms (McLaren 1983), sometimes as soon as after 10-12 blood transfusions (Porter 2001). Subsequently secondary iron overload can result in more rapid organ damage when compared with genetic hemochromatosis. Secondary iron overload can obviously not be treated by phlebotomy because a marked anemia is the clinical marker of the disease. Secondary iron overload often limits the prognosis of patients with thalassemia; life expectancy deteriorates with increasing iron concentrations in the liver (Telfer 2000). Therapy with iron chelator may reduce the transfusional iron burden if the frequency of transfusion is not too high. The development of HFE versus secondary hemochromatosis not only differs in terms of the speed of iron accumulation but also in the type of organ damage; in secondary hemochromatosis cardiomyopathy is often the complication that limits the prognosis (Liu 1994). It is interesting that heart disease is also very frequent in

juvenile genetic hemochromatosis where there is also rapid iron accumulation. In general, serum ferritin values closely reflect liver iron concentration and may be used as an indication for timing of therapy as well as to check the effects of iron chelation.

Until recently, deferoxamine was the only iron chelator available in most countries; in some countries the drug deferiprone is approved for patients who do not tolerate deferoxamine (Hoffbrandt 2003). The clinical use of deferiprone was limited due to side effects such as agranulocytosis and neutropenia (Refaie 1995). Long-term data prove that deferoxamine can reduce iron overload and its organ complications (Olivieri 1994, Cohen 1981). Deferoxamine, however, needs to be given daily subcutaneously or by IV infusion for several hours. Thus, patients with thalassemia often consider the deferoxamine treatment worse than thalassemia itself (Goldbeck 2000). There are minor compliance problems that often limit the beneficial effects of this iron chelator (Cohen 1989).

Without iron chelation, children with thalassemia often develop a severe cardiomyopathy prior to age 15 (Cohen 1987). After that age, liver cirrhosis is also a significant complication in secondary iron overload due to thalassemia (Zurlo 1992). Iron chelation should start early to prevent complications of iron overload. By the ages of 3-5, liver iron concentration may reach values associated with a significant risk for liver fibrosis in severe thalassemia (Angelucci 1995). Children younger than 5 should therefore be cautiously treated with chelators if they have received transfusions for more than a year (Olivieri 1997). Deferoxamine can reduce the incidence and ameliorate the course of iron-associated cardiomyopathy (Olivieri 1994, Brittenham 1994, Miskin 2003).

Deferasirox is an oral iron chelator with high selectivity for iron III (Nick 2003). Deferasirox binds iron in a 2:1 proportion with a high affinity and increases the biliary iron excretion (Nick 2003). This chelator is able to reduce iron overload in hepatocytes and cardiomyocytes (Nick 2003, Hershko 2001). Due to its half-life of 11-18 hours it needs to be taken only once daily (Nisbet-Brown 2003). Deferasirox exerted a similar iron chelation when compared with deferoxamine in patients with thalassemia; the effect of 40 mg/kg deferoxamine was similar to that of 20 mg/kg deferasirox (Piga 2006). Both in adults and children 20-30 mg/kg/day deferasirox significantly reduced liver iron concentration and serum ferritin (Cappellini 2006). Magnetic resonance imaging showed that 10-30 mg/kg/day deferasirox may also reduce iron concentration in the heart within one year of maintenance therapy. Deferasirox may cause minor increases in serum creatinine as well as gastrointestinal discomfort and skin exanthema which are usually self-limiting. Considering the compliance problems with deferoxamine, deferasirox has a better cost-effectiveness ratio (Vichinsky 2005). Deferasirox is defined as standard therapy both in the guidelines of the National Comprehensive Cancer Network (NCCN) (USA) and in the international guidelines on MDS (Greenberg 2006, Gattermann 2005).

References

Abboud S, Haile DJ. A novel mammalian iron-regulated protein involved in intracellular iron metabolism. J Biol Chem 2000;275:19906-12. (Abstract)

Adams PC, Speechley M, Kertesz AE. Long-term survival analysis in hereditary hemochromatosis. Gastroenterology 1991;101:368-72. (Abstract)

Adams PC, Reboussin DM, Barton JC, et al. Hemochromatosis and iron-overload screening in a racially diverse population. N Engl J Med 2005; 352:1769-78. (Abstract)

Angelucci E, Baronciani D, Lucarelli G, et al. Needle liver biopsy in thalassaemia: analyses of diagnostic accuracy and safety in 1184 consecutive biopsies. Br J Haematol 1995;89:757-61. (Abstract)

Bain C, Bradbear R, Siskind V, et al. Cohort study of the risk of malignancy in haemochromatosis and other nonalcoholic liver diseases. Hepatology 1984;4:A1020. (Abstract)

Biasiotto G, Belloli S, Ruggeri G, et al. Identification of new mutations of the HFE, hepcidin, and transferrin receptor 2 genes by denaturing HPLC analysis of individuals with biochemical indications of iron overload. Clin Chem 2003;49:1981-8. (Abstract)

Bierens deHaan B, Scherrer JR, Stauffacher W, et al. Iron excess, early glucose intolerance, and impaired insulin secretion in idiopathic hemochromatosis. Eur J Clin Invest 1973;3:179-87. (Abstract)

Blei AT, Robbins DC, Drobny E, et al. Insulin resistance and insulin receptors in hepatic cirrhosis. Gastroenterology 1982;83:1313-8. (Abstract)

Brandhagen DJ, Alvarez W, Therneau TM, et al. Iron overload in cirrhosis-HFE genotypes and outcome after liver transplantation. Hepatology 2000;31:456-60. (Abstract)

Brittenham GM, Griffith PM, Nienhuis AW, et al. Efficacy of deferoxamine in preventing complications of iron overload in patients with thalassemia major. N Engl J Med 1994;331:567-73. (Abstract)

Buja L, Roberts W. C Iron in the heart. Am J Med 1971;51:209-221. (Abstract)

Cappellini MD, Cohen A, Piga A, et al. A Phase III study of deferasirox (ICL670), a once-daily oral iron chelator, in patients with beta-thalassemia. Blood 2006;107:3455-62. (Abstract)

Cohen A, Martin M, Schwartz E. Response to long-term deferoxamine therapy in thalassemia. J Pediatr 1981;99:689-694. (Abstract)

Cohen AR, Mizanin J, Schwartz E. Rapid removal of excessive iron with daily, high-dose intravenous chelation therapy. J Pediatr 1989;115:151-5. (Abstract)

Cohen A. Management of iron overload in the pediatric patient. Hematol Oncol Clin North Am 1987;1:521-44. (Abstract)

Corradini E, Ferrara F, Pollicino T, et al. Disease progression and liver cancer in the ferroportin disease. Gut 2007;56:1030-2. (Abstract)

Creutzfeldt W, Frerichs H, Sickinger K. Liver diseases and diabetes mellitus. Prog Liver Dis 1970;3:371-407. (Abstract)

Crosby WH. Hereditary hemochromatosis. In: Ingelfinger FJ (ed) Controversy in internal medicine. Saunders, Philadelphia, 1966:261-70.

De Domenico I, Diane M, Ward DM, et al. Hepcidin regulation: ironing out the details. J Clin Invest 2007;117:1755-8. (Abstract)

De Gobbi M, Pasquero P, Brunello F, et al. Juvenile hemochromatosis associated with B-thalassemia treated by phlebotomy and recombinant human erythropoietin. Haematologica 2000;85:865-7. (Abstract)

Diamond T, Stiel D, Posen S. Osteoporosis in hemochromatosis: iron excess, gonadal deficiency, or other factors? Ann Intern Med 1989;110:430-6. (Abstract)

Donovan A, Brownlie A, Zhou Y, et al. Positional cloning of zebrafish ferroportin1 identifies a conserved vertebrate iron exporter. Nature 2000;403:778-81. (Abstract)

Dymock W, Hamilton EBD, Laws JW, et al. Arthropathy of hemochromatosis: clinical and radiological analysis of 73 patients with iron overload. Ann Rheum Dis 1970;29:469-76. (Abstract)

Dymock W, Cassar J, Pyke DA, et al. Observations on the pathogenesis, complications, and treatment of diabetes in 115 cases of hemochromatosis. Am J Med 1972;52:203-10. (Abstract)

Edwards CQ, Griffen LM, Goldgar D, et al. Prevalence of hemochromatosis among 11,065 presumably healthy blood donors. N Engl J Med 1988;318:1355-62. (Abstract)
Elmberg M, Hultcrantz R, Ekbom A, et al. Cancer risk in patients with hereditary hemochromatosis and in their first-degree relatives. Gastroenterology 2003;125:1733-41. (Abstract)
Erhardt A, Niederau C, Osman Y, et al. Demonstration of HFE polymorphism in German patients with hereditary hemochromatosis. Dtsch Med Wochenschr 1999;124:1448-52. (Abstract)
Erhardt A, Maschner-Olberg A, Mellenthin C, et al. HFE mutations and chronic hepatitis C: H63D and C282Y heterozygosity are independent risk factors for liver fibrosis and cirrhosis. J Hepatol 2003;38:335-42. (Abstract)
Fargion S, Mandelli C, Piperno A, et al. Survival and prognostic factors in 212 italian patients with genetiv hemochromatosis. Hepatology 1992;15:655-9. (Abstract)
Feder JN, Gnirke A, Thomas W, et al. A novel MCH class I-like gene is mutated in patients with hereditary haemochromatosis. Nature Genetics 1996;13:399-407. (Abstract)
Filali M, Le Jeunne C, Durand E, et al. Juvenile hemochromatosis HJV-related revealed by cardiogenic shock. Blood Cells Mol Dis 2004;33:120-4. (Abstract)
Finch SC, Finch CA. Idiopathic hemochromatosis, an iron storage disease. Medicine 1966;34:381-430. (Abstract)
Fleming RE, Sly WS. Ferroportin mutation in autosomal dominant hemochromatosis: loss of function, gain in understanding. J Clin Invest 2001;108:521-2. (Abstract)
Fleming RE, Sly WS.. Mechanisms of iron accumulation in hereditary hemochromatosis. Ann Rev Physiol 2002;4:663-80. (Abstract)
Fletcher LM, Halliday JW. Haemochromatosis: Understanding the mechanism of disease and implications for diagnosis and patient management following the recent cloning of novel genes involved in iron metabolism. J Intern Med 2002;251:181-92. (Abstract)
Gattermann N. Consensus statement on iron overload in myelodysplastic syndromes. Hematol Oncol Clin N Am 2005;19:S18-S25.
Girelli D, Bozzini C, Roetto A. Clinical and pathological finding in hemochromatosis type 3 due to a novel mutation in transferrin receptor 2 gene. Gastroenterology 2002;122:1295-1302. (Abstract)
Goldbeck L, Baving A, Kohne E. Psychosocial aspects of beta-thalassemia: distress, coping and adherence. Klin Pädiatr 2000;212:254-59. (Abstract)
Greenberg PL, Baer MR, Bennett JM, et al. Myelodysplastic syndromesclinical practice guidelines in oncology. J Natl Compr Canc Netw 2006;4:58-77. (Abstract)
Hanot V, Schachmann M. Sur la cirrhose pigmentaire dans le diabe`te. sucré. Arch Physiol Norm Pathol 1886;7:50-72.
Hattori A, Wakusawa S, Hayashi H, et al. AVAQ 594-597 deletion of the TfR2 gene in a Japanese family with hemochromatosis. Hepatol Res 2003;26:154-6. (Abstract)
Herbay von A, Niederau C, Pelichowska M, et al. Kardiomyopathie als Todesursache bei genetischer Hämochromatose. Z Gastroenterol 1996;34:178-82. (Abstract)
Hershko C, Konijn AM, Nick HP, et al. ICL670A: a new syntheticoral chelator: evaluation in hypertransfused rats with selective radio iron probes of hepatocellular and reticuloendothelial iron stores and in ironloadedrat heart cells in culture. Blood 2001 ;97:1115-22. (Abstract)
Jensen PD, Bagger JP, Jensen FT, et al. Heart transplantation in a case of juvenile hereditary haemochromatosis followed up by MRI and endomyocardial biopsies. Eur J Haematol 1993;51:199-205. (Abstract)
Jouanolle AM, Douabin-Gicquel V, Halimi C, et al. Novel mutation in ferroportin 1 gene is associated with autosomal dominant iron overload. J Hepatol 2003;39:286-9. (Abstract)
Kelly AL, Rhodes DA, Roland JM, et al. Hereditary juvenile haemochromatosis: a genetically heterogeneous life-threatening iron-storage disease. QJM 1998;91:607-18. (Abstract)
Kley HK, Stremmel W, Niederau C, et al. Androgen and estrogen response to adrenal and gonadal stimulation in idiopathic hemochromatosis: evidence for decreased estrogen formation Hepatology 1985a:251-6. (Abstract)
Kley HK, Niederau C, Stremmel W, et al. Conversion of androgens to estrogens in idiopathic hemochromatosis: comparison with alcoholic cirrhosis. J Clin Endocrinol Metabol 1985b;61:1-6. (Abstract)

Kowdley K, Hassanein T, Kaur S, et al. Primary liver cancer and survival in patients undergoing liver transplantation for hemochromatosis. Liver Transpl Surg 1995;1:237-41. (Abstract)
Liu P, Olivieri N. Iron overload cardiomyopathies: new insights into an old disease. Cardiovasc Drugs Ther 1994;8:101-10. (Abstract)
Loreal O, Deugnier Y, Moirand R. Liver fibrosis in genetic hemochromatosis. Respective roles of iron and non-iron related factors in 127 homozygous patients. J Hepatol 1992;16:122-7. (Abstract)
MacDonald RA, Mallory GK. Hemochromatosis and hemosiderosis. Study in 211 autopsied cases. Arch Intern Med 1960;105:686-700. (Abstract)
Mattman A, Huntsman D, Lockitch G, et al. Transferrin receptor 2. (TfR2) and HFE mutational analysis in non-C282Y iron overload: identification of a novel TfR2 mutation. Blood 2002;100:1075-7. (Abstract)
McLaren GD, Muir WA, Kellermeyer RW. In overload disorders: natural history, pathogenesis, diagnosis, and therapy. Crit Rev Clin Lab Sci 1983;19:205-66. (Abstract)
Miskin H, Yaniv I, Berant M, et al. Reversal of cardiac complications in thalassemia major by long-term intermittent daily intensive iron chelation. Eur J Haematol 2003;70:398-403. (Abstract)
Montosi G, Donovan A, Totaro A, et al. Autosomal-dominant hemochromatosis is associated with a mutation in the ferroportin (SLC11A3) gene. J Clin Invest 2001;108:619-3. (Abstract)
Nemeth E, Tuttle MS, Powelson J, et al. Hepcidin regulates cellular iron efflux by binding to ferroportin and inducing its internalization. Science 2004;306:2090-3. (Abstract)
Nemeth E, Roetto A, Garozzo G, et al. Hepcidin is decreased in TFR2-Hemochromatosis. Blood 2005;105:1803-6. (Abstract)
Nick H, Acklin P, Lattmann R, et al. Development of tridentate iron chelators: from desferrithiocin to ICL670. Curr Med Chem 2003;10:1065-76. (Abstract)
Niederau C, Berger M, Stremmel W, et al. Hyperinsulinaemia in non-cirrhotic haemo-chromatosis: impaired hepatic insulin degradation? Diabetologia 1084; 26:441-4. (Abstract)
Niederau C, Fischer R, Sonnenberg A, et al. Survival and causes of death in cirrhotic and noncirrhotic patients with primary haemochromatosis. New Engl J Med 1985;313:1256-62. (Abstract)
Niederau C, Fischer R, Pürschel A, et al. Long-term survival in patients with hereditary hemochromatosis. Gastroenterology 1996;110:1107-1119. (Abstract)
Niederau C, Niederau CM, Littauer A, et al. Screening for iron overload and iron deficiency. Ann Int Med 1998;128:337-45. (Abstract)
Niederau C. Diabetes mellitus bei Hämochromatose. Z Gastroenterol 1999;37:22-32. (Abstract)
Niederau C. Iron overload and atherosclerosis. Hepatology 2000;32:672-4. (Abstract)
Nisbet-Brown E, Olivieri F, Giardina PJ, et al. Effectiveness and safety of ICL670 in iron-loaded patients with thalassaemia: a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, dose-escalation trial. Lancet 2003;361:1597-1602. (Abstract)
Njajou OT, Vaessen N, Joosse M, et al. A mutation in SLC11A3 is associated with autosomal dominant hemochromatosis. Nat Genet 2001;28:213-4. (Abstract)
Olivieri NF, Brittenham GM. Iron-chelating therapy and the treatment of thalassemia. Blood 1997;89:739-61. (Abstract)
Olivieri NF, Nathan DG, Macmillan JH, et al. Survival in medically treated patients with homozygous beta-thalassemia. N Engl J Med 1994;331:574-8. (Abstract)
Phatak PD, Sham RL, Raubertas RF, et al. Prevalence of hereditary hemochromatosis in 16,031 primary care patients. Ann Intern Med 1998;129:954-61. (Abstract)
Phelps G, Chapman I, Hall P, et al. Prevalence of genetic haemochromatosis among diabetic patients. Lancet 1989;2:233-4. (Abstract)
Pietrangelo A, Montosi G, Totaro A. Hereditary hemochromatosis in adults without pathogenic mutations in the hemochromatosis gene. N Engl J Med 1999;341:725-32. (Abstract)
Pietrangelo A. Physiology of iron transport and the hemochromatosis gene. Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol 2000;282:G403-G414. (Abstract)
Pietrangelo A. Hereditary hemochromatosis -a new look at an old disease. N Engl J Med 2004;350:2383-97. (Abstract)
Pietrangelo A. The ferroportin disease. Blood Cells Mol Dis 2004;32:131-8.

Piga A, Galanello R, Forni GL, et al. Randomized phase II trial of deferasirox (Exjade, ICL670), a once-daily, orally-administered iron chelator, in comparison to deferoxamine in thalassemia patients with transfusional iron overload. Haematologica 2006;91:873-80. (Abstract)
Piperno A, Roetto A, Mariani R, et al. Homozygosity for transferrin receptor-2 Y250X mutation induces early iron overload. Haematologica 2004; 89:359-60. (Abstract)
Porter JB Practical management of iron overload. Br J Haematol 2001;115:239-52. (Abstract)
Powell LW, Mortimer R, Harris OD. Cirrhosis of the liver: A comparative study of the four major aetiological groups. Med J Aust 1971;58:1941-50. (Abstract)
Rahier J, Loozen S, Goebbels RM, et al. The haemochromatosis human pancreas: a quantitative immunochemical and ultrastructural study. Diabetologia 1987;30:5-12. (Abstract)
Recklinghausen von FD. Über Hämochromatose. Berl Klin Wochenschr 1898;26:925.
Rivard SR, Lanzara C, Grimard D, et al. Autosomal dominant reticuloendothelial iron overload (HFE type 4) due to a new missense mutation in the FERROPORTIN 1 gene (SLC11A3) in a large French-Canadian family. Haematologica 2003;88:824-6. (Abstract)
Roetto A, Totaro A, Cazzola M, et al. Juvenile hemochromatosis locus maps to chromosome 1q. Am J Hum Genet 1999;64:1388-93. (Abstract)
Roetto A, Totaro A, Piperno A, et al. New mutations inactivating transferrin receptor 2 in hemochromatosis type 3. Blood 2001;97:2555-60. (Abstract)
Schuhmacher HR. Hemochromatosis and arthritis. Arthr Rheum 1964;7:41-50. (Abstract)
Sheldo JH. Haemochromatosis. Oxford University Press, 1935, London.
Short EM, Winkle RA, Billingham ME. Myocardial involvment in idiopathic hemochromatosis. Am J Med 1979;70:1275-9. (Abstract)
Singh BM, Grunewald RA, Press M, et al. Prevalence of haemochromatosis amongst patients with diabetes mellitus. Diabet Med 1992 ;9:730-1. (Abstract)
Simon M, Pawlotsky Y, Bourel M, et al. Hemochromatose idiopathique. Maladie associee a l'antigen HLA-A3? Nouv Press Med 1075;4:1432. (Abstract)
Simon M, Bourel M, Genetet B. Idiopathic hemochromatosis: demonstration of recessive transmission and early detection by family HLA typing. N Engl J Med 1977;297:1017-21. (Abstract)
Summers KM, Halliday JW, Powell LW. Identification of homozygous hemochromatosis subjects by measurement of hepatic iron index. Hepatology 1990;12:20-5. (Abstract)
Tavill AS. Diagnosis and management of hemochromatosis. Hepatology 2001;33:1321-8. (Abstract)
Telfer PT, Prestcott E, Holden S, et al. Hepatic iron concentration combined with long-term monitoring of serum ferritin to predict complications of iron overload in thalassaemia major. Br J Haematol 2000;110:971-7. (Abstract)
Toll A, Celis R, Ozalla MD, et al. The prevalence of HFE C282Y gene mutation is increased in Spanish patients with porphyria cutanea tarda without hepatitis C virus infection. J Eur Acad Dermatol Venereol 2006;20:1201-6. (Abstract)
Troisier M. Diabete sucre. Bull Soc Anatom (Paris) 1871;16:231-5.
Trosseau A. Glucosurie: Diabete sucre. Bull Soc Anatom (Paris) 1865;2:663.
U.S. Preventive Services Task Force. Screening for Hemochromatosis: Recommendation Statement. Am Fam Phys 2007;75:11-21.
Vaiopoulos G, Papanikolaou G, Politou M, et al. Arthropathy in juvenile hemochromatosis. Arthritis Rheum 2003;48:227-30. (Abstract)
Vichinsky E, Fischer R, Pakbaz Z, et al. Satisfaction and convenience of chelation therapy in patients with sickle cell disease (SCD): comparison between deferasirox (Exjade®, ICL670) and deferoxamine (DFO). Blood 2005;106:A2334.
Vulpe CD, Kuo YM, Murphy TL, et al. Hephaestin, a ceruloplasmin homologue implicated in intestinal iron transport, is defective in the sla mouse. Nat Genet 1999;21:195-9. (Abstract)
Wallace DF, Clark RM, Harley HA, et al. Autosomal dominant iron overload due to a novel mutation of ferroportin1 associated with parenchymal iron loading and cirrhosis. J Hepatol 2004;40:710-3. (Abstract)
Yaouanq JM. Diabetes and hemochromatosis: current concepts, management and prevention. Diabete et Metabolisme. (Paris) 1995;21:319-29. (Abstract)

Zhang AS, Xiong S, Tsukamoto H, et al. Localization of iron metabolism-related mRNAs in rat liver indicate that HFE is expressed predominantly in hepatocytes. Blood 2004;103:1509-14. (Abstract)
Zurlo MG, De Stefano P, Borgna-Pignatti C, et al. Survival and causes of death in thalassaemia major. Lancet 1989;2:27-30. (Abstract)

24. NAFLD and NASH

Claus Niederau

Introduction

Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) and non-alcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH) are the most common chronic liver diseases in the West (Tayama 2012, Cusi 2012). They are closely associated with obesity, type 2 diabetes mellitus, and metabolic syndrome. The epidemics of diabetes and obesity have also fueled an increasing prevalence of fatty liver disease (Tayama 2012, Cusi 2012). Both NAFLD and NASH are associated with an often asymptomatic elevation of serum ALT and gamma GT. Ultrasound monitoring can suggest the presence of a fatty infiltration of the liver; differentiation between NAFLD and NASH, however, often requires a liver biopsy. Such differentiation is important because NASH is associated with a much higher risk of liver fibrosis and cirrhosis than NAFLD.

Prevalence

NAFLD is present in 20 to 40% of the general population in industrialized countries and is the most prevalent chronic liver disease (Browning 2004, Chitturi 2004, McCullough 2005). It is more prevalent in obese and diabetic subjects (Bellentani 1994, Wanless 1990, Clark 2002, Chitturi 2004). Among all subjects with NAFLD, features of non-alcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH) can be seen in 10-20%. The prevalence of NASH in western countries is approximately 2-6%. In the US, NASH is estimated to affect 5-6% of the general population (McCullough 2005). It has been suggested that NASH accounts for more than 50% of cryptogenic cirrhosis (Ratziu 2002). NAFLD may progress to NASH with fibrosis, cirrhosis, and hepatocellular carcinoma (Marchesini 2003, Caldwell 2004). The term NASH was introduced in a description of 20 Mayo Clinic patients with a hitherto unnamed disease associated with hepatomegaly, abnormal ALT, a fatty liver histology, lobular hepatitis, and fibrosis mimicking alcoholic hepatitis in the absence of alcohol intake (Ludwig 1980); most patients had obesity and diabetes mellitus.

Demographics and risk factors

In the US, NAFLD is 3-5 times more prevalent in men than in women; such differences in gender might partly be explained by the fact that men have a higher BMI and that some male patients with NAFLD drink more alcohol than they report (Schwimmer 2005, Bahcecioglu 2006, Loguercio 2001). The NAFLD prevalence in the US is particularly high in people of Hispanic (28%) or Asian (20-30%) origin (Schwimmer 2005, Weston 2005). Due to the dramatic increase in obesity in the US and many other industrialized countries, there is also a dramatic increase in the prevalence of NAFLD and NASH (Tayama 2012, Cusi 2012). In the US almost 50% of obese boys have NAFLD (Schwimmer 2005). In many countries more than 80% of NAFLD patients have an increased BMI and 30-40% are obese; approximately 50% show signs of insulin resistance, 20-30% have type 2 diabetes, 80% show hyperlipidemia, and 30-60% have arterial hypertension. Correspondingly there is a strong association between NAFLD and NASH and the metabolic syndrome throughout the world (Marchesini 1999, Bedogni 2005). In comparison with NAFLD patients, NASH patients are older, more obese and more often have high serum liver enzymes, diabetes mellitus and metabolic syndrome (Ratziu 2002, Adams 2005, Hamaguchi 2005, Fassio 2004, Tayama 2012, Cusi 2012).

Pathogenesis

The degree of fatty infiltration in NAFLD is graded according to the percentage of hepatocytes with fat deposits: mild NAFLD involves less than 30% hepatocytes, moderate NAFLD up to 60%, and severe NAFLD above 60% (Ploeg 1993). NAFLD may regress if the cause is eliminated. NASH is associated with insulin resistance, increased circulating levels of leptin, adiponectin, tumor necrosis factor and some interleukins (Friedman 1998, Marra 2004). It is thought that there is an increased flow of free fatty acids from visceral fat to the liver contributing to abnormalities in intracellular lipid metabolism (Hashimoto 1999, Vendemiale 2001). Insulin resistance and increased free fatty acids may both affect mitochondrial oxidation of fatty acids causing free radical generation in hepatocytes (Grattagliano 2003). Thus, NASH is caused by two mechanisms or toxic “hits”: the first mechanism is the hepatic accumulation of triglycerides (NAFLD) due to insulin resistance and the second is thought to be the generation of free radicals with subsequent release of mediators and cytokines (McCullough 2006).

Insulin resistance has been closely linked to non-alcoholic fatty liver disease in both clinical trials and laboratory-based studies (McCullough 2006, Marchesini 2001, Sanyal 2001). The actual process by which NAFLD turns into NASH however remains ill defined despite this double-hit theory. Likely, genetic factors (similar to those responsible for the metabolic syndrome) as well as exogenic factors (like drugs, moderate amounts of alcohol, and other toxins) may contribute to the evolution of NAFLD into NASH. The role of hepatic iron in the progression of NASH remains controversial, but in some patients, iron may have a role in the pathogenesis of NASH by promoting oxidative stress (Lee 1995, George 1998 Bonkowsky 1999 Younoussi 1999).

The gut microbiota, now also called the gut microbiome, is involved in the pathophysiology of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease as well as in obesity and the metabolic syndrome. All the metabolic products generated by the intestinal microbiome first enter the liver. Studies with germ-free mice have shown that inoculation of microbiota from conventionally raised fat mice results in obesity and fatty liver (Bäckhed 2009). Genetically obese (ob/ob) mice have a decreased ratio of bacteroides versus firmicutes compared with lean (ob/+ and +/+ wild-type) mice (Ley 2009). Inoculation of gut microbiota from these obese mice (ob/ob) to germ-free mice led to an obese phenotype (Turnbaugh 2006). Similar effects occur when such mice are fed a Western diet or are inoculated with microbiota from an obese human (Turnbaugh 2009). It has also been shown recently by many investigators that the microbiome differs between obese and lean animals and between obese and lean humans (Ley 2005). As yet it is not completely known if intestinal products are the cause or only aggravate NAFLD and NASH. A recent study proposed that the altered microbiome in obesity might produce more ethanol and might thereby contribute to the development of NASH (Zhu 2012). Another recent paper shows that inflammasome or interleukin-18 deficiency enhances the progression of NASH and obesity by inducing microbiome dysbiosis (Henao-Mejia 2012). This dysbiosis-induced inflammation enters into the portal circulation through the influx of toll-like receptor (TLR) 4 and TLR9 agonists and thereby leads to an increase in tumor necrosis factor (TNF). It has also been shown for the first time that the composition of the microbiome and the obsese/NASH phenotype can be transmitted to wild-type mice co-housed with genetically deficient mice. This report corroborates that the gut microbiome plays an important role in the development of NASH and obesity, probably via changes in the inflammasome (Henao-Mejia 2012).

Natural history

The natural history of NAFLD in the general population is not well-defined since most data come from selected patients and tertiary centres (Dam-Larsen 1996, Lee 1989, Teli 1995). Correspondingly, published mortality and morbidity in hospitalized people with NAFLD are approximately 5 times higher than what is seen in the general population (Matteoni 1999). In the general population the risk for liver-related death in NAFLD appears to be associated mainly with age, insulin resistance, and histological evidence of hepatic inflammation and fibrosis (Adams 2005). Probably around 10% of NAFLD patients will progress to NASH over a period of 10 years (Figure 1). Cirrhosis later develops in 5-25% of patients with NASH and 30-50% of these patients die from liver-related causes over a 10-year period (McCollough 2005, Matteoni 1999). Cirrhosis in patients with NASH can also decompensate into subacute liver failure, progress to hepatocellular cancer (HCC), and recur after liver transplantation (McCollough 2005). Steatosis alone is reported to have a more benign clinical course, with cirrhosis developing in only 1-3% of patients (Day 2004, Day 2005, McCollough 2005, Matteoni 1999). Patients with NASH and fibrosis also have a significant risk for hepatocellular carcinoma (El-Serag 2004) (Figure 1).

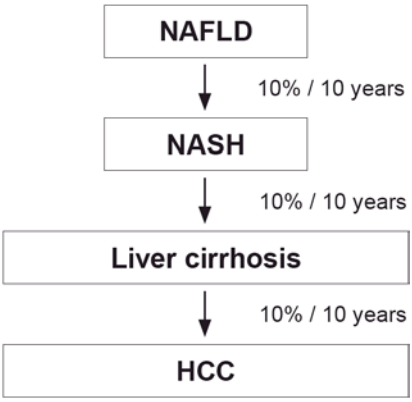


Figure 1. Natural history of NASH

Table 1. Non-invasive predictors of NASH

HAIR index (hypertension; ALT >40 U/l; insulin resistance)
≥2 are 80% sensitive, 89% specific for NASH (Dixon 2001)
BAAT index (BMI >28; Age >50 years; ALT >2x UNL; increased trig's)
≤1 has 100% negative predictive value for NASH (Ratziu 2000)

Diagnosis

NAFLD and NASH require valid reporting about alcohol consumption. Since only approximately 10% of Western populations are completely abstinent from alcohol, one needs to set a threshold above which one assumes that alcohol at least contributes to the pathogenic process of NAFLD and NASH. Most authors use a daily alcohol ingestion of 20 g as such a threshold (Figure 2); others use lower values such as 10 g/day or as high as 40 g/day for men.

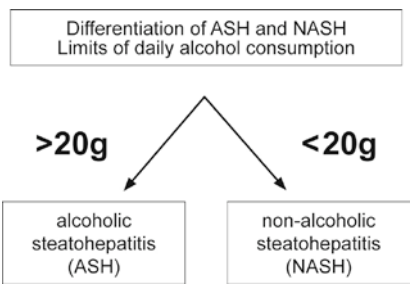


Figure 2. Differentiation of alcoholic liver disease (ASH) and NASH

The workup of NAFLD and NASH also includes checking into drug use, HBV and HCV infections, hemochromatosis, autoimmune liver disease and, in younger patients, Wilson's Disease. In special groups of patients NASH may be

accompanied by drug- and alcohol-induced liver disease and by HCV and HBV infections. The combination of NAFLD/NASH and HCV infection plays a particularly important clinical role because in this situation the rate of liver fibrosis is increased and the success of antiviral therapy is diminished (Ramesh 2004). NASH can be induced by various drugs and toxins including corticosteroids, amiodarone, methotrexate, tetracycline, tamoxifen, and valproate (Pessayre 2002) . Thus, one needs to carefully assess the full clinical history of patients. In practice NAFLD is often diagnosed by combining elevated levels of ALT and gamma GT with the sonographic appearance of an increase in the echodensity of the liver. However, a considerable number of patients with NAFLD and even with NASH and fibrosis have normal serum liver enzymes (Abrams 2004). Usually ALT is higher than AST unless there is already severe fibrosis or cirrhosis. Fasting serum glucose should be checked in all patients with NAFLD and NASH; one will also often find elevated serum insulin, insulin resistance, and/or diabetes (Table 1).

Table 2. Treatment options for NASH

Moderate weight loss
Drugs for treatment of obesity (e.g., orlistat or sibutramine)
Complete abstinence from alcohol
Good control of diabetes mellitus
Insulin sensitizers (e.g., glitazones)
Surgery for massive obesity (e.g., gastric bypass surgery)
Liver transplant (LT)

Many authors also recommend to routinely look for metabolic syndrome, which is diagnosed when three of the following features are seen (Greenland 2003):

- waist circumference ≥102 cm for men and ≥88 cm for women,
- fasting glucose level ≥6.1 mmol/L,
- triglyceridemia ≥1.7 mmol/L,
- increase in high-density lipoprotein cholesterol (>1.3 mmol/L in women; >1.03 mmol/L in men)
- hypertension ≥135/80 mmHg.

Ultrasound of the liver has a high sensitivity and specificity (both approaching 90%) for detection of fatty infiltration but does not allow assessment for the presence or degree of inflammation and fibrosis (Davies 1991). Therefore, diagnosis of fat in the liver is easily made by ultrasound but diagnosis of NAFLD or NASH cannot be made without a liver histology. In addition, liver biopsy is still the best way to reliably differentiate NASH from NAFLD (Harrison 2003). Today most pathologists use the Brunt description to score the histological degree of NASH (Brunt 1999) (Table 3).

Since NAFLD is a very frequent but also relatively benign disease, one aims to identify risks factors for NASH in order to avoid doing liver biopsies in all NAFLD patients. Risk factors for NASH include older age, excessive obesity, diabetes mellitus, other hepatotoxins, and clinical, laboratory or sonographic signs suggesting severe liver disease. Liver biopsy remains the gold standard for characterizing liver histology in patients with NAFLD (Chalasani 2012). However,

it is expensive and carries some morbidity and a small mortality risk. Thus, it should be performed in those patients who benefit most from diagnostic, therapeutic and prognostic perspectives. Liver biopsy should be considered in patients with NAFLD who are at increased risk to have steatohepatitis and advanced fibrosis. The presence of metabolic syndrome and the NAFLD Fibrosis Score may be used for identifying patients who are at risk for steatohepatitis and advanced fibrosis (Chalasani 2012). Liver biopsy should also be considered in patients with suspected NAFLD in whom competing etiologies for hepatic steatosis and co-existing chronic liver diseases cannot be excluded without a biopsy (Chalasani 2012).

There has been increasing interest in non-invasive methods to identify fibrosis in patients with NAFLD (Gambino 2011) - these include the NAFLD Fibrosis Score, Enhanced Liver Fibrosis (ELF) panel, and transient elastography ("Fibroscan"). The NAFLD Fibrosis Score is based on six readily available variables (age, BMI, hyperglycemia, platelet count, albumin, AST/ALT ratio) and it is calculated using the published formula (http://nafldscore.com). In a meta-analysis of 13 studies consisting of 3064 patients, NAFLD Fibrosis Score was useful for predicting advanced fibrosis or cirrhosis (Gambino 2011). Although a recent meta-analysis showed that transient elastography ("Fibroscan") has a high sensitivity and specificity for identifying fibrosis in NAFLD (Gambino 2011) it has a high failure rate in individuals with a higher BMI (Chalasani 2012). These problems have been mostly solved with a new probe developed for obese patients. In addition, special software has been developed for estimating the degree of steatosis (see Chapter 19). The technique is still not commercially available in the US and not reimbursed in many countries.

Diet and lifestyle recommendations

Weight loss generally reduces hepatic steatosis, achieved either by hypocaloric diet alone or in conjunction with increased physical activity (Chalasani 2012) (table 2). Loss of at least 3-5% of body weight appears necessary to improve steatosis, but a greater weight loss (up to 10%) may be needed to improve necroinflammation. Exercise alone in adults with NAFLD may reduce hepatic steatosis but its ability to improve other aspects of liver histology remains unknown (Chalasani 2012). Several studies have shown that rapid weight loss (very low calorie diet or starving) increases the risk of progression of liver disease and even liver failure (Grattagliano 2000, James 1998, Neuschwander-Tetri 2003). Patients should therefore be educated not to induce rapid weight loss, but to aim at a weight loss of less than 10% of their body weight over 6-12 months (Okita 2001). It is unclear whether special diets are helpful; probably it is more important that the patients simply eat healthy foods like vegetables and fruits, rich in fibre and complex carbohydrates with a low glycemic index; they should avoid meat, saturated fat and products with less complex carbohydrates. Lifestyle modifications should include an increase in physical activity and sports as well as abstinence from alcohol. With the results of recent studies, coffee consumption does not need to be limited and may even have a positive impact on the development of liver fibrosis (Molloy 2012, Birerdinc 2012, Catalano 2010).

Table 3. Histological Brunt score (Brunt 1999)

Grade	Steatosis	Ballooning of hepatocytes	Degree of inflammation
1	<33%	Minimal	Mild
2	34-66%	Present	Moderate
3	>66%	Marked	Portal moderate, lobular moderate

Stage	Fibrosis
1	Perisinusoidal
2	Perisinusoidal and portal/periportal
3	Bridging septa
4	Extensive bridging fibrosis, cirrhosis

Pharmacological treatment

As yet, no drug has been approved by FDA or EMA to treat NASH. However, the new 2012 US guidelines (Chalasani 2012) recommend that vitamin E and/or pioglitazone may be given in some patients for treatment of NASH. These recommendations are based in particular on two NIH-sponsored, randomized controlled clinical trials (RCTs) with vitamin E and pioglitazone, the PIVENS and the TONIC trial (Sanyal 2010, Lavine 2011). The PIVENS study was a large multicenter RCT that randomized 247 non-diabetic patients with NASH to pioglitazone (30 mg/day), vitamin E (800 IU/day), or placebo for 24 months (Sanyal 2010). The primary endpoint was an improvement in >2 NAS points with at least 1 point improvement in hepatocellular ballooning and a 1 point improvement in either the lobular inflammation or steatosis score, and no increase in the fibrosis score. This goal was achieved in 19% of the placebo patients compared to 34% of the pioglitazone-treated patients ($p=0.04$ vs. placebo) and in 43% of the vitamin E-treated patients ($p=0.001$ vs. placebo). Because the study consisted of two primary comparisons (pioglitazone vs. placebo and vitamin E vs. placebo), a p-value of 0.025 was considered to be significant *a priori*. Therefore vitamin E but not pioglitazone met the primary endpoint although there were some histological benefits associated with pioglitazone (Sanyal 2010). It is noteworthy that pioglitazone was associated with a 4.7 kg weight gain compared to placebo ($p<0.001$). A recent meta-analysis including 5 RCTs showed that pioglitazone significantly improved steatosis and inflammation, but not fibrosis (Boettcher 2012). Other studies also suggest that pioglitazone improves histological inflammation and fibrosis, and ameliorates cardio-metabolic endpoints in patients not responding to lifestyle intervention (Musso 2012, Chalasani 2012). The other large multicenter RCT, the TONIC study, used the sustained reduction of ALT as the primary endpoint and a change in histology as secondary endpoint (Lavine 2011). The TONIC study compared the efficacy of vitamin E or metformin to placebo for treatment of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease in children and adolescents (8-17 years of age). Although the primary outcome of a reduction of ALT was not

different among the three groups, there was a significant improvement in histology ($p<0.006$) with vitamin E treatment compared to placebo over 96 weeks. In this study, metformin administered at 500 mg twice daily had no effect on aminotransferases and histology (Lavine 2011).

The recent US guidelines (Chalasani 2012) state that vitamin E at a daily dose of 800 IU/day improves histology in non-diabetic adults with biopsy-proven NASH and should be considered as first-line treatment. It is also mentioned that vitamin E is not recommended to treat NASH in diabetic patients, NAFLD without liver biopsy, NASH cirrhosis, or cryptogenic cirrhosis until further data supporting its effectiveness become available. In addition, the guidelines discuss the controversy as to whether vitamin E increases cancer risks (Chalasani 2012).

According to the same guidelines (Chalasani 2012), pioglitazone can be used in patients with biopsy-proven NASH. However, it needs be noted that the majority of patients who participated in pioglitazone trials were non-diabetic and that long-term safety and efficacy of pioglitazone in patients with NASH is not established.

Metformin should not be used for treatment of NASH according to these guidelines (Chalasani 2012).

In general, all drugs that induce weight loss might be beneficial in NAFLD and NASH, in particular when diet and lifestyle modification do not work (Table 2). Both sibutramine and orlistat have shown to improve some characteristics of NAFLD and NASH such as the sonographic degree of liver steatosis as well as the histological degree of steatosis and fibrosis (Sabuncu 2003, Derosa 2004, Hussein 2007, Harrison 2007).

Antioxidants and cytoprotective agents have also been proposed to treat NAFLD and NASH including vitamin C, glutathione, betaine, N-acetylcysteine, S-adenosyl-L-methionine and ursodeoxycholic acid. In a Cochrane analysis, none of these agents showed significant benefit in validated randomized studies (Lirussi 2007).

Recently, vitamin D deficiency has been proposed to be involved in the pathogenesis of NASH, and studies proposed that vitamin D supplementation may be useful for treatment of NASH (Barchetta 2012, Roth 2012). There is also a recent RCT suggesting that pentoxifillin might be useful for therapy of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (Zein 2011). Larger RCTs are needed for vitamin D and pentoxifillin.

Surgery for obesity

Bariatric surgery has recently been shown to improve NASH (Liu 2007, de Almeida 2006, Furuya 2007). The recent US guidelines (Chalasani 2012) state that bariatric surgery is not contraindicated in otherwise eligible obese individuals with NAFLD or NASH. It appears premature to recommend bariatric surgery as an established option to specifically treat NASH.

Liver transplantation (LTx) for NASH

LTx is the final option for patients with end-stage liver disease due to cirrhosis and complications of portal hypertension with NASH. Due to the increase in the prevalence of NASH, there is also an increase in LTx due to end-stage liver disease caused by NASH (Burke 2004). However, NASH can recur after LTx, particularly

if patients have previously undergone jejunoileal bypass surgery (Kim 1996, Requart 1995, Weston 1998, Contos 2001, Burke 2004). LTx does not cure the metabolic defect that causes NASH.

References

Abrams GA, Kunde SS, Lazenby AJ, Clements RH. Portal fibrosis and hepatic steatosis in morbidly obese subjects: a spectrum of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Hepatology 2004;40:475-83. (Abstract)

Adams LA, Lymp JF, Sauver SJ, et al. The natural history of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: a population-based cohort study. Gastroenterology 2005;129:113-21. (Abstract)

Adams LA, Sanderson S, Lindor KD, Angulo P. The histological course of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: a longitudinal study of 103 patients with sequential liver biopsies. J Hepatol 2005;42:132-8. (Abstract)

Bäckhed F, Ding H, Wang T, et al. The gut microbiota as an environmental factor that regulates fat storage. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2004;101:15718-23.

Bahcecioglu IH, Koruk M, Yilmaz O, et al. Demographic and clinicopathological characteristics of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease in the east-southeastern Anatolia regions in Turkey. Med Princ Pract 2006;15:62-8. (Abstract)

Barchetta I, Carotti S, Labbadia G, et al. Liver vitamin D receptor, CYP2R1, and CYP27A1 expression: relationship with liver histology and vitamin D3 levels in patients with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis or hepatitis C virus. Hepatology 2012;56:2180-7.

Bedogni G, Miglioli L, Masutti F, Tiribelli C, Marchesini G, Bellentani S. Prevalence of and risk factors for nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: the Dionysos nutrition and liver study. Hepatology 2005;42:44-52. (Abstract)

Belfort R, Harrison SA, Brown K, et al. A placebo-controlled trial of pioglitazone in subjects with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. N Engl J Med 2006;355:2297-307. (Abstract)

Bellentani S, Tiribelli C, Saccoccio G, et al. Prevalence of chronic liver disease in the general population of northern Italy: the Dionysos Study. Hepatology 1994;20:1442-9. (Abstract)

Bonkovsky HL, Jawaid Q, Tortorelli K, et al. Non-alcoholic steatohepatitis and iron: increased prevalence of mutations of the HFE gene in non-alcoholic steatohepatitis. J Hepatol. 1999;31:421-9. (Abstract)

Browning JD, Szczepaniak LS, Dobbins R, et al. Prevalence of hepatic steatosis in an urban population in the United States: impact of ethnicity. Hepatology 2004;40:1387-95. (Abstract)

Brunt EM, Janney CG, Di Bisceglie AM, Neuschwander-Tetri BA, Bacon BR. Nonalcoholic steatohepatitis: a proposal for grading and staging the histological lesions. Am J Gastroenterol 1999;94:2467-74. (Abstract)

Burke A, Lucey MR. Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease, non-alcoholic steatohepatitis and orthotopic liver transplantation. Am J Transplant 2004;4:686-93. (Abstract)

Caldwell SH, Crespo DM. The spectrum expanded: cryptogenic cirrhosis and the natural history of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. J Hepatol 2004;40:578-84. (Abstract)

Chalasani N, Younossi Z, Lavine JE, et al. The diagnosis and management of Non-Alcoholic Fatty Liver Disease: Practice Guideline by the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases, American College of Gastroenterology, and the American Gastroenterological Association. Hepatology 2012;58:2005-23.

Chitturi S, Farrell GC, George J. Non-alcoholic steatohepatitis in the Asia-Pacific region: future shock. J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2004;19:368-74. (Abstract)

Clark JM, Brancati FL, Diehl AM. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Gastroenterology 2002;122:1649-57 (Abstract)

Contos MJ, Cales W, Sterling RK, et al. Development of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease after orthotopic liver transplantation for cryptogenic cirrhosis. Liver Transpl 2001;7:363-73. (Abstract)

Cusi K. Role of obesity and lipotoxicity in the development of nonalcoholic steatohepatitis: pathophysiology and clinical implications. Gastroenterology 2012;142:711-725.

Davies RJ, Saverymuttu SH, Fallowfield M, Joseph AE. Paradoxical lack of ultrasound attenuation with gross fatty change in the liver. Clin Radiol 1991;43:393-6. (Abstract)

Day CP. The potential role of genes in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Clin Liver Dis 2004;8:673-91. (Abstract)
Day CP. Natural history of NAFLD: remarkably benign in the absence of cirrhosis. Gastroenterology 2005;129:375-8. (Abstract)
Dam-Larsen S, Franzmann M, Andersen IB, et al. Long term prognosis of fatty liver: risk of chronic liver disease and death. Gut 2004;53:750-5. (Abstract)
de Almeida SR, Rocha PR, Sanches MD, et al. Roux-en-Y gastric bypass improves the nonalcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH) of morbid obesity. Obes Surg 2006;16:270-8. (Abstract)
Derosa G, Cicero AF, Murdolo G, Ciccarelli L, Fogari R. Comparison of metabolic effects of orlistat and sibutramine treatment in Type 2 diabetic obese patients. Diabetes Nutr Metab 2004;17:222-9. (Abstract)
El-Serag HB, Tran T, Everhart JE. Diabetes increases the risk of chronic liver disease and hepatocellular carcinoma. Gastroenterology 2004;126:460-8. (Abstract)
Fassio E, Alvarez E, Dominguez N, Landeira G, Longo C. Natural history of nonalcoholic steatohepatitis: a longitudinal study of repeat liver biopsies. Hepatology 2004;40:820-6. (Abstract)
Friedman JM, Halaas JL. Leptin and the regulation of body weight in mammals. Nature 1998;395:763-70. (Abstract)
George DK, Goldwurm S, MacDonald GA, et al. Increased hepatic iron concentration in nonalcoholic steatohepatitis is associated with increased fibrosis. Gastroenterology. 1998;114:311-8. (Abstract)
Grattagliano I, Caraceni P, Portincasa P, et al. Adaptation of subcellular glutathione detoxification system to stress conditions in choline-deficient diet induced rat fatty liver. Cell Biol Toxicol 2003;19:355-66. (Abstract)
Grattagliano I, Portincasa P, Palmieri VO, Palasciano G. Managing nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Recommendations for family physicians. Can Fam Physician 2007;53:857-63. (Abstract)
Furuya CK Jr, de Oliveira CP, de Mello ES, et al. Effects of bariatric surgery on nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: preliminary findings after 2 years. J Gastroenterol Hepatol. 2007;22:510-4. (Abstract)
Harrison SA, Torgerson S, Hayashi PH. The natural history of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: a clinical histopathological study. Am J Gastroenterol 2003;98:2042-7 (Abstract)
Harrison SA, Fincke C, Helinski D, Torgerson S, Hayashi P. A pilot study of orlistat treatment in obese, non-alcoholic steatohepatitis patients. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2004;20:623-8. (Abstract)
Hashimoto T, Fujita T, Usuda N, et al. Peroxisomal and mitochondrial fatty acid beta-oxidation in mice nullizygous for both peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor alpha and peroxisomal fatty acyl-CoA oxidase. Genotype correlation with fatty liver phenotype. J Biol Chem 1999;274:19, 228-36.
Hussein O, Grosovski M, Schlesinger S, Szvalb S, Assy N. Orlistat reverse fatty infiltration and improves hepatic fibrosis in obese patients with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH). Dig Dis Sci 2007;52:2512-9. (Abstract)
Gambino R, Cassader M, Pagano G, et al. Meta-analysis: Natural history of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) and diagnostic accuracy of non-invasive tests for liver disease severity. Annals of Medicine 2011;43:617-49.
Grattagliano I, Vendemiale G, Caraceni P, et al. Starvation impairs antioxidant defense in fatty livers of rats fed a choline-deficient diet. J Nutr 2000;130:2131-6. (Abstract)
Greenland P, Knoll MD, Stamler J, et al. Major risk factors as antecedents of fatal and nonfatal coronary heart disease events. JAMA 2003;290:891-7. (Abstract)
Hamaguchi M, Kojima T, Takeda N, et al. The metabolic syndrome as a predictor of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Ann Intern Med 2005;143:722-8. (Abstract)
Henao-Mejia J, Elinav E, Jin C, et al. Inflammasome-mediated dysbiosis regulates progression of NAFLD and obesity. Nature 2012; 482:179-85
Hussein O, Grosovski M, Schlesinger S, Szvalb S, Assy N. Orlistat reverse fatty infiltration and improves hepatic fibrosis in obese patients with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH). Dig Dis Sci 2007;52:2512-9. (Abstract)
James OF, Day CP. Non-alcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH): a disease of emerging identity and importance. J Hepatol 1998;29:495-501. (Abstract)

Kim WR, Poterucha JJ, Porayko MK, Dickson ER, Steers JL, Wiesner RH. Recurrence of nonalcoholic steatohepatitis following liver transplantation. Transplantation 1996;62:1802-5. (Abstract)
Lavine JE, Schwimmer JB, Van Natta ML, et al for the Nonalcoholic Steatohepatitis Clinical Research Network. Effect of vitamin E or metformin for treatment of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease in children and adolescents: the TONIC randomized controlled trial. JAMA 2011;305:1659-68.
Lee RG. Nonalcoholic steatohepatitis: a study of 49 patients. Hum Pathol 1989;20:594-8. (Abstract)
Lee KS, Buck M, Houglum K, Chojkier M. Activation of hepatic stellate cells by TGF? and collagen type I is mediated by oxidative stress through c-myb expression. J Clin Invest 1995;96:2461-2468. (Abstract)
Ley RE, Bäckhed F, Turnbaugh P, Lozupone CA, Knight RD, Gordon JI. Obesity alters gut microbial ecology. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 2005; 102:11070–11075.
Lirussi F, Azzalini L, Orando S, Orlando R, Angelico F. Antioxidant supplements for non-alcoholic fatty liver disease and/or steatohepatitis. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2007;24:CD004996. (Abstract)
Liu X, Lazenby AJ, Clements RH, Jhala N, Abrams GA. Resolution of nonalcoholic steatohepatits after gastric bypass surgery. Obes Surg 2007;17:486-92.
Loguercio C, De Girolamo V, de Sio I, et al. Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease in an area of southern Italy: main clinical, histological, and pathophysiological aspects. J Hepatol 2001;35:568-74. (Abstract)
Ludwig J, Viggiano TR, McGill DB, Oh BJ. Nonalcoholic steatohepatitis: Mayo Clinic experiences with a hitherto unnamed disease. Mayo Clin Proc 1980;55:434-8. (Abstract)
Marchesini G, Brizi M, Bianchi G, et al. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: a feature of the metabolic syndrome. Diabetes 2001;50:1844-50. (Abstract)
Marchesini G, Brizi M, Morselli-Labate AM, et al. Association of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease with insulin resistance. Am J Med 1999;107:450-5. (Abstract)
Marchesini G, Bugianesi E, Forlani G, et al. Nonalcoholic fatty liver, steatohepatitis, and the metabolic syndrome. Hepatology 2003;37:917-23. (Abstract)
Matteoni CA, Younossi ZM, Gramlich T, Boparai N, Liu YC, McCullogh AJ. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: a spectrum of clinical and pathological severity. Gastroenterology 1999;116:1413-9. (Abstract)
Marra F. NASH: are genes blowing the hits? J Hepatol 2004;40:853-6 (Abstract)
McCullough AJ. Pathophysiology of nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. J Clin Gastroenterol 2006;40:1:S17-S29. (Abstract)
McCullough AJ. The epidemiology and risk factors of NASH. In: Farrell GC, George J, Hall P, McCullough AJ eds. Fatty liver disease: NASH and related disorders. Malden, MA: Blackwell, 2005:23-37.
Neuschwander-Tetri BA, Caldwell SH. Nonalcoholic steatohepatitis: summary of an AASLD Single Topic Conference. Hepatology 2003;37:1202-19. (Abstract)
Okita M, Hayashi M, Sasagawa T, et al. Effect of a moderately energy-restricted diet on obese patients with fatty liver. Nutrition 2001;17:542-7. (Abstract)
Pessayre D, Berson A, Fromenty B, Mansouri A. Mitochondria in steatohepatitis. Semin Liver Dis 2001;21:57-69. (Abstract)
Ploeg RJ, D'Alessandro AM, Knechtle SJ, Stegall MD, Pirsch JD, Hoffmann RM, et al. Risk factors for primary dysfunction after liver transplantation-a multivariate analysis. Transplantation 1993;55:807-13. (Abstract)
Ramesh S, Sanyal AJ. Hepatitis C and nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Semin Liver Dis 2004;24:399-413. (Abstract)
Ratziu, et al. Liver Fibrosis in Overweight Patients. Gastroenterology 2000;118:1117-23. (Abstract)
Requarth JA, Burchard KW, Colacchio TA, et al. Long-term morbidity following jejunoileal bypass: the continuing potential need for surgical reversal. Arch Surg 1995;130:318-25. (Abstract)
Rosenberg WM, Voelker M, Thiel R, et al. Serum markers detect the presence of liver fibrosis: a cohort study. Gastroenterology 2004;127:1704-13. (Abstract)

Roth CL, Elfers CT, Figlewicz DP, et al. Vitamin D deficiency in obese rats exacerbates nonalcoholic fatty liver disease and increases hepatic resistin and Toll-like receptor activation. Hepatology 2012;55:1103-11. doi: 10.1002/hep.24737. Epub 2012 Feb 15.
Sabuncu T, Nazligul Y, Karaoglanoglu M, Ucar E, Kilic FB. The effects of sibutramine and orlistat on the ultrasonographic findings, insulin resistance and liver enzyme levels in obese patients with non-alcoholic steatohepatitis. Rom J Gastroenterol 2003;12:189-92. (Abstract)
Sanyal AJ, Campbell-Sargent C, Mirshahi F, et al. Nonalcoholic steatohepatitis: association of insulin resistance and mitochondrial abnormalities. Gastroenterology 2001;120:1183-92. (Abstract)
Sanyal AJ, Chalasani N, Kowdley KV, et al. Pioglitazone, vitamin E, or placebo for nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. N Engl J Med 2010;362:1675-85.
Schwimmer JB, McGreal N, Deutsch R, Finegold MJ, Lavine JE. Influence of gender, race, and ethnicity on suspected fatty liver in obese adolescents. Pediatrics 2005 115:561-5. (Abstract)
Suzuki A, Angulo P, Lymp J, Li D, Satomura S, Lindor K. Hyaluronic acid, an accurate serum marker for severe hepatic fibrosis in patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. Liver Int 2005;25:779-86. (Abstract)
Tuyama AC, Chang CY. Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. J Diabetes 2012;4:266-80.
Teli MR, James OF, Burt AD, Bennett MK, Day CP. The natural history of nonalcoholic fatty liver: a follow-up study. Hepatology 1995;22:1714-9. (Abstract)
Turnbaugh PJ, Ley RE, Mahowald MA, Magrini V, Mardis ER, Gordon JI.et al. An obesity-associated gut microbiome with increased capacity for energy harvest. Nature 2006;444:1027-31. (Abstract)
Turnbaugh PJ, Ridaura VK, Faith JJ, Rey FE, Knight R, Gordon JI. The effect of diet on the human gut microbiome: a metagenomic analysis in humanized gnotobiotic mice. Sci Transl Med 2009;1:6ra14. (Abstract)
Vendemiale G, Grattagliano I, Caraceni P, et al. Mitochondrial oxidative injury and energy metabolism alteration in rat fatty liver: effect of the nutritional status. Hepatology 2001;33:808-15. (Abstract)
Wanless IR, Lentz JS. Fatty liver hepatitis (steatohepatitis) and obesity: an autopsy study with analysis of risk factors. Hepatology 1990;12:1106-10. (Abstract)
Weston S, Charlton MR, Lindor KD. Liver transplantation for nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. Gastroenterology 1998;114:A1364.
Weston SR, Leyden W, Murphy R, et al. Racial and ethnic distribution of nonalcoholic fatty liver in persons with newly diagnosed chronic liver disease. Hepatology 2005;41:372-9. (Abstract)
Younossi ZM, Gramlich T, Bacon BR, et al. Hepatic iron and nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Hepatology 1999;30:847-50. (Abstract)
Zein CO, Yerian LM, Gogate P, et al. Pentoxifylline improves nonalcoholic steatohepatitis: a randomized placebo-controlled trial. Hepatology. 2011;54:1610-9. (Abstract)
Zhu L, Baker SS, Gill C, et al. Characterization of the gut microbiome in non-alcoholicsteatohepatitis (NASH) patients: A connection between endogenous alcohol and NASH. Hepatology 2013;57:601-9. (Abstract)

25. Wilson's Disease

Claus Niederau

Introduction

In 1912, Kinnear Wilson was the first to describe an inherited lethal disease associated with progressive lenticular degeneration, chronic liver disease and cirrhosis (Wilson 1912). In the same year, Kayser and Fleischer detected that patients with Wilson's Disease (WD) often have brownish corneal copper deposits now called Kayser-Fleischer rings (Fleischer 1912).

WD is an autosomal recessive error of the metabolism. Its gene ATP7B encodes a copper-transporting ATPase (Bull 1993, Tanzi 1993, Petrukhin 1993, Yamaguchi 1993). The genetic defect of the ATP7B protein reduces biliary copper excretion leading to copper accumulation in the cornea and various organs including the liver, brain and kidney. The alteration of the ATP7B protein also reduces the incorporation of copper into ceruloplasmin. The corresponding presence of apoceruloplasmin (ceruloplasmin with no copper incorporation) leads to a decrease in circulating levels of ceruloplasmin due to the reduced half-life of the apoprotein. Thus, despite copper accumulation in many organs, circulating levels of copper and ceruloplasmin are decreased in most WD patients.

The prevalence of WD is rare, estimated at 3 per 100,000 population (Frysman 1990). The clinical presentation may vary. Some WD patients are diagnosed with liver problems while others present with neurologic or psychiatric symptoms; many patients show both hepatic and neurological disease (Figure 1). Episodes of hemolysis and renal abnormalities may also occur. WD typically affects children and younger adults, and is rarely seen in adults older than 40. WD is fatal unless appropriately treated. Drugs for treatment of WD are copper chelators such as penicillamine, and trientine (Walshe 1956). More recently, zinc has been used to reduce intestinal copper absorption and to detoxify free circulating copper. Patients with fulminant liver failure or decompensated cirrhosis may have to undergo liver transplantation (LTX), which cures WD.

Clinical presentation

Screening for WD is useful only in families with an affected member. In all other circumstances diagnostic procedures are only done when symptoms and findings

suggest WD. These include liver disease, neurological symptoms, renal abnormalities and episodes of hemolysis. WD is diagnosed in the vast majority of patients between the ages of 5 and 35. There are rare reports of patients diagnosed at ages 3-5 (Kalach 1993, Wilson 2000) and at ages of up to about 60 years (Gow 2000). Late-onset WD is a frequently overlooked condition (Ferenci 2007). Diagnostic workup does not rely on a single test but includes identification of corneal Kayser-Fleischer rings, reduced serum ceruloplasmin and copper as well as a quantitative determination of liver copper concentration (Scheinberg 1952, Walshe 1956, Saito 1987, Stremmel 1991, Roberts 2003) (Figure 2).

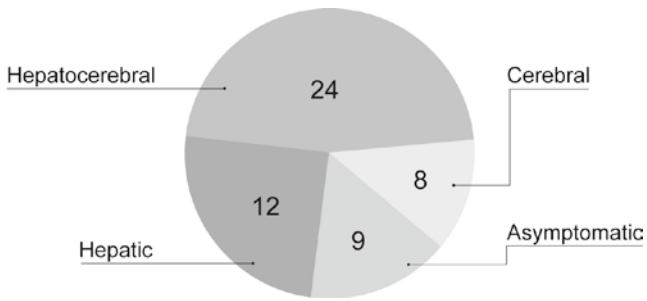


Figure 1. Clinical course of WD in 53 patients (modified from Stremmel 1991)

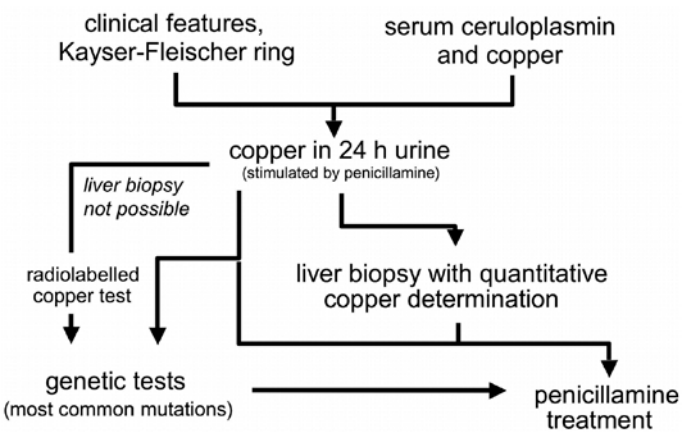


Figure 2. Diagnostic workup for WD

Genetic tests are usually only done in relatives of a confirmed WD patient. It is easy to diagnose WD in subjects who present with liver cirrhosis, typical neurologic manifestations and Kayser-Fleischer rings; many of these patients present at ages 5 to 35 and have decreased serum copper and ceruloplasmin (Sternlieb 1990). However, a considerable number of WD patients present only with liver disease and may not have Kayser-Fleischer rings or decreased serum levels of ceruloplasmin (Steindl 1997). Under these circumstances diagnosis may be difficult; measurement

of 24-hour urinary copper excretion often helps to support the suspicion of WD. Liver biopsy with measurement of quantitative copper concentration should be done to corroborate the diagnosis (Stremmel 1991, Roberts 2003).

In general, WD patients diagnosed primarily with liver disease are children and adolescents and are younger than those diagnosed due to neurological symptoms (Merle 2007). Many patients who present only with CNS symptoms are 20-40 years old. Patients with WD may present with a wide spectrum of liver disease ranging from asymptomatic elevation of serum aminotransferases to fulminant liver failure. Serum aminotransferases are elevated in most WD patients irrespective of age (Schilsky 1991). Other WD patients may present with findings and symptoms of autoimmune hepatitis including autoimmune antibodies and elevated IgG (Scott 1978, Milkiewicz 2000). The clinical picture might also resemble acute or chronic viral hepatitis, without the viral serum markers. Even liver histology is not predictive or typical for WD unless copper concentration is measured. Histological findings may range from fatty liver changes to severe necro-inflammatory and fibrotic disease and complete cirrhosis. In particular, children and adolescents with chronic active hepatitis of unknown etiology or autoimmune hepatitis and adult patients with a suspicion of autoimmune hepatitis or non-response to immunosuppressants should be evaluated for WD (Roberts 2003).

WD has to be excluded in patients with fulminant liver failure of unknown etiology, especially at ages under 35 years; WD patients with such presentation usually have some sort of liver disease (Rector 1984, Ferlan-Maroult 1999, Roberts 2003) associated with Coombs-negative hemolytic anemia and severely increased prothrombine time non-responsive to vitamin K and progressive renal failure (Sallie 1992). Some patients have bilirubin levels of more than 40 mg/dl while serum alkaline phosphatase is normal or just slightly elevated (Berman 1991). In contrast to many types of toxic liver failure, liver failure in WD usually does not start with high increases in aminotransferases. In many WD patients AST levels exceed ALT levels (Emre 2001, Berman 1991). In most cohorts, for unexplained reasons, the ratio of females to males is approximately 2:1 (Roberts 2003). Serum ceruloplasmin may be decreased while serum copper and 24-hour urinary excretion of copper is usually elevated. It is extremely helpful when one can identify Kayser-Fleischer rings in this situation; these patients need to be studied with a slit lamp by an experienced ophthalmologist. Patients with acute liver failure need a diagnostic workup as rapidly as possible; if there is a strong suspicion or diagnosis of WD, the patient should be transferred to a transplant centre the same day.

Neurological symptoms in WD often resemble those seen in Parkinson's disease including tremor and rigor. Many patients report that symptoms start with problems in handwriting and dysarthria. Neurological symptoms may be associated with slight behavioural alterations, which may later proceed to manifest psychiatric disease including depression, anxiety and psychosis. With the progression of CNS involvement WD patients may develop seizures and pseudobulbar palsy associated with severe dysphagia, aspiration and pneumonia. Although many older WD patients present with neurological disease, the diagnostic workup often shows significant liver involvement or even complete liver cirrhosis.

Renal involvement of WD may present with aminoaciduria and nephrolithiasis (Azizi 1989, Nakada 1994, Cu 1996). There may be various other non-neurological

and non-hepatic complications of WD such as osteoporosis and arthritis, cardiomyopathy, pancreatitis, hypoparathyroidism, and miscarriages (for literature see Roberts 2003).

Kayser-Fleischer rings are caused by corneal copper deposition (Figure 3). Sometimes, one can see the rings directly as a band of brown pigment close to the limbus. In other patients the ring can only be identified using a slit lamp. Very rarely similar rings may be seen in non-WD patients, e.g., in some patients with neonatal or chronic cholestasis (Tauber 1993). Kayser-Fleischer rings are detectable in 50-60% of WD patients in most large cohorts (Tauber 1993, Roberts 2003). Many young WD patients with liver disease do not have such rings (Giacchino 1997) whereas almost all patients with primarily neurologic symptoms do have them (Steindl 1997). WD patients may also have other less specific eye changes including sunflower cataracts (Cairns 1963). Kayser-Fleischer rings usually regress with chelation therapy or after LTX (Stremmel 1991, Schilsky 1994).

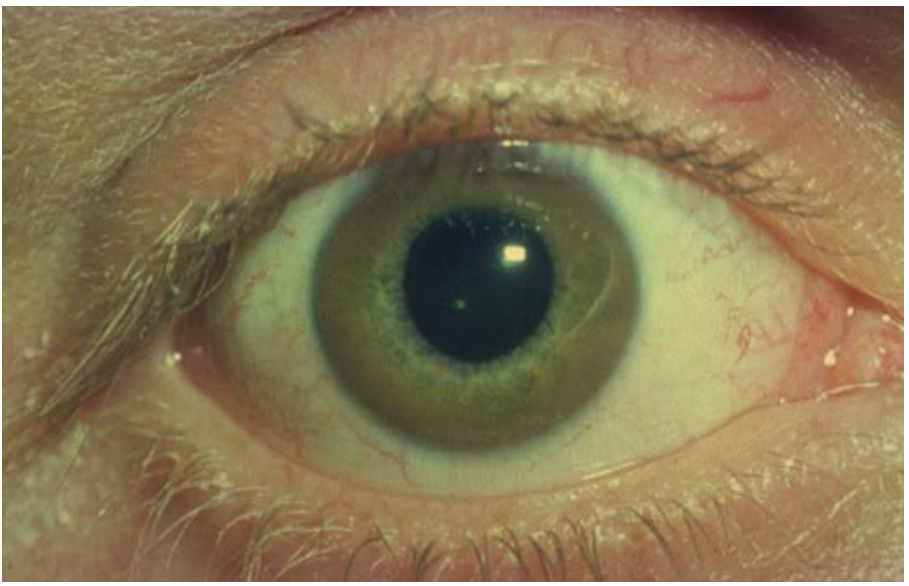


Figure 3. Kayser-Fleischer ring in a patient with WD

Diagnosis

Serum ceruloplasmin

Ceruloplasmin, the major circulating copper transporter, is synthesized and secreted mainly by hepatocytes. The 132 kd protein consists of six copper atoms per molecule of ceruloplasmin (holoceruloplasmin) while the remaining part of the protein does not carry copper (apoceruloplasmin). Ceruloplasmin acts as an acute phase reactant and may thus be increased by any inflammatory process; it may also rise in pregnancy and with the use of estrogens and oral contraceptives. One also

needs to remember that the normal range of serum ceruloplasmin is age-dependent: it is usually low in infants until the age of 6 months; in older children it may be somewhat higher than in adults. As explained previously, serum levels of ceruloplasmin are generally decreased in WD; however, this finding alone is unreliable because low serum ceruloplasmin may be seen without WD and serum ceruloplasmin may even be increased in severe WD and liver failure. Non-specific reductions of ceruloplasmin are usually associated with protein deficiency or any end-stage liver disease. Long-term parenteral nutrition may also lead to decreased levels of ceruloplasmin. Low serum ceruloplasmin is also a hallmark of Menkes' disease, a very rare X-linked inborn error of metabolism that leads to a defect in copper transport due to mutations in ATP7A (Menkes 1999). Very rarely, one cannot measure serum ceruloplasmin at all. This aceruloplasminemia is a very rare genetic disease caused by mutations in the ceruloplasmin gene; however, patients with aceruloplasminemia develop iron and not copper overload (Harris 1998).

Most patients with WD have a serum ceruloplasmin lower than 20 μg/dl; this finding is diagnostic for WD however only when there are other findings such as a Kayser-Fleischer corneal ring. In one prospective screening study, ceruloplasmin was measured in 2867 patients presenting with liver disease: only 17 of them had reduced ceruloplasmin levels and only 1 of these subjects had WD (Cauza 1997). Thus decreased ceruloplasmin had a positive predictive value of only 6% in the 2867 patients tested. In two cohorts, about 20% of WD had normal ceruloplasmin and no Kayser-Fleischer rings (Steindl 1997, Gow 2000). Most reports, however, show that more than 90% of WD patients have a reduced serum ceruloplasmin (Walshe 1989, Lau 1990, Stremmel 1991). Measurement of ceruloplasmin as a single marker cannot reliably differentiate homozygotes from heterozygotes.

Serum copper

Corresponding to the decrease in serum ceruloplasmin, total serum copper is also usually decreased in WD. Similar to the diagnostic problems in interpreting ceruloplasmin data in WD patients with fulminant liver failure, serum copper may also be normal in this situation – even if serum ceruloplasmin is decreased. In acute liver failure circulating copper may in fact be elevated because it is massively released from injured hepatocytes. If ceruloplasmin is reduced, a normal or elevated serum copper usually suggests that there is an increase in free serum copper (not bound to ceruloplasmin). The free copper concentration calculated from total copper and ceruloplasmin values has also been proposed as a diagnostic test and for monitoring of WD. It is elevated above 25 μg/dL in most untreated patients (normal values are below 10-15 μg/dL). The amount of copper associated with ceruloplasmin is 3.15 μg of copper per mg of ceruloplasmin. Thus free copper is the difference between the total serum copper in μg/dL and 3 times the ceruloplasmin concentration in mg/dl (Roberts 1998).

Increases in serum free copper, however, are not specific for WD and can be seen in all kinds of acute liver failure as well as in marked cholestasis (Gross 1985, Martins 1992). The calculation of the free copper concentration critically depends on the adequacy of the methods used for measuring total serum copper and ceruloplasmin; often labs simply state that one of the tests is below a certain value, which makes it impossible to calculate the amount of free copper.

Urinary copper excretion

Most WD patients have an increase in urinary copper excretion above 100 μg/24 hours, which is thought to represent the increase in circulating free copper (not bound to ceruloplasmin). Some studies suggest that about 20% of WD patients may have 24-hr urinary copper excretion between 40-100 μg/24 h (Steindl 1997, Giacchino1997, Gow 2000, Roberts 2003). However, some increase in urinary copper excretion can be found in severe cholestasis, chronic active hepatitis and autoimmune hepatitis (Frommer 1981). It has been suggested that urinary copper excretion stimulated by penicillamine may be more useful than the non-stimulating test. In children 500 mg of oral penicillamine is usually given at the beginning and then at 12 hours during the 24-hour urine collection. All WD children looked at had levels above 1600 μg copper/24 h and all patients with other liver diseases including autoimmune hepatitis and cholestatic liver disease had lower values. It is not clear whether this test has a similar discriminative power in adults where it has been used in various modifications (Tu 1967, Frommer 1981).

Hepatic copper concentration

Hepatic copper content above 250 μg/g dry weight liver is still the gold standard for diagnosis of WD and is not seen in heterozygotes or other liver diseases with the exception of Indian childhood cirrhosis (Martins 1992). Biopsies (larger than 1 cm in length) for measurements of hepatic copper determination should be taken with a disposable Tru-Cut needle, placed dry in a copper-free container and shipped frozen (Song 2000, Roberts 2003).

Radiolabelled copper

In WD, incorporation of radiolabelled copper into ceruloplasmin is significantly reduced. This test is rarely used because of the difficulty in obtaining the isotope and because of legal restrictions.

Liver biopsy findings

Histological findings in WD range from some steatosis and hepatocellular necrosis to the picture as seen in severe autoimmune hepatitis with fibrosis and cirrhosis. Patients diagnosed at a young age usually have extensive liver disease; older patients who first present with neurological symptoms often have abnormalities in liver biopsy as well (Stremmel 1991, Steindl 1997, Merle 2007). Detection of copper in hepatocytes, e.g., by staining with rhodamine using routine histochemistry does not allow a diagnosis of WD (Geller 2000) (Figure 4).

Neurology and MRI of the CNS

Neurologic symptoms in WD include Parkinson's-like abnormalities with rigidity, tremor and dysarthria. In more severely affected patients there may be muscle spasms, contractures, dysphonia, and dysphagia. In patients with pronounced neurological symptoms magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) often identifies abnormalities in basal ganglia such as hyperintensity on T2-weighted imaging (Aisen 1995, van Wassanaer 1996). MRI of the CNS is superior to computed tomography to diagnose WD.

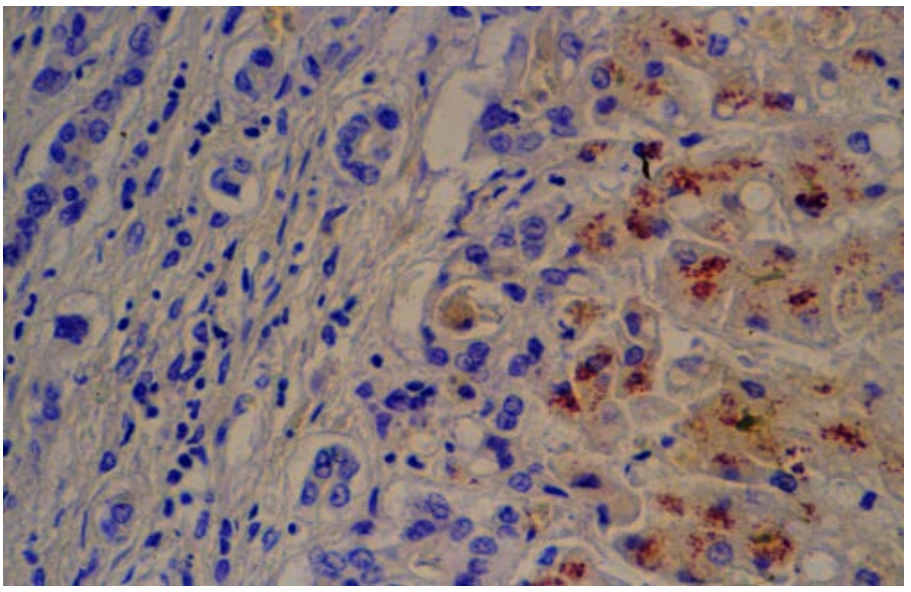


Figure 4. Liver histology (rhodamine staining for copper) in a WD patient

Genetic Studies

The use of mutation analysis in WD is limited by the fact that more than 200 ATP7B mutations have been described (see www.medgen.med.ualberta.ca/database.html). When the mutation is known in a specific patient, gene analysis may be useful for family screening or prenatal analysis (Thomas 1995, Shab 1997, Loudianos 1994). Some populations in Eastern Europe show predominance of the H1069Q mutation (for literature see Roberts 2003).

Treatment

Before 1948, all patients with Wilson's Disease died shortly after diagnosis. In 1948, intramuscular administration of the copper chelator BAL (dimercaprol) was introduced as the first treatment of WD (Cumming 1951, Denny-Brown 1951) followed by the oral chelators penicillamine (1955), trientine (1969) and tetrathiomolybdate (1984). Other treatment modalities include oral zinc salts (1961) and liver transplantation (1982). Today, most patients with WD remain on a lifelong pharmacologic therapy usually including a copper chelator and/or a zinc salt (Figure 5). LTx is reserved for fulminant liver failure and irreversible decompensation of liver cirrhosis. Patients with a successful LTx do not need WD treatment because LTx heals the biochemical defect. Today, most doctors use oral chelators for initial treatment of symptomatic patients; many physicians start therapy with penicillamine while some prefer trientine. Both drugs are probably equally effective, with trientine having fewer side effects. In patients with advanced neurological disease some authors recommend tetrathiomolybdate for primary therapy. Combination therapy of

chelators and zinc salts might have additive effects, acting on both urinary copper excretion and its intestinal absorption. After removal of most accumulated copper and regression of the most severe clinical problems the chelator dose may be reduced and later replaced by zinc. Patients presenting without symptoms may be treated with a rather low dose of a chelator or with a zinc salt from the beginning. Compliance problems have been shown to regularly cause recurrence of symptomatic WD and may lead to fulminant liver failure, need for LTx or death.

Table 1. Treatment options in WD

Penicillamine (600-1800 mg/day)
In case of intolerance to penicillamine: **Trientine** (900-2400 mg/day)
For combination of maintenance: **Zinc acetate/sulfate**
For neurologic disease – not yet approved: **Tetrathiomolybdate**
In acute liver failure/decompensated cirrhosis: **Liver transplantation**
Restriction of food with high copper content (does not substitute for chelators or zinc!)

Penicillamine. Penicillamine was the first oral copper chelator shown to be effective in WD (Walshe 1955). Total bioavailability of oral penicillamine ranges between 40 and 70% (Bergstrom 1981). Many studies have shown that penicillamine reduces copper accumulation and provides clinical benefit in WD (Walshe 1973, Grand 1975, Sternlieb 1980). Signs of liver disease often regress during the initial 6 months of treatment. Non-compliance has been shown to cause progression of liver disease, liver failure, death and LTx (Scheinberg 1987). However, neurological symptoms may deteriorate at the start of penicillamine treatment; it remains controversial how often this neurological deterioration occurs and whether it is reversible; the rate of neurological worsening ranges from 10-50% in different cohorts (Brewer1987, Walshe 1993). Some authors even recommend not using penicillamine at all in WD patients with neurological disease (Brewer 2006). Penicillamine is associated with many side effects that lead to its discontinuation in up to 30% of patients (for literature see Roberts 2003). An early sensitivity reaction may occur during the first 3 weeks including fever, cutaneous exanthema, lymphadenopathy, neutropenia, thrombocytopenia, and proteinuria. In such early sensitivity, penicillamine should be replaced by trientine immediately. Nephrotoxicity is another frequent side effect of penicillamine, which occurs later and includes proteinuria and signs of tubular damage. In this case penicillamine should be immediately discontinued. Penicillamine may also cause a lupus-like syndrome with hematuria, proteinuria, positive antinuclear antibody, and Goodpasture's Syndrome. More rarely the drug can damage the bone marrow leading to thrombocytopenia or total aplasia. Dermatologic side effects include elastosis perforans serpiginosa, pemphigoid lesions, lichen planus, and aphthous

stomatitis. There have also been reports of myasthenia gravis, polymyositis, loss of taste, reduction of IgA, and serous retinitis due to administration of penicillamine.

In order to minimize its side effects pencillamine should be started at 250 mg daily; the dose may be increased in 250 mg steps every week to a maximal daily amount of 1000 to 1500 mg given in 2 to 4 divided doses daily (Roberts 2003). Maintenance doses range from 750 to 1000 mg/d given as 2 divided doses. In children the dose is 20 mg/kg/d given in 2 or 3 divided doses. Penicillamine should be given 1 hour before or 2 hours after meals because food may inhibit its absorption. After starting penicillamine therapy serum ceruloplasmin at first may decrease. Treatment success is checked by measuring 24-hr urinary copper that should range between 200-500 μg/day. In the long run ceruloplasmin should increase and free copper should regress towards normal with penicillamine therapy (Roberts 2003).

Trientine (triene). The chemical structure of the copper chelator trientine (triethylene tetramine dihydrochloride, AKA triene) differs from penicillamine. Trientine has usually been used as an alternative or substitute for penicillamine, in particular when penicillamine's major side effects are not tolerable (Walshe 1982). Triene only rarely has side effects. Similar to penicillamine long-term treatment with trientine may cause hepatic iron accumulation in persons with WD. Trientine is poorly absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract, and only 1% appears in the urine (Walshe 1982). Doses range from 750 to 1500 mg/d given in 2 or 3 divided doses; 750 or 1000 mg are given for maintenance therapy (Roberts 2003). In children a dose of 20 mg/kg/d is recommended. Similar to penicillamine, trientine should be given 1 hour before or 2 hours after meals. The effectiveness of copper chelation by triene is measured as described for penicillamine. Triene chelates several metals such as copper, zinc, and iron by urinary excretion and it effectively removes accumulated copper from various organs in persons with WD as well as in severe liver disease (Walshe 1979, Scheinberg 1987, Santos 1996, Saito 1991). It is still unclear whether penicillamine is a more effective copper chelator when compared to triene; probably the difference in effectiveness is small (Walshe 1973, Sarkar 1977). Potential deterioration of neurological disease may also be seen after starting triene therapy; the worsening however is less frequent and less pronounced than that seen after starting with penicillamine.

Zinc. Most physicians substitute penicillamine or triene with zinc for maintenance therapy when most copper accumulation has been removed. Zinc can also be given as initial therapy in asymptomatic patients diagnosed by family screening. A recent report however shows that WD symptoms may occur despite zinc prophylaxis in asymptomatic patients (Mishra 2008). In a recent study from India, 45 WD patients were on both penicillamine and zinc sulfate. The majority of patients (84%) had neuropsychiatric manifestations. The mean duration of treatment with penicillamine and zinc, before stopping penicillamine, was 107 months. All patients had to stop penicillamine due to the financial burden. The patients then only received zinc sulfate for 27 months and 44 of the 45 patients (98%) remained stable. Only one patient reported worsening in dysarthria (Sinha 2008). Zinc does not act as an iron chelator but inhibits intestinal copper absorption and has also been suggested to bind free toxic copper (Brewer 1983, Schilksky 1989, Hill 1987). Zinc rarely has any side effects. It is still unclear whether zinc as monotherapy is an

effective "decoppering" agent in symptomatic patients. There are some hints that hepatic copper may accumulate despite zinc therapy including reports about hepatic deterioration with a fatal outcome (Lang 1993, Walshe 1995). Therefore some authors use zinc in combination with a chelator. Neurological deterioration is rather rare under zinc therapy (Brewer 1987, Czlonkowska 1996). The recommended doses of zinc vary in the literature: according to AASLD practice guidelines dosing is in milligrams of elemental zinc (Roberts 2003). For larger children and adults, 150 mg/d is administered in 3 divided doses. Compliance with doses given thrice daily may be problematic; zinc has to be taken at least twice daily to be effective (Brewer 1998). Other authors recommend using zinc sulfate at 150 mg thrice daily as a loading dose and 100 mg thrice daily for maintenance. Further recommendations suggest giving 50 mg as zinc acetate thrice daily in adults. The type of zinc salt used has been thought to make no difference with respect to efficacy (Roberts 2003). However, zinc acetate has been suggested to cause the least gastrointestinal discomfort. When zinc is combined with a chelator the substances should be given at widely spaced intervals, potentially causing compliance problems. Effectiveness of the zinc treatment should be checked as described for penicillamine and zinc (Roberts 2003).

Tetrathiomolybdate. Tetrathiomolybdate is an experimental copper chelator not approved by FDA or EMA. It has been suggested as the initial treatment of WD patients with neurological involvement. Early reports say that tetrathiomolybdate stabilizes the neurological disease and reduces circulating free copper in a matter of weeks (Brewer 1994, Brewer 1996). A more recent randomized study supports this view and also suggests that zinc monotherapy is insufficient for treatment of neurological WD (Brewer 2006).

Vitamin E, other antioxidants and diet. Since serum and hepatic concentrations of vitamin E levels may be reduced in WD (von Herbay 1994, Sokol 1994) it has been suggested to complement vitamin E intake. Some authors have also recommended taking other antioxidants; studies have not proven their effectiveness as yet.

WD patients should avoid food with high copper content (nuts, chocolate, shellfish, mushrooms, organ meats, etc). Patients living in older buildings should also check whether the water runs through copper pipes. Such dietary and lifestyle restrictions do not replace chelator or zinc therapy (Roberts 2003).

Fulminant hepatic failure and LTx. Most WD patients with fulminant liver failure need LTx urgently in order to survive (Sokol 1985, Roberts 2003). However, in a long-term cohort study only two patients died prior to LTx being available (Stremmel 1991). It is a difficult clinical question whether WD patients with liver failure can survive without LTx. The prognostic score used to help with this difficult decision includes bilirubin, AST, and INR (Nazer 1986). In any case, WD patients with signs of fulminant liver failure need to be transferred immediately (same day!) to a transplant center.

WD patients with a chronic course of decompensated cirrhosis follow the usual rules for LTx. LTx cures the metabolic defects and thus copper metabolism returns to normal afterwards (Groth 1973). Prognosis for WD after LTx is excellent, in particular when patients survive the first year (Eghtesad 1999). It is still unclear under which circumstances LTx may be helpful for WD patients with neurological

complications, which do not respond to drug therapy. In some patients CNS symptoms regress after LTx while other patients do not improve (for literature see Brewer 2000).

Asymptomatic Patients. All asymptomatic WD subjects - usually identified by family screening - need to be treated by chelators or zinc in order to prevent life-threatening complications (Walshe 1988, Brewer 1989, Roberts 2003). It is unclear whether therapy should begin in children under the age of 3 years.

Maintenance Therapy. After initial removal of excessive copper by chelators, some centres replace the chelators with zinc for maintenance therapy. It is unclear when such change is advisable and whether it might be better to reduce the dose of chelators instead of replacing them with zinc. It is generally accepted that replacement of chelators with zinc should only be done in patients who are clinically stable for some years, have normal aminotransferase and liver function, a normal free copper concentration and a 24-hr urinary copper repeatedly in the range of 200-500 µg while on chelators (Roberts 2003). Long-term treatment with zinc may be associated with fewer side effects than chelator treatment. Many patients on trientine, however, do have significant side effects, and this author believes one does need to replace trientine with zinc in such patients. In any case, therapy either with a chelator or with zinc needs to be maintained indefinitely; any interruption may lead to lethal liver failure (Walshe 1986, Scheinberg 1987).

Pregnancy. Treatment must be maintained during pregnancy because an interruption has been shown to carry a high risk of fulminant liver failure (Shimono 1991). Maintenance therapy with chelators (penicillamine, trientine) or with zinc usually results in a good outcome for mother and child, although birth defects have (rarely) been documented (for literature see Sternlieb 2000). It is recommended that the doses of both chelators be reduced, if possible by about 50%, in particular during the last trimester to avoid potential problems in wound healing (Roberts 2003). Zinc does not need to be reduced.

Monitoring of treatment

Monitoring should be done closely during initial treatment in all WD patients to look for efficacy (Figure 6) and side effects. During the maintenance phase patients should be checked at least twice a year.

Table 2. Monitoring the treatment efficacy in WD.

Clinical Improvement (neurologic features, liver disease, hematology)
Regression of Kayser-Fleischer Ring
Circulating free copper <10 µl/dl
24-hr urinary copper excretion (200-500 µg/day on chelators)
Decrease in liver copper content

Clinical examinations include neurological, ophthalmologic and psychiatric consultations (Figure 5). Patients with liver involvement need to be checked carefully for signs of liver failure.

Laboratory tests include measurements of serum copper and ceruloplasmin, calculation of free (non-ceruloplasmin-bound) copper (see above), and 24-hr urinary

copper excretion (Roberts 2003). While on chelating therapy 24-hr urinary copper excretion should initially range between 200 and 500 μg; such a value can also suggest that the patient is adherent to the drug. After removal of copper accumulation, urinary copper excretion may be lower. Prognosis of WD is dependent on the initial severity of the disease and then on adherence to the life-long treatment. Patients treated prior to severe and potentially irreversible neurological and hepatic complications have a good prognosis approaching a normal life expectancy (Figure 6). Irreversible liver disease often can be treated successfully by LTx while some patients with severe neurological disease do not get better despite optimal therapy.

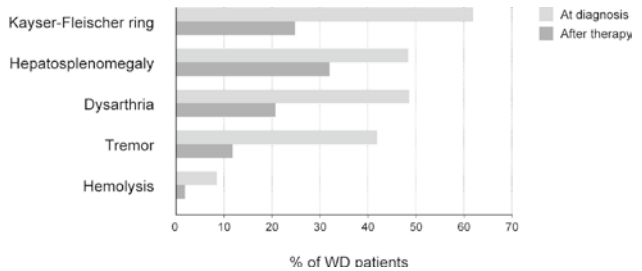


Figure 5. Findings prior to and after beginning chelating therapy in 53 WD patients (modified from Stremmel 1991)

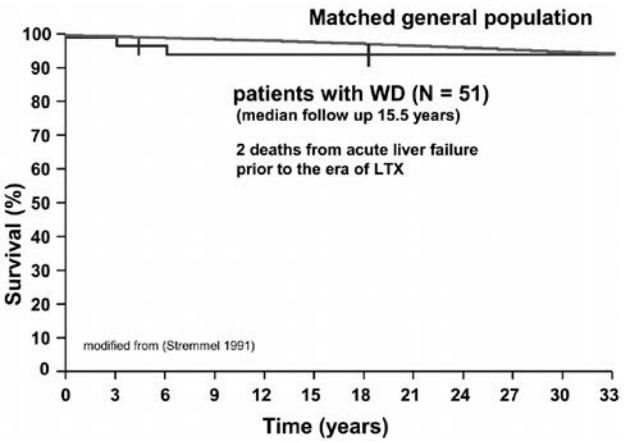


Figure 6. Cumulative survival in 51 WD patients versus a matched general population (modified from Stremmel 1991)

References

Aisen AM, Martel W, Gabrielsen TO, et al. Wilson disease of the brain: MR imaging. Radiology 1985;157:137-41. (Abstract)

Azizi E, Eshel G, Aladjem M. Hypercalciuria and nephrolithiasis as a presenting sign in Wilson disease. Eur J Pediatr 1989;148:548-9. (Abstract)

Bergstrom RF, Kay DR, Harkcom TM, Wagner JG. Penicillamine kinetics in normal subjects. Clin Pharmacol Ther 1981;30:404-13. (Abstract)

Berman DH, Leventhal RI, Gavaler JS, Cadoff EM, Van Thiel DH. Clinical differentiation of fulminant Wilsonian hepatitis from other causes of hepatic failure. Gastroenterology 1991;100:1129-34. (Abstract)

Brewer GJ, Hill GM, Prasad AS, Cossack ZT, Rabbani P. Oral zinc therapy for Wilson's disease. Ann Intern Med 1983;99:314-9. (Abstract)

Brewer GJ, Terry CA, Aisen AM, Hill GM. Worsening of neurologic syndrome in patients with Wilson's disease with initial penicillamine therapy. Arch Neurol 1987;44:490-3. (Abstract)

Brewer GJ, Yuzbasiyan-Gurkan V, Young AB. Treatment of Wilson's disease. Semin Neurol 1987;7:209-20. (Abstract)

Brewer GJ, Yuzbasiyan-Gurkan V, Lee DY, Appelman H. Treatment of Wilson's disease with zinc. VI. Initial treatment studies. J Lab Clin Med 1989;114:633-8. (Abstract)

Brewer GJ, Dick RD, Johnson V, et al. Treatment of Wilson's disease with ammonium tetrathiomolybdate. I. Initial therapy in 17 neurologically affected patients. Arch Neurol 1994;51:545-54. (Abstract)

Brewer GJ, Johnson V, Dick RD, Kluin KJ, Fink JK, Brunberg JA. Treatment of Wilson disease with ammonium tetrathiomolybdate. II. Initial therapy in 33 neurologically affected patients and follow-up with zinc therapy. Arch Neurol 1996;53:1017-25. (Abstract)

Brewer GJ, Dick RD, Johnson VD, Brunberg JA, Kluin KJ, Fink JK. Treatment of Wilson's disease with zinc: XV long-term follow-up studies. J Lab Clin Med 1998;132:264-78. (Abstract)

Brewer GJ, Askari F. Transplant livers in Wilson's disease for hepatic, not neurologic, indications. Liver Transpl 2000;6:662-4. (Abstract)

Brewer GJ, Askari F, Lorincz MT, et al. Treatment of Wilson disease with ammonium tetrathiomolybdate. IV. Comparison of tetrathiomolybdate and trientine in a double-blind study of treatment of the neurologic presentation of Wilson disease. Arch Neurol 2006;63:521-7 (Abstract)

Bull PC, Thomas GR, Rommens JM, Forbes JR, Cox DW. The Wilson disease gene is a putative copper transporting P-type ATPase similar to the Menkes gene. Nat Genet 1993;5:327-37. (Abstract)

Cairns JE, Williams HP, Walshe JM. "Sunflower cataract" in Wilson's disease. Br Med J 1969;3:95-6. (Abstract)

Cauza E, Maier-Dobersberger T, Polli C, Kaserer K, Kramer L, Ferenci P. Screening for Wilson's disease in patients with liver diseases by serum ceruloplasmin. J Hepatol 1997;27:358-62. (Abstract)

Chu CC, Huang CC, Chu NS. Recurrent hypokalemic muscle weakness as an initial manifestation of Wilson's disease. Nephron 1996;73:477-9. (Abstract)

Cumings JN. The effect of BAL in hepatolenticular degeneration. Brain 1951;74:10-22. (Abstract)

Czlonkowska A, Gajda J, Rodo M. Effects of long-term treatment in Wilson's disease with D-penicillamine and zinc sulphate. J Neurol 1996; 243:269-73. (Abstract)

Denny-Brown D, Porter H. The effect of BAL (2,3 dimercaptopropanol) on hepatolenticular degeneration (Wilson's disease).NEngl J Med 1951;245:917-25.

Eghtesad B, Nezakatgoo N, Geraci LC, et al. Liver transplantation for Wilson's disease: a single-center experience. Liver Transpl Surg 1999;5:467-74. (Abstract)

Emre S, Atillasoy EO, Ozdemir S, et al. Orthotopic liver transplantation for Wilson's disease: a single-center experience. Transplantation 2001;72:1232-6. (Abstract)

Ferenci P, Cz?onkowska A, Merle U, et al. Late-onset Wilson's disease. Gastroenterology 2007;132:1294-8. (Abstract)

Ferlan-Marolt V, Stepec S. Fulminant Wilsonian hepatitis unmasked by disease progression: report of a case and review of the literature. Dig Dis Sci 1999;44:1054-8. (Abstract)

Fleischer B. Ueber einer der "Pseudosklerose" nahestehende bisher unbekannte Krankheit (gekennzeichnet durch Tremor, psychische Stoerungen, braeunliche Pigmentierung bestimmter Gewebe, insbesondere der Hornhautperipherie, Lebercirrhose). Deutsch Z Nerven Heilk 1912;44:179-201.
Frommer DJ. Urinary copper excretion and hepatic copper concentrations in liver disease. Digestion 1981;21:169-78. (Abstract)
Frydman M. Genetic aspects of Wilson's disease. J Gastroenterol Hepatol 1990;5:483-90. (Abstract)
Geller SA, Petrovic LM, Batts KB, et al. Histopathology of end-stage Wilson disease. Mod Pathol 2000; 13:184A.
Giacchino R, Marazzi MG, Barabino A, et al. Syndromic variability of Wilson's disease in children. Clinical study of 44 cases. Ital J Gastroenterol Hepatol 1997;29:155-61. (Abstract)
Grand RJ, Vawter GF. Juvenile Wilson disease: histologic and functional studies during penicillamine therapy. J Pediatr 1975;87:1161-70. (Abstract)
Gross JB, Jr., Ludwig J, Wiesner RH, McCall JT, LaRusso NF. Abnormalities in tests of copper metabolism in primary sclerosing cholangitis. Gastroenterology 1985;89:272-8. (Abstract)
Groth CG, Dubois RS, Corman J, et al. Metabolic effects of hepatic replacement in Wilson's disease. Transplant Proc 1973;5:829-33. (Abstract)
Gow PJ, Smallwood RA, Angus PW, Smith AL, Wall AJ, Sewell RB. Diagnosis of Wilson's disease: an experience over three decades. Gut 2000;46:415-9. (Abstract)
Harris ZL, Klomp LW, Gitlin JD. Aceruloplasminemia: an inherited neurodegenerative disease with impairment of iron homeostasis. Am J Clin Nutr 1998;67:972S-977S. (Abstract)
Hill GM, Brewer GJ, Prasad AS, Hydrick CR, Hartmann DE. Treatmentof Wilson's disease with zinc. I. Oral zinc therapy regimens. Hepatology 1987;7:522-8. (Abstract)
Kalach N, Seidman EG, Morin C, et al. Acute liver failure from Wilson's disease in a five year-old child. Can J Gastroenterol 1993;7:610-2.
Lang CJ, Rabas-Kolominsky P, Engelhardt A, Kobras G, Konig HJ. Fatal deterioration of Wilson's disease after institution of oral zinc therapy. Arch Neurol 1993;50:1007-8. (Abstract)
Lau JY, Lai CL, Wu PC, Pan HY, Lin HJ, Todd D. Wilson's disease: 35 years' experience. Q J Med 1990;75:597-605. (Abstract)
Loudianos G, Figus AL, Loi A, et al. Improvement of prenatal diagnosis of Wilson disease using microsatellite markers. Prenat Diagn 1994;14:999-1002. (Abstract)
Martins da Costa C, Baldwin D, Portmann B, Lolin Y, Mowat AP, Mieli-Vergani G. Value of urinary copper excretion after penicillamine challenge in the diagnosis of Wilson's disease. Hepatology 1992;15: 609-15. (Abstract)
Menkes JH. Menkes disease and Wilson disease: two sides of the same copper coin. Part I: Menkes disease. Europ J Paediatr Neurol 1999;3: 147-58.
Merle U, Schaefer M, Ferenci P, Stremmel W.Clinical presentation, diagnosis and long-term outcome of Wilson's disease: a cohort study. Gut 2007;56:115-20. (Abstract)
Milkiewicz P, Saksena S, Hubscher SG, Elias E. Wilson's disease with superimposed autoimmune features: report of two cases and review. J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2000;15:570-4. (Abstract)
Mishra D, Kalra V, Seth R. Failure of prophylactic zinc in Wilson disease. Indian Pediatr 2008;45:151-3 (Abstract)
Nakada SY, Brown MR, Rabinowitz R. Wilson's disease presenting as symptomatic urolithiasis: a case report and review of the literature. J Urol 1994;152:978-9. (Abstract)
Nazer H, Ede RJ, Mowat AP, Williams R. Wilson's disease: clinical presentation and use of prognostic index. Gut 1986;27:1377-81. (Abstract)
Petrukhin K, Fischer SG, Pirastu M, et al. Mapping, cloning and genetic characterization of the region containing the Wilson disease gene. Nat Genet 1993;5:338-43. (Abstract)
Rector WG, Uchida T, Kanel GC, Redeker AG, Reynolds TB. Fulminant hepatic and renal failure complicating Wilson's disease. Liver 1984;4:341-7. (Abstract)
Roberts EA, Cox DW. Wilson disease. Baillieres Clin Gastroenterol 1998;12:237-56. (Abstract)
Roberts EA, Schilsky ML. A Practice Guideline on Wilson Disease. Hepatology 2003;37:1475-92. (Abstract)

Saito T. Presenting symptoms and natural history of Wilson disease. Eur J Pediatr 1987;146:261-5. (Abstract)
Saito H, Watanabe K, Sahara M, Mochizuki R, Edo K, Ohyama Y. Triethylene-tetramine (trien) therapy for Wilson's disease. Tohoku J Exp Med 1991;164:29-35. (Abstract)
Sallie R, Katsiyiannakis L, Baldwin D, et al. Failure of simple biochemical indexes to reliably differentiate fulminant Wilson's disease from other causes of fulminant liver failure. Hepatology 1992;16:1206-11. (Abstract)
Santos Silva EE, Sarles J, Buts JP, Sokal EM. Successful medical treatment of severely decompensated Wilson disease. J Pediatr 1996;128:285-7. (Abstract)
Sarkar B, Sass-Kortsak A, Clarke R, Laurie SH, Wei P. A comparative study of in vitro and in vivo interaction of D-penicillamine and triethylene-tetramine with copper. Proc R Soc Med 1977;70:13-8. (Abstract)
Scheinberg IH, Gitlin D. Deficiency of ceruloplasmin in patients with hepatolenticular degeneration (Wilson's disease). Science 1952;116:484-5. (Abstract)
Scheinberg IH, Jaffe ME, Sternlieb I. The use of trientine in preventing the effects of interrupting penicillamine therapy in Wilson's disease. N Engl J Med 1987;317:209-13. (Abstract)
Schilsky M, Blank RR, Czaja MJ, Scheinberg IH, Stockert RJ, Sternlieb I. Hepatocellular copper toxicity and its attenuation by zinc. J Clin Invest 1989;84:1562-8. (Abstract)
Schilsky ML, Scheinberg IH, Sternlieb I. Prognosis of Wilsonian chronic active hepatitis. Gastroenterology 1991;100:762-7. (Abstract)
Schilsky ML, Scheinberg IH, Sternlieb I. Liver transplantation for Wilson's disease: indications and outcome. Hepatology 1994;19:583-7. (Abstract)
Scott J, Gollan JL, Samourian S, Sherlock S. Wilson's disease, presenting as chronic active hepatitis. Gastroenterology 1978;74:645-51. (Abstract)
Shah AB, Chernov I, Zhang HT, et al. Identification and analysis of mutations in the Wilson disease gene (ATP7B): population frequencies, genotype-phenotype correlation, and functional analyses. Am J Hum Genet 1997;61:317-28. (Abstract)
Shimono N, Ishibashi H, Ikematsu H, et al. Fulminant hepatic failure during perinatal period in a pregnant woman with Wilson's disease. Gastroenterol Jpn 1991;26:69-73. (Abstract)
Sinha S, Taly AB. Withdrawal of penicillamine from zinc sulphate-penicillamine maintenance therapy in Wilson's disease: promising, safe and cheap. J Neurol Sci 2008;264:129-32. (Abstract)
Sokol RJ, Francis PD, Gold SH, Ford DM, Lum GM, Ambruso DR. Orthotopic liver transplantation for acute fulminant Wilson disease. J Pediatr 1985;107:549-52. (Abstract)
Sokol RJ, Twedt D, McKim JM, et al. Oxidant injury to hepatic mitochondria in patients with Wilson's disease and Bedlington terriers with copper toxicosis. Gastroenterology 1994;107:1788-98. (Abstract)
Song YM, Chen MD. A single determination of liver copper concentration may misdiagnose Wilson's disease. Clin Biochem 2000;33:589-90. (Abstract)
Steindl P, Ferenci P, Dienes HP, Grimm G, Pabinger I, Madl C, et al.Wilson's disease in patients presenting with liver disease: a diagnostic challenge. Gastroenterology 1997;113:212-218. (Abstract)
Sternlieb I. Copper and the liver. Gastroenterology 1980;78:1615-28. (Abstract)
Sternlieb I. Perspectives on Wilson's disease. Hepatology 1990;12:1234-9. (Abstract)
Sternlieb I. Wilson's disease and pregnancy. Hepatology 2000;31:531-2. (Abstract)
Stremmel W, Meyerrose KW, Niederau C, Hefter H, Kreuzpaintner G, Strohmeyer G. Wilson disease: clinical presentation, treatment, and survival. Ann Intern Med 1991;115:720-6. (Abstract)
Tanzi RE, Petrukhin K, Chernov I, et al. The Wilson disease gene is a copper transporting ATPase with homologyto the Menkes disease gene. Nat Genet 1993;5:344-50. (Abstract)
Tauber J, Steinert RF. Pseudo-Kayser-Fleischer ring of the cornea associated with non-Wilsonian liver disease. A case report and literature review.Cornea 1993;12:74-7. (Abstract)
Thomas GR, Roberts EA, Walshe JM, Cox DW. Haplotypes and mutations in Wilson disease. Am J Hum Genet 1995;56:1315-9. (Abstract)
Tu JB, Blackwell RQ. Studies on levels of penicillamine-induced cupriuresis in heterozygotes of Wilson's disease. Metabolism 1967;16:507-13. (Abstract)

van Wassenaer-van Hall HN, van den Heuvel AG, Algra A, Hoogenraad TU, Mali WP. Wilson disease: findings at MR imaging and CT of the brain with clinical correlation. Radiology 1996;198:531-6. (Abstract)
von Herbay A, de Groot H, Hegi U, Stremmel W, Strohmeyer G, Sies H. Low vitamine E content in plasma of patients with alcoholic liver disease, hemochromatosis and Wilson's disease. J Hepatol 1994;20:41-6. (Abstract)
Walshe JM. Wilson's disease. New oral therapy. Lancet 1956;i:25-6. (Abstract)
Walshe JM. Copper chelation in patients with Wilson's disease. A comparison of penicillamine and triethylene tetramine dihydrochloride. Q J Med 1973;42:441-52. (Abstract)
Walshe JM. The management of Wilson's disease with trienthylene tetramine 2HC1 (Trien 2HC1). Prog Clin Biol Res 1979;34:271-80. (Abstract)
Walshe JM. Treatment of Wilson's disease with trientine (triethylenetetramine) dihydrochloride. Lancet 1982;1:643-7.
Walshe JM, Dixon AK. Dangers of non-compliance in Wilson's disease. Lancet 1986;1:845-7. (Abstract)
Walshe JM. Diagnosis and treatment of presymptomatic Wilson's disease. Lancet 1988;2:435-7. (Abstract)
Walshe JM. Wilson's disease presenting with features of hepatic dysfunction: a clinical analysis of eighty-seven patients. Q J Med 1989;70:253-63. (Abstract)
Walshe JM, Yealland M. Chelation treatment of neurological Wilson's disease. Q J Med 1993;86:197-204. (Abstract)
Walshe JM, Munro NA. Zinc-induced deterioration in Wilson's disease aborted by treatment with penicillamine, dimercaprol, and a novel zero copper diet. Arch Neurol 1995;52:10-1. (Abstract)
Wilson SAK. Progressive lenticular degeneration: a familial nervous disease associated with cirrhosis of the liver. Brain 1912;34:295-507.
Wilson DC, Phillips MJ, Cox DW, Roberts EA. Severe hepatic Wilson's disease in preschool-aged children. J Pediatr 2000;137:719-22. (Abstract)
Yamaguchi Y, Heiny ME, Gitlin JD. Isolation and characterization of a human liver cDNA as a candidate gene for Wilson disease. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 1993;197:271-7. (Abstract)

26. Autoimmune Liver Diseases: AIH, PBC and PSC

Christian P. Strassburg

Autoimmune hepatitis (AIH)

Autoimmune hepatitis (AIH) is a chronic inflammatory disease, in which a loss of tolerance against hepatic tissue is presumed. Autoimmune hepatitis (AIH) was first described as a form of chronic hepatitis in young women showing jaundice, elevated gamma globulins and amenorrhea, which eventually led to liver cirrhosis (Waldenström 1950). A beneficial effect of steroids was also described in the patient cohort reported on and the groundwork was laid for the first chronic liver disease found to be curable by drug therapy. AIH was later recognized in combination with other extrahepatic autoimmune syndromes, and the presence of antinuclear antibodies (ANA) led to the term lupoid hepatitis (Mackay 1956). Systematic evaluations of the cellular and molecular immunopathology, of the clinical symptoms and of laboratory features has subsequently led to the establishment of autoimmune hepatitis as a separate clinical entity which is serologically heterogeneous, treated by a specific therapeutic strategy (Strassburg 2000). An established (Alvarez 1999a) and recently simplified (Hennes 2008b) revised scoring system allows for a reproducible and standardized approach to diagnosing AIH in a scientific context. The use and interpretation of seroimmunological and molecular biological tests permits a precise discrimination of autoimmune hepatitis from other etiologies of chronic hepatitis, in particular from chronic viral infection as the most common cause of chronic hepatitis worldwide (Strassburg 2002). Today, AIH is a treatable chronic liver disease in the majority of cases. Much of the same initial treatment strategies of immunosuppression still represent the standard of care. The largest challenge regarding treatment is the timely establishment of the correct diagnosis.

Definition and diagnosis of autoimmune hepatitis

In 1992, an international panel met in Brighton, UK, to establish diagnostic criteria for AIH because it was recognized that several features including histological changes and clinical presentation are also prevalent in other chronic liver disorders

(Johnson 1993). In this and in a revised report the group noted that there is no single test for the diagnosis of AIH. In contrast, a set of diagnostic criteria was suggested in the form of a scoring system designed to classify patients as having probable or definite AIH (Table 1). According to this approach the diagnosis relies on a combination of indicative features of AIH and the exclusion of other causes of chronic liver diseases. AIH predominantly affects women of any age, and is characterized by a marked elevation of serum globulins, in particular gamma globulins, and circulating autoantibodies. It should be noted that AIH regularly affects individuals older than 40 but should be considered in all age groups (Strassburg 2006). The clinical appearance ranges from an absence of symptoms to a severe or fulminant presentation (Stravitz 2011) and responds to immunosuppressive treatment in most cases. An association with extrahepatic autoimmune diseases such as rheumatoid arthritis, autoimmune thyroiditis, ulcerative colitis and diabetes mellitus and a family history of autoimmune or allergic disorders has been reported (Strassburg 1995).

Autoantibodies are one of the distinguishing features of AIH. The discovery of autoantibodies directed against different cellular targets including endoplasmatic reticulum membrane proteins, nuclear antigens and cytosolic antigens has led to a suggested subclassification of AIH based upon the presence of 3 specific autoantibody profiles. According to this approach, AIH type 1 is characterized by the presence of antinuclear antibodies (ANA) and/or anti-smooth muscle antibodies (SMA) directed predominantly against smooth muscle actin. AIH type 2 is characterized by anti-liver/kidney microsomal autoantibodies (LKM-1) directed against cytochrome P450 CYP2D6 (Manns 1989, Manns 1991) (Figure 1) and with lower frequency against UDP-glucuronosyltransferases (UGT) (Strassburg 1996). AIH type 3 (Manns 1987, Stechemesser 1993) is characterized by autoantibodies against a soluble liver antigen (SLA/LP) identified as UGA suppressor serine tRNA-protein complex (Gelpi 1992, Wies 2000, Volkmann 2001, Volkmann 2010). However, this serological heterogeneity does not influence the decision of whom to treat or of what strategy to employ.

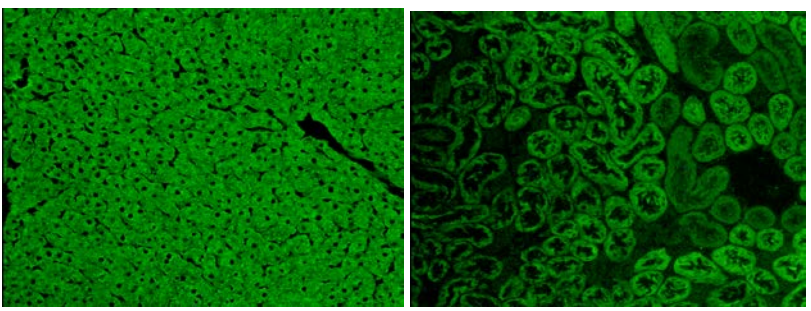


Figure 1. Indirect immunofluorescence showing LKM-1 autoantibodies on rat kidney and liver cryostat sections. Serum of a patient with autoimmune hepatitis type 2**.** A) Using rat hepatic cryostat sections a homogeneous cellular immunofluorescence staining is visualized excluding the hepatocellular nuclei (LKM-1). B) Typical indirect immunofluorescence pattern of LKM-1 autoantibodies detecting the proximal (cortical) renal tubules but excluding the distal tubules located in the renal medulla, which corresponds to the tissue expression pattern of the autoantigen CYP2D6

Although the histological appearance of AIH is characteristic, there is no specific histological feature that can be used to prove the diagnosis (Dienes 1989). Percutaneous liver biopsy should be performed for grading and staging, as well as for therapeutic monitoring. Histological features usually include periportal hepatitis with lymphocytic infiltrates, plasma cells, and piecemeal necrosis. With advancing disease, bridging necrosis, panlobular and multilobular necrosis may occur and ultimately lead to cirrhosis. A lobular hepatitis can be present, but is only indicative of AIH in the absence of copper deposits or biliary inflammation. In addition, granulomas and iron deposits argue against AIH. A liver biopsy should be obtained at first diagnosis before therapy for grading, staging and as confirmation of the diagnosis.

Viral hepatitis should be excluded by the use of reliable, commercially available tests. The exclusion of ongoing hepatitis A, B and C virus infections is sufficient in most cases. The exclusion of other hepatotropic viruses such as cytomegalovirus, Epstein-Barr and herpes may only be required in cases suspicious of such infections or if the diagnosis of AIH based on the above-mentioned criteria remains inconclusive.

The probability of AIH decreases whenever signs of bile duct involvement are present, such as elevation of alkaline phosphatase, histological signs of cholangiopathy and detection of AMA. If one or more components of the scoring system are not evaluated, only a probable diagnosis can be compiled (Table 1).

Epidemiology and clinical presentation

Based on limited epidemiological data, the prevalence is estimated to range between 50 and 200 cases per 1 million in Western Europe and North America among the Caucasian population. The prevalence of AIH is similar to that of systemic lupus erythematosus, primary biliary cirrhosis and myasthenia gravis, which also have an autoimmune etiology (Nishioka 1997, Nishioka 1998). Among the North American and Western European Caucasian population AIH accounts for up to 20% of cases with chronic hepatitis (Cancado 2000). However, chronic viral hepatitis remains the major cause of chronic hepatitis in most Western societies. In locales in which viral hepatitis B and C are endemic, such as in Asia and Africa, the incidence of AIH appears to be significantly lower. Additional epidemiological analyses are required to comprehensively elucidate the prevalence and geographical distribution of AIH.

Autoimmune hepatitis is part of the syndrome of chronic hepatitis, which is characterized by sustained hepatocellular inflammation of at least 6 months duration and elevation of ALT and AST of 1.5 times the upper limit of normal. In about 49% of AIH patients an acute onset of AIH is observed and rare cases of fulminant AIH have been reported. In most cases, however, the clinical presentation is not spectacular and characterized by fatigue, right upper quadrant pain, jaundice and occasionally also by palmar erythema and spider naevi. In later stages, the consequences of portal hypertension dominate, including ascites, bleeding esophageal varices and encephalopathy. A specific feature of AIH is the association of extrahepatic immune-mediated syndromes including autoimmune thyroiditis, vitiligo, alopecia, nail dystrophy, ulcerative colitis, rheumatoid arthritis, and also diabetes mellitus and glomerulonephritis.

Table 1. International criteria for the diagnosis of AIH (Alvarez 1999)

Parameter	Score
Gender	
Female	+ 2
Male	0
Serum biochemistry	
Ratio of elevation of serum alkaline phosphatase to aminotransferase	
>3.0	- 2
1.5-3	0
<1.5	+ 2
Total serum globulin, γ-globulin or IgG	
(x upper limit of normal)	
>2.0	+ 3
1.5-2.0	+ 2
1.0-1.5	+ 1
<1.0	0
Autoantibodies (titers by immunfluorescence on rodent tissues)	
Adults	
ANA, SMA or LKM-1	
>1:80	+ 3
1:80	+ 2
1:40	+ 1
<1:40	0
Antimitochondrial antibody	
Positive	- 4
Negative	0
Hepatitis viral markers	
Negative	+ 3
Positive	- 3
History of drug use	
Yes	- 4
No	+ 1
Alcohol (average consumption)	
<25 gm/day	+ 2
>60 gm/day	- 2
Genetic factors: HLA-DR3 or -DR4	+ 1
Other autoimmune diseases	+ 2
Response to therapy	
Complete	+ 2
Relapse	+ 3
Liver histology	
Interface hepatitis	+ 3
Predominant lymphoplasmacytic infiltrate	+ 1
Rosetting of liver cells	+ 1
None of the above	- 5
Biliary changes	- 3
Other changes	-3
Seropositivity for other defined autoantibodies	+ 2

Interpretation of aggregate scores: definite AIH - greater than 15 before treatment and greater than 17 after treatment; probable AIH - 10 to 15 before treatment and 12 to 17 after treatment

Natural history and prognosis

Data describing the natural history of AIH are scarce. The last placebo-controlled immunosuppressive treatment trial containing an untreated arm was published in 1980 (Kirk 1980). The value of these studies is limited considering that these patients were only screened for epidemiological risk factors for viral hepatitis and were not characterized by standardized diagnostic criteria and available virological tests. Nevertheless, these studies reveal that untreated AIH had a very poor prognosis and 5- and 10-year survival rates of 50% and 10% were reported. They furthermore demonstrated that immunosuppressive treatment significantly improved survival.

Data reveal that up to 30% of adult patients had histological features of cirrhosis at diagnosis. In 17% of patients with periportal hepatitis cirrhosis developed within 5 years, but cirrhosis develops in 82% when bridging necrosis or necrosis of multiple lobules is present. The frequency of remission (86%) and treatment failure (14%) are comparable in patients with and without cirrhosis at presentation. Importantly, the presence of cirrhosis does not influence 10-year survival and those patients require a similarly aggressive treatment strategy (Geall 1968, Soloway 1972).

Almost half of the children with AIH already have cirrhosis at the time of diagnosis. Long-term follow-up revealed that few children can completely stop all treatment and about 70% of children receive long-term treatment (Homberg 1987, Gregorio 1997). Most of these patients relapse when treatment is discontinued, or if the dose of the immunosuppressive drug is reduced. About 15% of patients develop chronic liver failure and are transplanted before the age of 18 years.

In elderly patients, a more severe initial histological grade has been reported (Strassburg 2006). The risk of hepatocellular carcinoma varies considerably between the different diseases PBC, PSC and AIH. Particular PCS can be complicated by cholangiocarcinoma, gall bladder carcinoma and hepatocellular carcinoma. In contrast, occurrence of HCC in patients with AIH is a rare event and develops only in long-standing cirrhosis.

Who requires treatment?

Autoimmune hepatitis (AIH) is a remarkably treatable chronic liver disease (Manns 2001, Czaja 2010). Untreated, the prognosis of active AIH is dismal, with 5- and 10-year survival rates between 50 and 10% and a well-recognized therapeutic effect exemplified by the last placebo-controlled treatment trials (Soloway 1972, Kirk 1980). For these reasons the indication for treatment is given in any patient who has an established diagnosis of AIH, elevations of aminotransferase activities (ALT, AST), an elevation of serum IgG and histological evidence of interface hepatitis or necroinflammatory activity. This has recently been discussed in the newest version of the AIH guidelines of AASLD (Manns 2010a). These points indicate that an initial liver biopsy is desirable for confirmation of the diagnosis and for grading and staging. Biopsies are also helpful for observation of aminotransferase activities in serum reflecting inflammatory activity in the liver, which is not always closely correlated.

Who does not require treatment?

Only very few patients with an established diagnosis of AIH should not be treated. Rare cases, in which the initiation of standard therapy should be weighed against potential side effects, are contraindications with steroids or azathioprine, or for certain other immunosuppressants (see below). In decompensated liver cirrhosis of patients on the waiting list for liver transplantation and in individuals with complete cirrhosis and absent inflammatory activity treatment does not appear beneficial (Manns 2010a).

Standard treatment strategy

Independent of the clinically- or immunoserologically-defined type of AIH, standard treatment is implemented with predniso(lo)ne alone or in combination with azathioprine. Both strategies are as effective (Manns 2001, Manns 2010a). The basic premise is based upon the findings of studies of almost 3 decades ago that indicated the effectiveness of steroids in AIH. Since that time no single multicenter randomized treatment trial in AIH patients has been performed. All advances of alternative treatment strategies are based on small cohorts and on the need to develop strategies for difficult-to-treat patients. The use of prednisone or its metabolite prednisolone, which is used more frequently in Europe, is effective since chronic liver disease does not seem to have an effect on the synthesis of prednisolone from prednisone. The exact differentiation between viral infection and autoimmune hepatitis is important. Treatment of replicative viral hepatitis with corticosteroids must be prevented as well as administration of interferon in AIH, which can lead to dramatic disease exacerbation.

Standard induction treatment and suggested follow-up examinations are summarized in Table 2. Please note that there are differences in preferred regimen in Europe and the US, which are delineated in the AASLD AIH Guideline (Manns 2010a). Therapy is usually administered over the course of 2 years. The decision between monotherapy and combination therapy is guided principally by side effects. Long-term steroid therapy leads to cushingoid side effects. Cosmetic side effects decrease patient compliance considerably (Table 3). Serious complications such as steroid diabetes, osteopenia, aseptic bone necrosis, psychiatric symptoms, hypertension and cataract formation also have to be anticipated in long-term treatment. Side effects are found in 44% of patients after 12 months and in 80% of patients after 24 months of treatment. However, predniso(lo)ne monotherapy is possible in pregnant patients. Azathioprine, on the other hand, leads to a decreased dose of prednisone. It bears a theoretical risk of teratogenicity. In addition, abdominal discomfort, nausea, cholestatic hepatitis, rashes and leukopenia can be encountered. These side effects are seen in 10% of patients receiving a dose of 50 mg per day. From a general point of view, a postmenopausal woman with osteoporosis, hypertension and elevated blood glucose would be a candidate for combination therapy. In young women, pregnant women or patients with hematological abnormalities, prednisone monotherapy may be the treatment of choice.

Table 2. Treatment regimen and follow-up examinations of autoimmune hepatitis regardless of autoantibody type

	Monotherapy	Combination therapy
Prednis(ol)one	60 mg reduction by 10 mg/week to maintenance of 20 mg/wk reduction by 5 mg to 10 mg find lowest dose in 2.5 mg decrements	30-60 mg reduction as in monotherapy
Azathioprine	n.a. (maintenance with azathioprine: monotherapy: 2 mg/kg body weight)	1 mg/kg of body weight (Europe) 50 mg (US)

Examination	Before therapy	During therapy before remission q 4 weeks	Remission on therapy q 3-6 months	Cessation of therapy q 3 weeks (x 4)	Remission post-therapy q 3-6 months	Evaluation of relapse
Physical	+		+	+	+	+
Liver biopsy	+		(+/-)			+
Blood count	+	+	+	+	+	
Aminotransferases	+	+	+	+	+	+
Gamma glutamyltransferase	+	+	+			
Gammaglobulin	+	+	+	+	+	+
Bilirubin	+	+	+	+	+	+
Coagulation studies	+	+	+	+	+	
Autoantibodies	+	+/-				+
Thyroid function tests	+	+/-				+

Table 3. Side effects

Prednis(ol)one	acne
	moon-shaped face
	striae rubra
	dorsal hump
	obesity
	weight gain
	diabetes mellitus
	cataracts
	hypertension
Azathioprine	nausea
	vomiting
	abdominal discomforts
	hepatotoxicity
	rash
	leukocytopenia
	teratogenicity (?)
	oncogenicity (?)

One of the most important variables for treatment success is adherence. The administration of treatment is essential since most cases of relapse are the result of erratic changes of medication and/or dose. Dose reduction is aimed at finding the individually appropriate maintenance dose. Since histology lags 3 to 6 months behind the normalization of serum parameters, therapy has to be continued beyond the normalization of aminotransferase levels. Usually, maintenance doses of predniso(lo)ne range between 10 and 2.5 mg. After 12-24 months of therapy predniso(lo)ne can be tapered over the course of 4-6 weeks to test whether a sustained remission has been achieved. Tapering regimens aiming at withdrawal should be attempted with great caution and only after obtaining a liver biopsy that demonstrates a complete resolution of inflammatory activity. Relapse of AIH and risk of progression to fibrosis is almost universal when immunosuppression is tapered in the presence of residual histological inflammation. Withdrawal should be attempted with caution to prevent recurrence and subsequent fibrosis progression and should be discussed with the patient and closely monitored.

Outcomes of standard therapy can be classified into four categories: remission, relapse, treatment failure and stabilization.

Remission is a complete normalization of all inflammatory parameters including histology. This is ideally the goal of all treatment regimens and ensures the best prognosis. Remission can be achieved in 65-75% of patients after 24 months of treatment. Remission can be sustained with azathioprine monotherapy of 2 mg/kg bodyweight (Johnson 1995). This prevents cushingoid side effects. However, side effects such as arthralgia (53%), myalgia (14%), lymphopenia (57%) and myelosuppression (6%) have been observed. Complete remission is not achieved in about 20% of patients and these patients continue to carry a risk of progressive liver injury.

Relapse is characterized by an increase in aminotransferase levels and the reccurrence of clinical symptoms either while on treatment, following tapering of steroid doses to determine the minimally required dose, or, after a complete withdrawal of therapy. Relapse happens in 50% of patients within 6 months of treatment withdrawal and in 80% after 3 years. Relapse is associated with progression to cirrhosis in 38% and liver failure in 14%. Relapse requires reinitiation of standard therapy, consideration of dosing as well as diagnosis, and perhaps a long-term maintenance dose with predniso(lo)ne or azathioprine monotherapy.

Treatment failure characterizes a progression of clinical, serological and histological parameters during standard therapy. This is seen in about 10% of patients. In these cases the diagnosis of AIH has to be carefully reconsidered to exclude other etiologies of chronic hepatitis. In these patients experimental regimens can be administered or liver transplantation will become necessary.

Stabilization is the achievement of a partial remission. Since 90% of patients reach remission within 3 years, the benefit of standard therapy has to be reevaluated in this subgroup of patients. Ultimately, liver transplantation provides a definitive treatment option.

Treatment of elderly patients

The presentation of acute hepatitis, clinical symptoms of jaundice, abdominal pain and malaise have a high likelihood of attracting medical attention and subsequently leading to the diagnosis of AIH (Nikias 1994). More subtle courses of AIH may not lead to clinically relevant signs and may develop unnoticed other than via routine work-up for other problems or via screening programs. The question of disease onset in terms of initiation of immune-mediated liver disease versus the clinical consequences that become noticeable after an unknown period of disease progression is not easily resolved. Thus, "late onset" AIH may just simply reflect a less severe course of the disease with a slower progression to cirrhosis. While LKM-positive patients display a tendency towards an earlier presentation, both acute and subtle (earlier and late presentation) variants appear to exist in ANA-positive AIH. In practice, the diagnostic dilemma is that AIH is still perceived by many as a disease of younger individuals and that therefore this differential diagnosis is less frequently considered in elderly patients with "cryptogenic" hepatitis or cirrhosis. Another relevant question resulting from these considerations is the issue of treatment. Standard therapy in AIH consists of steroids alone or a combination with azathioprine. In maintenance therapy azathioprine monotherapy can also be administered but induction with azathioprine alone is not effective. From a general standpoint most internists will use caution when administering steroids to elderly patients, especially in women in whom osteopenia or diabetes may be present.

Recommendations for the treatment of AIH suggest that the steroid side effects be weighed against the potential benefit of therapy, and that not all patients with AIH are good candidates for steroid treatment (Manns 2001). Controversy exists surrounding the benefit of therapy in this group of elderly patients. One cohort reported on 12 patients over 65 out of a total of 54 AIH patients. Cirrhosis developed after follow-up in 26% irrespective of age although the histological grade of AIH activity was more severe in the elderly group. 42% of the patients over 65 did not receive therapy and yet deaths were reported only in the younger group (Newton 1997). In another cohort of 20 patients aged >65 years, a longer time to establishment of the diagnosis (8.5 vs. 3.5 months) was reported, patients presented mainly with jaundice and acute onset AIH and showed a response rate to immunosuppression comparable to that of younger patients (Schramm 2001). The authors also noted that the prevalence of the HLA A1-B8 allotype was less frequent in older patients suggesting a role for immunogenetics.

This point was further elaborated by a report analyzing 47 patients with ANA-positive AIH 60 years and older, as well as 31 patients 30 years and younger in whom DR4+/DR3- prevalence was 47% (older) versus 13% (younger) patients (Czaja 2006). In the older patients steroid responsiveness was better, which is in line with previous findings in the same collective (Czaja 1993). Cirrhosis and extrahepatic immune-mediated syndromes including thyroid and rheumatologic disease (47% vs. 26%) were more prevalent in older AIH patients. However, although more treatment failures were observed in the younger patients (24% vs 5%) the rates of remission, sustained remission and relapse were similar.

Interestingly, an assessment of age-stratified prevalence showed an increase after the age of 40 from 15% to over 20%.

From all this data, AIH in elderly patients appears to be characterized by a distinct clinical feature, a distinct immunogenetic profile, favourable response rates and higher rates of cirrhosis present at diagnosis, all of which contribute to the heterogeneity of AIH. A cohort of 164 patients from the UK including 43 individuals 60 years and older AIH was looked at (Al-Chalabi 2006). The age groups showed no significant differences regarding serum biochemistry, autoantibody titers, time to establishment of diagnosis, and mode of presentation. The authors provided a substratification of patients below and above 40 years of age and reported that older patients had a higher median histological stage and a comparable median grade but younger patients had more median relapse episodes and a higher median stage at follow-up biopsy. The most distinguishing clinical sign was a higher prevalence of ascites in the older group. However, rates of complete, partial and failed response were similar, and the median number of relapses was higher in younger patients, which nevertheless did not lead to differences in liver-related deaths in either group (12% vs. 15%). In comparison to the study of ANA-positive AIH patients from the US (Czaja 2006), the differing findings regarding HLA association are notewothy. In the UK study there was no differential distribution of HLA DR3 and DR4 and this questions the suggested hypothesis of a primary influence of immunogenetics on the observed clinical distinctions. The reasons for the clinical differences of AIH in older and younger patients are unclear. They may include differences in hepatic blood flow and alterations involving the regulation of cellular immunity during aging (Talor 1991, Prelog 2006). In summary, these data suggest that AIH in elderly patients should be considered and treated (Strassburg 2006).

Alternative treatments

When standard treatment fails or drug intolerance occurs, alternative therapies such as cyclosporin, tacrolimus, cyclophosphamide, mycophenolate mofetil, rapamycin, UDCA, and budesonide can be considered (Table 4). The efficacy of most of these options has not yet been definitively decided and is only reported in small case studies.

Budesonide

Budesonide is a synthetic steroid with high first-pass metabolism in the liver, in principle with limited systemic side effects compared to conventional steroids. In comparison to prednisone the absolute bioavailability of budesonide is less than 6-fold lower (Thalen 1979) but it has an almost 90% first-pass metabolism in the liver, a higher affinity to the glucocorticoid receptor, acts as an anti-inflammatory and immunosuppressive drug and leads to inactive metabolites (6-OH-budesonide, 16-OH-prednisolone). In a pilot study treating 13 AIH patients with budesonide over a period of 9 months the drug was well-tolerated and aminotransferase levels were normalized (Danielson 1994). However, in a second study budesonide therapy was associated with a low frequency of remission and high occurrence of side effects (Czaja 2000). In that study, 10 patients were treated who had previously been

treated with azathioprine and steroids and had not reached a satisfactory remission. The conclusion was that budesonide was not a good treatment option in those patients. A third study with 12 previously untreated patients was published (Wiegand 2005) where remission was induced with budesonide combination therapy. The authors performed kinetic analyses and reported that in those with high inflammatory activity and cirrhosis the area under the curve (AUC) of budesonide was increased. This finding plausibly demonstrates that in patients with portosystemic shunts in portal hypertension the effect of high hepatic first-pass metabolism that would limit typical steroid side effects is reduced.

Table 4. Alternative drugs in autoimmune hepatitis

Compound	Advantage	Disadvantage
Budesonide	High first pass effect Immunosuppressive action Inactive metabolites	Cirrhosis (portosystemic shunts) and side effects
Cyclosporine	Satisfactory experience Potent immunosuppressant Transplant immunosuppressant	Renal toxicity
Tacrolimus	Potent immunosuppressant Transplant immunosuppressant	Renal toxicity
Mycophenolic acid	Favourable toxicity profile Transplant immunosuppressant	Disappointing effectiveness
Cyclophosphamide	Effective	Continuous therapy Hematological side effects

The main advantage of budesonide for the future treatment of autoimmune hepatitis would therefore be to replace prednisone in long-term maintenance therapy and induction therapy to reduce steroid side effects. To this end the first multicenter placebo-controlled randomized AIH treatment trial in 3 decades was performed with a total of 207 non-cirrhotic patients from 30 centres in 9 European countries and Israel (Manns 2010b). In this trial 40 mg prednisone (reduction regimen) and azathioprine was compared to 3 mg budesonide (TID initially, reduced to BID) in combination with azathioprine. The data shows that budesonide in combination with azathioprine is efficient in inducing stable remission, is superior in comparison to a standard prednisone tapering regimen beginning with 40 mg per day and leads to a substantially superior profile of steroid-specific side effects. From these data budesonide is emerging as an alternative first-line treatment strategy for non-cirrhotic patients with AIH (Manns 2010b).

Deflazacort

This alternative corticosteroid has also been studied for immunosuppression in AIH because of its feature of fewer side effects than conventional glucocorticoids. In a pilot study 15 patients with AIH type I were treated with deflazacort, who had been previously treated with prednisone with or without azathioprine until they reached a biochemical remission. Remission was sustained for 2 years of follow-up. However,

the long-term role of second-generation corticosteroids to sustain remission in AIH patients with reduced treatment-related side effects requires further controlled studies (Rebollo Bernardez 1999).

Cyclosporine A

Cyclosporine A (CyA) is a lipophylic cyclic peptide of 11 residues produced by *Tolypocladium inflatum* that acts on calcium-dependent signaling and inhibits T cell function via the interleukin 2 gene (Strassburg 2008). Out of the alternative AIH drugs considerable experience has been reported with CyA. CyA was successfully used for AIH treatment and was well tolerated (Alvarez 1999b, Debray 1999). The principal difficulty in advocating widespread use of CyA as first-line therapy relates to its toxicity profile, particularly with long-term use (increased risk of hypertension, renal insufficiency, hyperlipidemia, hirsutism, infection, and malignancy) (Alvarez 1999b, Debray 1999, Fernandez 1999, Heneghan 2002).

Tacrolimus

Tacrolimus is a macrolide lactone compound with immunosuppressive qualities exceeding those of CyA. The mechanism of action is similar to that of CyA but it binds to a different immunophilin (Strassburg 2008). The application of tacrolimus in 21 patients treated for 1 year led to an improvement of aminotransferase and bilirubin levels with a minor increase in serum BUN and creatinine levels (Van Thiel 1995). In a second study with 11 steroid refractory patients improvement of inflammation was also observed (Aqel 2004). Although tacrolimus represents a promising immunosuppressive candidate drug, larger randomized trials are required to assess its role in the therapy of AIH.

Mycophenolic acid

Mycophenolate has attracted attention as a transplant immunosuppressant with an important role in the steroid-free immunosuppressive therapy of patients transplanted for chronic hepatitis C infection. Mycophenolate is a noncompetitive inhibitor of inosine monophosphate dehydrogenase, which blocks the rate-limiting enzymatic step in *de novo* purine synthesis. Mycophenolate has a selective action on lymphocyte activation, with marked reduction of both T and B lymphocyte proliferation. In a pilot study 7 patients with AIH type 1 who either did not tolerate azathioprine or did not respond to standard therapy with a complete normalization of aminotransferase levels were treated with mycophenolate in addition to steroids. In 5 out of 7 patients normalization of aminotransferase levels was achieved within 3 months. These preliminary data suggested that mycophenolate may represent a promising treatment strategy for AIH (Richardson 2000). In a recent retrospective study 37 patients with AIH and azathioprine failure or intolerance were treated with mycophenolate (Hennes 2008a). There was no statistically significant benefit for mycophenolate treatment. Less than 50% reached remission and in the azathioprine non-responders failure was 75%. Although the toxicity profile of mycophenolate would suggest its use, the retrospective study data does not indicate an effective second-line therapeutic option.

Cyclophosphamide

The induction of remission with 1-1.5 mg per kg per day of cyclophosphamide in combination with steroids has been reported. However the dependency of continued application of cyclophosphamide with its potentially severe hematological side effects renders it a highly experimental treatment option (Kanzler 1996).

Anti-TNF α antibodies

There is some emerging evidence that anti-TNF antibodies are capable of inducing remission in AIH patients in whom standard or alternative therapeutic options have been exhausted (Efe 2010, Umekita 2011). However, the development of AIH has also been observed under treatment with anti-TNF antibodies (Ramos-Casals 2008). Future studies will have to define the role of this therapeutic option in difficult-to-treat cases of AIH.

Ursodeoxycholic acid

Ursodeoxycholic acid is a hydrophilic bile acid with putative immunomodulatory capabilities. It is presumed to alter HLA class I antigen expression on cellular surfaces and to suppress immunoglobulin production. Uncontrolled trials have shown a reduction in histological abnormalities, clinical and biochemical improvement but not a reduction of fibrosis in 4 patients with AIH type 1 (Calmus 1990, Nakamura 1998, Czaja 1999). However, its role in AIH therapy or in combination with immunosuppressive therapy is still unclear.

Other alternative treatment strategies include methotrexate, anti-TNF α antibodies, and rituximab, but there is currently insufficient data on any of these.

Overlap syndromes and treatment

“Overlap syndrome” describes a disease condition that is not completely defined (Strassburg 2006). A valid definition is difficult (Boberg 2011). It is characterized by the coexistence of clinical, biochemical or serological features of autoimmune hepatitis (AIH), primary biliary cirrhosis (PBC), primary sclerosing cholangitis (PSC), and depending on the definition, also viral hepatitis C (Ben-Ari 1993, Colombato 1994, Duclos-Vallee 1995, Chazouilleres 1998, Angulo 2001, Rust 2008). In adult patients an overlap of PBC and AIH is most frequently encountered although it is unclear whether this is true co-existence of both diseases or an immunoserological overlap characterized by the presence of antinuclear (ANA) as well as antimitochondrial (AMA) antibodies (Poupon 2006, Gossard 2007, Silveira 2007, Al-Chalabi 2008). In many AMA-negative patients with a cholestatic liver enzyme profile ANA are present. This has been termed autoimmune cholangiopathy or AMA-negative PBC (Michieletti 1994).

Apart from coexisting, autoimmune liver diseases can also develop into each other, i.e., the sequential manifestation of PBC and autoimmune hepatitis. The true coexistence of AIH and PSC has only been conclusively shown in pediatric patients (Gregorio 2001). It can be hypothesized whether a general predisposition toward liver autoimmunity exists which has a cholestatic, a hepatitic and a bile duct facet, which may be variable depending upon unknown host factors. The diagnosis of an overlap syndrome relies on the biochemical profile (either cholestatic with elevated alkaline phosphatase, gamma glutamyltransferase and bilirubin, or hepatitic with

elevated aspartate aminotransferase and alanine aminotransferase levels in addition to elevated gamma globulins), the histology showing portal inflammation with or without the involvement of bile ducts, and the autoantibody profile showing AMA or autoantibodies associated primarily with AIH such as liver-kidney microsomal antibodies (LKM), soluble liver antigen antibodies (SLA) or ANA. In cholestatic cases cholangiography detects sclerosing cholangitis. In an overlap syndrome the classical appearance of the individual disease component is mixed with features of another autoimmune liver disease. Immunoglobulins are usually elevated in all autoimmune liver diseases.

Regarding a therapeutic strategy the leading disease component is treated. In an overlap syndrome presenting as hepatitis, immunosuppression with prednisone (or combination therapy with azathioprine) is initiated. In cholestatic disease ursodeoxycholic acid is administered. Both treatments can be combined when biochemistry and histology suggest a relevant additional disease component (Chazouilleres 1998). Validated therapeutic guidelines for overlap syndromes are not available. It is important to realize that treatment failure in AIH may be related to an incorrect diagnosis or an overlap syndrome of autoimmune liver diseases (Potthoff 2007). Several studies show that treatment of the AIH component of overlap syndromes is important to avoid progression to cirrhosis (Chazouilleres 2006, Gossard 2007, Silveira 2007, Al-Chalabi 2008).

Liver transplantation

In approximately 10% of AIH patients liver transplantation remains the only life-saving option (Strassburg 2004). The indication for liver transplantation in AIH is similar to that in other chronic liver diseases and includes clinical deterioration, development of cirrhosis, bleeding esophageal varices and coagulation abnormalities despite adequate immunosuppressive therapy (Neuberger 1984, Sanchez-Urdazpal 1991, Ahmed 1997, Prados 1998, Tillmann 1999, Vogel 2004). There is no single indicator or predictor for the necessity of liver transplantation. Candidates for liver transplant are usually patients who do not reach remission within 4 years of continuous therapy. Indicators of a high mortality associated with liver failure are histological evidence of multilobular necrosis and progressive hyperbilirubinemia. In Europe, 4% of liver transplants are for AIH (Strassburg 2009). The long-term results of liver transplantation for AIH are excellent. The 5-year survival is up to 92% (Sanchez-Urdazpal 1991, Prados 1998, Ratziu 1999) and well within the range of other indications for liver transplantation. The European liver transplant database indicates 76% survival in 5 years and 66% survival after 10 years (1647 liver transplantations between 1988 and 2007). When these numbers are considered it is necessary to realize that patients undergoing liver transplantation usually fail standard therapy and may therefore have a reduced life expectancy after liver transplant compared to those who achieve stable complete remission on drug therapy.

Recurrence and *de novo* AIH after liver transplantation

The potential of AIH to recur after liver transplantation is beyond serious debate (Schreuder 2009). The first case of recurrent AIH after liver transplant was reported in 1984 (Neuberger 1984) and was based upon serum biochemistry, biopsy findings

and steroid reduction. Studies published over the years indicate that the rate of recurrence of AIH ranges between 10-35%, and that the risk of AIH recurrence is perhaps as high as 68% after 5 years of follow-up (Wright 1992, Devlin 1995, Götz 1999, Milkiewicz 1999, Manns 2000, Vogel 2004). It is important to consider the criteria upon which the diagnosis of recurrent AIH is based. When transaminitis is chosen as a practical selection parameter many patients with mild histological evidence of recurrent AIH may be missed. It is therefore suggested that all patients with suspected recurrence of autoimmune hepatitis receive a liver biopsy, biochemical analyses of aminotransferases as well as a determination of immunoglobulins and autoantibody titers (Vogel 2004). Significant risk factors for the recurrence of AIH have not yet been identified although it appears that the presence of fulminant hepatic failure before transplantation protects against the development of recurrent disease. Risk factors under discussion include steroid withdrawal, tacrolimus versus cyclosporine, HLA mismatch, HLA type, and LKM-1 autoantibodies. An attractive risk factor for the development of recurrent AIH is the presence of specific HLA antigens that may predispose toward a more severe immunoreactivity. In two studies recurrence of AIH appeared to occur more frequently in HLA DR3-positive patients receiving HLA DR3-negative grafts. However, this association was not confirmed in all studies. There have not been conclusive data to support the hypothesis that a specific immunosuppressive regimen represents a risk factor for the development of recurrent AIH (Gautam 2006). However, data indicate that patients transplanted for AIH require continued steroids in 64% versus 17% of patients receiving liver transplants for other conditions (Milkiewicz 1999).

Based on these results and other studies it would appear that maintenance of steroid medication in AIH patients is indicated to prevent not only cellular rejection but also graft-threatening recurrence of AIH (Vogel 2004). Steroid withdrawal should therefore be performed only with great caution. The recurrence of AIH is an important factor for the probability of graft loss. Apart from hepatitis C and primary sclerosing cholangitis a recent report found AIH recurrence to represent the third most common reason for graft loss (Rowe 2008). Transplanted patients therefore require a close follow-up and possibly an immunosuppressive regimen including steroids, although this is controversial and not backed by prospective studies (Campsen 2008).

In addition to AIH recurrence the development of *de novo* autoimmune hepatitis after liver transplantation has been reported (Kerkar 1998, Jones 1999a, Salcedo 2002). The pathophysiology of this is also elusive. From a treatment point of view *de novo* autoimmune hepatitis, which appears to occur mostly in patients transplanted with PBC but may just be the serendipitous occurrence of AIH, is responsive to steroid treatment (Salcedo 2002).

Primary biliary cirrhosis

Introduction

Primary biliary cirrhosis (PBC) is a chronic inflammatory, cholestatic disease of the liver with an unknown cause. The clinical observation of a broad array of immune-mediated symptoms and phenomena suggests the disease to be of autoimmune

etiology, in the course of which progressive and irreversible destruction of small interlobular and septal bile ducts progressively and irreversibly ensues (Table 5). As in other autoimmune diseases PBC affects women in over 80% of cases and is associated with varying extrahepatic autoimmune syndromes in up to 84%. These extrahepatic manifestations of immune-mediated disease include the dry gland syndrome (sicca syndrome with xerophthalmia and xerostomia) but also collagen diseases, autoimmune thyroid disease, glomerulonephritis and ulcerative colitis (Table 6).

Table 5. Clinical profile of primary biliary cirrhosis (PBC)

Sex	90% female
Age	40-59 yrs
	pruritus
	jaundice
	skin pigmentation
Elevation	alkaline phosphatase (AP), aspartate aminotransferase (AST), bilirubin, IgM
	antimitochondrial antibodies (AMA)
	associated immune-mediated syndromes
	- cellular bile duct infiltration
Liver biopsy	- granulomas possible
	- copper deposits

The striking female predominance (Donaldson 1996, Mackay 1997, Uibo 1999) and familiar clustering of PBC (Kato 1981, Jones 1999b, Tsuji 1999) suggest that inheritable genetic factors play a role in this disease. This has focussed attention on the immunogentics of PBC in order to further define host risk factors (Manns 1994). Studies have suggested an instability of lymphocytic DNA in PBC patients (Notghi 1990). Immunogentic analyses, however, have only come up with relatively weak associations with specific human leukocyte antigen haplotypes. An additional hypothesis is an alteration of bile acid composition and bile fluid composition, which would indicate a role for transporter proteins in the development of PBC. Bicarbonate rich bile is believed to be protective for biliary epithelium.

Table 6. Extrahepatic immune-mediated syndromes in PBC and overlap with rheumatic diseases

Dry gland “sicca” syndrome
Sjögren’s syndrome
Rheumatoid arthritis
Autoimmune thyroid disease
Renal tubular acidosis
Mixed connective tissue disease (MCTD)
Polymyositis
Polymyalgia rheumatica
Pulmonary fibrosis
CREST syndrome
Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)
Pernicious anemia
Ulcerative colitis
Exogenous pancreatic insufficiency
Myasthenia gravis

Definition and prevalence of PBC

Primary biliary cirrhosis is an inflammatory, primarily T cell-mediated chronic destruction of intrahepatic microscopic bile ducts of unknown etiology (Strassburg 2000). It affects women in 80% of cases who exhibit elevated immunoglobulin M, antimitochondrial antibodies directed against the E2 subunit of pyruvate dehydrogenase (PDH-E2), a cholestatic liver enzyme profile with elevated alkaline phosphatase, gamma glutamyltransferase as well as serum bilirubin levels, and a variable course of disease leading to cirrhosis over the course of years or decades. A prominent feature is the presence of extrahepatic immune-mediated disease associations. In later stages, pronounced fatigue, pruritus, marked hyperbilirubinemia and the consequences of portal hypertension such as ascites, bleeding esophageal varices, and encephalopathy develop (Strassburg 2004).

The prevalence is estimated at 65 per 100,000 in women and 12 per 100,000 in men with an incidence of 5 per 100,000 in women and 1 per 100,000 in men. The prevalence and incidence appear to vary regionally and appears to be increasing (Boonstra 2012). An increase of PBC incidence in recent years may be the result of more specific testing of antimitochondrial antibody reactivity (Strassburg 2004).

Diagnostic principles of PBC

Suspicion of PBC arises when cholestasis and cirrhosis are present in middle-aged women (Figure 2). Ultrasound is employed to rule out mechanical cholestasis. The presence of antimitochondrial antibodies (AMA) against PDH-E2 is diagnostic of PBC. AMA against E2 subunits of members of the inner mitochondrial membrane-expressed oxoacid dehydrogenase complex (PDH, branched chain ketoacid dehydrogenase [BCKD], and ketoglutarate dehydrogenase [OADC]) are present in 95% of PBC patients. AMA-negative PBC can exhibit antinuclear autoantibodies with specificity against nuclear dot antigen (SP100), a 210 kDa nuclear membrane protein (gp210), or nucleoporin p62. In AMA-negative PBC a biopsy is indicated to contribute to the establishment of the diagnosis; in the presence of AMA against PDH-E2, histology is used primarily for the staging of cirrhosis and is not necessary (Strassburg 2004).

Diagnostic role of AMA in PBC

The main aim of AMA determinations is the detection of PBC-specific AMA and the exclusion of AMA of low diagnostic relevance for the disease. As a screening test the determination of AMA using indirect immunofluorescence testing on rat kidney cryostat sections or immobilized Hep-2 cells (Strassburg 1999). The indirect immunofluorescence on rat kidney sections leads to the staining of the distal and proximal tubuli (note: proximal staining only is indicative of liver/kidney microsomal antibodies, LKM). When positive AMA immunofluorescence is detected, further analysis should include subclassification using molecularly defined antigen preparations. The detection of PDH-E2, BCKD-E2 can be achieved by ELISA using recombinant antigen or reference sera. If both are negative, testing should include OGD-E2. The final step is performed using Western Blot Analyses to confirm the findings. By Western Blot the indicative 74 kDa (PDH-E2), 52 kDa (BCKD-E2) and 48 kDa (OGD-E2) bands can be visualized. This multi-step regimen secures a rational and reliable diagnosis of PBC-specific AMA excluding those found in drug-induced and infectious diseases.

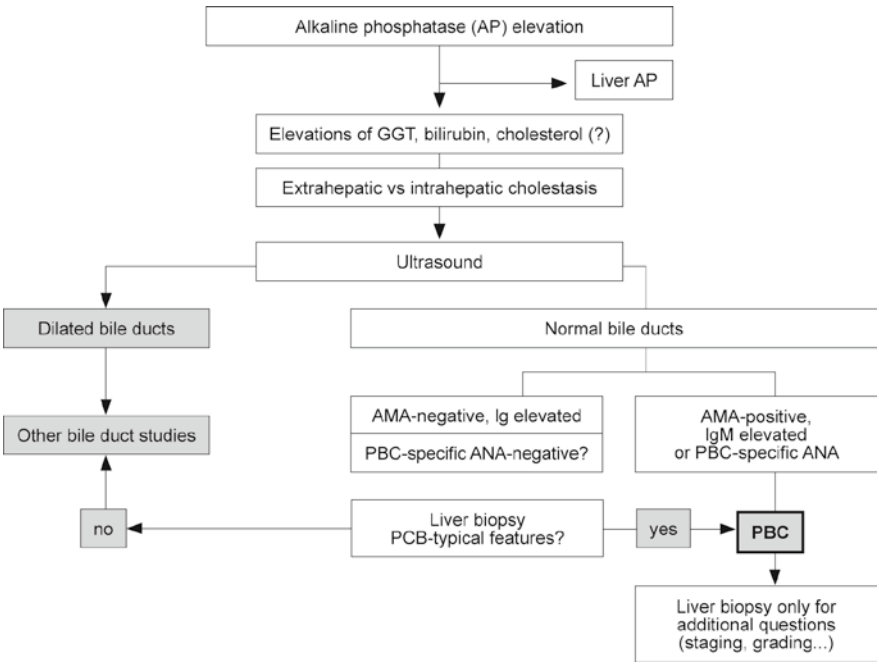


Figure 2. Diagnostic algorithm of PBC including clinical presentation, ultrasound and serology

In the majority of cases the determination of anti-PDH-E2 is sufficient to secure the diagnosis. Studies will have to evaluate whether the future application of a single PDH-E2 ELISA as highly specific screening test in suspected PBC represents an efficient and economic diagnostic approach.

Therapeutic principles in PBC

Treatment leading to a cure of PBC is not available (Strassburg 2004). Ursodeoxycholic acid (UDCA) (15 mg/kg body weight per day) has been shown to improve serum biochemistry, histology and survival but has no effect on fatigue and osteoporosis. It has immunomodulatory properties, alters cell signal transduction and modifies hydrophilicity of the bile. UDCA should not be given in severe cholestasis and during the first trimester of pregnancy. Immunosuppression in PBC has shown disappointing results. Symptomatic therapy of the complications of PBC includes management of pruritus (cholestyramine, induction with rifampicin, opioid antagonists, serotonin antagonists), ascites (diuretics, beta blockers to control portal hypertension), osteoporosis (vitamin D and calcium supplementation, bisphosphonates in some), as well as endoscopic intervention for bleeding esophageal varices. Fat-soluble vitamin replacement is suggested. When liver cirrhosis-induced liver failure is progressive liver transplantation remains a definitive therapeutic option. Ten-year survival rates are 75-80% and recurrence of

PBC after transplant occurs in 10-40%. Recurrence can be expected in 25-30% (Rowe 2008, Strassburg 2009).

Immunosuppression in PBC

Corticosteroids: Treatment with prednisolone can improve serum aminotransferase activities, alkaline phosphatase and elevated immunoglobulins. It does not lead to significant improvement of bilirubin, pruritus, or histology. In a placebo-controlled study with 36 asymptomatic patients for over 1 year osteopenia and cushingoid side effects were noted (Mitchison 1992).

Azathioprine: The classical immunosuppressant azathioprine, which has a pronounced effect in AIH, did not show significant effects in two different studies and is not used in PBC (Christensen 1985).

Cyclosporin A: In a large study of 346 patients with a median observation time of 2.5 years, this classical transplant immunosuppressant did not show significant effects on histological progression (Lombard 1993). Histology did improve in a small study with 20 patients who were treated for 2 years, but these results should be viewed with caution (Wiesner 1990). Because of the possibility of severe side effects, cyclosporin A is not a recommended therapeutic option.

D-penicillamine: Because PBC is characterized by copper accumulation in the bile ducts the chelator d-penicillamine was studied. D-penicillamine also has immunosuppressive and antifibrotic properties. It was tested on a total of 748 patients in 6 studies, without leading to a positive therapeutic effect while 30% of patients had severe side effects (Bodenheimer 1985). D-penicillamine in PBC is not recommended.

Colchicine: Because of its antifibrotic and anti-inflammatory properties colchicine was studied in the 1980s. Despite improvement of albumin, bilirubin, aminotransferases and alkaline phosphatase, an improvement of clinical symptoms and histology was not observed (Kaplan 1986, Warnes 1987, Bodenheimer 1988). Severe side effects were not reported but an effect on long-term prognosis was not seen.

Methotrexate: Despite its known hepatotoxicity, methotrexate was used as an immunosuppressant in PBC. In a placebo-controlled study with 60 patients, low-dose methotrexate (7.5 mg/week) led to an improvement of biochemical parameters except for bilirubin but no effects were reported regarding necessity of liver transplantation or survival (Hendrickse 1999). Hepatotoxicity was not observed. Interstitial pneumonitis, which affects 3-5% of rheumatoid arthritis patients, was observed in 14% of PBC patients. Methotrexate cannot be recommended outside of scientific evaluations or studies.

In principle, other immunosuppressants (Table 7) such as mycophenolic acid (mycophenolate mofetil), tacrolimus (FK506) or even monoclonal antibodies against the interleukin 2 receptor may represent interesting candidate strategies. However, data is currently lacking.

Table 7. Effects of immunosuppressants in PBC

	Biochemical improvement	Histological improvement	Survival	Side effects/toxicity
Corticosteroids	++	++	-	++
Azathioprine	-	-	+	+
Cyclosporin A	++	-	++	++
D-penicillamine	-	-	-	++
Colchicine	++	-	+	-
Methotrexate	++	+	-	+

Ursodeoxycholic acid in PBC (UDCA)

In 1981, a positive effect of UDCA was observed on elevated liver parameters, the exact mechanism of which was unclear (Leuschner 1996). On one hand UDCA leads to a modification of the bile acid pool to a more hydrophilic environment with lower detergent-like properties, and it leads to increased bile flow. On the other hand an immunomodulatory activity is suggested regarding HLA antigens expressed on biliary epithelial cells and altered signal transduction (Paumgartner 2002). The optimal dose in PBC patients appears to be 13-15 mg/kg. In a meta-analysis of 3 studies that looked at 548 patients with this dose, biochemical improvement and a slower histological progression to fibrosis was observed (Poupon 1997). These effects were only evident when follow-up extended to 4 years. These data rely heavily on the positive effects of a single study and it is not surprising that a subsequent meta-analysis of 8 studies with 1114 patients failed to find positive associations with UDCA therapy (Goulis 1999).

There are a number of problems with this. Doses varied and protocols included patients with insufficient dosing, and follow up was under 2 years in some cases. In a recently published analysis of 367 patients from 4 clinical cohorts an initiation of UDCA therapy in early stages of PBC (stage I-II) and a treatment duration of 2 years led to a retardation of histological progression, which argues for an early initiation of UDCA therapy after diagnosis even in the absence of fibrosis or cirrhosis. UDCA was also shown to improve biochemistry, delay portal hypertension and varices, and currently has no therapeutic alternative (Poupon 2003). No convincing effect was demonstrable on osteopenia and extrahepatic manisfestations of PBC. An interesting side effect appears to be the significant reduction of colonic epithelial proliferation. UDCA therapy is not associated with a higher prevalence of colonic polyps and appears to delay their reappearance after polypectomy (Serfaty 2003).

A number of parameters have been studied to assess the prognosis of PBC measured by the observed biochemical response to UDCA therapy. Several criteria have been reported including the so-called Corpechot, Parès, and Rotterdam criteria, which in summary describe the reduction of AST, AP, and bilirubin after 1 year of UDCA treatment. This indicates a favorable outcome of therapy and should be monitored during therapy (Corpechot 2011, Kuiper 2009).

Therapy in non-responders and combination strategies

Non-response is usually defined as a failure to lower cholestatic enzyme activities or to reach normalisation of these parameters (Kuiper 2009). In patients in whom alkaline phosphatase and gamma glutamyltransferase activities are not lowered by

UDCA therapy, increased morbidity and progression is likely. Alternative therapeutic strategies can be considered.

Steroids and UDCA: The combination of immunosuppressants and UDCA was looked at in smaller studies and included the use of prednisolone (Leuschner 1996), azathioprine (Wolfhagen 1998) and budesonide (Leuschner 1999, Angulo 2000) (Table 7). In a randomised, controlled study with 30 patients who received 10 mg prednisolone/day an improvement of inflammatory activity was reported (Leuschner 1996). A study with 9 mg budesonide/day in 39 patients showed not only biochemical but also histological improvement (Leuschner 1999). In an open study with 22 patients a deterioration of osteopenia was noted (Angulo 2000). The combination of budesonide and UDCA may have additional beneficial effects related to the activation of the anion exchanger AE2, which may serve to alter biliary composition and produce a more protective bicarbonate rich bile.

Sulindac and UDCA: In an open study with 23 patients and incomplete response to UDCA over 12 months treated with UDCA or UDCA and sulindac a trend towards histological improvement and biochemical improvement were reported in the combination group (Leuschner 2002).

Colchicine and UDCA: In 3 studies the combination of colchicine and UDCA were studied for 24 months in a total of 118 patients (Raedsch 1992, Ikeda 1996, Poupon 1996). Although mild biochemical improvement was noted, the effect of longer treatment remains unclear. Because of the biliary elimination of colchicine combinations with bile acids, there may be potentially toxic effects.

Methotrexate and UDCA: Several pilot studies and 3 randomized studies have looked at methotrexate in combination with UDCA. In one randomized placebo-controlled protocol with 60 patients a high rate of side effects without therapeutic benefit was reported (Van Steenbergen 1996, Bach 2003).

Primary sclerosing cholangitis

Diagnosis of primary sclerosing cholangitis (PSC)

PSC is classically characterized by the progressive destruction of large intra- as well as extrahepatic bile ducts and – contrasting with AIH and PBC – preferentially affects male patients with a maximum age of around 25-45 (Strassburg 1996). About 50-75% of the time, PSC is associated with ulcerative colitis. PSC is clinically characterized by upper quadrant pain, pruritus, anorexia and fever, but up to 50% of patients lack symptoms (Weismüller 2008). The diagnosis is established by a typical biochemical profile of cholestasis with elevations of bilirubin, alkaline phosphatase and gamma glutamyl transferase, the characteristic findings upon cholangiography and a typical biopsy showing ring fibrosis around the bile ducts, which is not present in all patients. Serology regularly identifies atypical anti-neutrophil cytoplasmic autoantibodies (xANCA) in up to 80% of patients (Terjung 2000), although these are not disease-specific and can also occur in patients with ulcerative colitis without PSC. There is a significant association of PSC with cholangiocarcinoma (10-20%) and colorectal cancer (9% in 10 years). In a subgroup of patients, small bile duct PSC may be present (Broome 2002), which lacks typical strictures and pruning of the biliary tree upon cholangiography. In these cases the

diagnosis can be established in the presence of the typical association with ulcerative colitis in male patients by performing a liver biopsy (Figure 3).

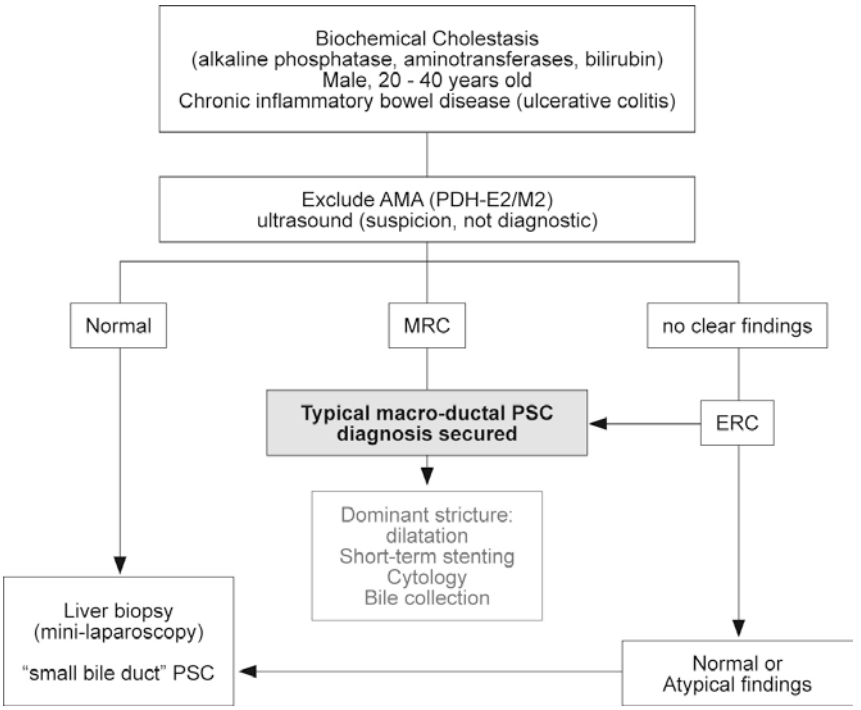


Figure 3. Diagnostic algorithm of PSC including clinical presentation

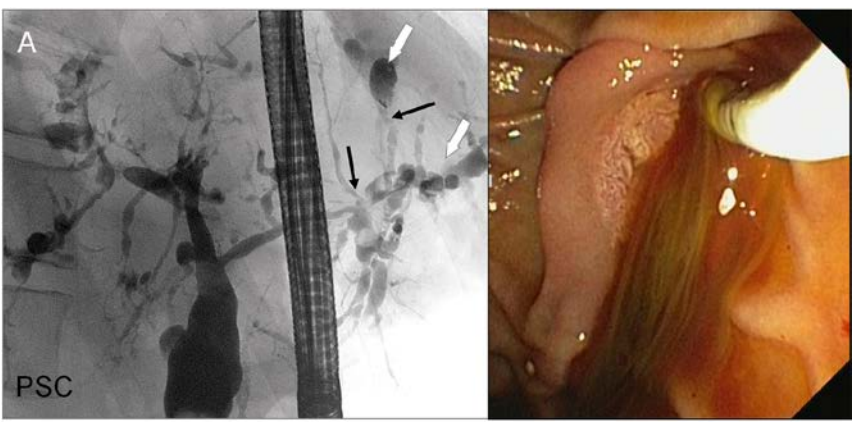
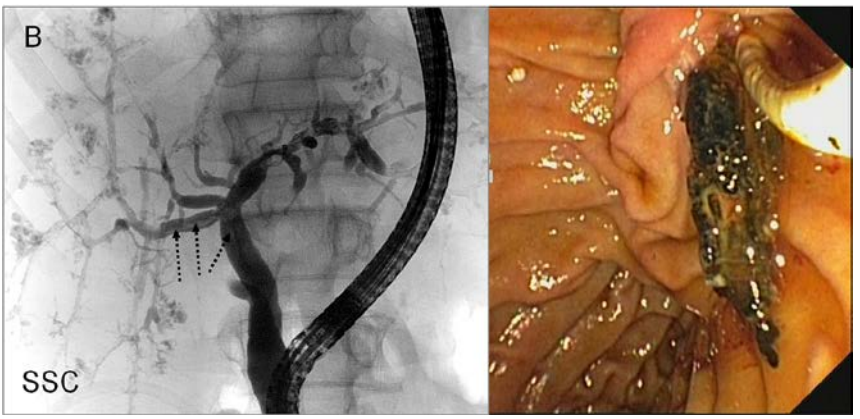
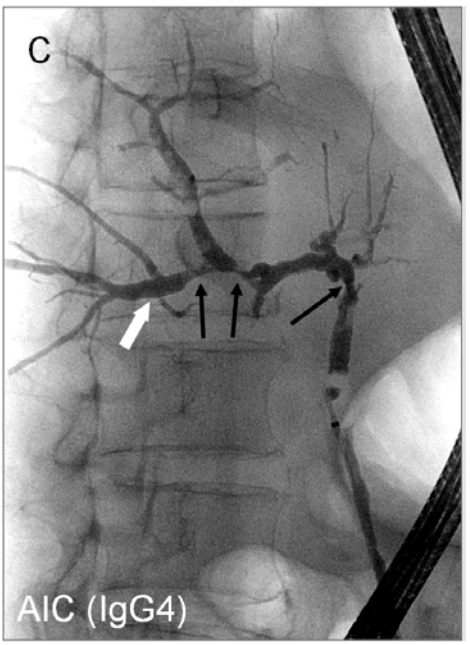


Figure 4a. Examples of different entities of sclerosing cholangitis. A) PSC showing multiple strictures with narrowing (black arrows) and prestenotic dilatation (white arrows) and an endoscopic aspect of purulent biliary infection at the biliary papilla





Figures 4b, 4c. Examples of different entities of sclerosing cholangitis. B) Secondary sclerosing cholangitis (SSC) with a similar intrahepatic picture but also biliary casts (dotted arrows) that can be extracted endoscopically (right panel). C) Cholangiogram of autoimmune (AIC) IgG4-associated cholangitis mimicking PSC. Black arrows show narrowing, white arrows show dilatations

Differential diagnosis: sclerosing cholangitis

The finding of macroductal sclerosing cholangitis can be brought about by a number of conditions, which include ischemia, liver transplantation complications, and drugs. Of note are two additional differential diagnoses that require attention (Figure 4): secondary sclerosing cholangitis (Gelbmann 2007, Esposito 2008, von

Figura 2009, Al-Benna 2011) and IgG4-associated cholangitis (Webster 2009, Clendenon 2011, Takuma 2011, Zhang 2011).

Secondary sclerosing cholangitis is an entity with severe infection of the biliary tree that develops in some patients following systemic infections and sepsis who are treated with aggressive intensive care unit management. IgG4-associated cholangitis is an immune-mediated entity often with high plasma levels of IgG4 and IgG4 expression in biliary cells obtained upon brush biopsy. The latter can be treated with immunosuppression and should be diagnosed because of an available medical therapy.

Association of PSC with inflammatory bowel disease

A clinical hallmark of PSC is the high number of patients suffering from inflammatory bowel disease (IBD). In several studies with 605 PSC patients in the US (Mayo Clinic), UK (King's College) and in Sweden, IBD was found in 71%, 73% and 81% of PSC cases (Boberg 1998, Bergquist 2002). In our own experience it is found in 52% of cases (Tischendorf 2007). Ulcerative colitis is more often associated (UK 71%, Sweden 72%) than Crohn's disease. IBD is usually diagnosed before PSC but owing to the symptomatic latency of both IBD and PSC it can also be diagnosed at the same time or later than PSC. Most commonly ulcerative colitis is diagnosed more than a year before PSC (67%). In 22% the diagnoses occurred within 1 year of each other, and only in 11% the was diagnosis of ulcerative colitis reached more than 1 year after PSC was established. IBD patients with elevated liver biochemistry are a risk group and require careful hepatological workup for PSC. About 5% of all patients with ulcerative colitis have PSC.

PSC as a risk factor for cancer

Apart from the risk of developing portal hypertension and cirrhosis, PSC is a severe risk factor for cancer, which distinguishes this disease from AIH and PBC (Table 8). The increased risk of cholangiocarcinoma is well described (Bergquist 2001, Boberg 2002). The numbers reported vary because explanted livers during liver transplantation, autopsies and *in vivo* diagnosed cases are taken into account in different analyses. The diagnosis of cholangiocarcinoma (CC) in PSC patients continues to represent a difficult task because stenoses upon cholangiography may be caused by inflammatory activity as well as tumour, and because biochemical tests and biopsy procedures have a low sensitivity and specificity. Imaging studies are equally complicated by a lack of sensitivity since tumours frequently grow intramurally and are diagnosed in late stages precluding curative therapeutic approaches. Studies from Sweden show that 54% of CC occurs within 1 year of the diagnosis of PSC and 27% are diagnosed at liver transplantation. Overall 12.2% of Northern European PSC patients develop CC, which is corroborated by our data from Hannover (Boberg 2002, Tischendorf 2006). These patients suffer from jaundice, pruritus and abdominal pains and had a longer IBD history. Male gender and smoking is also a risk factor (Tischendorf 2006, Weismüller 2008). In a Dutch study there were similar findings of 18 CC out of 174 patients (10%) (Ponsioen 2002). The CC risk of a PSC patient amounts to 1.5% per year and is 161-fold higher than in healthy controls. In the future the option of proteomic analyses of bile (and urine) may be of importance to predict the risk of cancer (Metzger 2013).

It is also important to realize that the risk for colorectal cancer (CRC) is elevated 10-fold, in addition to a 14-fold risk of pancreatic cancer (Bergquist 2002). These data point to the need of yearly colonoscopies and ultrasound studies after diagnosis of PSC to monitor the high potential for cancer development.

Table 8. Cancer association of PSC

Cholangiocarcinoma	10-20% of PSC patients
	Yearly risk 1.5%
	Frequent within 1 year of diagnosis
	Bilirubin, male gender, long-standing ulcerative colitis, abdominal symptoms, smoking
Colorectal cancer	10-fold risk (PSC and ulcerative colitis)
	Yearly colonoscopies in ulcerative colitis
	In ulcerative colitis and AP elevation: consider ERC
Pancreatic cancer	14-fold risk in PSC patients
	Abdominal ultrasound

Medical therapy of PSC

Present day data and clinical experience does not suggest that PSC represents a disease curable by medical therapy (Zein 2010, Wiencke 2011). A cure would include the improvement or normalization of abnormal cholestatic biochemical features but more importantly the improvement of sclerosing changes to the intra- and extrahepatic biliary tree, which ultimately lead to biliary cirrhosis, to episodes of cholangitis, and, which carry the risk of cholangiocellular carcinoma. The only available drug that combines a favorable toxicity profile and can lead to a reduction of cholestatic serum parameters currently is ursodeoxycholic acid (UDCA). However, controversy surrounds the use of UDCA (Chapman 2010), which has recently led to guidelines that do not specifically recommend UDCA treatment in all adult patients (Guidelines 2009, Chapman 2010).

In two studies an improvement was documented using 20 mg/kg body weight, and 25-30 mg/kg body weight, respectively (Harnois 2001, Mitchell 2001). Both use UDCA doses, which are considerably higher than those common in the therapy of PBC (15 mg/kg body weight). From these data a higher dose appeared to be more beneficial in PSC. However, a study analyzing UDCA in bile as a function of oral UDCA dose found that doses exceeding 25 mg/kg body weight are not likely to be useful since the maximum transport of UDCA into the bile leveled off at 25 mg/kg with no further increase (Rost 2004). After these and other initial reports, a meta-analysis was published in 2002 (Chen 2003), which concluded that UDCA therapy improved biochemical parameters but that overall benefit in patients with PSC, in particular survival benefit, was uncertain. A large study appeared to confirm this: 219 PSC patients in a placebo-controlled trial (Olsson 2005) received 17-23 mg/kg body weight of UDCA and a trend towards better survival and less need for transplantation was seen, but did not reach statistical significance. A difference in the incidence of cholangiocarcinoma was not observed. However, statistical analyses reported in this study concluded that 346 patients would have been required to reach statistical significance. Based on the body of literature available, a

positive effect of UDCA at present cannot be excluded, and clearly larger placebo-controlled studies are required. This will only be possible in multicentre trials.

An additional effect of UDCA was reported showing a decrease of the dysplasia in colon polyps associated with UDCA doses as low as 10-15 mg/kg bodyweight (Tung 2001, Pardi 2003). Although this requires confirmation in larger studies the association of PSC with ulcerative colitis in 75% of affected individuals would make this an interesting ancillary effect of UDCA therapy.

The issue of immunosuppression in PSC is controversial and the majority of centers and publications do not recommend the routine administration of corticosteroids and other immunosuppressants (van Hoogstraten 2000, LaRusso 2006). In PSC one of the most feared and unpredictable complicating factors is bacterial cholangitis and cholangiosepsis (Negm 2011). Immunosuppression would be expected to aggravate this complication. In rare instances such as overlapping features of PSC and autoimmune hepatitis (AIH) (Boberg 2011), immunosuppression may be of benefit but this requires rigorous documentation of AIH, which includes biopsies, autoimmune serology and suggestive biochemistry (Boberg 1996, Beuers 2005).

Therapy of IBD in PSC

Many PSC patients suffer from a milder course of IBD. Ulcerative colitis is frequently characterized by pancolitis without severe symptoms, rectal sparing or backwash ileitis. Nevertheless the risk of dysplasia and CRC remains significantly higher in PSC patients with ulcerative colitis. Therapeutic intervention is no different that that for IBD without PSC. In this context UDCA appears to provide a beneficial effect for dysplasia development. In a study with 59 PSC patients with ulcerative colitis, UDCA reduced the risk of colonic dysplasia (Tung 2001, Serfaty 2003). UDCA may therefore contribute to the positive modulation of CRC risk in PSC.

Endoscopic therapy

The most important factor determining the course of PSC is the development of biliary strictures, which carry and increase the risk of septic cholangitis driving biliary fibrosis (Figures 4 and 5). Endoscopic dilatation can improve cholestasis, in some cases biliary stenting (Weismüller 2008), which is not recommended by all gastroenterologists. The combination of endoscopic intervention and UDCA therapy appears to lead to a significant prolongation of transplant-free survival. UDCA alone does not lead to this effect.

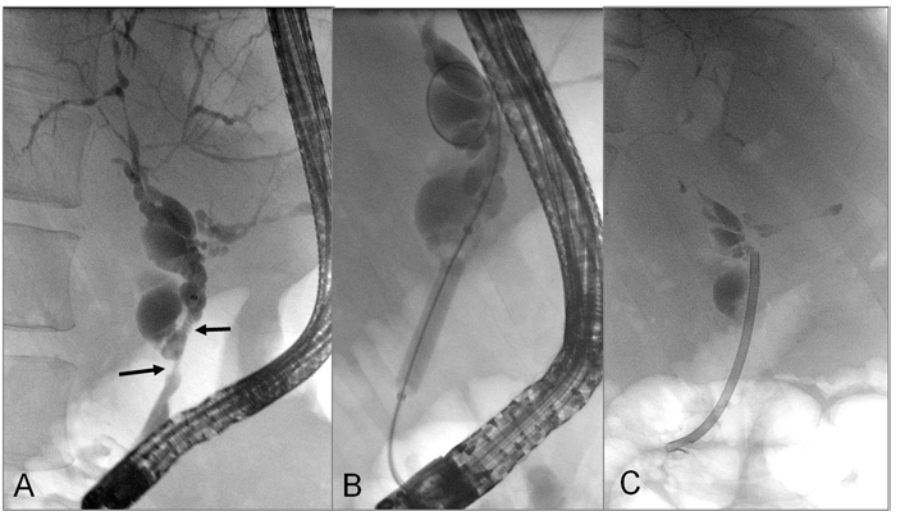


Figure 5. Management of PSC by dilatation of a dominant stricture of the common bile duct (arrows) and subsequent short-term stenting with a plastic stent. In this particular case it turned out that the biliary biopsy revealed cholangiocarcinoma

Liver transplantation in PSC (OLT)

In PSC patients survival has been shown to be reduced both in symptomatic and in asymptomatic patients (Kim 2000, LaRusso 2006), which is in part attributable to the inherent risk of cholangiocarcinoma affecting 10-20% of these patients, and renders decision-making for liver transplantation a formidable challenge. In addition, PSC patients with advanced destructive cholangiopathy frequently exhibit only mild signs of liver failure based upon coagulation abnormalities, hypoalbuminemia, or complications of portal hypertension (Tischendorf 2007, Strassburg 2009). The course of deterioration to liver failure is often observed after long periods of clinical stability, and frequently proceeds rapidly following septic biliary complications. This is not well predicted by the aforementioned PSC scores, which is also true for the model of end-stage liver disease (MELD), the measure for organ allocation in the US and the Eurotransplant member countries.

Two major problems define the challenges involved in the indication for liver transplantation in PSC. First, timing is difficult (Wiesner 1992). PSC patients are young and preemptive liver transplantation carries a higher short-term risk of OLT itself than the most likely short-term natural course of the disease. On the other hand, patients that urgently require OLT because of advanced biliary destruction frequently do not meet priority criteria calculated by the MELD system. Second, the 161-fold increase of cholangiocarcinoma risk (Bergquist 2002) is a risk that may eliminate the option of liver transplantation altogether when evidence of cholangiocarcinoma is detected by diagnostic imaging procedures. The diagnosis of early cholangiocarcinoma is difficult and presently no single diagnostic procedure with high sensitivity and specificity is available (Tischendorf 2006). Moreover, the patients at risk cannot be reliably identified.

In terms of practical management the first point can only be addressed by careful clinical monitoring of PSC patients in experienced hepatological transplant centers, where the likelihood of early complication diagnosis and management, as well as the individualized timing of wait-listing for OLT is higher (Tischendorf 2007). The second point has been addressed in two centres by establishing specific protocols for the management of hilar cholangiocarcinoma and OLT (Sudan 2002, Rea 2005). A rigorous algorithm for non-resectable hilar cholangiocarcinoma patients who were carefully selected and capable of surviving chemotherapy, radiation therapy and surgery was reported. A multimodal approach including neoadjuvant chemo-/radiation therapy, brachytherapy, chemotherapy, laparotomy and OLT was employed resulting in a 5-year survival of 82%, which did not differ from results in PSC patients without cholangiocarcinoma (Rea 2005). However, although attractive, these interdisciplinary strategies are best limited to studies and experienced hepatological transplant centers.

Overall the results of liver transplantation in PSC are good, leading to 10-year survival rates of around 70% (Graziadei 1999). In our centre the median survival of PSC patients with cholangiocarcinoma was 12.7 months, and all PSC patients, irrespective of OLT, had a mean survival of 112 months (Tischendorf 2006). Recurrence after OLT is difficult to diagnose but appears to occur in up to 25% of patients (Graziadei 1999, Rowe 2008). Liver transplantation continues to represent the only curative option in PSC. Future developments will have to address the low sensitivity and specificity of early cholangiocarcinoma detection, the clinical prediction of the course of disease and consequently, specific allocation criteria for patients with PSC.

References

Ahmed M, Mutimer D, Hathaway M, Hubscher S, McMaster P, Elias E. Liver transplantation for autoimmune hepatitis: a 12-year experience. Transplant Proc 1997;29:496. (Abstract)

Al-Benna S, Willert J, Steinau HU, Steinstraesser L. Secondary sclerosing cholangitis, following major burn injury. Burns 2011;36(6):e106-10. (Abstract)

Al-Chalabi T, Boccato S, Portmann BC, McFarlane IG, Heneghan MA. Autoimmune hepatitis (AIH) in the elderly: a systematic retrospective analysis of a large group of consecutive patients with definite AIH followed at a tertiary referral centre. J Hepatol 2006;45(4):575-83. (Abstract)

Al-Chalabi T, Portmann BC, Bernal W, McFarlane IG, Heneghan MA. Autoimmune hepatitis overlap syndromes: an evaluation of treatment response, long-term outcome and survival. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2008;28(2):209-20. (Abstract)

Alvarez F, Berg PA, Bianchi FB, et al. International Autoimmune Hepatitis Group Report: review of criteria for diagnosis of autoimmune hepatitis. J Hepatology 1999;31:929-38. (Abstract)

Alvarez F, Ciocca M, Canero-Velasco C, et al. Short-term cyclosporine induces a remission of autoimmune hepatitis in children. J Hepatol 1999;30:222-7. (Abstract)

Angulo P, El-Amin O, Carpenter HA, Lindor KD. Development of autoimmune hepatitis in the setting of long-standing primary biliary cirrhosis. Am J Gastroenterol 2001;96(10):3021-7. (Abstract)

Angulo P, Smith C, Jorgensen RA. Budesonide in the treatment of patients with primary biliary cirrhosis with suboptimal response to ursodeoxycholic acid. Hepatology 2000;20:471-90. (Abstract)

Aqel BA, Machicao V, Rosser B, Satyanarayana R, Harnois DM, Dickson RC. Efficacy of tacrolimus in the treatment of steroid refractory autoimmune hepatitis. J Clin Gastroenterol 2004;38(9):805-9. (Abstract)

Bach N, Bodian C, Bodenheimer H, et al. Methotrexate therapy for primary biliary cirrhosis. Am J Gastroenterol 2003;98(1):187-93. (Abstract)
Ben-Ari Z, Dhillon AP, Sherlock S. Autoimmune cholangiopathy: part of the spectrum of autoimmune chronic active hepatitis. Hepatology 1993;18(1):10-5. (Abstract)
Bergquist A, Broome U. Hepatobiliary and extra-hepatic malignancies in primary sclerosing cholangitis. Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol 2001;15(4):643-56. (Abstract)
Bergquist A, Ekbom A, Olsson R, et al. Hepatic and extrahepatic malignancies in primary sclerosing cholangitis. J Hepatol 2002;36(3):321-7. (Abstract)
Beuers U, Rust C. Overlap syndromes. Semin Liver Dis 2005;25(3):311-20. (Abstract)
Boberg KM, Aadland E, Jahnsen J, Raknerud N, Stiris M, Bell H. Incidence and prevalence of primary biliary cirrhosis, primary sclerosing cholangitis, and autoimmune hepatitis in a Norwegian population. Scand J Gastroenterol 1998;33:99-103. (Abstract)
Boberg KM, Bergquist A, Mitchell S, et al. Cholangiocarcinoma in primary sclerosing cholangitis: risk factors and clinical presentation. Scand J Gastroenterol 2002;37(10):1205-11. (Abstract)
Boberg KM, Chapman RW, Hirschfield GM, Lohse AW, Manns MP, Schrumpf E. Overlap syndromes: the International Autoimmune Hepatitis Group (IAIHG) position statement on a controversial issue. J Hepatol 2011;54(2):374-85. (Abstract)
Boberg KM, Fausa O, Haaland T, et al. Features of autoimmune hepatitis in primary sclerosing cholangitis: an evaluation of 114 primary sclerosing cholangitis patients according to a scoring system for the diagnosis of autoimmune hepatitis. Hepatology 1996;23(6):1369-76. (Abstract)
Bodenheimer H, Jr., Schaffner F, Pezzullo J. Evaluation of colchicine therapy in primary biliary cirrhosis. Gastroenterology 1988;95(1):124-9. (Abstract)
Bodenheimer HC Jr, Schaffner F, Sternlieb I, et al. A prospective clinical trial of D-penicillamine in the treatment of primary biliary cirrhosis. Hepatology 1985;5(6):1139-42. (Abstract)
Boonstra K, Beuers U, Ponsioen CY. Epidemiology of primary sclerosing cholangitis and primary biliary cirrhosis: a systematic review. J Hepatology;56:1181-1188.
Broome U, Glaumann H, Lindstom E, et al. Natural history and outcome in 32 Swedish patients with small duct primary sclerosing cholangitis (PSC). J Hepatol 2002;36(5):586-9. (Abstract)
Calmus Y, Gane P, Rouger P, Poupon R. Hepatic expression of class I and class II major histocompatibility complex molecules in primary biliary cirrhosis: effect of ursodeoxycholic acid. Hepatology 1990;11(1):12-5. (Abstract)
Campsen J, Zimmerman MA, Trotter JF, et al. Liver transplantation for autoimmune hepatitis and the success of aggressive corticosteroid withdrawal. Liver Transpl 2008;14(9):1281-6. (Abstract)
Cancado ELR, Porta G. Autoimmune hepatitis in South America. Dordrecht, Boston, London, Kluwer Academic Publishers, 2000.
Chapman R, Fevery J, Kalloo A, et al. Diagnosis and management of primary sclerosing cholangitis. Hepatology 2010;51(2):660-78. (Abstract)
Chapman RW. Primary sclerosing cholangitis: what is the role of ursodeoxycholic acid in therapy for PSC? Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol 2010;7(2):74-5. (Abstract)
Chazouilleres O, Wendum D, Serfaty L, Montembault S, Rosmorduc O, Poupon R. Primary biliary cirrhosis-autoimmune hepatitis overlap syndrome: clinical features and response to therapy. Hepatology 1998;28(2):296-301. (Abstract)
Chazouilleres O, Wendum D, Serfaty L, Rosmorduc O, Poupon R. Long term outcome and response to therapy of primary biliary cirrhosis-autoimmune hepatitis overlap syndrome. J Hepatol 2006;44(2):400-6. (Abstract)
Chen W, Gluud C. Bile acids for primary sclerosing cholangitis. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2003(2):CD003626. (Abstract)
Christensen E, Neuberger J, Crowe J, et al. Beneficial effect of azathioprine and prediction of prognosis in primary biliary cirrhosis. Final results of an international trial. Gastroenterology 1985;89(5):1084-91. (Abstract)
Clendenon JN, Aranda-Michel J, Krishna M, Taner CB, Willingham DL. Recurrent liver failure caused by IgG4 associated cholangitis. Ann Hepatol 2011;10(4):562-4. (Abstract)
Colombato LA, Alvarez F, Cote J, Huet PM. Autoimmune cholangiopathy: the result of consecutive primary biliary cirrhosis and autoimmune hepatitis? Gastroenterology 1994;107(6):1839-43. (Abstract)

Corpechot C, Chazouillières O, Poupon R. Early primary biliary cirrhosis: biochemical response to treatment and prediction of long term aoutcome. J Hepatol 2011;55(6):1361-1367.
Czaja AJ, Carpenter HA, Lindor KD. Ursodeoxycholic acid as adjunctive therapy for problematic type 1 autoimmune hepatitis: a randomized placebo-controlled treatment trial. Hepatology 1999;30(6):1381-6. (Abstract)
Czaja AJ, Carpenter HA, Santrach PJ, Moore SB. Significance of HLA DR4 in type 1 autoimmune hepatitis. Gastroenterology 1993;105:1502-7. (Abstract)
Czaja AJ, Carpenter HA. Distinctive clinical phenotype and treatment outcome of type 1 autoimmune hepatitis in the elderly. Hepatology 2006;43(3):532-8. (Abstract)
Czaja AJ, Lindor KD. Failure of budesonide in a pilot study of treatment-dependent autoimmune hepatitis. Gastroenterology 2000;119(5):1312-6. (Abstract)
Czaja AJ, Manns MP. Advances in the diagnosis, pathogenesis, and management of autoimmune hepatitis. Gastroenterology 2010;139(1):58-72 e4. (Abstract)
Danielson A, Prytz H. Oral budesonide for treatment of autoimmune chronic hepatitis. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 1994;8:585-90. (Abstract)
Debray D, Maggiore G, Giradet JP, Mallet E, Bernard O. Efficacy of cyclosporin A in children with type 2 autoimmune hepatits. J Pediatr 1999;135:111-4. (Abstract)
Devlin J, Donaldson P, Portman B, et a. Recurrence of autoimmune hepatitis following liver transplantation. Liver Transpl Surg 1995;1:162-5. (Abstract)
Dienes HP, Popper H, Manns M, Baumann W, Thoenes W, Meyer zum Büschenfelde K-H. Histologic features in autoimmune hepatitis. Z Gastroenterol 1989;27:327-30. (Abstract)
Donaldson PT. Immunogenetics in liver disease. Baillieres Clin Gastroenterol 1996;10(3):533-49. (Abstract)
Duclos-Vallee JC, Hadengue A, Ganne-Carrie N, et al. Primary biliary cirrhosis-autoimmune hepatitis overlap syndrome. Corticoresistance and effective treatment by cyclosporine A. Dig Dis Sci 1995;40(5):1069-73. (Abstract)
EASL Clinical Practice Guidelines: management of cholestatic liver diseases. J Hepatol 2009;51(2):237-67. (Abstract)
Efe C, Purnak T, Ozaslan E. Anti TNF-alpha therapy can be a novel treatment option in patients with autoimmune hepatitis. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2010;32(1):115; author reply 6-7. (Abstract)
Esposito I, Kubisova A, Stiehl A, Kulaksiz H, Schirmacher P. Secondary sclerosing cholangitis after intensive care unit treatment: clues to the histopathological differential diagnosis. Virchows Arch 2008;453(4):339-45. (Abstract)
Fernandez NF, Redeker AG, Vierling JM, Villamil FG, Fong T-L. Cyclosporine therapy in patients with steroid resistant autoimmune hepatitis. Am J Gastroenterol 1999;94:241-8. (Abstract)
Gautam M, Cheruvattath R, Balan V. Recurrence of autoimmune liver disease after liver transplantation: a systematic review. Liver Transpl 2006;12(12):1813-24. (Abstract)
Geall MG, Schoenfield LJ, Summerskill WHJ. Classification and treatment of chronic active liver disease. Gastroenterology 1968;55:724-9. (Abstract)
Gelbmann CM, Rummele P, Wimmer M, et al. Ischemic-like cholangiopathy with secondary sclerosing cholangitis in critically ill patients. Am J Gastroenterol 2007;102(6):1221-9. (Abstract)
Gelpi C SE, Rodriguez-Sanchez JL. Autoantibodies against a serine tRNA-protein complex implicated in cotranslational selenocysteine insertion. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 1992;89(20):9739-43. (Abstract)
Gossard AA, Lindor KD. Development of autoimmune hepatitis in primary biliary cirrhosis. Liver Int 2007;27(8):1086-90. (Abstract)
Götz G, Neuhaus R, Bechstein WO, et al. Recurrence of autoimmune hepatitis after liver transplantation. Transplant Proc 1999;31:430-1. (Abstract)
Goulis J, Leandro G, Burroughs AK. Randomised controlled trials of ursodeoxycholic acid therapy for primary biliary cirrhosis: a meta analysis. Lancet 1999;354:1053-60. (Abstract)
Graziadei IW, Wiesner RH, Batts KP, et al. Recurrence of primary sclerosing cholangitis following liver transplantation. Hepatology 1999;29(4):1050-6. (Abstract)
Gregorio GV, Portman B, Reid F, et al. Autoimmune hepatitis in childhood: a 20-year experience. Hepatology 1997;25:541-7. (Abstract)

Gregorio GV, Portmann B, Karani J, et al. Autoimmune hepatitis/sclerosing cholangitis overlap syndrome in childhood: a 16-year prospective study. Hepatology 2001;33(3):544-53. (Abstract)
Harnois DM, Angulo P, Jorgensen RA, Larusso NF, Lindor KD. High-dose ursodeoxycholic acid as a therapy for patients with primary sclerosing cholangitis. Am J Gastroenterol 2001;96(5):1558-62. (Abstract)
Hendrickse MT, Rigney E, Giaffer MH, et al. Low-dose methotrexate is ineffective in primary biliary cirrhosis: long-term results of a placebo-controlled trial. Gastroenterology 1999;117(2):400-7. (Abstract)
Heneghan MA, McFarlane IG. Current and novel immunosuppressive therapy for autoimmune hepatitis. Hepatology 2002;35(1):7-13. (Abstract)
Hennes EM, Oo YH, Schramm C, et al. Mycophenolate mofetil as second line therapy in autoimmune hepatitis? Am J Gastroenterol 2008;103(12):3063-70. (Abstract)
Hennes EM, Zeniya M, Czaja AJ, et al. Simplified criteria for the diagnosis of autoimmune hepatitis. Hepatology 2008;48(1):169-76. (Abstract)
Homberg JC, Abuaf N, Bernard O, et al. Chronic active hepatitis associated with anti liver/kidney microsome type 1: a second type of "autoimmune" hepatitis. Hepatology 1987;7:1333-9. (Abstract)
Ikeda T, Tozuka S, Noguchi O. Effects of additional administration of colchicine in ursodeoxycholic acid-treated patients with primary biliary cirrhosis: a prospective randomized study. j Hepatol 1996;24:88-94. (Abstract)
Johnson PJ, McFarlane IG, Williams R. Azathioprine for long-term maintenance of remission in autoimmune hepatitis. N EnglJ Med 1995;333:958-63. (Abstract)
Johnson PJ, McFarlane IG. Meeting report: International autoimmune hepatitis group. Hepatology 1993;18:998-1005. (Abstract)
Jones DE, James OF, Portmann B, Burt AD, Williams R, Hudson M. Development of autoimmune hepatitis following liver transplantation for primary biliary cirrhosis. Hepatology 1999;30(1):53-7. (Abstract)
Jones DE, Watt FE, Metcalf JV, Bassendine MF, James OF. Familial primary biliary cirrhosis reassessed: a geographically-based population study. J Hepatol 1999;30(3):402-7. (Abstract)
Kanzler S, Gerken G, Dienes HP, Meyer zum Büschenfelde K-H, Lohse AW. Cyclophosphamide as alternative immunosuppressive therapy for autoimmune hepatitis - report of three cases. Z Gastroenterol 1996;35:571-8. (Abstract)
Kaplan MM, Alling DW, Zimmerman HJ, et al. A prospective trial of colchicine for primary biliary cirrhosis. N Engl J Med 1986;315(23):1448-54. (Abstract)
Kato Y, Suzuki K, Kumagai M, et al. Familial primary biliary cirrhosis. Immunological and genetic study. Am J Gastroenterol 1981;75(3):188-91. (Abstract)
Kerkar N, Hadzic N, Davies ET, et al. De-novo autoimmune hepatitis after liver transplantation. Lancet 1998;351(9100):409-13. (Abstract)
Kim WR, Therneau TM, Wiesner RH, et al. A revised natural history model for primary sclerosing cholangitis. Mayo Clin Proc 2000;75(7):688-94. (Abstract)
Kirk AP, Jain S, Pocock S, Thomas HC, Sherlock S. Late results of the Royal Free Hospital prospective controlled trial of prednisolone therapy in hepatitis B surface antigen negative chronic active hepatitis. Gut 1980;21:7893. (Abstract)
Kuiper EM, Hanse BE, De Vries RA, et al. Improved prognosis of patients with primary biliary cirrhosis that have a biochemical response to ursodeoxycholic acid. Gastroenterology 2009;136:1281-1287
LaRusso NF, Shneider BL, Black D, et al. Primary sclerosing cholangitis: summary of a workshop. Hepatology 2006;44(3):746-64. (Abstract)
Leuschner M, Guldutuna S, You T, Hubner K, Bhatti S, Leuschner U. Ursodeoxycholic acid and prednisolone versus ursodeoxycholic acid and placebo in the treatment of early stages of primary biliary cirrhosis. J Hepatol 1996;25(1):49-57. (Abstract)
Leuschner M, Holtmeier J, Ackermann H, et al. The influence of sulindac on patients with primary biliary cirrhosis that responds incompletely to ursodeoxycholic acid: a pilot study. Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2002;14(12):1369-76. (Abstract)
Leuschner M, Maier KP, Schlichting J, et al. Oral budesonide and ursodeoxycholic acid for treatment of primary biliary cirrhosis: results of a prospective double-blind trial. Gastroenterology 1999;117(4):918-25. (Abstract)

Lombard M, Portmann B, Neuberger J, et al. Cyclosporin A treatment in primary biliary cirrhosis: results of a long-term placebo controlled trial. Gastroenterology 1993;104(2):519-26. (Abstract)
Mackay I, R, Taft LI, Cowling DC. Lupoid hepatitis. Lancet 1956;2:1323-6. (Abstract)
Mackay IR, Gershwin ME. The nature of autoimmune disease. Semin Liver Dis 1997;17(1):3-11. (Abstract)
Manns M, Gerken G, Kyriatsoulis A, Staritz M, Meyer zum Buschenfelde KH. Characterisation of a new subgroup of autoimmune chronic active hepatitis by autoantibodies against a soluble liver antigen. Lancet 1987;1(8528):292-4. (Abstract)
Manns MP, Bahr MJ. Recurrent autoimmune hepatitis after liver transplantation - when non-self becomes self. Hepatology 2000;32(4):868-70. (Abstract)
Manns MP, Czaja AJ, Gorham JD, et al. Diagnosis and management of autoimmune hepatitis. Hepatology 2010;51(6):2193-213. (Abstract)
Manns MP, Griffin KJ, Sullivan KF, Johnson EF. LKM-1 autoantibodies recognize a short linear sequence in P450IID6, a cytochrome P-450 monooxygenase. J Clin Invest 1991;88:1370-8. (Abstract)
Manns MP, Johnson EF, Griffin KJ, Tan EM, Sullivan KF. Major antigen of liver kidney microsomal antibodies in idiopathic autoimmune hepatitis is cytochrome P450db1. J Clin Invest 1989;83:1066-72. (Abstract)
Manns MP, Kruger M. Immunogenetics of chronic liver diseases. Gastroenterology 1994;106(6):1676-97. (Abstract)
Manns MP, Strassburg CP. Autoimmune hepatitis: clinical challenges. Gastroenterology 2001;120(6):1502-17. (Abstract)
Manns MP, Woynarowski M, Kreisel W, et al. Budesonide induces remission more effectively than prednisone in a controlled trial of patients with autoimmune hepatitis. Gastroenterology 2010;139(4):1198-206. (Abstract)
Metzger J, Negm AA, Plentz RR, et al. Urine proteomic analysis differentiates cholangiocarcinoma from primary sclerosing cholangitis and other benign biliary disorders. Gut 2013;62(1):122-130.
Michieletti P, Wanless IR, Katz A, et al. Antimitochondrial antibody negative primary biliary cirrhosis: a distinct syndrome of autoimmune cholangitis. Gut 1994;35(2):260-5. (Abstract)
Milkiewicz P, Hubscher SG, Skiba G, Hathaway M, Elias E. Recurrence of autoimmune hepatitis after liver transplantation. Transplantation 1999;68(2):253-6. (Abstract)
Mitchell SA, Bansi DS, Hunt N, Von Bergmann K, Fleming KA, Chapman RW. A preliminary trial of high-dose ursodeoxycholic acid in primary sclerosing cholangitis. Gastroenterology 2001;121(4):900-7. (Abstract)
Mitchison HC, Palmer JM, Bassendine MF, Watson AJ, Record CO, James OF. A controlled trial of prednisolone treatment in primary biliary cirrhosis. Three-year results. J Hepatol 1992;15(3):336-44.
Nakamura K, Yoneda M, Yokohama S, et al. Efficacy of ursodeoxycholic acid in Japanese patients with type 1 autoimmune hepatitis [see comments]. J Gastroenterol Hepatol 1998;13(5):490-5. (Abstract)
Negm AA, Schott A, Vonberg RP, et al. Routine bile collection for microbiological analysis during cholangiography and its impact on the management of cholangitis. Gastrointest Endosc 2011;72(2):284-91. (Abstract)
Neuberger J, Portmann B, Calne R, Williams R. Recurrence of autoimmune chronic active hepatitis following orthotopic liver grafting. Transplantation 1984;37(4):363-5. (Abstract)
Newton JL, Burt AD, Park JB, Mathew J, Bassendine MF, James OF. Autoimmune hepatitis in older patients. Age Ageing 1997;26(6):441-4. (Abstract)
Nikias GA, Batts KP, Czaja AJ. The nature and prognostic implications of autoimmune hepatitis with acute presentation. J Hepatol 1994;21:866-71. (Abstract)
Nishioka M, Morshed SA, Kono K, et al. Frequency and significance of antibodies to P450IID6 protein in Japanese patients with chronic hepatiis C. J Hepatol 1997;26:992-1000. (Abstract)
Nishioka M, Morshed SA, McFarlane IG. Geographical variation in the frequency and characteristics of autoimmune liver diseases. Amsterdam: Elsevier; 1998.

Notghi A, Nestle U, Rittner G, et al. Chromosomal aberrations in patients with primary biliary cirrhosis. Hum Genet 1990;85(5):546-50. (Abstract)
Olsson R, Boberg KM, de Muckadell OS, et al. High-dose ursodeoxycholic acid in primary sclerosing cholangitis: a 5-year multicenter, randomized, controlled study. Gastroenterology 2005;129(5):1464-72. (Abstract)
Pardi DS, Loftus EV, Jr., Kremers WK, Keach J, Lindor KD. Ursodeoxycholic acid as a chemopreventive agent in patients with ulcerative colitis and primary sclerosing cholangitis. Gastroenterology 2003;124(4):889-93. (Abstract)
Paumgartner G, Beuers U. Ursodeoxycholic acid in cholestatic liver disease: mechanisms of action and therapeutic use revisited. Hepatology 2002;36(3):525-31. (Abstract)
Ponsioen CY, Vrouenraets SM, Prawirodirdjo W, et al. Natural history of primary sclerosing cholangitis and prognostic value of cholangiography in a Dutch population. Gut 2002;51(4):562-6. (Abstract)
Potthoff A, Deterding K, Trautwein C, et al. Steroid treatment for severe acute cryptogenic hepatitis. Z Gastroenterol 2007;45(1):15-9. (Abstract)
Poupon R, Chazouilleres O, Corpechot C, Chretien Y. Development of autoimmune hepatitis in patients with typical primary biliary cirrhosis. Hepatology 2006;44(1):85-90. (Abstract)
Poupon RE, Huet PM, Poupon R, Bonnand AM, Nhieu JT, Zafrani ES. A randomized trial comparing colchicine and ursodeoxycholic acid combination to ursodeoxycholic acid in primary biliary cirrhosis. UDCA-PBC Study Group. Hepatology 1996;24(5):1098-103. (Abstract)
Poupon RE, Lindor KD, Cauch-Dudek K. Combined analysis of randomized controlled trials of ursodeoxycholic acid in primary biliary cirrhosis. Gastroenterology 1997;113:884-90. (Abstract)
Poupon RE, Lindor KD, Pares A, Chazouilleres O, Poupon R, Heathcote EJ. Combined analysis of the effect of treatment with ursodeoxycholic acid on histologic progression in primary biliary cirrhosis. J Hepatol 2003;39(1):12-6. (Abstract)
Prados E, Cuervas-Mons V, De La Mata M, et al. Outcome of autoimmune hepatitis after liver transplantation. Transplantation 1998;66:1645-50. (Abstract)
Prelog M. Aging of the immune system: a risk factor for autoimmunity? Autoimmun Rev 2006;5(2):136-9. (Abstract)
Raedsch R, Stiehl A, Walker S, Scherrmann JM, Kommerell B. [Combined ursodeoxycholic acid plus colchicine--treatment of primary biliary cirrhosis: results of a placebo-controlled double-blind study]. Z Gastroenterol 1992;30 Suppl 1:55-7. (Abstract)
Ramos-Casals M, Brito-Zeron P, Soto MJ, Cuadrado MJ, Khamashta MA. Autoimmune diseases induced by TNF-targeted therapies. Best Pract Res Clin Rheumatol 2008;22(5):847-61. (Abstract)
Ratziu V, Samuel D, Sebagh M, et al. Long-term follow-up after liver transplantation for autoimmune hepatitis: evidence of recurrence of primary disease. J Hepatol 1999;30(1):131-41. (Abstract)
Rea DJ, Heimbach JK, Rosen CB, et al. Liver transplantation with neoadjuvant chemoradiation is more effective than resection for hilar cholangiocarcinoma. Ann Surg 2005;242(3):451-8; discussion 8-61. (Abstract)
Rebollo Bernardez J, Cifuentes Mimoso C, Pinar Moreno A, et al. Deflazacort for long-term maintenance of remission in type I autoimmune hepatitis. Rev Esp Enferm Dig 1999;91(9):630-8. (Abstract)
Richardson PD, James PD, Ryder SD. Mycophenolate mofetil for maintenance of remission in autoimmune hepatitis in patients resistant to or intolerant of azathioprine. J Hepatol 2000;33(3):371-5. (Abstract)
Rost D, Rudolph G, Kloeters-Plachky P, Stiehl A. Effect of high-dose ursodeoxycholic acid on its biliary enrichment in primary sclerosing cholangitis. Hepatology 2004;40(3):693-8. (Abstract)
Rowe IA, Webb K, Gunson BK, Mehta N, Haque S, Neuberger J. The impact of disease recurrence on graft survival following liver transplantation: a single centre experience. Transpl Int 2008;21(5):459-65. (Abstract)
Rust C, Beuers U. Overlap syndromes among autoimmune liver diseases. World J Gastroenterol 2008;14(21):3368-73. (Abstract)
Salcedo M, Vaquero J, Banares R, et al. Response to steroids in de novo autoimmune hepatitis after liver transplantation. Hepatology 2002;35(2):349-56. (Abstract)

Sanchez-Urdazpal L, Czaja AJ, Van Holk B. Prognostic features and role of liver transplantation in severe corticoid-treated autoimmune chronic active hepatitis. Hepatology 1991;15:215-21. (Abstract)
Schramm C, Kanzler S, zum Buschenfelde KH, Galle PR, Lohse AW. Autoimmune hepatitis in the elderly. Am J Gastroenterol 2001;96(5):1587-91. (Abstract)
Schreuder TC, Hubscher SG, Neuberger J. Autoimmune liver diseases and recurrence after orthotopic liver transplantation: what have we learned so far? Transpl Int 2009;22(2):144-52. (Abstract)
Serfaty L, De Leusse A, Rosmorduc O, et al. Ursodeoxycholic acid therapy and the risk of colorectal adenoma in patients with primary biliary cirrhosis: an observational study. Hepatology 2003;38(1):203-9. (Abstract)
Silveira MG, Talwalkar JA, Angulo P, Lindor KD. Overlap of autoimmune hepatitis and primary biliary cirrhosis: long-term outcomes. Am J Gastroenterol 2007;102(6):1244-50. (Abstract)
Soloway RD, Summerskill WH, Baggenstoss AH, et al. Clinical, biochemical, and histological remission of severe chronic active liver disease: a controlled study of treatments and early prognosis. Gastroenterology 1972;63(5):820-33. (Abstract)
Stechemesser E, Klein R, Berg PA. Characterization and clinical relevance of liver-pancreas antibodies in autoimmune hepatitis. Hepatology 1993;18:1-9. (Abstract)
Strassburg CP, Bahr MJ, Becker T, Klempnauer J, Manns MP. [Progress in immunosuppression]. Chirurg 2008;79(2):149-56. (Abstract)
Strassburg CP, Becker T, Klempnauer J, Manns MP. Liver transplantation: deciding between need and donor allocation. Internist (Berl) 2004;45(11):1233-45. (Abstract)
Strassburg CP, Jaeckel E, Manns MP. Anti-mitochondrial antibodies and other immunological tests in primary biliary cirrhosis. Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol 1999;11(6):595-601. (Abstract)
Strassburg CP, Manns MP. Liver transplantation: indications and results. Internist (Berl) 2009. (Abstract)
Strassburg CP, Manns MP. Primary biliary liver cirrhosis and overlap syndrome. Diagnosis and therapy. Internist (Berl) 2004;45(1):16-26. (Abstract)
Strassburg CP, Manns MP. Autoantibodies and autoantigens in autoimmune hepatitis. Semin Liver Dis 2002;22(4):339-52. (Abstract)
Strassburg CP, Manns MP. Autoimmune hepatitis in the elderly: what is the difference? J Hepatol 2006;45(4):480-2. (Abstract)
Strassburg CP, Manns MP. Autoimmune hepatitis versus viral hepatitis C. Liver 1995;15:225-32. (Abstract)
Strassburg CP, Manns MP. Primär biliäre Zirrhose und primär sklerosierende Cholangitis. Internistische Praxis 1996;36:57-74.
Strassburg CP, Obermayer-Straub P, Alex B, et al. Autoantibodies against glucuronosyltransferases differ between viral hepatitis and autoimmune hepatitis. Gastroenterology 1996;111(6):1576-86. (Abstract)
Strassburg CP, Obermayer-Straub P, Manns MP. Autoimmunity in liver diseases. Clin Rev Allergy Immunol 2000;18(2):127-39. (Abstract)
Strassburg CP. [Autoimmune liver diseases and their overlap syndromes]. Praxis (Bern 1994) 2006;95:1363-81. (Abstract)
Stravitz RT, Lefkowitch JH, Fontana RJ, et al. Autoimmune acute liver failure: proposed clinical and histological criteria. Hepatology 2011;53(2):517-26. (Abstract)
Sudan D, DeRoover A, Chinnakotla S, et al. Radiochemotherapy and transplantation allow long-term survival for nonresectable hilar cholangiocarcinoma. Am J Transplant 2002;2(8):774-9. (Abstract)
Takuma K, Kamisawa T, Igarashi Y. Autoimmune pancreatitis and IgG4-related sclerosing cholangitis. Curr Opin Rheumatol 2011;23(1):80-7. (Abstract)
Talor E, Rose NR. Hypothesis: the aging paradox and autoimmune disease. Autoimmunity 1991;8(3):245-9. (Abstract)
Terjung B, Spengler U, Sauerbruch T, Worman HJ. "Atypical p-ANCA" in IBD and hepatobiliary disorders react with a 50-kilodalton nuclear envelope protein of neutrophils and myeloid cell lines. Gastroenterology 2000;119(2):310-22. (Abstract)

Thalen A, Brattsand R. Synthesis and anti-inflammatory properties of budesonide, a new non-halogenated glucocorticoid with high local activity. Arzneimittelforschung 1979;29(11):1687-90. (Abstract)
Tillmann HL, Jackel E, Manns MP. Liver transplantation in autoimmune liver disease--selection of patients. Hepatogastroenterology 1999;46(30):3053-9. (Abstract)
Tischendorf JJ, Hecker H, Kruger M, Manns MP, Meier PN. Characterization, outcome, and prognosis in 273 patients with primary sclerosing cholangitis: A single center study. Am J Gastroenterol 2007;102(1):107-14. (Abstract)
Tischendorf JJ, Meier PN, Strassburg CP, et al. Characterization and clinical course of hepatobiliary carcinoma in patients with primary sclerosing cholangitis. Scand J Gastroenterol 2006;41(10):1227-34. (Abstract)
Tsuji K, Watanabe Y, Van De Water J, et al. Familial primary biliary cirrhosis in Hiroshima. J Autoimmun 1999;13(1):171-8. (Abstract)
Tung BY, Emond MJ, Haggitt RC, et al. Ursodiol use is associated with lower prevalence of colonic neoplasia in patients with ulcerative colitis and primary sclerosing cholangitis. Ann Intern Med 2001;134(2):89-95. (Abstract)
Uibo R, Salupere V. The epidemiology of primary biliary cirrhosis: immunological problems. Hepatogastroenterology 1999;46(30):3048-52. (Abstract)
Umekita K, Miyauchi S, Ueno S, et al. Improvement of rheumatoid arthritis and autoimmune hepatitis in a patient treated with the tumor necrosis factor inhibitor, etanercept. Intern Med 2011;50(11):1245-9. (Abstract)
van Hoogstraten HJ, Vleggaar FP, Boland GJ, et al. Budesonide or prednisone in combination with ursodeoxycholic acid in primary sclerosing cholangitis: a randomized double-blind pilot study. Belgian-Dutch PSC Study Group [see comments]. Am J Gastroenterol 2000;95(8):2015-22. (Abstract)
Van Steenbergen W, Sciot R, Van Eyken P, Desmet V, Fevery J. Combined treatment with methotrexate and ursodeoxycholic acid in non-cirrhotic primary biliary cirrhosis. Acta Clin Belg 1996;51(1):8-18. (Abstract)
Van Thiel DH, Wright H, Carroll P, et al. Tacrolimus: A potential new treatment for autoimmune chronic active hepatitis: results of an open-label preliminary trial. Am J Gastroenterol 1995;90:771-6. (Abstract)
Vogel A, Heinrich E, Bahr MJ, et al. Long-term outcome of liver transplantation for autoimmune hepatitis. Clin Transplant 2004;18(1):62-9. (Abstract)
Volkmann M, Luithle D, Zentgraf H, et al. SLA/LP/tRNP((Ser)Sec) antigen in autoimmune hepatitis: identification of the native protein in human hepatic cell extract. J Autoimmun 2010;34(1):59-65. (Abstract)
Volkmann M, Martin L, Baurle A, et al. Soluble liver antigen: isolation of a 35-kd recombinant protein (SLA-p35) specifically recognizing sera from patients with autoimmune hepatitis. Hepatology 2001;33(3):591-6. (Abstract)
von Figura G, Stephani J, Wagner M, et al. Secondary sclerosing cholangitis after chemotherapy with bevacizumab and paclitaxel. Endoscopy 2009;41 Suppl 2:E153-4. (Abstract)
Waldenström J. Leber, Blutproteine und Nahrungseiweisse. Dtsch Gesellsch Verd Stoffw 1950;15:113-9. (Abstract)
Warnes TW, Smith A, Lee FI, Haboubi NY, Johnson PJ, Hunt L. A controlled trial of colchicine in primary biliary cirrhosis. Trial design and preliminary report. J Hepatol 1987;5(1):1-7. (Abstract)
Webster GJ, Pereira SP, Chapman RW. Autoimmune pancreatitis/IgG4-associated cholangitis and primary sclerosing cholangitis--overlapping or separate diseases? J Hepatol 2009;51(2):398-402. (Abstract)
Weismüller TJ, Wedemeyer J, Kubicka S, Strassburg CP, Manns MP. The challenges in primary sclerosing cholangitis - Aetiopathogenesis, autoimmunity, management and malignancy. J Hepatol 2008;48(S1):S38-S57. (Abstract)
Wiegand J, Schuler A, Kanzler S, et al. Budesonide in previously untreated autoimmune hepatitis. Liver Int 2005;25(5):927-34. (Abstract)
Wiencke K, Boberg KM. Current consensus on the management of primary sclerosing cholangitis. Clin Res Hepatol Gastroenterol 2011. (Abstract)
Wies I, Brunner S, Henninger J, et al. Identification of target antigen for SLA/LP autoantibodies in autoimmune hepatitis [see comments]. Lancet 2000;355(9214):1510-5. (Abstract)

Wiesner RH, Ludwig J, Lindor KD, et al. A controlled trial of cyclosporine in the treatment of primary biliary cirrhosis. N Engl J Med 1990;322(20):1419-24. (Abstract)
Wiesner RH, Porayko MK, Dickson ER, et al. Selection and timing of liver transplantation in primary biliary cirrhosis and primary sclerosing cholangitis. Hepatology 1992;16(5):1290-9. (Abstract)
Wolfhagen FHJ, van Hoogstraaten HJF, van Buuren, H.R. Triple therapy with ursodeoxycholic acid, prednisone, and azathioprine in primary biliary cirrhosis: a 1 year randomized, placebo controlled study. J Hepatol 1998;29:736-42. (Abstract)
Wright HL, Bou-Abboud CF, Hassanenstein T, et al. Disease recurrence and rejection following liver transplantation for autoimmune chronic active liver disease. Transplantation 1992;53:136-9. (Abstract)
Zein CO, Lindor KD. Latest and emerging therapies for primary biliary cirrhosis and primary sclerosing cholangitis. Curr Gastroenterol Rep 2010;12(1):13-22. (Abstract)
Zhang L, Lewis JT, Abraham SC, et al. IgG4+ plasma cell infiltrates in liver explants with primary sclerosing cholangitis. Am J Surg Pathol 2011;34:88-94. (Abstract)

27. Alcoholic Hepatitis

Claus Niederau

Health and social problems due to alcohol overconsumption

Mortality due to alcohol overconsumption is high, in particular among young men (Mokdad 2000). Alcohol overconsumption not only increases the risk for liver disease but is also responsible for malignancies, accidents, violence, and social problems (Bellentani 1997, Vaillant 1995). Alcohol consumption in excess of 20-30 g for women and 40-60 g for men per day markedly increases the risk for liver disease (Becker 1996, Lucey 2008). However, liver cirrhosis is seen only in a minority of subjects with high alcohol consumption; less than 10% of subjects who drink more than 120 g of alcohol daily have cirrhosis (Bellentani 1997). In addition to the level of alcohol consumption, various other factors such as sex, other genetic characteristics and comorbidities contribute to the risk for liver disease (Nishigushi 1991, Becker 1996, Bellentani 1997, McCollough 1998, de Alwis 2007, Lucey 2009).

Classification and natural history of alcoholic liver disease

Alcohol overconsumption most often causes fat accumulation of hepatocytes, called hepatic steatosis (Figure 1). Alcohol-induced steatosis is in general reversible after alcohol abstinence. Continued alcohol overconsumption in the presence of steatosis markedly increases the risk for development of hepatitis, fibrosis and cirrhosis (Teli 1995, Cubero 2009). Patients with alcohol-induced cirrhosis have a significantly increased risk for hepatocellular carcinoma (McCollough 1998). Patients with only fatty liver in the absence of inflammation and fibrosis have a much lower risk for development of cirrhosis than those with fatty liver plus presence of inflammation and fibrosis. The latter group of patients with alcoholic fatty liver, inflammation and fibrosis is defined as alcoholic steatohepatitis (ASH). The liver histology of patients with ASH is similar when compared to patients with non-alcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH) that is often associated with obesity and diabetes (Ludwig 1980, Brunt 1999).

The diagnosis of ASH by liver biopsy thus helps to define the risk for development of cirrhosis. The histological diagnosis of ASH however should not be confused with the term “alcoholic hepatitis” that is also called “acute alcoholic hepatitis” although its course can be a rather chronic one (Lucey 2009). This overview article concentrates on “alcoholic hepatitis” which is a clinical diagnosis of a rather acute development of jaundice and liver failure associated with a high short-term mortality.

It is not exactly known which factor(s) set off the development of severe alcohol hepatitis. In general, pathogenesis and individual predisposition are governed by gene-environment interactions in all types of alcoholic liver disease (Figure 1). Based on the “second hit” or “multiple hits” hypothesis, patients are predisposed to progressive alcoholic liver disease when a specific combination of gene and environmental interaction exists (Tsukamoto 2009). A loss or gain of function genetic model has become a popular experimental approach to test the role of a gene as a second hit. Significant interactions for progressive development of alcoholic liver disease have been proven in particular for female gender, obesity, various drugs, iron overload, and hepatitis B and C viral infections (Mueller 2009, Machado 2009, Cubero 2009). These factors may also interact in the development of hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC).

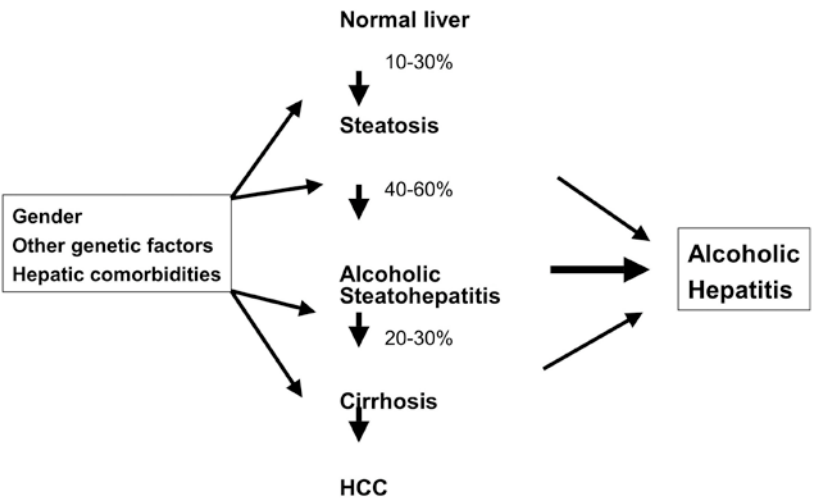


Figure 1. Effects of alcohol overconsumption on the liver

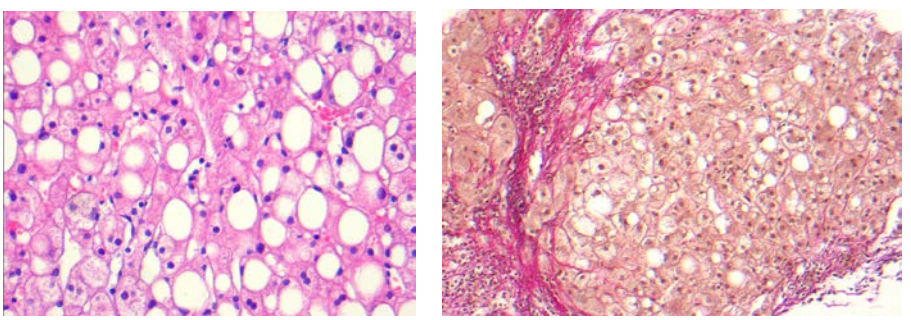
A liver biopsy in someone with “alcoholic hepatitis” is often similar to a histological feature of ASH. Most patients with histological features of ASH however will not develop “alcoholic hepatitis”. Alcohol overconsumption leads to a severe form of hepatitis and liver failure associated with a high short-term mortality only in some subjects. Such alcoholic hepatitis may be seen with or without preexisting cirrhosis.

Clinical features and diagnosis of alcoholic hepatitis

Alcoholic hepatitis is a clinical diagnosis characterized by the rapid development of jaundice and liver failure most often due to long-term alcohol overconsumption (Naveau 1997, McCollough 1998, Lucey 2009). Further characteristics include fever, ascites, and in some patients hepatic encephalopathy as well. Usually the liver is enlarged and tender. Women have a higher risk for alcoholic hepatitis than men assuming that both genders drink the same amount of alcohol. The type of alcohol is not associated with the risk. Prevalence was 20% in a cohort of 1604 patients who had a history of heavy alcohol consumption and underwent a liver biopsy (Naveau 1997).

Laboratory tests show increases in serum aspartate aminotransferase (AST) to approximately twice the upper limit of normal (ULN), while the increase in alanine aminotransferase (ALT) is less pronounced. The ratio of AST to ALT is typically >2 (Cohen 1979, Matloff 1980). Other laboratory abnormalities include increases in peripheral leukocytes, serum bilirubin, and international normalized ratio (INR) (Mathurin 2002, Orrego 1979). In the presence of an increase in serum creatinine there is a high risk for development of an often lethal hepatorenal syndrome (Multimer 1993).

A liver biopsy usually shows big fat droplets and ballooning of hepatocytes that may also include alcoholic hyaline (also called Mallory bodies); these changes are accompanied by neutrophil infiltration and intrasinusoidal fibrosis (Figures 2 and 3) (MacSween 1986).



Figures 2 and 3. Liver biopsies of alcoholic hepatitis

The diagnosis of alcoholic steatohepatitis (ASH) requires the presence of fibrosis. The role of liver biopsy in defining prognosis and treatment of alcoholic hepatitis in the clinical setting remains unclear. Today, prognosis is usually not based on liver biopsy but on clinical scoring systems (Lucey 2009).

Ultrasound is routinely done to look for hepatocellular carcinoma, biliary obstruction, ascites, splenomegaly, portal vein thrombosis, and signs of portal hypertension. Ascites should be checked for spontaneous bacterial peritonitis routinely.

Differential diagnosis of alcoholic hepatitis includes severe non-alcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH), acute or chronic viral hepatitis, drug-induced injury, autoimmune hepatitis, and Wilson's disease. NASH shares the histological features of ASH except for the rapid development of jaundice and liver failure.

After discontinuation of alcohol consumption the majority of patients will recover from alcoholic hepatitis although jaundice, ascites and encephalopathy may persist for weeks or months (Alexander 1971). Even so, a considerable percentage of patients with alcoholic hepatitis still die today despite adequate treatment and abstinence (Mathurin 2002, Orrego 1979).

Course and severity

Severe alcoholic hepatitis occurs in a small fraction of patients who overconsume alcohol. The 28-day mortality is high and ranges from 30% to 50% in most cohorts (Cohen 2009). Various scores have been used to predict the prognosis of alcoholic hepatitis. Maddrey's discriminant function (Maddrey 1978) and the Model for End-Stage Liver Disease (MELD; http://goo.gl/ksgu4) score may help to identify patients who can benefit with corticosteriods. Most scores share some important characteristics such as serum bilirubin and prothrombin time (Srikureja 2005). Maddrey's discriminant function is calculated as [4.6x (prothrombin time–control prothrombin time, in seconds)]+serum bilirubin (mg/dL). A value of >32 indicates severe alcoholic hepatitis and consequently calls for the use of corticosteroids (Maddrey 1978). In two retrospective studies, the MELD score predicted short-term mortality in alcoholic hepatitis as well as or even better than Maddrey's discriminant function (Dunn 2005, Srikureja 2005). A MELD score >21 was associated with a 90-day mortality of 20%. The Lille score is based on pretreatment data and on the response of serum bilirubin to a 7-day treatment with corticosteroids and has been used to determine whether corticosteroids should be discontinued after 7 days because of treatment failure (Forrest 2005, Dunn 2005, Louvet 2007). Patients with Maddrey's discriminant function of <32 usually have mild disease with a short-term survival of more than 90% and will not benefit from corticosteroid treatment.

Investigators reported the results of a stepwise logistic-regression identifying variables related to survival 1-4 months after hospital admission in patients with alcoholic hepatitis (Forrest 2005); by using this data the Glasgow alcoholic hepatitis score was developed (not to be confused with the Glasgow coma score). The score, which includes age, peripheral leukocytes, urea nitrogen, bilirubin, and prothrombin time, may help to identify high-risk patients who should receive corticosteroids. Patients with a Maddrey's discriminant function >32 and a Glasgow alcoholic hepatitis score of >9 who were treated with corticosteroids had an 84-day survival of 59%, while untreated patients had a 38% survival (Forrest 2007). In one study the Glasgow score indicated which subgroup of patients with a high score of Maddrey's discriminant function would benefit from corticosteroid therapy (Forrest 2007).

Child-Pugh (CP) and MELD scores have been widely used to predict survival in cirrhotic patients. Recent studies have suggested that the addition of serum sodium to MELD (MELD-Na score) may improve its prognostic accuracy. Another recent study compared the performance of CP, MELD, and MELD-Na scores in predicting

6-month mortality in patients with alcoholic cirrhosis, and developed a new prognostic score. In this study two French centres (Boursier 2009) enrolled 520 patients (mean age 56.4±10.2 years) with alcoholic cirrhosis randomly allocated into two groups. MELD, MELD-Na1, and MELD-Na2 were calculated according to UNOS recommendations. Frequencies of CP classes were: A - 29.6%, B - 25.8%, C - 44.6%. Of the 520 patients 93 died during the 6-month follow-up. In the whole population, the values of CP, MELD, MELD-Na1, and MELD-Na2 for prediction of 6-month mortality were similar. Multivariate analysis identified age, bilirubin, urea, prothrombin time, sodium, and alkaline phosphatase as independent predictors of 6-month mortality. The score combining these 6 variables was named the Prognostic Score for Alcoholic Cirrhosis (PSAC) and compared to the 4 other scores. The predictive value of PSAC was better than all other scores except for MELD-Na2. By stepwise multivariate analysis, PSAC was identified as independently associated with 6-month mortality at the first step, and CP at the second. The new PSAC score may improve the prognostic accuracy to predict the 6-month outcome (Boursier 2009).

Another recent study analyzed the outcome of 79 patients who were admitted to an Intensive Care Unit (ICU) because of alcoholic liver disease (Rye 2009). The value of various scores was analyzed for predicting mortality including the Acute Physiology, Age and Chronic Health Evaluation (APACHE II), Sequential Organ Failure Assessment (SOFA), CP, and MELD scores. The major reason for admission was sepsis (44%). The observed mortality in the ICU was 49% and hospital mortality 68%. Compared to survivors, non-survivors had a significantly higher serum bilirubin, creatinine and prothrombin time, and lower GCS and length of ICU stay. Survival was affected by cardiac arrest pre-admission (mortality 75%) and number of organs supported (mortality 8% with no organ support, 79% ≥2 organs, 100% ≥3 organs). Renal replacement therapy was associated with 100% mortality. Mortality due to GI bleeding was only 33%. Thus, cirrhotics admitted to the ICU with cardiac arrest pre-admission, need for renal replacement therapy, or multiple organ support have a poor prognosis. The predictive accuracy of SOFA and MELD scores were superior to APACHE II and Child-Pugh scores in cirrhotic patients (Rye 2009).

A further study analyzed the mortality of 105 patients presenting with alcoholic hepatitis (Hussain 2009). Patients were evaluated by the modified discriminant function (mDF) for alcoholic liver disease, CP score, and Glasgow alcoholic hepatitis score (GAHS). Mean survival for those alive at the end of the study (n=36) was 34.6 ± 17.8 months. Mean survival for those who died (n=50) was 13.2 ± 14.4 months. The mDF, CP and GAHS scores were significant predictors of mortality in this population. Prothrombin time was also a significant predictor of mortality (Hussain 2009).

Mechanisms of alcohol-related liver injury

Alcoholic liver disease is initiated by different cell types in the liver and a number of different factors including products derived from alcohol-induced inflammation, ethanol metabolites, and indirect reactions from those metabolites, as well as genetic predisposition (Colmenero 2007). Ethanol oxidation results in the production of

metabolites that have been shown to bind and form protein adducts, and to increase inflammatory, fibrotic and cirrhotic responses. Lipopolysaccharide (LPS) has many deleterious effects and plays a significant role in a number of disease processes by increasing inflammatory cytokine release. In alcoholic liver disease, LPS is thought to come from from a breakdown in the intestinal wall enabling LPS from resident gut bacterial cell walls to leak into the blood stream. The ability of adducts and LPS to independently stimulate various cells of the liver provides for a two-hit mechanism by which various biological responses are induced and result in liver injury.

Alcohol (ethanol) can be oxidized by various enzymatic and non-enzymatic pathways (Figures 4). In hepatocytes the most important pathway is oxidation of ethanol via alcohol dehydrogenase (ADH) to acetaldehyde (Figure 4). In mitochondria, acetaldehyde is converted to acetate and in turn acetate is converted to acetyl CoA, which leads the two-carbon molecule into the TCA (tricarboxylic acid cycle).

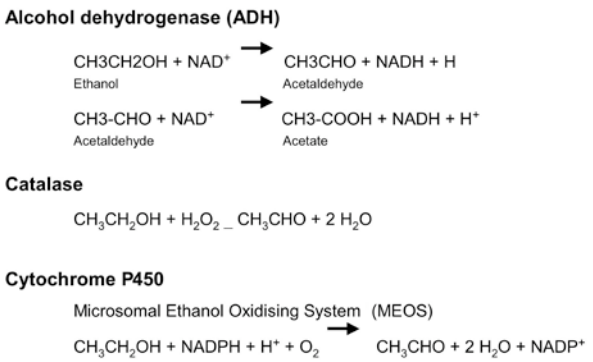


Figure 4. Oxidation of ethanol to acetaldehyde by enzymatic pathways

This oxidation generates reducing equivalents, primarily reduced nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD), i.e., NADH. The changes in the NADH–NAD+ potential in the liver inhibit both fatty acid oxidation and the TAC and may thereby increase lipogenesis (You 2004a). Ethanol has also been shown to increase lipid metabolism by inhibiting peroxisome-proliferator–activated receptor α (PPARα) and AMP kinase as well as by stimulation of sterol regulatory element-binding protein (Fischer 2003, You 2004b, Ji 2006). All these mechanisms lead to hepatic steatosis. Further enzymatic pathways of ethanol oxidation include catalase and the "Microsomal Ethanol Oxidizing System" (MEOS), a cytochrome P450 component. Oxidation of ethanol to acetaldehyde may also be due to non-enzymatic free radical pathways (Figure 5). These include strong oxidizing intermediates such as the hydroxyl radical which can abstract a hydrogen atom from ethanol, preferentially producing the 1-hydroxyethyl radical; hypervalent iron complexes may also catalyse this reaction without involvement of •OH (Reinke 1994, Welch 2002, Qian 1999). Hydroxyethyl radicals may then react with oxygen to form a peroxy radical

intermediate which can rearrange to release acetaldehyde and superoxide. Hydroxyethyl radicals can also react with proteins to produce antigenic adducts or induce mitochondrial permeability transition (Clot 1995, Sakurai 2000).

There are probably various other mechanisms by which ethanol may cause or contribute to liver disease. Ethanol increases the translocation of lipopolysaccharide (LPS) from the small and large intestines to the portal vein and on to the liver. In Kupffer cells LPS can bind to CD14, which combines with toll-like receptor 4 (TLR4) thereby activating multiple cytokine genes (Schaffert 2009). In addition, NADPH oxidase may release reactive oxygen species (ROS) that activate cytokine genes within Kupffer cells, hepatocytes, and hepatic stellate cells. These cytokines including TNF-α may cause fever, anorexia, and weight loss. Interleukin-8 and monocyte chemotactic protein 1 (MCP-1) have been shown to attract neutrophils and macrophages. Platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF) and transforming growth factor b (TGF-b) contribute to the activation, migration, and multiplication of hepatic stellate cells, thereby promoting liver fibrosis.

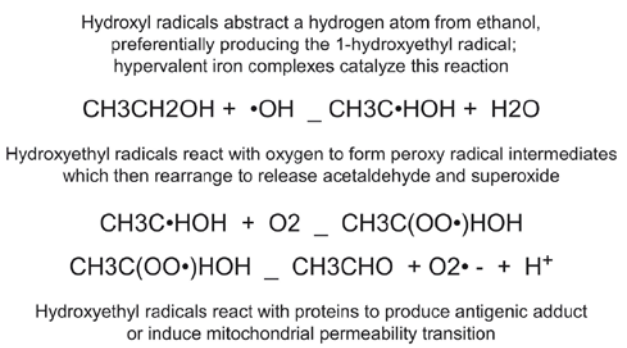


Figure 5. Oxidation of ethanol to acetaldehyde by non-enzymatic free radical pathways

In the hepatocyte, ethanol is converted to acetaldehyde by the cytosolic enzyme alcohol dehydrogenase (ADH) and the microsomal enzyme cytochrome P450 2E1 (CYP2E1). Acetaldehyde is converted to acetate. These reactions produce NADH and inhibit the oxidation of triglycerides and fatty acids. ROS released by CYP2E1 and mitochondria cause lipid peroxidation. Inhibition of proteosomes due to ethanol disturbs protein catabolism and may be partly responsible for the formation of Mallory bodies. Reduction in enzymes that convert homocysteine to methionine may increase homocysteine, thereby injuring the endoplasmic reticulum. Decrease in binding of peroxisome proliferator–activated receptor a (PPAR-α) to DNA reduces the expression of genes involved in fatty acid oxidation.

Glutathione transport from the cytosol into the mitochondria is reduced by ethanol. Ethanol may also activate Fas and TNF receptor 1 (TNF-R1) thereby activating caspase 8, causing mitochondrial injury and opening the mitochondrial transition pore (MTP), releasing cytochrome c, and activating caspases; all these processes contribute to apoptosis. Activation of TNF-R1 leads to nuclear factor kappa B (NFkB) activation (Schaffert 2009).

Gut permeability and the circulating LPS endotoxin levels of the outer wall of gram-negative bacteria are increased in patients with alcoholic liver injury (Uesugi 2002, Bjarnson 1984, Urbaschel 2001). In various animal studies alcohol exposure promoted the transfer of LPS endotoxins from the intestine into portal blood (West 2005). Oral treatment with antibiotics reduced such increases in LPS endotoxins and ameliorated alcoholic liver injury in animals (Uesugi 2001, Nanji 1994, Adachi 1995). Activation of Kupffer cells by LPS endotoxins involves CD14, toll-like receptor 4 (TLR4), and MD2 (Uesugi 2001, Akira 2001, Yin 2001). The downstream pathways of TLR4 signalling include activation of early growth response 1 (EGR1), NFkB, and the TLR4 adapter also called toll-interleukin-1 receptor domain-containing adapter inducing interferon-ß (TRIF) (McCuillen 2005, Zhao 2008). TRIF-dependent signalling may contribute to alcohol-induced liver damage mediated by TLR4 (Hritz 2008).

Many animal studies have shown that alcohol ingestion increases various markers of oxidative stress (Meagher 1999, Wu2009). Studies in rats and mice suggest that activated macrophages (Kupffer cells) and hepatocytes are the main sources of alcohol-induced free radicals (Bailey 1998, Kamimura 1992). Oxidative stress may mediate alcohol-induced liver injury, e.g., via cytochrome P450 2E1 (Mansuri 1999, Lu 2008), leading to mitochondrial damage, activation of endoplasmic reticulum–dependent apoptosis, and up-regulation of lipid synthesis (Ji 2003, Yin 2001). Activated Kupffer cells will also release TNF-α; this cytokine plays an important role in the pathogenesis of alcoholic hepatitis. Circulating TNF-α concentrations are higher in patients with alcoholic hepatitis than in heavy drinkers with inactive cirrhosis, heavy drinkers who do not have liver disease and persons who do not drink alcohol and who do not have liver disease (Adachi 1994, Bird 1990). Circulating TNF-α concentrations are associated with high mortality (Bird 1990). In animal studies, knockouts of the TNF receptor 1 and administration of the anti-TNF agent thalidomide both ameliorated alcohol-induced liver injury (Yin 1999, Imuro 1997, Enomoto 2002). Ethanol was also shown to release mitochondrial cytochrome c and to induce expression of the Fas ligand that may then cause apoptosis via the caspase-3 activation pathway (Zhou 2001). Both TNF- and Fas-mediated signals may increase the vulnerability of hepatocytes (Minagawa 2004).

Treatment

Abstinence from alcohol

After recovery from liver failure all patients with alcoholic hepatitis patients need to have psychological and social support in order to assure continued abstinence (Saitz 2007).

Supportive therapy

There is still a lack of specific therapy for patients with alcoholic hepatitis although prednisolone and pentoxifylline may have beneficial effects in severe disease. It is, however, generally accepted that all complications and risks such as ascites, encephalopathy, hepatorenal syndrome, and infections should be treated like other decompensated liver diseases (Kosten 2003, Sanyal 2008, Lim 2008). The daily

protein intake should be at least 1.5 g/kg. Vitamin B1 and other vitamins should be administered according to recommended references (Barr 2006).

Corticosteroids

Various studies and meta-analyses show controversial results for the use of corticosteroids in alcoholic hepatitis (Imperiale 1990, Christensen 1999, Imperiale 1999, Rambaldi 2008). In general, corticosteroids have not been shown to increase survival, in particular during longer follow-up (Rambaldi 2008). However, there is evidence that corticosteroids do reduce mortality in a subgroup of patients with a Maddrey's discriminant function >32 or in those presenting with hepatic encephalopathy (Rambaldi 2008). A meta-analysis of three studies corroborated that corticosteroids given for 28 days increase 1-month survival by 20% in severe alcoholic hepatitis (Maddrey's discriminant function >32) (Mathurin 2002). In these studies Maddrey's discriminant function >32 resembled a MELD score of >21. In most studies prednisolone was given at 40 mg a day for 28 days. In some studies prednisolone was stopped completely at 28 days (Mathurin 2003), while the dose was gradually reduced in other studies (Imperiale 1990). Corticoids should not be given in the presence of sepsis, severe infection, hepatorenal syndrome, chronic hepatitis B, or gastrointestinal bleeding (O'Shea 2006).

The mechanisms by which corticosteroids improve short-term survival in severe alcoholic hepatitis are not fully understood. In general, corticosteroids inhibit various inflammatory processes by acting on activator protein 1 and NFkB (Barnes 1997). In some studies in patients with alcoholic hepatitis, the administration of corticosteroids was associated with a decrease in circulating levels of proinflammatory cytokines such as interleukin-8, TNF-α and others (Taieb 2000, Spahr 2001).

Recent reviews and recommendations conclude that corticosteroids should not be given to patients with a Maddrey's discriminant function <32 or a MELD score <21 until further data can identify patients with a high short-term risk (Lucey 2009). Corticosteroids are thus ineffective in a large group of patients with alcoholic hepatitis and probably do not affect long-term outcome. There is also evidence that corticosteroids can be discontinued after 7 days if there is no obvious improvement in clinical signs and symptoms and in serum bilirubin (Maddrey 1978, Dunn 2005, Forrest 2005, Louvet 2007).

Pentoxifylline

Pentoxyfilline (400 mg TID for 28 days) reduced short-term mortality in severe alcoholic hepatitis (Maddrey's discriminant function >32) in a randomized, controlled trial; mortality was 24% in the pentoxifylline group and 46% in the placebo group ($p<0.01$) (Akrivadis 2000). This trial did not include a group on corticosteroid treatment. Although the phosphodiesterase inhibitor pentoxifylline has been suggested to act as an anti-TNF agent, TNF-α concentrations did not differ significantly between the two groups. Thus, the mechanisms by which pentoxifylline may improve the prognosis in alcoholic hepatitis remains unknown. Interestingly, almost all deaths (22 of 24; 92%) in the placebo group were associated with hepatorenal syndrome while hepatorenal syndrome was considered the cause of death in only 6 of 12 patients (50%) in the pentoxifylline group. Thus,

one might speculate that pentoxifylline may exert its beneficial effects by preventing the development of hepatorenal syndrome. A recent study (De BK 2009) compared the efficacy of pentoxifylline and prednisolone in the treatment of severe alcoholic hepatitis. 68 patients with severe alcoholic hepatitis (Maddrey score >32) received pentoxifylline (400 mg TID for 28 days) (n=34) or prednisolone (40 mg QD for 28 days) (n=34) for 28 days in a randomized double-blind controlled study, and subsequently in an open-label study (with a tapering dose of prednisolone) for a total of 3 months, and were followed over a period of 12 months. Twelve patients in the corticosteroid group died by the end of month 3 in contrast to five patients in the pentoxifylline group (mortality 35.3% vs 14.7%, p=0.04). Six patients in the corticosteroid group but none in the pentoxifylline group developed hepatorenal syndrome. Pentoxifylline was associated with a significantly lower MELD score at the end of 28 days of therapy when compared to corticosteroids (15.5 ± 3.6 vs 17.8 ± 4.6, p=0.04). Reduced mortality, improved risk:benefit profile and renoprotective effects of pentoxifylline compared with prednisolone suggest that pentoxifylline is superior to prednisolone for treatment of severe alcoholic hepatitis. Interestingly, another recent study showed that long-term pentoxifylline therapy effectively achieved sustained biochemical improvement and even histological improvement in non-alcoholic steatohepatitis (Satapathy 2007).

N-acetyl cysteine

A multicentre, randomised, controlled trial (Nguyen-Khac 2009) analysed treatment of severe acute alcoholic hepatitis via corticoids plus N-acetyl cysteine (C+NAC) versus corticoids (C) alone. The background to this approach was the hypothesis that the glutathione precursor NAC may rebuild antioxidant stocks in the hepatocyte. Deaths were significantly lower in the C+NAC group than in the C group at month 1 (n=7/85 (8.2%) vs. 21/89 (23.6%), p=0.005) and at month 2 (13/85 (15.3%) vs. 29/89 (32.6%), p=0.007) but not at month 3 (19/85 (22.4%) vs. 30/89 (33.7%), p=0.095) or at month 6 (23/85 (27.1%) vs. 34/89 (38.2%). NAC may improve short-term survival. This improvement, however, is lost by month 3.

Anti-TNF-α therapy

Some smaller studies have shown beneficial results using the TNF-α receptor antagonists infliximab and etanercept in patients with acute alcoholic hepatitis (Spahr 2007, Mookerjee 2003, Tilg 2003, Menin 2004). A larger randomized, controlled clinical trial compared the effects of infliximab plus prednisolone vs placebo plus prednisolone in patients with severe alcoholic hepatitis (Maddrey's discriminant function >32) (Naveau 2004). The trial was stopped early by the safety monitoring board because of a significant increase in severe infections and a (nonsignificant) increase in deaths in the infliximab group. Similarly, etanercept reduced 6-month survival when compared with placebo in a randomized, placebo-controlled trial (Boetticher 2008). Thus, TNF-α receptor antagonists should not be used for clinical therapy of alcoholic hepatitis (Lucey 2009).

Nutritional support

Many patients with alcoholic hepatitis have signs of malnutrition associated with high mortality (Mendenhall 1984, Mendenhall 1986, Stickel 2003). Parenteral and

enteral nutrition have been shown to improve malnutrition in alcoholic hepatitis but has not improved survival (Mendenhall 1984). A randomised, controlled clinical trial looked at the effects of enteral nutrition of 2000 kcal/day via tube feeding versus treatment with 40 mg/day prednisolone for 28 days in severe alcoholic hepatitis. Survival in both groups was similar after one month and one year. It may be concluded that nutritional support is as effective as corticosteroids in some patients (Cabre 2000). However, corticoids in many studies failed to improve long-term survival.

Other pharmacologic treatments

The anabolic steroid oxandrolone failed to improve survival in patients with alcoholic hepatitis (Mendenhall 1984). Numerous studies have shown that alcoholic hepatitis is accompanied by oxidative stress. So far, all studies with antioxidants such as vitamin E, silymarin (milk thistle) and others have failed to improve survival in alcoholic hepatitis (Pares 1998, Mezey 2004). Older studies did show that colchicine, propylthiouracil, insulin and glucagon failed to improve survival in alcoholic hepatitis (Lucey 2009).

Liver transplantation

In current guidelines for liver transplantation, the patient needs to have at least a 6-month period of alcohol abstinence before they can be evaluated for transplantation, thus alcoholic hepatitis is usually a contraindication for liver transplantation (Lucey 1997, Everhardt 1997, Lucey 2007).

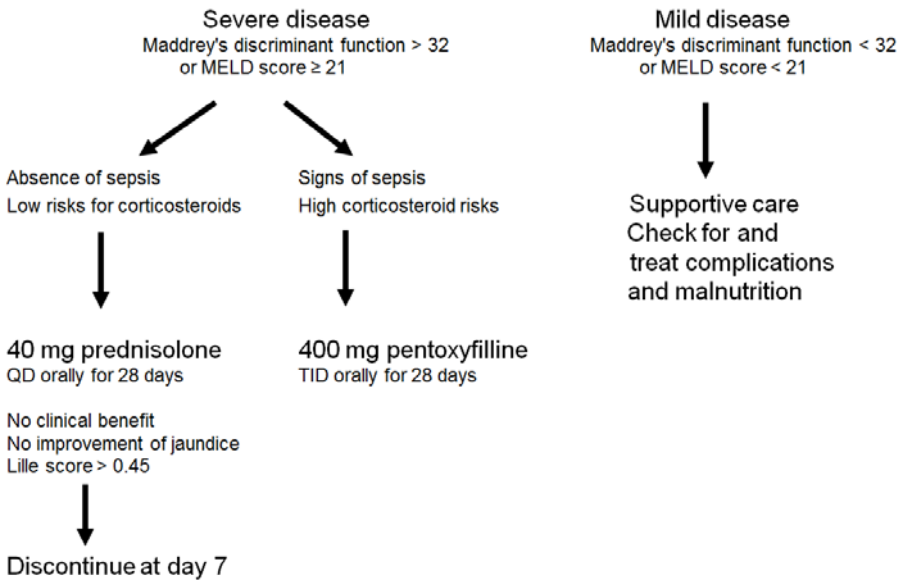


Figure 6. Treatment algorithm in alcoholic hepatitis

Summary

Alcoholic hepatitis is a clinical diagnosis based on a history of heavy alcohol consumption, jaundice, other signs of liver failure, and the absence of other causes of hepatitis. A liver biopsy may be helpful but is not required either to determine the diagnosis or prognosis. Abstinence from alcohol is the prerequisite for recovery. Patients with signs of malnutrition should have adequate nutritional support. Subjects with severe alcoholic hepatitis (Maddrey's discriminant function >32 or MELD score >21) who do not have sepsis or other corticosteroid contraindications may receive 40 mg prednisolone daily for 28 days (McCullough 1998, Lucey 2009). A treatment algorithm is shown in Figure 6. After 7 days of corticosteroid treatment, patients without obvious clinical benefit, without significant improvement of jaundice and with a Lille score >0.45 may have disease that will not respond to continued treatment with corticosteroids or an early switch to pentoxifylline (Louvet 2008). In situations where administration of corticosteroids appears to be risky, pentoxifylline may be tried (Lucey 2009); this drug may decrease the risk of hepatorenal syndrome that is often lethal in alcoholic hepatitis. Patients with less severe alcoholic hepatitis have a good short-term survival of >90% and should not be treated with corticosteroids or pentoxyfilline (Mathurin 2002).

References

Agarwal K, Czaja AJ, Jones De, et al. Cytotoxic T lymphocyteantigen-4 (CTLA-4) gene polymorphisms and susceptibility to type 1 autoimmune hepatitis. Hepatology 2000;31:49-53. (Abstract)

Ahmed M, Mutimer D, Hathaway M, et al. Liver transplantation for autoimmune hepatitis: a 12-year experience. Transplant. Proc. 1997;29:496. (Abstract)

Alvarez F, Berg PA, Bianchi FB, et al. International Autoimmune Hepatitis Group Report: review of criteria for diagnosis of autoimmune hepatitis. J. Hepatology 1999;31:929-38. (Abstract)

Alvarez F, Ciocca M, Canero-Velasco C, et al. Short-term cyclosporine induces a remission of autoimmune hepatitis in children. J. Hepatol. 1999;30:222-7. (Abstract)

Angulo P, Smith C, Jorgensen RA. Budesonide in the treatment of patients with primary biliary cirrhosis with suboptimal response to ursodeoxycholic acid. Hepatology 2000;20:471-90.

Bach N, Bodian C, Bodenheimer H, et al. Methotrexate therapy for primary biliary cirrhosis. Am J Gastroenterol 2003;98:187-93. (Abstract)

Bandin O, Courvalin Jc, Poupon R, et al. Specificity and sensitivity of gp210 autoantibodies detected using an enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay and a synthetic polypeptide in the diagnosis of primary biliary cirrhosis. Hepatology 1996;23:1020-4. (Abstract)

Beaune Ph, Lecoeur S, Bourdi M, et al. Anti-cytochrome P450 autoantibodies in drug-induced disease. Eur J Haematol Suppl 1996;60:89-92. (Abstract)

Berg PA, Doniach D, Roitt IM. Mitochondrial antibodies in primary biliary cirrhosis. I. Localization of the antigen to mitochondrial membranes. J Exp Med 1967;126:277-90. (Abstract)

Berg PA, Klein R. Mitochondrial antigen/antibody systems in primary biliary cirrhosis: revisited. Liver 1995;15:281-92. (Abstract)

Berg PA, Klein R. Mitochondrial antigens and autoantibodies: from anti-M1 to anti-M9. Klin Wochenschr 1986;64:897-909. (Abstract)

Bergquist A, Broome U. Hepatobiliary and extra-hepatic malignancies in primary sclerosing cholangitis. Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol 2001;15:643-56. (Abstract)

Bergquist A, Ekbom A, Olsson R, et al. Hepatic and extrahepatic malignancies in primary sclerosing cholangitis. J Hepatol 2002;36:321-7. (Abstract)

Beuers U, Rust C. Overlap syndromes. Semin Liver Dis 2005;25:311-20. (Abstract)

Bloch DB, Chiche JD, Orth D, et al. Structural and functional heterogeneity of nuclear bodies. Mol Cell Biol 1999;19:4423-30. (Abstract)
Bluthner M, Schafer C, Schneider C, et al. Identification of major linear epitopes on the sp100 nuclear PBC autoantigen by the gene-fragment phage-display technology. Autoimmunity 1999;29:33-42. (Abstract)
Boberg KM, Aadland E, Jahnsen J, et al. Incidence and prevalence of primary biliary cirrhosis, primary sclerosing cholangitis, and autoimmune hepatitis in a Norwegian population. Scand. J. Gastroenterol. 1998;33:99-103. (Abstract)
Boberg KM, Bergquist A, Mitchell S, et al. Cholangiocarcinoma in primary sclerosing cholangitis: risk factors and clinical presentation. Scand J Gastroenterol 2002;37:1205-11. (Abstract)
Boberg KM, Fausa O, Haaland T, et al. Features of autoimmune hepatitis in primary sclerosing cholangitis: an evaluation of 114 primary sclerosing cholangitis patients according to a scoring system for the diagnosis of autoimmune hepatitis. Hepatology 1996;23:1369-76. (Abstract)
Bodenheimer Jr H, Schaffner F, Pezzullo J. Evaluation of colchicine therapy in primary biliary cirrhosis. Gastroenterology 1998;95:124-9. (Abstract)
Bodenheimer Jr HC, Schaffner F, Sternlieb I, et al. A prospective clinical trial of D-penicillamine in the treatment of primary biliary cirrhosis. Hepatology 1985;5:1139-42. (Abstract)
Broome U, Glaumann H, Lindstom E, et al. Natural history and outcome in 32 Swedish patients with small duct primary sclerosing cholangitis (PSC). J Hepatol 2002;36:586-9. (Abstract)
Broome UO, Loof R, Bodemar L, Hultcrantz G, Danielsson R, Prytz A, et al. Natural history and prognostic factors in 305 Swedish patients with primary sclerosing cholangitis. Gut 1996;38:610-5. (Abstract)
Calmus Y, Gane P, Rouger P, et al. Hepatic expression of class I and class II major histocompatibility complex molecules in primary biliary cirrhosis: effect of ursodeoxycholic acid. Hepatology 1990;11:12-5. (Abstract)
Cancado Elr, Porta G. Autoimmune hepatitis in South America. 2000; Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht, Boston, London.
Chen W, Gluud C. Bile acids for primary sclerosing cholangitis. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2003:CD003626. (Abstract)
Christensen E, Neuberger J, Crowe J, et al. Beneficial effect of azathioprine and prediction of prognosis in primary biliary cirrhosis. Final results of an international trial. Gastroenterology 1985;89:1084-91. (Abstract)
Crivelli O, Lavarini C, Chiaberge E, et al. Microsomal autoantibodies in chronic infection with HBsAg associated delta (delta) agent. Clin. Exp. Immunol. 1983;54:232-8. (Abstract)
Czaja AJ. Frequency and nature of the variant syndromes of autoimmune liver disease. Hepatology 1998;28:360-5. (Abstract)
Czaja AJ, Carpenter HA, Santrach PJ, et al. Evidence against hepatitis viruses as important causes of severe autoimmune hepatitis in the United States. J. Hepatol. 1993;18:342-52. (Abstract)
Czaja AJ, Carpenter HA, Lindor KD. Ursodeoxycholic acid as adjunctive therapy for problematic type 1 autoimmune hepatitis: a randomized placebo-controlled treatment trial. Hepatology 1999;30:1381-6. (Abstract)
Czaja AJ, Lindor KD. Failure of budesonide in a pilot study of treatment-dependent autoimmune hepatitis. Gastroenterology 2000;119:1312-6. (Abstract)
Dalekos GN, Wedemeyer H, Obermayer-Straub P, et al. Epitope mapping of cytochrome P4502D6 autoantigen in patients with chronic hepatitis C during alpha-interferon treatment. J Hepatol 1999;30:366-75. (Abstract)
Danielson A, Prytz H. Oral budesonide for treatment of autoimmune chronic hepatitis. Aliment. Pharmacol. Ther. 1994;8:585-90. (Abstract)
Davis Pa, Leung P, Manns M, et al. M4 and M9 antibodies in the overlap syndrome of primary biliary cirrhosis and chronic active hepatitis: epitopes or epiphenomena? Hepatology 1992;16:1128-36. (Abstract)
De BK, Gangopadhyay S, Dutta D, Baksi SD, Pani A, Ghosh P. World J Gastroenterol 2009;15:1613-9. (Abstract)
Debray D, Maggiore G, Giradet JP, et al. Efficacy of cyclosporin A in children with type 2 autoimmune hepatits. J. Pediatr 1999;135:111-4. (Abstract)

Devlin J, Donaldson P, Portman B, et al. Recurrence of autoimmune hepatitis following liver transplantation. Liver Transpl Surg 1995;1:162-5. (Abstract)
Dickson ER, Murtaugh PA, Wiesner RH, et al. Primary sclerosing cholangitis: refinement and validation of survival models. Gastroenterology 1992;103:1893-1901. (Abstract)
Dienes HP, Popper H, Manns M, et al. Histologic features in autoimmune hepatitis. Z Gastroenterol 1989;27:327-30. (Abstract)
Dighiero G, Lymberi P, Monot C, et al. Sera with high levels of anti-smooth muscle and anti-mitochondrial antibodies frequently bind to cytoskeleton proteins. Clin Exp Immunol 1990;82:52-6. (Abstract)
Doherty DG, Donaldson PT, Underhill JA, et al. Allelic sequence variation in the HLA class II genes and proteins on patients with autoimmune hepatitis. Hepatology 1994;19:609-15. (Abstract)
Donaldson PT. Immunogenetics in liver disease. Baillieres Clin Gastroenterol 1996;10:533-49 (Abstract)
Donaldson PT. TNF gene polymorphisms in primary biliary cirrhosis: a critical appraisal [editorial; comment]. J Hepatol 1999;31:366-8. (Abstract)
Donaldson PT, Czaja AJ. Genetic effects on susceptibility, clinical expression, and treatment outcome of type 1 autoimmune hepatitis. Clin Liver Dis 2002;6:419-37. (Abstract)
Donaldson PT, Doherty DG, Hayllar KM, et al. Susceptibility to autoimmune chronic active hepatitis: human leukocyte antigens DR 4 and A1-B8-DR-3 are independent risk factors. Hepatology 1991;13:701-6. (Abstract)
Dubel L, Farges O, Courvalin JC, et al. Persistence of gp210 and multiple nuclear dots antibodies does not correlate with recurrence of primary biliary cirrhosis 6 years after liver transplantation. J Hepatol 1998;28:169-70. (Abstract)
Durazzo M, Philipp T, Van Pelt FN, et al. Heterogeneity of liver-kidney microsomal autoantibodies in chronic hepatitis C and D virus infection. Gastroenterology 1995;108:455-62. (Abstract)
Farrant JM, Hayllar KM, Wilkinson Ml, et al. Natural history and prognostic variables in primary sclerosing cholangitis. Gastroenterology 1991;100:1710-7. (Abstract)
Fernandez NF, Redeker AG, Vierling JM, et al. Cyclosporine therapy in patients with steroid resistant autoimmune hepatitis. Am. J. Gastroenterol. 1999;94:241-8. (Abstract)
Frazer IH, Mackay IR, Jordan TW, et al. Reactivity of anti-mitochondrial autoantibodies in primary biliary cirrhosis: definition of two novel mitochondrial polypeptide autoantigens. J Immunol 1985;135:1739-45. (Abstract)
Fujimoto M, Sato S, Ihn H, et al. Autoantibodies to pyruvate dehydrogenase complex in patients with systemic sclerosis. Possible role of anti-E1 alpha antibody as a serologic indicator for development of primary biliary cirrhosis. Arthritis Rheum 1995;38:985-9. (Abstract)
Geall MG, Schoenfield LJ, Summerskill WHJ. Classification and treatment of chronic active liver disease. Gastroenterology 1968;55:724-9. (Abstract)
Gelpi CSE, Rodriguez-Sanchez Jl. Autoantibodies against a serine tRNA-protein complex implicated in cotranslational selenocysteine insertion. Proc Natl Acad Sci US 1992;89:9739-43. (Abstract)
Gershwin ME, Mackay IR. Primary biliary cirrhosis: paradigm or paradox for autoimmunity. Gastroenterology 1991;100:822-33. (Abstract)
Gershwin ME, Mackay IR, Sturgess A, et al. Identification and specificity of a cDNA encoding the 70 kd mitochondrial antigen recognized in primary biliary cirrhosis. J Immunol 1987;138:3525-31. (Abstract)
Gordon MA, Oppenheim E, Camp NJ, et al. Primary biliary cirrhosis shows association with genetic polymorphism of tumour necrosis factor alpha promoter region [see comments]. J Hepatol 1999;31:242-. (Abstract)
Götz G, Neuhaus R, Bechstein WO, et al. Recurrence of autoimmune hepatitis after liver transplantation. Transplant. Proc. 1999;31:430-1. (Abstract)
Goulis J, Leandro G, Burroughs AK. Randomised controlled trials of ursodeoxycholic acid therapy for primary biliary cirrhosis: a meta analysis. Lancet 1999;354:1053-60. (Abstract)
Gouw AS, Haagsma EB, Manns M, et al. Is there recurrence of primary biliary cirrhosis after liver transplantation? A clinicopathologic study in long-term survivors. J Hepatol 1994;20:500-7. (Abstract)

Graziadei IW, Wiesner RH, Batts KP, et al. Recurrence of primary sclerosing cholangitis following liver transplantation. Hepatology 1999;29:1050-6. (Abstract)
Gregorio Gv, Portman B, Reid F, et al. Autoimmune hepatitis in childhood: a 20-year experience. Hepatology 1997;25:541-7. (Abstract)
Guenguen M, Boniface O, Bernard O, et al. Identification of the main epitope on human cytochrome P450IID6 recognized by anti-liver kidney microsome antibody. J. Autoimmun. 1991;4:607-15. (Abstract)
Guenguen M, Meunier-Rotival M, Bernard O, et al. Anti-liver-kidney microsome antibody recognizes a cytochrome P450 from the IID subfamily. J. Exp. Med. 1988;168:801 (Abstract)
Haagsma EB. Clinical relevance of recurrence of primary biliary cirrhosis after liver transplantation. Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol 1999;11:639-42. (Abstract)
Haagsma EB, Manns M, Klein R, et al. Subtypes of antimitochondrial antibodies in primary biliary cirrhosis before and after orthotopic liver transplantation. Hepatology 1987;7:129-33. (Abstract)
Harnois DM, Angulo P, Jorgensen RA, et al. High-dose ursodeoxycholic acid as a therapy for patients with primary sclerosing cholangitis. Am J Gastroenterol 2001;96:1558-62. (Abstract)
Hendrickse MT, Rigney E, Giaffer MH, et al. Low-dose methotrexate is ineffective in primary biliary cirrhosis: long-term results of a placebo-controlled trial. Gastroenterology 1999;117:400-7. (Abstract)
Heneghan MA, Mcfarlane IG. Current and novel immunosuppressive therapy for autoimmune hepatitis. Hepatology 2002;35:7-13. (Abstract)
Homberg JC, Abuaf N, Bernard O, et al. Chronic active hepatitis associated with anti liver/kidney microsome type 1: a second type of "autoimmune" hepatitis. Hepatology 1987;7:1333-9. (Abstract)
Ikeda T, Tozuka S, Noguchi O. Effects of additional administration of colchicine in ursodeoxycholic acid-treated patients with primary biliary cirrhosis: a prospective randomized study. j Hepatol 1996;24:88-94. (Abstract)
Ishii H, Saifuku K, Namihisa T. Multiplicity of mitochondrial inner membrane antigens from beef heart reacting with antimitochondrial antibodies in sera of patients with primary biliary cirrhosis. Immunol Lett 1985;9:325-30. (Abstract)
Johnson PJ, Mcfarlane IG. Meeting report: International autoimmune hepatitis group. Hepatology 1993;18:998-1005. (Abstract)
Johnson PJ, Mcfarlane IG, Williams R. Azathioprine for long-term maintenance of remission in autoimmune hepatitis. N. Engl.J. Med. 1995;333:958-63. (Abstract)
Jones DE, Watt FE, Metcalf JV, et al. Familial primary biliary cirrhosis reassessed: a geographically-based population study. J Hepatol 1999;30:402-7. (Abstract)
Joplin R, Wallace Ll, Johnson GD, et al. Subcellular localization of pyruvate dehydrogenase dihydrolipoamide acetyltransferase in human intrahepatic biliary epithelial cells. J Pathol 1995;176:381-90. (Abstract)
Joplin RE, Neuberger JM. Immunopathology of primary biliary cirrhosis. Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol 1999;11:587-93. (Abstract)
Kanzler S, Gerken G, Dienes HP, et al. Cyclophosphamide as alternative immunosuppressive therapy for autoimmune hepatitis - report of three cases. Z. Gastroenterol. 1996;35:571-8. (Abstract)
Kaplan MM, Alling DW, Zimmerman HJ, et al. A prospective trial of colchicine for primary biliary cirrhosis. N Engl J Med 1986;315:1448-54. (Abstract)
Kato Y, Suzuki K, Kumagai M, et al. Familial primary biliary cirrhosis. Immunological and genetic study. Am J Gastroenterol 1981;75:188-91. (Abstract)
Kerkar N, Hadzic N, Davies ET, et al. De-novo autoimmune hepatitis after liver transplantation. Lancet 1998;351:409-413. (Abstract)
Kim WR, Therneau TM, Wiesner RH, et al. A revised natural history model for primary sclerosing cholangitis. Mayo Clin Proc 2000;75:688-94. (Abstract)
Kirk AP, Jain S, Pocock S, et al. Late results of the Royal Free Hospital prospective controlled trial of prednisolone therapy in hepatitis B surface antigen negative chronic active hepatitis. Gut 1980;21:7893. (Abstract)

Klein R, Berg, PA. Anti-M4 antibodies in primary biliary cirrhosis react with sulphite oxidase, an enzyme of the mitochondrial inter-membrane space. Clin Exp Immunol 1991;84:445-8. (Abstract)
Klein R, Kloppel G, Garbe W, et al. Antimitochondrial antibody profiles determined at early stages of primary biliary cirrhosis differentiate between a benign and a progressive course of the disease. A retrospective analysis of 76 patients over 6-18 years. J Hepatol 1991;12:21-7.
Klein R, Pointner H, Zilly W, et al. Antimitochondrial antibody profiles in primary biliary cirrhosis distinguish at early stages between a benign and a progressive course: a prospective study on 200 patients followed for 10 years. Liver 1997;17:119-28. (Abstract)
Kurki P, Miettinen A, Linder E, et al. Different types of smooth muscle antibodies in chronic active hepatitis and primary biliary cirrhosis: their diagnostic and prognostic significance. Gut 1980;21:878-84. (Abstract)
Lankisch TO, Strassburg CP, Debray D, et al. Detection of autoimmune regulator gene mutations in children with type 2 autoimmune hepatitis and extrahepatic immune-mediated diseases. J Pediatr 2005;146:839-42. (Abstract)
Larusso NF, Shneider BL, Black D, et al. Primary sclerosing cholangitis: summary of a workshop. Hepatology 2006;44:746-64. (Abstract)
Lassoued K, Brenard R, Degos F, et al. Antinuclear antibodies directed to a 200-kilodalton polypeptide of the nuclear envelope in primary biliary cirrhosis. A clinical and immunological study of a series of 150 patients with primary biliary cirrhosis. Gastroenterology 1990;99:181-6 (Abstract)
Lenzi M, Manotti P, Muratori L, et al. Liver cytosolic 1 antigen-antibody system in type 2 autoimmune hepatitis and hepatitis C virus infection. Gut 1995;36:749-54. (Abstract)
Leung PS, Chuang DT, Wynn RM, et al. Autoantibodies to BCOADC-E2 in patients with primary biliary cirrhosis recognize a conformational epitope. Hepatology 1995;22:505-13. (Abstract)
Leung PS, Van De Water J, Coppel Rl, et al. Molecular aspects and the pathological basis of primary biliary cirrhosis. J Autoimmun 1996;9:119-28. (Abstract)
Leuschner M, Guldutuna S, You T, et al. Ursodeoxycholic acid and prednisolone versus ursodeoxycholic acid and placebo in the treatment of early stages of primary biliary cirrhosis. J Hepatol 1996;25:49-57. (Abstract)
Leuschner M, Holtmeier J, Ackermann H, et al. The influence of sulindac on patients with primary biliary cirrhosis that responds incompletely to ursodeoxycholic acid: a pilot study. Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2002;14:1369-76. (Abstract)
Leuschner M, Maier KP, Schlichting J, et al. Oral budesonide and ursodeoxycholic acid for treatment of primary biliary cirrhosis: results of a prospective double-blind trial. Gastroenterology 1999;117:918-25. (Abstract)
Lidman K, Biberfeld G, Fagraeus A, et al. Anti-actin specificity of human smooth muscle antibodies in chronic active hepatitis. Clin Exp Immunol 1976;24:266-72. (Abstract)
Lin F, Noyer Cm, Ye Q, et al. Autoantibodies from patients with primary biliary cirrhosis recognize a region within the nucleoplasmic domain of inner nuclear membrane protein LBR. Hepatology 1996;23:57-61. (Abstract)
Lindenborn-Fotinos J, Baum H, Berg PA. Mitochondrial antibodies in primary biliary cirrhosis: species and nonspecies specific determinants of M2 antigen. Hepatology 1985;5:763-9. (Abstract)
Lohr H, Fleischer B, Gerken G, et al. Autoreactive liver-infiltrating T cells in primary biliary cirrhosis recognize inner mitochondrial epitopes and the pyruvate dehydrogenase complex. J Hepatol 1993;18:322-7. (Abstract)
Lombard M, Portmann B, Neuberger J, et al. Cyclosporin A treatment in primary biliary cirrhosis: results of a long-term placebo controlled trial. Gastroenterology 1993;104:519-26. (Abstract)
Luettig B, Boeker KH, Schoessler W, et al. The antinuclear autoantibodies Sp100 and gp210 persist after orthotopic liver transplantation in patients with primary biliary cirrhosis. J Hepatol 1998;28:824-8. (Abstract)
Mackay I, R, Taft LI, Cowling DC. Lupoid hepatitis. Lancet 1956;2:1323-6. (Abstract)
Mackay IR. Primary biliary cirrhosis showing a high titer of autoantibody. N. Engl. J. Med. 1958;258:707-13. (Abstract)

Mackay IR, Gershwin ME. The nature of autoimmune disease. Semin Liver Dis 1997;17:3-11. (Abstract)
Mackay IR, Morris PJ. Association of autoimmune chronic hepatitis with HLA-A1-B8. Lancet 1972;2:793-5. (Abstract)
Mackay IR, Tait BD. HLA association with autoimmune type chronic active hepatitis: identification of B8-DRw3 haplotype by family studies. Gastroenterology 1980;79:95-8. (Abstract)
Manns M, Gerken G, Kyriatsoulis A, et al. Characterisation of a new subgroup of autoimmune chronic active hepatitis by autoantibodies against a soluble liver antigen. Lancet 1987;1:292-4. (Abstract)
Manns M, Gerken G, Trautwein C, et al. Characterization of primary biliary cirrhosis (PBC) specific mitochondrial determinants by immunoblotting. Dtsch Z Verdau Stoffwechselkr 1987;47:59-66. (Abstract)
Manns M, Meyer Zum Buschenfelde KH. A mitochondrial antigen-antibody system in cholestatic liver disease detected by radioimmunoassay. Hepatology 1982;2:1-7. (Abstract)
Manns M, Meyer Zum Büschenfelde KH, Slusarczyk J, et al. Detection of liver-kidney microsomal autoantibodies by radioimmunoassay and their relation to antimitochondrial antibodies in inflammatory liver disease. Clin. Exp. Immunol. 1984;54:600-8. (Abstract)
Manns MP, Bahr MJ. Recurrent autoimmune hepatitis after liver transplantation - when non-self becomes self. Hepatology 2000;32:868-70. (Abstract)
Manns MP, Bremm A, Schneider PM, et al. HLA DRw8 and complement C4 deficiency as risk factors in primary biliary cirrhosis. Gastroenterology 1991;101:1367-73. (Abstract)
Manns MP, Griffin KJ, Sullivan KF, et al. LKM-1 autoantibodies recognize a short linear sequence in P450IID6, a cytochrome P-450 monooxygenase. J. Clin. Invest. 1991;88:1370-8. (Abstract)
Manns MP, Jentzsch M, Mergener K, et al. Discordant manifestation of LKM-1 antibody positive autoimmune hepatitis in identical twins. Hepatology 1990;12:840.
Manns MP, Johnson EF, Griffin KJ, et al. Major antigen of liver kidney microsomal antibodies in idiopathic autoimmune hepatitis is cytochrome P450db1. J. Clin. Invest. 1998;83:1066-72. (Abstract)
Manns MP, Kruger M. Immunogenetics of chronic liver diseases. Gastroenterology 1994;106:1676-97. (Abstract)
Manns MP, Strassburg CP. Autoimmune hepatitis: clinical challenges. Gastroenterology 2001;120:1502-17. (Abstract)
Mattalia A, Luttig B, Rosina F, et al. Persistence of autoantibodies against recombinant mitochondrial and nuclear pore proteins after orthotopic liver transplantation for primary biliary cirrhosis. J Autoimmun 1997;10:491-7. (Abstract)
Mehal Wz, Gregory Wl, Lo YM, et al. Defining the immunogenetic susceptibility to primary biliary cirrhosis. Hepatology 1994;20:1213-9. (Abstract)
Milkiewicz P, Hubscher Sg, Skiba G et al. Recurrence of autoimmune hepatitis after liver transplantation. Transplantation 1999;68:253-6. (Abstract)
Mitchell SA, Bansi DS, Hunt N, et al. A preliminary trial of high-dose ursodeoxycholic acid in primary sclerosing cholangitis. Gastroenterology 2001;121:900-7. (Abstract)
Mitchison HC, Palmer JM, Bassendine MF, et al. A controlled trial of prednisolone treatment in primary biliary cirrhosis. Three-year results. J Hepatol 1992;15:336-44. (Abstract)
Moteki S, Leung PS, Dickson ER, et al. Epitope mapping and reactivity of autoantibodies to the E2 component of 2-oxoglutarate dehydrogenase complex in primary biliary cirrhosis using recombinant 2-oxoglutarate dehydrogenase complex. Hepatology 1996;23:436-44. (Abstract)
Muratori L, Cataleta M, Muratori P, et al. Detection of anti-liver cytosol antibody type 1 (anti-LC1) by immunodiffusion, counterimmunoelectrophoresis and immunoblotting: comparison of different techniques. J. Immunol. Meth. 1995;187:259-64. (Abstract)
Muratori L, Sztul E, Muratori P, et al. Distinct epitopes on formiminotransferase cyclodeaminase induce autoimmune liver cytosol antibody type 1. Hepatology 2001;34:494-501. (Abstract)

Nakamura K, Yoneda M, Yokohama S, et al. Efficacy of ursodeoxycholic acid in Japanese patients with type 1 autoimmune hepatitis [see comments]. J Gastroenterol Hepatol 1998;13:490-5. (Abstract)
Neuberger J, Portmann B, Calne R, et al. Recurrence of autoimmune chronic active hepatitis following orthotopic liver grafting. Transplantation 1984;37:363-365. (Abstract)
Newton Jl, Burt AD, Park JB, et al. Autoimmune hepatitis in older patients. Age Ageing 1997;26:441-4. (Abstract)
Nickowitz RE, Worman HJ. Autoantibodies from patients with primary biliary cirrhosis recognize a restricted region within the cytoplasmic tail of nuclear pore membrane glycoprotein Gp210. J Exp Med 1993;178:2237-42. (Abstract)
Nickowitz RE, Wozniak RW, Schaffner F, et al. Autoantibodies against integral membrane proteins of the nuclear envelope in patients with primary biliary cirrhosis. Gastroenterology 1994;106:193-9. (Abstract)
Nishio A, Van De Water J, Leung PS, et al. Comparative studies of antimitochondrial autoantibodies in sera and bile in primary biliary cirrhosis. Hepatology 1997;25:1085-9. (Abstract)
Nishioka M, Morshed SA, Kono K, et al. Frequency and significance of antibodies to P450IID6 protein in Japanese patients with chronic hepatiis C. J. Hepatol. 1997;26:992-1000. (Abstract)
Nishioka M, Morshed SA, Mcfarlane IG. Geographical variation in the frequency and characteristics of autoimmune liver diseases. Elsevier, Amsterdam. 1998.
Notghi A, Nestle U, Rittner G, et al. Chromosomal aberrations in patients with primary biliary cirrhosis. Hum Genet 1990;85:546-50. (Abstract)
Obermayer-Straub P, Perheentupa J, Braun S, et al. Hepatic autoantigens in patients with autoimmune polyendocrinopathy-candidiasis-ectodermal dystrophy. Gastroenterology 2001;121:668-77. (Abstract)
Okolicsanyi L, Fabris L, Viaggi S, et al. Primary sclerosing cholangitis: clinical presentation, natural history and prognostic variables: an Italian multicentre study. The Italian PSC Study Group. Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol 1996;8:685-91. (Abstract)
Olsson R, Boberg KM, De Muckadell OS, et al. High-dose ursodeoxycholic acid in primary sclerosing cholangitis: a 5-year multicenter, randomized, controlled study. Gastroenterology 2005;129:1464-72. (Abstract)
Onishi S, Sakamaki T, Maeda T, et al. DNA typing of HLA class II genes; DRB1*0803 increases the susceptibility of Japanese to primary biliary cirrhosis. J Hepatol 1994;21:1053-60. (Abstract)
Ota M, Seki T, Kiyoshawa K, et al. A possible association between basic amino acids of position 13 of DRB1 chains and autoimmune hepatitis. Immunogenetics 1992;36:40-55. (Abstract)
Palmer JM, Jones DE, Quinn J, et al. Characterization of the autoantibody responses to recombinant E3 binding protein (protein X) of pyruvate dehydrogenase in primary biliary cirrhosis. Hepatology 1999;30:21-6. (Abstract)
Palmer JM, Yeaman SJ, Bassendine MF, et al. M4 and M9 autoantigens in primary biliary cirrhosis--a negative study. J Hepatol 1993;18:251-4. (Abstract)
Pando M, Larriba J, Fernandez GC, et al. Pediatric and adult forms of type I autoimmune hepatitis in Argentina: evidence for differential genetic predisposition. Hepatology 1999;30:1374-80. (Abstract)
Pardi DS, Loftus Jr EV, Kremers WK, et al. Ursodeoxycholic acid as a chemopreventive agent in patients with ulcerative colitis and primary sclerosing cholangitis. Gastroenterology 2003;124:889-93. (Abstract)
Paumgartner G, Beuers U. Ursodeoxycholic acid in cholestatic liver disease: mechanisms of action and therapeutic use revisited. Hepatology 2002;36:525-31. (Abstract)
Philipp T, Durazzo M, Trautwein C, et al. Recognition of uridine diphosphate glucuronosyl transferases by LKM-3 antibodies in chronic hepatitis D. Lancet 1994;344:578-81. (Abstract)
Pitkanen J, Vahamurto P, Krohn K, et al. Subcellular localization of the autoimmune regulator protein. characterization of nuclear targeting and transcriptional activation domain. J Biol Chem 2001;276:19597-602. (Abstract)

Ponsioen CY, Vrouenraets SM, Prawirodirdjo W, et al. Natural history of primary sclerosing cholangitis and prognostic value of cholangiography in a Dutch population. Gut 2002;51:562-6. (Abstract)
Poupon RE, Huet PM, Poupon R, et al. A randomized trial comparing colchicine and ursodeoxycholic acid combination to ursodeoxycholic acid in primary biliary cirrhosis. UDCA-PBC Study Group. Hepatology 1996;24:1098-1103. (Abstract)
Poupon RE, Lindor KD, Cauch-Dudek K. Combined analysis of randomized controlled trials of ursodeoxycholic acid in primary biliary cirrhosis. Gastroenterology 1997;113:884-90 (Abstract)
Poupon RE, Lindor KD, Pares A, et al. Combined analysis of the effect of treatment with ursodeoxycholic acid on histologic progression in primary biliary cirrhosis. J Hepatol 2003;39:12-6. (Abstract)
Prados E, Cuervas-Mons V, De La Mata M, et al. Outcome of autoimmune hepatitis after liver transplantation. Transplantation 1998;66:1645-50. (Abstract)
Raedsch R, Stiehl A, Walker S, et al. Combined ursodeoxycholic acid plus colchicine--treatment of primary biliary cirrhosis: results of a placebo-controlled double-blind study. Z Gastroenterol 1992;30 Suppl 1:55-7. (Abstract)
Ramsey C, Winqvist O, Puhakka L, et al. Aire deficient mice develop multiple features of APECED phenotype and show altered immune response. Hum Mol Genet 2002;11:397-409. (Abstract)
Ratziu V, Samuel D, Sebagh M, et al. Long-term follow-up after liver transplantation for autoimmune hepatitis: evidence of recurrence of primary disease. J Hepatol 1999;30:131-41. (Abstract)
Rea DJ, Heimbach JK, Rosen CB, et al. Liver transplantation with neoadjuvant chemoradiation is more effective than resection for hilar cholangiocarcinoma. Ann Surg 2005;242:451-458; discussion 458-61. (Abstract)
Rebollo Bernardez J, Cifuentes Mimoso C, Pinar Moreno A, et al. Deflazacort for long-term maintenance of remission in type I autoimmune hepatitis. Rev Esp Enferm Dig 1999;91:630-8. (Abstract)
Reynoso-Paz S, Leung PS, Van De Water J, et al. Evidence for a locally driven mucosal response and the presence of mitochondrial antigens in saliva in primary biliary cirrhosis. Hepatology 2000;31:24-9. (Abstract)
Richardson PD, James PD, Ryder SD. Mycophenolate mofetil for maintenance of remission in autoimmune hepatitis in patients resistant to or intolerant of azathioprine. J Hepatol 2000;33:371-5. (Abstract)
Rizzetto M, Swana G, Doniach D. Microsomal antibodies in active chronic hepatitis and other disorders. Clin. Exp. Immunol. 1973;15:331-44. (Abstract)
Rost D, Rudolph G, Kloeters-Plachky P, et al. Effect of high-dose ursodeoxycholic acid on its biliary enrichment in primary sclerosing cholangitis. Hepatology 2004;40:693-8. (Abstract)
Sanchez-Urdazpal L, Czaja AJ, Van Holk B. Prognostic features and role of liver transplantation in severe corticoid-treated autoimmune chronic active hepatitis. Hepatology 1991;15:215-21. (Abstract)
Schüler A, Manns MP. Treatment of autoimmune hepatitis. In: Arroyo V, Bosch J, Rodés J (eds) Treatment in Hepatology. Masson, S.A., Paris, p 375-83. 1995.
Serfaty L, De Leusse A, Rosmorduc O, et al. Ursodeoxycholic acid therapy and the risk of colorectal adenoma in patients with primary biliary cirrhosis: an observational study. Hepatology 2003;38:203-9. (Abstract)
Soloway RD, Summerskill WH, Baggenstoss AH, et al. Clinical, biochemical, and histological remission of severe chronic active liver disease: a controlled study of treatments and early prognosis. Gastroenterology 1972;63:820-33. (Abstract)
Stechemesser E, Klein R, Berg PA. Characterization and clinical relevance of liver-pancreas antibodies in autoimmune hepatitis. Hepatology 1993;18:1-9. (Abstract)
Sternsdorf T, Guldner HH, Szostecki C, et al. Two nuclear dot-associated proteins, PML and Sp100, are often coautoimmunogenic in patients with primary biliary cirrhosis. Scand J Immunol 1995;42:257-68. (Abstract)
Strassburg CP, Alex B, Zindy F, et al. Identification of cyclin A as a molecular target of antinuclear antibodies (ANA) in hepatic and non-hepatic autoimmune diseases. J Hepatol 1996;25:859-66. (Abstract)

Strassburg CP, Jaeckel E, Manns MP. Anti-mitochondrial antibodies and other immunological tests in primary biliary cirrhosis. Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol 1999;11:595-601. (Abstract)
Strassburg CP, Manns MP. Autoantibodies and autoantigens in autoimmune hepatitis. Semin Liver Dis 2002;22:339-352. (Abstract)
Strassburg CP, Manns MP. Autoimmune hepatitis versus viral hepatitis C. Liver 1995;15:225-32. (Abstract)
Strassburg CP, Manns MP. Autoimmune tests in primary biliary cirrhosis. Baillieres Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol 2000;14:585-99. (Abstract)
Strassburg CP, Manns MP. Primär biliäre Zirrhose und primär sklerosierende Cholangitis. Internistische Praxis 1996;36:57-74.
Strassburg CP, Manns MP. Primary biliary liver cirrhosis and overlap syndrome. Diagnosis and therapy. Internist (Berl) 2004;45:16-26. (Abstract)
Strassburg CP, Obermayer-Straub P, Alex B, et al. Autoantibodies against glucuronosyltransferases differ between viral hepatitis and autoimmune hepatitis. Gastroenterology 1996;111:1576-86. (Abstract)
Strassburg CP, Obermayer-Straub P, Manns MP. Autoimmunity in hepatitis C and D virus infection. J. Viral. Hepat. 1996;3:49-59. (Abstract)
Strassburg CP, Obermayer-Straub P, Manns MP. Autoimmunity in liver diseases. Clin Rev Allergy Immunol 2000;18:127-39. (Abstract)
Strettell MD, Thomson LJ, Donaldson PT, et al. HLA-C genes and susceptibility to type 1 autoimmune hepatitis. Hepatology 1997;26:1023-6. (Abstract)
Sudan D, Deroover A, Chinnakotla S, et al. Radiochemotherapy and transplantation allow long-term survival for nonresectable hilar cholangiocarcinoma. Am J Transplant 2002;2:774-9. (Abstract)
Sugimura T, Obermayer-Straub P, Kayser A, et al. A major CYP2D6 autoepitope in autoimmune hepatitis type 2 and chronic hepatitis C is a three-dimensional structure homologous to other cytochrome P450 autoantigens. Autoimmunity 2002;35:501-13. (Abstract)
Szostecki C, Krippner H, Penner E, et al. Autoimmune sera recognize a 100 kD nuclear protein antigen (sp-100). Clin Exp Immunol 1987;68:108-16. (Abstract)
Szostecki C, Will H, Netter HJ, et al. Autoantibodies to the nuclear Sp100 protein in primary biliary cirrhosis and associated diseases: epitope specificity and immunoglobulin class distribution. Scand J Immunol 1992;36:555-64. (Abstract)
Tan EM, Chan EKL, Sullivan KF, et al. Antinuclear antibodies (ANAs): diagnostically specific immune markers and clues toward the understanding of systemic autoimmunity. Clin. Immunol. Immunopathol. 1998;47:121-41. (Abstract)
Terjung B, Spengler U, Sauerbruch T, et al. "Atypical p-ANCA" in IBD and hepatobiliary disorders react with a 50-kilodalton nuclear envelope protein of neutrophils and myeloid cell lines. Gastroenterology 2000;119:310-22. (Abstract)
Tillmann Hl, Jackel E, Manns MP. Liver transplantation in autoimmune liver disease--selection of patients. Hepatogastroenterology 1999;46:3053-9. (Abstract)
Tischendorf JJ, Hecker H, Kruger M, et al. Characterization, outcome, and prognosis in 273 patients with primary sclerosing cholangitis: A single center study. Am J Gastroenterol 2007;102:107-14. (Abstract)
Tischendorf JJ, Meier PN, Strassburg CP, et al. Characterization and clinical course of hepatobiliary carcinoma in patients with primary sclerosing cholangitis. Scand J Gastroenterol 2006;41:1227-34. (Abstract)
Treichel U, Poralla T, Hess G, et al. Autoantibodies to human asialoglycoprotein receptor in autoimmune-type chronic hepatitis. Hepatology 1990;11:606-12. (Abstract)
Tsuji K, Watanabe Y, Van De Water J, et al. Familial primary biliary cirrhosis in Hiroshima. J Autoimmun 1999;13:171-8. (Abstract)
Tukey RH, Strassburg CP. Genetic multiplicity of the human UDP-glucuronosyltransferases and regulation in the gastrointestinal tract. Mol Pharmacol 2001;59:405-14. (Abstract)
Tung BY, Emond MJ, Haggitt RC, et al. Ursodiol use is associated with lower prevalence of colonic neoplasia in patients with ulcerative colitis and primary sclerosing cholangitis. Ann Intern Med 2001;134:89-95. (Abstract)
Uibo R, Salupere V. The epidemiology of primary biliary cirrhosis: immunological problems. Hepatogastroenterology 1999;46:3048-52. (Abstract)

Van De Water J, Gershwin Me, Leung P, et al. The autoepitope of the 74-kD mitochondrial autoantigen of primary biliary cirrhosis corresponds to the functional site of dihydrolipoamide acetyltransferase. J Exp Med 1988;167:1791-9. (Abstract)
Van De Water J, Shimoda S, Niho Y, et al. The role of T cells in primary biliary cirrhosis. Semin Liver Dis 1997;17:105-13. (Abstract)
Van Hoogstraten HJ, Vleggaar FP, Boland GJ, et al. Budesonide or prednisone in combination with ursodeoxycholic acid in primary sclerosing cholangitis: a randomized double-blind pilot study. Belgian-Dutch PSC Study Group [see comments]. Am J Gastroenterol 2000;95:2015-22. (Abstract)
Van Norstrand MD, Malinchoc M, Lindor KD, et al. Quantitative measurement of autoantibodies to recombinant mitochondrial antigens in patients with primary biliary cirrhosis: relationship of levels of autoantibodies to disease progression. Hepatology 1997;25:6-11. (Abstract)
Van Steenbergen W, Sciot R, Van Eyken P, et al. Combined treatment with methotrexate and ursodeoxycholic acid in non-cirrhotic primary biliary cirrhosis. Acta Clin Belg 1996;51:8-18. (Abstract)
Van Thiel DH, Wright H, Carroll P, et al. Tacrolimus: A potential new treatment for autoimmune chronic active hepatitis: results of an open-label preliminary trial. Am. J. Gastroenterol. 1995;90:771-6. (Abstract)
Vento S, Cainelli F, Ferraro T, et al. Autoimmune hepatitis type 1 after measles. Am. J. Gastroenterol. 1996;91:2618-20. (Abstract)
Vento S, Cainelli F, Renzini C, et al. Autoimmune hepatitis type 2 induced by HCV and persisting after viral clearance. Lancet 1997;350:1298-9. (Abstract)
Vento S, Garofano T, Di Perri G, et al. Identification of hepatitis A virus as a trigger for autoimmune chronic hepatitis type 1 in susceptible individuals. Lancet 1991;337:1183-7. (Abstract)
Vento S, Guella L, Mirandola F, et al. Epstein-Barr virus as a trigger for autoimmune hepatitis in susceptible individuals. Lancet 1995;346:608-9. (Abstract)
Vogel A, Heinrich E, Bahr MJ, et al. Long-term outcome of liver transplantation for autoimmune hepatitis. Clin Transplant 2004;18:62-69. (Abstract)
Vogel A, Liermann H, Harms A, et al. Autoimmune regulator AIRE: Evidence for genetic differences between autoimmune hepatitis and hepatitis as part of the autoimmune polyglandular syndrome type 1. Hepatology 2001;33:1047-52. (Abstract)
Vogel A, Manns MP, Strassburg CP. Autoimmunity and viruses. Clin Liver Dis 2002;6:451-5 (Abstract)
Vogel A, Strassburg CP, Manns MP. 77 C/G Mutation in the Tyrosine Phosphatase CD45 and Autoimmune Hepatitis: Evidence for a Genetic Link. Genes and Immunity 2003;4:79-81. (Abstract)
Vogel A, Strassburg CP, Manns MP. Genetic association of vitamin D receptor polymorphisms with primary biliary cirrhosis and autoimmune hepatitis. Hepatology 2002;35:126-31. (Abstract)
Volkmann M, Martin L, Baurle A, et al. Soluble liver antigen: isolation of a 35-kd recombinant protein (SLA-p35) specifically recognizing sera from patients with autoimmune hepatitis. Hepatology 2001;33:591-6. (Abstract)
Waldenström J. Leber, Blutproteine und Nahrungseiweisse. Dtsch Gesellsch Verd Stoffw 1950; 15:113-9. (Abstract)
Warnes TW, Smith A, Lee FI, et al. A controlled trial of colchicine in primary biliary cirrhosis. Trial design and preliminary report. J Hepatol 1987;5:1-7. (Abstract)
Weismüller TJ, Wedemeyer J, Kubicka S, et al. The challenges in primary sclerosing cholangitis - Aetiopathogenesis, autoimmunity, management and malignancy. J Hepatol 2008;48:S38-S57. (Abstract)
Wesierska-Gadek J, Hohenuer H, Hitchman E, et al. Autoantibodies against nucleoporin p62 constitute a novel marker of primary biliary cirrhosis. Gastroenterology 1996;110:840-7. (Abstract)
Wies I, Brunner S, Henninger J, et al. Identification of target antigen for SLA/LP autoantibodies in autoimmune hepatitis [see comments]. Lancet 2000;355:1510-5. (Abstract)
Wiesner RH, Grambsch PM, Dickson ER, et al. Primary sclerosing cholangitis: natural history, prognostic factors and survival analysis. Hepatology 1989;10:430-6. (Abstract)

Wiesner RH, Ludwig J, Lindor KD, et al. A controlled trial of cyclosporine in the treatment of primary biliary cirrhosis. N Engl J Med 1990;322:1419-24. (Abstract)
Wiesner RH, Porayko MK, Dickson ER, et al. Selection and timing of liver transplantation in primary biliary cirrhosis and primary sclerosing cholangitis. Hepatology 1992;16:1290-9. (Abstract)
Wolfhagen FHJ, Van Hoogstraaten HJF, Van Buuren HR. Triple therapy with ursodeoxycholic acid, prednisone, and azathioprine in primary biliary cirrhosis: a 1 year randomized, placebo controlled study. J Hepatol 1998;29:736-42. (Abstract)
Worman HJ. Primary biliary cirrhosis and the molecular cell biology of the nuclear envelope. Mt Sinai J Med 1994;61:461-75. (Abstract)
Wright Hl, Bou-Abboud CF, Hassanenstein T, et al. Disease recurrence and rejection following liver transplantation for autoimmune chronic active liver disease. Transplantation 1992;53:136-9. (Abstract)
Zanger UM, Hauri HP, Loeper J, et al. Antibodies against human cytochrome P-450db1 in autoimmune hepatitis type 2. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 1988;85:8256-60. (Abstract)
Zuchner D, Sternsdorf T, Szostecki C, et al. Prevalence, kinetics, and therapeutic modulation of autoantibodies against Sp100 and promyelocytic leukemia protein in a large cohort of patients with primary biliary cirrhosis. Hepatology 1997;26:1123-30. (Abstract)

28. Vascular Liver Disease

Matthias J. Bahr

"It is impossible to explain or to understand the morbid appearances of the liver, without referring to its intimate structure, and as some points relating to this have been only lately made out, I shall commence with a short account of it."

Georg Budd, Diseases of the Liver, 1853

Vascular liver diseases comprise a heterogeneous group of mostly rare hepatic disorders – some of them exceedingly rare. This is why most of the evidence regarding diagnosis and management results from retrospective and prospective cohort studies rather than from randomized controlled trials.

Every single part of the hepatic vasculature may be affected, ie, hepatic sinusoids, portal vein, hepatic artery and liver veins. The clinical presentation varies widely depending on the type of disease but also within the individual disease entities. Vascular liver diseases may present as acute disorders or chronic liver disease, as hepatocellular necrosis or cholestasis, as tumour-like lesions or portal hypertension.

The spectrum of underlying causes is wide, and in many cases multiple risk factors will result in the development of clinically significant disease (Table 1).

Disorders of the hepatic sinusoid

Hepatic sinusoidal disease may present as luminal obstruction (ie, sinusoidal obstruction syndrome), as luminal enlargement (ie, peliosis hepatis) or as perisinusoidal fibrosis. Whether the latter should be regarded as a separate disease entity is debatable, as perisinusoidal fibrosis may also be observed as a histological feature of common diseases such as steatohepatitis. Both sinusoidal obstruction syndrome as well as peliosis hepatis are not strictly confined to the hepatic sinusoids but may extend to the hepatic venous system.

Sinusoidal obstruction syndrome

Sinusoidal obstruction syndrome (SOS), also referred to as hepatic venooclusive disease (VOD), is a circulatory disorder primarily affecting the hepatic sinusoids. Involvement of the hepatic central veins may occur, but studies after conditioning for hematopoietic cell transplantation have demonstrated that in more than 40% of

patients with SOS the hepatic venous system is not involved. The proportion of sole sinusoidal affection falls to 25% in patients with severe SOS (DeLeve 2009).

Table 1. Classification of predisposing factors for vascular liver disease

Hereditary disorders	• Inherited thrombophilia, eg, factor V Leiden mutation, mutations of prothrombin, protein C, protein S, antithrombin III • Hereditary hemorrhagic teleangiectasia
Congenital malformations	• Webs, shunts, aneurysms
Acquired cellular defects	• Myeloproliferative neoplasms • Paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria • Malignancy
Inflammatory disease & immune-mediated disorders	• Focal inflammatory lesions, eg, pancreatitis, diverticulitis, appendicitis, cholecystitis, abscesses, inflammatory bowel disease • Vasculitis, eg, polyarteritis nodosa, Behçet's disease • Rheumatic disease
Infectious diseases	• Schistosomiasis • Bacillary angiomatosis (*Bartonella h.*)
Hormones	• Pregnancy • Oral contraceptives
Miscellaneous	• Drugs, eg, azathioprine, chemotherapy • Cirrhosis • Radiation, trauma

Pathophysiology

Although sinusoidal obstruction syndrome may be triggered by many risk factors, by far the most common cause in the Western world are myeloablative regimens in preparation for hematopoietic stem cell transplantation (HSCTx), particularly when the transplant is for a malignancy. Historically, the proportion of patients with SOS after HSCTx varies from the single-digit percentage range up to 50% if highly toxic regimens are chosen. Currently, rates between 8% and 14% are reported (Coppell 2010, Richardson 2013). Apart from conditioning regimens for HSCTx (high-dose chemotherapy plus total body irradiation), other drugs have been implicated in the development of SOS (Table 2). Originally, the syndrome was described in conjunction with the ingestion of herbal teas or foods containing pyrrolizidine alkaloids. Rarely, SOS is caused by hereditary SP110 defects also leading to immunodeficiency syndrome, VODI (Cliffe 2012)

Both the histopathological changes and the clinical picture of SOS were experimentally studied in a rat model using monocrotaline, a pyrrolizidine alkaloid that is directly toxic to sinusoidal endothelial cells. These experiments have confirmed the primary sinusoidal damage infrequently followed by central venous involvement (DeLeeve 1996).

Clinical presentation and diagnosis

The characteristic clinical presentation of patients with SOS is weight gain-associated or not with ascites, hepatomegaly with right upper quadrant pain, and jaundice. The onset of symptoms usually occurs between day 10 and day 20 after cyclophosphamide-containing regimens but can be delayed up to 1 month after conditioning therapy if other therapies are used.

Severity of SOS varies from mild forms to rapidly progressing and eventually life-threatening disease (McDonald 1993). In patients without need for treatment of fluid excess or hepatic pain, SOS is considered mild and is associated with a self-limited course. Treatment associated with a complete remission within 100 days is considered moderate disease. If SOS does not resolve by day 100, it is categorized as severe. This classification, however, is retrospective and does not support clinical decision-making.

Table 2. Drugs associated with sinusoidal obstruction syndrome

- 6-mercaptopurine
- 6-thioguanine
- Actinomycin D (Dactinomycin)
- Azathioprine
- Busulfan*
- Cytosine arabinoside
- Cyclophosphamide*
- Dacarbazine
- Doxorubicin (Adriamycin)
- Gemtuzumab-ozogamicin
- Irinotecan
- Melphalan*
- Mitomycin
- Oxaliplatin, Carboplatin
- Urethane
- Vinblastine

*Exclusively reported with conditioning regimens for HSCTx (modified according to DeLeve 2009, Thatishetty 2013)

Table 3. Clinical diagnosis of sinusoidal obstruction syndrome after HSCTx

Seattle criteria (McDonald 1993)	**Baltimore criteria** (Jones 1987)
At least two of the following findings within 20 days of transplantation:*	Hyperbilirubinemia >34.2 µmol/L (2 mg/dL) plus ≥2 additional criteria
● Bilirubin >34.2 µmol/L (2 mg/dL)	● Usually painful hepatomegaly
● Hepatomegaly or right upper quadrant pain of liver origin	● ≥5% weight gain
● ≥2% weight gain due to fluid accumulation	● Ascites

*The 20-day rule applies to cyclophosphamide-containing regimens and should be adjusted according to the regimen actually used

Primarily, SOS is a clinical diagnosis with the following characteristics: (1) hepatotoxic conditioning regimen for HSCTx with an appropriate temporal relation to the development of clinical signs and symptoms, (2) weight gain & hepatic pain & jaundice and, (3) negative work-up for other causes (Dignan 2013). In patients meeting these criteria, diagnosis can be made with reasonable certainty and solely based on clinical judgement. Differential diagnoses comprise cholestatic jaundice due to sepsis, drug-induced cholestasis, fluid overload due to renal failure or congestive heart failure, liver involvement by viral or fungal infections, and acute

graft-versus-host disease. However, in up to 20% of patients the diagnosis of SOS cannot reliably be made on clinical grounds (McDonald 1993 & 2004). This has promoted the development of scoring systems such as the Seattle or the Baltimore Criteria (Jones 1987; McDonald 1993) (Table 3). However, up to 50% of patients not meeting the Baltimore criteria may exhibit histological features of SOS (Shulman 1994). Measurement of circulating plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 (PAI-1) levels was suggested as indicator and follow-up marker of SOS. Its use, however, is still regarded as experimental (Dignan 2013).

The gold standard to confirm SOS is based on the combination of hepatic histology plus measurement of the wedged hepatic venous pressure gradient (HVPG >10 mmHg, specificity >90%, PPV >85%). Both can be achieved during a single procedure via the transvenous route, especially as increased bleeding risk often precludes percutaneous liver biopsy. However, histology may be negative due to the sometimes patchy character of the disease. Imaging techniques are used to confirm hepatomegaly or ascites and will help to rule out differential diagnoses such as biliary obstruction. A more specific sign is the finding of hepatic inflow blockage with reduced or reversed portal flow in color Doppler ultrasound (Figure 1). In addition, attenuation of hepatic venous flow or gallbladder wall edema may be detected. Some authors suggest the use of composite imaging scores (Lassau 2002).

Management and prognosis

Taking into account that SOS is probably under-diagnosed by solely employing clinical criteria, case fatality rates of detected SOS vary between 15 and 20% (DeLeve 2009). Apart from deep jaundice, additional signs of liver failure such as coagulopathy or hepatic encephalopathy may be missing. In contrast, systemic complications leading to multiple organ failure (renal, pulmonary) are the main reasons for death in these patients (Coppell 2010). This underlines the necessity of a closely supervised management concept. Highly toxic conditioning regimens should possibly be avoided. In recent guidelines, SOS prophylaxis using ursodeoxycholic acid was recommended. In high-risk patients, defibrotide may be used (Dignan 2013).

Several treatments have been suggested for established SOS, eg, thrombolysis using tPA, defibrotide or methylprednisolone. In addition, invasive strategies such as TIPS or liver transplantation have been evaluated. However, current knowledge is mainly based on case reports or cohorts. Neverthless, some recommendations can be made (DeLeve 2009, Dignan 2013, Richardson 2013). First of all, fluid management should aim to control fluid overload (using diuretics, paracentesis, hemofiltration/hemodialysis) and adequate oxygenation should be provided. Thrombolysis has not proved successful and was associated with severe complications. Several non-controlled cohort studies suggested positive effects using defibrotide, a mixture of single-stranded oligodeoxyribonucleotides derived from porcine intestinal mucosa (Richardson 2013). Phase II studies have been completed (Richardson 2010) and Phase III data are available for pediatric settings (Corbacioglu 2012). This compound can also be used in multiple organ failure without substantially increasing the bleeding risk. Methylprednisolone may be considered as additional therapy (Dignan 2013).

Unlike Budd-Chiari syndrome, decompression of portal hypertension using TIPS does not improve SOS. For patients with favourable prognosis of the underlying hematopoietic disorder after HSCTx, liver transplant might possibly be considered.

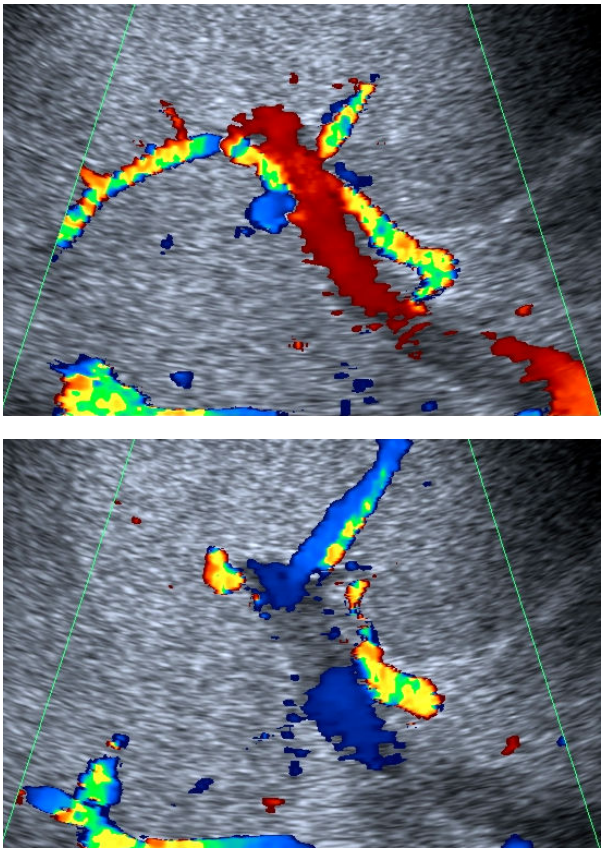


Figure 1. Doppler ultrasound in sinusoidal obstruction syndrome. Exemplary case showing undulating portal venous flow in a jaundiced patient after HSCTx

Peliosis hepatis

Peliosis hepatis is a rare disorder characterized by single or multiple blood-filled cystic cavities within the hepatic tissue. Prevalence may vary between 0.03% in HIV infection, 0.2% in pulmonary tuberculosis and up to 20% after renal transplantation. There is no favored localisation of the peliotic lesions. It may occur at all ages, including a fetal form. The size ranges from submillimeters to centimeters but rarely exceeds 3 cm. The histopathological appearance may show a missing endothelial cell lining with hepatocytes directly serving as boundary (parenchymal type). Alternatively, the endothelium may be preserved but the

hepatic sinusoids appear dilated. The aneurysmal dilation may extend to the central vein (phlebectatic type) (Yanoff 1964, Tsokos 2005).

Pathophysiology

Several risk factors have been suggested as promoters of peliosis hepatis, eg, infections, drugs or malignant disorders (Table 4). However, the exact pathogenesis of peliosis is still unclear. Histology suggests endothelial damage leading to destruction of the endothelial lining. Other hypotheses favour an increased sinusoidal pressure resulting in the widening of the sinusoidal lumen with consecutive destruction of the sinusoidal endothelium or primary hepatocellular necrosis replaced by blood-filled cystic lesions. Fibrotic changes and even liver cirrhosis as well as regenerative nodules may be found, but it is unclear whether these features are directly linked to peliosis hepatis or whether they are just coincidental.

Table 4. Risk factors reported with peliosis hepatis

Infections	• Human immunodeficiency virus
	• *Bartonella* spp. (bacillary angiomatosis)
	• Tuberculosis
Drugs, toxins	• Azathioprine, cyclosporine
	• Anabolic steroids, glucocorticoids, oral contraceptives, tamoxifen
	• Vinyl chloride, arsenic, thorium oxide
Malignant and benign tumours	• Multiple myeloma, Waldenström disease
	• Hodgkin disease
	• Hepatocellular adenoma
Miscellaneous	• Renal transplantation
	• Celiac disease, diabetes mellitus
	• No underlying disorder in up to 50%

Clinical presentation and diagnosis

In the majority of cases, peliosis hepatis is asymptomatic and incidentally detected by hepatic imaging. On rare occasions, the peliotic cysts may rupture leading to intrahepatic or intraabdominal hemorrhage. Individual cases with overt liver disease have been reported, characterised by hepatomegaly, jaundice, ascites, portal hypertension and liver failure. Extrahepatic manifestations may be found in organs of the mononuclear phagocytic system (e.g., spleen, lymph nodes, bone marrow) but also in the lungs, kidneys, parathyroid or adrenal glands, or other parts of the gastrointestinal tract.

Usually, peliosis hepatis is easily detected by imaging techniques. However, discrimination between peliosis and other benign or malignant lesions may turn difficult. Peliotic lesions miss a mass effect on the adjacent hepatic vasculature. Blood flow within the lesion is slow, resulting in a hypodense appearance after contrast application in CT. However, in some patients a ring-like accumulation of contrast media may be present. Using MRI, low intensity is seen in T1-weighted images while T2-weighted images show a high signal (Iannaccone 2006). In contrast-enhanced ultrasound (CEUS) both centrifugal as well centripetal contrast filling might be detected, in some cases even tumour-like behaviour occurs

(Schuldes 2011). Though imaging techniques may assist the diagnosis of peliosis hepatis, a liver biopsy is often needed for final confirmation. Wedged hepatic venography may also be diagnostic, but its use needs strong suspicion.

Management and prognosis

In most cases, peliosis hepatis will not progress to symptomatic disease. In these patients management has to concentrate on the identification and, if required, treatment of the underlying disease. Causal treatment is the therapeutic mainstay. It mostly causes regression of the peliotic lesions. In individual cases surgery may be indicated if the risk of cyst rupture and consecutive bleeding is estimated to be high. If liver failure and portal hypertension dominate the clinical picture liver transplantation might be considered provided etiology does not pose a contraindication.

Disorders of the hepatic artery

Pathologies involving the hepatic artery may lead to different clinical pictures (Table 5, Figure 2).

Occlusion of the arterial lumen results in ischemia of the supplied tissue. Though gross hepatocellular necrosis may follow, such as in ischemic hepatitis, preserved portal venous oxygen supply often prevents the most devastating damage. In contrast to the hepatic parenchyma, the biliary system is exclusively supplied arterially and, therefore, more susceptible to ischemic damage. Clinically, this may present as an elevation of cholestasis-associated liver enzymes (eg, gamma GT, alkaline phosphatase). In more severe cases, structural damage to bile ducts may be irreversible (ie, ischemic cholangiopathy). Especially after orthotopic liver transplantation ischemia type biliary lesions (ITBL) still pose a major challenge for clinical management.

Table 5. Etiology of hepatic artery disease

Obstruction or destruction of the hepatic artery	• Hepatic artery embolism or thrombosis • Vasculitis • Sickle cell disease • Thrombotic microangiopathy (eg, hemolytic uremic syndrome, thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura, HELLP syndrome) • Chronic transplant rejection
Aneurysms	• Congenital malformations • *Polyarteritis nodosa* (PAN) • Focal inflammation, trauma
Shunts	• Congenital malformations • Hereditary hemorrhagic teleangiectasia

Apart from sequelae due to hepatic ischemia, hepatic artery disease may present either as an aneurysm or as a shunt. Aneurysms of the hepatic artery are often detected incidentally by imaging. In the majority, they are asymptomatic but abdominal pain or – in rare cases – obstructive jaundice may develop. In about 20% of cases multiple aneurysms are present. Males are more often affected than women. The risk of rupture and subsequent hemorrhage is high and may reach up to 80%

depending on the size of the aneurysm. Therefore, either radiological intervention or surgery needs to be evaluated (Hulsberg 2011, Christie 2011).

In contrast to aneurysms, shunts involving the hepatic artery are predominantly symptomatic. The spectrum of symptoms is wide including abdominal pain, portal hypertension or signs of high-output heart failure. The therapeutic approach has to be individualized including radiological interventions or surgical procedures.

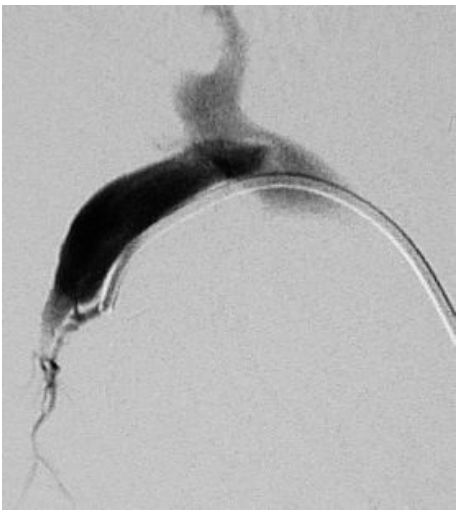


Figure 2. Spontaneous arterioportal shunt. Angiography in a patient with non-cirrhotic portal hypertension. A small arterioportal shunt is detected by superselective catheterization

Hereditary hemorrhagic telangiectasia (Osler-Weber-Rendu syndrome)

Hereditary hemorrhagic telangiectasia (HHT) is a highly penetrant, autosomal dominant disease showing a heterozygous prevalence between 1:5000 and 1:8000. It is characterized by progressive and multivisceral development of arteriovenous malformations (Govani 2009).

Mutations in several genes interacting with transforming growth factor (TGF)-β receptor have been identified in HHT. According to the genes involved, different subtypes can be discriminated:

- HHT 1 (ENG coding for endoglin, chromosome 9q33-q34.1),
- HHT 2 (*ACVRL1* coding for activin A receptor type II-like kinase ALK-1, chromosome 12q11-q14),
- HHT 3 (gene not yet identified, chromosome 5q31.3-q32),
- HHT 4 (gene not yet identified, chromosome 7p14),
- Juvenile polyposis/HHT (*SMAD4*, chromosome 18q21.1).

Liver involvement may be found in all subtypes but appears to be more frequent in HHT 2. Though hereditary, HHT is characterized by marked intrafamilial variation.

Clinical presentation and diagnosis

HHT is a multivisceral disease. Apart from the nasopharnyx and the gastrointestinal tract, central nervous (~10%), pulmonary (~50%) and hepatic involvement occur at high frequency. Accordingly, the spectrum of clinical disease is wide, e.g., anemia, seizures, subarachnoid hemorrhage, paraplegia, transient ischemic attacks/stroke, dyspnea, cyanosis, polycythemia, abdominal pain and hepatic abscesses. Symptoms develop progressively throughout life. Telangiectasias appear before the age of 20 in half, before 40 in two-thirds of the patients. Thereafter it takes one or two decades for the development of significant bleeding or symptomatic visceral involvement (Plauchu 1989, Govani 2009).

The proportion of hepatic involvement in HHT is reported between 30 and 75%. With the improvement of imaging technology over time, the reported prevalence of hepatic malformations increased. The clinical picture of liver involvement in HHT depends on the predominant type of malformation (ie, arterioportal vs. arteriovenous shunts). Arteriovenous malformations increase cardiac output. In individual cases up to 20 L/min may be reached. These patients suffer from high output cardiac failure. In addition, symptoms of a mesenteric steal syndrome (eg, postprandial abdominal pain) and complications of biliary ischemia (eg, biliary abscesses) may occur. As a consequence of ischemia, nodular regeneration of the liver develops (HHT-associated pseudocirrhosis). Arterioportal malformations will cause portal hypertension (Buscarini 2006, Garcia-Tsao 2000).

Diagnosis of HHT is made using the Curaçao criteria, 3 of 4 of which need to be fulfilled (Shovlin 2000, Faughnan 2011):

- recurrent spontaneous epistaxis,
- telangiectasias, multiple and in typical localisation,
- positive family history,
- visceral arteriovenous malformations (lung, liver, brain, spine).

Table 6. Ultrasound criteria for hepatic involvement in HHT*

Major criteria	• Dilated common hepatic artery >7 mm (inner diameter)
	• Intrahepatic arterial hypervascularization
Minor criteria	• V_{max} of the proper hepatic artery >110 cm/s
	• RI of the proper hepatic artery <0.60
	• V_{max} of the portal vein >25 cm/s
	• Tortuous course of the extrahepatic hepatic artery
Facultative findings	• Dilated portal vein >13 mm
	• Dilated liver veins >11 mm
	• Hepatomegaly >15 cm in midclavicular line
	• Nodular liver margin

* Two major criteria: definitive hepatic involvement in HHT, one major criterium plus minor criteria: probable hepatic involvement (modified according to Caselitz 2003)

Every patient with HHT should be screened for hepatic vascular malformations. Using Doppler ultrasound, screening is performed with high sensitivity and specificity (Table 6) (Caselitz 2003). If hepatic involvement is confirmed, cardiac output should be estimated (e.g., via echocardiography). Furthermore, patients must be screened at regular intervals to detect complications such as development of portal hypertension or biliary lesions.

Management of hepatic involvement in HHT

Currently, no established medical therapy for HHT exists. In chronic GI bleeding the use of hormonal therapy (estrogen-progesterone preparations, danocrine), antifibrinolytics (aminocaproic acid, tranexamic acid) and other experimental drugs (tamoxifen, interferon, thalidomide, sirolimus) were suggested (Faughnan 2011). However, no data supports the use of these drugs to treat hepatic vascular malformations. Recently, an exciting Phase II trial evaluated bevacizumab to treat liver involvement in HHT (Dupuis-Girod 2012). Significant improvements in cardiac output, epistaxis and SF-36 scores were achieved. However, long-term effects, dosing and necessity of maintenance therapy are still unclear (Chavan 2013).

Limited data exist for the use of hepatic artery embolisation and liver transplantation (Buscarini 2006, Chavan 2013). Due to the invasiveness and complication rates of these approaches only patients with moderate to severe symptoms should be regarded as candidates for interventional therapy. Hepatic artery embolization can be used to reduce shunt flow in patients with arteriovenous hepatic shunts leading to significant reduction of cardiac output and improvement of associated symptoms. However, complications such as hepatic and biliary necrosis or acute cholecystitis have been described. Success of hepatic artery embolization very much depends on adequate patient selection. Current guidelines do not endorse general use of embolization outside experienced centres but do favor liver transplantation in advanced hepatic involvement of HHT.

Disorders of the portal vein

In contrast to other disorders affecting the hepatic vasculature, portal vein thrombosis is a common disease. While portal vein thrombosis is located within the main portal vein and its larger branches, rare forms of portal vein disease affecting the medium-sized and preterminal portal vein branches have been identified. The nomenclature for these diseases is inconsistent (e.g., obliterative portal venopathy, hepatoportal sclerosis, idiopathic portal hypertension, nodular regenerative hyperplasia).

Portal vein thrombosis

Portal vein thrombosis (PVT) is of heterogeneous etiology. It is promoted by both local and systemic risk factors (Tables 7 & 8). In about 20 to 30% of patients a local risk factor can be identified. Systemic risk factors are found in 50-70% (DeLeve 2009, Plessier 2010).

Table 7. Local risk factors for portal vein thrombosis

Malignancy	• Primary hepatic or abdominal cancer
	• Metastatic disease
Focal inflammation	• Neonatal omphalitis, umbilical vein catheterisation
	• Pancreatitis, duodenal ulcer, cholecystitis
	• Diverticulitis, appendicitis, inflammatory bowel disease
	• Tuberculosis, CMV hepatitis
Portal venous injury	• Cholecystectomy, splenectomy, colectomy, gastrectomy
	• Surgical portosystemic shunting, TIPS
	• Liver transplantation, hepatobiliary surgery
	• Abdominal trauma
Cirrhosis	• Impaired hepatic inflow

Clinical presentation and diagnosis

Portal vein thrombosis may present as acute or chronic disease, representing successive stages of the same disease. Special variants of PVT are malignant thrombi resulting from tumours invading the portal venous circulation, septic thrombi also known as acute pylephlebitis, and thrombi resulting from slowed portal venous flow in liver cirrhosis (DeLeve 2009, Plessier 2010).

The typical clinical presentation of acute PVT includes abdominal or lumbar pain of sudden onset or progressing over a few days. Depending on the extent of the thrombosis the pain may be severe and colicky. The diminished mesenteric outflow leads to intestinal congestion. Ileus may develop but without features of intestinal obstruction. Moderate distension of the abdomen is common. However, peritoneal signs are usually absent unless intestinal infarction develops. Fever and a marked systemic inflammatory response may develop even without systemic infection. This is accompanied by elevated laboratory markers of inflammation. In contrast, liver function – apart from intermittent elevation of aminotransferases – is usually not substantially affected by acute PVT unless significant liver damage pre-exists. Clinical features should improve within 5-7 days. Otherwise transmural intestinal ischemia has to be suspected.

Pylephlebitis is characterized by high, spiking fever with chills, a painful liver, and sometimes shock. Blood cultures should be taken (usually *Bacteroides* spp. ± other enteric species). Infected thrombi give rise to the development of hepatic microabscesses (Kanellopoulou 2010).

Cases where acute portal vein thrombosis does not resolve, progress to chronic portal vein thrombosis. The obstructed portal vein is replaced by collateral veins bridging the thrombotic part, known as portal cavernoma. There is wide variation in the clinical picture of portal cavernoma. It may rarely lead to obstruction of the extrahepatic bile ducts (ie, portal cholangiopathy/biliopathy), which may be associated with marked jaundice (Llop 2011). However, the leading symptom of chronic PVT are the facets of portal hypertension (eg, portosystemic collaterals such as gastric or esophageal varices). As liver function is usually not impaired, complications such as hepatic encephalopathy or ascites are substantially less frequent than in liver cirrhosis. Hepatopulmonary syndrome may be found in up to 10% of patients.

PVT is a common complication of liver cirrhosis with an increasing prevalence in more severe disease stages. It needs to be discriminated from portal venous obstruction caused by hepatocellular carcinoma. Pathophysiologically, PVT in cirrhosis arises as a consequence of the reduction in hepatic inflow leading to flow reduction and eventually stasis within the portal vein. Therefore, thrombi are often partial and development of portal cavernoma is rather unusual. In patients with cirrhosis, a newly developed ascites or significant worsening of existing ascites should trigger the search for PVT.

Both acute PVT and portal cavernoma are easily detected using sonography, CT or MR imaging. Acute PVT presents as intraluminal hyperechoic material in ultrasound, while Doppler imaging demonstrates a lack of blood flow (Figure 3). Using contrast-enhanced ultrasound (CEUS), vascularisation of the thrombus may be used to identify malignant thrombi. As PVT may extend to the mesenteric or splenic veins, thorough assessment of the splanchnic tributaries is mandatory. For detailed assessment of thrombus extension, CT or MR angiography are more sensitive than Doppler sonography. Portal cavernoma presents as serpiginous vessel structures, while the main portal vein or its branches are not visible. As a compensatory mechanism hepatic arteries are usually enlarged. Depending on the individual location and appearance of portal cavernoma it may be mistaken as part of the surrounding organs or as tumour.

Management and prognosis

In acute PVT, recanalization of the obstructed veins should be aspired. Causal factors require correction where possible. If pylephlebitis is suspected antibiotic therapy must be commenced immediately.

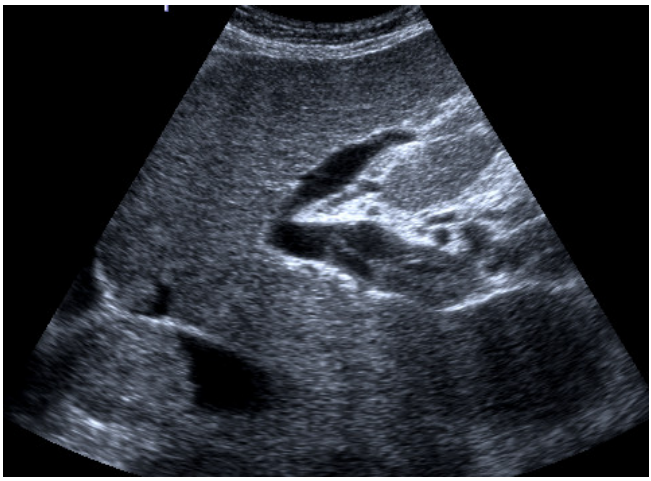
Spontaneous recanalization without anticoagulation occurs infrequently (<10%). Therefore, anticoagulation is the most commonly used therapeutic strategy to reopen the obstructed portal vein. Though no controlled studies exist, prospective data suggest success in up to 40% of patients. Success rates increase if neither the splenic vein is involved nor ascites is detectable. Anticoagulation should be initiated as early as possible - delay might be associated with treatment failure. Major complications are reported in less than 5% of treated patients (DeLeve 2009, Plessier 2010, Hall 2011). Individual cases using novel oral anticoagulants, eg, rivaroxaban or dabigatran suggest positive effects (Pannach 2013, Bahr unpublished).

Experience with other treatment modalities is limited (eg, systemic/local thrombolysis, surgical thrombectomy, transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic stent [TIPS]). Systemic thrombolysis appears largely ineffective. Although performed successfully in some centers, major procedure-related complications and even death have been reported for local thrombolysis. Emergency surgical intervention is indicated in suspected intestinal infarction. In these cases, surgical thrombectomy can be performed.

The therapeutic approach in patients with PVT associated with liver cirrhosis has to be regarded separately. Recent data show that anticoagulation is safe both in the prophylactic as well as in the therapeutic setting (Villa 2012, Delgado 2012). Use of enoxaparin as primary prophylaxis completely prevented the development of PVT. In subacute PVT, anticoagulation (using either vitamin K antagonists or LMWH) achieved complete recanalization in nearly half of the patients, while at least partial

response was seen in 2/3 of cases. Interventional therapy using TIPS appears even more effective showing complete response in 57% and at least partial response in all patients (Luca 2011). Preliminary data suggest that systemic thrombolysis is feasible (De Santis 2010).

(A)



(B)

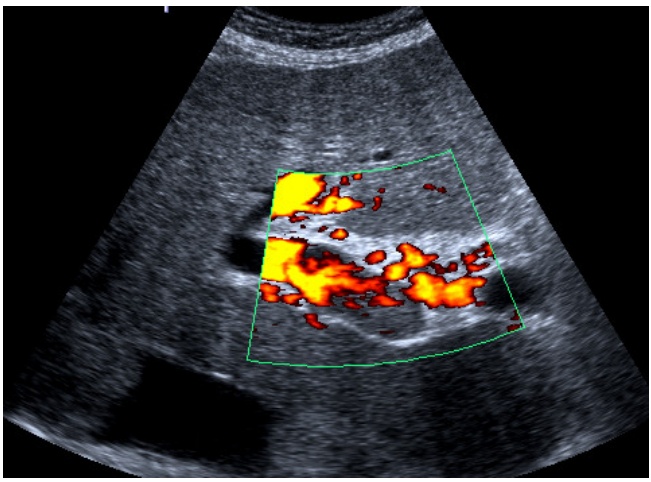


Figure 3. Acute portal vein thrombosis. Ultrasound of patient with acute PVT. (A) Hyperechoic material is located within the main portal vein. (B) Using the power mode for flow detection, blood flow is limited to those parts of the portal vein without hyperechoic material

If treatment is initiated early in acute PVT the outcome is favorable. Symptoms may sometimes disappear within hours after start of therapy and portal hypertension rarely develops. Overall mortality is well below 10% (DeLeve 2009, Plessier 2010).

In patients with portal cavernoma, prevention of gastrointestinal bleeding due to portal hypertension is a main focus of therapy (Chaudhary 2013). The use of non-selective beta-blockers is incompletely evaluated in portal cavernoma. However, an approach similar to portal hypertension in liver cirrhosis is supported by current guidelines and appears to improve prognosis (DeLeve 2009). Due to the variable genesis of PVT, individual assessment for risk of recurrence of thrombosis and risk of bleeding should be performed. Although data is scarce, anticoagulation seems to be favourable for most patients.

Nodular regenerative hyperplasia

Occlusion of the medium-sized and preterminal portal venous branches induces hypotrophy of the supplied tissue. As a compensatory reaction, growth of appropriately perfused tissue gives rise to the development of regenerative nodules. This combination of hypotrophic and hypertrophic liver tissue without signs of fibrosis is the equivalent of nodular regenerative hyperplasia (Wanless 1990).

Nodular regenerative hyperplasia causes 14-27% of cases with non-cirrhotic portal hypertension (Naber 1991, Nakanuma 1996). In autopsy studies the prevalence is 3.1/100,000, one third of which are associated with portal hypertension (Colina 1989). Nodular regenerative hyperplasia is associated with immune and hematologic disorders, eg, rheumatoid arthritis, Felty's syndrome, other connective tissue disorders, CVID, myeloproliferative and lymphoproliferative disease. It has also been described in infective endocarditis, inflammatory bowel disease, in conjunction with chemotherapy, the use of other drugs and after kidney transplantation (Matsumoto 2000, Hartleb 2011). A hereditary component is discussed (Albuquerque 2013).

Clinically, nodular regenerative hyperplasia presents with complications of portal hypertension. Liver function is usually not significantly impaired although individual cases with liver failure have been described (Naber 1990, Blendis 1978, Dumortier 2001). The prognosis depends on the underlying disorder and on the control of portal hypertension.

Diagnosis is usually made histologically. In imaging studies, differentiation between nodular regenerative hyperplasia and cirrhosis may be impossible. However, a recent study described "atoll-like lesions" in ultrasound as a characteristic imaging feature (Caturelli 2011).

Hepatoportal sclerosis

Similar to nodular regenerative hyperplasia, hepatoportal sclerosis affects the smaller portal venous branches. In contrast to the former, portal veins are not just destroyed but replaced by filiform fibrotic strands penetrating the hepatic tissue. These fibrotic strands are strictly confined to the portal tracts and do not form fibrotic septae (Aggarwal 2013, Nakanuma 2001). Several synonyms are used for hepatoportal sclerosis, eg, obliterative portal venopathy or idiopathic portal hypertension. However, nomenclature is not well-defined and it sometimes overlaps with nodular regenerative hyperplasia.

Hepatoportal sclerosis is rarely found in the Western world but is more common in Asia (eg, India, Japan). Several risk factors are in discussion: (a) chronic infections, (b) exposure to medication / toxins (eg, arsenic, vinyl chloride,

azathioprine), (c) thrombophilia, (d) immune disease and (e) hereditary factors. Infections and toxins appear to be more common in Asia, while Western patients suffer more often from thrombophilia (Sarin 2007, Schouten 2011). Also, HIV infection and HAART is increasingly recognized as a risk factor for hepatoportal sclerosis.

Liver function as well as liver enzymes are usually unaffected by hepatoportal sclerosis. Complications of portal hypertension pose the main clinical challenge. Similarly to nodular regenerative hyperplasia, prognosis depends on the underlying disorder and on the control of portal hypertension (Sarin 2007, Schouten 2012, Siramolpiwat 2013). Very rarely, hepatoportal sclerosis will lead to liver failure requiring liver transplantation (Ataide 2013, Siramolpiwat 2013).

Disorders of the hepatic veins

Budd-Chiari syndrome is the only defined entity of hepatic venous disease. However, other disorders such as the sinusoidal obstruction syndrome or peliosis hepatis may also affect the hepatic venous system. Furthermore, hepatic congestion due to cardiac or pericardial disease shares clinical similarities with Budd-Chiari syndrome.

Budd-Chiari syndrome

Budd-Chiari syndrome (BCS) is defined as hepatic venous outflow obstruction at any level from the small hepatic veins to the junction of the inferior vena cava (IVC) and the right atrium, regardless of the cause of obstruction (Janssen 2003). Excluded from this definition are obstructions caused by sinusoidal obstruction syndrome and cardiac or pericardial disorders.

Pathophysiology

Obstruction of the hepatic outflow may arise from endoluminal lesions, e.g., thrombosis, webs, endophlebitis (primary BCS) or from outside the venous system by luminal invasion or by extrinsic compression, e.g., tumour, abscess, cysts (secondary BCS) (Janssen 2003).

On rare occasions, BCS originates from congenital malformations, e.g., webs or stenotic vessels (Ciesek 2010, Darwish Murad 2009). However, outflow obstruction is usually caused by thrombosis. Prevalence of thrombophilic risk factors is shown in Table 8. Thrombi are exclusively located within the hepatic veins in 49% of patients, exclusively within IVC in 2%, and as combined thrombosis of hepatic veins and IVC in 49%. In about 18% a concomitant portal vein thrombosis is identified (Darwish Murad 2009).

Obstruction of hepatic outflow leads to congestion of the drained tissue. Over time this will induce hypotrophy of affected and consecutive regenerative growth of non-affected parts of the liver. A typical area of hypertrophy is liver segment 1 (caudate lobe), favored by its separate venous drainage into the IVC. Regenerative nodules may occasionally progress to hepatocellular carcinoma. In addition, intrahepatic collaterals may develop.

Table 8. Prevalence of thrombophilic risk factors in acute and chronic portal vein thrombosis and in primary Budd-Chiari syndrome*

Risk factor	Portal vein thrombosis	Budd-Chiari syndrome
Myeloproliferative neoplasms	21% - 40%	40% - 50%
Atypical	14%	25% - 35%
Classical	17%	10% - 25%
Paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria	0% - 2%	0% - 19%
Antiphospholipid syndrome	6% - 19%	4% - 25%
Factor V Leiden mutation	3% - 32%	6% - 32%
Factor II (prothrombin) mutation	14% - 40%	3% - 7%
Protein C deficiency	0% - 26%	4% - 30%
Protein S deficiency	2% - 30%	3% - 20%
Antithrombin deficiency	0% - 26%	0% - 23%
Plasminogen deficiency	0% - 6%	0% - 4%
Hyperhomocysteinemia	11% - 22%	22% - 37%
TT677 MTHFR genotype	11% - 50%	12% - 22%
Recent pregnancy	6% - 40%	6% - 12%
Recent oral contraceptive use	12% - 44%	6% - 60%
Behçet's disease	0% - 31%	0% - 33%
Connective tissue disease	4%	10%

* Adult patients without malignancy or cirrhosis (according to DeLeve 2009, Darwish Murad 2009, Plessier 2010)

Clinical presentation and diagnosis

Depending on the location of outflow obstruction, the number of vessels involved and the temporal dynamics of BCS, the clinical presentation varies between light symptoms, even sometimes subclinical disease and dramatic acute complaints which may progress to acute liver failure. The disease might present with a progressively relapsing course successively involving different hepatic veins.

Symptoms of hepatic congestion are ascites (>80% of patients), abdominal pain (>60%) and esophageal varices (>50%). Disturbance of liver function is rather rare, e.g., hepatic encephalopathy (<10%), as is involvement of extrahepatic organs, e.g., hepatorenal syndrome (<10%) (Darwish Murad 2009).

In the majority of cases, diagnosis of BCS can be obtained using Doppler ultrasound. If technical difficulties obviate sonographic diagnosis, MRI is the imaging method of choice. Only in rare cases is liver biopsy or hepatic venography required to confirm the diagnosis (Janssen 2003). Ultrasound characteristics of BCS are clearly defined (Boozari 2008). They comprise specific signs such as direct visualisation of thrombi, stenoses, webs, replacement of hepatic veins by fibrotic strands or reversed flow in hepatic veins or IVC. Suggestive signs are hepatic collaterals that may be interposed between hepatic veins or may be located on the hepatic capsula. Widening of the caudate vein (>3 mm) is also regarded as suggestive for BCS. These signs serve in the diagnosis of BCS and may be accompanied by a myriad of non-specific changes (eg, ascites, regenerative nodules, splenomegaly).

Management and prognosis

Treatment of BCS has to be adjusted to the etiology and the severity of the clinical picture. If BCS is caused by congenital malformations such as webs, radiological interventions using balloon catheter-assisted dilation may succeed.

In case of a primary thrombotic event, anticoagulation is the mainstay of therapy (Janssen 2003, DeLeve 2009, Darwish Murad 2009, Seijo 2013). However, in long-term follow-up less than half of patients will be solely treated with anticoagulation and remain free of further interventions (Seijo 2013). Therefore, interventional techniques (eg, TIPS, recanalization) should be evaluated early, especially in patients with moderate to severe symptoms. With the advent of TIPS, the necessity for liver transplantation in BCS has declined sharply. Success rates of TIPS – both in the short-term and in the long-term – are high (Qi 2013, Seijo 2013). Thus, surgical procedures (eg, surgical shunt, liver transplantation) are only rarely performed. With this approach, current data show that survival in BCS is above 70% after 5 years (Seijo 2013).

References

Aggarwal S, Fiel MI, Schiano TD. Obliterative portal venopathy: a clinical and histopathological review. Dig Dis Sci 2013;58:2767-76.

Albuquerque A, Cardoso H, Lopes J, Cipriano A, Carneiro F, Macedo G. Familial occurrence of nodular regenerative hyperplasia of the liver. Am J Gastroenterol 2013;108:150-1.

Ataide EC, dos Santos IN, Martins DL, et al. Liver failure and the need for transplantation in 6 patients with hepatoportal sclerosis. Transpl Proc 2013;45:1907-9.

Blendis LM, Lovell D, Barnes CG, Ritland S, Cattan D, Vesin P. Oesophageal variceal bleeding in Felty's syndrome associated with nodular regenerative hyperplasia. Ann Rheum Dis 1978;37:183-6. (Abstract)

Budd G. On diseases of the liver. Blanchard and Lea. Philadelphia 1853.

Buscarini E, Plauchu H, Garcia Tsao G, et al. Liver involvement in hereditary hemorrhagic telangiectasia: consensus recommendations. Liver Int 2006;26:1040-6. (Abstract)

Boozari B, Bahr MJ, Kubicka S, Klempnauer J, Manns MP, Gebel M. Ultrasonography in patients with Budd-Chiari syndrome - diagnostic signs and prognostic implications. J Hepatol 2008;49:572-80. (Abstract)

Caselitz M, Bahr MJ, Bleck JS, et al. Sonographic criteria for the diagnosis of hepatic involvement in hereditary hemorrhagic telangiectasia (HHT). Hepatology 2003;37:1139-46. (Abstract)

Caturelli E, Ghittoni G, Ranalli TV, Gomes VV. Nodular regenerative hyperplasia of the liver: coral atoll-like lesions on ultrasound are characteristic in predisposed patients. Br J Radiol 2011; 84:e129–e34.

Chavan A, Schumann-Binarsch S, Luthe L, et al. Systemic therapy with bevacizumab in patients with hereditary hemorrhagic telangiectasia (HHT). Vasa 2013;42:106-10.

Chavan A, Luthe L, Gebel M, et al. Complications and clinical outcome of hepatic artery embolisation in patients with hereditary haemorrhagic telangiectasia. Eur Radiol 2013;23:951-7.

Chaudhary N, Mehrotra S, Srivastava M, Nundy S. Management of bleeding in extrahepatic portal venous obstruction. Int J Hepatol 2013;2013:784842.

Christie AB, Christie DB, Nakayama DK, Solis MM. Hepatic artery aneurysms: evolution from open to endovascular repair techniques. Am Surgeon 2011;77:608-11. (Abstract)

Ciesek S, Rifai K, Bahr MJ, et al. Membranous Budd-Chiari syndrome in caucasians. Scand J Gastroenterol 2010;45:226-34. (Abstract)

Cliffe ST, Bloch DB, Suryani S, et al. Clinical, molecular, and cellular immunologic findings in patients with SP110-associated veno-occlusive disease with immunodeficiency syndrome. J Allergy Clin Immunol 2012;130:735-42.

Colina F, Alberti N, Solis JA, Martinez-Tello FJ. Diffuse nodular regenerative hyperplasia of the liver (DNRH). A clinicopathologic study of 24 cases. Liver 1989; 9:253-65. (Abstract)

Coppell JA, Richardson PG, Soiffer R, et al. Hepatic veno-occlusive disease following stem cell transplantation: incidence, clinical course, and outcome. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant 2010;16:157-68.
Corbacioglu S, Cesaro S, Faraci M, et al. Defibrotide for prophylaxis of hepatic veno-occlusive disease in paediatric haemopoietic stem-cell transplantation: an open-label, phase 3, randomised controlled trial. Lancet 2012;379:1301-9.
Darwish Murad S, Plessier A, Hernandez-Guerra M, et al. Etiology, management, and outcome of the Budd-Chiari syndrome. Ann Intern Med 2009;151:167-75. (Abstract)
DeLeve LD, Valla DC, Garcia-Tsao G. AASLD practice guidelines. Vascular disorders of the liver. Hepatology 2009;49:1729-64. (Abstract)
DeLeve LD, Wang X, Kuhlenkamp JF, Kaplowitz N. Toxicity of azathioprine and monocrotaline in murine sinusoidal endothelial cells and hepatocytes: the role of glutathione and relevance to hepatic venooclusive disease. Hepatology 1996;23:589-99. (Abstract)
Delgado MG, Seijo S, Yepes I, et al. Efficacy and safety of anticoagulation on patients with cirrhosis and portal vein thrombosis. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2012;10:776-83.
De Santis A, Moscatelli R, Catalano C, et al. Systemic thrombolysis of portal vein thrombosis in cirrhotic patients: a pilot study. Digest Liver Dis 2010;42:451-5. (Abstract)
Dignan FL, Wynn RF, Hadzic N, et al. BCSH/BSBMT guideline: diagnosis and management of veno-occlusive disease (sinusoidal obstruction syndrome) following haematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Br J Haematol 2013;163:444-57.
Dumortier J, Bizollon T, Scoazec JY, et al. Orthotopic liver transplantation for idiopathic portal hypertension: indications and outcome. Scand J Gastroenterol 2001;36:417-22. (Abstract)
Dupuis-Girod S, Ginon I, Saurin JC, et al. Bevacizumab in patients with hereditary hemorrhagic telangiectasia and severe hepatic vascular malformations and high cardiac output. JAMA 2012;307:948-55.
Faughnan ME, Palda VA, Garcia-Tsao G, et al. International guidelines for the diagnosis and management of hereditary hemorrhagic telangiectasia. J Med Genet 2011;48:73-87. (Abstract)
Garcia-Tsao G, Korzenik JR, Young L, et al. Liver disease in patients with hereditary hemorrhagic telangiectasia. N Engl J Med 2000;343:931-6. (Abstract)
Govani FS, Shovlin CL. Hereditary haemorrhagic telangiectasia: a clinical and scientific review. Eur J Hum Genet 2009;17:860-71. (Abstract)
Hall TC, Garcea G, Metcalfe M, Bilku D, Dennison AR. Management of acute non-cirrhotic and non-malignant portal vein thrombosis: a systematic review. World J Surg 2011;35:2510-20. (Abstract)
Hartleb M, Gutkowski K, Milkiewicz P.Nodular regenerative hyperplasia: Evolving concepts on underdiagnosed cause of portal hypertension. World J Gastroenterol 2011;17:1400-9.
Hulsberg P, de la Garza-Jordan J, Jordan R, Matusz P, Tubbs RS, Loukas M. Hepatic aneurysm: a review. Am Surg 2011;77:586-91. (Abstract)
Iannaccone R, Federle MP, Brancatelli G et al. Peliosis hepatis: Spectrum of imaging findings. AJR 2006;187:W43-W52.
Janssen HLA, Garcia-Pagan JC, Elias E, et al. Budd-Chiari syndrome: a review by an expert panel. J Hepatol 2003;38:364-71. (Abstract)
Jones RJ, Lee KS, Beschorner WE, et al. Venoocclusive disease of the liver following bone marrow transplantation. Transplantation 1987;44:778-83. (Abstract)
Kanellopoulou T, Alexopoulou A, Theodossiades G, Koskinas J, Archimandritis AJ. Pylephlebitis: an overview of non-cirrhotic cases and factors related to outcome. Scand J Infect Dis 2010;42:804-11. (Abstract)
Lassau N, Auperin A, Leclere J, Bennaceur A, Valteau-Couanet D, Hartmann O. Prognostic value of doppler-ultrasonography in hepatic venoocclusive disease. Transplantation 2002;74:60-6. (Abstract)
Llop E, de Juan C, Seijo S. Portal cholangiopathy: radiological classification and natural history. Gut 2011;60:853-60.
Luca A, Miraglia R, Caruso S, et al. Short- and long-term effects of the transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt on portal vein thrombosis in patients with cirrhosis. Gut 2011;60:846-52. (Abstract)

Matsumoto T, Kobayashi S, Shimizu H, et al. The liver in collagen diseases: pathologic study of 160 cases with particular reference to hepatic arteritis, primary biliary cirrhosis, autoimmune hepatitis and nodular regenerative hyperplasia of the liver. Liver 2000;20:366-73. (Abstract)
McDonald GB, Hinds MS, Fisher LD, et al. Veno-occlusive disease of the liver and multiorgan failure after bone marrow transplantation - a cohort study of 355 patients. Ann Intern Med 1993;118:255-67. (Abstract)
McDonald GB. Liver disease of uncertain cause. Bone Marrow Transplant 2004;33:977-8. (Abstract)
Naber AH, Van Haelst U, Yap SH. Nodular regenerative hyperplasia of the liver: an important cause of portal hypertension in non-cirrhotic patients. J Hepatol 1991;12:94-9. (Abstract)
Nakanuma Y, Hoso M, Sasaki M, et al. Histopathology of the liver in non-cirrhotic portal hypertension of unknown aetiology. Histopathology 1996; 28:195-204. (Abstract)
Nakanuma Y, Tsuneyama K, Ohbu M., Katayanagi K. Pathology and pathogenesis of idiopathic portal hypertension with an emphasis on the liver. Pathol Res Pract 2001;197:65-76. (Abstract)
Pannach S, Babatz J, Beyer-Westendorf J. Successful treatment of acute portal vein thrombosis with rivaroxaban. Thromb Haemost 2013;110:626-7.
Plauchu H, de Chadarevian JP, Bideau A, Robert JM. Age-related clinical profile of hereditary hemorrhagic telangiectasia in an epidemiologically recruited population. Am J Med Genet 1989;32:291-7. (Abstract)
Plessier A, Darwish-Murad S, Hernandez-Guerra M, et al. Acute portal vein thrombosis unrelated to cirrhosis: A prospective multicenter follow-up study. Hepatology 2010;51:210-8. (Abstract)
Qi X, Yang M, Fan D, Han G. Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt in the treatment of Budd-Chiari syndrome: a critical review of literatures. Scand J Gastroenterol 2013;48:771-84.
Richardson PG, Soiffer RJ, Antin JH, et al. Defibrotide for the treatment of severe hepatic veno-occlusive disease and multiorgan failure after stem cell transplantation: a multicenter, randomized, dose-finding trial. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant 2010;16:1005-17. (Abstract)
Richardson PG, Ho VT, Cutler C, Glotzbecker B, Antin JH, Soiffer R. Hepatic veno-occlusive disease after hematopoietic stem cell transplantation: Novel insights to pathogenesis, current status of treatment and future directions. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant 2013;19:S88-S90.
Richardson PG, Corbacioglu S, Ho VT, et al. Drug safety evaluation of defibrotide. Expert Opin Drug Saf 2013;12:123-36.
Sarin SK, Kumar A, Chawla YK, et al. Noncirrhotic portal fibrosis/idiopathic portal hypertension: APASL recommendations for diagnosis and treatment. Hepatol Int 2007;1:398-413.
Schouten JNL, Garcia-Pagan JC, Valla DC, Janssen HLA. Idiopathic noncirrhotic portal hypertension. Hepatology 2011;54:1071-81. (Abstract)
Schouten JNL, Nevens F, Hansen B, et al. Idiopathic noncirrhotic portal hypertension is associated with poor survival: results of a long-term cohort study. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2012;35:1424-33.
Schuldes M, Weickert U. Kontrastmittelsonographie bei Verdacht auf Lebermetastasen. Dtsch Med Wochenschr 2011;136:1255-6.
Seijo S, Plessier A, Hoekstra J, et al. Good long-term outcome of Budd-Chiari syndrome with a step-wise management. Hepatology 2013;57:1962-8.
Shovlin CL, Guttmacher AE, Buscarini E, et al. Diagnostic criteria for hereditary hemorrhagic telangiectasia (Rendu-Osler-Weber syndrome). Am J Med Genet 2000;91:66-7. (Abstract)
Shulman HM, Fisher LB, Schoch HG, Henne KW, McDonald GB. Venoocclusive disease of the liver after marrow transplantation: histological correlates of clinical signs and symptoms. Hepatology 1994;19:1171-80. (Abstract)
Siramolpiwat S, Seijo S, Miquel R, et al. Idiopathic portal hypertension: natural history and long-term outcome. Hepatology 2013; Epub ahead of print; doi 10.1002/hep.26904.
Thatishetty AV, Agresti N, O'Brien CB. Chemotherapy-induced hepatotoxicity. Clin Liver Dis 2013;17:671-86.

Tsokos M, Erbersdopler A. Pathology of peliosis. Forensic Sci Int 2005;149:25-33. (Abstract)
Villa E, Cammà C, Marietta M, et al. Enoxaparin prevents portal vein thrombosis and liver decompensation in patients with advanced cirrhosis. Gastroenterology 2012;143:1253-60.
Wanless IR. Micronodular transformation (nodular regenerative hyperplasia) of the liver: a report of 64 cases among 2,500 autopsies and a new classification of benign hepatocellular nodules. Hepatology 1990;11:787-97. (Abstract)
Yanoff M, Rawson AJ. Peliosis hepatis. An anatomic study with demonstration of two variities. Arch Pathol 1964;77:159-65. (Abstract)

29. Acute Liver Failure

Akif Altinbas, Lars P. Bechmann, Hikmet Akkiz, Guido Gerken, Ali Canbay

Introduction and definition

Acute liver failure (ALF) is a devastating clinical syndrome, occurring in previously healthy individuals, which is characterized by hepatocellular death and dysfunction (O'Grady 2005). ALF is characterized by onset of coagulopathy (International Normalized Ratio, INR $\geq$1.5) and hepatic encephalopathy within 26 weeks of symptom appearance in a previously healthy subject (Larson 2010). Exclusion of an underlying liver disease (alcoholic hepatitis, chronic HBV and HCV, autoimmune hepatitis) is mandatory, as management of acute-on-chronic liver failure differs from ALF treatment. The most common causes of ALF in Europe and the US are acetaminophen intoxication, acute hepatitis B (HBV) infection and non-acetaminophen drug-induced liver injury (Bernal 2010). With progressive loss of hepatic function, ALF leads to hepatic encephalopathy, coagulopathy, and multiorgan failure within a short period of time. Established specific therapy regimens and the introduction of liver transplantation (LTx) improves the prognosis for some etiologies. However, the overall mortality rate remains high (Bernal 2010). ALF accounts for approximately six to eight percent of LTx procedures in the US and Europe (Lee 2008). The accurate and timely diagnosis of ALF, rapid identification of the underlying cause, transfer of the patient to a specialised transplant center and, if applicable, initiation of a specific therapy and evaluation for LTx are crucial in current ALF management. Therefore, we focus here on epidemiology, pathophysiology, diagnosis and treatment of ALF, including a brief overview of different etiologies and specific treatment options as well as novel tools to predict prognosis.

Epidemiology and etiologies

ALF is a rare disease based on multiple causes and varying clinical courses, and exact epidemiologic data is scarce. The overall incidence of ALF is assumed as one to six cases per million people each year (Bernal 2010). Recent data from the US (Ostapowicz 2002), the UK (Bernal 2004), Sweden (Wei 2007), and Germany (Canbay 2009) reveal drug toxicity as the main cause of ALF, followed by viral hepatitis followed by unknown etiology. In contrast, in the Mediterranean, Asia, and

Africa, viral hepatitis is the main cause of ALF (Escorsell 2007, Koskinas 2008, Mudawi 2007, Oketani 2011).

Table 1. Etiologies of ALF

Intoxication	Direct, idiosyncratic, paracetamol, ecstasy, amanita, phenprocoumon, tetracycline, halothane, isoniazid, anabolic drugs
Viral hepatitis	HBV, HAV, HEV, HBV+HDV, CMV, EBV, HSV
Immunological	Autoimmune, GVHD
Metabolic	Wilson's disease, alpha-1 antitrypsin deficiency, hemacromatosis
Vascular	Budd-Chiari syndrome, ischemic, veno-occlusive disease
Pregnancy-induced	HELLP syndrome

Intoxication

Drug-induced liver injury

Drug toxicity is the main cause of ALF in Western societies. Although the incidence of drug-induced liver injury (DILI) in the general population was estimated at 1-2 cases per 100,000 person years (de Abajo 2004), DILI in Germany accounts for approximately 40% of patients with ALF (Hadem 2012). As a structured medical history may be difficult in some cases, a standardised clinical management to identify the cause of DILI and optimize specific treatment has been proposed (Fontana 2010). This includes assessment of clinical and laboratory features, determining the type of liver injury (hepatocellular vs. cholestatic), the clinical course after cessation of the suspected drug, assessment of risk factors (age, sex, alcohol consumption, obesity), exclusion of underlying liver diseases, previous episodes of DILI, liver biopsy and in some cases rechallenge to identify the drug. Furthermore, to identify a cause, one must distinguish between a direct (intrinsic; dose-dependent) and an idiosyncratic (immune-mediated hypersensitivity or metabolic injury) type of liver injury (Larson 2010). Acetaminophen intoxication, as discussed in detail below, is the prototype of a direct, dose-dependant intoxication with acute hepatocellular necrosis. However, most cases of DILI are due to idiosyncratic reactions with a latency period of up to one year after initiation of treatment. Drugs that induce idiosyncratic DILI include narcotics (halothane), antibiotics (amoxicillin/clavulanate; macrolides, nitrofurantoin, isoniazid), antihypertensive drugs (methyldopa) and anticonvulsants and antipsychotic drugs (valproic acid, chlorpromazine) and many others, including herbal medicine. Demonstrating the need for new algorithms and biomarkers of liver injury, Hy Zimmerman's observation that elevation of transaminase levels above three times the upper limit of normal indicates early DILI, is still in use to assess the risk of DILI in drugs in development since the 1970s (Reuben 2004).

Acetaminophen intoxication

In a recent study, more than seventy percent of the patients with acetaminophen-induced ALF were reported as suicidal intents, the rest as accidents (Canbay 2009). The presence of any ALF risk in the recommended dose range of acetaminophen is controversial. However, the presence of risk factors, particularly obesity and alcohol abuse seem to increase the risk of ALF in patients that use acetaminophen (Canbay 2005, Krahenbuhl 2007). Acetaminophen serum concentration above 300 µg/mL

four hours after ingestion is a predictor for severe hepatic necrosis. With high doses of acetaminophen, its metabolite *N*-acetyl-*p*-benzoquinone imine (NAPQI) accumulates in hepatocytes and induces hepatocellular necrosis (McGill 2012). In the presence of glutathione, NAPQI is rapidly metabolized to non-toxic products and excreted via the bile (Bessems 2001). In acetaminophen intoxication, the glutathione pool is rapidly diminished, but could easily be restored by *N*-acetylcysteine therapy (see below).

Table 2. Clinical determination of the cause of ALF

Etiology	Subtype	Investigation
Intoxication	Drug	Drug concentrations in serum
	Amanita	History
	Idiosyncratic drug toxicity	Drug concentrations in serum/ eosinophil count
Viral hepatitis	HAV	IgM HAV
	HBV	HBsAg, IgM anti-core, HBV DNA
	HBV/HDV	HBsAg, IgM HDV, HDV RNA
	HCV	Anti-HCV, HCV RNA
	HEV	Anti-HEV
Immunological	Autoimmune	ANA, LKM, SLA, ASMA, IgG
	GVHD	Biopsy
Metabolic	Wilson's disease	Urinary copper, ceruloplasmin in serum, slit-lamp examination
	AT deficiency	AT level in serum, AT genotyping
	Hemochromatosis	Ferritin in serum, transferrin saturation
Vascular	Budd-Chiari syndrome	Ultrasound (Doppler)
	Ischemic	Ultrasound (Doppler), echocardiography (ECO)
	Veno-occlusive disease	Ultrasound (Doppler)
Pregnancy-induced	HELLP syndrome	Hematocrit test, peripheral blood smear, platelet count

ANA, anti-nuclear antibody; ASMA, anti-smooth muscle antibody; IgM, immunoglobulin M; IgG, immunoglobulin G; HBsAg, hepatitis B surface antigen

Amanita intoxication

The spectrum of mushroom poisoning varies from acute gastroenteritis to ALF. Even though the mortality rate of all mushroom poisoning cases is low, the mortality rate of those patients who develop ALF is extremely high, despite the improvement in intensive care management (Broussard 2001). *Amanita phalloides*, the wild mushroom, is attributed to the deadly mushroom poisoning, which occurs mostly in spring and early summer. Amanita toxin has a dose-dependant, direct hepatotoxic effect and distrupts hepatocyte mRNA synthesis (Kaufmann 2007).

Viral hepatitis

Historically the most common cause of ALF in Europe and still today the most prevalent etiology in developing countries is fulminant viral hepatitis (Hadem 2012). Hepatitis A and E (HAV and HEV), both transmitted via the fecal-oral route are endemic in countries with poor sanitation, tropical and subtropical countries. HEV was determined as the main cause of ALF in some Asian countries. The clinical presentation of HAV is more severe in adults than in children, and HEV is more common in pregnant women, especially in the third trimester (Dalton 2008). Fulminant HBV, transmitted vertically or by infected blood and body fluids, is the most predominant viral cause of ALF in Western countries (Bernal 2010, Canbay 2009). The incidence of fulminant HBV is decreasing with the implementation of routine vaccination. Superinfection with hepatitis D virus in HBV infection is associated with higher risk to develop ALF. HBV infection and treatment is discussed in detail elsewhere. Acute cytomegalovirus, Epstein-Barr virus, parvovirus B19, and herpes simplex virus-1 and -2 are less frequently associated with ALF.

Immunologic etiologies

Autoimmune hepatitis

In rare cases autoimmune hepatitis (AIH) may induce ALF. The acute onset of ALF and its potentially rapid progression causes a diagnostic dilemma since exclusion of other liver diseases might be too time-consuming in patients with ALF secondary to AIH. Thus, IgG elevation and positive ANA titer, combined with typical histological features may be sufficient to induce specific therapy in this instance (Suzuki 2011). However, as DILI might perfectly mimic AIH, a detailed history is key to adequate therapy in all ALF patients with features of AIH (Bjornsson 2010).

Graft-versus-host disease

With the development of new options of donor leukocyte infusion, non-myeloablative methods and umbilical cord blood transplantation, the indications of allogenic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation have been expanding in recent years (Ferrara 2009). Therefore, any hepatopathy in patients who have undergone bone marrow transplant is suspicious for graft-versus-host disease (GVHD). On the other hand, chemotherapy and myeloablation themselves are hepatotoxic and might induce reactivation of HBV infection, leading to fulminant liver failure.

Wilson's Disease

Wilson's Disease (WD), the autosomal recessive disorder of copper metabolism, is a rare cause of ALF. The prognosis of WD patients presenting with ALF is devastating, and almost all die without LTx (Lee 2008). Very high serum bilirubin and low alkaline phosphatase, ALT and AST are typical laboratory readings, and renal failure is a common clinical feature in WD (Eisenbach 2007).

Vascular disorders

Acute systemic hypotension secondary to heart failure or systemic shock syndromes may induce acute liver injury (Herzer 2012). Occlusion of at least two liver veins in Budd-Chiari syndrome or veno-occlusive disease is a rare cause of ALF. Anticoagulatory or lysis therapy is the management of choice; in severe cases,

emergency TIPSS or surgical shunt placement may be indicated, as well as a thorough workup to identify any underlying prothrombotic conditions (Fox 2011).

Pregnancy-induced liver injury

Besides acute fatty liver of pregnancy (AFLP), which usually occurs in the third trimester of pregnancy, HELLP syndrome (hemolysis, elevated liver enzymes, low platelet level) is a rare complication of pregnancy and presents with ALF. HELLP syndrome typically presents with LDH, ALT and bilirubin elevation and thrombocytopenia. Hepatopathy usually completely reverses after termination of pregnancy. Patients are at increased risk for complications in future pregnancies (Hay 2008, Westbrook 2010).

Undetermined

Despite dramatic improvements in diagnostic tests in approximately twenty percent of patients with ALF, the etiology remains undetermined (Canbay 2009, Hadem 2008, Hadem 2012).

Molecular mechanisms and clinical presentation

As mentioned above, ALF occurs on the basis of acute hepatocellular injury caused by toxic, viral or metabolic stress or hypotension. However, regardless of the initial type of liver injury, ALF propels a series of events inducing hepatocellular necrosis and apoptosis, reducing the regeneration capacity of the liver. Massive loss of hepatocytes reduces the functional capacity of the liver for glucose, lipid and protein metabolism, biotransformation, synthesis of coagulation factors, leading to encephalopathy, coagulopathy, hypoglycemia, infections, renal and multi-organ failure. In fact, even the pattern of hepatic cell death might be of clinical importance, as necrosis or apoptosis seem to be specific for different causes and are associated with clinical outcome (Bechmann 2008, Volkmann 2008).

Apoptosis, programmed cell death, is a process in which ATP-dependant processes lead to activation of caspases that induce a cascade of events, ending in the breakdown of the nucleus into chromatin bodies, interruption of membrane integrity and finally total breakdown of the cell into small vesicles, called apoptotic bodies. Upon massive cell injury, ATP depletion leads to necrosis with typical swelling of the cytoplasm, disruption of the cell membrane, imbalance of electrolyte homeostasis and karyolysis. Necrosis typically leads to local inflammation, induction of cytokine expression and migration of inflammatory cells (Jaeschke 2007). However, apoptosis itself might induce mechanisms that lead to necrosis and the ratio of apoptosis *vs.* necrosis seems to play an important role in liver injury rather than the individual events (Canbay 2004). This hypothesis is supported by observations that a death receptor agonist triggers massive necrosis secondary to the induction of apoptosis (Rodriguez 1996).

The rates of apoptosis or necrosis in ongoing ALF processes seem to be different according to the underlying etiologies (Bechmann 2010, Herzer 2012). The degree of apoptosis and necrosis, assessed by specific ELISA assays were significantly increased in amanita intoxication compared to other causes. Apoptosis is the predominant type of cell death in HBV and amanita-related ALF, vs. necrosis in

acetaminophen and congestive heart failure. Furthermore, entecavir treatment of fulminant HBV significantly reduces serum cell death markers and improves clinical outcome (Jochum 2009).

The regenerative capacity of the liver depends on the patient's gender, age, weight and previous history of liver diseases. Important mediators of liver regeneration include cytokines, growth factors and metabolic pathways for energy supply. In the adult liver, most hepatocytes are in the G_0 phase of the cell cycle and non-proliferating. Upon stimulation with the proinflammatory cytokines tumour necrosis factor α (TNFα) and interleukin-6 (IL-6), growth factors like transforming-growth factor α (TGFα), epidermal growth factor (EGF) and hepatocyte growth factor (HGF) are able to induce hepatocyte proliferation. TNF and IL-6 also induce downstream pathways related to NFκB and STAT3 signaling. Both transcription factors are mandatory for coordination of the inflammatory response to liver injury and hepatocyte proliferation (Dierssen 2008). Emerging data supports an important role for hepatic progenitor and oval cells as well as vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF)-mediated angiogenesis in liver regeneration (Ding 2010, Dolle 2010).

TNFα, IL-1 and IL-6 are also important mediators of the hyperdynamic circulation by alterations of nitric oxide synthesis in ALF (Larson 2010). Renal failure, hepatic encephalopathy, and brain edema are the results of these pathophysiologic changes. Hyperammonemia correlates with brain edema and survival (Clemmesen 1999). Decreased hepatic urea synthesis, renal insufficiency, the catabolic state of the musculoskeletal system and impaired blood-brain barrier leads to ammonia accumulation and alterations in local perfusion, which induces brain edema in ALF. Interestingly, brain edema is a presentation of ALF rather than cirrhosis, and the risk of brain edema increases with the grade of hepatic encephalopathy. After acute and massive hepatic cell death, the release of proinflammatory cytokines and intracellular material result in low systemic blood pressure leading to impairment of splanchnic circulation. Indeed, renal failure in ALF patients is common, up to 70% (Larsen 2011). Reduced qualitative and quantitative functions of platelets and inadequate synthesis of prothrombotic factors are the causes of coagulopathy. Leukopenia and impaired synthesis of complement factors in ALF patients increases the risk for infections, which might result in sepsis. Infections increase the duration of ICU stays and the mortality rate in ALF dramatically. With the impairment of hepatic gluconeogenesis, hypoglycemia is a frequent feature of patients with ALF (Canbay 2011). Recent data indicates that high density lipoprotein (HDL) could be a marker for the severity of ALF (Etogo-Asse 2012). Data in ALF patients regarding lipid-associated parameters is limited, but HDL and cholesterol seem to be important for liver cell regeneration. In preliminary results, HDL is suppressed in patients with ALF, correlates with serum ALT levels, and is lower in patients without spontaneous remission (ie, deceased or requiring transplantation) (unpublished data from Canbay). However, further studies are required to confirm which mechanisms play a role and which effects are to be expected.

Table 3. Grade of hepatic encephalopathy (West Haven criteria)

Grade	Clinical findings	Asterixis	EEG
I	Changes in behavior, euphoria, depression, mild confusion	+/–	Triphasic waves
II	Inappropriate behavior, lethargy, moderate confusion	+	Triphasic waves
III	Marked confusion, somnolence	+	Triphasic waves
IV	Coma	–	Delta waves

Prognosis

With persistently high, although variable, mortality rates from ten to ninety percent, accurate prediction of the clinical course is crucial for accurate management and decision-making. Most importantly, identification of the underlying etiology improves prognosis and opens the door for specific treatment. The degree of hepatic encephalopathy is traditionally considered an important indicator of prognosis (O'Grady 1989). Cerebral edema and renal failure worsen the prognosis dramatically. In some studies, the INR was determined as the strongest single parameter in predicting the prognosis of ALF. Another interesting point is that the presence of hepatic encephalopathy means a poor prognosis for acetaminophen-induced ALF, which in contrast has little meaning for amanita mushroom poisoning. LTx is the last treatment option in patients with ALF, when conservative treatment options fail and a lethal outcome is imminent. Therefore, assessment of likelihood of the individual patient to undergo a fatal course is important for timely listing of the patient. Standardised prognosis scores based on reproducible criteria are important in times of donor organ shortage and to avoid LTx in patients that might fully recover without LTx (Canbay 2011).

King’s College criteria (KCC) was established in the 1990s based on findings from a cohort of 588 patients with ALF (O'Grady 1989). The authors also introduced a classification based on the onset of encephalopathy after an initial rise in bilirubin levels into hyperacute (<7 days), acute (8-28 days) and sub-acute (5-12 weeks) liver failure (O'Grady 1993). KCC includes assessment of encephalopathy, coagulopathy (INR), acid homeostasis (pH), bilirubin and age. For patients with acetaminophen-induced ALF, a KCC formula was implied, deviating from that in patients with non-acetaminophen-induced liver injury. Clichy criteria were introduced for patients with fulminant HBV infection and include the degree of encephalopathy and factor V fraction as a measure for hepatic synthesis (Bernuau 1986). The model for end stage liver disease (MELD) was designed to predict the likelihood of survival after transjugular portacaval shunt (TIPS) in cirrhotic patients. However, it has recently been established as an allocation tool for LTx in patients with cirrhosis in the US and Europe. It has been tested as a model for prediction of ALF and was found to be superior to KCC and Clichy criteria in independent studies (Schmidt 2007, Yantorno 2007). Novel approaches that include mechanistic characteristics of ALF like the CK-18 modified MELD, which includes novel markers for hepatocellular death or lactate are promising, but need validation in prospective cohorts (Bechmann 2010, Hadem 2008, Rutherford 2012). In a recent, large, prospective study, a prognostic model was developed using dynamic changes

of four independent variables (atrial ammonia, INR, serum bilirubin, hepatic encephalopathy) over 3 days, to predict mortality (Kumar 2012).

Table 4. Scoring systems in patients with ALF for emergency LTx

Scoring System		Prognostic factors
King's College Criteria (KCC)	Paracetamol intoxication	Arterial pH <7.3 or INR >6.5 and creatinine >300 µmol/L and hepatic encephalapathy grade 3-4
	Non-paracetamol	INR >6.5 and hepatic encephalapathy or INR >3.5 and any of these three: bilirubin >300 µmol/L, age >40 years, unfavorable etiology (undetermined or drug-induced)
Clichy Criteria	HBV	Hepatic encephalopathy grade 3-4 and factor V <20% (for <30 years old); <30% (for >30 years old)
MELD		10 x [0.957 x ln(serum creatinine) + 0.378 x ln(total bilirubin) +1.12 x ln(INR+0.643)]
CK-18 modified MELD		10 x [0.957 x ln(serum creatinine) + 0.378 x ln(CK18/M65) + 1.12 x ln(INR + 0.643)]
Bilirubin-lactate-etiology score (BILE score)		Bilirubin (µmol/)/100 + Lactate (mmol/L) + 4 (for cryptogenic ALF, Budd-Chiari or Phenprocoumon induced) -2 (for acetaminophen-induced) +0 (for other causes)
ALFSG Index		Coma grade, bilirubin, INR, phosphorus, $\log_{10}$ M30
ALFED Model		Dynamic of variables over 3 days: HE 0-2 points; INR 0-1 point; arterial ammonia 0-2 points; serum bilirubin 0-1 point

Adapted from Canbay 2011; INR, International Normalized Ratio; MELD, model of end stage liver disease.

Treatment

General management

Given the high risk of deterioration and development of hepatic coma, immediate transfer of the patient presenting with ALF to the ICU is mandatory. Early referral or at least consultation of an experienced transplant center is indicated in any ALF patient, since LTx is the ultimate treatment for ALF in case conservative therapy fails. The cause of ALF should be determined as soon as possible. Besides specific detailed history taking, laboratory and radiologic tests need to be done in order to establish the diagnosis of ALF and identify the underlying cause. Diagnostic studies include, but are not limited to, arterial blood gas analysis, glucose, electrolytes, bilirubin, ammoniac, lactate, protein, albumin, C-reactive protein (CRP), procalcitonin (PCT), urine electrolytes, urinalysis, and chest X-ray, cranial computed tomography (CT) in patients with advanced hepatic encephalopathy as

well as assessment of intracranial pressure (ICP) in some cases. Beyond specific diagnostic studies (HBV serology, ceruloplasmin, urine copper concentration, etc), transjugular or laparoscopic liver biopsy might be indicated to identify the underlying disease (Canbay 2011).

Hepatic encephalopathy

In general in patients with hepatic encephalopathy, sedative agents should be avoided and if necessary restricted to short-acting benzodiazepines or propofol, as it might decrease intracranial pressure (Wijdicks 2002). Some studies favor utilization of ICP monitoring, especially in patients with hepatic encephalopathy grade III/IV, and clinical signs of brain edema. Mannitol therapy (0.5-1 g/kg) might be beneficial in some patients. Head elevation, induction of hypothermia and hyperventilation are recommended by some experts in patients with increased ICP. With worsening of brain edema, the patients present with systemic hypertension and bradycardia (Cushing reflex), dilated and fixed pupils, and in the end respiratory arrest. The target ICP should remain below 20 mmHg, with cerebral perfusion pressure above 70 mmHg and jugular venous saturation of 55-80%. Phenytoin is the drug of choice for treatment of seizures and hypertonic sodium chloride might be beneficial on ICP (Larsen 2011). Symptomatic treatment of encephalopathy includes bowel decontamination with neomycin or rifaximin, induction of diarrhea and reduction of colonic pH and thus reduction of ammonia absorption by lactulose as well as treatment with branched-chain aminoacids to improve peripheral ammonia metabolism, although large, randomized clinical trials have failed to show clinical improvement (Larson 2010, Nguyen 2011).

Coagulopathy

In general, without clinical signs of bleeding, fresh frozen plasma (FFP) or individual coagulation factor treatment is not indicated. To exclude vitamin K deficiency, vitamin K challenge should be performed. Platelets and recombinant activated factor VII are indicated in case of bleeding or before invasive procedures.

Liver transplantation

LTx is the therapy of choice for ALF in those individuals with insufficient regeneration capacity and an otherwise fatal prognosis. In patients without contraindications to LTx, the one-year survival rate is as high as 80-90% with a five-year survival of 55%. As mentioned above, with LTx available as the most favorable therapy, the accurate assessment of the patient's prognosis is crucial to initiate evaluation of the patient for LTx and decision making in this clinical setting. The underlying disease, the clinical condition and the status of the graft influence the patient's prognosis after the transplant. In times of general organ shortage, the graft pool might be extended by utilisation of living-donor transplants, split liver surgery or transplantation of livers in reduced conditions (Canbay 2011).

Extracorporal liver support systems

Extracorporal systems include support devices or bioreactors, which provide individual or a combination of functions that are insufficiently performed by the diseased liver. The scientific and clinical aim of the introduction of these novel

techniques is to stabilize the patient until a donor organ is available or ideally until the liver completely recovers. However, adequately powered, randomized studies to establish these techniques in the treatment of ALF are either lacking or have failed to show any benefit over conventional therapy. Thus, treatment with these devices most likely remains a part of a bridging-to-transplantation strategy within an academic setting. The same accounts for novel stem cell and adult hepatocyte transplant approaches (Canbay 2011).

Specific treatment options

Acetaminophen poisoning

Activated oral charcoal (1 g/kg) might be indicated if administered up to four hours after acetaminophen ingestion. N-acetyl cysteine infusion to restore glutathione should be administered until as late as 24-36 hours after ingestion, and continued for 20 hours or longer. Monitoring of blood acetaminophen levels might help in decision-making regarding the duration or initiation of treatment. N-acetyl cysteine should be started as soon as possible, even in patients with a low probability of acetaminophen overdose or even in patients with non-paracetamol drug-induced ALF (Lee 2009). Steroid and ursodeoxycholic acid combination seems to be effective in drug-induced severe liver injury (Wree 2011).

Mushroom poisoning

Silibin, with its cytoprotective affects against amatoxin is used despite a lack of the controlled trials (Broussard 2001, Ganzert 2008).

Acute HBV infection

Antiviral therapy with lamivudine or entecavir has proven efficient and safe in fulminant HBV infection (Tillmann 2006). Moreover, with initiation of entecavir within the first days of admission, HBsAg concentrations and cell death were significantly reduced (Jochum 2009).

Pregnancy related

Immediate delivery and abortion are the available causal treatments. With early delivery, the rates of fetal death remain high, however the mortality rate of the mother decreases significantly (Westbrook 2010).

Autoimmune hepatitis

Steroid treatment should be initiated and if started in time might help to avoid the need for LTx. With improvement of liver function, prednisone might be tapered and azathioprine treatment added to the regimens. Recent studies identified the topical steroid budesonide as a potential substitute for systemic prednisone therapy (Schramm 2010).

Table 5. Specific treatments for the causes of ALF

Causes	Medication	Doses
Acetaminophen	Activated oral charcoal	1 g/kg
	N-acetyl cysteine (oral/IV)	150 mg/kg loading dose, 50 mg/kg for 4h, 100 mg/kg for 20h
Mushroom	Silibin	20-50 mg/kg/day
Acute HBV	Lamivudine	100-300 mg/day
	Entecavir	0.5-1 mg/day
	Tenofovir	245 mg/day
Pregnancy	Delivery	
Autoimmune	Prednisolone	1-2 mg/kg/day
Budd-Chiari syndrome	TIPS/surgical shunt	
HSV	Acyclovir	3 x 10 mg/kg/day

References

Bechmann LP, Jochum C, Kocabayoglu P, et al. Cytokeratin 18-based modification of the MELD score improves prediction of spontaneous survival after acute liver injury. J Hepatol 2010;53:639-47. (Abstract)

Bechmann LP, Marquitan G, Jochum C, Saner F, Gerken G, Canbay A. Apoptosis versus necrosis rate as a predictor in acute liver failure following acetaminophen intoxication compared with acute-on-chronic liver failure. Liver Int 2008;28:713-6. (Abstract)

Bernal W, Auzinger G, Dhawan A, Wendon J. Acute liver failure. Lancet 2010;376:190-201. (Abstract)

Bernal W, Wendon J. Liver transplantation in adults with acute liver failure. J Hepatol 2004;40:192-7. (Abstract)

Bernuau J, Goudeau A, Poynard T, et al. Multivariate analysis of prognostic factors in fulminant hepatitis B. Hepatology 1986;6:648-51. (Abstract)

Bessems JG, Vermeulen NP. Paracetamol (acetaminophen)-induced toxicity: molecular and biochemical mechanisms, analogues and protective approaches. Crit Rev Toxicol 2001;31:55-138. (Abstract)

Bjornsson E, Talwalkar J, Treeprasertsuk S, et al. Drug-induced autoimmune hepatitis: clinical characteristics and prognosis. Hepatology 2010;51:2040-8. (Abstract)

Broussard CN, Aggarwal A, Lacey SR, et al. Mushroom poisoning--from diarrhea to liver transplantation. Am J Gastroenterol 2001;96:3195-8. (Abstract)

Canbay A, Tacke F, Hadem J, Trautwein C, Gerken G, Manns MP. Acute Liver Failure - a Life-Threatening Disease. Dtsch Arztebl International 2011;108:714-20. (Abstract)

Canbay A, Jochum C, Bechmann LP, et al. Acute liver failure in a metropolitan area in Germany: a retrospective study (2002 - 2008). Z Gastroenterol 2009;47:807-13. (Abstract)

Canbay A, Chen S-Y, Gieseler RK, et al. Overweight patients are more susceptible for acute liver failure. Hepatogastroenterology 2005; 52:1516-20. (Abstract)

Canbay A, Friedman S, Gores GJ. Apoptosis: the nexus of liver injury and fibrosis. Hepatology 2004;39:273-8. (Abstract)

Clemmesen JO, Larsen FS, Kondrup J, Hansen BA, Ott P. Cerebral herniation in patients with acute liver failure is correlated with arterial ammonia concentration. Hepatology 1999;29:648-53. (Abstract)

Dalton HR, Bendall R, Ijaz S, Banks M. Hepatitis E: an emerging infection in developed countries. Lancet Infect Dis 2008;8:698-709. (Abstract)

de Abajo FJ, Montero D, Madurga M, Garcia Rodriguez LA. Acute and clinically relevant drug-induced liver injury: a population based case-control study. Br J Clin Pharmacol 2004;58:71-80. (Abstract)
Dierssen U, Beraza N, Lutz HH, et al. Molecular dissection of gp130-dependent pathways in hepatocytes during liver regeneration. J Biol Chem 2008;283:9886-95. (Abstract)
Ding BS, Nolan DJ, Butler JM, et al. Inductive angiocrine signals from sinusoidal endothelium are required for liver regeneration. Nature 2010;468:310-5. (Abstract)
Dolle L, Best J, Mei J, et al. The quest for liver progenitor cells: a practical point of view. J Hepatol 2010;52:117-29. (Abstract)
Eisenbach C, Sieg O, Stremmel W, Encke J, Merle U. Diagnostic criteria for acute liver failure due to Wilson disease. World J Gastroenterol 2007;13:1711-4.
Escorsell A, Mas A, de la Mata M. Acute liver failure in Spain: analysis of 267 cases. Liver Transpl 2007;13:1389-95. (Abstract)
Etogo-Asse FE, Vincent RP, Hughes SA, et al. High density lipoprotein in patients with liver failure; relation to sepsis, adrenal function and outcome of illness. Liver Int 2012;32:128–136.
Ferrara JL, Levine JE, Reddy P, Holler E. Graft-versus-host disease. Lancet 2009;373:1550-61. (Abstract)
Fontana RJ, Seeff LB, Andrade RJ, et al. Standardization of nomenclature and causality assessment in drug-induced liver injury: summary of a clinical research workshop. Hepatology 2010;52:730-42. (Abstract)
Fox MA, Fox JA, Davies MH. Budd-Chiari syndrome--a review of the diagnosis and management. Acute Med 2011;10:5-9. (Abstract)
Ganzert M, Felgenhauer N, Schuster T, Eyer F, Gourdin C, Zilker T. Amanita poisoning--comparison of silibinin with a combination of silibinin and penicillin. Dtsch Med Wochenschr 2008;133:2261-7.
Hadem J, Stiefel P, Bahr MJ, et al. Prognostic implications of lactate, bilirubin, and etiology in German patients with acute liver failure. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2008;6:339-45. (Abstract)
Hadem J, Tacke F, Bruns T, et al. Etiologies and Outcomes of Acute Liver Failure in Germany. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2012;10:664-9.
Hay JE. Liver disease in pregnancy. Hepatology 2008;47:1067-76. (Abstract)
Herzer K, Kneiseler G, Bechmann LP, et al. Onset of heart failure determines the hepatic cell death pattern. Ann Hepatol 2011;10:174-9.
Jaeschke H, Liu J. Neutrophil depletion protects against murine acetaminophen hepatotoxicity: another perspective. Hepatology 2007;45:1588-9; author reply 1589.
Jochum C, Gieseler RK, Gawlista I, et al. Hepatitis B-associated acute liver failure: immediate treatment with entecavir inhibits hepatitis B virus replication and potentially its sequelae. Digestion 2009;80:235-40. (Abstract)
Kaufmann P. [Mushroom poisonings: syndromic diagnosis and treatment]. Wien Med Wochenschr 2007;157:493-502. (Abstract)
Koskinas J, Deutsch M, Kountouras D, et al. Aetiology and outcome of acute hepatic failure in Greece: experience of two academic hospital centres. Liver Int 2008; 28:821-7. (Abstract)
Krahenbuhl S, Brauchli Y, Kummer O, et al. Acute liver failure in two patients with regular alcohol consumption ingesting paracetamol at therapeutic dosage. Digestion 2007;75:232-7. (Abstract)
Kumar R, Shalimar, Sharma H, et al. Prospective derivation and validation of early dynamic model for predicting outcome in patients with acute liver failure. Gut 2012;61:1068-75.
Larsen FS, Bjerring PN. Acute liver failure. Curr Opin Crit Care 2011;17:160-4. (Abstract)
Larson AM. Diagnosis and management of acute liver failure. Curr Opin Gastroenterol 2010;26:214-21. (Abstract)
Lee WM, Hynan LS, Rossaro L, et al. Intravenous N-acetylcysteine improves transplant-free survival in early stage non-acetaminophen acute liver failure. Gastroenterology 2009;137:856-64, 64 e1. (Abstract)
Lee WM. Etiologies of acute liver failure. Semin Liver Dis 2008;28:142-52. (Abstract)
Lee WM, Squires RH, Jr., Nyberg SL, Doo E, Hoofnagle JH. Acute liver failure: Summary of a workshop. Hepatology 2008;47:1401-15. (Abstract)

McGill MR, Sharpe MR, Williams CD, Taha M, Curry SC, Jaeschke H. The mechanism underlying acetaminophen-induced hepatotoxicity in humans and mice involves mitochondrial damage and nuclear DNA fragmentation. J Clin Invest 2012; 122:1574-83.
Mudawi HM, Yousif BA. Fulminant hepatic failure in an African setting: etiology, clinical course, and predictors of mortality. Dig Dis Sci 2007;52:3266-9. (Abstract)
Nguyen NT, Vierling JM. Acute liver failure. Curr Opin Organ Transplant 2011;16:289-96. (Abstract)
O'Grady JG. Acute liver failure. Postgrad Med J 2005;81:148-54. (Abstract)
O'Grady JG, Schalm SW, Williams R. Acute liver failure: redefining the syndromes. Lancet 1993;342:273-5. (Abstract)
O'Grady JG, Alexander GJ, Hayllar KM, Williams R. Early indicators of prognosis in fulminant hepatic failure. Gastroenterology 1989;97:439-45. (Abstract)
Oketani M, Ido A, Tsubouchi H. Changing etiologies and outcomes of acute liver failure: A perspective from Japan. J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2011;26 Suppl 1:65-71. (Abstract)
Ostapowicz G, Fontana RJ, Schiodt FV, et al. Results of a prospective study of acute liver failure at 17 tertiary care centers in the United States. Ann Intern Med 2002;137:947-54. (Abstract)
Reuben A. Hy's law. Hepatology 2004;39:574-8. (Abstract)
Rodriguez I, Matsuura K, Khatib K, Reed JC, Nagata S, Vassalli P. A bcl-2 transgene expressed in hepatocytes protects mice from fulminant liver destruction but not from rapid death induced by anti-Fas antibody injection. J Exp Med 1996;183:1031-6. (Abstract)
Rutherford A, King LY, Hynan LS, et al. Development of an accurate index for predicting outcomes of patients with acute liver failure. Gastroenterology 2012;143:1237-43.
Schmidt LE, Larsen FS. MELD score as a predictor of liver failure and death in patients with acetaminophen-induced liver injury. Hepatology 2007;45:789-96. (Abstract)
Schramm C, Weiler-Normann C, Wiegard C, Hellweg S, Muller S, Lohse AW. Treatment response in patients with autoimmune hepatitis. Hepatology 2010;52:2247-8. (Abstract)
Suzuki A, Brunt EM, Kleiner DE, et al. The use of liver biopsy evaluation in discrimination of idiopathic autoimmune hepatitis versus drug-induced liver injury. Hepatology 2011. (Abstract)
Tillmann HL, Hadem J, Leifeld L, et al. Safety and efficacy of lamivudine in patients with severe acute or fulminant hepatitis B, a multicenter experience. J Viral Hepat 2006;13:256-63. (Abstract)
Volkmann X, Anstaett M, Hadem J, et al. Caspase activation is associated with spontaneous recovery from acute liver failure. Hepatology 2008;47:1624-33. (Abstract)
Wei G, Bergquist A, Broome U, et al. Acute liver failure in Sweden: etiology and outcome. J Intern Med 2007;262:393-401. (Abstract)
Westbrook RH, Yeoman AD, Joshi D, et al. Outcomes of severe pregnancy-related liver disease: refining the role of transplantation. Am J Transplant 2010;10:2520-6. (Abstract)
Wijdicks EF, Nyberg SL. Propofol to control intracranial pressure in fulminant hepatic failure. Transplant Proc 2002;34:1220-2. (Abstract)
Wree A, Dechene A, Herzer K, et al. Steroid and ursodesoxycholic Acid combination therapy in severe drug-induced liver injury. Digestion 2011;84:54-9. (Abstract)
Yantorno SE, Kremers WK, Ruf AE, Trentadue JJ, Podesta LG, Villamil FG. MELD is superior to King's college and Clichy's criteria to assess prognosis in fulminant hepatic failure. Liver Transpl 2007;13:822-8. (Abstract)

Index

A

B

C

D

E

F

G

H

I

L

M

N

O

P

Q

R

S

T

U

V

W

Z

Free PDF

Flying Publisher

Hepatology *2014*

A Clinical Textbook

Mauss, Berg, Rockstroh, Sarrazin, Wedemeyer

Hepatology is a rapidly developing area of medicine. The exciting new treatment options for viral hepatitis, advances in liver transplantation and therapy of hepatocellular carcinoma and new insights into metabolic liver diseases are just some highlights.

Hepatology — A clinical textbook is an up-to-date source of information for physicians, residents and advanced medical students seeking a broader understanding of liver disease.

www.flyingpublisher.com

ISBN 978-3-924774-912

9 783924 774912 >